IEEE STANDARDS ASSOCIATION

IEEE Standard for Low-Rate Wireless Networks

IEEE Computer Society

Sponsored by the
LAN/MAN Standards Committee

IEEE
3 Park Avenue
New York, NY 10016-5997
USA

IEEE Std 802.15.4™-2015
(Revision of
IEEE Std 802.15.4-2011)

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

IEEE Std 802.15.4™-2015
(Revision of
IEEE Std 802.15.4-2011)

IEEE Standard for Low-Rate Wireless Networks

Sponsor

LAN/MAN Standards Committee
of the
IEEE Computer Society

Approved 5 December 2015

IEEE-SA Standards Board

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Abstract: The protocol and compatible interconnection for data communication devices using low-data-rate, low-power, and low-complexity short-range radio frequency (RF) transmissions in a wireless personal area network (WPAN) are defined in this standard. A variety of physical layers (PHYs) have been defined that cover a wide variety of frequency bands.

Keywords: ad hoc network, IEEE 802.15.4™, low data rate, low power, LR-WPAN, mobility, PAN, personal area network, radio frequency, RF, short range, wireless, wireless personal area network, WPAN

The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.
3 Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5997, USA

Copyright © 2016 by The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.
All rights reserved. Published 22 April 2016. Printed in the United States of America.

IEEE and IEEE 802 are registered trademarks in the U.S. Patent & Trademark Office, owned by The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Incorporated.

Print: ISBN 978-1-5044-0854-5 STD20893
PDF: ISBN 978-1-5044-0846-2 STDPD20893

IEEE prohibits discrimination, harassment and bullying.
For more information, visit http://www.ieee.org/web/aboutus/whatis/policies/p9-26.html.
No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form, in an electronic retrieval system or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Important Notices and Disclaimers Concerning IEEE Standards Documents

IEEE documents are made available for use subject to important notices and legal disclaimers. These notices and disclaimers, or a reference to this page, appear in all standards and may be found under the heading "Important Notice" or "Important Notices and Disclaimers Concerning IEEE Standards Documents."

Notice and Disclaimer of Liability Concerning the Use of IEEE Standards Documents

IEEE Standards documents (standards, recommended practices, and guides), both full-use and trial-use, are developed within IEEE Societies and the Standards Coordinating Committees of the IEEE Standards Association ("IEEE-SA") Standards Board. IEEE ("the Institute") develops its standards through a consensus development process, approved by the American National Standards Institute ("ANSI"), which brings together volunteers representing varied viewpoints and interests to achieve the final product. Volunteers are not necessarily members of the Institute and participate without compensation from IEEE. While IEEE administers the process and establishes rules to promote fairness in the consensus development process, IEEE does not independently evaluate, test, or verify the accuracy of any of the information or the soundness of any judgments contained in its standards.

IEEE does not warrant or represent the accuracy or content of the material contained in its standards, and expressly disclaims all warranties (express, implied and statutory) not included in this or any other document relating to the standard, including, but not limited to, the warranties of: merchantability; fitness for a particular purpose; non-infringement; and quality, accuracy, effectiveness, currency, or completeness of material. In addition, IEEE disclaims any and all conditions relating to: results; and workmanlike effort. IEEE standards documents are supplied "AS IS" and "WITH ALL FAULTS."

Use of an IEEE standard is wholly voluntary. The existence of an IEEE standard does not imply that there are no other ways to produce, test, measure, purchase, market, or provide other goods and services related to the scope of the IEEE standard. Furthermore, the viewpoint expressed at the time a standard is approved and issued is subject to change brought about through developments in the state of the art and comments received from users of the standard.

In publishing and making its standards available, IEEE is not suggesting or rendering professional or other services for, or on behalf of, any person or entity nor is IEEE undertaking to perform any duty owed by any other person or entity to another. Any person utilizing any IEEE Standards document, should rely upon his or her own independent judgment in the exercise of reasonable care in any given circumstances or, as appropriate, seek the advice of a competent professional in determining the appropriateness of a given IEEE standard.

IN NO EVENT SHALL IEEE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO: PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE PUBLICATION, USE OF, OR RELIANCE UPON ANY STANDARD, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE AND REGARDLESS OF WHETHER SUCH DAMAGE WAS FORESEEABLE.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Translations

The IEEE consensus development process involves the review of documents in English only. In the event that an IEEE standard is translated, only the English version published by IEEE should be considered the approved IEEE standard.

Official statements

A statement, written or oral, that is not processed in accordance with the IEEE-SA Standards Board Operations Manual shall not be considered or inferred to be the official position of IEEE or any of its committees and shall not be considered to be, or be relied upon as, a formal position of IEEE. At lectures, symposia, seminars, or educational courses, an individual presenting information on IEEE standards shall make it clear that his or her views should be considered the personal views of that individual rather than the formal position of IEEE.

Comments on standards

Comments for revision of IEEE Standards documents are welcome from any interested party, regardless of membership affiliation with IEEE. However, IEEE does not provide consulting information or advice pertaining to IEEE Standards documents. Suggestions for changes in documents should be in the form of a proposed change of text, together with appropriate supporting comments. Since IEEE standards represent a consensus of concerned interests, it is important that any responses to comments and questions also receive the concurrence of a balance of interests. For this reason, IEEE and the members of its societies and Standards Coordinating Committees are not able to provide an instant response to comments or questions except in those cases where the matter has previously been addressed. For the same reason, IEEE does not respond to interpretation requests. Any person who would like to participate in revisions to an IEEE standard is welcome to join the relevant IEEE working group.

Comments on standards should be submitted to the following address:

Secretary, IEEE-SA Standards Board
445 Hoes Lane
Piscataway, NJ 08854 USA

Laws and regulations

Users of IEEE Standards documents should consult all applicable laws and regulations. Compliance with the provisions of any IEEE Standards document does not imply compliance to any applicable regulatory requirements. Implementers of the standard are responsible for observing or referring to the applicable regulatory requirements. IEEE does not, by the publication of its standards, intend to urge action that is not in compliance with applicable laws, and these documents may not be construed as doing so.

Copyrights

IEEE draft and approved standards are copyrighted by IEEE under U.S. and international copyright laws. They are made available by IEEE and are adopted for a wide variety of both public and private uses. These include both use, by reference, in laws and regulations, and use in private self-regulation, standardization, and the promotion of engineering practices and methods. By making these documents available for use and adoption by public authorities and private users, IEEE does not waive any rights in copyright to the documents.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Photocopies

Subject to payment of the appropriate fee, IEEE will grant users a limited, non-exclusive license to photocopy portions of any individual standard for company or organizational internal use or individual, non-commercial use only. To arrange for payment of licensing fees, please contact Copyright Clearance Center, Customer Service, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923 USA; +1 978 750 8400. Permission to photocopy portions of any individual standard for educational classroom use can also be obtained through the Copyright Clearance Center.

Updating of IEEE Standards documents

Users of IEEE Standards documents should be aware that these documents may be superseded at any time by the issuance of new editions or may be amended from time to time through the issuance of amendments, corrigenda, or errata. An official IEEE document at any point in time consists of the current edition of the document together with any amendments, corrigenda, or errata then in effect.

Every IEEE standard is subjected to review at least every ten years. When a document is more than ten years old and has not undergone a revision process, it is reasonable to conclude that its contents, although still of some value, do not wholly reflect the present state of the art. Users are cautioned to check to determine that they have the latest edition of any IEEE standard.

In order to determine whether a given document is the current edition and whether it has been amended through the issuance of amendments, corrigenda, or errata, visit the IEEE-SA Website at http://ieeexplore.ieee.org/Xplore/home.jsp or contact IEEE at the address listed previously. For more information about the IEEE SA or IEEE's standards development process, visit the IEEE-SA Website at http://standards.ieee.org.

Errata

Errata, if any, for all IEEE standards can be accessed on the IEEE-SA Website at the following URL: http://standards.ieee.org/findstds/errata/index.html. Users are encouraged to check this URL for errata periodically.

Patents

Attention is called to the possibility that implementation of this standard may require use of subject matter covered by patent rights. By publication of this standard, no position is taken by the IEEE with respect to the existence or validity of any patent rights in connection therewith. If a patent holder or patent applicant has filed a statement of assurance via an Accepted Letter of Assurance, then the statement is listed on the IEEE-SA Website at http://standards.ieee.org/about/sasb/patcom/patents.html. Letters of Assurance may indicate whether the Submitter is willing or unwilling to grant licenses under patent rights without compensation or under reasonable rates, with reasonable terms and conditions that are demonstrably free of any unfair discrimination to applicants desiring to obtain such licenses.

Essential Patent Claims may exist for which a Letter of Assurance has not been received. The IEEE is not responsible for identifying Essential Patent Claims for which a license may be required, for conducting inquiries into the legal validity or scope of Patents Claims, or determining whether any licensing terms or conditions provided in connection with submission of a Letter of Assurance, if any, or in any licensing agreements are reasonable or non-discriminatory. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, is entirely their own responsibility. Further information may be obtained from the IEEE Standards Association.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Participants

At the time this standard was sent to sponsor ballot, the IEEE P802.15 Working Group had the following voting members:

Robert F. Heile, *Chair*
Rick Alfvin, *Co-Vice Chair*
Patrick W. Kinney, *Co-Vice Chair*
James P. K. Gilb, *Working Group Technical Editor*
Patrick W. Kinney, *Secretary*

Patrick W. Kinney, *802.15 Maintenance Committee Chair*
Benjamin A. Rolfe, *802.15 Maintenance Committee Vice Chair*
James P. K. Gilb, *Technical Editor*

Mounir Achir
Keiji Akiyama
Arthur Astrin
Philip Beecher
Frederik Beer
Chandrashekhar P. S. Bhat
Kiran Bynam
Edgar Callaway
Chris Calvert
Radhakrishna Canchi
Kapseok Chang
Soo-Young Chang
Clint Chaplin
Stephen Chasko
Paul Chilton
Sangsung Choi
Hendricus de Ruijter
Guido Dolmans
Igor Dotlic
Stefan Drude
Dietmar Eggert
Shahriar Emami
Andrew Estrada
David Evans
George Flammer
Kiyoshi Fukui
Matthew Gillmore
Tim Godfrey
Elad Gottlib
Jussi Haapola
Rainer Hach
Shinsuke Hara
Timothy Harrington
James Hartman
Marco Hernandez
Ken Hiraga
Iwao Hosako
Yeong Min Jang
Seong-Soon Joo
Akifumi Kasamatsu
Shuzo Kato
Toyoyuki Kato
Jeritt Kent
Jaehwan Kim
Youngsoo Kim
Shoichi Kitazawa
Tero Kivinen
Ryuji Kohno
Fumihide Kojima
Thomas Kuerner
Byung-Jae Kwak
Jae Seung Lee
Myung Lee
Sangjae Lee
Huan-Bang Li
Liang Li
Qing Li
Michael Lynch
Itaru Maekawa
Hiroyuki Matsumura
Michael McLaughlin
Michael McInnis
Kenichi Mori
Robert Moskowitz
Jinesh P. Nair
Chiu Ngo
Paul Nikolich
John Notor
Hiroyo Ogawa
Taejoon Park
Glenn Parsons
Charles Perkins
Albert Petrick
Clinton C. Powell
Verotiana Rabarijaona
Ivan Reede
Richard Roberts
Ruben E. Salazar Cardozo
Noriyuki Sato
Norihiko Sekine
Kunal Shah
Stephen Shellhammer
Shusaku Shimada
Gary Stuebing
Don Sturek
Mineo Takai
Kou Togashi
Billy Verso
Gabriel Villardi
Brian Weis
Makoto Yaita
Peter Yee
Yu Zeng
Chunhui (Allan) Zhu

Major contributions in the revision process were received from the following individuals:

Philip Beecher
Monique Brown
Edgar Callaway
Soo-Young Chang
James P. K. Gilb
Tim Godfrey
Jussi Haapola
Timothy Harrington
Jeritt Kent
Patrick W. Kinney
Tero Kivinen
Amarjeet Kumar
Michael McInnis
Robert Moskowitz
Clinton C. Powell
Verotiana Rabarijaona
Benjamin A. Rolfe
Ruben E. Salazar Cardozo
Cristina Seibert
Kunal Shal
Shusakh Shimada
Chin-Sean Sum
Larry Taylor
Billy Verso

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The following members of the individual balloting committee voted on this standard. Balloters may have voted for approval, disapproval, or abstention.

Rick Alfvin
Nobumitsu Amachi
Butch Anton
Stefan Aust
Michael Bahr
Madhusudan Banavara
Philip E. Beecher
Harry Bims
Gennaro Boggia
Riccardo Brama
Nancy Bravin
Vern Brethour
Monique Brown
William Byrd
Brent Cain
Edgar Callaway
Radhakrishna Canchi
Juan Carreon
Suresh Channarasappa
Keith Chow
Charles Cook
Steven Crowley
Sourav Dutta
Richard Edgar
David Evans
Liu Fangfang
Michael Fischer
Avraham Freedman
Devon Gayle
James P. K. Gilb
Gregory Gillooly
Joel Goergen
Randall Groves
Chris Guy
Rainer Hach
Timothy Harrington
Marco Hernandez
Guido Hiertz
Werner Hoelzl
Tetsushi Ikegami
Noriyuki Ikeuchi
Akio Iso
Atsushi Ito
Raj Jain
Oyvind Janbu
Michael Johas Teener
Adri Jovin
Naveen Kakani
Shinkyo Kaku
Piotr Karocki
Ruediger Kays
Jeritt Kent
Stuart Kerry
Yongbum Kim
Patrick W. Kinney
Tero Kivinen
Fumihide Kojima
Bruce Kraemer
Yasushi Kudoh
Amarjeet Kumar
Jeremy Landt
Hyeong Ho Lee
James Lepp
Arthur H. Light
Vincent Lipsio
William Lumpkins
Elvis Maculuba
James Marin
Roger Marks
Michael McInnis
Michael McLaughlin
Apurva Mody
Jose Morales
Ronald Murias
Jinesh Nair
Juichi Nakada
Michael Newman
Chiu Ngo
Nick S. A. Nikjoo
Paul Nikolich
Yoshihiro Ohba
Okundu Omeni
Satoshi Oyama
Stephen Palm
Arumugam Paventhan
Dalibor Pokrajac
Clinton C. Powell
Venkatesha Prasad
Verotiana Rabarijaona
Demir Rakanovic
R. K. Rannow
Maximilian Riegel
Robert Robinson
Osman Sakr
Ruben E. Salazar Cardozo
John Santhoff
Naotaka Sato
Bartien Sayogo
Kunal Shah
Shusaku Shimada
Suresh Shrimavle
Daniel Smolinski
Thomas Starai
Rene Struik
Walter Struppler
Patricia Thaler
David Thompson
Ha-Nguyen Tran
Mark-Rene Uchida
Lorenzo Vangelista
Dmitri Varsanofiev
Prabodh Varshney
Raj Vaswani
George Vlantis
Khurram Waheed
Hung-Yu Wei
Brian Weis
Andreas Wolf
Oren Yuen
Daidi Zhong

When the IEEE-SA Standards Board approved this standard on 5 December 2015, it had the following membership:

John Kulick, *Chair*
Jon Walter Rosdahl, *Vice Chair*
Richard H. Hulett, *Past Chair*
Konstantinos Karachalios, *Secretary*

Masayuki Ariyoshi
Ted Burse
Stephen Dukes
Jean-Phillippe Faure
J. Travis Griffith
Gary Hoffman
Michael Janezic
Joseph L. Koepfinger*
David J. Law
Hung Ling
Andrew Myles
T. W. Olsen
Glenn Parsons
Ronald C. Peterson
Annette D. Reilly
Stephen J. Shellhammer
Adrian P. Stephens
Yatin Trivedi
Phillip Winston
Don Wright
Yu Yuan
Daidi Zhong

*Member Emeritus

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Historical participants

Many individuals have participated in the IEEE P802.15 Working Group during various stages of the standard's development. Since the initial publication, many amendments have added functionality or updated material in this standard, and now three revisions have been published. Here is a historical list of the working group participants who dedicated their valuable time, energy, and knowledge to the advancement of this standard at the time of its original publication and for its revisions. Many of these members also worked on amendments.

The following members of the IEEE P802.15 Working Group participated in the development of the original standard, IEEE Std 802.15.4-2003:

Robert F. Heile, *Chair*
James D. Allen, *Vice Chair*
Patrick W. Kinney, *Secretary*
Michael D. McInnis, *Assistant Secretary and Editor*

Ian C. Gifford, *Task Group 1 Chair*
Stephen J. Shellhammer, *Task Group 2 Chair*
John R. Barr, *Task Group 3 Chair*

Patrick W. Kinney, *Task Group 4 Chair*
Phil Jamieson, *Task Group 4 Vice Chair*
José A. Gutierrez, *Task Group 4 Editor-in-Chief*
Marco Naeve, *Task Group 4 Secretary*

Monique Bourgeois, *MAC Technical Editor*
Said Moridi, *PHY Technical Editor*
Phil Jamieson, *Layer Management Technical Editor*
Greg Breen, *Low-Band PHY Technical Editing*
Ed Callaway, *Networking Technical Editing*
Paul Gorday, *High-Band PHY Technical Editing*
Marco Naeve, *General Description Technical Editing*
David Cypher, *PICs/SDLs Technical Editing*
Robert D. Poor, *Coexistence Technical Editing*
Farron Dacus, *Regulatory Technical Editing*

Roberto Aiello
Masaaki Akahane
Richard Alfvin
Arun Arunachalam
Naiel Askar
Venkat I. Bahl
Daniel Bailey
Jay Bain
James Baker
Jaiganesh Balakrishnan
Anuj Batra
Timothy Blaney
Kenneth Boehike
Stan Bottoms
Mark V. Bowles
Chuck Brabenac
Soo-Young Chang
Francois Po_Shin Chin
Aik Chindapol
Craig Conkling
Anand Dabak
Kai Dombrowski
Mary DuVal
Michael Dydyk
Jason L. Ellis
Mark W. Fidler
Jeff R. Foerster
David S. Furuno
Pierre Gandolfo
Atul Garg
James Gilb
Nada Golmie
Yasuo Harada
Allen Heberling
Barry Herold
Robert Y. Huang
Eran Igler
Katsumi Ishii
Jeyhan Karaoguz
Masami Katagiri
Joy H. Kelly
Stuart J. Kerry
Yongsuk Kim
Young Hwan Kim
Günter Kleindl
Bruce P. Kraemer
DoHoon Kwon
Jim Lansford
David Leeper
Liang Li
Yeong-Chang Maa
Steven March
Ralph Mason
Jim Meyer
Leonard E. Miller
Akira Miura
Andreas Molisch

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Antonio Mondragon
Tony Morelli
Chiu Ngo
Kei Obara
Knut Odman
John B. Pardee
Jongun Park
Dave Patton
Marcus Pendergrass
Gregg Rasor
Ivan Reede
Jim Richards
Glyn Roberts
Richard Roberts
William Roberts
Chris Rogers
Philippe Rouzet
Chandos Rypinski
John H. Santhoff
Mark Schrader
Tom Schuster
Erik Schylander
Michael Seals
Nick Shepherd
Gadi Shor
William Shvodian
Thomas Siep
Kazimierz Siwiak
Carl Stevenson
Rene Struik
Shigeru Sugaya
Kazuhisa Takamura
Katsumi Takaoka
Teik-Kheong Tan
Larry Taylor
Stephen E. Taylor
Hans vanLeeuwen
Ritesh Vishwakarma
Thierry Walrant
Jing Wang
Fijio Watanabe
Mathew Welborn
Richard Wilson
Stephen Wood
Edward G. Woodrow
Hirohisa Yamaguchi
Amos Young
Song-Lin Young
Nakache Yves-paul
Jim Zyren

Major contributions were received from the following individuals:

Tony Adamson
David Archer
David Avery
Venkat Bahl
Daniel Bailey
Edul Batliwala
Pratik Bose
Boaz Carmeli
Farron Dacus
Martin Digon
Ian C. Gifford
Ed Hogervorst
Stephen Korfhage
Charles Luebke
Masahiro Maeda
Ian Marsden
Chris Marshall
Paul Marshall
Fred Martin
Ralph Mason
Rod Miller
Phil Rudland
Niels Schutten
Nick Shepherd
Ari Singer
Ralph D'Souza
Carl Stevenson
Mark Tilinghast
Hans Van Leeuwen
Jacco van Muiswinkel
Luis Pereira
Richard Wilson
Wim Zwart

The following members of the IEEE P802.15 Working Group participated in the development of the first revision, IEEE Std 802.15.4-2006:

Robert F. Heile, *Chair*
James D. Allen, *Vice Chair*
Patrick W. Kinney, *Assistant Vice Chair*
James P. K. Gilb, *Editor-in-Chief*
Patrick W. Kinney, *Secretary*
Michael D. McInnis, *Assistant Secretary and Editor*

John R. Barr, *Task Group 3b Chair*
Reed Fisher, *Task Group 3c Chair*
Patrick W. Kinney, *Task Group 4a Chair*
Myung Lee, *Task Group 5 Chair*

Robert D. Poor, *Task Group 4b Chair*
Marco Naeve, *Task Group 4b Vice Chair*
Monique B. Brown, *Task Group 4b Editor-in-Chief*
Eric T. Gnoske, *Task Group 4b Secretary*

Philip E. Beecher, *MAC Contributing Editor*
Monique B. Brown, *MAC Technical Editor*
Edgar H. Callaway, Jr., *MAC Contributing Editor*
Francois Chin, *PHY Contributing Editor*
Robert C. Cragie, *MAC/Security Contributing Editor*

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Paul Gorday, *PHY Contributing Editor*
James P. K. Gilb, *Draft D3 Editor-in-Chief*
Øyvind Janbu, *MAC/PHY/Security Contributing Editor*
Marco Naeve, *General Description/PICS Editor, MAC Contributing Editor*
Clinton C. Powell, *PHY Technical Editor*
Joseph Reddy, *Security Contributing Editor*
Zachary Smith, *MAC Contributing Editor*
René Struik, *Security Contributing Editor*
Andreas C. Wolf, *PHY Contributing Editor*

Roberto Aiello
Richard Alfvin
Mikio Aoki
Takashi Arita
Larry Arnett
Arthur Astrin
Yasaman Bahreini
Jay Bain
Alan Berkema
Bruce Bosco
Mark Bowles
Charles Brabenac
David Brenner
Vern Brethour
Ronald Brown
Bill Carney
Kuor-Hsin Chang
Jonathon Cheah
Kwan-Wu Chin
Sarm-Goo Cho
Sungsoo Choi
Yun Choi
Chun-Ting Chou
Manoj Choudhary
Celestino Corral
Joe Decuir
Javier Del Prado Pavon
Kai Dombrowski
Stefan Drude
Amal Ekbal
Jason Ellis
Shahriar Emami
Paul Everest
Mark W. Fidler
Kris Fleming
Amir Freund
Camillo Gentile
Ian Gifford
Sung-Wook Goh
Sorin Goldenberg
Vivek Gupta
Rainer Hach
Robert Hall
Shinsuke Hara
Jeff Harris
Allen Heberling
Eric Heinze
Barry Herold
Keisuke Higuchi
Jin-Meng Ho
Patrick Houghton
Robert Huang
Tian-Wei Huang
Hideto Ikeda
Tetsushi Ikegami
Adrian Jennings
Ho-In Jeon
Tzyy Hong Jiang
David Julian
Jeyhan Karaoguz
Michael Kelly
Stuart Kerry
Jae-Hyon Kim
Jaeyoung Kim
Jinkyeong Kim
Yongsuk Kim
Kursat Kimyacioglu
Matthias Kindler
Guenter Kleindl
Ryuji Kohno
Mike Krell
Yasushi Kudo
Akiomi Kunisa
Yuzo Kuramochi
Jiun-You Lai
Ismail Lakkis
John Lampe
Kyung Kuk Lee
Wooyong Lee
David Leeper
Huan-Bang Li
Haixiang Liang
Ian Macnamara
Akira Maeki
Patricia Martigne
Abbie Mathew
Taisuke Matsumoto
Gustaf Max
Michael McLaughlin
Charlie Mellone
Klaus Meyer
Samuel Mo
Andreas Molisch
Mark Moore
Ken Naganuma
Yves-Paul Nakache
Hiroyuki Nakase
Saishankar Nandagopalan
Chiu Ngo
Erwin Noble
John O'Conor
Knut Odman
Hiroyo Ogawa
Yasuyuki Okuma
Philip Orlik
Laurent Ouvry
John Pardee
Nirmalendu Patra
Dave Patton
Xiaoming Peng
Tony Pollock
Vidyasagar Premkumar
Yihong Qi
Raad Raad
Pekka Ranta
Dani Raphaeli
Gregg Rasor
Charles Razzell
Ivan Reede
Yuko Rikuta
Terry Robar
Glyn Roberts
Richard Roberts
Benjamin A. Rolfe
Philippe Rouzet
Chandos Rypinski
Ali Sadri
Saeid Safavi
Zafer Sahinoglu
Tomoki Saito
Syed Saleem
Kamran Sayrafian
Jean Schwoerer
Erik Schylander
Alireza Seyedi
Sanjeev Sharma
Siddharth Shetty
John Shi
Shusaku Shimada
Yuichi Shiraki
Gadi Shor
William Shvodian
Thomas Siep
Michael Sim
Kazimierz Siwiak
V. Somayazulu
Amjad Soomro
Carl Stevenson
Kazuaki Takahashi
Kenichi Takizawa
Teik-Kheong Tan
Mike Tanahashi
Yasushi Tanaka
James Taylor
Arnaud Tonnerre
Ichihiko Toyoda

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Jerry Upton
Bart Van Poucke
Chris Weber
Matthew Welborn
Magnus Wiklund
Gerald Wineinger
Patrick Worfolk
Tracy Wright
Hirohisa Yamaguchi
Kamya Yekeh Yazdandoost
Su-Khiong Yong
Zhan Yu
Serdar Yurdakul
Mahmoud Zadeh
Bin Zhen

Major contributions in the revision process were received from the following individuals:

Jon Adams
Helmut P. Adamski
Jonathan Avey
Jon Beniston
Bernd Grohmann
José A. Gutierrez
Jesper Holm
ZhiJian Hu
Phil A. Jamieson
Yuen-Sam Kwok
Colin Lanzl
Myung Lee
Zhongding Lei
Liang Li
Yong Liu
Frederick Martin
Frank Poegel
Matthias Scheide
D. C. Seward
Huai-Rong Shao
Mark Shea
Stephen J. Shellhammer
Mark A. Tillinghast
Johannes Van Leeuwen
Richard Wilson
Ping Xiong
Bing Xu
ChenYang Yang
Chunhui Zhu

The following members of the IEEE P802.15 Working Group participated in the development of the second revision, IEEE Std 802.15.4-2011:

Robert F. Heile, *Chair*
Rick Alfvin, *Co-Vice Chair*
Patrick W. Kinney, *Co-Vice Chair*
James P. K. Gilb, *Working Group Technical Editor*
Patrick W. Kinney, *Secretary*

James P. K. Gilb, *Task Group 4i Chair and Technical Editor*

Emad Afifi
Gahng-Seop Ahn
Roberto Aiello
Arthur Astrin
Taehan Bae
Michael Bahr
John Barr
Anuj Batra
Tuncer Baykas
Philip E. Beecher
Ashutosh Bhatia
Ghulam Bhatti
Gary Birk
Mathew Boytim
Peter David Bradley
Nancy Bravin
David Britz
Monique B. Brown
Sverre Brubk
Brian Buchanan
John Buffington
Kiran Bynam
Brent Cain
Edgar H. Callaway
Chris Calvert
Ruben E. Salazar Cardozo
Douglas Castor
Jaesang Cha
Russell Chandler
Kuor-Hsin Chang
Soo-Young Chang
Clint Chaplin
Hind Chebbo
Chang-Soon Choi
Sangsung Choi
Ciaran Connell
David Cypher
Matthew Dahl
David Davenport
Mark Dawkins
Hendricus de Ruijter
Upkar Dhaliwal
Gang Ding
Paul Dixon
Guido Dolmans
Igor Dotlic
Michael Dow
Dietmar Eggert
David Evans
Charles Farlow
John Farserotu
Jeffrey Fischbeck
Mike Fischer
George Flammer
Ryosuke Fujiwara
Noriyasu Fukatsu
Kiyoshi Fukui
John Geiger
Gregory Gillooly
Tim Godfrey
Paul Gorday
Elad Gottlib
Robert Hall
Shinsuke Hara
Hiroshi Harada
Timothy Harrington
Rodney Hemminger
Marco Hernandez
Garth Hillman
Jin-Meng Ho
Wei Hong
Srinath Hosur
David Howard
Jung-Hwan Hwang
Taeho Hwang

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Ichirou Ida
Tetsushi Ikegami
Akio Iso
Yeong Min Jang
Adrian Jennings
Wuncheol Jeong
Steven Jillings
Noh-Gyoung Kang
Tae-Gyu Kang
Shuzo Kato
Tatsuya Kato
Jeritt Kent
Prithpal Khakuria
Dae Ho Kim
Dong-Sun Kim
Dukhyun Kim
Jaehwan Kim
Jeffrey King
Ryuji Kohno
Fumihide Kojima
Bruce Kraemer
Raymond Krasinski
Masahiro Kuroda
John Lampe
Zhou Lan
Khanh Le
Cheolhyo Lee
Hyungsoo Lee
Myung Lee
Daniel Lewis
Huan-Bang Li
Liang Li
Sang-Kyu Lim
Jeremy Link
Mike Lynch
Robert Mason
Tomokuni Matsumura
Jeff McCullough
Michael McGillan
Michael D. McInnis
Michael McLaughlin
Charles Millet
Siamak Mirnezami
Rishi Mohindra
Emmanuel Monnerie
Rajendra Moorti
Robert Moskowitz
Hamilton Moy
Peter Murray
Theodore Myers
Chiu Ngo
Paul Nikolich
Hirohito Nishiyama
David Olson
Okundu Omeni
Ryoji Ono
Laurent Ouvry
James Pace
Hyung-Il Park
Jahng Park
Seung-Hoon Park
Taejoon Park
Ranjeet Patro
Al Petrick
Dalibor Pokrajac
Daniel Popa
Stephen Pope
Clinton C. Powell
Richard Powell
Chang-Woo Pyo
Mohammad Rahman
Sridhar Rajagopal
Jayaram Ramasastry
Marc Reed
Ivan Reede
Richard Roberts
Craig Rodine
June Chul Roh
Benjamin A. Rolfe
Seung-Moon Ryu
Didier Sagan
Kentaro Sakamoto
Will San Filippo
H. Sanderford
Kamran Sayrafian
Timothy Schmidl
Michael Schmidt
Jean Schwoerer
Cristina Seibert
Neal Seidl
Kunal Shah
Steve Shearer
Stephen Shellhammer
Shusaku Shimada
Chang Sub Shin
Cheol Ho Shin
Michael Sim
Jonathan Simon
Jaeseung Son
Paul Stadnik
René Struik
Chin-Sean Sum
Hui-Hsia Sung
Gu Sungi
Kenichi Takizawa
Hirokazu Tanaka
Larry Taylor
Mark Thompson
James Tomcik
Ichihiko Toyoda
David Tracey
Khanh Tran
Jerry Upton
Jana van Greunen
Hartman van Wyk
Michel Veillette
Billy Verso
Bhupender Virk
Joachim Walewski
Junyi Wang
Quan Wang
Xiang Wang
Andy Ward
Scott Weikel
Nicholas West
Mark Wilbur
Ludwig Winkel
Eun Tae Won
Alan Chi Wai Wong
Tao Xing
Wen-Bin Yang
Yang Yang
Kazuyuki Yasukawa
Kamya Yazdandoost
Kaoru Yokoo
Mu Zhao
Bin Zhen

Major contributions in the revision process were received from the following individuals:

Philip E. Beecher
Vern Brethour
Monique B. Brown
Edgar H. Callaway
Kuor-Hsin Chang
Clint Chaplin
James P. K. Gilb
Patrick W. Kinney
Michael D. McInnis
Clinton C. Powell
Benjamin A. Rolfe
Timothy Schmidl
René Struik
Billy Verso

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Introduction

This introduction is not part of IEEE Std 802.15.4™-2015, IEEE Standard for Low-Rate Wireless Networks.

This is the third revision of IEEE Std 802.15.4. From the beginning, the goal of the IEEE P802.15 Working Group was to produce a standard that enabled very low-cost, low-power communications. The initial standard, IEEE Std 802.15.4-2003, defined two optional physical layers (PHYs), operating in different frequency bands with a simple and effective medium access control (MAC).

In 2006, the standard was revised and added two more PHY options. The MAC remained backward compatible, but the revision added MAC frames with an increased version number and a variety of MAC enhancements, including the following:

- Support for a shared time base with a data time stamping mechanism
- Support for beacon scheduling
- Synchronization of broadcast messages in beacon-enabled personal area networks (PANs)
- Improved MAC layer security

In 2011, the standard was revised to include the three amendments approved subsequent to the 2006 revision. This effort added four more PHY options along with the MAC capability to support ranging. Additionally, the organization of the standard was changed so that each PHY would have a separate clause, and the MAC clause was split into functional description, interface specification, and security specification.

The current revision of the standard was created to roll in the amendments approved subsequent to the 2011 revision: six PHY amendments and one MAC amendment, with corrigenda and clarifications. The features added by the amendments include the following:

- Enhanced frame formats maintaining backward compatibility
- Information Elements (IEs)
- Channel agility
- Extended superframe options
- Low-energy mechanisms
- An enhanced acknowledgment frame that can carry data and can be secured
- Prioritized channel access
- A variety of new PHY modulation, coding, and band options to support a wide variety of application needs including radio frequency identification (RFID), smart utility networks (SUNs), television white space (TVWS) operation, low-energy critical infrastructure monitoring (LECIM), and rail communications and control (RCC).

Much of the corrigenda and clarifications were collected from requests from individuals after the revision in 2011. Major corrigenda items included changes to the security text to correct errors and clarify the text, removal of the encrypt only mode, addition of security policy checks for the IEs, corrections regarding personal area network identifier (PAN ID) compression behavior to eliminate ambiguous specification, and changes to the IEs subclauses to include more information necessary for users of this standard.

The Project Authorization Request (PAR) for IEEE Std 802.15.4-2015 was first proposed in July 2013 and was approved in October 2013 by IEEE's New Standards Committee (NesCom). After three working group ballots and two sponsor ballots, the final standard was approved in December 2015, just over two years from start to finish.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Contents

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

IEEE Standard for Low-Rate Wireless Networks

IMPORTANT NOTICE: IEEE Standards documents are not intended to ensure safety, security, health, or environmental protection, or ensure against interference with or from other devices or networks. Implementers of IEEE Standards documents are responsible for determining and complying with all appropriate safety, security, environmental, health, and interference protection practices and all applicable laws and regulations.

This IEEE document is made available for use subject to important notices and legal disclaimers. These notices and disclaimers appear in all publications containing this document and may be found under the heading "Important Notice" or "Important Notices and Disclaimers Concerning IEEE Documents." They can also be obtained on request from IEEE or viewed at http://standards.ieee.org/IPR/disclaimers.html.

1. Overview

1.1 Scope

This standard defines the physical layer (PHY) and medium access control (MAC) sublayer specifications for low-data-rate wireless connectivity with fixed, portable, and moving devices with no battery or very limited battery consumption requirements. In addition, the standard provides modes that allow for precision ranging. PHYs are defined for devices operating various license-free bands in a variety of geographic regions.

1.2 Purpose

The standard provides for ultra low complexity, ultra low cost, ultra low power consumption, and low data rate wireless connectivity among inexpensive devices. In addition, one of the alternate PHYs provides precision ranging capability that is accurate to one meter. Multiple PHYs are defined to support a variety of frequency bands.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

2. Normative references

The following referenced documents are indispensable for the application of this document (i.e., they must be understood and used, so each referenced document is cited in text and its relationship to this document is explained). For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments or corrigenda) applies.

ANSI X3.66-1979, Advanced Data Communication Control Procedures.[1]

Code of Federal Regulations, Title 47: Telecommunication, Part 90—Private Land Mobile Radio Services, Subpart S—Regulations Governing Licensing and Use of Frequencies in the 806–824, 851–869, 896–901, and 935–940 MHz Bands (47 CFR, Part 90, Subpart S).[2]

Code of Federal Regulations, Title 47: Telecommunication, Part 90—Private Land Mobile Radio Services, Subpart Y—Regulations Governing Licensing and Use of Frequencies in the 4940–4990 MHz Band (47 CFR, Part 90, Subpart Y).

FIPS Pub 197, Advanced Encryption Standard (AES).[3]

IEEE Std 802®-2014, IEEE Standards for Local and Metropolitan Area Networks: Overview and Architecture.[4, 5]

IETF RFC 6225, Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol Options for Coordinate-Based Location Configuration Information, Internet Engineering Task Force.[6]

[1]ANSI publications are available from the American National Standards Institute (http://www.ansi.org/)
[2]CFR publications are available from the U.S. Government Printing Office (http://www.gpo.gov/).
[3]FIPS publications are available from the National Technical Information Service (NTIS) (http://www.ntis.org/).
[4]IEEE publications are available from The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (http://standards.ieee.org/).
[5]The IEEE standards or products referred to in this clause are trademarks of The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.
[6]IETF RFCs are available from the Internet Engineering Task Force (http://www.ietf.org/).

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

3. Definitions, acronyms, and abbreviations

3.1 Definitions

For the purposes of this document, the following terms and definitions apply. The *IEEE Standards Dictionary* should be consulted for terms not defined in this clause.[7]

association: The service used to establish membership for a device in a network.

authentication tag: Information that allows the verification of authenticity of a message.

channel hopping: Periodically switching the channel using a sequence known to both sending and receiving devices where the entire frame is sent on a single channel.

channel offset: A number used in the channel calculation of a slotted channel hopping system to allow for different channels to be used in the same slot.

chirp: Linear frequency sweep (frequency may either increase or decrease).

dependent device: A device that operates without direct Internet access to the television white space (TVWS) database and depends on another device for channel availability information.

encryption: The transformation of a message into a new representation so that privileged information is required to recover the original representation.

fragment: An individual subset of a MAC protocol data unit.

frame: The format of aggregated bits from a medium access control sublayer entity that are transmitted together in time.

group key: A key that is known only to a set of devices.

independent device: A device that has direct access to the television white space (TVWS) database via the Internet.

key: Privileged information that may be used, for example, to protect information from disclosure to, and/or undetectable modification by, parties that do not have access to this privileged information.

keying material: The combination of a key and associated security information (e.g., a nonce value).

link key: A secret key that is shared between precisely two devices.

mobile device: A device whose location in the network may change during use.

nonce: A nonrepeating value, such as an increasing counter, a sufficiently long random string, or a time stamp.

packet: The formatted, aggregated bits that are transmitted together in time across the physical medium.

payload data: The contents of a data message that is being transmitted.

[7] *IEEE Standards Dictionary* subscription is available at http://www.ieee.org/portal/innovate/products/standard/standards_dictionary.html.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

radio frequency identification (RFID): The use of electromagnetic or inductive coupling in the radio frequency (RF) portion of the spectrum to communicate to or from a tag through a variety of modulation and encoding schemes to uniquely read the identity of an RF tag.

slotframe: A collection of timeslots repeating in time, analogous to a superframe in that it defines periods of communication opportunities.

smart utility network (SUN): a principally outdoor, low data rate wireless network that supports two-way communications among sensing, measurement, and control devices in the smart grid.

symmetric key: A secret key that is shared between two or more parties that may be used for encryption/decryption or integrity protection/integrity verification, depending on its intended use.

timeslot: A defined period of time during which a frame and an acknowledgment may be exchanged between devices.

transaction: The exchange of related, consecutive frames between two peer medium access control (MAC) entities, required for a successful transmission of a MAC command frame or Data frame.

3.2 Acronyms and abbreviations

Ack	acknowledgment
AES	advanced encryption standard
AIFS	acknowledgment interframe spacing
AR	acknowledgment request
ASK	amplitude shift keying
ASN	absolute slot number
ATI	allowed transmission interval
BCH	Bose Chaudhuri Hocquenghem
BDE	bit differential encoding
BLE	battery life extension
BOP	beacon only period
BPM	burst position modulation
BPSK	binary phase-shift keying
BSN	beacon sequence number
CAP	contention access period
CBC-MAC	cipher block chaining message authentication code
CCA	clear channel assessment
CCM	counter mode encryption and cipher block chaining message authentication code
CCM*	extension of counter mode encryption and cipher block chaining message authentication code
CFP	contention-free period
CID	company identifier
CP	cyclic prefix
CoU	chirp on ultra-wide band
CRC	cyclic redundancy check
CS	continuous spectrum
CSK	chirp-shift keying
CSL	coordinated sampled listing

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

CSM	common signaling mode
CSMA-CA	carrier sense multiple access with collision avoidance
CSS	chirp spread spectrum
DA	device announcement
DAA	detect and avoid
DBS	dedicated beacon slot
DEMUX	de-multiplexer
DFT	discrete Fourier transform
DPS	dynamic preamble selection
DPSK	differential phase-shift keying
DQCSK	differential quadrature chirp-shift keying
DQPSK	differential quadrature phase-shift keying
DSME	deterministic and synchronous multi-channel extension
DSN	data sequence number
DSSS	direct sequence spread spectrum
EBSN	enhanced beacon sequence number
ED	energy detection (also in 6.2.8, extended duration)
EIRP	effective isotropic radiated power
Enh-Ack	enhanced acknowledgment
ESDU	encapsulated service data unit
EUI-64	64-bit extended unique identifier
EVM	error-vector magnitude
FCC	Federal Communications Commission
FCS	frame check sequence
FEC	forward error correction
FFD	full-function device
FICS	fragment integrity check sequence
FoM	figure of merit
Frak	fragment acknowledgment
FSCD	fragment sequence context description
FSK	frequency shift keying
GDB	geolocation database
GFSK	Gaussian frequency-shift keying
GMSK	Gaussian-filtered minimum shift keying
GTS	guaranteed time slot
HCS	header check sequence
HRP	high rate pulse repetition frequency
ID	identifier
IDFT	inverse discrete Fourier transform
IE	information element
IFS	interframe space or spacing
Imm-Ack	immediate acknowledgment
ISR	interference-to-signal ratio
I-RIT	implicit receiver initiated transmission
LBT	listen before talk
LCP	linear combination of pulses

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

LE	low energy
LECIM	low-energy, critical infrastructure monitoring
LEIP	location enhancing information postamble
LFSR	linear feedback shift register
LIFS	long interframe spacing
LMR	land mobile radio
LRP	low rate pulse repetition frequency
LQI	link quality indication
LR-WPAN	low-rate wireless personal area network
LSB	least significant bit
LTF	long training field
MAC	medium access control
MBAN	medical body area network
MCPS	MAC common part sublayer
MCPS-SAP	MAC common part sublayer service access point
MCS	modulation and coding scheme
MD	multi-superframe duration
MDSSS	multiplexed direct sequence spread spectrum
MFR	MAC footer
MHR	MAC header
MIC	message integrity code
MLME	MAC sublayer management entity
MLME-SAP	MAC sublayer management entity service access point
MPM	multi-PHY management
MSB	most significant bit
MSK	minimum shift keying
MPDU	MAC protocol data unit
MPSK	m-ary phase shift keying
MSDU	MAC service data unit
NRNSC	nonrecursive and nonsystematic code
OOK	on-off keying
O-QPSK	offset quadrature phase-shift keying
OUI	organizationally unique identifier
OVSF	orthongonal variable spreading factor
PAN	personal area network
PC	personal computer
PCA	priority channel access
PD	physical layer data
PD-SAP	physical layer data service access point
PER	packet error rate
P-FSK	position-based frequency shift keying
PHR	PHY header
PHY	physical layer
PIB	personal area network information base
PICS	protocol implementation conformance statement
PLME	physical layer management entity

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

PLME-SAP	physical layer management entity service access point
PN	pseudo-random noise
PPDU	PHY protocol data unit
PPM	pulse position modulation
PRBS	pseudo-random binary sequence
PRF	pulse repetition frequency
PSD	power spectral density
PSDU	PHY service data unit
PSSS	parallel sequence spread spectrum
QAM	quardrature amplitude modulation
QPSK	quadrature phase-shift keying
RCC	rail communications and control
RCCN	rail communications and control network
RDEV	ranging-capable device
RF	radio frequency
RFD	reduced-function device
RFD-RX	reduced function device—receive only
RFD-TX	reduced function device—transmit only
RFID	radio frequency identification
RFRAME	ranging frame
RIT	receiver initiated transmission
RIV	remainder initialization value
RMARKER	ranging marker
RSC	recursive and systematice code
RSSI	receive signal strength indicator
RX	receive or receiver
SAB	slot allocation bitmap
SD	superframe duration
SF	spreading factor
SFD	start-of-frame delimiter
SHR	synchronization header
SIFS	short interframe spacing
SNR	signal-to-noise ratio
SPC	super PAN coordinator
STF	short training field
SUN	smart utility network
TID	transaction identifier
TMCTP	TVWS multichannel cluster tree PAN
TPC	turbo product code
TRLE	time-slot relaying based link extension
TSCH	timeslotted channel hopping
TVWS	television white space
TX	transmit or transmitter
UWB	ultra-wide band
WPAN	wireless personal area network

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

4. Format conventions

4.1 General

Throughout this standard, unless otherwise stated, data structures exposed in interfaces are represented using the conventions and formats defined in this clause.

NOTE—It is important to note that interfaces are depicted in this standard as bit serial by convention but may be implemented in other forms, e.g., 4- or 8-bit parallel.[8]

Within the PHY, data structures are passed to the reference modulator input in bit-serial convention. PHY specific coding may change the bit-order and encode multiple information bits into symbols. Hence the over-the-air interface may express the data structure content in a manner different than the conventions defined here.

After all applicable expansion, the size of a MAC frame shall be less than the maximum PSDU size supported by the PHY in use.

4.2 Fields

The general format of a data structure is shown in Figure 4-1. Each field is represented by a column in the figure giving the size of the field and the name and/or type of the datum encoded in the field. The convention of a data structure is recursive in that a field may contain a data structure which is in turn composed of fields.

Octets: 2	**Bits: 0–5**	**6–7**	**…**
Field Name/Type (Number datum)	Field Name/Type (Bit string datum)	Field Name/Type (Bit string datum)	…

Figure 4-1—General data structure format

The form <Octets: *n*> means the field is *n* octets long. The form <Bits: *n*> or <Bits: *m*-*n*> means bit number *n* or bits *m* to *n* of the data structure. The terms octet and bit may also be written as octets or bits. In a figure, if a field length appears without either Octets or Bits, then the preceding units apply.

The form <Octets: *n*/*m*/*l*> means the field can be *n*, *m* or *l* octets long.

Fields are concatenated into larger data structures, e.g., Figure 4-1 represents a data structure with 3 fields of length 2 octets, 6 bits and 2 bits for a total size of 3 octets.

Order of representation is strict with the leftmost field as shown in any figure occurring before the next field to its right. The second field from the left occurs before the third field and so on.

Significance, as expressed in the terms LSB and MSB, only applies to numbers as defined in 4.3. All other fields are treated as strings.

The convention of 'processing a data structure' or 'transmitting a data structure' mean treatment of the content of the data structure in the order defined in the following subclauses.

[8]Notes in text, tables, and figures are given for information only and do not contain requirements needed to implement the standard.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

4.3 Numbers

Numbers are represented in decimal (nnn), binary (0bnnn), or hexadecimal (0xnnn) notation with the number of digits indicated. For example, 0b001 is a 3 digit binary number of value 1 and 0x001 is a 3 digit hexadecimal number of value 1. Numbers encoded in fields may be signed or unsigned integers. Other formats (e.g., a field containing a floating point number) are stated in the field definition where applicable.

When represented in fields, numbers are expressed with LSB leftmost and MSB rightmost as shown in Figure 4-2 for an *n*-bit unsigned integer. (Note that this is the inverse of the number representations 0bnnn and 0xnnn and of common number representations used in mathematical notations.) For example, the number 0x47 would be represented in an 8-bit field as 1110 0010.

Bit:0	**…**	**7**	**Bits 8–(*n*–2)**	**n-1**
LSB	…	–	Subsequent octets	MSB

Figure 4-2—General number field format

Numbers of size greater than 1 octet occur with the octet containing the least significant bits first (leftmost) followed by octets containing bits of increasing significance to the right.

Unless otherwise stated in the definition of a field, a number in a field shall be formatted as an unsigned integer.

4.4 Strings

A string of length k bits is represented as a bit sequence numbered from 0 to k–1. Bit 0 occurs first and is represented as the leftmost bit of a string field. Bit 1 occurs to the right of bit 0 and so on until bit (k–1). This is illustrated in Figure 4-3.

Bits:0	**…**	**7**	**Bits 8–(k–1)**
String bit 0	…	String bit 7	String bits 8 to k – 1

Figure 4-3—General string field format

A string of length greater than 1 octet is represented by the octet containing the lowest numbered bits first and leftmost, followed by octets containing increasing bit numbers to the right.

4.5 Reserved fields and values

Each bit within any Reserved field shall be set to zero on transmission and shall be ignored on reception.

No decision should be made on the contents of any Reserved field or field containing a reserved value.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

5. General description

5.1 Introduction

A low-rate wireless personal area network (LR-WPAN) is a simple, low-cost communication network that allows wireless connectivity in applications with limited power and relaxed throughput requirements. The main objectives of an LR-WPAN are ease of installation, reliable data transfer, extremely low cost, and a reasonable battery life, while maintaining a simple and flexible protocol.

This standard defines multiple PHYs operating in a variety of frequency bands, as described in 10.1.1.

Two different device types can participate in an IEEE 802.15.4 network: a full-function device (FFD) and a reduced-function device (RFD). An FFD is a device that is capable of serving as a personal area network (PAN) coordinator or a coordinator, as defined in 6.1. An RFD is a device that is not capable of serving as either a PAN coordinator or a coordinator. An RFD is intended for applications that are extremely simple, such as a light switch or a passive infrared sensor; it does not have the need to send large amounts of data and only associates with a single FFD at a time. Consequently, the RFD can be implemented using minimal resources and memory capacity.

Supplemental information for different industrial domains is described in “Applications of IEEE Std 802.15.4” [B3].[9]

5.2 Special application spaces

Although this standard is intended address many diverse application spaces, some application spaces have unique requirements which required specific elements added to this standard. These elements are described in this subclause.

5.2.1 Smart utility network (SUN)

SUNs enable multiple applications to operate over shared network resources, providing monitoring and control of a utility system. SUN devices are designed to operate in very large-scale, low-power wireless applications and often require using the maximum transmit power available under applicable regulations, in order to provide long-range, point-to-point connections. Frequently, SUNs are required to cover geographically widespread areas containing a large number of outdoor devices. In these cases, SUN devices are able to employ mesh or peer-to-peer multihop techniques to communicate with an access point.

5.2.2 Rail communications and control (RCC)

RCC refers to a wireless information exchange and sensor or control communications deployed in areas such as the following:

— A wireless link between trains, locomotives, or other mobile rolling stock to fixed trackside or network infrastructure
— A link between connected fixed, remote trackside infrastructure and fixed network infrastructure
— A link between vehicles in the same train or between two or more trains

RCC devices are intended to support mobile rail vehicle communications at high speeds with data rates that enable connections at distances of over 50 km. The RCC PHYs are designed to take advantage of relatively small amounts of spectrum where spectrum is costly or scarce.

[9]The numbers in brackets correspond to the numbers of the bibliography in Annex A.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

5.2.3 Television white space (TVWS)

TVWS operation has the requirement to determine which TVWS frequency allocations are available for use at a given time and geographic location. TVWS devices need to have have access to TVWS channel availability information, for example, via a central database that is accessed over the Internet. A TVWS device that has no connection to the Internet must depend upon another TVWS device that has access to the TVWS database via the Internet to acquire channel availability information.

5.2.4 Radio frequency identification (RFID)

Active RFID devices are used to identify and often locate people or objects in industrial or commercial environments. Typical applications include asset management, inventory management, process control and automation, safety and accountability.

In its simplest form an active RFID system comprises a number of transmit-only tags that periodically transmit a packet containing a unique ID and a small amount of data. The packet is received by one or more readers that may simply register the tag as present, may employ further processing to determine the location of the tag, or forward data to an application server. More complex active RFID systems might employ two-way communications with the tag for control, communication, and coordination.

5.2.5 Low-energy, critical infrastructure monitoring (LECIM)

The LECIM portions of this standard are designed to implement a minimal network infrastructure that enables the collection of scheduled and event data from a large number of non-mains powered end points that are widely dispersed, or are in challenging propagation environments. To facilitate low energy operation necessary for multi-year battery life, MAC protocols that minimize network maintenance traffic and device wake durations have been defined.

5.2.6 Medical body area network (MBAN) services

Some countries have allocated spectrum for MBAN services on a secondary basis such that MBAN devices are required to protect all primary users and accept possible interference from those users. MBAN devices operating within this allocated spectrum conform to a set of rules which restrict use of the band to only medical, non-voice use under direction of a healthcare practitioner, among other requirements. When a primary user is making use of a portion of the band, MBAN devices vacate that portion of the band. Use of the band by the primary user is, in general, scheduled well in advance allowing MBAN users to share the band in an orderly manner.

5.3 Components of the IEEE 802.15.4 WPAN

A system conforming to this standard consists of several components. The most basic is the device. A device has a single radio interface that implements an IEEE Std 802.15.4 MAC and PHY. Two or more devices communicating on the same physical channel constitute a wireless personal area network (WPAN). A WPAN includes at least one FFD, operating as the PAN coordinator.

5.4 Multi-PHY management (MPM) of the SUN WPAN

Multiple, different SUN PHYs can operate in the same location and within the same frequency band. In order to mitigate interference, an MPM scheme is specified for SUNs to facilitate inter-PHY coexistence. For this purpose, the MPM scheme facilitates interoperability and negotiation among potential coordinators with different PHYs by permitting a potential coordinator to detect an operating network during its discovery phase using the common signaling mode (CSM) appropriate to the band being used. The MPM

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

procedure can be used in conjunction with the clear channel assessment (CCA) mechanism to provide coexistence.

5.5 Network topologies

Depending on the application requirements, an IEEE 802.15.4 LR-WPAN operates in either of two topologies: the star topology or the peer-to-peer topology. Both are shown in Figure 5-1. In the star topology, the communication is established between devices and a single central controller, called the PAN coordinator. A device typically has some associated application and is either the initiation point or the termination point for network communications. The PAN coordinator is the primary controller of the PAN. All devices operating on a network of either topology have unique addresses, referred to as extended addresses. In addition, a device can be assigned a short address during the association process. A device will use either the extended address or the short address for communication within the PAN. The transmission of the extended and short address fields is optional for RFD-TX devices. The PAN coordinator will often be mains powered, while the devices will likely be battery powered. Applications that benefit from a star topology include home automation, personal computer (PC) peripherals, games, and personal health care.

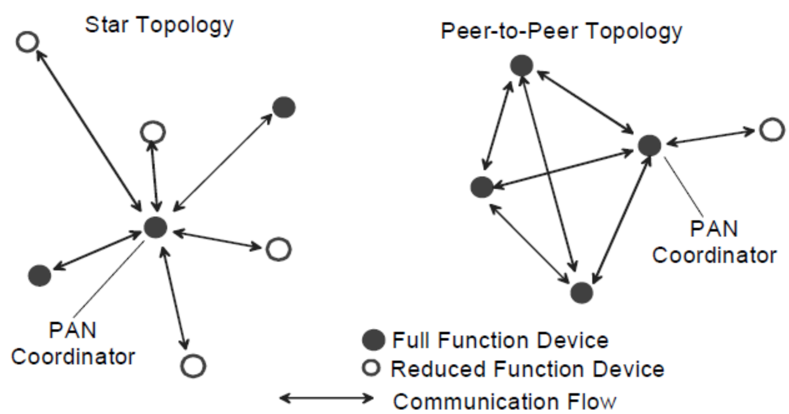


Figure 5-1—Star and peer-to-peer topology examples

The peer-to-peer topology also has a PAN coordinator; however, it differs from the star topology in that any device is able to communicate with any other device as long as they are in range of one another. Peer-to-peer topology allows more complex network formations to be implemented, such as mesh networking topology. Applications such as industrial control and monitoring, wireless sensor networks, asset and inventory tracking, intelligent agriculture, and security would benefit from such a network topology. A peer-to-peer network allows multiple hops to route messages from any device to any other device on the network. Such functions can be added at the higher layer, but they are not part of this standard.

Each independent PAN selects a unique identifier. This PAN identifier (ID) allows communication between devices within a network using short addresses and enables transmissions between devices across independent networks. The mechanism by which identifiers are chosen is outside the scope of this standard.

The network formation is performed by the higher layer, which is not part of this standard.

5.5.1 Star network formation

The basic structure of a star network is illustrated in Figure 5-1. After an FFD is activated, it can establish its own network and become the PAN coordinator. All star networks operate independently from all other star networks currently in operation. This is achieved by choosing a PAN ID that is not currently used by any other network within the radio communications range. Once the PAN ID is chosen, the PAN coordinator

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

allows other devices, potentially both FFDs and RFDs, to join its network. The higher layer can use the procedures described in 6.3 and 6.4 to form a star network. An RFD-RX can also serve as a PAN coordinator termination point for RFD-TXs.

Timeslotted channel hopping (TSCH) PANs are topology independent and can be used in star topologies as well as partial or full mesh topologies.

LECIM networks primarily operate in a star topology. LECIM networks are typically asymmetric in energy supply and capability, having a PAN coordinator that is mains powered (or otherwise provided a substantial power source) and energy and/or cost constrained devices. The PAN coordinator typically monitors the channel more often than a device. A device sleeps unless it has a Data frame to send.

5.5.2 Peer-to-peer network formation

In a peer-to-peer topology, each device is capable of communicating with any other device within its radio communications range. One device is nominated as the PAN coordinator, for instance, by virtue of being the first device to communicate on the channel. Further network structures are constructed out of the peer-to-peer topology, and it is possible to impose topological restrictions on the formation of the network.

An example of the use of the peer-to-peer communications topology is the cluster tree. The cluster tree network is a special case of a peer-to-peer network in which most devices are FFDs. An RFD connects to a cluster tree network as a leaf device at the end of a branch because RFDs do not allow other devices to associate. Any FFD is able to act as a coordinator and provide synchronization services to other devices or other coordinators. Only one of these coordinators is the overall PAN coordinator, potentially because it has greater computational resources than any other device in the PAN. The PAN coordinator forms the first cluster by choosing an unused PAN ID and broadcasting beacon frames to neighboring devices. A contention resolution mechanism is required if two or more FFDs simultaneously attempt to establish themselves as PAN coordinators; however, such a mechanism is outside the scope of this standard. A candidate device receiving a beacon frame is able to request to join the network at the PAN coordinator. If the PAN coordinator permits the device to join, it adds the new device as a child device in its neighbor list. Then the newly joined device adds the PAN coordinator as its parent in its neighbor list and begins transmitting periodic beacons; other candidate devices are able to then join the network at that device. If the original candidate device is not able to join the network at the PAN coordinator, it will search for another parent device. The detailed procedures describing how a PAN is started and how devices join a PAN are found in 6.3 and 6.4.

The simplest form of a cluster tree network is a single cluster network, but larger networks are possible by forming a mesh of multiple neighboring clusters. Once predetermined application or network requirements are met, the first PAN coordinator instructs a device to become the PAN coordinator of a new cluster adjacent to the first one. Other devices gradually connect and form a multicluster network structure, such as the one seen in Figure 5-2. The lines in Figure 5-2 represent the parent-child relationships of the devices and not the communication flow. The advantage of a multicluster structure is increased coverage area, while the disadvantage is an increase in message latency.

A TMCTP is a form of cluster tree network where the SPC is the overall PAN coordinator providing synchronization services to other PAN coordinators in the cluster. The SPC also has access to the geolocation database (GDB) server to provide TVWS channel availability information to other PAN coordinators. An example is shown in Figure 5-3. In the TMCTP, collisions between clusters can be reduced because each cluster uses its own channel; in addition, the coverage area is increased through the TMCTP parent-child structure. Each TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator, including the SPC, communicates with its TMCTP-child PAN coordinators during the CAP or CFP of the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator superframe and receives beacon frames of its TMCTP-child PAN coordinators on a dedicated channel during the dedicated beacon slots (DBS) assigned to them in the BOP, as shown with an asterisk (*) in Figure 5-3.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

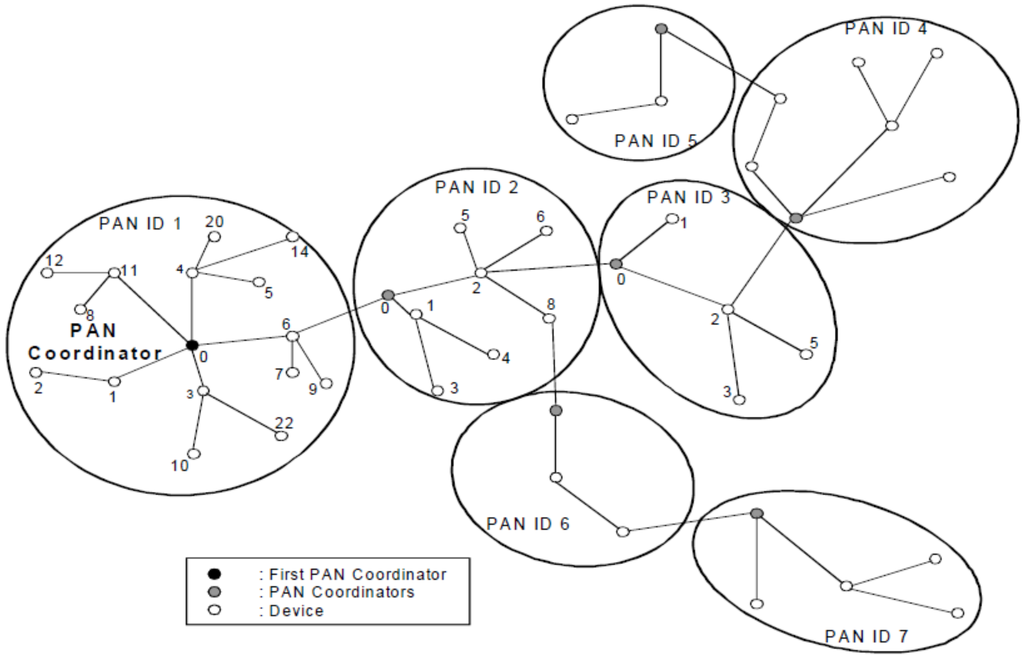


Figure 5-2—Cluster tree network

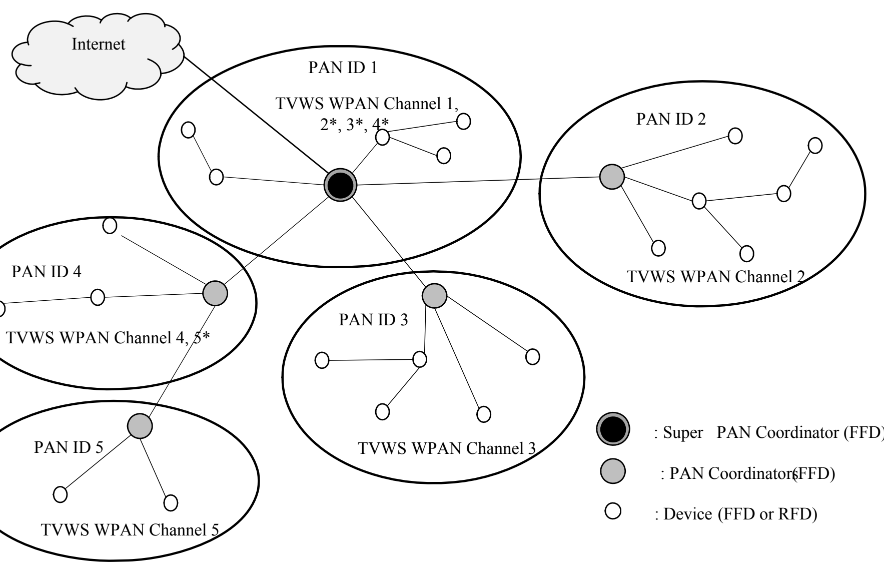


Figure 5-3—Example of TVWS multichannel cluster tree PAN

5.6 Architecture

The IEEE 802.15.4 architecture is defined in terms of a number of blocks in order to simplify the standard. These blocks are called layers. Each layer is responsible for one part of the standard and offers services to the higher layers.

The interfaces between the layers serve to define the logical links that are described in this standard.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

An LR-WPAN device comprises at least one PHY, which contains the radio frequency (RF) transceiver along with its low-level control mechanism, and a MAC sublayer that provides access to the physical channel for all types of transfer. Figure 5-4 shows these blocks in a graphical representation.

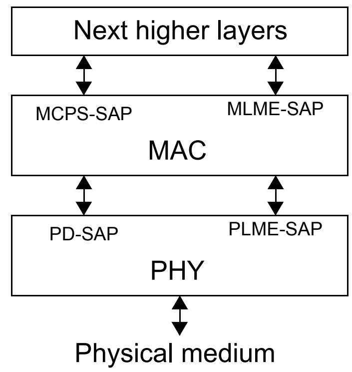


Figure 5-4—LR-WPAN device architecture

The next higher layers, shown in Figure 5-4, consist of a network layer, which provides network configuration, manipulation, and message routing, and an application layer, which provides the intended function of the device. The definition of these layers is outside the scope of this standard.

5.6.1 PHY

The features of the PHY are activation and deactivation of the radio transceiver, energy detection (ED), link quality indication (LQI), channel selection, CCA, ranging and transmitting as well as receiving packets across the physical medium. The HRP UWB PHY also has the feature of precision ranging.

Coexistence with other wireless standards has been analyzed for the PHYs defined in this standard. These analyses can be found in the following documents:

- For the O-QPSK PHY, BPSK PHY, ASK PHY, CSSS PHY, HRP UWB PHY, and GFSK PHY: “Coexistence analysis of IEEE Std 802.15.4 with other IEEE standards and proposed standards” [B5].
- For the MSK PHY and LRP UWB PHY: “TG4f Coexistence Assurance Document” [B17].
- For TVWS-FSK PHY, TVWS-OFDM PHY, and TVWS-NB-OFDM PHY: Chang and Seibert [B4].

5.6.2 MAC sublayer

The MAC sublayer provides two services: the MAC data service and the MAC management service interfacing to the MAC sublayer management entity (MLME) service access point (SAP) (known as MLME-SAP). The MAC data service enables the transmission and reception of MAC protocol data units (MPDUs) across the PHY data service.

The features of the MAC sublayer are beacon management, channel access, GTS management, frame validation, acknowledged frame delivery, association, and disassociation. In addition, the MAC sublayer provides hooks for implementing application-appropriate security mechanisms.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

5.7 Functional overview

5.7.1 Superframe structure

5.7.1.1 Beacon superframe

The format of the superframe is defined by the coordinator. The superframe is bounded by beacons (either Beacon frames or Enhanced Beacon Frames) sent by the coordinator, as illustrated in Figure 5-5a). Optionally, the superframe can have an active and an inactive portion, as illustrated in Figure 5-5b). During the inactive portion, the coordinator is able to enter a low-power mode. The beacon frame transmission starts at the beginning of the first slot of each superframe. If a coordinator does not wish to use a superframe structure, it will turn off the beacon transmissions. The beacons are used to synchronize the attached devices, to identify the PAN, and to describe the structure of the superframes.

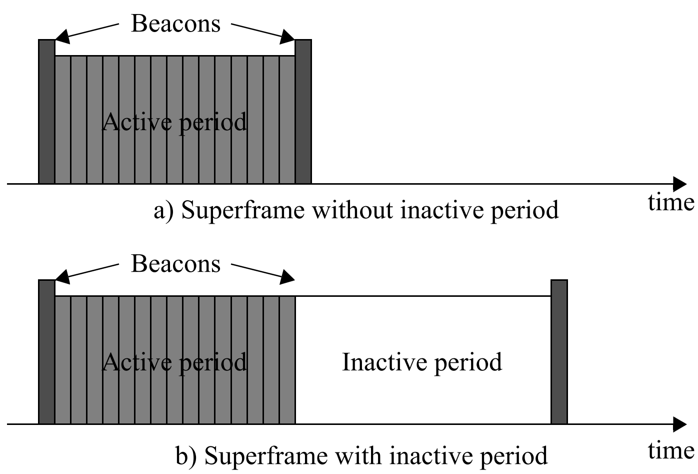


Figure 5-5—Superframe structure

Any device wishing to communicate during the contention access period (CAP) between two beacons competes with other devices using a slotted CSMA-CA or ALOHA mechanism, as appropriate. For low-latency applications or applications requiring specific data bandwidth, the PAN coordinator dedicates portions of the active superframe to that application. These portions are called guaranteed time slots (GTSs). The GTSs form the contention-free period (CFP), which always appears at the end of the active superframe starting at a slot boundary immediately following the CAP, as shown in Figure 5-6. The PAN coordinator allocates up to seven of these GTSs, and a GTS is allowed to occupy more than one slot period. However, a sufficient portion of the CAP remains for contention-based access of other networked devices or new devices wishing to join the network. All contention-based transactions are completed before the CFP begins. Also each device transmitting in a GTS ensures that its transaction is complete before the time of the next GTS or the end of the CFP. More information on the superframe structure can be found in 6.2.1.

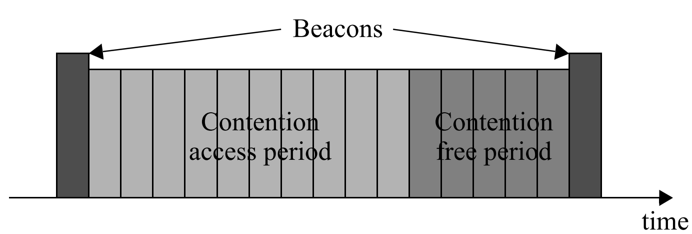


Figure 5-6—Structure of the active periods with GTSs

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

5.7.1.2 DSME multi-superframe structure

PANs with deterministic and synchronous multi-channel extension (DSME) enabled use the DSME multi-superframe structure. The format of the DSME multi-superframe structure is defined by coordinators that periodically transmit an Enhanced Beacon frame with the DSME PAN descriptor IE. A multi-superframe is a cycle of repeated superframes, each of which consists of an Enhanced Beacon frame, a CAP and a CFP. An example of a multi-superframe structure is shown in Figure 5-7.

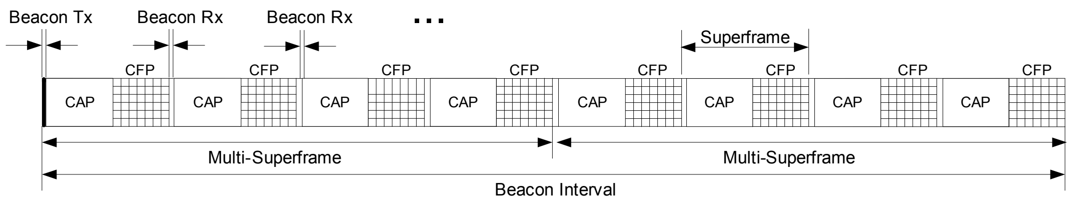


Figure 5-7—General DSME Multi-superframe Structure

The single common channel, the logical channel number used in the successful association, is used to transmit the enhanced beacon frames and the frames transmitted during the CAP. The channel diversity method, either channel adaptation or channel hopping as selected by *macChannelDiversityMode*, is applied to transmit Data frames and acknowledge frames during the CFP. Beacons are scheduled as defined in 6.11.6. Frames sent during the CFP are transmitted using the allocated channel for DSME GTS. A DSME GTS can be allocated on any of the available channels in the current ChannelPage.

Details on the DSME multi-superframes structure are described in 6.11.2.

5.7.1.3 Slotframes

In a TSCH PAN, the concept of the superframe is replaced with a slotframe. The slotframe also contains defined periods of communications between peers that are either CSMA-CA or guaranteed, but the slotframe automatically repeats based on the participating devices' shared notion of time. Unlike the superframe, slotframes and a device's assigned timeslot(s) within the slotframe can be initially communicated by beacon, but are typically configured by a higher layer as the device joins the network. Because all devices share common time and channel information, devices hop over the entire channel space to minimize the negative effects of multipath fading and interference, and do so in a slotted way to avoid collisions, minimizing the need for retransmissions. Both of these features are desirable for operation in a harsh industrial environment.

5.7.1.4 TMCTP superframe

TVWS allows the optional use of a superframe structure in a TMCTP that is extended by the addition of a BOP to the active portion of the superframe. The format of the TMCTP superframe is defined by the SPC which sends an enhanced beacon containing a TMCTP Specification IE, as in 7.4.4.28. The TMCTP superframe is bounded by beacons sent by the SPC. The active portion of the TMCTP superframe is composed of a beacon, a CAP, a CFP, and a BOP. An example of a TMCTP superframe including a BOP is illustrated in Figure 5-8. The BOP is composed of one or more DBSs. A DBS is used to communicate beacons between a TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator and one of its TMCTP-child PAN coordinator(s). More information on the TMCTP superframe structure can be found in 6.2.8.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

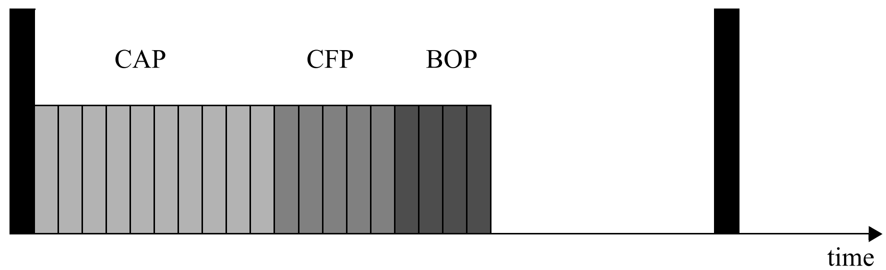


Figure 5-8—TMCTP superframe extension

5.7.2 Data transfer model

5.7.2.1 Types of data transfer models

The data transfer models used in this standard are as follows:

- Transfer to a coordinator in which a device transmits the data
- Transfer from a coordinator in which the device receives the data
- Transfer between two peer devices

If a frame that is correctly received requests an acknowledgment, the device that received the frame will respond with one of the acknowledgment (Ack) frames: immediate acknowledgment (Imm-Ack), enhanced acknowledgment (Enh-Ack) or fragment acknowledgment (Frak) depending on the state of the network and the version number of the frame that was received.

5.7.2.2 Data transfer to a coordinator

When a device wishes to transfer data to a coordinator in a beacon-enabled PAN, it first listens for the beacon. When the beacon is found, the device synchronizes to the superframe structure. At the appropriate time, the device transmits its Data frame to the coordinator.

When a device wishes to transfer data in a nonbeacon-enabled PAN, it transmits its Data frame to the coordinator.

5.7.2.3 Data transfer from a coordinator

When the coordinator wishes to transfer data to a device in a beacon-enabled PAN, it indicates in the beacon that the data message is pending. The device periodically listens to the beacon and, if a message is pending, transmits a Data Request command. The pending Data frame is then sent by the coordinator. Upon successful completion of the data transaction, the message is removed from the list of pending messages in the beacon.

When a coordinator wishes to transfer data to a device in a nonbeacon-enabled PAN, it stores the data for the appropriate device to make contact and request the data. A device requests data by transmitting a Data Request command to its coordinator. If a Data frame is pending, the coordinator transmits the Data frame. If a Data frame is not pending, the coordinator indicates this fact either in the Ack frame following the Data Request command, if an acknowledgment was requested, or in a Data frame with a zero-length payload, as defined in 6.7.3.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

5.7.2.4 Peer-to-peer data transfers

For peer-to-peer transfers, a device will either receive constantly or synchronize with each the other device. In the former case, the device attempts to transmit the data when it gains access to the channel. In the latter case, other measures need to be taken in order to achieve synchronization. Such measures are beyond the scope of this standard.

5.7.3 Frame structure

The frame structures have been designed to keep the complexity to a minimum while at the same time making them sufficiently robust for transmission on a noisy channel.

The MAC frames are passed to the PHY as the PHY service data unit (PSDU), which becomes the PHY payload. The PPDU is illustrated in Figure 5-9.

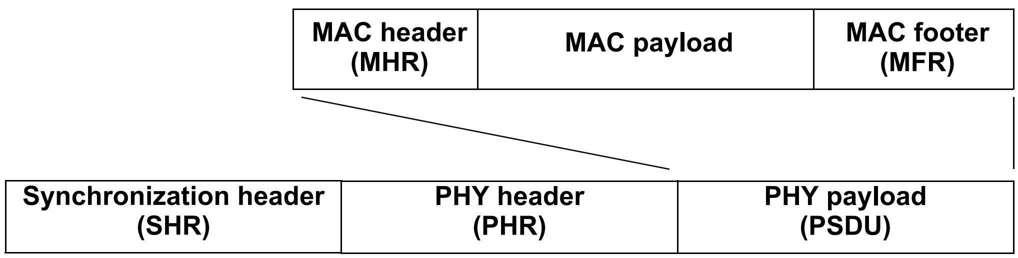


Figure 5-9—Schematic view of the PPDU

The format of the SHR and PHR is defined for each of the PHYs in their respective clause.

The MHR and MFR are defined in 7.2.

This standard makes use of IEs to transfer formatted data between layers and between devices. IEs consist of an identification, a length, and the IE content. Devices can accept or discard a particular element if the ID is known, and skip over unknown ID elements.

5.7.4 Access methods

The access methods defined in this standard are as follows:

- Unslotted CSMA-CA used in nonbeacon-enabled PANs, as described in 6.2.5.1
- Slotted CSMA-CA used in beacon-enabled PANs, as described in 6.2.5.1
- TSCH CCA used in non-shared slots in a TSCH PAN, as described in 6.2.5.2
- TSCH CSMA-CA used for shared slots in a TSCH PAN, as described in 6.2.5.3
- CSMA-CA with PCA in for critical events, as described in 6.2.5.4
- LECIM ALOHA with PCA, as defined in 6.2.5.5

5.7.4.1 Frame acknowledgment

A successful reception and validation of a frame is optionally confirmed with an acknowledgment, as described in 6.7.4.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The receiving device can insert additional content in an Enh-Ack frame encapsulated as IEs. If the originator does not understand the IE content of the Enh-Ack frame, it is ignored, but the transmission is considered successful.

If the originator does not receive an acknowledgment after some period, it assumes that the transmission was unsuccessful and retries the frame transmission. If an acknowledgment is still not received after several retries, the originator can choose either to terminate the transaction or to try again. When the acknowledgment is not required, the originator assumes the transmission was successful.

5.7.4.2 Frak

The Frak is used during the fragment sequence transfer to determine which fragments have been received successfully and which fragments need to be retransmitted. A Frak includes the status of one or more fragments. The format of the Frak is given in 23.3.6.2.

5.7.4.3 Data verification

A cyclic redundancy check (CRC) is used to detect errors in every PSDU, as defined in 7.2.10.

To accommodate individual fragment acknowledgments, a fragment integrity check sequence (FICS) is included with each fragment. The recipient uses the FICS and fragment number to determine which fragments of the sequence have been received correctly and which are missing. The FICS is described in 23.3.3.

5.7.5 Power consumption considerations

In many applications that use this standard, devices will be battery powered, and battery replacement or recharging in relatively short intervals is impractical. Therefore, the power consumption is of significant concern. This standard was developed with limited power supply availability in mind. However, the physical implementation of this standard will require additional power management considerations that are beyond the scope of this standard.

The protocol has been developed to favor battery-powered devices. However, in certain applications, some of these devices could potentially be mains powered. Battery-powered devices will require duty-cycling to reduce power consumption. These devices will spend most of their operational life in a sleep state; however, each device periodically listens to the RF channel in order to determine whether a message is pending. This mechanism allows the application designer to decide on the balance between battery consumption and message latency. Higher powered devices have the option of listening to the RF channel continuously.

In addition to the power saving features of the LR-WPAN system, the HRP UWB PHY also provides a hybrid modulation that enables very simple, noncoherent receiver architectures to further minimize power consumption and implementation complexity.

5.7.5.1 Low-energy mechanisms

Low-energy mechanisms, coordinated sampled listening (CSL), as defined in 6.12.2, and receiver initiated transmission (RIT), as described in 6.12.3, are provided to further reduce energy consumption by allowing devices to communicate while maintaining low duty cycles.

CSL allows receiving devices to periodically sample the channel(s) for incoming transmissions at low duty cycles. The receiving device and the transmitting device are coordinated to reduce transmitting overhead.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

RIT allows receiving devices to periodically broadcast data request frames, and transmitting devices only transmit to a receiving device upon receiving a data request frame. RIT is suitable for the following application scenarios:

— Low data traffic rate and loose latency requirement, where a few seconds of latency is allowable by application.
— Local regulations restricting the duration of continuous radio transmissions.

5.7.6 Security

From a security perspective, wireless ad hoc networks are no different from any other wireless network. They are vulnerable to passive eavesdropping attacks and active tampering because physical access to the wire is not required to participate in communications. The very nature of ad hoc networks and their cost objectives impose additional security constraints, which perhaps make these networks the most difficult environments to secure. Devices are low-cost and have limited capabilities in terms of computing power, available storage, and power drain; and it cannot always be assumed they have a trusted computing base nor a high-quality random number generator aboard. Communications cannot rely on the online availability of a fixed infrastructure and might involve short-term relationships between devices that never have communicated before. These constraints severely limit the choice of cryptographic algorithms and protocols and influence the design of the security architecture because the establishment and maintenance of trust relationships between devices need to be addressed with care. In addition, battery lifetime and cost constraints put severe limits on the security overhead these networks can tolerate, something that is of far less concern with higher bandwidth networks. Most of these security architectural elements can be implemented at higher layers and, therefore, are outside the scope of this standard.

The cryptographic mechanism in this standard is based on symmetric-key cryptography and uses keys that are provided by higher layer processes. The establishment and maintenance of these keys are outside the scope of this standard. The mechanism assumes a secure implementation of cryptographic operations and secure and authentic storage of keying material.

The cryptographic mechanism provides particular combinations of the following security services:

— *Data confidentiality:* Assurance that transmitted information is only disclosed to parties for which it is intended.
— *Data authenticity:* Assurance of the source of transmitted information (and, hereby, that information was not modified in transit).
— *Replay protection:* Assurance that duplicate information is detected.

The actual frame protection provided can be adapted on a frame-by-frame basis and allows for varying levels of data authenticity (to minimize security overhead in transmitted frames where required) and for optional data confidentiality. When nontrivial protection is required, replay protection is always provided.

Cryptographic frame protection uses either a key shared between two peer devices (link key) or a key shared among a group of devices (group key), thus allowing some flexibility and application-specific tradeoffs between key storage and key maintenance costs versus the cryptographic protection provided. If a group key is used for peer-to-peer communication, protection is provided only against outsider devices and not against potential malicious devices in the key-sharing group.

Implementations should include mechanisms to prevent unauthorized access to locally stored keys.

For more detailed information on the cryptographic security mechanisms used for protected MAC frames following this standard, refer to Clause 9.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

5.8 Concept of primitives

The services of a layer are the capabilities it offers to the user in the next higher layer or sublayer by building its functions on the services of the next lower layer. This concept is illustrated in Figure 5-10, showing the service hierarchy and the relationship of the two correspondent users and their associated layer (or sublayer) peer protocol entities.

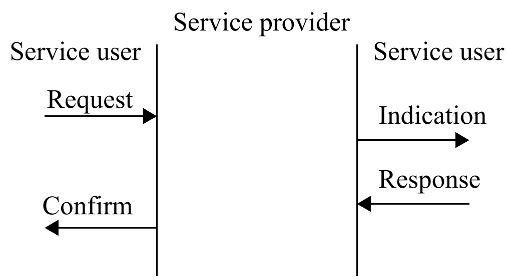


Figure 5-10—Service primitives

The services are specified by describing the information flow between the N-user and the N-layer. This information flow is modeled by discrete, instantaneous events, which characterize the provision of a service. Each event consists of passing a service primitive from one layer to the other through a layer SAP associated with an N-user. Service primitives convey the required information by providing a particular service. These service primitives are an abstraction because they specify only the provided service rather than the means by which it is provided. This definition is independent of any other interface implementation.

A service is specified by describing the service primitives and parameters that characterize it.

A primitive can be one of four generic types:

— *Request:* The request primitive is used to request that a service is initiated.
— *Indication:* The indication primitive is used to indicate to the user an internal event.
— *Response:* The response primitive is used to complete a procedure previously invoked by an indication primitive.
— *Confirm:* The confirm primitive is used to convey the results of one or more associated previous service requests.

5.9 Deprecation of features

Certain features that were in prior versions of this standard have either not seen wide use or are no longer in active development. In this case, these features are deprecated and can be removed in future versions of the standard. In the version of the standard, the following items are marked as deprecated:

— Clause 14, Amplitude shift keying (ASK) PHY
— Subclause 20.2.3, Mode Switch PHR
— Subclause 20.5, Mode switch mechanism for SUN FSK

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

6. MAC functional description

6.1 Device types and conventions

There are two device types:

- The FFD may operate as a PAN coordinator, a coordinator, a device, RFD-TX device, RFD-RX device, or any combination thereof.
- An RFD shall not operate as a PAN coordinator nor as a coordinator but may operate as a device, RFD-TX device, or RFD-RX device.

Constants and PAN information base (PIB) attributes that are specified and maintained by the MAC sublayer or PHY layer are written in the text in italics. Constants have a general prefix of “a”, e.g., *aBaseSlotDuration*, and the MAC constants are listed in Table 8-80, while the PHY constants are listed in Table 11-1. MAC PIB attributes have a general prefix of “mac”, e.g., *macExtendedAddress*, and are listed in Table 8-81, while the security attributes are listed in Table 9-8. PHY PIB attributes have a general prefix of “phy”, e.g., *phyCurrentChannel*, and are listed in Table 11-2.

Some of the timing parameters in definition of the MAC are in units of PHY symbols. For PHYs that have multiple symbol periods, the duration to be used for the MAC parameters is defined in that PHY clause.

The broadcast short address is defined to be 0xffff. The broadcast PAN ID is defined to be 0xffff. The term broadcast address refers to either a broadcast short address or the 64-bit broadcast MAC address which is defined in IEEE Std 802-2014 to be 0xffff ffff ffff ffff.

Acknowledgment frames and timers are not shown in the message sequence charts unless they affect the behavior of that procedure.

6.2 Channel access

6.2.1 Superframe structure

A coordinator of a PAN may use a superframe structure. A superframe is bounded by the transmission of a Beacon frame and may have an active portion and an inactive portion. The coordinator may enter a low-power (sleep) mode during the inactive portion.

For LE-applications an optional superframe structure may be used, as described in 6.2.7.

The structure of this superframe is described by the values of *macBeaconOrder* and *macSuperframeOrder*. The MAC PIB attribute *macBeaconOrder* describes the interval at which the coordinator shall transmit its Beacon frames. The value of *macBeaconOrder* and the beacon interval (BI) are related as follows:

$$\mathrm{BI} = aBaseSuperframeDuration \times 2^{macBeaconOrder}$$

for

$$0 \leq macBeaconOrder \leq 14$$

If *macBeaconOrder* = 15, the coordinator shall not transmit Beacon frames except when requested to do so, such as on receipt of a Beacon Request command. The value of *macSuperframeOrder* shall be ignored if *macBeaconOrder* = 15.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The MAC PIB attribute *macSuperframeOrder* describes the length of the active portion of the superframe, which includes the Beacon frame. The value of *macSuperframeOrder*, and the superframe duration (SD) are related as follows:

$$SD = aBaseSuperframeDuration \times 2^{macSuperframeOrder}$$

for

$$0 \leq macSuperframeOrder \leq macBeaconOrder \leq 14$$

If *macSuperframeOrder* = 15, the superframe shall not remain active after the beacon. If *macBeaconO*rder = 15, the superframe shall not exist (the value of *macSuperframeOrder* shall be ignored), and *macRxOnWhenIdle* shall define whether the receiver is enabled during periods of transceiver inactivity.

The active portion of each superframe shall be divided into *aNumSuperframeSlots* equally spaced slots of duration $2^{macSuperframeOrder} \times aBaseSlotDuration$ and is composed of a beacon, a CAP, and a CFP. The beacon shall be transmitted, without the use of CSMA, at the start of slot 0, and the CAP shall commence immediately following the beacon. The start of slot 0 is defined as the point at which the first symbol of the beacon PPDU is transmitted. The CFP, if present, follows immediately after the CAP and extends to the end of the active portion of the superframe. Any allocated GTSs shall be located within the CFP.

PANs that wish to use the superframe structure (referred to as beacon-enabled PANs) shall set *macBeaconOrder* to a value between 0 and 14, both inclusive, and *macSuperframeOrder* to a value between 0 and the value of *macBeaconOrder*, both inclusive.

PANs that do not wish to use the superframe structure (referred to as nonbeacon-enabled PANs) shall set both *macBeaconOrder* and *macSuperframeOrder* to 15. In this case, a coordinator shall not transmit beacons, except upon receipt of a Beacon Request command; all transmissions, with the exception of Ack frames and any Data frame that quickly follows the acknowledgment of a Data Request command, as described in 6.7.3, shall use an unslotted CSMA-CA mechanism to access the channel. In addition, GTSs shall not be permitted.

An example of a superframe structure is shown in Figure 6-1. In this case, the beacon interval, *BI*, is twice as long as the active SD, and the CFP contains two GTSs.

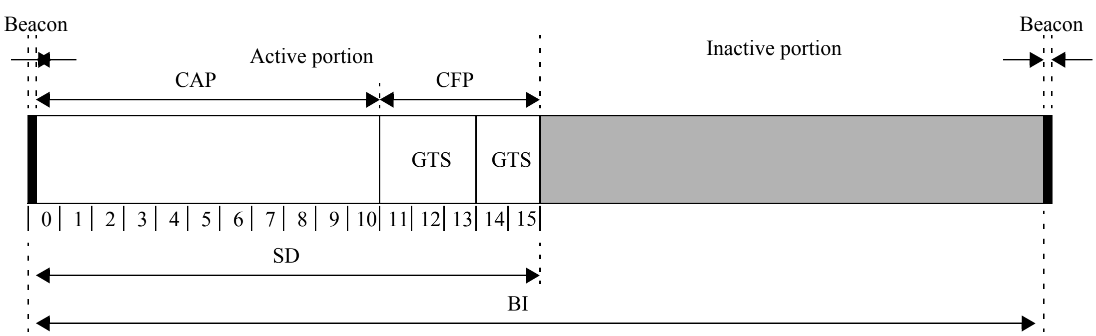


Figure 6-1—An example of the superframe structure

When operating as a TMCTP, the superframe includes the BOP, as described in 6.2.1.3, and the structure of the superframe is described in 6.2.8.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

6.2.1.1 Contention access period (CAP)

The CAP shall start immediately following the beacon and complete before the beginning of the CFP on a superframe slot boundary. If the CFP is zero length, the CAP shall complete at the end of the active portion of the superframe. The CAP shall be at least *aMinCapLength*, unless additional space is needed to temporarily accommodate the increase in the Beacon frame length needed to perform GTS maintenance, as described in 7.3.1.4, and shall shrink or grow dynamically to accommodate the size of the CFP.

All frames, except Ack frames and any Data frame that quickly follows the acknowledgment of a Data Request command, as described in 6.7.3, transmitted in the CAP shall use a slotted CSMA-CA mechanism to access the channel. A device transmitting within the CAP shall ensure that its transaction is complete (i.e., including the reception of a minimum length acknowledgment) one interframe spacing (IFS) period, as described in 6.2.4, before the end of the CAP. If this is not possible, the device shall defer its transmission until the CAP of the following superframe.

6.2.1.2 Contention-free period (CFP)

The CFP shall start on a slot boundary immediately following the CAP, and it shall complete before the end of the active portion of the superframe. If any GTSs have been allocated by the PAN coordinator, they shall be located within the CFP and occupy contiguous slots. The duration of the CFP, therefore, changes depending on the total duration of all of the combined GTSs.

No transmissions within the CFP shall use a CSMA-CA mechanism to access the channel. A device transmitting in the CFP shall ensure that its transmissions are complete one IFS period, as described in 6.2.4, before the end of its GTS.

6.2.1.3 BOP

When present, the BOP shall commence on the slot boundary immediately following CFP, if the CFP is present. When there is no CFP, the BOP shall commence on the slot boundary immediately following the CAP. The BOP shall complete before the end of the active portion of the superframe. The BOP duration depends on the number of DBSs, one of which is allocated to each TMCTP-child PAN coordinator. All DBSs shall be located within the BOP and occupy contiguous slots. The BOP, therefore, grows or shrinks depending on the total length of all of the combined DBSs. Multiple base slots in the BOP can be allocated to a DBS according to the length of the beacon to be sent by the TMCTP-child coordinator which will occupy the DBS.

CSMA-CA is not used for beacon transmissions in the BOP. A TMCTP-child PAN coordinator transmitting in the BOP shall ensure that its beacon transmission is complete prior to one IFS period before the end of its DBS. The IFS period is described in 6.2.4.

6.2.2 Incoming and outgoing superframe timing

On a beacon-enabled PAN, a coordinator that is not the PAN coordinator shall maintain the timing of both the superframe in which its coordinator transmits a beacon (the incoming superframe) and the superframe in which it transmits its own beacon (the outgoing superframe). The relative timing of these superframes is defined by the StartTime parameter of the MLME-START.request primitive, as described in 8.2.12.1 and 6.3.4. The relationship between incoming and outgoing superframes is illustrated in Figure 6-2. If a device receives a Coordinator Realignment command from its coordinator indicating that the coordinator will begin using a new superframe configuration, the device shall ensure that its own beacons do not overlap with the beacons transmitted by the coordinator. If the new superframe configuration causes the incoming and outgoing superframes to overlap, the device shall stop transmitting its beacons immediately and notify the next higher layer via the MLME-SYNC-LOSS.indication primitive, as described in 8.2.13.2, with the LossReason parameter set to SUPERFRAME_OVERLAP.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The beacon order and superframe order shall be equal for all superframes on a PAN. All devices shall interact with the PAN only during the active portion of a superframe.

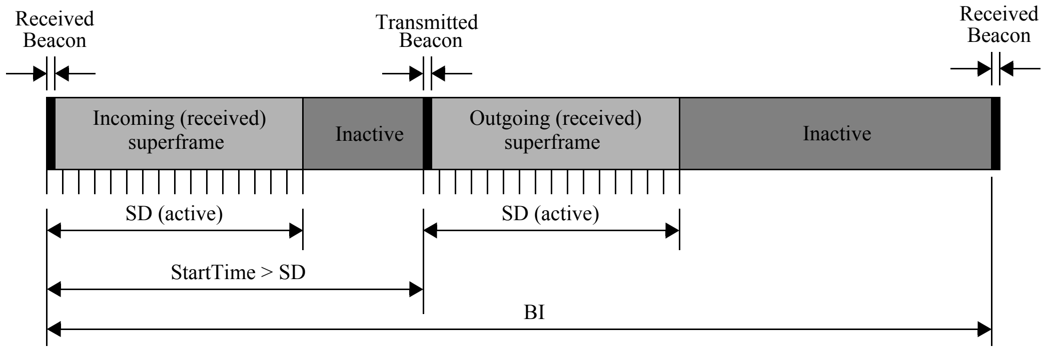


Figure 6-2—The relationship between incoming and outgoing beacons

6.2.3 Enhanced Beacon frame timing for MPM procedure

In a beacon-enabled PAN, a SUN device operating as a coordinator transmits an Enhanced Beacon frame containing a Coexistence Specification IE at fixed intervals, in addition to the usual periodic beacons. Figure 6-3 shows the Enhanced Beacon frame timing for beacon-enabled PANs.

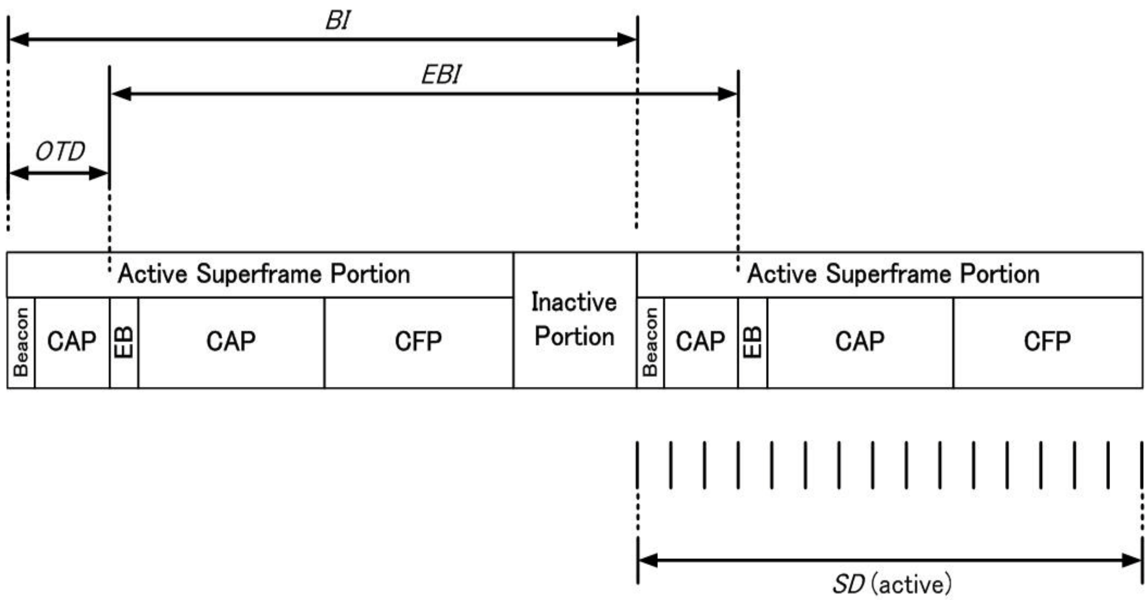


Figure 6-3—Timing information for Enhanced Beacon frames

The interval at which the coordinator shall start transmissions of its Enhanced Beacon frames is defined by *macEnhancedBeaconOrder*. The values of *macEnhancedBeaconOrder* and the enhanced beacon interval, *EBI*, are related as follows:

$$EBI = aBaseSuperframeDuration \times 2^{macEnhancedBeaconOrder}$$

The value of *macEnhancedBeaconOrder* should not be larger than the value of *macBeaconOrder*.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The time offset between the start of the periodic beacon transmission and the start of the following Enhanced Beacon frame transmission is described by *macOffsetTimeSlot*. The values of *macOffsetTimeSlot* and offset time duration, *OTD*, are related as follows:

$$OTD = aBaseSlotDuration \times macOffsetTimeSlot$$

In a nonbeacon-enabled PAN, the time offset between the starts of two Enhanced Beacon frames, EBI_{NBPAN}, is described by *macNbPanEnhancedBeaconOrder*. The resolution of time shall be *aBaseSlotDuration*. The values of *macNbPanEnhancedBeaconOrder* and EBI_{NBPAN} are related as follows:

$$EBI_{NBPAN} = aBaseSlotDuration \times macNbPanEnhancedBeaconOrder$$

6.2.4 IFS

The MAC sublayer needs a finite amount of time to process data received by the PHY. To allow for this, two successive frames transmitted from a device shall be separated by at least an IFS period; if the first transmission requires an acknowledgment, the separation between the Ack frame and the second transmission shall be at least the acknowledgment interframe spacing (AIFS). The length of the IFS period is dependent on the size of the frame that has just been transmitted. Frames (i.e., MPDUs) of up to *aMaxSifsFrameSize* shall be followed by a short interfame space (SIFS) period of a duration of at least max(*macSifsPeriod*, *aTurnaroundTime*). Frames (i.e., MPDUs) with lengths greater than *aMaxSifsFrameSize* shall be followed by the maximum of long interframe spacing (LIFS) of a duration of at least max(*macLifsPeriod*, *aTurnaroundTime*). These concepts are illustrated in Figure 6-4.

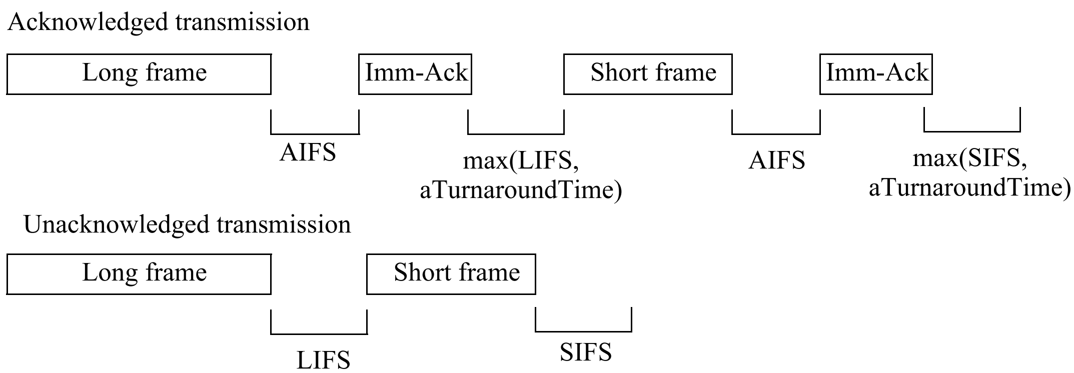


Figure 6-4—IFS usage

In order to ensure that there is sufficient time for the PHY to transition from TX to RX or RX to TX, the following relation holds:

$$\text{AIFS} \leq \text{SIFS} < \text{LIFS}$$

The CSMA-CA algorithm shall take this requirement into account for transmissions in the CAP. The timing of the transmission of an Ack frame, AIFS, is defined in 6.7.4.2.

6.2.5 Random access methods

6.2.5.1 CSMA-CA algorithm

The CSMA-CA algorithm shall be used before the transmission of data or MAC commands transmitted within the CAP, unless the frame can be quickly transmitted following the acknowledgment of a Data Request command, as defined in 6.7.3. The CSMA-CA algorithm shall not be used for the transmission of

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Beacon frames in a beacon-enabled PAN, Imm-Ack frames, Enh-Ack frames, or Data frames transmitted in the CFP.

If periodic beacons are being used in the PAN, the MAC sublayer shall employ the slotted version of the CSMA-CA algorithm for transmissions in the CAP of the superframe. Conversely, if periodic beacons are not being used in the PAN or if a beacon could not be located in a beacon-enabled PAN, the MAC sublayer shall transmit using the unslotted version of the CSMA-CA algorithm. In both cases, the algorithm is implemented using units of time called backoff periods, where one backoff period shall be equal to *aUnitBackoffPeriod*.

In slotted CSMA-CA, the backoff period boundaries of every device in the PAN shall be aligned with the superframe slot boundaries of the PAN coordinator; i.e., the start of the first backoff period of each device is aligned with the start of the beacon transmission. In slotted CSMA-CA, the MAC sublayer shall ensure that the PHY commences all of its transmissions on the boundary of a backoff period. In unslotted CSMA-CA, the backoff periods of one device are not related in time to the backoff periods of any other device in the PAN.

Each device shall maintain three variables for each transmission attempt: *NB*, *CW,* and *BE*. *NB* is the number of times the CSMA-CA algorithm was required to back off while attempting the current transmission; this value shall be initialized to zero before each new transmission attempt. *CW* is the contention window length, defining the number of backoff periods that need to be clear of channel activity before the transmission can commence. The value of shall CW_0 be initialized to two before each transmission attempt and reset to CW_0 each time the channel is assessed to be busy. The *CW* variable is only used for slotted CSMA-CA. *BE* is the backoff exponent, which is related to how many backoff periods a device shall wait before attempting to assess a channel. In unslotted systems, or slotted systems with the received battery life extension (BLE) field, as defined in Figure 7-7, set to zero, *BE* shall be initialized to the value of *macMinBe*. In slotted systems with the received BLE field set to one, this value shall be initialized to the lesser of two and the value of *macMinBe*. Note that if *macMinBe* is set to zero, collision avoidance will be disabled during the first iteration of this algorithm.

Although the receiver of the device is enabled during the CCA analysis portion of this algorithm, the device may discard any frames received during this time.

Figure 6-5 illustrates the steps of the CSMA-CA algorithm. If the algorithm ends in "Success," the MAC is allowed to begin transmission of the frame. Otherwise, the algorithm terminates with a channel access failure.

In a slotted CSMA-CA system with the BLE field set to zero, the MAC sublayer shall ensure that, after the random backoff, the remaining CSMA-CA operations can be undertaken and the entire transaction can be transmitted before the end of the CAP. If the number of backoff periods is greater than the remaining number of backoff periods in the CAP, the MAC sublayer shall pause the backoff countdown at the end of the CAP and resume it at the start of the CAP in the next superframe. If the number of backoff periods is less than or equal to the remaining number of backoff periods in the CAP, the MAC sublayer shall apply its backoff delay and then evaluate whether it can proceed. The MAC sublayer shall proceed if the remaining CSMA-CA algorithm steps, i.e., two CCA analyses, or a single continuous CCA analysis of at least phyCCADuration for the regulatory domains that require listen before talk (LBT) such as the 920 MHz band in Japan, as described in "Applications of IEEE Std 802.15.4" [B3], the frame transmission, and any acknowledgment can be completed before the end of the CAP. If the MAC sublayer can proceed, it shall request that the PHY perform the CCA in the current superframe. If the MAC sublayer cannot proceed, it shall wait until the start of the CAP in the next superframe and apply a further random backoff delay before evaluating whether it can proceed again.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

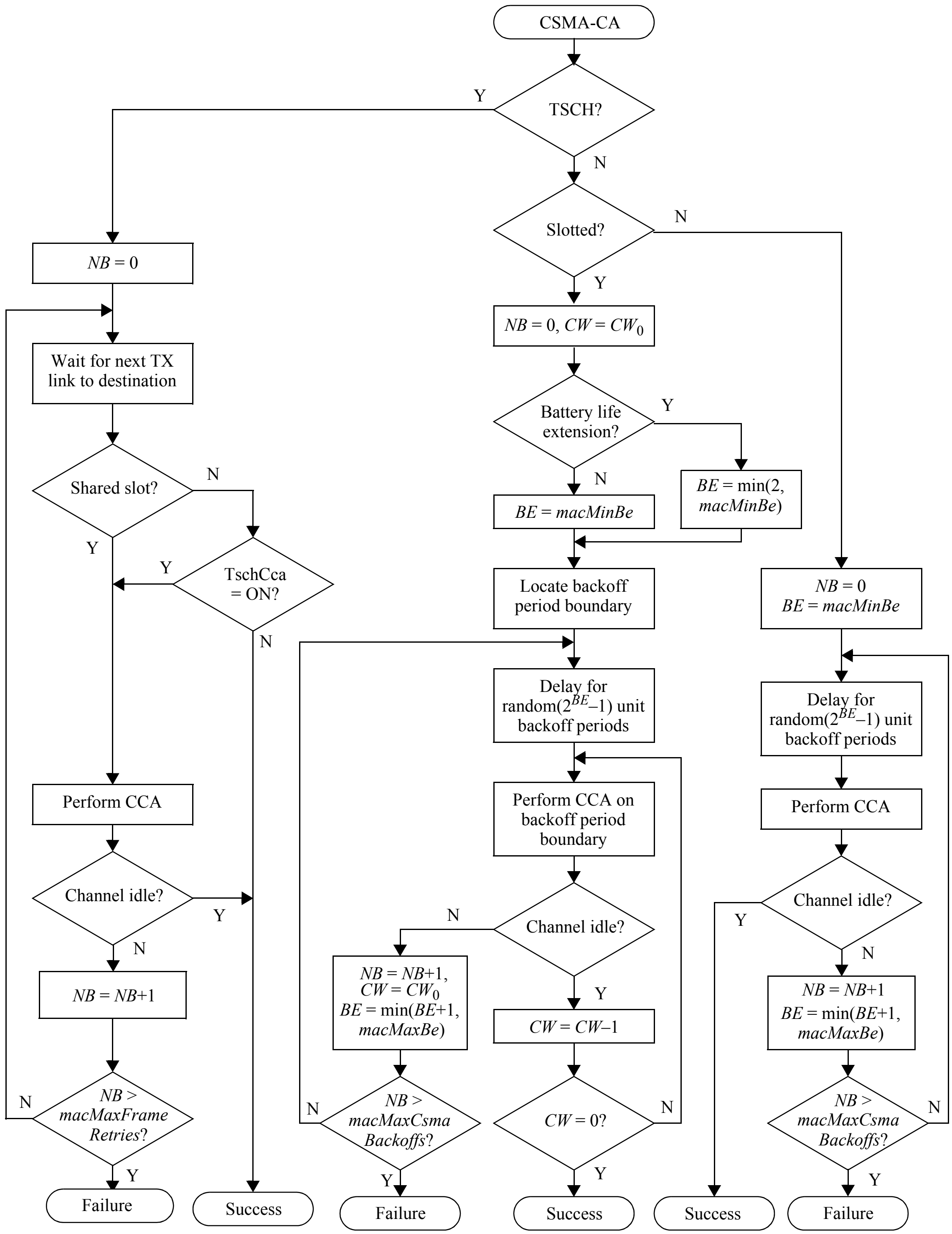


Figure 6-5—CSMA-CA algorithm

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

In a slotted CSMA-CA system with the BLE field set to one, the MAC sublayer shall ensure that, after the random backoff, the remaining CSMA-CA operations can be undertaken and the entire transaction can be transmitted before the end of the CAP. The backoff countdown shall only occur during the first macBattLifeExtPeriods full backoff periods after the end of the IFS period following the beacon. The MAC sublayer shall proceed if the remaining CSMA-CA algorithm steps, i.e., two CCA analyses, or a single continuous CCA analysis of at least phyCCADuration for the regulatory domains that require listen LBT, the frame transmission, and any acknowledgment can be completed before the end of the CAP, and the frame transmission will start in one of the first macBattLifeExtPeriods full backoff periods after the IFS period following the beacon. If the MAC sublayer can proceed, it shall request that the PHY perform the CCA in the current superframe. If the MAC sublayer cannot proceed, it shall wait until the start of the CAP in the next superframe and apply a further random backoff delay before evaluating whether it can proceed again.

6.2.5.2 TSCH CCA algorithm

When a device is operating in TSCH mode as described in 6.3.6, CCA may be used to promote coexistence with other users of the radio channel. For other devices in the same network, the start time of transmissions, *macTsTxOffset*, is closely aligned making intra-network collision avoidance using CCA ineffective. TSCH devices also use channel hopping so there is no backoff period used when CCA prevents a transmission.

As illustrated in Figure 6-5, when a TSCH device has a packet to transmit, it shall wait for a link to the destination device. If TschCca was set to ON in the MLME-TSCH-MODE.request primitive, the MAC requests the PHY to perform a CCA at the designated time in the timeslot, *macTsCcaOffset*, without any backoff delays.

6.2.5.3 TSCH CSMA-CA retransmission algorithm

Shared links (links with the linkOptions Bitmap set to shared transmission) are intentionally assigned to more than one device for transmission. This can lead to collisions and result in a transmission failure detected by not receiving an acknowledgment. To reduce the probability of repeated collisions when the packets are retransmitted, the retransmission backoff algorithm shown in Figure 6-6 shall be implemented for shared links.

When a packet is transmitted on a shared link for which an acknowledgment is expected and none is received, the transmitting device shall invoke the TSCH retransmission algorithm. Subsequent retransmissions may be in either shared links or dedicated links as retransmission occurs in the next link to the destination. This backoff algorithm has the following properties:

The retransmission backoff wait applies only to the transmission on shared links. There is no waiting for transmission on dedicated links. The retransmission backoff is calculated in the number of shared transmission links. The backoff window increases for each consecutive failed transmission in a shared link. A successful transmission in a shared link resets the backoff window to the minimum value. The backoff window does not change when a transmission is a failure in a dedicated link.

The backoff window does not change when a transmission is successful in a dedicated link and the transmission queue is still not empty afterwards.

The backoff window is reset to the minimum value if the transmission in a dedicated link is successful and the transmit queue is then empty.

In the TSCH mode, backoff is calculated in shared links, so the CSMA-CA *aUnitBackoffPeriod* is not used.

For the *macMaxBe* and *macMinBe* values when the device is in TSCH mode refer to Table 8-83.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

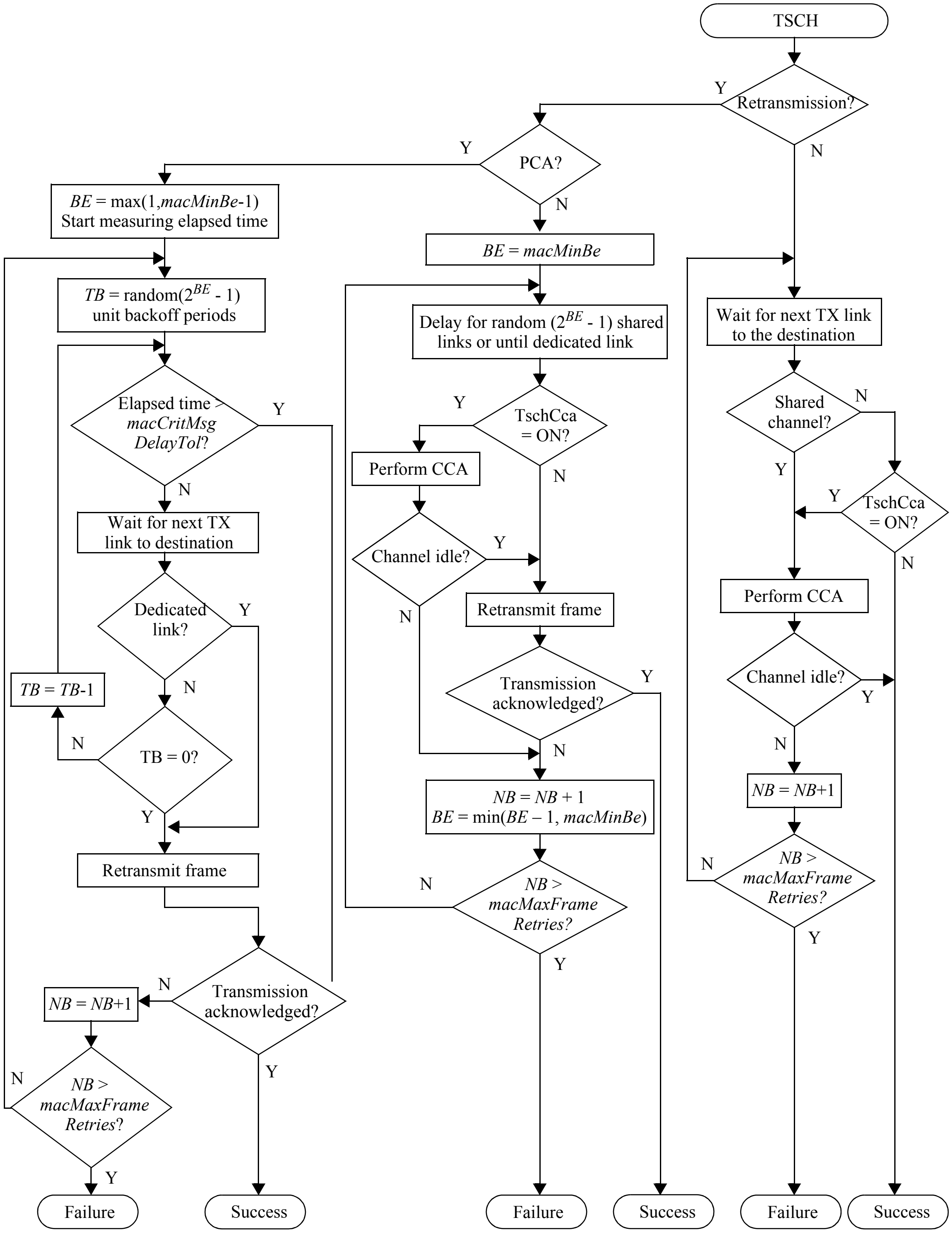


Figure 6-6—TSCH Retransmission backoff algorithm

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The device shall use an exponential backoff mechanism analogous to that described in 6.2.5.1. A device upon encountering a transmission failure in a shared link shall initialize the *BE* to *macMinBe*. The MAC sublayer shall delay for a random number in the range 0 to (2^{BE} – 1) shared links (on any slotframe) before attempting a retransmission on a shared link. Retransmission on a dedicated link may occur at any time. For each successive failure on a shared link, the device should increase the backoff exponent until the backoff exponent = *macMaxBe*. Successful transmission on a shared link resets the backoff exponent to *macMinBe*.

If an acknowledgment is still not received after *macMaxFrameRetries* retransmissions, the MAC sublayer shall assume the transmission has failed and notify the next higher layer of the failure.

A device in a TSCH PAN may also use the PCA backoff method for critical event messages, as defined in 6.2.5.4.

6.2.5.4 CSMA-CA with PCA

An MSDU or MSDU fragment in which the CriticalEventMessage parameter in the MCPS-DATA.request primitive is TRUE is referred to as a critical event message. The CSMA-CA with PCA backoff algorithm is used before the transmission of a critical event message during the CAP.

In a beacon-enabled PAN when PCA is enabled (*macPriorityChannelAccess* is set to TRUE), the PCA Allocation IE shall be included in Enhanced Beacon frames that are sent at every beacon interval.

In a beacon-enabled PAN, the MAC sublayer employs the slotted version of the CSMA-CA with PCA backoff algorithm for transmissions in the CAP of the superframe. Conversely, in a nonbeacon-enabled PAN or if a beacon could not be located in a beacon-enabled PAN, the MAC sublayer may transmit using the unslotted version of the CSMA-CA with PCA backoff algorithm.

CSMA-CA with PCA using a CCA Mode not equal to 4 is illustrated in Figure 6-7.

CSMA-CA with PCA using a CCA Mode equal to 4 is illustrated in Figure 6-8.

The variable *NB* is not used in CSMA-CA with PCA backoff algorithm. The PCA backoff algorithm is used during the transmission of a priority message: the backoff exponent *BE* is initialized to the value of (*macMinBe* – 1) or 1, whichever is larger, prior to the first transmission attempt, and *BE* remains constant for subsequent retransmissions. The MAC sublayer is responsible for maintaining a variable called *TB*, which indicates the number of remaining backoff periods since the start of the CSMA-CA with PCA backoff algorithm. *TB* is initialized to a random value between 0 and (2^{BE} – 1). The PCA backoff algorithm follows a persistent CSMA mechanism, meaning that the device continues to monitor the channel and decrements *TB* by one any time the channel is sensed idle in a backoff period, in order to gain access to the channel in a timely manner.

In the slotted CSMA-CA with a PCA backoff algorithm, the MAC sublayer shall ensure that, after the persistent random backoff, the remaining CSMA-CA operations can be undertaken and the entire transaction can be transmitted before the end of the CAP. If *TB* is greater than the remaining number of backoff periods in the CAP, the MAC sublayer pauses the *TB* countdown at the end of the CAP and resumes it at the start of the CAP in the next superframe. If *TB* is less than or equal to the remaining number of backoff periods in the CAP, the MAC sublayer applies the PCA backoff algorithm one CCA attempt further and then again evaluates whether there is sufficient time to proceed. The MAC sublayer may proceed if the remaining CSMA-CA algorithm steps, the frame transmission, and any acknowledgment can be completed before the end of the CAP. If there is not sufficient time to proceed, the MAC sublayer waits until the start of the CAP in the next superframe before continuing to apply the PCA backoff algorithm.

When operating a LECIM PHY in a nonbeacon-enabled PAN using unslotted CSMA-CA, the critical event message transmission may be initiated at any time.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

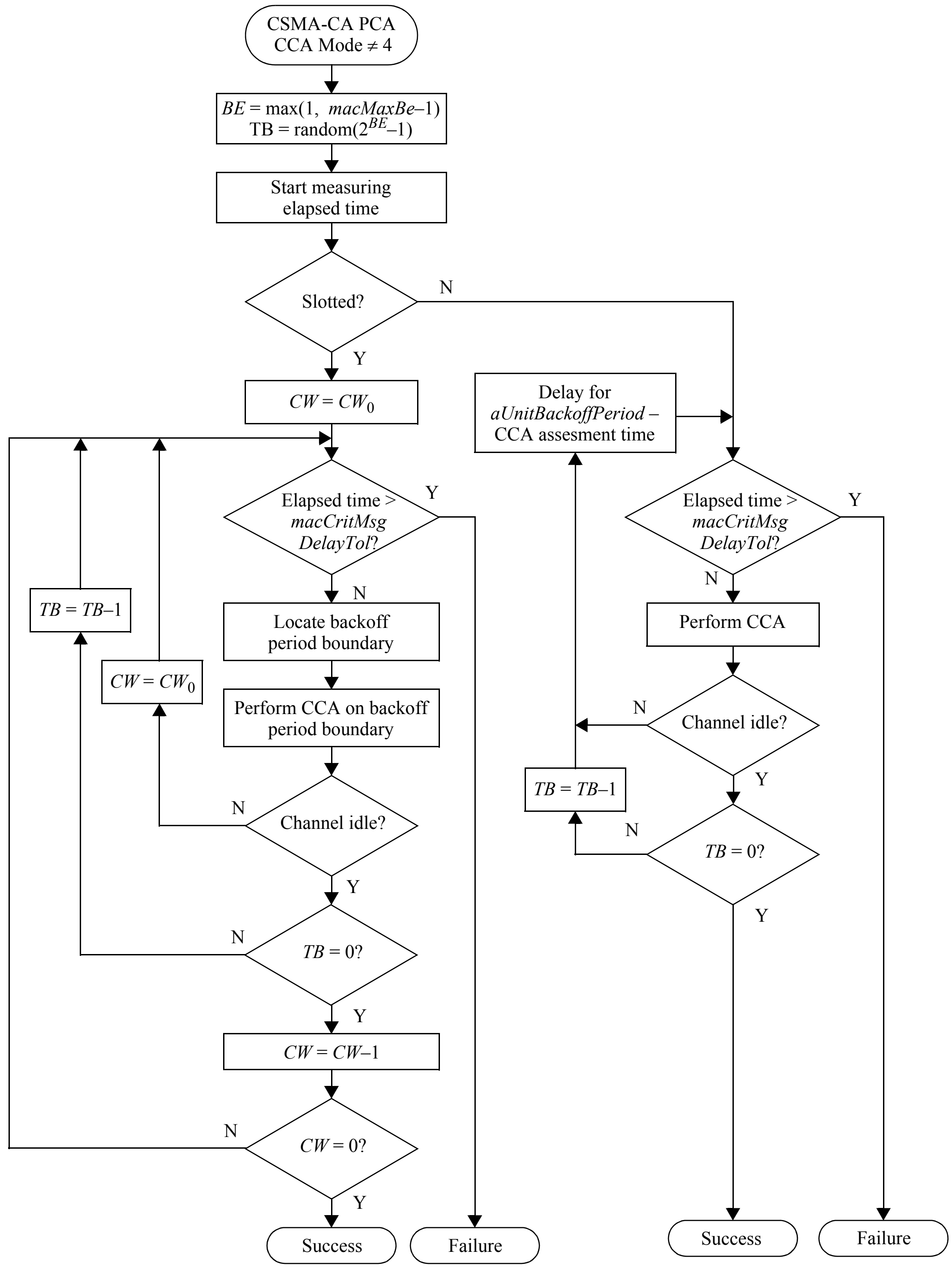


Figure 6-7—PCA CSMA-CA, non-Aloha

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

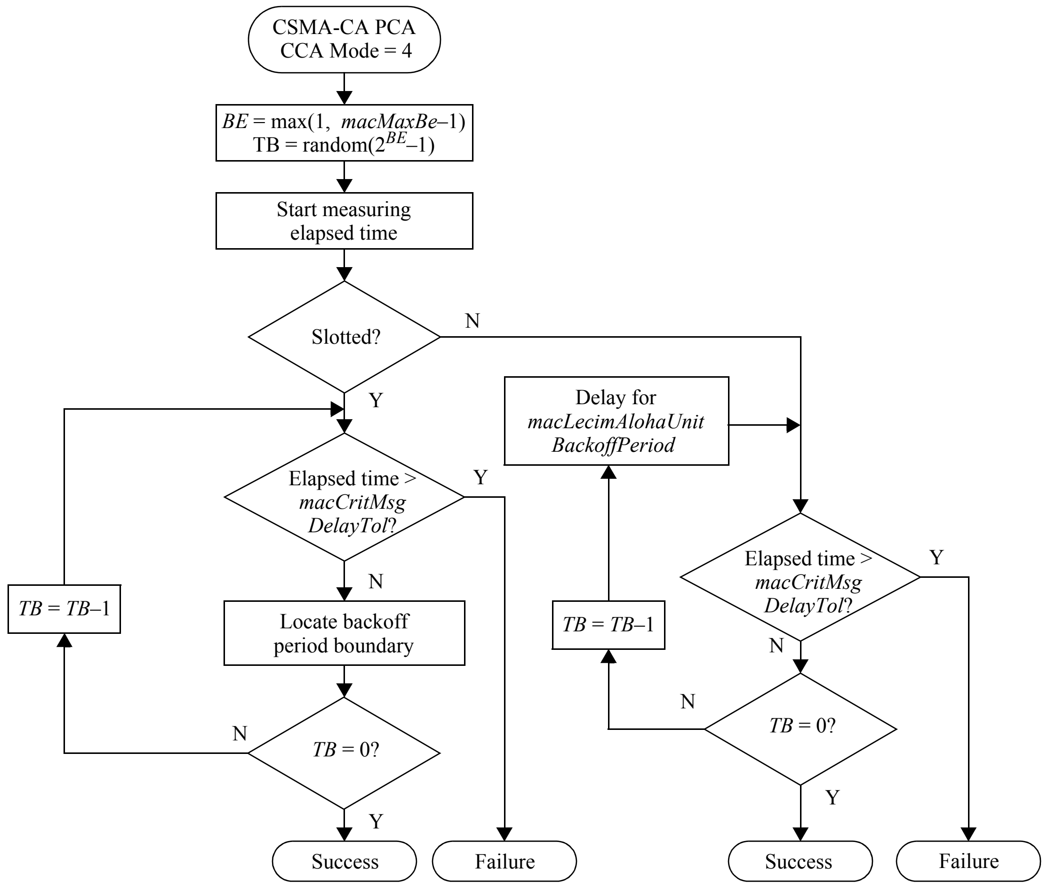


Figure 6-8—PCA CSMA-CA, Aloha

In a beacon-enabled PAN, the length of a PCA allocation shall be at least 880 symbol periods. When *macPriorityChannelAccess* is TRUE, the minimum number of PCA allocations in a superframe is defined by the MAC personal area network information base (PIB) attributes *macPcaAllocationSuperRate*, *macPcaAllocationRate*, and *macCritMsgDelayTol*. The relations of the parameters are illustrated in Table 6-1.

Table 6-1—PCA MAC PIB attribute relations

Value of *macPcaAllocationSuperRate*	SD	*macPcaAllocationRate*
FALSE	SD ≤ *macCritMsgDelayTol*/3	Maximum value $\lfloor$ *macCritMsgDelayTol*/(3 × SD) $\rfloor$
TRUE	*macCritMsgDelayTol*/3 < SD ≤ *macCritMsgDelayTol*	Minimum value 1
TRUE	*macCritMsgDelayTol* < SD	Minimum value $\lceil$ SD/*macCritMsgDelayTol* $\rceil$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

In Table 6-1, $\lfloor\ \rfloor$ indicates the closest integer less than or equal to its argument and $\lceil\ \rceil$ indicates the closest integer larger than or equal to its argument. When *macPcaAllocationSuperRate* is FALSE, *macPcaAllocationRate* is interpreted as a subrate, and it indicates the maximum number of consecutive superframes for which only one PCA allocation is required. In this case, the PCA allocations need only occur within the superframes having *macBsn* that are integer divisible by the *macPcaAllocationRate* value. When SD ≤ *macCritMsgDelayTol*/3 , *macPcaAllocationSuperRate* shall be set to FALSE; otherwise, it shall be set to TRUE. When *macPcaAllocationSuperRate* is TRUE, *macPcaAllocationRate* indicates the minimum number of PCA allocations required per superframe.

If there are multiple PCA allocations per superframe, the first allocation occurs at the start of the CAP. The remaining PCA allocations are distributed throughout the superframe, but no PCA allocation shall occur outside the CAP.

When a critical event message transmission is initiated within the CAP during a time that is not a PCA allocation, CSMA-CA, as defined in 6.2.5, with the previously described PCA backoff algorithm may be used.

If DSME is utilized with *macCapReduction* set to TRUE and the multi-superframe duration (MD) is longer than *macCritMsgDelayTol*, then *macPriorityChannelAccess* shall be set to FALSE.

When *macPriorityChannelAccess* is TRUE, a PCA allocation shall not occur if the CAP length duration is less than *aMinCapLength* plus the time required for a single PCA allocation.

6.2.5.5 LECIM ALOHA PCA

When PCA is in use with CCA Mode 4 (ALOHA), PCA is achieved using a modified version of the PCA backoff algorithm described in 6.2.5.4. Instead of one backoff period being equal to *aUnitBackoffPeriod*, a backoff period is defined as *macLecimAlohaUnitBackoffPeriod*.

When MPDU fragmentation is in use, the value of *macLecimAlohaUnitBackoffPeriod* should be long enough to accommodate the transmission of a single MPDU fragment with the associated IFS period and a Frak frame. When MPDU fragmentation is not in use, the value of *macLecimAlohaUnitBackoffPeriod* should be long enough to accommodate the transmission of a maximum-sized MPDU with the associated IFS and an Ack frame.

When *macPriorityChannelAccess* is set as TRUE, each PCA allocation shall be at least four consecutive *macLecimAlohaUnitBackoffPeriod* in duration. The first PCA allocation shall begin at the start of the CAP. The number of PCA allocations per superframe is described by Table 6-1.

A PCA allocation cannot occur if the CAP length duration is less than *aMinCapLength* plus the time required for a single PCA.

6.2.6 TSCH slotframe structure

6.2.6.1 General

A slotframe is a collection of timeslots repeating in time. Each timeslot allows enough time for a pair of devices to exchange a frame and an acknowledgment. It is possible, although usually undesirable, to define a timeslot that is not long enough for a pair of devices to exchange a maximum length frame and an Ack frame. The number of timeslots in a given slotframe (slotframe size) determines how often each timeslot repeats, thus setting a communication schedule for nodes that use the timeslots. When a slotframe is created, it is associated with a slotframe handle (*macSlotframeHandle*) for identification. Each slotframe repeats on a cycle dependent on its length. Each timeslot is an opportunity for a device to send or receive a single frame,

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

and optionally receive or transmit an acknowledgment to that frame. Slotframes and timeslots are configured by a higher layer.

6.2.6.2 Absolute slot number (ASN)

The total number of timeslots that has elapsed since the start of the network or an arbitrary start time determined by the PAN coordinator is called the Absolute Slot Number (ASN). It increments globally in the network every *macTsTimeslotLength*, as defined in Table 8-86. It may be beaconed by devices already in a TSCH PAN, allowing new devices to synchronize. It is used globally by devices in a TSCH PAN as the frame counter (thus allowing for time-dependent security) and is used to compute the channel for any given pairwise communication as described in 6.2.6.3.

6.2.6.3 Links

Figure 6-9 illustrates an example of nodes communicating in a sample three-timeslot slotframe. Nodes A and B communicate during timeslot 0, nodes B and C communicate during timeslot 1, and timeslot 2 is not being used. Every three timeslots, the schedule repeats, but note that ASN increments continuously. The pairwise assignment of a directed communication between devices for a given *macSlotFrameHandle*, as defined in 8.4.2.2.1, in a given timeslot on a given *macChannelOffset* is a link.

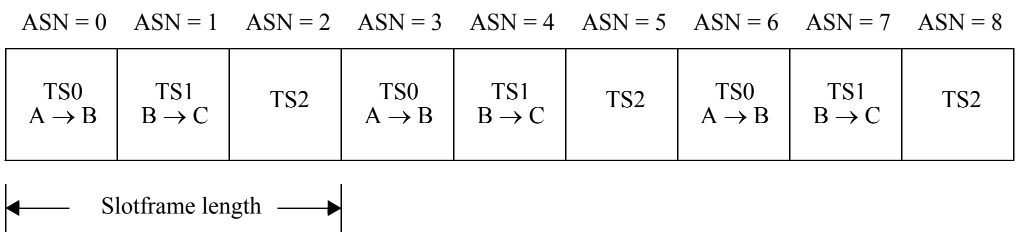


Figure 6-9—Example of a three time-slot slotframe

The physical channel, *CH*, in a link is calculated as follows:

$$CH = macHoppingSequenceList\ [(macAsn + macChannelOffset)\ \%\ macHoppingSequenceLength]$$

where $a\%b$ indicates a modulo b.

Use of a *macChannelOffset* allows for different channels to be used at a given *macAsn* for a given *macHoppingSequenceList*. There are *macNumberOfChannels* channel offsets that will result in a unique channel for that combination of *macAsn* and *macHoppingSequenceList*.

6.2.6.4 Multiple slotframes

A given network using timeslot-based access may contain several concurrent slotframes of different sizes. Multiple slotframes may be used to define a different communication schedule for various groups of nodes or to run the entire network at different duty cycles by giving some devices many active timeslots in a slotframe, and others few or none.

A network device may participate in one or more slotframes simultaneously, and not all devices need to participate in all slotframes. By configuring a network device to participate in multiple overlapping slotframes of different sizes, it is possible to establish different communication schedules and connectivity matrices that all work at the same time.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Slotframes can be added, removed, and modified while the network is running. Even though this is the case, all slotframes are aligned to timeslot boundaries, and timeslot 0 of the first repetition of every slotframe is projected back to *macAsn* = 0, which is determined by the PAN coordinator (or other network device that starts the network). Because of this, timeslots in different slotframes are always aligned, even though the beginning and end of a particular repetition of that slotframe may not be as illustrated in Figure 6-10. When, for any given timeslot, a device has links in multiple slotframes, transmissions take precedence over receives, and lower *macSlotframeHandle* slotframes takes precedence over higher *macSlotframeHandle* slotframes.

	ASN = 0	ASN = 1	ASN = 2	ASN = 3	ASN = 4	ASN = 5	ASN = 6	ASN = 7	
Slotframe 1 5 slots	TS0	TS1	TS2	TS3	TS4	TS0	TS1	TS2	…
Slotframe 2 3 slots	TS0	TS1	TS2	TS0	TS1	TS2	TS0	TS1	…

Figure 6-10—Multiple slotframes in the network

6.2.7 LE functional description

6.2.7.1 LE contention access period (LE CAP)

When *macCslPeriod* is nonzero, CSL is deployed in CAP. CSL behavior is defined in 6.12.2. The *macRitPeriod* shall be set to zero in a beacon-enabled PAN.

When *macLowEnergySuperframeSupported* is TRUE, the transaction shall be ensured to be completed one IFS period before the end of the inactive period. If a device senses a frame in the CAP that does not end within the CAP when *macLowEnergySuperframeSupported* is TRUE, the device may continue receiving the frame until it ends before the end of the inactive period. When *macLowEnergySuperframeSupported* is TRUE, the coordinator shall not allocate GTSs in order to avoid the interference from the frames exceeding the CAP and going into the CFP. When *macLowEnergySuperframeSupported* is TRUE, the coordinator shall notify the devices that already associated or intend to associate the condition of *macLowEnergySuperframeSupported* in the Beacon frames.

6.2.7.2 LE superframe structure

If *macLowEnergySuperframeSupported* is TRUE and *macLowEnergySuperframeSyncInterval* is not zero, the coordinator shall transmit Beacon frames not in every beacon interval, but once in every beacon interval time *macLowEnergySuperframeSyncInterval*, except when requested to do so. If *macLowEnergySuperframeSupported* is TRUE and *macLowEnergySuperframeSyncInterval* is zero, the coordinator shall transmit Beacon frames only when it is requested to do so.

6.2.7.3 LE-incoming and outgoing superframe timing

If a device supports *macLowEnergySuperframeSupported*, the beacon order and superframe order may be equal for all superframes on a PAN.

6.2.7.4 LE scan

When *macCslPeriod* is nonzero, CSL is deployed in channel scans. When *macCslMaxPeriod* is nonzero, each coordinator broadcasts Beacon frames with wake-up frame sequence. This allows devices to perform channel scans with low duty cycles.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

6.2.8 Superframe use for TMCTP operation

The TMCTP superframe is an extension of the basic superframe defined in 6.2.1. The active portion of the TMCTP superframe is composed of four parts, which is illustrated in Figure 5-8.

- The Beacon frame, as described in 5.2.2.1, which is used to set the timing allocations and to communicate management information for the PAN.
- The CAP, as described in 6.2.1.1, which is used to communicate commands and/or data.
- The CFP, as described in 6.2.1.2, which is composed of GTSs. No transmissions within the CFP shall use a CSMA-CA mechanism to access the channel.
- The BOP, as described in 6.2.1.3, which is composed of one or more DBSs. A DBS is used to communicate beacons between a TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator (including the SPC) and one of its TMCTP-child PAN coordinator(s) in a TMCTP.

The SD and BI of the TMCTP superframe are the same as described in 6.2.1. The MAC PIB attribute macTmctpExtendedOrder describes the extended length of the active portion of the superframe. The value of *macTmctpExtendedOrder* and the extended duration, ED, are related as follows:

$$\mathrm{ED} = aBaseSuperframeDuration \times 2^{macTmctpExtendedOrder}$$

$$= aBaseSlotDuration \times aNumSuperframeSlots \times 2^{macTmctpExtendedOrder}$$

for

$$0 \leq macTmctpExtendedOrder \leq (macBeaconOrder - macSuperframeOrder) \leq macBeaconOrder \leq 14$$

The ED of each TMCTP superframe shall be divided into $aNumSuperframeSlots \times 2^{macTmctpExtendedOrder}$ equally spaced slots of duration aBaseSlotDuration in a BOP. The BOP consists of multiple DBSs. Each DBS is composed of one or more base slots, which are *aBaseSlotDuration* in length.

The total duration of the active portion of each TMCTP superframe consists of the SD and the ED.

An example of a TMCTP superframe structure is shown in Figure 6-11, according to various values of the *macBeaconOrder* (BO), the *macSuperframeOrder* (SO), and the *macTmctpExtendedOrder* (EO).

6.2.9 Rail communications and control network (RCCN) superframe structure

Support for the RCCN superframe structure is optional for an RCC device. For typical usage, refer to “Applications of IEEE Std 802.15.4” [B3].

The RCCN superframe structure is shown in Figure 6-12.

The duration of an RCCN superframe slot is as follows:

$$(k + 1) \times aRccnBaseSlotDuration$$

where *k* is the value of the Slot Size Multiplier field of the RCCN descriptor IE, as described in 7.4.2.14.

The superframe begins with an enhanced beacon containing the RCCN descriptor IE. The management downlink slots are used by the RCCN PAN coordinator to send frames to RCCN endpoints, while the management uplink slots are used by RCCN endpoints to send frames to the RCCN PAN coordinator. Channel access in the management uplink slots is performed using slotted CSMA-CA. Following the uplink slots is the CAP, in which communication between any devices in the RCCN may occur; channel access is gained using slotted CSMA-CA, optionally with PCA, as described in 6.2.5.4. Following the CAP is a CFP containing one or more GTSs allocated by the RCCN PAN coordinator.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

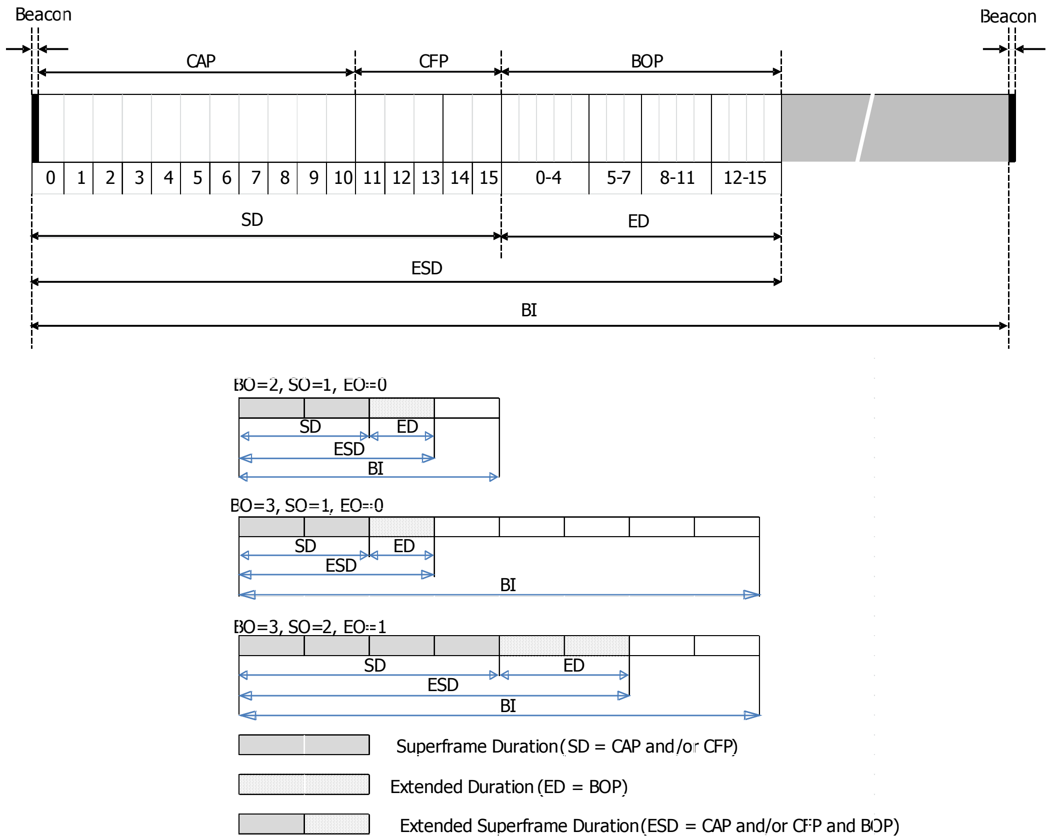


Figure 6-11—An example of the TMCTP superframe structure

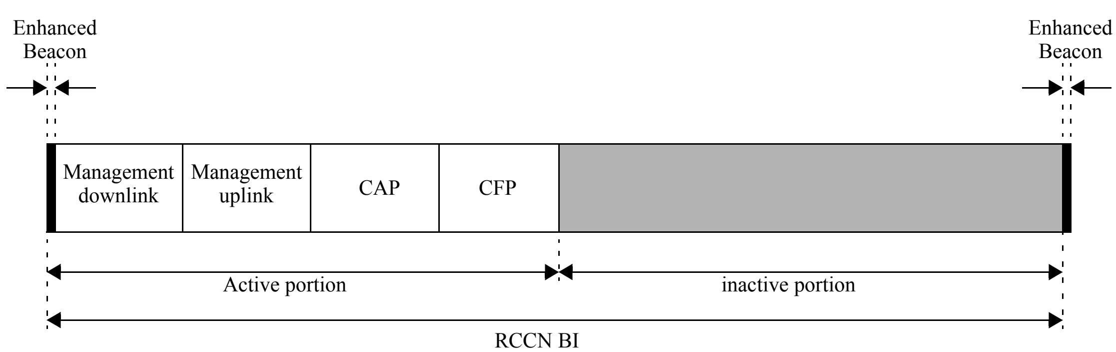


Figure 6-12—RCCN superframe structure

6.2.10 Channel hopping

Networks may support channel hopping using any multichannel PHY. Devices may hop in a slotted mode (e.g., TSCH or DSME) or in an unslotted mode.

The slotted mode uses network coordination within a superframe, for DSME, or slotframe, for TSCH, via a shared hop sequence to which devices participating in the network synchronize. Because the hop dwell time is usually one slot time, the network synchronization covers the needs of hopping and time slots. This mechanism allows a node to communicate with one or many other nodes. The unslotted mode often does not

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

use network synchronization for hopping and time slots. This mechanism allows a node to communicate with one or many other nodes. The unslotted mode often does not use network synchronization for hopping, e.g., networks have many sequences without any global clock. For neighbor devices to communicate, a node needs to know the other nodes's hop sequence and timing. Devices may advertise their hop sequences and timing via Channel Hopping IE and the Hopping Timing IE in Enhanced Beacon frames.

A specific hopping sequence is specified by its Hopping Sequence ID (*macHoppingSequenceId*) with ID = 0 denoting the default hop sequence for a particular PHY (or PHY configuration if the PHY supports more than one channel list). The hopping sequence characteristics are defined in Table 8-87.

This default hopping sequence is a pseudo-randomly shuffled set of all of the channels available to the PHY. The mechanism to generate the default sequence is defined as follows:

a) SHUFFLE is a *macHoppingSequenceLength*-sized array. The contents of this array are equivalent to the first *macHoppingSequenceLength* outputs of a 9-bit linear feedback shift register (LFSR) with polynomial $x^9 + x^5 + 1$ and a starting seed of 255. Each LFSR output is modulo *macHoppingSequenceLength*, so that each entry of SHUFFLE is between 0 and (*macHoppingSequenceLength* − 1), inclusive.
b) CHANNELS is a *macHoppingSequenceLength*-sized array that is initially populated with the monotonically increasing set of channels available to the PHY.
c) CHANNELS is shuffled as per Figure 6-13. Elements may wind up being swapped multiple times in this process.
d) The default sequence (i.e., *macHoppingSequenceList for macHoppingSequenceId* = 0) is equivalent to the shuffled CHANNELS array.

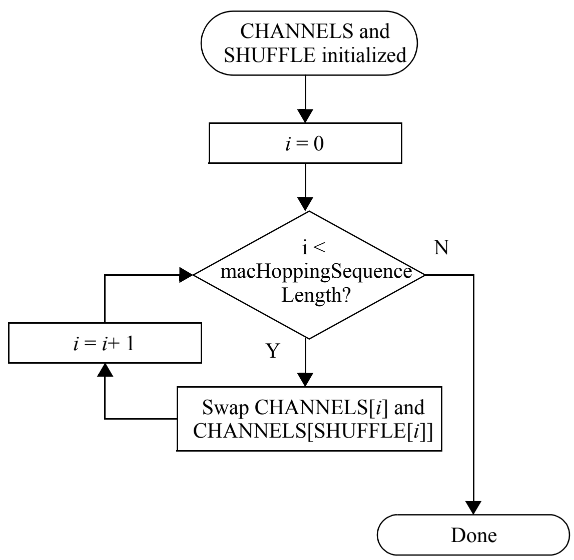


Figure 6-13—CHANNELS shuffle algorithm

The use of other sequences (*macHoppingSequenceId* > 0) may be defined by a particular channel hopping system. The *macHoppingSequenceList* for a *macHoppingSequenceId* > 0 may be longer or shorter than the default sequence and may be specified algorithmically or set as a predefined channel list. Two hopping devices cannot communicate unless their PHYs support the same number of channels, and they either use the default hopping sequence or agree upon the hopping sequence being used, either through carrying this information in an Enhanced Beacon frame, or through pre-configuration.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

For cases where *macHoppingSequenceLength* is greater than the number of channels available to the PHY, this implies that some channels will appear multiple times in the array. For cases where *macHoppingSequenceLength* is less than or equal to the number of channels available to the PHY, some channels available to the PHY may be excluded from the array. The selection of channels (the subset of available PHY channels, and which, if any, channels are used multiple times in the hopping sequence) is implementation-specific.

In general, a device can calculate the channel as follows:

CH = *macHoppingSequenceList* [COUNTER % *macHoppingSequenceLength*]

where the COUNTER is some appropriate shared counter for a pair of devices communicating using that mode, and % indicates modular division.

6.3 Starting and maintaining PANs

6.3.1 Scanning through channels

All devices, except for the RFD-RX and RFD-TX devices, shall be capable of performing passive and orphan scans across a specified set of channels. In addition, an FFD shall be able to perform energy detection (ED) and active scans. Optionally an FFD may be able to perform an enhanced active scan.

A device is instructed to begin a channel scan through the MLME-SCAN.request primitive, as described in 8.2.11.1. Channels are scanned in order from the lowest channel number to the highest. For the duration of the scan, the device shall suspend beacon transmissions, if applicable, and shall only accept frames received over the PHY data service that are relevant to the scan being performed. For HRP UWB and CSS PHYs, each preamble code appropriate to the specified channel is scanned. Upon the conclusion of the scan, the coordinator device in a beacon-enabled PAN shall recommence beacon transmissions. The results of the scan shall be returned via the MLME-SCAN.confirm primitive as described in 8.2.11.2.

6.3.1.1 ED channel scan

An ED scan allows a device to obtain a measure of the peak energy in each requested channel. This could be used by a prospective PAN coordinator to select a channel on which to operate prior to starting a new PAN. During an ED scan, the MAC sublayer shall discard all frames received over the PHY data service.

An ED scan over a specified set of channels is requested using the MLME-SCAN.request primitive with the ScanType parameter set to indicate an ED scan. For each channel, the MLME shall first switch to the channel, by setting *phyCurrentChannel* and *phyCurrentPage* accordingly, and then repeatedly perform an ED measurement for [$aBaseSuperframeDuration \times (2^n + 1)$], where n is the value of the ScanDuration parameter in the MLME-SCAN.request primitive. The maximum ED measurement obtained during this period shall be noted before moving on to the next channel in the channel list. A device shall be able to store at least one channel ED measurement.

The ED scan shall terminate when either the number of channel ED measurements stored equals the implementation-specified maximum or energy has been measured on each of the specified channels.

6.3.1.2 Active and passive channel scan

An active or passive channel scan allows a device to locate any coordinator transmitting Beacon frames within its radio communications range. An active scan uses the Beacon Request command to extract the beacon from a coordinator. In a passive scan, the Beacon Request command is not transmitted. A message sequence chart for active scan is illustrated in Figure 6-14 and for passive scan in Figure 6-15.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

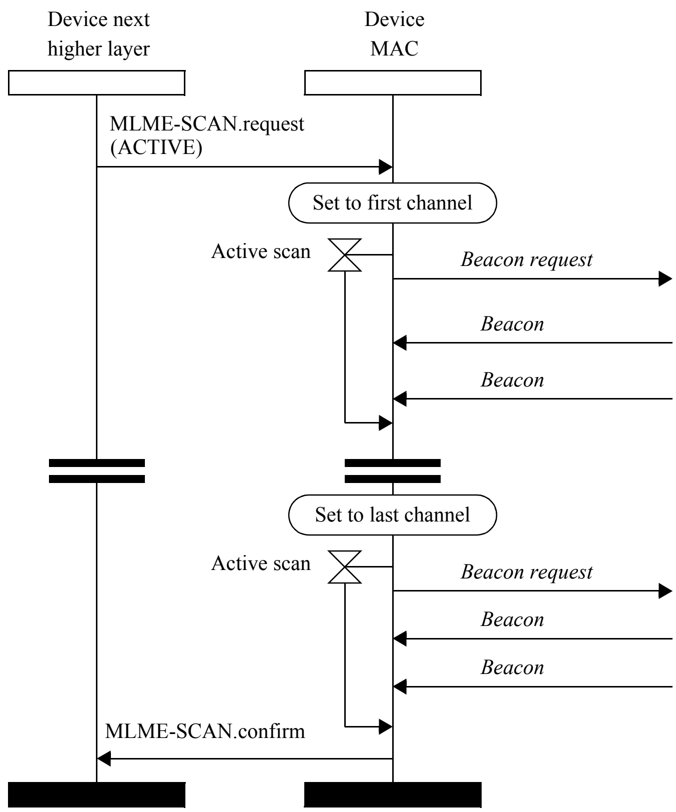


Figure 6-14—Active scan message sequence chart

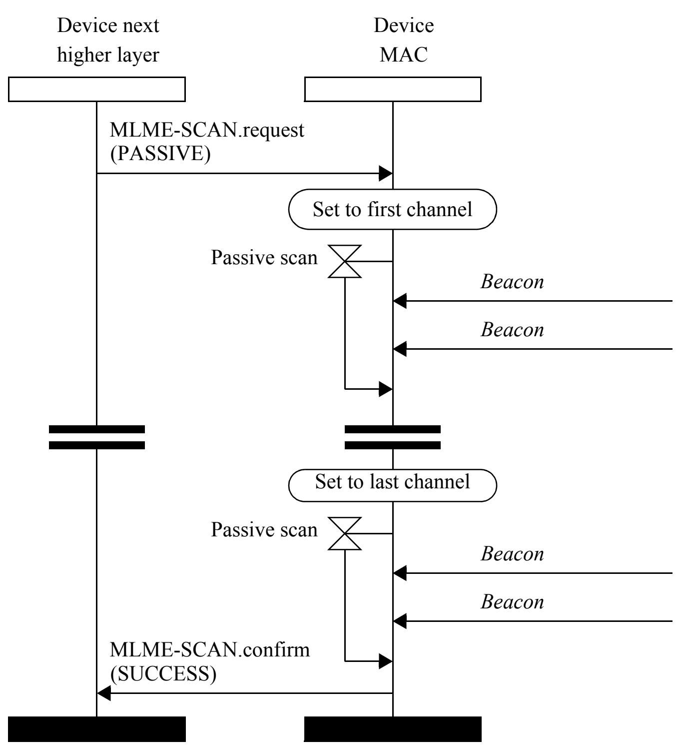


Figure 6-15—Passive scan message sequence chart

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

During an active or passive scan, the MAC sublayer shall discard all frames received over the PHY data service that are not Beacon frames. If a Beacon frame is received that contains the address of the scanning device in its set of pending addresses, the scanning device shall not attempt to extract the pending data.

A passive scan or an active scan or an enhanced active scan over a specified set of channels is requested using the MLME-SCAN.request primitive with the ScanType parameter set to indicate passive scan, an active scan or enhanced active scan respectively. For each channel, the device shall first switch to the channel, by setting *phyCurrentChannel* and *phyCurrentPage* accordingly. For an active scan, the device shall send a Beacon Request command, as described in 7.5.8. For HRP UWB and CSS PHYs, the scan process shall be repeated for each mandatory preamble code, setting the *phyCurrentCode* appropriately. For an enhanced active scan the device shall send an Enhanced Beacon Request command as described in 7.5.9. Upon successful transmission of the Beacon Request command for an active scan or after switching to the channel for a passive scan, the device shall enable its receiver for at most [*aBaseSuperframeDuration* $\times$ $(2^n + 1)$], where n is the value of the ScanDuration parameter. During this time, the device shall reject all frames that are not Beacon frames and record the information contained in all unique beacons in a PAN descriptor structure, as described in Table 8-12 including the channel information and, if required, the preamble code.

If a Beacon frame is received when *macAutoRequest* is set to TRUE, the list of PAN descriptor structures shall be stored by the MAC sublayer until the scan is complete; at this time, the list shall be sent to the next higher layer in the PANDescriptorList parameter of the MLME-SCAN.confirm primitive. A device, optional for RFD-RX and RFD-TX devices, shall be able to store at least one PAN descriptor. A Beacon frame shall be assumed to be unique if it contains both a PAN ID and a source address that has not been seen before during the scan of the current channel.

If a Beacon frame is received when *macAutoRequest* is set to FALSE, each recorded PAN descriptor is sent to the next higher layer in a separate MLME-BEACON-NOTIFY.indication primitive as described in 8.2.5.1. A received Beacon frame containing a nonzero-length payload shall also cause the PAN descriptor to be sent to the next higher layer via the MLME-BEACON-NOTIFY.indication primitive. Once the scan with *macAutoRequest* set to FALSE is complete, the MLME-SCAN.confirm shall be issued to the next higher layer with a null PANDescriptorList.

For HRP UWB and CSS PHYs, the beacon request is repeated for each preamble code.

If a protected Beacon frame is received, i.e., the Security Enabled field is set to one, the device shall attempt to unsecure the Beacon frame using the unsecuring process described in 9.2.3.

The security-related elements of the PAN descriptor corresponding to the beacon, as defined in Table 8-12, shall be set to the corresponding parameters returned by the unsecuring process. The SecurityStatus element of the PAN descriptor shall be set to SUCCESS if the Status from the unsecuring process is SUCCESS and set to one of the other Status codes indicating an error in the security processing otherwise.

The information from the frame to be unsecured shall be recorded in the PAN descriptor even if the Status from the unsecuring process indicated an error.

If a coordinator of a beacon-enabled PAN receives the Beacon Request command, it shall ignore the command and continue transmitting its periodic beacons as usual. If a coordinator of a nonbeacon-enabled PAN receives this command, it shall transmit a single Beacon frame using unslotted CSMA-CA.

If *macAutoRequest* is set to TRUE, the active scan on a particular channel shall terminate when the number of beacons found equals the implementation-specified limit or the channel has been scanned for the full time, as specified in 6.3.1.2. If *macAutoRequest* is set to FALSE, the active scan on a particular channel shall terminate when the channel has been scanned for the full time. If a channel was not scanned for the full time, it shall be considered to be unscanned.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

If *macAutoRequest* is set to TRUE, the entire scan procedure shall terminate when the number of PAN descriptors stored equals the implementation-specified maximum or every channel in the set of available channels has been scanned. If *macAutoRequest* is set to FALSE, the entire scan procedure shall only terminate when every channel in the set of available channels has been scanned.

If a coordinator capable of responding to the Enhanced Beacon Request command, as described in 7.5.9, and capable of filtering receives an Enhanced Beacon Request command, it shall perform the filtering as indicated in the Enhanced Beacon Request command. If the filter conditions are satisfied, it shall transmit the appropriate Enhanced Beacon frame as indicated in Table 6-2.

Table 6-2—Channel access for response to an Enhanced Beacon Request command

Mode of operation	Access method	When to respond
Beacon PAN	Slotted CSMA-CA	Next available CAP
Nonbeacon PAN	Unslotted CSMA-CA	As soon as possible
DSME beacon	Slotted CSMA-CA	At the beginning of the next beacon interval
DSME non-beacon	Unslotted CSMA-CA	As soon as possible
TSCH	Slotted CSMA-CA	Next available time slot on same channel

The messages exchanged when using an enhanced active scan with an Enhanced Beacon Request are shown in Figure 6-16.

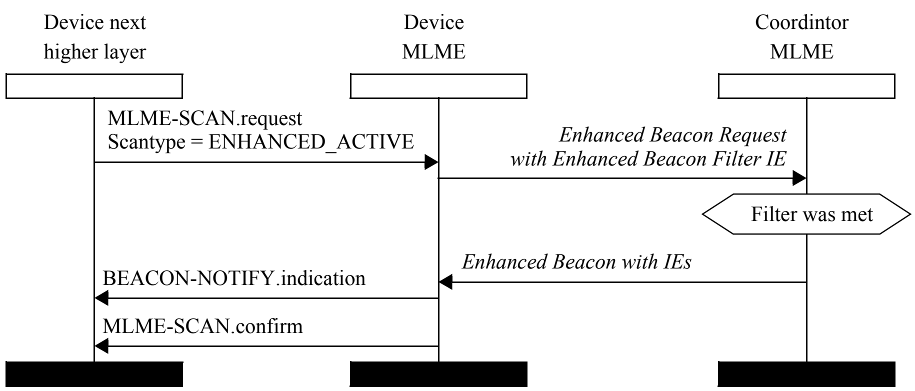


Figure 6-16—Enhanced Active scan with Enhanced Beacon request

6.3.1.3 Orphan channel scan

An orphan scan allows a device to attempt to relocate its coordinator following a loss of synchronization. During an orphan scan, the MAC sublayer shall discard all frames received over the PHY data service that are not Coordinator Realignment commands.

An orphan scan over a specified set of channels is requested using the MLME-SCAN.request primitive with the ScanType parameter set to indicate an orphan scan. For each channel, the device shall first switch to the channel, by setting *phyCurrentChannel* and *phyCurrentPage* accordingly, and for HRP UWB and CSS PHYs, setting the preamble code *phyCurrentCode* appropriately, and then send an Orphan Notification command, as described in 7.5.7. Upon successful transmission of the Orphan Notification command, the device shall enable its receiver for at most *macResponseWaitTime*. If the device successfully receives a

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Coordinator Realignment command, as described in 7.5.10, within this time, the device shall terminate the scan. For the HRP UWB and CSS PHYs, if the Coordinator Realignment command is not received, the process shall be repeated for each preamble code until a Coordinator Realignment command is received or all preamble codes for the PHY have been used.

The orphan scan shall terminate when the device receives a Coordinator Realignment command or the specified set of channels has been scanned.

A example message sequence chart for orphan scan and realignment is shown in Figure 6-17.

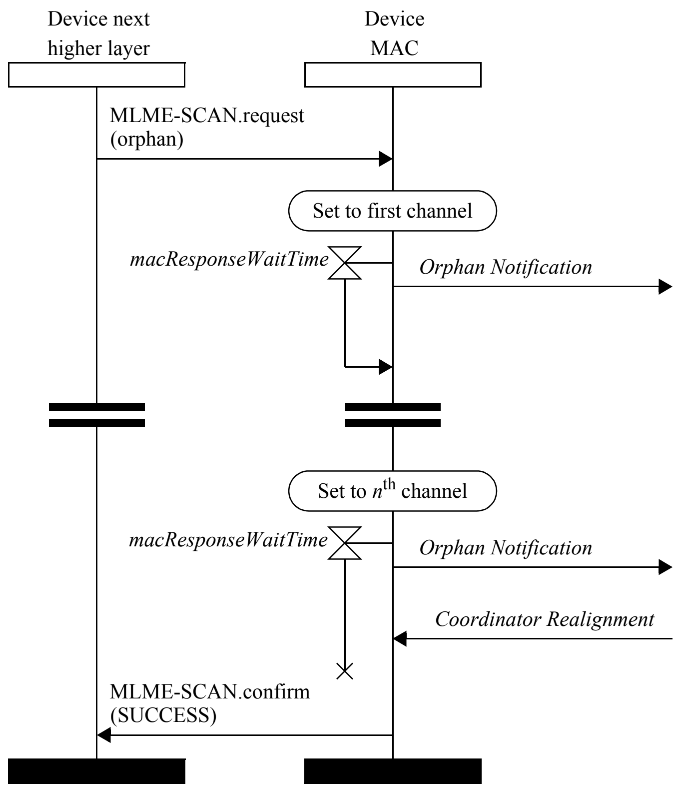


Figure 6-17—Orphaned device realignment message sequence chart

If a coordinator receives the Orphan Notification command, the MLME shall send the MLME-ORPHAN.indication primitive, as described in 8.2.8.1, to the next higher layer. The next higher layer should then search its device list for the device indicated by the primitive. If the next higher layer finds a record of the device, it should send a Coordinator Realignment command to the orphaned device using the MLME-ORPHAN.response primitive, as described in 8.2.8.2, with the AssociatedMember parameter set to TRUE and the ShortAddress parameter set to the corresponding short address allocated to the orphaned device. The process of searching for the device and sending the Coordinator Realignment command shall occur within *macResponseWaitTime*. The Coordinator Realignment command shall contain its current PAN ID, *macPanId*, its current channel and channel page, and the short address of the orphaned device. If the next higher layer of the coordinator finds no record of the device, it should send the MLME-ORPHAN.response primitive to the MLME with the AssociatedMember parameter set to FALSE.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Figure 6-18 illustrates the sequence of messages necessary for a coordinator to issue a notification of an orphaned device.

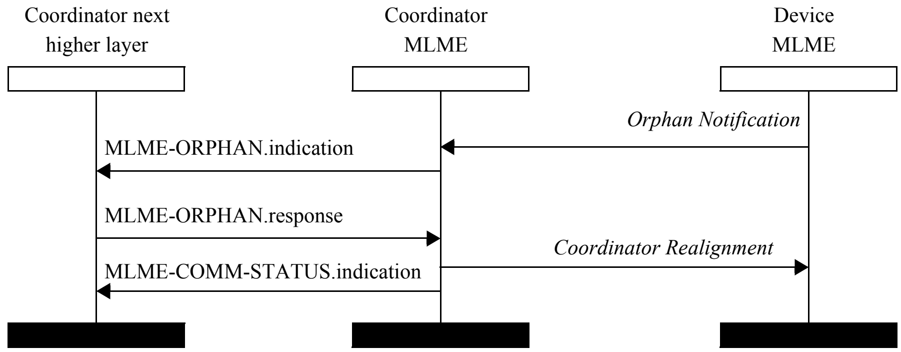


Figure 6-18—Message sequence chart for orphan notification

6.3.1.4 RIT passive channel scan

The RIT passive scan is essentially the passive scan as described 6.3.1.2 but rather than discarding all frames that are not Beacon frames, the RIT passive scan discards all frames that are not RIT Data Request command frames.

A RIT passive scan over a specified set of channels is requested using the MLME-SCAN.request primitive with the Valid Range of the ScanType parameter set to indicate RIT_PASSIVE. For each channel, the device shall set *phyCurrentChannel* and *phyCurrentPage* as per the MLME-SCAN.request primitive. After switching to the channel for an RIT passive scan, the device shall enable its receiver for at most [$macRitPeriod \times n$], where n is the value of ScanDuration parameter. During this time, the device shall reject all frames that are not RIT Data Request command frames and record the information contained in all unique RIT Data Request command frames in a PAN descriptor structure, as described in Table 8-12, including the channel information. A RIT Data Request command frame shall be assumed to be unique if it contains both a PAN ID and a source address that has not been seen before during the scan of the current channel.

If an RIT Data Request command frame is received when *macAutoRequest* is set to TRUE, the list of PAN descriptor structures shall be stored by the MAC sublayer until the scan is complete. When the scan is complete, the list shall be sent to the next higher layer in the PANDescriptorList parameter of the MLME-SCAN.confirm primitive.

If an RIT Data Request command frame is received when *macAutoRequest* is set to FALSE, each recorded PAN descriptor is sent to the next higher layer in a separate MLME-BEACON-NOTIFY.indication primitive, as described in 8.2.5.1. A received RIT Data Request Command frame containing a nonzero-length payload shall also cause the PAN descriptor to be sent to the next higher layer via the MLME-BEACON-NOTIFY.indication primitive. Once the scan with *macAutoRequest* set to FALSE is complete, the MLME-SCAN.confirm shall be issued to the next higher layer with a null PANDescriptorList.

The RIT passive scan procedure is illustrated in Figure 6-19.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

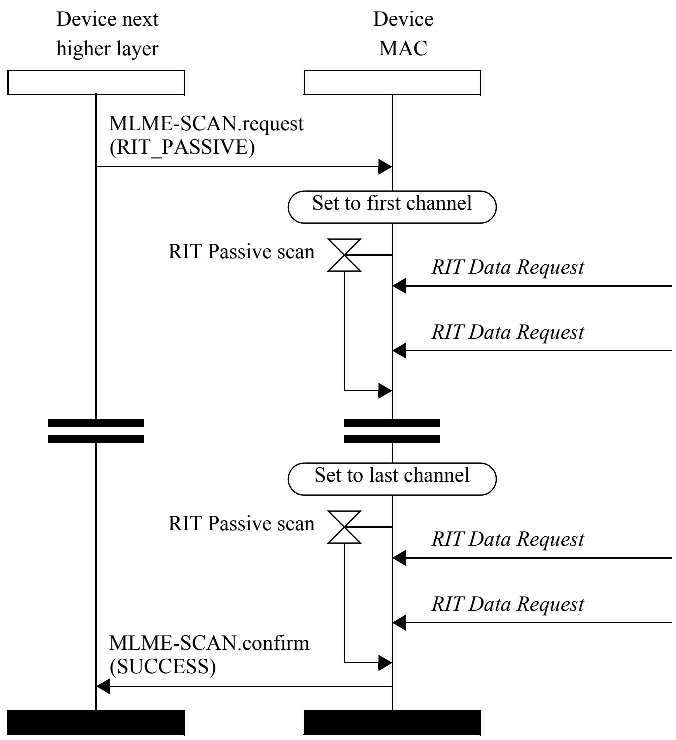


Figure 6-19—RIT Passive scan message sequence chart

6.3.2 PAN ID conflict resolution

In some instances a situation could occur in which two PANs exist in the same radio communications range with the same PAN ID. If this conflict happens, the PAN coordinator and its devices shall perform the PAN ID conflict resolution procedure.

This procedure is optional for an RFD.

6.3.2.1 Detection

The PAN coordinator shall conclude that a PAN ID conflict is present if either of the following apply:

— A Beacon frame is received by the PAN coordinator with the PAN Coordinator field, as defined in 7.3.1.3, set to one and the PAN ID equal to *macPanId*.
— A PAN ID Conflict Notification command, as defined in 7.5.6, is received by the PAN coordinator from a device associated with it on its PAN.

A device that is associated through the PAN coordinator (i.e., *macAssociatedPanCoord* is set to TRUE) shall conclude that a PAN ID conflict is present if the following applies:

— A Beacon frame is received by the device with the PAN Coordinator field set to one, the PAN ID equal to *macPanId*, and an address that is equal to neither *macCoordShortAddress* nor *macCoordExtendedAddress*.

A device that is associated through a coordinator that is not the PAN coordinator shall not be capable of detecting a PAN ID conflict.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

6.3.2.2 Resolution

On the detection of a PAN ID conflict by a device, it shall generate the PAN ID Conflict Notification command, as defined in 7.5.6, and send it to its PAN coordinator. Because the PAN ID Conflict Notification command has the Acknowledgment Request (AR) field set to request an acknowledgment, the PAN coordinator shall confirm its receipt by sending an Ack frame. Once the device has received the Ack frame from the PAN coordinator, the MLME shall issue an MLME-SYNC-LOSS.indication primitive, as described in 8.2.13.2, with the LossReason parameter set to PAN_ID_CONFLICT. If the device does not receive an Ack frame, the MLME shall not inform the next higher layer of the PAN ID conflict.

On the detection of a PAN ID conflict by the PAN coordinator, the MLME shall issue an MLME-SYNC-LOSS.indication to the next higher layer with the LossReason parameter set to PAN_ID_CONFLICT. The next higher layer of the PAN coordinator may then perform an active scan and, using the information from the scan, select a new PAN ID. The algorithm for selecting a suitable PAN ID is outside the scope of this standard. If the next higher layer does select a new PAN ID, it may then issue an MLME-START.request with the CoordRealignment parameter set to TRUE in order to realign the PAN, as described in 6.3.3.

6.3.3 Starting and realigning a PAN

This subclause specifies procedures for the PAN coordinator starting a PAN, coordinators realigning a PAN, and devices being realigned on a PAN.

6.3.3.1 Starting a PAN

A PAN should be started by an FFD only after having first performed a MAC sublayer reset, by issuing the MLME-RESET.request primitive, as described in 8.2.9.1, with the SetDefaultPIB parameter set to TRUE, an ED channel scan, as described in 6.3.1.1, an active channel scan, as described in 6.3.1.2, and selecting a PAN ID distinct from PAN IDs received during the active channel scan. If the device is a SUN device operating as a coordinator, a passive scan for an Coexistence Specification IE should take place prior to the active channel scan, as described in 6.14. The algorithm for selecting a suitable PAN ID from the list of PAN descriptors returned from the active channel scan procedure is out of the scope of this standard. In addition, an FFD should set *macShortAddress* to a value less than 0xffff.

An FFD is instructed to begin operating a PAN through the use of the MLME-START.request primitive, as defined in 8.2.12.1, with the PanCoordinator parameter set to TRUE and the CoordRealigment parameter set to FALSE. On receipt of this primitive, the MAC sublayer shall update the superframe configuration and channel parameters as specified in 6.3.3.4. After completing this, the MAC sublayer shall issue the MLME-START.confirm primitive, as described in 8.2.12.2, with a Status of SUCCESS and begin operating as the PAN coordinator.

A example of a message sequence chart for starting a PAN is illustrated in Figure 6-20.

6.3.3.2 Realigning a PAN

If a coordinator receives the MLME-START.request primitive, as defined in 8.2.12.1, with the CoordRealignment parameter set to TRUE, the coordinator shall attempt to transmit a Coordinator Realignment command containing the new parameters for PanId, ChannelNumber, and, if present, ChannelPage.

When the coordinator is already transmitting beacons and the CoordRealignment parameter is set to TRUE, the next scheduled beacon shall be transmitted on the current channel using the current superframe configuration, with the Frame Pending field set to one. Immediately following the transmission of the beacon, the Coordinator Realignment command shall also be transmitted on the current channel using CSMA-CA.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

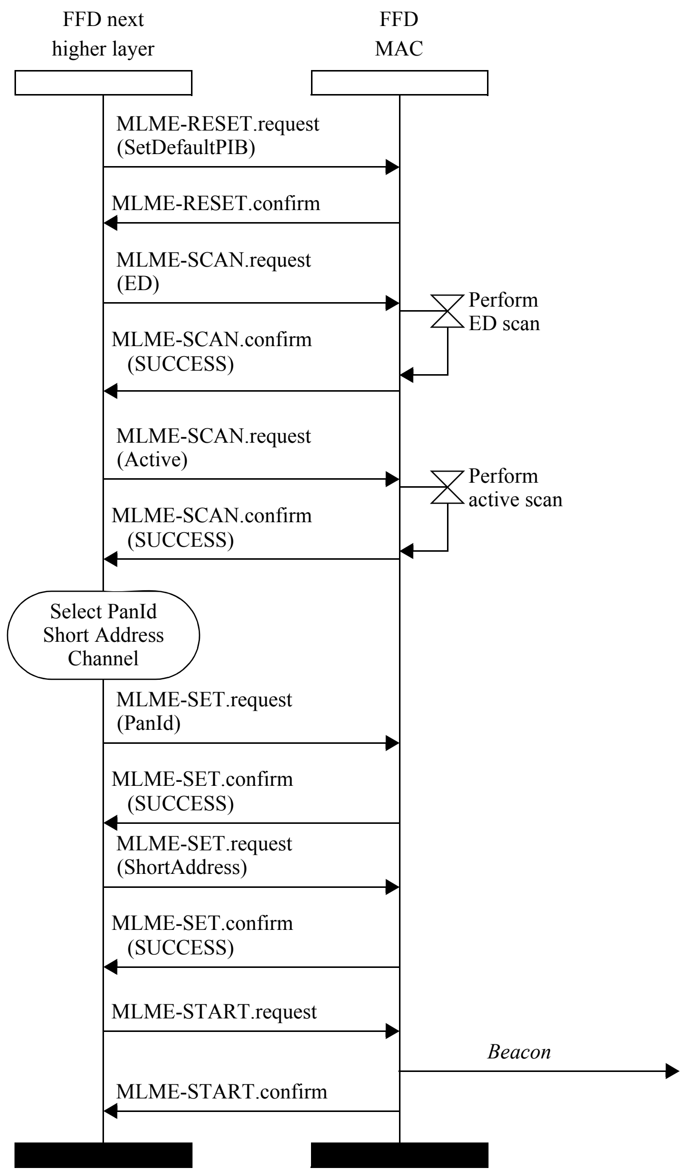


Figure 6-20—PAN start message sequence chart—PAN coordinator

When the coordinator is not already transmitting beacons and the CoordRealignment parameter is set to TRUE, the Coordinator Realignment command shall be transmitted immediately on the current channel using CSMA-CA.

If the transmission of the Coordinator Realignment command fails due to a channel access failure, the MLME shall notify the next higher layer by issuing the MLME-START.confirm primitive with a Status of CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE. The next higher layer may then choose to issue the MLME-START.request primitive again.

Upon successful transmission of the Coordinator Realignment command, the new superframe configuration and channel parameters shall be put into operation as described in 6.3.3.4 at the subsequent scheduled beacon, or immediately if the coordinator is not already transmitting beacons, and the MAC sublayer shall issue the MLME-START.confirm primitive with a Status of SUCCESS.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

6.3.3.3 Realignment in a PAN

If a device has received the Coordinator Realignment command, as defined in 7.5.10, from the coordinator through which it is associated and the MLME was not carrying out an orphan scan, the MLME shall issue the MLME-SYNC-LOSS.indication primitive with the LossReason parameter set to REALIGNMENT and the PanId, ChannelNumber, ChannelPage, and the security-related parameters set to the respective fields in the Coordinator Realignment command. The next higher layer of a coordinator may then issue an MLME-START.request primitive with the CoordRealignment parameter set to TRUE. The next higher layer of a device that is not a coordinator may instead change the superframe configuration or channel parameters through use of the MLME-SET.request primitive, as described in 8.2.6.3.

TSCH devices shall not send a Coordinator Realignment command. TSCH devices that receive a Coordinator Realignment command shall ignore the command.

6.3.3.4 Updating superframe configuration and channel PIB attributes

To update the superframe configuration and channel attributes, the MLME shall assign values from the MLME-START.request primitive parameters to the appropriate PIB attributes. The MLME shall set *macBeaconOrder* to the value of the BeaconOrder parameter. If *macBeaconOrder* is equal to 15, the MLME will also set *macSuperframeOrder* to 15. In this case, this primitive configures a nonbeacon-enabled PAN. If *macBeaconOrder* is less than 15, the MAC sublayer will set *macSuperframeOrder* to the value of the SuperframeOrder parameter. The MAC sublayer shall also update *macPanId* with the value of the PanId parameter and update *phyCurrentPage* and *phyCurrentChannel* with the values of the ChannelPage and ChannelNumber parameters, respectively.

6.3.4 Beacon generation

A device shall be permitted to transmit Beacon frames only if *macShortAddress* is not equal to 0xffff.

An FFD shall use the MLME-START.request primitive to begin transmitting beacons only if the BeaconOrder parameter is less than 15. The FFD may begin beacon transmission either as the PAN coordinator of a new PAN or as a device on a previously established PAN, depending upon the setting of the PanCoordinator parameter, as defined in 8.2.12.1. The FFD shall begin beacon transmission on a previously established PAN only once it has successfully associated with that PAN.

If the FFD is the PAN coordinator (i.e., the PanCoordinator parameter is set to TRUE), the MAC sublayer shall ignore the StartTime parameter and begin beacon transmissions immediately. Setting the StartTime parameter to zero shall also cause the MAC sublayer to begin beacon transmissions immediately. If the FFD is not the PAN coordinator and the StartTime parameter is nonzero, the time to begin beacon transmissions shall be calculated using the following method. The StartTime parameter, which is rounded to a backoff period boundary, shall be added to the time, obtained from the local clock, when the MAC sublayer receives the beacon of the coordinator through which it is associated. The MAC sublayer shall then begin beacon transmissions when the current time, obtained from the local clock, equals the calculated time. In order for the beacon transmission time to be calculated by the MAC sublayer, the MAC sublayer shall first track the beacon of the coordinator through which it is associated. If the MLME-START.request primitive is issued with a nonzero StartTime parameter and the MAC sublayer is not currently tracking the beacon of its coordinator, the MLME shall not begin beacon transmissions but shall instead issue the MLME-START.confirm primitive with a Status of TRACKING_OFF.

If a device misses between one and (*aMaxLostBeacons*–1) consecutive Beacon frames from its coordinator, the device shall continue to transmit its own beacons based on both *macBeaconOrder*, as defined in 6.3.3.4, and its local clock. If the device then receives a Beacon frame from its coordinator and, therefore, does not lose synchronization, the device shall resume transmitting its own beacons based on the StartTime parameter and the incoming beacon. If a device does lose synchronization with its coordinator, the MLME

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

of the device shall issue the MLME-SYNC-LOSS.indication primitive to the next higher layer and immediately stop transmitting its own beacons. The next higher layer may, at any time following the reception of the MLME-SYNC-LOSS.indication primitive, resume beacon transmissions by issuing a new MLME-START.request primitive.

On receipt of the MLME-START.request primitive, the MAC sublayer shall set the PAN ID in *macPanId* and use this value in the Source PAN ID field of the Beacon frame. The address used in the Source Address field of the Beacon frame shall contain the value of *macExtendedAddress* if *macShortAddress* is equal to 0xfffe or *macShortAddress* otherwise.

The time of transmission of the most recent beacon shall be recorded in *macBeaconTxTime* and shall be computed so that its value is taken at the same symbol boundary in each Beacon frame, the location of which is implementation specific. The symbol boundary, which is specified by the *macSyncSymbolOffset* attribute, is the same as that used in the timestamp of the incoming Beacon frame, as described in 6.5.2.

All Beacon frames, as defined in 7.3.1, shall be transmitted at the beginning of each superframe at an interval equal to *aBase-SuperframeDuration* × 2^n, where n is the value of *macBeaconOrder*.

The Enhanced Beacon Request command allows a device to request that a coordinator respond with an Enhanced Beacon containing the requested IEs. Either header or payload IEs may be requested. Header IEs, Payload IEs or Nested IEs are requested by sending the desired IE with a length set to zero. If the Attribute ID field is empty in the Enhanced Beacon Filter IE and the IEs are not included in the Enhanced Beacon Request, then the responding coordinator shall return an Enhanced Beacon frame. If either are present and the filter criteria are met, the responding coordinator shall return an Enhanced Beacon frame containing the IEs as appropriate. If necessary to check filtering or return requested IEs, the Enhanced Beacon Filter IE and other IEs may be passed to a higher layer using the MLME-BEACON-REQUEST.indication primitive provided that the recipient has *macBeaconAutoRespond* set to FALSE.

When an Enhanced Beacon frame is generated in response to an Enhanced Beacon Request command that contained Attribute IDs in the Enhanced Beacon Filter IE, as described in 7.4.4.6, the content of the Enhanced Beacon frame shall include the IEs corresponding to the requested Attribute IDs shown in Table 6-3. A device supporting filtering by the Attribute ID listed in the first column shall also support the IEs in the IEs to include column in Table 6-3. When generated in response to an Enhanced Beacon Request command that contained a request for IEs, as described in 7.5.9, the Enhanced Beacon frame shall also contain the requested IEs.

Table 6-3—Enhanced Beacon Request command IEs per enabled attribute

Attribute ID	PIB attribute	IEs to include
0	*macTrleEnabled*	TRLE Descriptor IE (F.5.1.1)
1	*macTschEnabled*	TSCH Synchronization IE (7.4.4.2), TSCH Slotframe and Link IE (7.4.4.3), TSCH Timeslot IE (7.4.4.4), Channel hopping IE (7.4.4.31)
2	*macDsmeEnabled*	DSME PAN descriptor IE (7.4.2.5)
3	*macLeEnabled*	CSL IE (7.4.2.3), RIT IE (7.4.2.4)
4	*macHoppingEnabled*	Hopping timing IE (7.4.4.5), Channel hopping IE (7.4.4.31)
5	*macDaEnabled*	DA IE (7.4.2.16)
6	*macMpmIe*	Coexistence Specification IE (7.4.4.9)
7–23	—	Reserved

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

For devices operating in beacon-enabled mode in the Japanese 920 MHz band, a coordinator may precede beacon transmission with listen before talk (LBT) without random backoff. The MAC shall ensure that the beacon is transmitted at the beginning of the superframe with accurate timing.

Beacon transmissions shall be given priority over all other transmit and receive operations.

6.3.5 Device discovery

The PAN coordinator or a coordinator indicates its presence on a PAN to other devices by transmitting Beacon frames. This allows the other devices to perform device discovery.

A coordinator that is not the PAN coordinator shall begin transmitting Beacon frames only when it has successfully associated with a PAN. The transmission of Beacon frames by the device is initiated through the use of the MLME-START.request primitive with the PanCoordinator parameter set to FALSE. On receipt of this primitive, the MLME shall begin transmitting beacons based on the StartTime parameter, as described in 6.3.4, using the identifier of the PAN with which the device has associated, *macPanId*, and its extended address, *macExtendedAddress*, if *macShortAddress* is equal to 0xfffe, or its short address, *macShortAddress*, otherwise. A Beacon frame shall be transmitted at a rate of one Beacon frame every *aBaseSuperframeDuration* $\times 2^n$, where n is the value of *macBeaconOrder*.

6.3.6 TSCH PAN formation

A TSCH PAN is formed when a device, referred to as an advertising device, advertises the presence of the network by sending Enhanced Beacon frames upon receipt of a MLME-BEACON.request from a higher layer. In a TSCH PAN the Enhanced Beacon frames contain the following IEs:

- TSCH Synchronization IE, as described in 7.4.4.2, containing timing information so new devices can synchronize to the network.
- Channel hopping IE, as described in 7.4.4.31, containing channel hopping information, as described in 6.2.10.
- TSCH Timeslot IE, as described in 7.4.4.4, containing timeslot information describing when to expect a frame to be transmitted and when to send an acknowledgment.
- TSCH Slotframe and Link IE, as described in 7.4.4.3, containing initial link and slotframe information so new devices know when to listen for transmissions from the advertising device and when they can transmit to the advertising device.

Enhanced Beacon frames in TSCH mode shall not be encrypted, but may be authenticated (i.e., security level 1, 2 or 3).

NOTE—If Enhance Beacon frames were encrypted, the TSCH Synchronization IE used to transmit the ASN to joining devices would be encrypted as well. A joining device or a device that has lost synchronization with the network would be unable to decrypt the Enhanced Beacon frame as the current ASN is required for the generate the nonce. Thus, these devices would be unable to join the network or resynchronize with the network.

The device wishing to join a TSCH network begins passively (preferred) or actively scanning for the network as the result of receiving an MLME-SCAN.request from a higher layer. Once the listening device has heard a valid Enhanced Beacon, it generates an MLME-BEACON-NOTIFY.indication to a higher layer. The higher layer may wait for additional MLME-BEACON-NOTIFY.indication primitives before selecting a TSCH network based upon the value of the Join Metric field in the TSCH Synchronization IE. The higher layer may initialize the slotframe and links contained in the Enhanced Beacon from the preferred TSCH network and switch the device into TSCH mode with a MLME-TSCH-MODE.request.

NOTE—A lower value in the Join Metric field indicates that connection of the beaconing device to a specific network device determined by the higher layer is a shorter route.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

At this point the device is synchronized to the network and may optionally send an Association Request command. If the device uses association, it may request a short address. The sequence of messages exchanged to synchronize a device to the networks is shown in Figure 6-21, and the process of synchronization is described in 6.5.4.

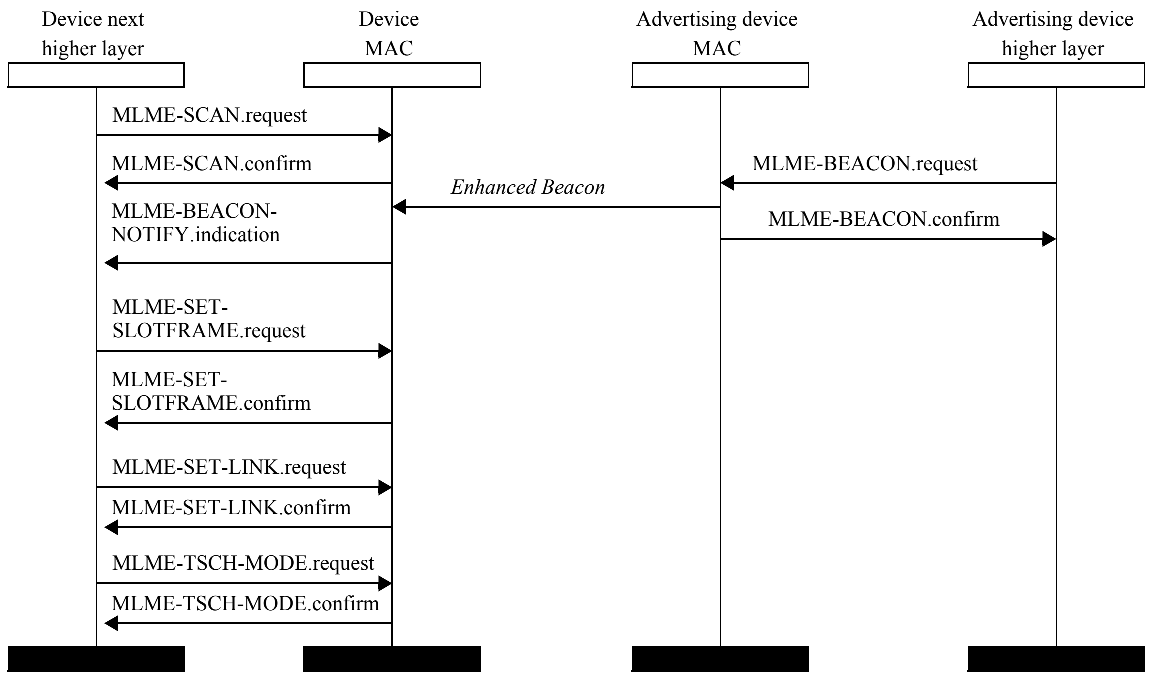


Figure 6-21—Message sequence chart for TSCH procedure to find an advertising device

Typically at this point the device will go through a procedure to allocate additional communication resources (slotframes and links) to the joining device. This procedure may include a security handshake to mutually authenticate the joining device, configure encryption keys, and configure routing information. The mechanism and rules for setting up these additional communication links needs to be defined in a higher layer standard.

Once synchronized and configured by a higher layer to do so, all FFDs that are already part of the network may send Enhanced Beacon frames announcing the presence of the network. The advertising rate and content is configured by a higher layer as appropriate to the density of devices, the desired rate of network formation, and the energy devoted to network formation.

After joining, the device may receive additional slotframes and links from a higher layer management entity or peer. Likewise, the device may be instructed to remove certain slotframes and links obtained from the Enhanced Beacon.

6.4 Association and disassociation

6.4.1 Association

The next higher layer shall attempt to associate only after having first performed a MAC sublayer reset, by issuing the MLME-RESET.request primitive with the SetDefaultPIB set to TRUE, and then having completed either an active or a passive channel scan, as defined in 6.3.1.2. The results of the channel scan would have then been used to choose a suitable PAN. The algorithm for selecting a suitable PAN with which

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

to associate from the list of PAN descriptors returned from the channel scan procedure is outside the scope of this standard.

Following the selection of a PAN with which to associate, the next higher layers shall request through the MLME-ASSOCIATE.request primitive, as described in 8.2.3.1, that the MLME configures the following PHY and MAC PIB attributes to the values necessary for association:

— *phyCurrentChannel* shall be set equal to the ChannelNumber parameter of the MLME-ASSOCIATE.request primitive.
— *phyCurrentPage* shall be set equal to the ChannelPage parameter of the MLME-ASSOCIATE.request primitive.
— *macPanId* shall be set equal to the CoordPanId parameter of the MLME-ASSOCIATE.request primitive.
— *macCoordExtendedAddress* or *macCoordShortAddress*, depending on which is known from the Beacon frame from the coordinator through which it wishes to associate, shall be set equal to the CoordAddress parameter of the MLME-ASSOCIATE.request primitive.

A coordinator shall allow association only if *macAssociationPermit* is set to TRUE. Similarly, a device should attempt to associate only with a PAN through a coordinator that is currently allowing association, as indicated in the results of the scanning procedure. If a coordinator with *macAssociationPermit* set to FALSE receives an Association Request command from a device, the command shall be ignored.

A device that is instructed to associate with a PAN, through the MLME-ASSOCIATE.request primitive, shall try to associate only with an existing PAN and shall not attempt to start its own PAN.

The MAC sublayer of an unassociated device shall initiate the association procedure by sending an Association Request command, as described in 7.5.2, to the coordinator of an existing PAN. This is optional for RFD-RX and RFD-TX devices. If the Association Request command cannot be sent due to a channel access failure, the MAC sublayer shall notify the next higher layer.

The acknowledgment to an Association Request command does not mean that the device has associated. The next higher layer of the coordinator needs time to determine whether the current resources available on the PAN are sufficient to allow another device to associate. The next higher layer should make this decision within *macResponseWaitTime*. If the next higher layer of the coordinator finds that the device was previously associated on its PAN, all previously obtained device-specific information should be replaced. If sufficient resources are available, the next higher layer should allocate a short address to the device that is unique within the PAN, and the MAC sublayer shall generate an Association Response command, as described in 7.5.3, containing the new address and a Status field indicating a successful association. If sufficient resources are not available, the next higher layer of the coordinator should inform the MAC sublayer, and the MLME shall generate an Association Response command containing a Status field indicating a failure, as defined in Table 7-50. The Association Response command shall be sent to the device requesting association using indirect transmission; i.e., the Association Response command shall be added to the list of pending transactions stored on the coordinator and extracted at the discretion of the device concerned using the method described in 6.7.3.

If the Allocate Address field of the Capability Information field, as described in 7.5.2, of the Association Request command is set to one, the next higher layer of the coordinator shall allocate a address with a range depending on the addressing mode supported by the coordinator, as described in Table 6-4. If the Allocate Address field of the Association Request command is set to zero, the short address shall be equal to 0xfffe. A short address of 0xfffe is a special case that indicates that the device has associated but has not been allocated a short address by the coordinator. In this case, the device shall use only its extended address to operate on the network.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

On receipt of the acknowledgment to the Association Request command, the device shall wait for at most *macResponseWaitTime* for the coordinator to make its association decision; *macResponseWaitTime* is a network-topology-dependent parameter and may be set to match the specific requirements of the network that a device is trying to join. If the device is tracking the beacon, it shall attempt to extract the Association Response command from the coordinator whenever it is indicated in the Beacon frame. If the device is not tracking the beacon, it shall attempt to extract the Association Response command from the coordinator after *macResponseWaitTime*. If the device does not receive an Association Response command from the coordinator within *macResponseWaitTime*, the MLME shall issue the MLME-ASSOCIATE.confirm primitive, as described in 8.2.3.4, with a Status of NO_DATA, and the association attempt shall be deemed a failure. In this case, the next higher layer shall terminate any tracking of the beacon. This is achieved by issuing the MLME-SYNC.request primitive, as described in 8.2.13.1, with the TrackBeacon parameter set to FALSE.

If the Association Status field of the Association Response command indicates that the association was successful, the device shall store the address contained in the Short Address field of the command in *macShortAddress*; communication on the PAN using this short address shall depend on its range, as described in Table 6-4. If the original beacon selected for association following a scan contained the short address of the coordinator, the extended address of the coordinator, contained in the MHR of the Association Response command, shall be stored in *macCoordExtendedAddress.*

Table 6-4—Usage of the short address

Value of *macShortAddress*	Description
0x0000–0xfffd	If a source address is included, the device shall use short source addressing mode for Beacon frames and Data frames and the appropriate source addressing mode specified in 7.3.4 for MAC command frames.
0xfffe	If a source address is included, the device shall use extended source addressing mode for Beacon frames and Data frames and the appropriate source addressing mode specified in 7.3.4 for MAC command frames.
0xffff	The device is not associated and, therefore, shall not perform any Data frame communication. The device shall use the appropriate source addressing mode specified in 7.3.4 for MAC commands.

If the value of the Association Status field of the command is not “Association successful,” if there were a communication failure during the association process due to a missed Ack frame, or if the Association Response command were not received, the device, optional for RFD-RX and RFD-TX devices, shall set *macPanId* to the default value.

A message sequence chart for association is illustrated in Figure 6-22.

Figure 6-23 illustrates a sequence of messages that may be used by a device that is not tracking the beacon of the coordinator to successfully associate with a PAN.

Association is optional for devices operating in TSCH mode.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

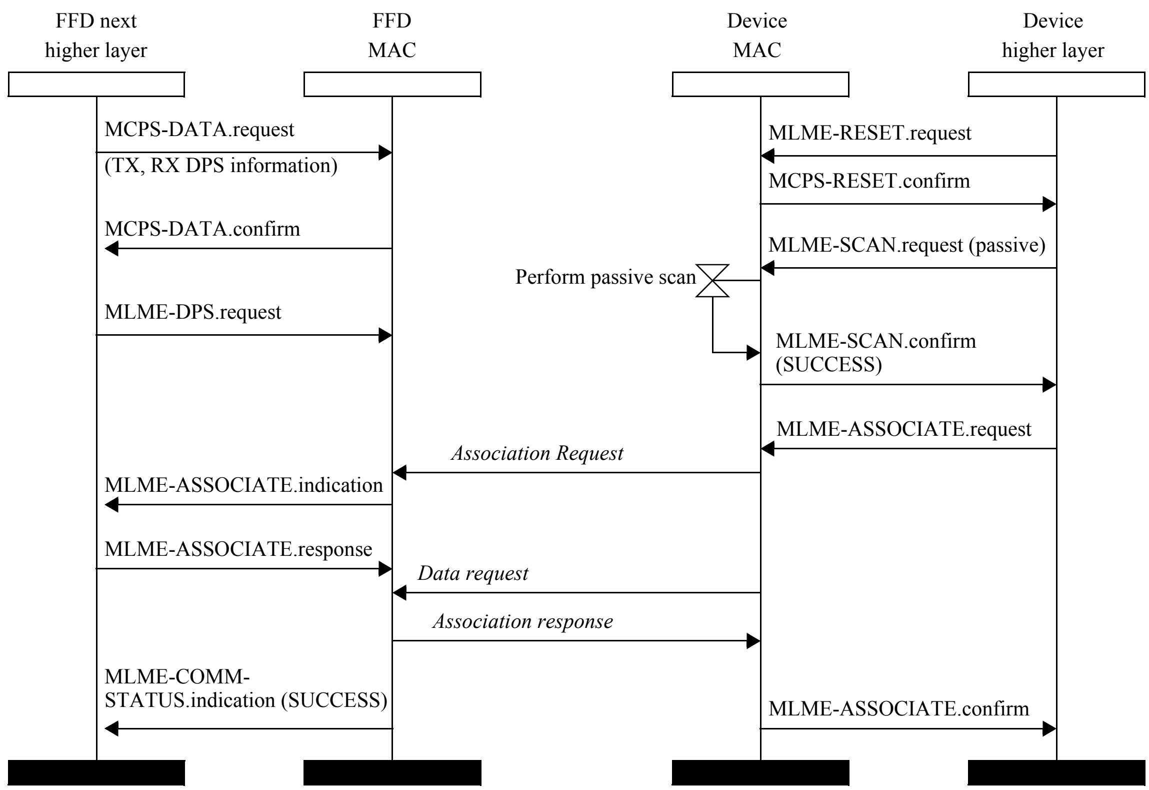


Figure 6-22—Association message sequence chart

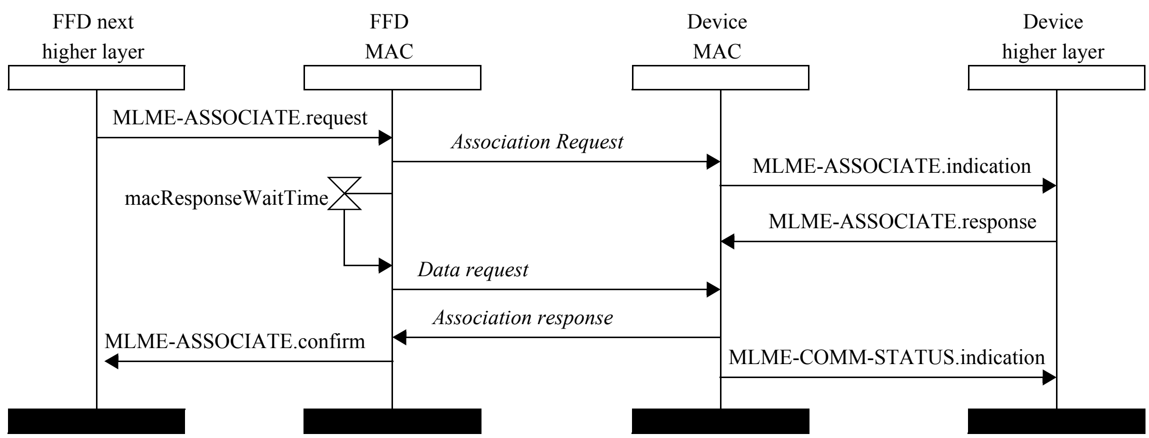


Figure 6-23—Association for a device that is not tracking beacons

6.4.2 Disassociation

The disassociation procedure is initiated by the next higher layer by issuing the MLME-DISASSOCIATE.request primitive, as described in 8.2.4.1, to the MLME.

When a coordinator wants one of its associated devices to leave the PAN, the MLME of the coordinator shall send the Disassociation Notification command in the manner specified by the TxIndirect parameter of the MLME-DISASSOCIATE.request primitive previously sent by the next higher layer. If TxIndirect is TRUE, the MLME of the coordinator shall send the Disassociation Notification command to the device

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

using indirect transmission; i.e., the Disassociation Notification command shall be added to the list of pending transactions stored on the coordinator and extracted at the discretion of the device concerned using the method described in 6.7.3. If the command is not successfully extracted by the device, the coordinator should consider the device disassociated. Otherwise, the MLME shall send the Disassociation Notification command to the device directly. In this case, if the Disassociation Notification command cannot be sent due to a channel access failure, the MAC sublayer shall notify the next higher layer.

If the direct or indirect transmission fails, the coordinator should consider the device disassociated.

If an associated device wants to leave the PAN, the MLME of the device shall send a Disassociation Notification command to its coordinator. If the Disassociation Notification command cannot be sent due to a channel access failure, the MAC sublayer shall notify the next higher layer. If the acknowledgment to Disassociation Notification command is not received, the device should consider itself disassociated.

If the source address contained in the Disassociation Notification command is equal to *macCoordExtendedAddress*, the device should consider itself disassociated. If the command is received by a coordinator and the source is not equal to *macCoordExtendedAddress*, it shall verify that the source address corresponds to one of its associated devices; if so, the coordinator should consider the device disassociated. If none of these conditions are satisfied, the Disassociation Notification command shall be ignored.

An associated device shall disassociate itself by removing all references to the PAN; the MLME shall set *macPanId*, *macShortAddress*, *macAssociatedPanCoord*, *macCoordShortAddress*, and *macCoordExtendedAddress* to the default values. The next higher layer of a coordinator should disassociate a device by removing all references to that device.

The next higher layer of the requesting device shall be notified of the result of the disassociation procedure through the MLME-DISASSOCIATE.confirm primitive, as described in 8.2.4.3.

Figure 6-24 illustrates the sequence of messages for a device to disassociate itself from the PAN.

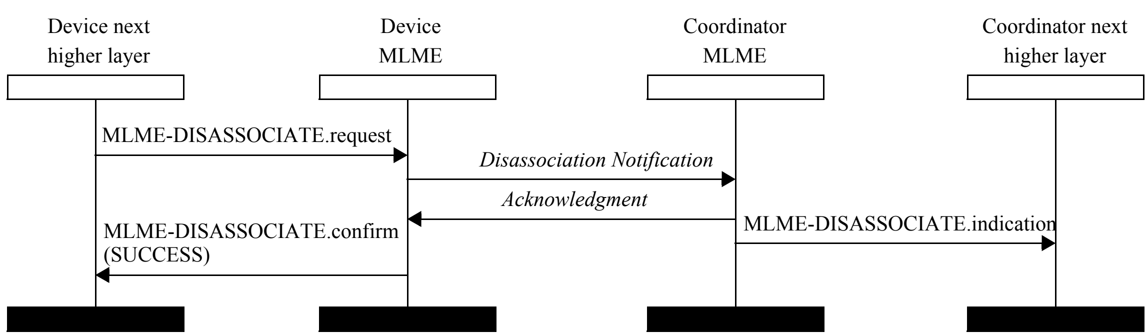


Figure 6-24—Message sequence chart for disassociation initiated by a device

Figure 6-25 illustrates the sequence necessary for a coordinator in a beacon-enabled PAN to successfully disassociate a device from its PAN using indirect transmission.

For devices using the optional TSCH mode, additional disassociation behavior is required. A device shall only disassociate from the PAN if it receives a Disassociation Notification command from either the PAN coordinator, or all of its time source neighbors, as defined in 6.5.4.

Upon determining that it should disassociate from the PAN, the device shall transmit Disassociate Notification commands to all its neighbors on any available link for *macDisconnectTime* timeslots, after which it should clear all synchronization information and leave the PAN.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

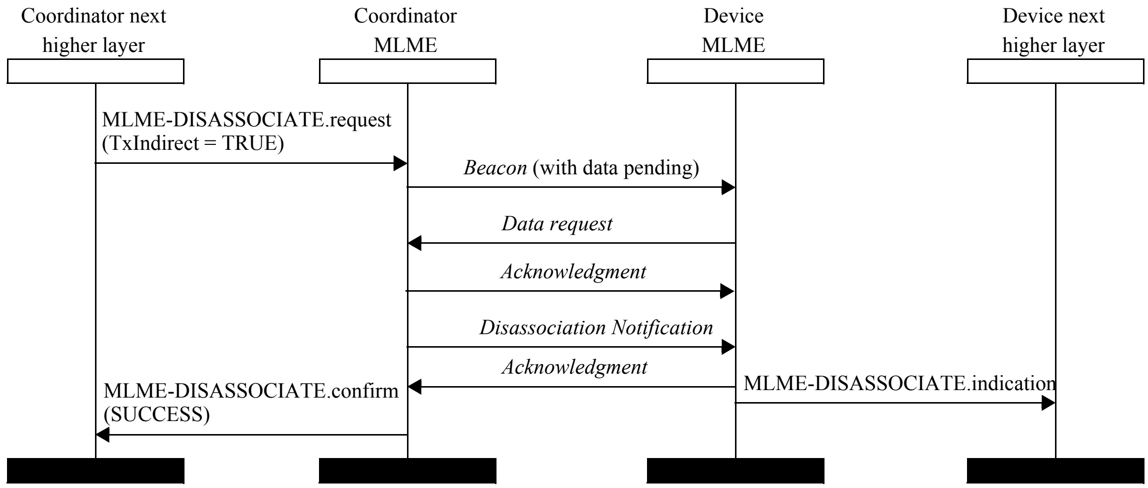


Figure 6-25—Message sequence chart for disassociation initiated by a coordinator, using indirect transmission, in a beacon-enabled PAN

6.4.3 Fast association

Fast association is optional.

A device is instructed to fast associate with a PAN through the MLME-ASSOCIATE.request primitive.

The MAC sublayer of an unassociated device initiates the fast association procedure by sending an Association Request command with the Association Type field of the Capability Information field set to one to the coordinator of an existing PAN.

If the device does not receive an Association Response command from the coordinator within *macResponseWaitTime*, the MLME shall issue the MLME-ASSOCIATE.confirm primitive, as described in 8.2.3.4, with a Status of NO_DATA, and the association attempt shall be deemed a failure.

If the coordinator next higher layer accepts the association request, it send an MLME-ASSOCIATE.response to the MAC sublayer allocating a short address to the device that is unique within the PAN. If the coordinator next higher layer rejects the association request, it will send an MLME-ASSOCIATE.response with a Status parameter indicating the reason for the rejection. Upon receipt of an MLME-ASSOCIATE.response primitive, the MAC sublayer shall generate an Association Response command. If the request was successful, the Association Response command contains the new address and a Status field indicating a successful fast association. If the request failed, the Association Response command with a Status field set to indicate the reason the request failed.

If the Association Type field of the Capability Information field of the Association Request command is set to one, the MAC sublayer of the coordinator shall send the Association Response command to the device directly. If the Association Type field of the Capability Information field of the Association Request command is set to zero, the Association Response command shall be sent as 6.4.1.

If the Association Status field of the command indicates "fast association successful," the device shall store the address contained in the Short Address field of the command in *macShortAddress* for its communication use in the PAN.

Figure 6-26 illustrates a sequence of messages for fast association.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

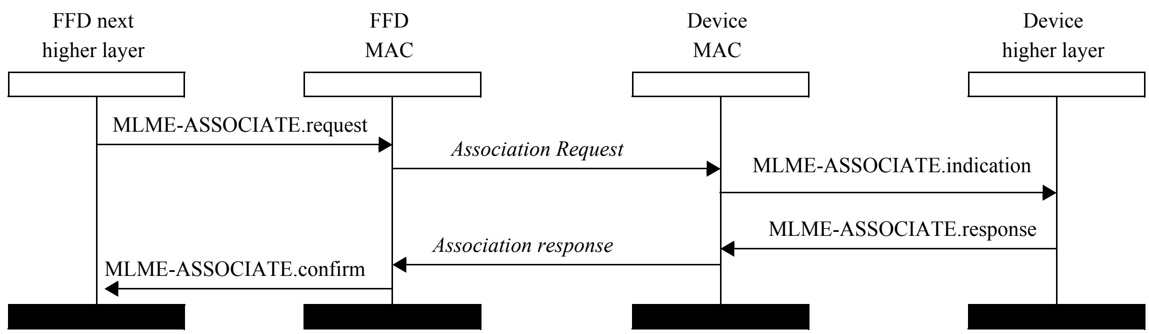


Figure 6-26—Fast Association message sequence chart

6.5 Synchronization

6.5.1 General

This subclause specifies the procedures for coordinators to generate Beacon frames and for devices to synchronize with a coordinator. For PANs supporting Beacon frames, synchronization is performed by receiving and decoding the Beacon frames. For PANs not supporting Beacon frames, synchronization is performed by polling the coordinator for data.

For devices using the optional TSCH mode, initial synchronization is performed by the use of Enhanced Beacon frames, and synchronization is maintained by slotted communication with other devices in the PAN.

6.5.2 Synchronization with beacons

All devices operating on a beacon-enabled PAN (i.e., *macBeaconOrder* < 15) shall be able to acquire beacon sychronization in order to detect any pending messages or to track the beacon. Devices shall be permitted to acquire beacon synchronization only with beacons containing the PAN ID specified in *macPanId*. If *macPanId* specifies the broadcast PAN ID, a device shall not attempt to acquire beacon synchronization.

A device is instructed to attempt to acquire the beacon through the MLME-SYNC.request primitive. If tracking is specified in the MLME-SYNC.request primitive, the device shall attempt to acquire the beacon and keep track of it by regular and timely activation of its receiver. If tracking is not specified, the device shall either attempt to acquire the beacon only once or terminate the tracking after the next beacon if tracking was enabled through a previous request.

To acquire beacon synchronization, a device shall enable its receiver and search for at most [*aBaseSuperframeDuration* × $(2^n + 1)$], where n is the value of *macBeaconOrder*. If a Beacon frame containing the current PAN ID of the device is not received, the MLME shall repeat this search. Once the number of missed beacons reaches *aMaxLostBeacons*, the MLME shall notify the next higher layer by issuing the MLME-SYNC-LOSS.indication primitive with a loss reason of BEACON_LOSS.

The MLME shall timestamp each received Beacon frame at the same symbol boundary within each frame, the location of which is described by the *macSyncSymbolOffset* attribute. The symbol boundary shall be the same as that used in the timestamp of the outgoing Beacon frame, stored in *macBeaconTxTime*. The timestamp value shall be that of the local clock of the device at the time of the symbol boundary. The timestamp is intended to be a relative time measurement that may or may not be made absolute, at the discretion of the implementer.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

If a protected Beacon frame is received (i.e., the Security Enabled field is set to one), the device shall attempt to unsecure the Beacon frame using the unsecuring process described in 9.2.3.

If the Status from the unsecuring process is not SUCCESS, the MLME shall issue an MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication primitive, as described in 8.2.5.2, with the Status parameter set to the Status from the unsecuring process, indicating the error.

The security-related elements of the PAN descriptor corresponding to the beacon, as defined in Table 8-12, shall be set to the corresponding parameters returned by the unsecuring process. The SecurityStatus element of the PAN descriptor shall be set to SUCCESS if the Status from the unsecuring process is SUCCESS and set to one of the other Status codes indicating an error in the security processing otherwise.

If a Beacon frame is received, the MLME shall discard the Beacon frame if the Source Address and the Source PAN ID fields of the MHR of the Beacon frame do not match the coordinator source address (*macCoordShortAddress* or *macCoordExtendedAddress*, depending on the addressing mode) and the PAN ID of the device (*macPanId*).

If a valid Beacon frame is received and *macAutoRequest* is set to FALSE, the MLME shall indicate the beacon parameters to the next higher layer by issuing the MLME-BEACON-NOTIFY.indication primitive. If a Beacon frame is received and *macAutoRequest* is set to TRUE, the MLME shall first issue the MLME-BEACON-NOTIFY.indication primitive if the beacon contains any payload. The MLME shall then compare its address with those addresses in the Address List field of the Beacon frame. If the Address List field contains the short address or extended address of the device and the source PAN ID matches *macPanId*, the MLME shall follow the procedure for extracting pending data from the coordinator, as described in 6.7.3.

If beacon tracking is activated, the MLME shall enable its receiver at a time prior to the next expected Beacon frame transmission, i.e., just before the known start of the next superframe. If the number of consecutive beacons missed by the MLME reaches *aMaxLostBeacons*, the MLME shall respond with the MLME-SYNC-LOSS.indication primitive with a loss reason of BEACON_LOST.

In Figure 6-27 the next higher layer issues a synchronization request with TrackBeacon set to FALSE. The MLME then searches for a beacon and, if found, determines whether the coordinator has any data pending for the device. If so, the data are requested as described in 6.7.3.

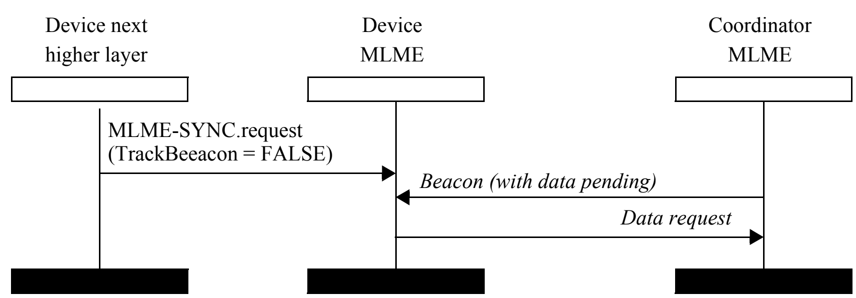


Figure 6-27—Synchronizing to a coordinator in a beacon-enabled PAN without tracking beacons

In Figure 6-28, the next higher layer issues a synchronization request with TrackBeacon set to TRUE. The MLME then searches for a beacon and, if found, attempts to keep track of it using a timer that expires just before the expected time of the next beacon.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

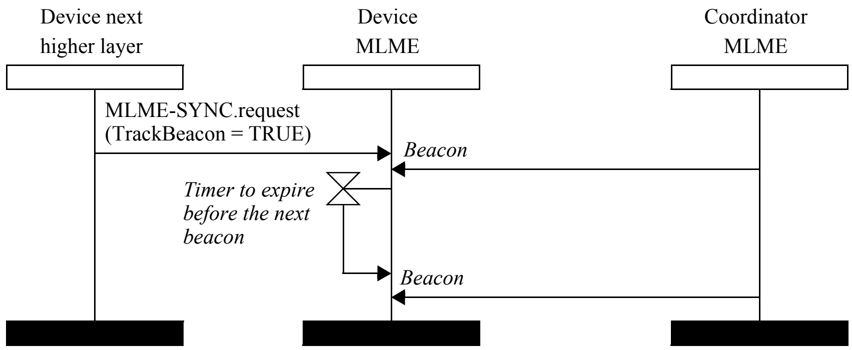


Figure 6-28—Synchronizing to a coordinator in a beacon-enabled PAN while tracking beacons

6.5.3 Synchronization without beacons

All devices, except for RFD-RX and RFD-TX devices, operating on a nonbeacon-enabled PAN (*macBeaconOrder* = 15) shall be able to poll the coordinator for data at the discretion of the next higher layer.

A device is instructed to poll the coordinator when the MLME receives the MLME-POLL.request primitive, as described in 8.2.14.1. On receipt of this primitive, the MLME shall follow the procedure for extracting pending data from the coordinator, as described in 6.7.3.

6.5.4 Synchronization in TSCH PAN

In a TSCH PAN, all communication happens in timeslots as described in 6.5.4.1. To remain synchronized, the devices should have the same notion of when each timeslot begins and ends, within ± *macTsRxWait*/2. In a typical TSCH PAN, time propagates outwards from the PAN coordinator. A device shall periodically synchronize its network time to at least one other network device, which is a time source neighbor. A time source neighbor is another device for which the *macLinkTimekeeping* is TRUE for the *macLinkHandle* a link. The device may also provide its network time to one or more network devices. A higher layer may add or change time source neighbors at any time.

Note that a device sending Enhanced Beacons to advertise a TSCH PAN should set the Timekeeping bit in the Link Option field, as described in 7.4.4.3, for the joining devices' receive link so that joining devices can maintain time synchronization until additional time source neighbors are configured by a higher layer.

A network device may have more than one neighbor as its time source. In such cases, the device shall synchronize its time to all of the neighbors that are acting as its time source, synchronizing to the relative drift of all its time source neighbors.

Figure 6-29 shows an example of time propagation in a TSCH PAN. The arrows indicate the direction of time distribution. In this example, the PAN coordinator acts as the time source for the entire network. Device 1 synchronizes to the PAN coordinator only, and is the time source for device 3. Device 2 synchronizes its time to both 1 and the PAN coordinator, and device 4 synchronizes to the PAN coordinator, device 2, and device 3.

Synchronization is possible whenever a device exchanges a frame with a time source neighbor. This can either come from receiving an acknowledgment with time correction information, as described in 7.4.2.7, or from the arrival time of a frame from the time source neighbor. Both methods are described in 6.5.4.2.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

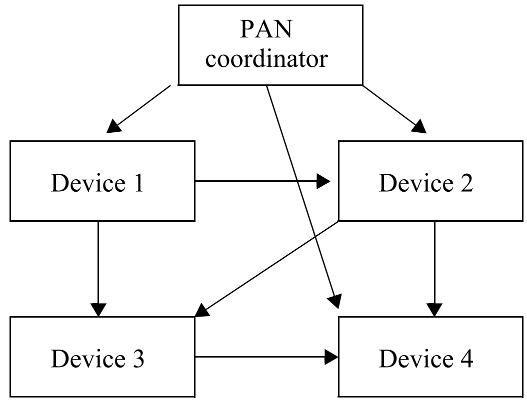


Figure 6-29—Example of possible time propagation in a TSCH PAN

In order to ensure that it remains synchronized with the TSCH PAN, a network device shall ensure that it communicates with each of its timekeeping neighbors, as defined in 8.2.19.7.

6.5.4.1 Timeslot communication

During a timeslot in a slotframe, one node typically sends a frame, and another sends back an Enh-Ack frame containing the Time Correction IE, as described in 7.4.2.7, if it successfully receives that frame. A positive acknowledgment indicates that the receiver has successfully received the frame and has taken ownership of it for further routing. A negative acknowledgment indicates that the receiver cannot accept the frame at this time, but has received it with no errors. The Time Correction IE includes timing information used by nodes to maintain network synchronization. Frames sent to a unicast node address require that a link-layer acknowledgment be sent in response during the same timeslot as shown in Figure 6-30. If an acknowledgment is requested and not received within the time-out period, retransmission of the frame waits until the next assigned transmit timeslot to that address occurs.

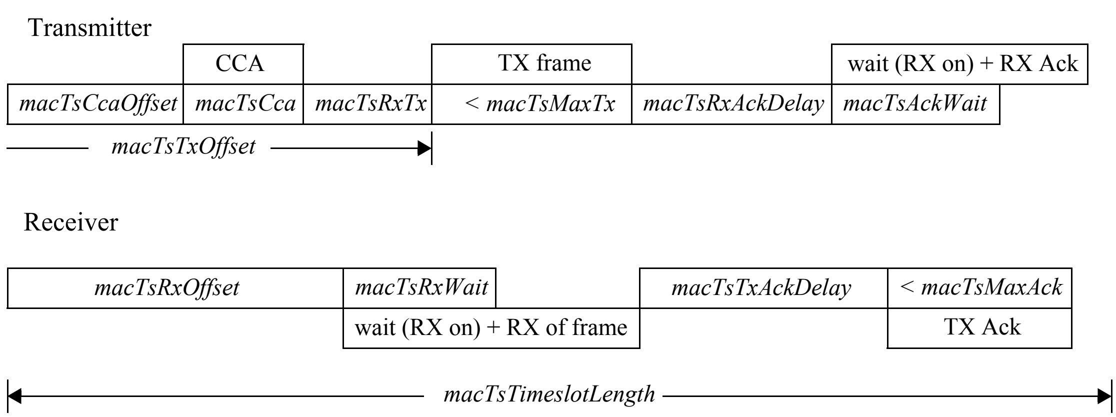


Figure 6-30—Timeslot diagram of acknowledged transmission

As shown in Figure 6-30, the timeslot starts at time T = 0 from the transmitting device's perspective. The transmitter waits *macTsCcaOffset* and then performs CCA (if active). At *macTsTxOffset*, the device begins transmitting the frame. If an acknowledgment is expected, the device waits *macTsRxAckDelay* and then enables the receiver to await the acknowledgment. If the acknowledgment does not arrive within the expected time the device may idle the radio and consider the transmission a failure. If no acknowledgment is expected, the transmitter may idle the radio after sending the frame.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

On the receiver's side, at its estimate of T = 0 it waits *macTsRxOffset* and then goes into receive mode for *macTsRxWait*. If the frame has not started by that time, it may idle the receiver. Otherwise, once the frame has been received, the receiver waits *macTsTxAckDelay* and then sends an acknowledgment.

The transmitter or receiver may resynchronize clocks as described in 6.5.4.2.

6.5.4.2 Node synchronization

Device-to-device synchronization is necessary to maintain connection with neighbors in a slotframe-based network. There are two methods for a device to synchronize to the network, Acknowledgment-based and Frame-based. Originator in this context is the device sending a frame, and receiver is the device receiving that frame and sending back an acknowledgment as is appropriate. Since timestamps are required to maintain synchronization in a TSCH PAN, all devices shall have *macTimestampSupported* = TRUE.

Acknowledged communication provides a basic method of time synchronization through the exchange of Data frames and Ack frames. The algorithm involves the receiver calculating the delta between the expected time of frame arrival and its actual arrival, and providing that information to the transmitting node in the subsequent acknowledgment.

The acknowledgment-based synchronization algorithm can be described as follows:

- Originator sends a frame, timing the start symbol to be sent at *macTsTxOffset* according to its clock, which would correspond to *macTsRxOffset* + *macTsRxWait*/2 in the receiver's clock if both clocks were perfectly synchronized.
- Receiver records the timestamp when it receives the start symbol of the frame.
- Receiver calculates a time correction = *macTsRxOffset* + *macTsRxWait*/2 − arrival timestamp.
- Receiver sends back the time correction in the IE field in the corresponding Enh-Ack frame (assuming the incoming frame passes validation).
- Originator receives the acknowledgment. If the receiver node is a time source neighbor, the originator adjusts its own clock by incorporating the difference into an average of the drift to all its time source neighbors. The averaging method is implementation dependent. If the receiver is not a clock source, the time correction is ignored.

In Frame-based synchronization a node may synchronize its own network clock if it receives a frame from a time source neighbor. The receiver calculates the delta between expected time of frame arrival and its actual arrival time to use that information to adjust its own clock.

The Frame-based synchronization algorithm can be described as follows:

- Receiver records the timestamp when it receives the start symbol of the frame.
- The receiver calculates a time correction = *macTsRxOffset* + *macTsRxWait*/2 − arrival timestamp.
- If the originator was a time source neighbor, the receiver adjusts its own clock by incorporating the information from all of its time source neighbors in an implementation-dependent manner. If the originator is not a time source neighbor, the time correction shall be ignored.

Figure 6-31 illustrates both time synchronization mechanisms. In both cases, the receiver calculates its time adjustment to either send back to the transmitting device or to use locally.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

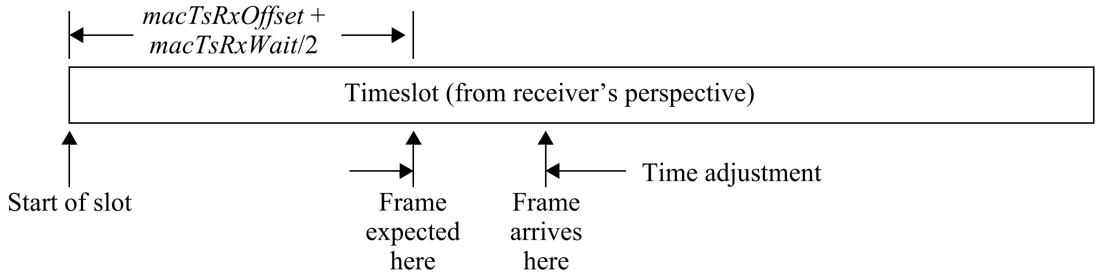


Figure 6-31—Time synchronization

6.5.5 Orphaned device realignment

If the next higher layer receives repeated communications failures following its requests to transmit data, it may conclude that it has been orphaned. A single communications failure occurs when a device transaction fails to reach the coordinator; i.e., an acknowledgment is not received after *macMaxFrameRetries* attempts at sending the data. If the next higher layer concludes that it has been orphaned, it may instruct the MLME to either perform the orphaned device realignment procedure or reset the MAC sublayer and then perform the association procedure.

If the decision has been made by the next higher layer to perform the orphaned device realignment procedure, it will have issued an MLME-SCAN.request with the ScanType parameter set to orphan scan and the ScanChannel parameter containing the set of channels to be scanned. Upon receiving this primitive, the MAC sublayer shall begin an orphan scan, as described in 6.3.1.3.

If the orphan scan is successful (i.e., its PAN has been located), the device shall update its MAC PIB with the PAN information contained in the Coordinator Realignment command, as described in 7.5.10.

6.6 Transaction handling

Because this standard favors very low cost devices that, in general, will be battery powered, transactions can be instigated from the devices themselves rather than from the coordinator. In other words, either the coordinator needs to indicate in its beacon when messages are pending for devices or the devices themselves need to poll the coordinator to determine whether they have any messages pending. Such transfers are called indirect transmissions.

The coordinator shall begin handling a transaction on receipt of an indirect transmission request either via the MCPS-DATA.request primitive or via a request from the MLME to send a MAC command instigated by a primitive from the next higher layer, such as the MLME-ASSOCIATE.response primitive, as described in 8.2.3.3. On completion of the transaction, the MAC sublayer shall indicate a Status value to the next higher layer. If a request primitive instigated the indirect transmission, the corresponding confirm primitive shall be used to convey the appropriate Status value. Conversely, if a response primitive instigated the indirect transmission, the MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication primitive shall be used to convey the appropriate Status value. The MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication primitive can be related to its corresponding response primitive by examining the Destination Address field.

The information contained in the indirect transmission request forms a transaction, and except for RFD-RX devices serving as PAN coordinator termination points, the coordinator shall be capable of storing at least one transaction. On receipt of an indirect transmission request, if there is no capacity to store another transaction, the MAC sublayer shall indicate to the next higher layer a Status of TRANSACTION_OVERFLOW in the appropriate corresponding primitive.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

If the coordinator is capable of storing more than one transaction, it shall ensure that all the transactions for the same device are sent in the order in which they arrived at the MAC sublayer. For each transaction sent, if another exists for the same device, the MAC sublayer shall set its Frame Pending field to one, indicating the additional pending data.

Each transaction shall persist in the coordinator for at most *macTransactionPersistenceTime*. If the transaction is not successfully extracted by the appropriate device within this time, the transaction information shall be discarded and the MAC sublayer shall indicate to the next higher layer a Status of TRANSACTION_EXPIRED in the appropriate corresponding primitive. In order to be successfully extracted, an acknowledgment shall be received if one was requested.

If the transaction was successful, the transaction information shall be discarded, and the MAC sublayer shall indicate to the next higher layer a Status of SUCCESS in the appropriate corresponding primitive.

If the coordinator transmits beacons, it shall list the addresses of the devices to which each transaction is associated in the Address List field and indicate the number of addresses in the Pending Address Specification field of the Beacon frame. If the coordinator is able to store more than seven pending transactions, it shall indicate them in its beacon on a first-come-first-served basis, ensuring that the Beacon frame contains at most seven addresses. For transactions requiring a GTS, the PAN coordinator shall not add the address of the recipient to its set of pending addresses in the Beacon frame. Instead it shall transmit the transaction in the GTS allocated for the device, as described in 6.8.4.

If there is a transaction pending for the broadcast address, the Frame Pending field in the Beacon frame shall be set to one, and the pending message shall be transmitted immediately following the Beacon frame using the CSMA-CA algorithm. TSCH mode indirect behavior is further described in 7.2.1.3. In a beacon-enabled PAN, if there is a second message pending for the broadcast address, its transmission shall be delayed until the following superframe.

If a device receives a Beacon frame with the Frame Pending field set to one, it shall leave its receiver enabled to receive the broadcast Data frame from the coordinator.

In a nonbeacon-enabled PAN, upon receipt of the MLME-POLL.request primitive, a device shall attempt to extract the data from the coordinator, as defined in 6.7.3.

In a beacon-enabled PAN, a device that receives a Beacon frame containing its address in the set of pending addresses shall attempt to extract the data from the coordinator, as defined in 6.7.3.

6.7 Transmission, reception, and acknowledgment

6.7.1 Transmission

Each device shall store its current DSN value in the MAC PIB attribute *macDsn* and initialize it to a random value; the algorithm for choosing a random number is outside the scope of this standard. Each time a Data frame or a MAC command is generated, the MAC sublayer shall copy the value of *macDsn* into the Sequence Number field of the MHR of the outgoing frame and then increment it by one. Each device shall generate exactly one data sequence number (DSN) regardless of the number of unique devices with which it wishes to communicate. The value of *macDsn* shall be permitted to roll over.

Each coordinator shall store its current beacon sequence number (BSN) value in the MAC PIB attribute *macBsn* and initialize it to a random value; the algorithm for choosing a random number is outside the scope of this standard. Each time a Beacon frame is generated, the MAC sublayer shall copy the value of *macBsn* into the Sequence Number field of the MHR of the outgoing frame and then increment it by one. The value of *macBsn* shall be permitted to roll over.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Each coordinator shall store its current enhanced beacon sequence number (EBSN) value in the MAC PIB attribute *macEbsn* and initialize it to a random value; the algorithm for choosing a random number is outside the scope of this standard. Each time an Enhanced Beacon frame is generated, the MAC sublayer shall copy the value of *macEbsn* into the Sequence Number field of the MHR of the outgoing frame and then increment it by one. The value of *macEbsn* shall be permitted to roll over.

NOTE—The DSN, BSN, and EBSN are 8-bit values and, therefore, have limited use to the next higher layer (e.g., in the case of the DSN, in detecting retransmitted frames).

The Source Address field, if present, shall contain the address of the device sending the frame. When a device has associated and has been allocated a short address (i.e., *macShortAddress* is not equal to 0xfffe or 0xffff), it shall use that address in preference to its extended address (i.e., *macExtendedAddress*) wherever possible. When a device has not yet associated to a PAN, it shall use its extended address in all communications requiring the Source Address field. If the Source Address field is not present, the originator of the frame shall be assumed to be the PAN coordinator or RFD-TX device, and the Destination Address field shall contain the address of the recipient, optional for RFD-TX devices.

The Destination Address field, if present, shall contain the address of the intended recipient of the frame, which may be either a short address or an extended address. If the Destination Address field is not present, the recipient of the frame shall be assumed to be the PAN coordinator, and the Source Address field shall contain the address of the originator.

The PAN ID compression field, the Source PAN ID field and the Destination PAN ID field are set as indicated in 7.2.1.5.

If the frame is to be transmitted on a beacon-enabled PAN, the transmitting device shall attempt to find the beacon before transmitting. If the beacon is not being tracked, as described in 6.5.2, and hence the device does not know where the beacon will appear, it shall enable its receiver and search for at most [*aBaseSuperframeDuration* $\times$ ($2^n + 1$)], where n is the value of *macBeaconOrder,* in order to find the beacon. If the beacon is not found after this time, the device shall transmit the frame following the successful application of the unslotted version of the CSMA-CA algorithm, as described in 6.2.5. Once the beacon has been found, either after a search or due to its being tracked, the frame shall be transmitted in the appropriate portion of the superframe. Transmissions in the CAP shall follow a successful application of the slotted version of the CSMA-CA algorithm, as described in 6.2.5, and transmissions in a GTS shall not use CSMA-CA. When the LECIM direct sequence spread spectrum (DSSS) PHY is in use in a beacon-enabled PAN, transmissions after the beacon shall commence *phyLecimDsssPpduTxAt* following the reception of the last symbol of the Beacon frame.

If the frame is to be transmitted on a nonbeacon-enabled PAN, the frame shall be transmitted following the successful application of the unslotted version of the CSMA-CA algorithm, as described in 6.2.5.

For either a beacon-enabled PAN or a nonbeacon-enabled PAN, if the transmission is direct and originates due to a primitive issued by the next higher layer and the CSMA-CA algorithm fails, the next higher layer shall be notified. If the transmission is indirect and the CSMA-CA algorithm fails, the frame shall remain in the transaction queue until it is requested again and successfully transmitted or until the transaction expires.

The device shall process the frame using the outgoing frame security procedure described in 9.2.1.

If the Status from the outgoing frame security procedure is not SUCCESS, the MLME shall issue the corresponding confirm or MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication primitive with the Status parameter set to the Status from the outgoing frame security procedure, indicating the error, and shall not transmit the frame.

If the Status from the outgoing frame security procedure is SUCCESS, the MAC sublayer shall transmit the frame.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

If security is enabled in TSCH mode, then only one frame shall be sent in a given slot to prevent the same nonce being used for more than one frame. The ASN is used in the nonce in TSCH mode.

6.7.2 Reception and rejection

When PSDU fragmentation is in use, the acknowledgment of fragments uses the procedure described in 23.3.

Each device may choose whether the MAC sublayer is to enable its receiver during idle periods. During these idle periods, the MAC sublayer shall still service transceiver task requests from the next higher layer. A transceiver task shall be defined as a transmission request with acknowledgment reception, if required, or a reception request. On completion of each transceiver task, the MAC sublayer shall request that the PHY enables or disables its receiver, depending on the values of *macBeaconOrder* and *macRxOnWhenIdle.* If *macBeaconOrder* is less than 15, the value of *macRxOnWhenIdle* shall be considered relevant only during idle periods of the CAP of the incoming superframe. If *macBeaconOrder* is equal to 15, the value of *macRxOnWhenIdle* shall be considered relevant at all times.

Due to the nature of radio communications, a device with its receiver enabled will be able to receive and decode transmissions from all devices complying with this standard that are currently operating on the same channel and are in its radio communications range, along with interference from other sources. The MAC sublayer shall, therefore, be able to filter incoming frames and present only the frames that are of interest to the next higher layer.

For the first level of filtering, the MAC sublayer shall discard all received frames that do not contain a correct value in their FCS field in the MFR, as described in 7.2.10. The FCS field shall be verified on reception by recalculating the purported FCS over the MHR and MAC payload of the received frame and by subsequently comparing this value with the received FCS field. The FCS field of the received frame shall be considered to be correct if these values are the same and incorrect otherwise.

The second level of filtering shall be dependent on whether the MAC sublayer is currently operating in promiscuous mode. In promiscuous mode, the MAC sublayer shall pass all frames received after the first filter directly to the next higher layer without applying any more filtering or processing. The MAC sublayer shall be in promiscuous mode if *macPromiscuousMode* is set to TRUE.

If the MAC sublayer is not in promiscuous mode (i.e., *macPromiscuousMode* is set to FALSE), the third layer of filtering shall be dependent on the whether the MAC sublayer is currently performing a scan. If the MAC sublayer is currently performing a scan, the MAC sublayer shall process all frames received as described in the relevant subclause of 6.3.1. If the MAC sublayer is not currently performing a scan, it shall accept only frames that satisfy all of the following fourth-level filtering requirements:

a) The Frame Type field shall not contain a reserved frame type.
b) The Frame Version field shall not contain a reserved value.
c) If a destination PAN ID is included in the frame, it shall match *macPanId* or shall be the broadcast PAN ID.
d) The Destination Address field shall satisfy one of the following conditions:
   1) A short destination address is included in the frame and it matches either *macShortAddress* or the broadcast address.
   2) An extended destination address is included in the frame and matches either *macExtendedAddress* or, if *macGroupRxMode* is set to TRUE, an EUI-64 group address, as defined in IEEE Std 802.
   3) The Destination Address field and the Destination PAN ID field are not included in the frame and *macImplicitBroadcast* is TRUE.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

4) The device is the PAN coordinator, only source addressing fields are included in a Data frame or MAC command and the source PAN ID matches *macPanId*.
5) The device is the PAN coordinator, only source addressing fields are included in a Multipurpose frame and the destination PAN ID matches *macPanId*.

e) If the frame type indicates that the frame is a Beacon frame, the source PAN ID shall match *macPanId* unless *macPanId* is equal to the broadcast PAN ID, in which case the Beacon frame shall be accepted regardless of the source PAN ID.

If any of the fourth-level filtering requirements are not satisfied, the MAC sublayer shall discard the incoming frame without processing it further. If all of the third-level filtering requirements are satisfied, the frame shall be considered valid and processed further.

For valid frames that are not broadcast, if the Frame Type field indicates a Data frame or MAC command with the Frame Version field set to 0b00–0b01 and the AR field is set to request an acknowledgment, the MAC sublayer shall send an Imm-Ack frame. Prior to the transmission of the Imm-Ack frame, the value of the Sequence Number field included in the received Data frame or MAC command shall be used for the value of the Sequence Number field of the Imm-Ack frame. This step will allow the transaction originator to know that it has received the appropriate Imm-Ack frame.

For valid frames that are not broadcast, if the Frame Type field indicates one of a Multipurpose frame, a Data frame with the Frame Version set to 0b10 or a MAC command with the Frame Version field set to 0b10, and the AR field is set to request an acknowledgment, the MAC sublayer shall send an Enh-Ack frame unless the device performs the incoming frame security procedure, as defined in 9.2.3. If the device performs the incoming frame security procedure and the Status is not SUCCESS, the device is not required to send an Enh-Ack frame. If the Enh-Ack frame contains IEs and/or a Frame Payload and it is in response to a secured frame, then the Enh-Ack frame shall be secured. If the Enh-Ack frame is in response to a secured frame and does not contain either IEs or a Frame Payload, then the Enh-Ack may be secured.

If the Source PAN ID field is not included in the frame and the Destination PAN ID field is included in the frame, the MAC sublayer shall use the value of Destination PAN ID field as the source PAN ID.

The device shall process the frame using the incoming frame security procedure described in 9.2.3, if the Security Enabled field is set to one, or 9.2.4, if the Security Enabled field is set to zero.

If the Status from the incoming frame security procedure is not SUCCESS, the MLME shall issue the corresponding confirm or MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication primitive with the Status parameter set to the Status from the incoming frame security procedure, indicating the error, and with the security-related parameters set to the corresponding parameters returned by the unsecuring process.

All IEs received in a valid frame that are marked as PASSED by the incoming frame security procedure shall be processed by the MAC sub-layer, and if required, passed to the next higher layer.

If the valid frame is a Data frame or Multipurpose frame and the status from the incoming frame security procedure is SUCCESS, the MAC sublayer shall pass the MSDU to the next higher layer.

6.7.3 Extracting pending data from a coordinator

A device on a beacon-enabled PAN can determine whether any frames are pending for it by examining the contents of the received Beacon frame, as described in 6.5.2. If the address of the device is contained in the Address List field of the Beacon frame and *macAutoRequest* is TRUE, the MLME of the device shall send a Data Request command, as described in 7.5.5, to the coordinator during the CAP with the AR field set to request an acknowledgment; the only exception to this is if the Beacon frame is received while performing an active or passive scan, as described in 6.3.1. There are two other cases for which the MLME shall send a

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Data Request command to the coordinator. The first case is when the MLME receives the MLME-POLL.request primitive. In the second case, a device may send a Data Request command *macResponseWaitTime* after the acknowledgment to a MAC command, such as during the association procedure. If the data request is intended for the PAN coordinator, the destination address information may be omitted.

If the Data Request command originated from an MLME-POLL.request primitive, the MLME shall perform the security process on the Data Request command based on the SecurityLevel, KeyIdMode, KeySource, and KeyIndex parameters of the MLME-POLL.request primitive, according to 9.2.1. Otherwise, the MLME shall perform the security process on the Data Request command based on the *secAutoRequestSecurityLevel*, *secAutoRequestKeyIdMode*, *secAutoRequestKeySource,* and *secAutoRequestKeyIndex* PIB attributes, according to 9.2.1.

On successfully receiving a Data Request command, the coordinator shall send an Acknowledgment frame, thus confirming its receipt. If the coordinator has enough time to determine whether the device has a frame pending before sending the Ack frame, as described in 6.7.4.2, it shall set the Frame Pending field of the Ack frame accordingly to indicate whether a frame is actually pending for the device. If this is not possible, the coordinator shall set the Frame Pending field of the Ack frame to one.

On receipt of the Ack frame with the Frame Pending field set to zero, the device shall conclude that there are no data pending at the coordinator.

On receipt of the Ack frame with the Frame Pending field set to one, a device shall enable its receiver to receive the corresponding Data frame from the coordinator. If there is an actual Data frame pending within the coordinator for the requesting device, the coordinator shall send the frame to the device using one of the mechanisms described in this subclause. If there is no Data frame pending for the requesting device, the coordinator shall send a Data frame without requesting acknowledgment to the device containing a zero-length payload, indicating that no data are present, using one of the mechanisms described in this subclause.

The Data frame following the acknowledgment of the Data Request command shall be transmitted using one of the following mechanisms:

— Without using CSMA-CA, if the MAC sublayer can commence transmission of the Data frame between *macSifsPeriod* and (*macSifsPeriod* + *aUnitBackoffPeriod*), on a backoff period boundary, and there is time remaining in the CAP for the message, appropriate IFS, and acknowledgment. If a requested Ack frame is not received following this Data frame, the process shall begin anew following the receipt of a new Data Request command.
— Using CSMA-CA, otherwise.

If the requesting device does not receive a Data frame from the coordinator within the expected time or if the requesting device receives a Data frame from the coordinator with a zero-length payload, it shall conclude that there are no data pending at the coordinator. If the requesting device does receive a Data frame from the coordinator, it shall send an Ack frame, if requested, thus confirming receipt.

If the Frame Pending field of the Data frame received from the coordinator is set to one, the device still has more data pending with the coordinator. In this case it may extract the data by sending a new Data Request command to the coordinator.

In Figure 6-32 a poll request is issued to the MLME, which then sends a Data Request command to the coordinator. The corresponding Ack frame has the Frame Pending (FP) field set to zero and the MLME issues the poll request confirmation immediately.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

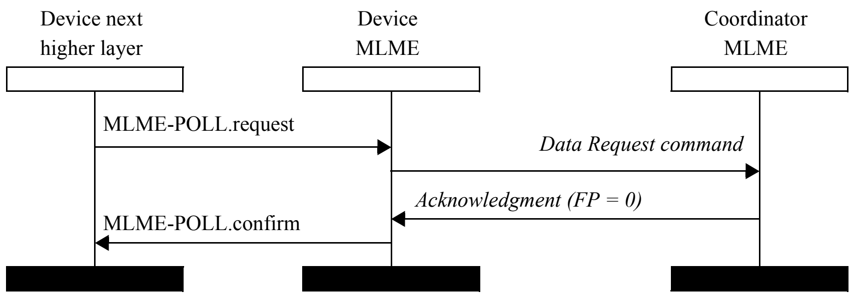


Figure 6-32—Message sequence chart for requesting data from the coordinator when the coordinator does not have data pending

In Figure 6-33 a poll request is issued to the MLME, which then sends a Data Request command to the coordinator. The corresponding Ack frame has the Frame Pending field set to one and the MLME enables the receiver in anticipation of the Data frame from the coordinator. On receipt of this Data frame, the MLME issues a poll request confirmation followed by a data indication containing the data of the received frame.

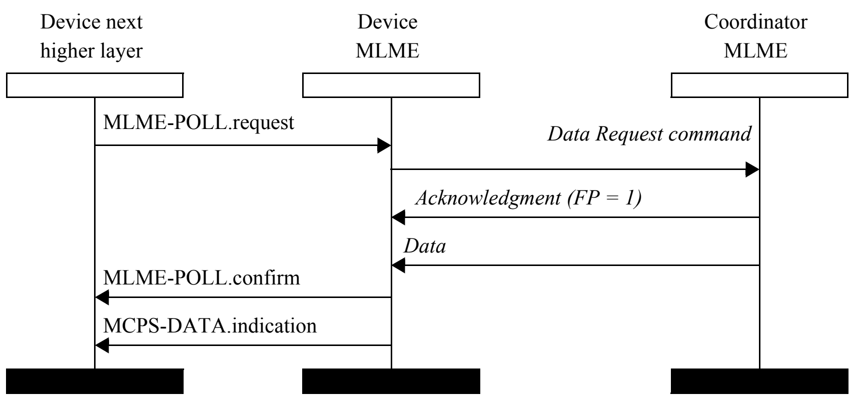


Figure 6-33—Message sequence chart for requesting data from the coordinator when the coordinator has data pending

6.7.4 Use of acknowledgments and retransmissions

A Data frame or MAC command shall be sent with the AR field set appropriately for the frame. A Beacon frame or Ack frame shall always be sent with the AR field set to indicate no acknowledgment requested. Similarly, any frame that is broadcast or has a group address as the extended destination address, as defined in IEEE Std 802, shall be sent with its AR field set to indicate no acknowledgment requested.

6.7.4.1 No acknowledgment

A frame transmitted with its AR field set to indicate no acknowledgment requested, as defined in 7.2.1.4, shall not be acknowledged by its target. The originating device shall assume that the transmission of the frame was successful.

The message sequence chart in Figure 6-34 shows the scenario for transmitting a single frame of data from an originator to a target without requiring an acknowledgment.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

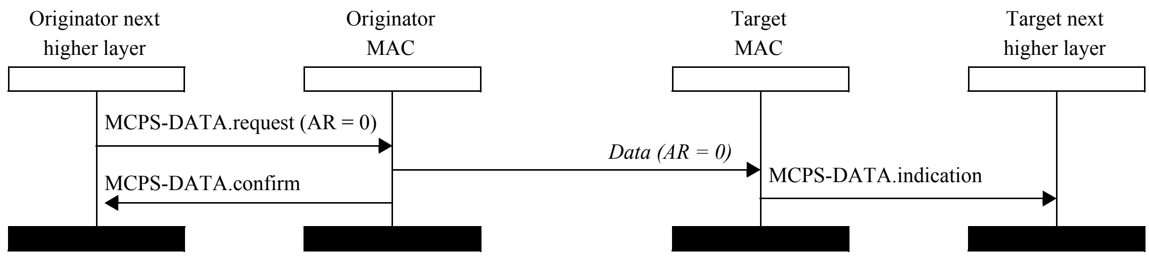


Figure 6-34—Successful data transmission without an acknowledgment

6.7.4.2 Acknowledgment

If the intended recipient received a valid frame, as defined in 6.7.2, with the AR field set to request an acknowledgment, it shall generate and send an Ack frame, as defined in 6.7.2.

The AR field shall be set to no acknowledgment when using Frak.

The transmission of an Ack frame in a nonbeacon-enabled PAN or in the CFP shall commence AIFS after the reception of the last symbol of the Data frame or MAC command. The transmission of an Ack frame in the CAP shall commence either AIFS after the reception of the last symbol of the Data frame or MAC command or at a backoff period boundary. In the latter case, the transmission of an Ack frame shall commence between AIFS and (AIFS + *aUnitBackoffPeriod*) after the reception of the last symbol of the Data frame or MAC command. The value of AIFS is 1 ms for the SUN PHYs, LECIM PHYs, or TVWS PHYs. The value of AIFS is equal to *macSifsPeriod* for all other PHYs.

The receiving device may include additional content in an Enh-Ack frame using IEs. If the originator does not understand a specific IE in the Enh-Ack frame, that IE is ignored, but the transmission is considered successful. The number and the content of the IEs included in the Enh-Ack should be limited to only those IEs with the minimal content that is required.

In the case where the Ack frame may violate the transmission timing restriction defined in 6.7.5, the device shall use the default SHR and PHR lengths defined for that PHY when sending the Ack frame.

The Time Correction IE shall be used in all Enh-Ack frames if *macTschEnabled* is TRUE. When returning Time Correction IE, as described in 7.4.2.7, in the Enh-Ack frame the receiving device may indicate a negative acknowledgment to indicate that the frame successfully passed FCS check, but that the MAC discarded the frame.

The message sequence chart in Figure 6-35 shows the scenario for transmitting a single Data frame from an originator to a recipient with an acknowledgment requested.

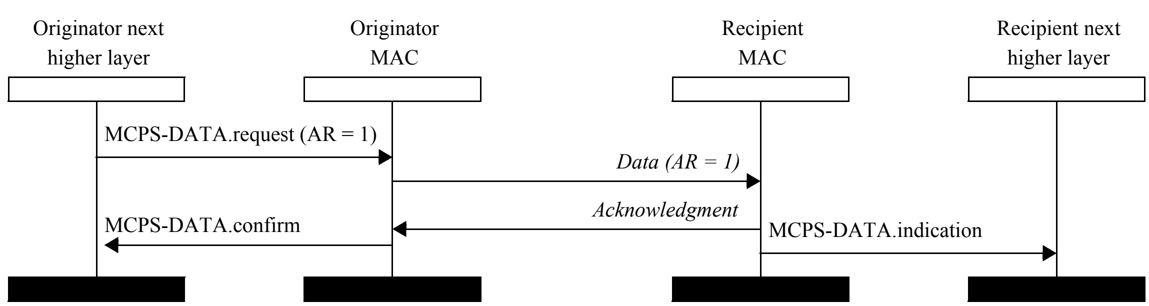


Figure 6-35—Successful data transmission with an acknowledgment

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

When in TSCH mode, incoming frames are acknowledged using the Enh-Ack frame as described in 7.3.3. Security of the Enh-Ack frame shall match that of the incoming frame. When operating in the TSCH mode the Enh-Ack frame is sent at the time specified by the *macTimeslotTemplate*.

For TVWS RDEVs, the Enh-Ack frame shall include the Timestamp Difference IE as defined in 7.4.4.27 if the Ranging field of the PHR is set to one in the frame being acknowledged.

6.7.4.3 Retransmissions

A device that sends a frame with the AR field set to indicate no acknowledgment requested may assume that the transmission was successfully received and shall not perform the retransmission procedure.

A device that sends a frame with its AR field set to acknowledgment requested shall wait for the corresponding Ack frame to be received. If an Ack frame is received within the expected time and contains the same DSN as the original transmission, the transmission is considered successful, and no further action regarding retransmission shall be taken by the device. If an Ack frame is not received within the expected time or the Ack frame that is received contains a DSN that was not the same as the original transmission, the device shall conclude that the single transmission attempt has failed.

If a single transmission attempt has failed and the transmission was indirect, the coordinator shall not retransmit the frame. Instead, the frame shall remain in the transaction queue of the coordinator and can only be extracted following the reception of a new Data Request command. If a new Data Request command is received, the originating device shall transmit the frame using the same DSN as was used in the original transmission.

If a single transmission attempt has failed and the transmission was direct, the device shall repeat the process of transmitting the frame and waiting for the acknowledgment, up to a maximum of *macMaxFrameRetries* times. The retransmitted frame shall contain the same DSN as was used in the original transmission. Each retransmission shall only be attempted if it can be completed within the same portion of the superframe, i.e., the CAP or a GTS in which the original transmission was attempted. If this timing is not possible, the retransmission shall be deferred until the same portion in the next superframe. If an acknowledgment is still not received after *macMaxFrameRetries* retransmissions, the MAC sublayer shall assume the transmission has failed and notify the next higher layer of the failure.

If a single transmission attempt failed and the device is operating in TSCH mode, the retransmission process is defined in 6.2.5.3.

When not using TSCH mode and a frame with the Security Enabled field set to one is retransmitted, the frame shall be retransmitted without changes and without passing through the outgoing frame security procedure, as defined in 9.2.1.

When using TSCH mode, and a frame with the Security Enabled field set to one is retransmitted, the frame shall follow the outgoing frame security procedure, as defined in 9.2.1.

NOTE—In TSCH mode, the security processing needs to be performed again because the ASN is used in the nonce and the retransmitted frame is sent in a slot with a different ASN.

6.7.5 Transmission timing restrictions

In beacon-enabled PANs, TSCH PANs, and DSME PANs, certain times may be allocated to devices for transmission. These times are referred to as the allowed transmission interval (ATI). Examples of these include the following:

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

- GTS: start and end time defined by GTS Info field in the beacon
- Beacon transmission: start time defined by the superframe duration in a beacon-enabled PAN
- TSCH timeslot: start and end time defined the *macSlotframeHandle*, *macTimeslot* and *macTsTimeslotLength*
- DSME timeslot: start and end time defined in the DSME GTS Response command

The transmission of frames and the associated Ack frames need to be completed at least one SIFS time before the end of the ATI. A SIFS is required prior to the end of the ATI for the device transmitting or receiving the final frame to switch to receiving or transmitting, respectively, in the event that the device is required to switch.

Devices shall also allow for the guard time, as defined in 6.7.6, when calculating the end of the ATI.

Accordingly, the following rules apply:

1) For frames that do not request acknowledgment, the transmitting device shall not send the frame if the time required for the frame transmission plus a SIFS is greater than the time remaining before the end of the allowed transmission time.
2) For frames that request acknowledgment, the transmitting device shall not send the frame if the time required for frame transmission plus the AIFS plus the minimum duration Ack frame plus a SIFS is greater than the time remaining before the end of the allowed transmission time. Note that the minimum required Ack frame duration is for the appropriate Ack frame (Imm-Ack or Enh-Ack) including only the required IEs (e.g., the Time Synchronization IE in TSCH mode), security overhead (if appropriate), and the SHR and PHR duration. If the SHR and/or PHR of a PHY is variable, the PHY defines a default SHR and PHR duration and that value shall be used in the calculation.

6.7.6 Guard time

Guard times are required to keep transmissions in adjacent ATIs, as defined in 6.7.5, from colliding. In addition, as described in 6.7.5, a SIFS time is required to ensure sufficient turnaround time between ATIs. Guard time is the time between the end of one ATI and the next ATI. Figure 6-36 is an illustration of the allocation of the guard time such that the ATIs are separated by at least a SIFS if the devices allowed to transmit in adjacent ATIs drift in time towards the each other.

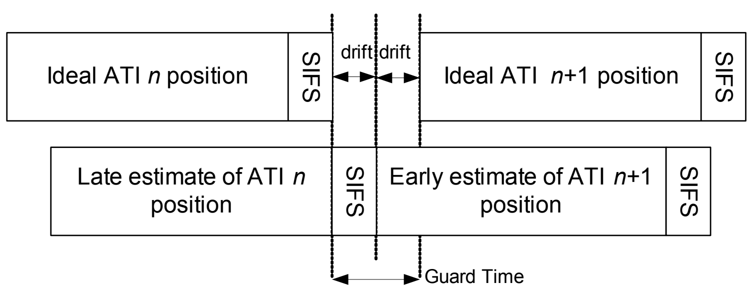


Figure 6-36—Guard time

The required guard time depends on the maximum drift between a device's local time and the ideal time. This drift is a function of the time elapsed since a synchronizing reference event. In a beacon-enabled PAN or DSME PAN the synchronizing event is the start of the preamble of a beacon. In a TSCH PAN the synchronizing event is a Timing Correction IE received from a timekeeping neighbor.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The maximum drift, MaxDrift, may be calculated as follows:

$MaxDrift$ = [Clock accuracy] × time elapsed since the last synchronizing event

NOTE—While propagation delay also affect timing uncertainty, for this standard it is ignored when calculating the guard time.

Figure 6-37 illustrates the example of a device transmitting frames with no acknowledgment requested including the guard time.

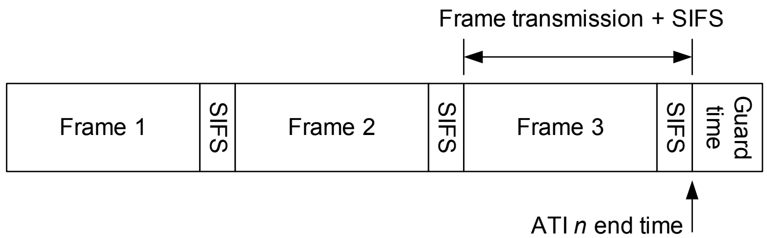


Figure 6-37—SIFS and Guard time at the end of a ATI—no Ack requested

Figure 6-38 illustrates the example of a device sending multiple frames with the Ack frame following an AIFS after the frame requesting the Ack frame including the guard time.

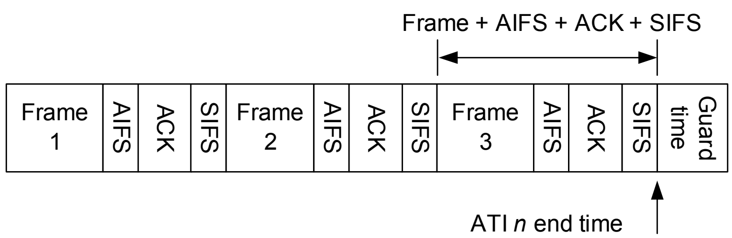


Figure 6-38—AIFS, ACK, SIFS, and Guard time at the end of a ATI—Ack requested

Figure 6-39 illustrates the example of a device transmitting frames just prior to scheduled beacon transmission including the guard time.

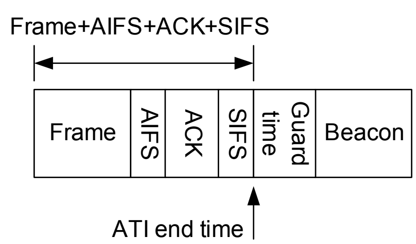


Figure 6-39—Guard time at the end of a superframe

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

6.7.7 Promiscuous mode

A device may activate promiscuous mode by setting *macPromiscuousMode*. If the MLME is requested to set *macPromiscuousMode* to TRUE, the MLME shall then request that the PHY enable its receiver.

When in promiscuous mode, the MAC sublayer shall process received frames according to 6.7.2 and pass all frames correctly received to the next higher layer using the MCPS-DATA.indication primitive. The only valid parameters of the MCPS-DATA.indication primitive are Msdu, MpduLinkQuality, Timestamp and Rssi. The Msdu parameter shall contain the MHR concatenated with the MAC payload, as illustrated in Figure 7-1.

If the MLME is requested to set *macPromiscuousMode* to FALSE, the MLME shall request that the PHY set its receiver to the state specified by *macRxOnWhenIdle*.

6.7.8 Transmission scenarios

Due to the imperfect nature of the radio medium, a transmitted frame does not always reach its intended destination. There are three different transmission scenarios:

— *Successful data transmission.* The originator MAC sublayer transmits the Data frame to the recipient via the PHY data service. The recipient MAC sublayer receives the Data frame, sends an acknowledgment back to the originator, and passes the Data frame to the next higher layer. The originator MAC sublayer receives the acknowledgment from the recipient within the expected time. The data transfer is now complete, and the originator MAC sublayer issues a success confirmation to the next higher layer. This sequence of messages for successful data transmission is illustrated in Figure 6-40.

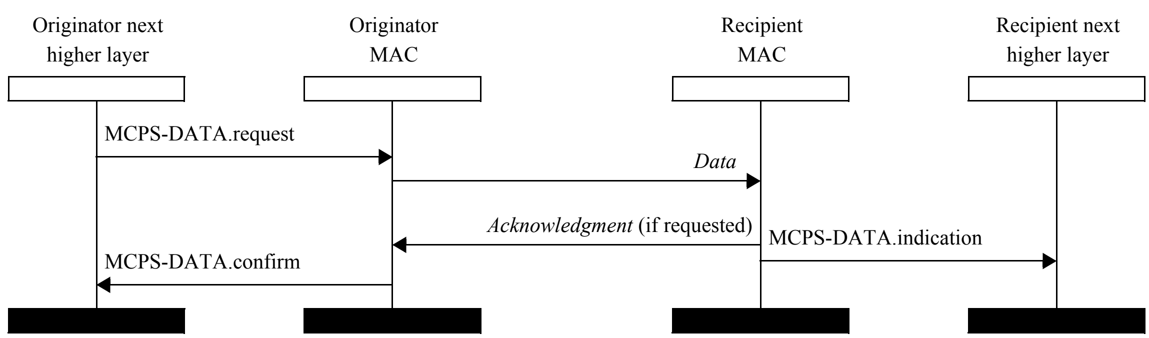


Figure 6-40—Successful data transmission sequence

— *Lost Data frame.* The originator MAC sublayer transmits the Data frame to the recipient via the PHY data service. The recipient MAC sublayer does not receive the Data frame and so does not respond with an acknowledgment. The acknowledgment is not received within the expected time and therefore the data transfer has failed. If the transmission was direct, the originator retransmits the data, and this entire sequence may be repeated up to a maximum of *macMaxFrameRetries* times; if a data transfer attempt fails a total of (1 + *macMaxFrameRetries*) times, the originator MAC sublayer will issue a failure confirmation to the next higher layer. If the transmission was indirect, the Data frame will remain in the transaction queue until either another request for the data is received and correctly acknowledged or until *macTransactionPersistenceTime* is reached. If *macTransactionPersistenceTime* is reached, the transaction information will be discarded, and the MAC sublayer will issue a failure confirmation to the next higher layer. The sequence of messages for a lost Data frame is illustrated in Figure 6-41.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

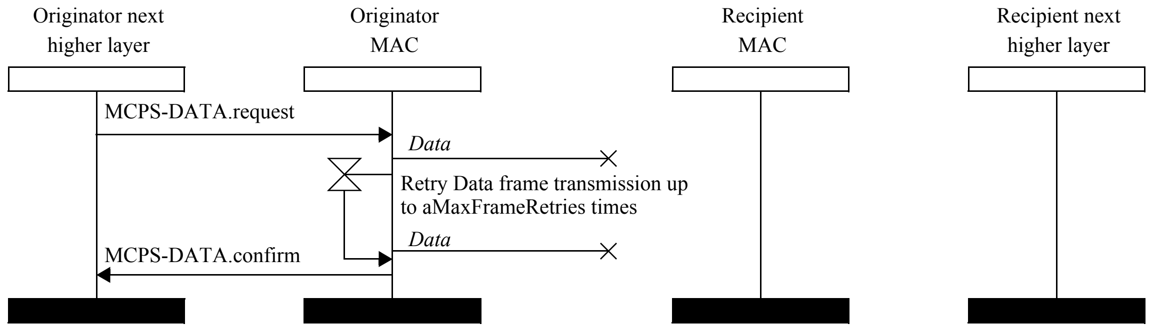


Figure 6-41—Lost Data frame message sequence

— *Lost Ack frame.* The originator MAC sublayer transmits the Data frame to the recipient via the PHY data service. The recipient MAC sublayer receives the Data frame, sends an acknowledgment back to the originator, and passes the Data frame to the next higher layer. The originator MAC sublayer does not receive the Ack frame within the expected time. Therefore, the data transfer has failed. If the transmission was direct, the originator retransmits the Data frame, and this entire sequence may be repeated up to a maximum of *macMaxFrameRetries* times. If a data transfer attempt fails a total of (1 + *macMaxFrameRetries*) times, the originator MAC sublayer will issue a failure confirmation to the next higher layer. If the transmission was indirect, the Data frame will remain in the transaction queue either until another request for the data is received and correctly acknowledged or until *macTransactionPersistenceTime* is reached. If *macTransactionPersistenceTime* is reached, the transaction information will be discarded, and the MAC sublayer will issue a failure confirmation to the next higher layer. The message sequence for a lost Ack frame is illustrated in Figure 6-42.

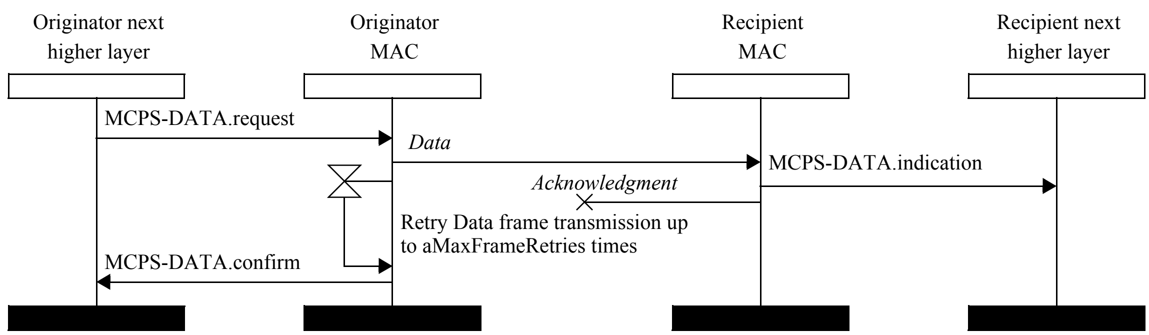


Figure 6-42—Lost acknowledgment message sequence

6.7.9 Device announcement

To facilitate data transfer effectively between two or more peer devices, a device announces its address and its neighbors' addresses to its neighbor devices by broadcasting beacons with a Device Announcement (DA) IE, as defined in 7.4.2.16. A DA IE shall only be sent in an Enhanced Beacon frame.

A device shall broadcast an Enhanced Beacon frame with a DA IE upon receiving a MLME-DA.request primitive, as defined in 8.2.24.1, from the next higher layer. It may also broadcast beacons with a DA IE at other times. After transmitting an Enhanced Beacon frame with the DA IE requested by an MLME-DA.request, the device shall send an MLME-DA.confirm, as described in 8.2.24.3, to the next higher layer.

Upon receiving an Enhanced Beacon frame with a DA IE, a device shall indicate the address of the transmitting device and the addresses list in the DA IE to its next higher layer using the MLME-DA.indication primitive 8.2.24.2. A device may check whether or not its address is known at the

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

transmitting device by tracking the received an Enhanced Beacon frames with a DA IE. If not, the device may broadcast a an Enhanced Beacon with a DA IE to announce its address at the appropriate time.

The message sequence chart for an Enhanced Beacon with a DA IE to announce the address of a device and its neighbors' addresses is illustrated in Figure 6-43.

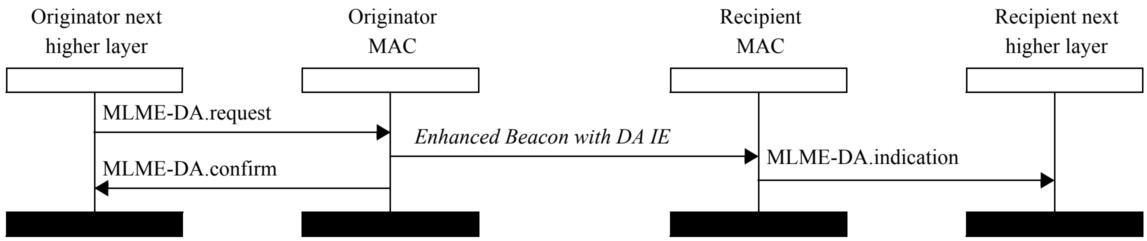


Figure 6-43—Sending DA IE message sequence chart

6.8 GTS allocation and management

6.8.1 GTS general requirements

A GTS allows a device to operate on the channel within a portion of the superframe that is dedicated (on the PAN) exclusively to that device. The use of GTSs is optional.

A GTS shall be allocated only by the PAN coordinator, and it shall be used only for communications between the PAN coordinator and a device associated with the PAN through the PAN coordinator. A single GTS may extend over one or more superframe slots. The PAN coordinator may allocate up to seven GTSs at the same time, provided there is sufficient capacity in the superframe.

A GTS shall be allocated before use, with the PAN coordinator deciding whether to allocate a GTS based on the requirements of the GTS Request command and the current available capacity in the superframe. GTSs shall be allocated on a first-come-first-served basis, and all GTSs shall be placed contiguously at the end of the superframe and after the CAP. Each GTS shall be deallocated when the GTS is no longer required, and a GTS can be deallocated at any time at the discretion of the PAN coordinator or by the device that originally requested the GTS. A device that has been allocated a GTS may also operate in the CAP.

A Data frame transmitted in an allocated GTS shall use only short addressing.

The management of GTSs shall be undertaken by the PAN coordinator only. To facilitate GTS management, the PAN coordinator shall be able to store all the information necessary to manage seven GTSs. For each GTS, the PAN coordinator shall be able to store its starting slot, length, direction, and associated device address.

The GTS direction, which is relative to the data flow from the device that owns the GTS, is specified as either transmit or receive. The device address and direction shall, therefore, uniquely identify each GTS. Each device may request one transmit GTS and/or one receive GTS. For each allocated GTS, the device shall be able to store its starting slot, length, and direction. If a device has been allocated a receive GTS, it shall enable its receiver for the entirety of the GTS. In the same way, the PAN coordinator shall enable its receiver for the entirety of the GTS if a device has been allocated a transmit GTS. If a Data frame is received during a receive GTS and an acknowledgment is requested, the device shall transmit the Ack frame as usual. Similarly, a device shall be able to receive an Ack frame during a transmit GTS.

A device shall attempt to allocate and use a GTS only if it is currently tracking the beacons. The MLME is instructed to track beacons by issuing the MLME-SYNC.request primitive with the TrackBeacon

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

parameter set to TRUE. If a device loses synchronization with the PAN coordinator, all its GTS allocations shall be lost.

6.8.2 CAP maintenance

The PAN coordinator shall preserve the minimum CAP length of *aMinCapLength* and take preventative action if the minimum CAP is not satisfied. However, an exception shall be allowed for the accommodation of the temporary increase in the Beacon frame length needed to perform GTS maintenance. If preventative action becomes necessary, the action chosen is left up to the implementation but may include one or more of the following:

- Limiting the number of pending addresses included in the beacon
- Not including a payload field in the Beacon frame
- Deallocating one or more of the GTSs

6.8.3 GTS allocation

A device is instructed to request the allocation of a new GTS through the MLME-GTS.request primitive, as described in 8.2.7.1, with GTS characteristics set according to the requirements of the intended application.

To request the allocation of a new GTS, the MLME shall send the GTS Request command, as described in 7.5.11, to the PAN coordinator. The Characteristics Type field of the GTS Characteristics field of the request shall be set to one (GTS allocation), and the length and direction fields shall be set according to the desired characteristics of the required GTS.

On receipt of a GTS Request command indicating a GTS allocation request, the PAN coordinator shall first check if there is available capacity in the current superframe, based on the remaining length of the CAP and the desired length of the requested GTS. The superframe shall have available capacity if the maximum number of GTSs has not been reached and allocating a GTS of the desired length would not reduce the length of the CAP to less than *aMinCapLength*. GTSs shall be allocated on a first-come-first-served basis by the PAN coordinator provided there is sufficient bandwidth available. The PAN coordinator shall make this decision within *aGtsDescPersistenceTime*.

On receipt of the acknowledgment to the GTS Request command, the device shall continue to track beacons and wait for at most *aGtsDescPersistenceTime*. If no GTS descriptor for the device appears in the beacon within this time, the MLME of the device shall notify the next higher layer of the failure. This notification is achieved when the MLME issues the MLME-GTS.confirm primitive, as described in 8.2.7.2, with a Status of NO_DATA.

When the PAN coordinator determines whether capacity is available for the requested GTS, it shall generate a GTS descriptor with the requested specifications and the short address of the requesting device. If the GTS was allocated successfully, the PAN coordinator shall set the start slot in the GTS descriptor to the superframe slot at which the GTS begins and the length in the GTS descriptor to the length of the GTS. In addition, the PAN coordinator shall notify the next higher layer of the new GTS. This notification is achieved when the MLME of the PAN coordinator issues the MLME-GTS.indication primitive, as described in 8.2.7.3, with the characteristics of the allocated GTS. If there was not sufficient capacity to allocate the requested GTS, the start slot shall be set to zero and the length to the largest GTS length that can currently be supported. The PAN coordinator shall then include this GTS descriptor in its beacon and update the GTS Specification field of the Beacon frame accordingly. The PAN coordinator shall also update the Final CAP Slot field of the Superframe Specification field of the Beacon frame, indicating the final superframe slot utilized by the decreased CAP. The GTS descriptor shall remain in the Beacon frame for *aGtsDescPersistenceTime* superframes, after which it shall be removed automatically. The PAN coordinator

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

shall be allowed to reduce its CAP below *aMinCapLength* to accommodate the temporary increase in the Beacon frame length due to the inclusion of the GTS descriptor.

On receipt of a Beacon frame containing a GTS descriptor corresponding to *macShortAddress*, the device shall process the descriptor. The MLME of the device shall then notify the next higher layer of whether the GTS allocation request was successful. This notification is achieved when the MLME issues the MLME-GTS.confirm primitive with a Status of SUCCESS (if the start slot in the GTS descriptor was greater than zero) or DENIED (if the start slot was equal to zero or if the length did not match the requested length).

Figure 6-44 illustrates the message flow for the case in which the device requests the GTS allocation.

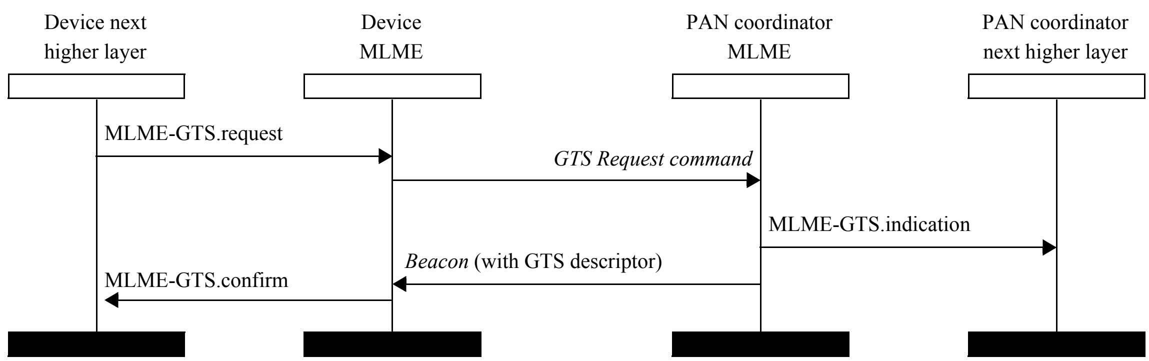


Figure 6-44—Message sequence chart for GTS allocation initiated by a device

6.8.4 GTS usage

When the MAC sublayer of a device that is not the PAN coordinator receives an MCPS-DATA.request primitive, as described in 8.3.1, with the TxOptions parameter indicating a GTS transmission, it shall determine whether it has a valid transmit GTS. If a valid GTS is found, the MAC sublayer shall transmit the data during the GTS, i.e., between its starting slot and its starting slot plus its length. At this time, the MAC sublayer shall transmit the MPDU immediately without using CSMA-CA, provided the requested transaction can be completed before the end of the GTS. If the requested transaction cannot be completed before the end of the current GTS, the MAC sublayer shall defer the transmission until the specified GTS in the next superframe.

If the device has any receive GTSs, the MAC sublayer of the device shall ensure that the receiver is enabled at a time prior to the start of the GTS and for the duration of the GTS, as indicated by its starting slot and its length.

When the MAC sublayer of the PAN coordinator receives an MCPS-DATA.request primitive with the TxOptions parameter indicating a GTS transmission, it shall determine whether it has a valid receive GTS corresponding to the device with the requested destination address. If a valid GTS is found, the PAN coordinator shall defer the transmission until the start of the receive GTS. In this case, the address of the device with the message requiring a GTS transmission shall not be added to the set of pending addresses in the Beacon frame, as described in 6.6. At the start of the receive GTS, the MAC sublayer shall transmit the data without using CSMA-CA, provided the requested transaction can be completed before the end of the GTS. If the requested transaction cannot be completed before the end of the current GTS, the MAC sublayer shall defer the transmission until the specified GTS in the next superframe.

For all allocated transmit GTSs (relative to the device), the MAC sublayer of the PAN coordinator shall ensure that its receiver is enabled at a time prior to the start and for the duration of each GTS.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Before commencing transmission in a GTS, each device shall ensure that the data transmission, the acknowledgment, if requested, and the IFS, suitable to the size of the Data frame, can be completed before the end of the GTS.

If a device misses the beacon at the beginning of a superframe, it shall not use its GTSs until it receives a subsequent beacon correctly. If a loss of synchronization occurs due to the loss of the beacon, the device shall consider all of its GTSs deallocated.

6.8.5 GTS deallocation

A device is instructed to request the deallocation of an existing GTS through the MLME-GTS.request primitive, as described in 8.2.7.1, using the characteristics of the GTS it wishes to deallocate. From this point onward, the GTS to be deallocated shall not be used by the device, and its stored characteristics shall be reset.

To request the deallocation of an existing GTS, the MLME shall send the GTS Request command, as described in 7.5.11, to the PAN coordinator. The Characteristics Type field of the GTS Characteristics field of the request shall be set to zero (i.e., GTS deallocation), and the length and direction fields shall be set according to the characteristics of the GTS to deallocate. On receipt of the acknowledgment to the GTS Request command, the MLME shall notify the next higher layer of the deallocation. This notification is achieved when the MLME issues the MLME-GTS.confirm primitive, as described in 8.2.7.2, with a Status of SUCCESS and a GTSCharacteristics parameter with its Characteristics Type field set to zero. If the GTS Request command is not received correctly by the PAN coordinator, it shall determine that the device has stopped using its GTS by the procedure described in 6.8.7.

On receipt of a GTS Request command with the Characteristics Type field of the GTS Characteristics field set to zero (GTS deallocation), the PAN coordinator shall attempt to deallocate the GTS. If the GTS characteristics contained in the GTS Request command do not match the characteristics of a known GTS, the PAN coordinator shall ignore the request. If the GTS characteristics contained in the GTS Request command match the characteristics of a known GTS, the MLME of the PAN coordinator shall deallocate the specified GTS and notify the next higher layer of the change. This notification is achieved when the MLME issues the MLME-GTS.indication primitive, as described in 8.2.7.3, with a GTSCharacteristics parameter containing the characteristics of the deallocated GTS and a Characteristics Type field set to zero. The PAN coordinator shall also update the Final CAP Slot field of the Superframe Specification field of the Beacon frame, indicating the final superframe slot utilized by the increased CAP. It shall not add a descriptor to the Beacon frame to describe the deallocation.

GTS deallocation may be initiated by the PAN coordinator due to a deallocation request from the next higher layer, the expiration of the GTS, as described in 6.8.7, or maintenance required to maintain the minimum CAP length, *aMinCapLength*, as described in 6.8.2.

The next higher layer of the PAN coordinator initiates a GTS deallocation using an MLME-GTS.request primitive with the GTS Characteristics field of the request set to indicate a GTS deallocation and the length and direction fields set according to the characteristics of the GTS to deallocate. The MLME shall then respond with an MLME-GTS.confirm primitive with a Status of SUCCESS and the GTSCharacteristics parameter with a Characteristics Type field set to zero.

When a GTS deallocation is initiated by the PAN coordinator either due to the GTS expiring or due to CAP maintenance, the MLME shall notify the next higher layer of the change using the MLME-GTS.indication primitive with a GTSCharacteristics parameter containing the characteristics of the deallocated GTS and a Characteristics Type field set to zero.

In the case of any deallocation initiated by PAN coordinator, the PAN coordinator shall deallocate the GTS and add a GTS descriptor into its Beacon frame corresponding to the deallocated GTS, but with its starting

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

slot set to zero. The descriptor shall remain in the Beacon frame for *aGtsDescPersistenceTime* superframes. The PAN coordinator shall be allowed to reduce its CAP below *aMinCapLength* to accommodate the temporary increase in the Beacon frame length due to the inclusion of the GTS descriptor.

On receipt of a Beacon frame containing a GTS descriptor corresponding to *macShortAddress* and a start slot equal to zero, the device shall immediately stop using the GTS. The MLME of the device shall then notify the next higher layer of the deallocation using the MLME-GTS.indication primitive with a GTSCharacteristics parameter containing the characteristics of the deallocated GTS and a Characteristics Type field set to zero.

Figure 6-45 depicts the message flow for the cases in which a GTS deallocation is initiated by a device.

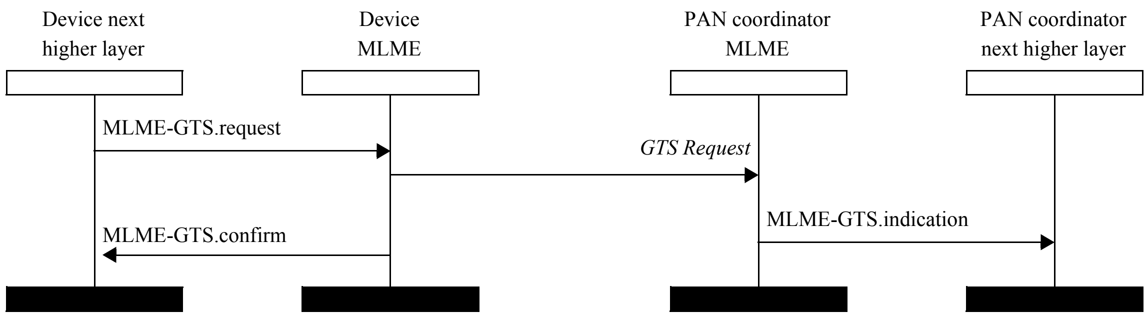


Figure 6-45—Message sequence chart for GTS deallocation initiated by a device

Figure 6-46 depicts the message flow for the cases in which a GTS deallocation is initiated by the PAN coordinator.

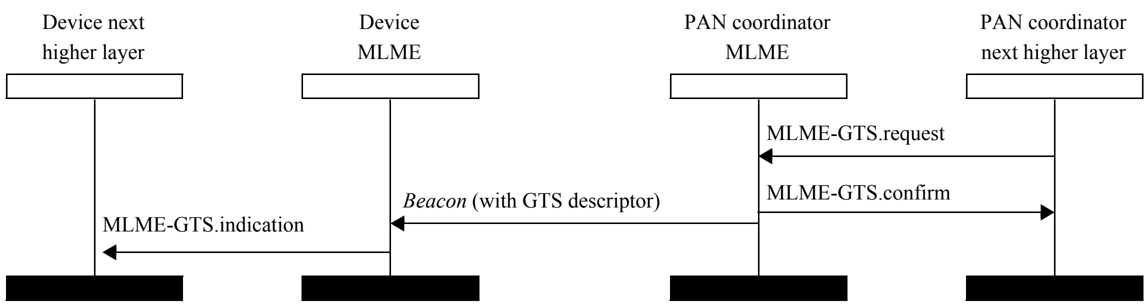


Figure 6-46—Message sequence chart for GTS deallocation initiated by the PAN coordinator

6.8.6 GTS reallocation

The deallocation of a GTS may result in the superframe becoming fragmented. For example, Figure 6-47 shows three stages of a superframe with allocated GTSs. In stage 1, three GTSs are allocated starting at slots 14, 10, and 8, respectively. If GTS 2 is now deallocated (stage 2), there will be a gap in the superframe during which nothing can happen. To solve this, GTS 3 will have to be shifted to fill the gap, thus increasing the size of the CAP (stage 3).

The PAN coordinator shall ensure that any gaps occurring in the CFP, appearing due to the deallocation of a GTS, are removed to maximize the length of the CAP.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

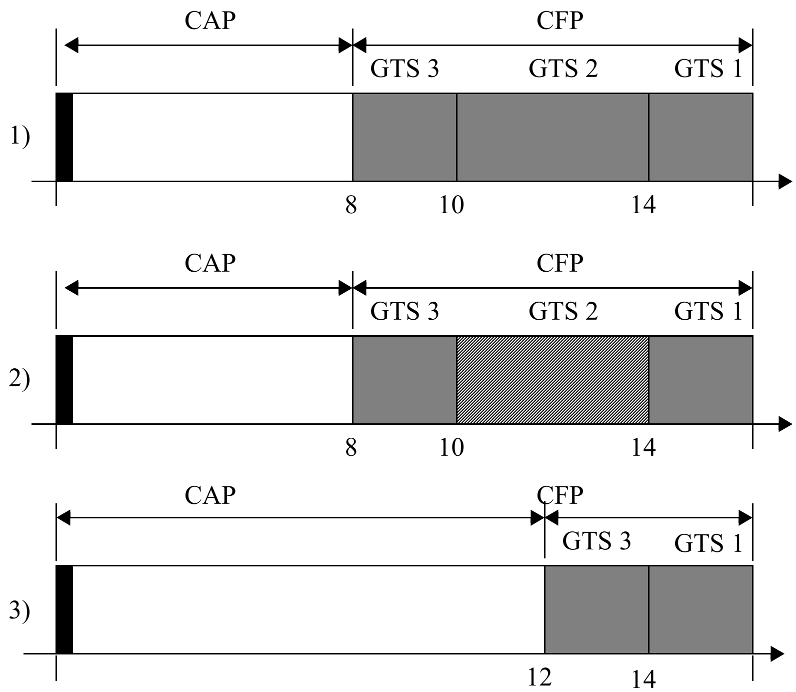


Figure 6-47—CFP defragmentation on GTS deallocations

When a GTS is deallocated by the PAN coordinator, it shall add a GTS descriptor into its Beacon frame indicating that the GTS has been deallocated. If the deallocation is initiated by a device, the PAN coordinator shall not add a GTS descriptor into its Beacon frame to indicate the deallocation. For each device with an allocated GTS having a starting slot lower than the GTS being deallocated, the PAN coordinator shall update the GTS with the new starting slot and add a GTS descriptor to its beacon corresponding to this adjusted GTS. The new starting slot is computed so that no space is left between this GTS and either the end of the CFP, if the GTS appears at the end of the CFP, or the start of the next GTS in the CFP.

In situations where multiple reallocations occur at the same time, the PAN coordinator may choose to perform the reallocation in stages. The PAN coordinator shall keep each GTS descriptor in its beacon for *aGtsDescPersistenceTime* superframes.

On receipt of a Beacon frame containing a GTS descriptor corresponding to *macShortAddress* and a direction and length corresponding to one of its GTSs, the device shall adjust the starting slot of the GTS corresponding to the GTS descriptor and start using it immediately.

In cases where it is necessary for the PAN coordinator to include a GTS descriptor in its beacon, it shall be allowed to reduce its CAP below *aMinCapLength* to accommodate the temporary increase in the Beacon frame length. After *aGtsDescPersistenceTime* superframes, the PAN coordinator shall remove the GTS descriptor from the beacon.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

6.8.7 GTS expiration

The MLME of the PAN coordinator shall attempt to detect when a device has stopped using a GTS using the following rules:

— For a transmit GTS, the MLME of the PAN coordinator shall assume that a device is no longer using its GTS if a Data frame is not received from the device in the GTS at least every $2 \times n$ superframes, where n is defined below.
— For receive GTSs, the MLME of the PAN coordinator shall assume that a device is no longer using its GTS if an Ack frame is not received from the device at least every $2 \times n$ superframes, where n is defined below. If the Data frames sent in the GTS do not require Ack frames, the MLME of the PAN coordinator will not be able to detect whether a device is using its receive GTS. However, the PAN coordinator is capable of deallocating the GTS at any time.

The value of n is defined as follows:

$$n = 2^{(8\text{-}macBeaconOrder)} \qquad 0 \le macBeaconOrder \le 8$$

$$n = 1 \qquad 9 \le macBeaconOrder \le 14$$

6.9 Ranging

6.9.1 Ranging requirements

Ranging is an optional feature. The fundamental measurements for ranging are achieved using a Data frame Ack frame sequence. The Data frame has the Ranging field set to indicated ranging and is referred to as a ranging frame (RFRAME). Ranging capabilities are enabled in a ranging-capable device (RDEV) with the MCPS-DATA.request primitive. Whenever ranging is enabled in an RDEV, the RDEV delivers timestamp reports to the next higher layer as a result of events at the device antenna. The timestamp that is reported is measured relative to the RMARKER. For all PHYs the RMARKER is defined to be the time when the beginning of the first symbol of the PHR of the RFRAME is at the local antenna.

6.9.2 Set-up activities before a ranging exchange

The mandatory part of ranging is limited to the generation of timestamp reports during the period that ranging is enabled in an RDEV. It is possible that an RDEV will consume more power when ranging is enabled; therefore, a natural default for an application would be to have ranging disabled. Prior to a two-way ranging exchange, both RDEVs involved in the exchange shall already have ranging enabled. Furthermore, if the optional dynamice preamble selection (DPS) capability is to be used, there shall have been some sort of coordination of preambles prior to the two-way ranging exchange. How this coordination and enabling actually is accomplished is beyond the scope of this standard. It may be perfectly acceptable to accomplish the coordination and enabling with a clock and a look-up table that says what a device should do at a particular time. Because coordination generally involves communication and because the PHYs are designed to achieve communication, it is natural to suggest that the PHY be used for coordination.

6.9.3 Finish-up activities after a ranging exchange

At the end of a two-way exchange, each device is in possession of a timestamp report. To accomplish anything useful, both of those timestamp reports shall eventually come to be at the same node where computations are performed. How this movement of timestamp reports is accomplished is beyond the scope of this standard. Timestamp reports are just data. Because movement of data involves communication and because the PHYs are designed to achieve communication, it is natural to suggest that the PHY be used for the final consolidation of timestamp reports.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The application is responsible for enabling the ranging mode in the RDEV before a ranging exchange. After a ranging exchange, the application is again responsible for disabling the ranging mode in the RDEV. If the application fails to disable the ranging mode in the RDEV, there will be no algorithmic harm. Ranging mode is fully compatible with other uses of the RDEV, and the only result of leaving ranging enabled when it is not really being used is that the RDEV will generate useless timestamp reports while potentially consuming more power.

6.9.4 Managing DPS

Figure 6-48 shows a suggested message sequence for two-way ranging. The messages represented in the two top dotted boxes are simply suggestions showing how the communications capability of the RDEV can be used to accomplish the ranging setup activities. The messages in the bottom dotted box are suggestions showing how the communications capability of the RDEV can be used to accomplish the ranging finish-up activities.

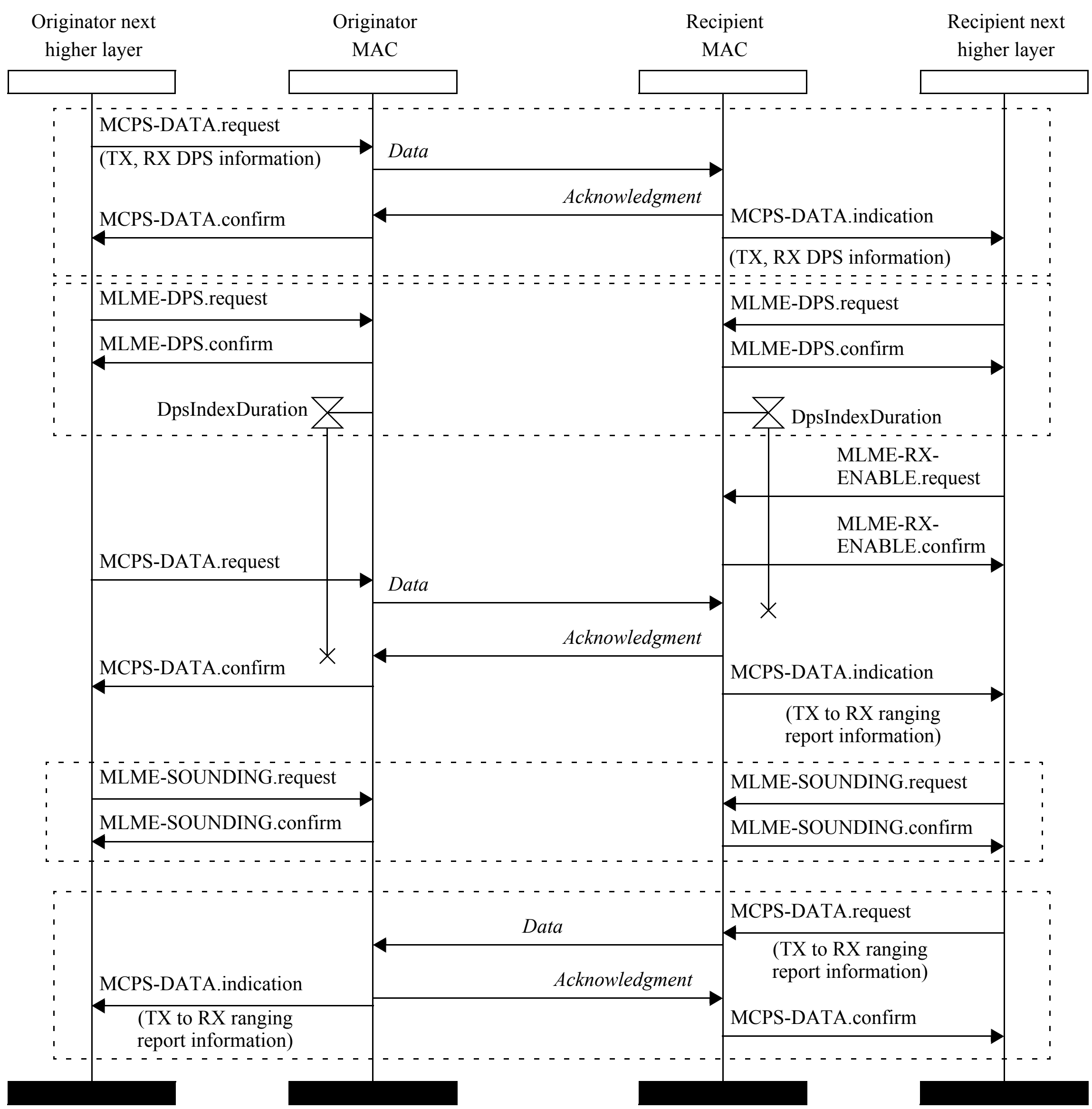


Figure 6-48—A message sequence for ranging

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The top dotted box in Figure 6-48 illustrates the use of a data exchange to effect the coordination of the preambles to be used for a two-way ranging exchange. The coordination of preambles is needed only when using the optional DPS capability of the PHY. If optional DPS is not used, the communication sequence in the top box can be thought of as arranging for the recipient RDEV to become aware that a ranging exchange is desired and that the recipient next higher layer should enable ranging in the recipient PHY. The second from the top dotted box in Figure 6-48 illustrates the use of the MLME-DPS.request, as described in 8.2.15.1, and the MLME-DPS.confirm, as described in 8.2.15.2. Use of these primitives is unique to the optional DPS mode of ranging.

Upon the assertion of the MLME-DPS.confirm primitives, as illustrated in Figure 6-48, both of the PHYs have switched from the normal length preamble symbols to long preamble symbols. This is desirable behavior intended to help hide the PHYs' transmissions from malicious nodes and protect the PHYs from transmissions by malicious nodes. A side effect of this mode is that neither PHYs can communicate with the rest of the network. To prevent the PHYs from becoming lost as a result of this optional behavior, the MAC sublayers on both sides of the link shall initiate timers after sending the frame (for the originator) or receiving the frame (for the recipient). If the timer duration is exceeded before the MAC sublayer receives the MCPS-DATA.comfirm (for the originator) or the MCPS-DATA.indication primitive (for the recipient), then the MAC sublayer shall initiate a MLME-DPS.indication to the next higher layer as described in 8.2.15.3. Not shown in Figure 6-48, one responsibility of the application, if the optional DPS capability is used, is to initiate the MLME-DPS.request primitive on both sides of the ranging link at the completion of the ranging exchange. Most typically, this MLME-DPS.request primitive would be part of the finish-up activities and would have both TxDpsIndex and RxDpsIndex set to zero to return the PHYs to using *phyCurrentCode* from the PIB. Also not shown in Figure 6-48, another responsibility of the application is to initiate a MLME-DPS.request primitive in response to an MLME-DPS.indication. Most typically, this MLME-DPS.request primitive would have both TxDpsIndex and RxDpsIndex set to zero and return the PHY to using *phyCurrentCode* from the PIB.

6.9.5 The ranging exchange

The essential core of the ranging exchange is shown in Figure 6-48 starting just below the just after the MLME-DPS exchange. The application is responsible for initiating the MLME-RX-ENABLE.request primitive, as described in 8.2.10.1, with RangingRxControl equal to RANGING_ON. Once the RDEV has received the MLME-RX-ENABLE.request primitive with RangingRxControl equal to RANGING_ON, all future RFRAMEs received by the RDEV shall generate timestamp reports until ranging is disabled.

At the initiator, the application is responsible for initiating a MCPS-DATA.request primitive with Ranging equal to ALL_RANGING. Upon receipt of a MCPS-DATA.request primitive with Ranging equal to ALL_RANGING, RDEV shall generate timestamp reports for all RFRAMEs after the transmit frame is transmitted. The timestamp reports will continue until ranging is disabled. The TX-to-RX turnaround enabling the originator to receive the Ack frame is necessary and is not shown in Figure 6-48. This turnaround is the normal turnaround that is done for any exchange expecting an acknowledgment. The turnaround happens without any action required by the originator next higher layer. Timestamp reports are generated to the next higher layer independent of the state of the AR field in the MAC header of received RFRAMEs.

As shown in Figure 6-48, the first timestamp report to the originator next higher layer shall come back as elements of the MCPS-DATA.confirm. The first timestamp report to the recipient next higher layer shall come back as elements of the MCPS-DATA.indication primitive. All subsequent timestamp reports on either side of the link shall come back as elements of MCPS-DATA.indication primitives. The potential additional MCPS-DATA.indication primitives that would be due to unexpected stray RFRAMEs are not shown in Figure 6-48 for simplicity. The timestamp reports due to any strays shall continue until ranging is disabled. The reporting of timestamps for a stream of "strays" is the behavior that enables the RDEV to be used as an infrastructure RDEVs in one-way ranging applications. One-way ranging is described in "Applications of IEEE Std 802.15.4" [B3].

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

For non-TVWS RDEVs, the timestamp is defined in 16.7. Use of nonzero timestamp reports is limited to RDEVs. Only devices that have *phyRanging* set to TRUE shall return a nonzero timestamp report to a next higher layer.

For TVWS RDEVs, the Timestamp IE, 7.4.4.26, and the Timestamp Difference IE, 7.4.4.27, are provided for exchanging timing information between TVWS RDEVs to support the ranging feature.

6.10 PHY parameter change notification procedure

6.10.1 Signaling using Beacon frames

This method is initiated by the reception of the MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.request primitive with the SignalMethod parameter value set to USE_BEACON. The method requires that the Enhanced Beacon frames are supported and that the device is the PAN coordinator using Enhanced Beacon frames. If these conditions are not met, the device shall respond with the MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.confirm primitive having the appropriate Status parameter value indicating the reason for the request failure.

A PHY Parameter Change IE, as defined in 7.4.4.13, shall be generated and inserted in the next outgoing Enhanced Beacon frame. The Effective Time of Change field of the IE shall be set to the value of the TargetTime parameter of the MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.request primitive. The Notification Time field shall be updated with the local time of the device each time it is transmitted. The appropriate operating mode description IE shall be generated according to the values in the PhyParameterList and inserted in the same Enhanced Beacon frame following the PHY Parameter Change IE.

If the value of the RepeatCount parameter of the MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.request primitive is nonzero, then the generated IEs shall be included in each Enhanced Beacon frame subsequently generated until the repeat count is exhausted or until the value in the TargetTime parameter has elapsed. If the RepeatCount parameter is zero, the generated IEs shall be included in only the next Enhanced Beacon frame.

6.10.2 Signaling using multipurpose frames

This method is initiated by the reception of the MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.request primitive with the SignalMethod parameter value set to USE_MP. The method requires that the multipurpose frame, as defined in 7.3.5, is supported. If this condition is not met, the device shall respond with the MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.confirm primitive having the appropriate Status parameter value.

The device shall generate a PHY Op Mode Switch frame, which is a Multipurpose frame containing a PHY Parameter Change IE and an Operating Mode Description IE. The addressing fields shall be set according to the DeviceAddrMode and DeviceAddr parameter values in the MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.request primitive. If the DeviceAddress parameter contains the broadcast address, then only the PAN ID addressing field shall be included, and it shall be set to the broadcast PAN ID. The PHY Parameter Change IE and an Operating Mode Description IE shall be generated using the TargetTime, RepeatCount, and PhyParameterList parameters, as described in 6.10.1.

For a directed PHY Op Mode Switch frame, the frame shall be generated with the AR field in the MHR set to request an acknowledgment and transmitted according to 6.7.

If the RepeatCount parameter value is greater than zero, the MLME shall repeat transmission of the frame after a delay equal to the value of the RepeatInterval parameter until the RepeatCount parameter value is exhausted. The Notification Time field shall be updated with the local time of the device each time it is transmitted.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

When the TxIndirect parameter is set to TRUE, the PHY Op Mode Switch frame shall be sent using indirect transmission, as described in 6.6.

6.11 Deterministic and synchronous multi-channel extension (DSME)

6.11.1 DSME command requirements

An FFD device in a DSME-enabled PAN shall be capable of transmitting and receiving the following MAC Command frames:

— DSME Association Request command, as defined in 7.5.12
— DSME Association Response command, as defined in 7.5.13
— DSME GTS Request command, as defined in 7.5.14, which shall only be sent in the CAP
— DSME GTS Response command, as defined in 7.5.15, which shall only be sent in the CAP
— DSME GTS Notify command, as defined in 7.5.16, which shall only be sent in the CAP
— DSME Information Request command, as defined in 7.5.17
— DSME Information Response command, as defined in 7.5.18
— DSME Beacon Allocation Notification command, as defined in 7.5.19
— DSME Beacon Collision Notification command, as defined in 7.5.20
— DSME Link Report command, as defined in 7.5.21

6.11.2 DSME multi-superframe structure

A coordinator in a DSME-enabled PAN shall periodically transmit an Enhanced Beacon frame with DSME PAN Descriptor IE, as described in 7.4.2.5, to coordinate a DSME multi-superframe structure. A multi-superframe is a cycle of repeated superframes. A superframe consists of a Beacon frame, a CAP, and a CFP.

The structure of this multi-superframe is described by the values of *macBeaconOrder*, *macSuperframeOrder*, and *macMultisuperframeOrder*.

The MAC PIB attribute *macMultiSuperframeOrder* describes the length of a multi-superframe. The value of *macSuperframeOrder*, SO, and the SD are related as follows: for $0 \leq \text{SO} \leq \text{BO} \leq 14$, SD = *aBaseSuperframeDuration* $\times 2^{\text{SO}}$.

The MAC PIB attribute *macMulti superframeOrder* describes the length of a multi superframe, which is a cycle of repeated superframes. The value of *macMultisuperframeOrder*, MO, and the MD are related as follows: for $0 \leq \text{SO} \leq \text{MO} \leq \text{BO} \leq 14$, MD = *aBaseSuperframeDuration* $\times 2^{\text{MO}}$. The value of *macMultisuperframeOrder* shall be ignored if *macBeaconOrder* = 15.

Each superframe shall be divided into aNumSuperframeSlots equally spaced slots of duration *aBaseSlotDuration* $\times 2^{\text{SO}}$ and is composed of three parts: an enhanced beacon, a CAP, and a CFP. Enhanced Beacon frames and other frames transmitted during CAP shall be transmitted using the channel number used in the successful association or start. Frames during CFP shall be transmitted using the assigned channel for DSME GTS.

Enhanced beacons shall be transmitted, without the use of CSMA-CA, at the start of slot 0 if *macDeferredBeaconUsed* is FALSE. The start of slot 0 is defined as the point at which the first symbol of the beacon PPDU is transmitted. If *macDeferredBeaconUsed* is TRUE, enhanced beacons shall be transmitted following the procedure described in 6.11.8.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The CAP shall commence immediately following the beacon and ends before slot 9. The CFP follows immediately after the CAP and extends to the end of the superframe. Any allocated DSME GTSs shall be located within the CFP.

An example of a multi-superframe structure is shown in Figure 6-49.

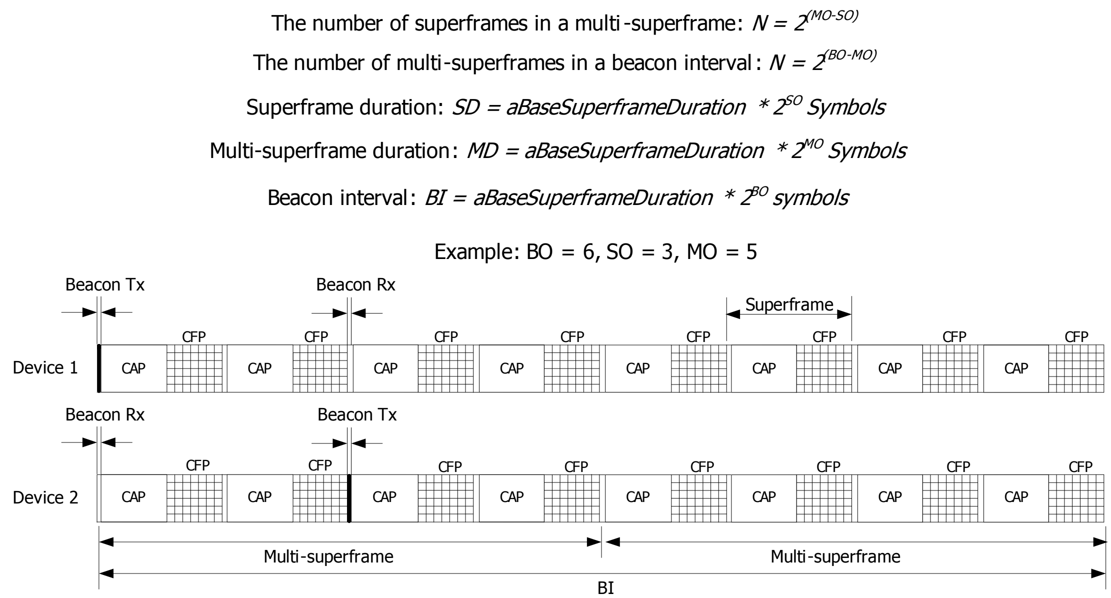


Figure 6-49—DSME multi-superframe structure

When *macExtendedDsmeEnabled* is TRUE, the Extended DSME PAN Descriptor IE shall be included in Enhanced Beacon frames that are sent every beacon interval in an Extended DSME-enabled PAN.

When *macExtendedDsmeEnabled* is TRUE, the values of the multi-superframe order, MO, the superframe order, SO, and the beacon order, BO, are related as follows:

$$SO \leq MO \leq [BO+len(BSN)]$$

where len(BSN) is 8 when the Enhanced Beacon frame contains the Sequence Number field and 0 when the Sequence Number field is not present.

Because the value of MO may be larger than that of BO, there may be multiple beacon intervals BIs within an MD. An example of a multi-superframe structure with the value of MO larger than that of BO is shown in Figure 6-50.

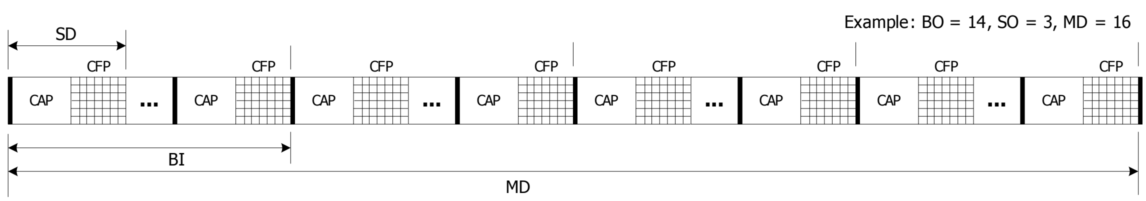


Figure 6-50—Example of DSME multi-superframe structure (MO>BO)

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

6.11.3 Channel diversity

DSME GTS service is provided in one of the two channel diversity methods, namely, Channel Adaptation and Channel Hopping.

6.11.3.1 Channel adaptation

In channel adaptation mode, the Source device may allocate DSME GTSs in a single channel or in different channels to a destination device based on the knowledge of current channel quality. If DSME GTSs in different slots in different channels are successfully allocated for a pair of a source device and a destination device, the source device shall transmit Data frames according to the scheduled timeslots and channels specified in *macDsmeAct*.

An example of the schedule of channels and DSME GTSs in channel adaptation mode is illustrated in Figure 6-51. In this example, the device uses channel 11 from slot 0 to 2, and then it switches to channel 13 on slot 5.

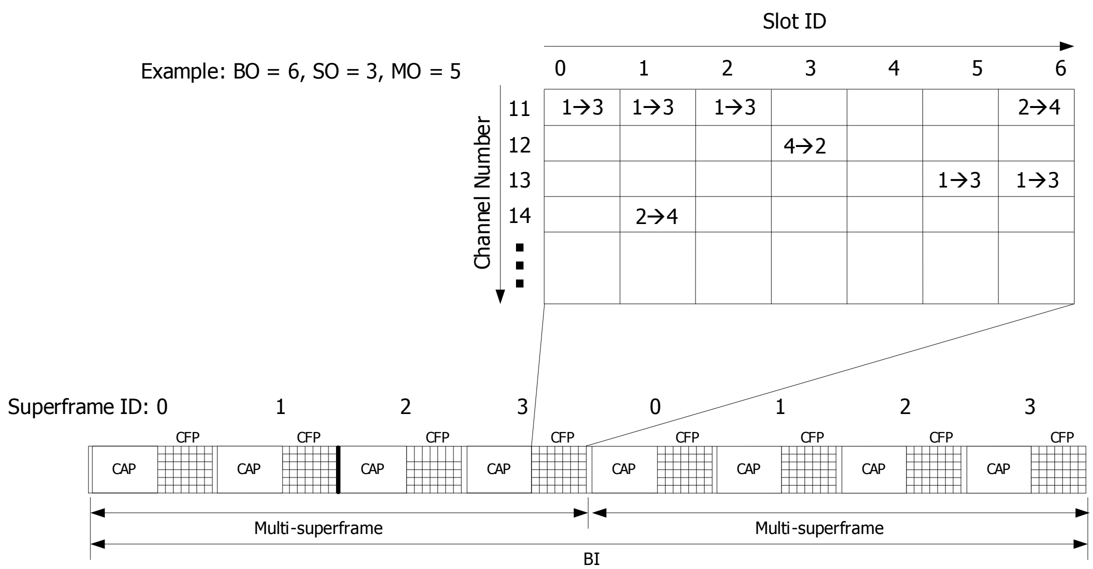


Figure 6-51—Channel usage of DSME GTSs in Channel Adaptation

If the link quality of allocated DSME GTSs has degraded, it is recommended that the DSME GTSs should be deallocated and new DSME GTSs with better link quality should be allocated.

Figure 6-52 illustrates the sequence of messages necessary for DSME link report initiated by a source device. The message sequence of DSME link report initiated by destination device is the same as sequence initiated by source device.

In Channel Adaptation mode, the SAB Sub-block is as illustrated in Figure 6-53.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

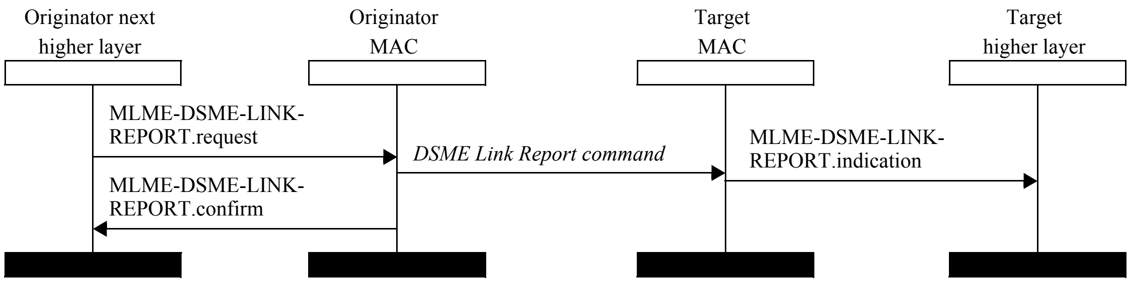


Figure 6-52—Message sequence chart for DSME link report

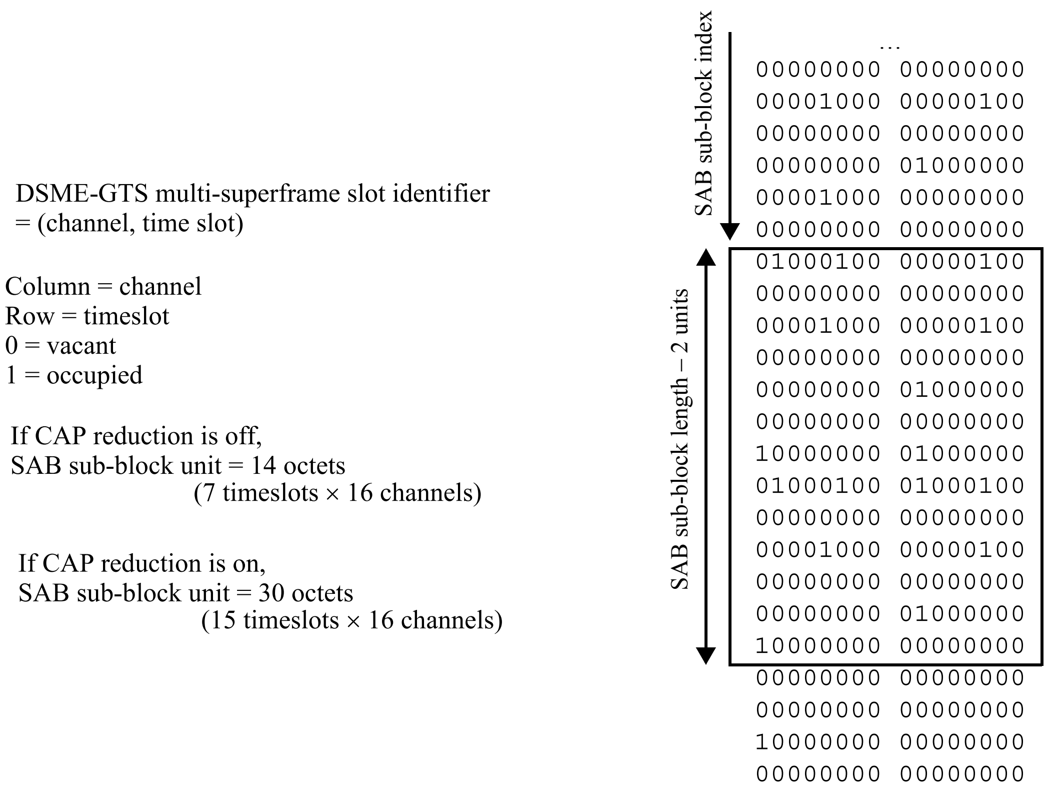


Figure 6-53—SAB sub-block in channel adaptation

6.11.3.2 Channel hopping

In channel hopping mode, each DSME GTS hops over predefined frequency channels to receive. The series of channels used at each DSME GTS is referred to as a hopping sequence. The same hopping sequence shall be repeated over whole DSME GTSs.

An example of the schedule of channels and DSME GTSs in channel hopping mode is illustrated in Figure 6-54.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

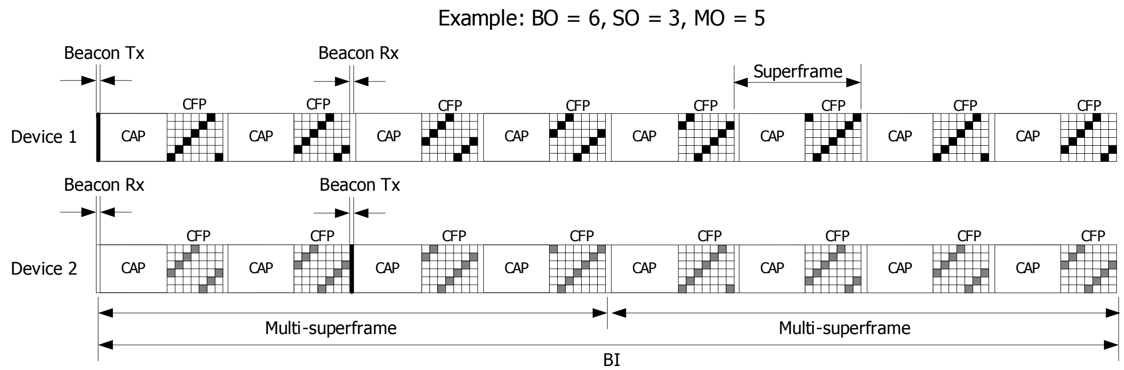


Figure 6-54—Channel usage of DSME GTSs in Channel Hopping

In this example, hopping sequence is {1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6} and the channel offset values of two devices are 0 and 2, respectively. For the device with channel offset value of 0, DSME GTSs (timeslot, channel) for this device are (1, 1), (2, 2), (3, 3), (4, 4), (5, 5), (6, 6), (7, 1), (8, 2), (9, 3), and so on. Similarly, for the device with channel offset value of 2, DSME slots are given as (1, 3), (2, 4), (3, 5), (4, 6), (5, 1), (6, 2), and so on. The transmitting device shall switch to the channel used by the receiving device in order to send a Data frame. If the receiving device receives the Data frame successfully, it sends an Enh-Ack frame to the transmitting device on the same channel. The transmission of an Enh-Ack frame shall commence between AIFS and (AIFS + aUnitBackoffPeriod) after the reception of the last symbol of the Data frame.

Channel number *C* at the given DSME GTS Slot ID *i* in SdIndex *j*, shall be determined as follows:

$C(i) = macHoppingSequenceList[(j \times l + i + macChannelOffset + macPanCoordinatorBsn) \ \% \ macHoppingSequenceLength]$

where *l* is 15 if *macCapReduction* is TRUE and SdIndex *j* is not zero, and 7 otherwise, *macHoppingSequenceList*[*m*] represents the $(m)^{th}$ channel number in *macHoppingSequenceList*, *macChanneloffset* is the channel offset value of the receiver device, *macHoppingSequenceLength* is the length of Hopping Sequence and *macPanCoordinatorBsn* is an EBSN of a PAN coordinator.

In channel hopping mode, the SAB represents the usage of corresponding DSME GTS, a bit shall be set to one if the corresponding slot is allocated to transmit or receive, or zero if the slot is available. Similarly in channel adaptation, DSME SAB sub-block Index and DSME SAB Sub-block length shall indicate the start position and the length of SAB Sub-block. Thus, only a sub-block of whole SAB is exchanged for scheduling. This is illustrated in Figure 6-55.

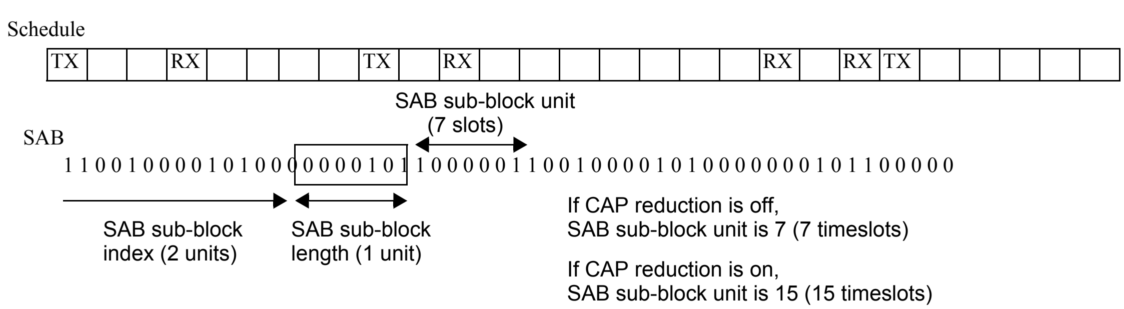


Figure 6-55—SAB sub-block in channel hopping

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

6.11.4 CAP reduction

If *macCapReduction* is TRUE, then CAP reduction shall be enabled. When the CAP reduction is enabled, the first superframe (superframe ID 0) in the multi-superframe has the CAP and all other superframes do not have a CAP.

Figure 6-56 shows an example of the multi-superframe structure when CAP reduction is enabled. As shown in Figure 6-56, every device has the CAP at the same time, which is the first superframe in a multi-superframe. The devices do not have the CAP in all other superframes.

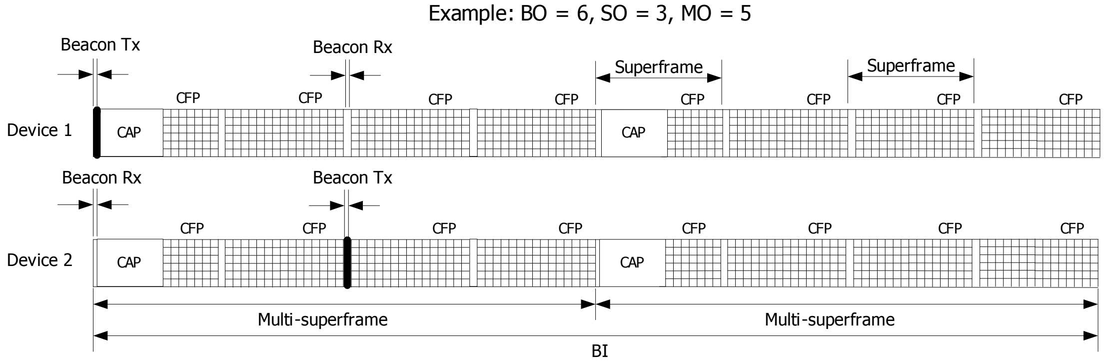


Figure 6-56—CAP reduction in DSME multi-superframe structure

6.11.5 DSME GTS allocation and management

DSME GTS functionality allows a DSME device to operate on the channel within a portion of the superframe that is dedicated (on the PAN) exclusively to that device. A DSME GTS shall be allocated by the destination device, and it shall be used only for communications between the source device and the destination device.

A DSME GTS allows a pair of device to exchange a data frame and an Ack frame. A DSME GTS shall be allocated between a pair of devices prior to its use. Allocation of a DSME GTS is initiated by a source device by transmitting a DSME GTS Request command during a CAP. The destination device determines if a DSME GTS will be allocated based on the requirements of the DSME GTS Request command and the current slot availability as described in 6.11.5.1.

DSME GTSs shall be allocated on a first-come-first-served basis, and all DSME GTSs shall be placed contiguously at the end of the superframe and after the CAP (or after the beacon slot if CAP reduction is enabled). Each DSME GTS shall be deallocated when the DSME GTS is no longer required, and a DSME GTS may be deallocated at any time by the destination device or the source device that originally requested the DSME GTS.

A Data frame transmitted in an allocated DSME GTS shall use short addressing.

The management of DSME GTSs shall be undertaken by both the destination device and the source device. To facilitate DSME GTS management, the destination device and the source device shall be able to store all the information necessary to manage DSME GTSs. For each DSME, the destination device and the source device shall be able to store its starting slot, length, and associated device address.

If a device has been allocated a DSME GTS for the data reception, it shall enable its receiver for the entirety of the DSME GTS. If a Data frame is received during a DSME GTS and an acknowledgment is requested, the destination device shall transmit the Enh-Ack frame as usual. Similarly, the source device shall be able to receive an Enh-Ack frame during the DSME GTS it requested.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

6.11.5.1 DSME GTS allocation

A DSME-enabled device is instructed to request the allocation of new DSME GTSs through the MLME-DSME-GTS.request primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to ALLOCATION.

On receipt of the primitive, the device shall send a DSME GTS Request command, as described in 7.5.14, to the to the device identified by the DeviceAddress parameter of the primitive. The DSME SAB Sub-block field shall contain a bitmap of a sub-block of *macDsmeSab*. The values of the DsmeSabSubBlockIndex parameter and DsmeSabSubBlockLength parameter indicate the sub-block that shall be contained in the command.

If the device successfully transmits the DSME GTS Request command and an acknowledgment is not received, the device shall issue the MLME-DSME-GTS.confirm primitive with a Status of NO_ACK.

If no DSME GTS Response command is received within the expected time, the device shall notify the higher layer of the failure by the MLME-DSME-GTS.confirm primitive with a Status of NO_DATA.

On receipt of a DSME GTS Request command with the Management Type set to ALLOCATION, the device shall issue an MLME-DSME-GTS.indication to the higher layer. The higher layer will make the decision on the allocation using the value of DsmeSabSpecification parameter as the slot availability information. It is recommended that the preferred superframe ID and the preferred slot ID are considered in allocating slots. If the preferred slot is not available, the next slot may be used. Following this approach, slot allocation of a multihop flow can be allocated sequentially on each hop to reduce the end-to-end delay. After making the allocation decision, next higher layer issues an MLME-DSME-GTS.response primitive. The DsmeSabSpecification parameter indicates the newly allocated slots.

On receipt of MLME-DSME-GTS.reponse primitive with Status parameter value of SUCCESS, the device shall send a DSME GTS Response command to the requesting device with the destination address set to the broadcast short address and the DSME GTS destination address set to the short address of the requesting device. The Management Type field shall be set to indicate allocation. The Status field in the command shall be set to indicate approved. The DSME SAB Specification field shall be set to the same as the DsmeSabSpecification parameter of the primitive.

On receipt of MLME-DSME-GTS.reponse primitive with Status parameter value of DENIED or INVALID_PARAMETER, the device shall send a DSME GTS Response command to the requesting device. The Management Type field shall be set to allocation. The Status field shall be set to either disapproved: lack of availability or disapproved: unknown GTS. The DSME SAB Specification field shall be set to the same as the DsmeSabSpecification parameter of the primitive.

On receipt of a DSME GTS Response command with management type allocation, the device shall check the DSME GTS Destination Address field of the received command.

If the DSME GTS Destination address is the same as the *macShortAddress*, the device shall inform the next higher layer of the result using MLME-DSME-GTS.confirm. If the value of the Status field in the command is approved, the device shall broadcast a DSME GTS Notify command with the destination address set to the broadcast short address, and the DSME GTS destination address is set to the short address of the source device of the received command. The Management Type field shall be set to allocation. The DSME SAB Specification field shall be set to the same value as the DSME SAB Specification field in the received command. Also, the device shall update *macDsmeAct* according to the DSME SAB Specification field in the received command.

If the DSME GTS destination address of the DSME GTS Response command is not the same as the *macShortAddress*, the device shall check if the slots marked as one in the command is conflicting with the readily allocated slots in *macDsmeAct*. If there is no conflict, the device shall update *macDsmeSab*

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

according to the DSME SAB Specification field in this command to reflect the neighbor's newly allocated DSME GTSs. If there is a conflict, the device shall send a DSME GTS Request command with Management Type field set to duplicated allocation notification to the source device of the received command.

On receipt of a DSME GTS Notify command with management type one allocation, the device shall check the DSME GTS Destination Address field of the received command. If the DSME GTS Destination address is the same as the *macShortAddress*, the device shall notify the next higher layer of the receipt of the DSME GTS Notify command using MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication. The device shall update *macDsmeAct* according the value of DSME SAB Specification field of the DSME GTS Notify command.

If a DSME GTS Notify command is not received at the destination device within the expected time, the device shall notify the higher layer of the failure by the MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication primitive with a Status of TRANSACTION_EXPIRED.

If the DSME GTS destination address of the DSME GTS Notify command is not the same as the *macShortAddress*, the device shall check if the slots marked as one in this command is conflicting with the readily allocated slots in *macDsmeAct*. If there is no conflict, the device shall update *macDsmeSab* according to the DSME SAB Specification field to reflect the neighbor's newly allocated DSME GTSs. If there is a conflict, the device shall send a DSME GTS Request command with the Management Type field set to duplicated allocation notification to the source of the received command.

On receipt of a DSME GTS Request command indicating a DSME GTS duplicate allocation notification, the device shall deallocate the duplicated DSME GTSs as described in 6.11.5.2.

Figure 6-57 depicts the message flow for the case in which a Originator device initiates the DSME GTS allocation, deallocation, duplicated allocation notification, reduce, or restart.

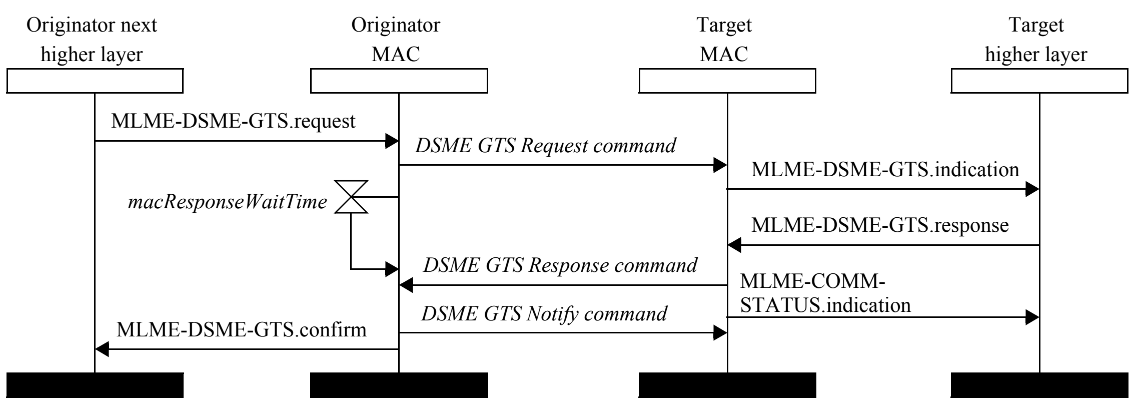


Figure 6-57—Message sequence chart for DSME GTS allocation and management

An example of a DSME GTS allocation, consider device 3 is requesting 2 slots to transmit data to device 1. Assuming time slot 0, channel 15 is already assigned by device 4 for transmitting data from device 4 to device 3 and channel 19 is a bad channel, then the messages would be as follows:

1) Device 3 sends a unicast DSME GTS Request command to device 1 with 2 slots request, Direction field set to TX, Preferred Superframe ID field set to 1, and the SAB Sub-block field set as follows:

{0000100010000000
0000000010000000
…
0000000010000000}

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

2) Device 1 sends a broadcast DSME GTS Reply command with the destination address field in the command set to that of device 3, Direction field set to TX, Superframe ID set to 1, and a newly allocated SAB Sub-block field set as follows:

{0000000000000000
0000001000000000
0000001000000000
…
0000000000000000}

3) Device 3 sends a broadcast DSME GTS Notify command with the Destination Address field in the command set to that of device 1, the Direction field set to TX and a newly allocated SAB Sub-block field set as follows:

{0000000000000000
0000001000000000
0000001000000000
…
0000000000000000}

Devices in the DSME-enabled PAN that hear either the DSME GTS Reply command or DSME GTS Notify command will update their SAB.

Devices in a DSME-enabled PAN may be allocated DSME GTSs during the association procedure. If *macExtendedDsmeEnabled* is TRUE and a device is instructed to associate with the PAN through the MLME-ASSOCIATE.request primitive having the DsmeAssociation parameter set to TRUE, the device requests DSME GTS allocation by sending a DSME Association Request command to a coordinator with the Extended DSME GTS Allocation field present, as described in 7.5.12. On receipt of the DSME Association Request command, the MAC sublayer of the coordinator informs the next higher layer that DSME GTS allocation is being requested through the MLME-ASSOCIATE.indication primitive with the DsmeAssociation parameter set to TRUE. The next higher layer of the coordinator instructs the MAC sublayer to respond to the request for DSME GTS allocation through the MLME-ASSOCIATE.response primitive. Then, the MAC sublayer of the coordinator sends a DSME Association Response command to the device containing the DSME GTS allocation information described in 7.5.13. On receipt of the DSME Association Response command, the MAC sublayer of the device allocates a DSME GTS and reports the results to the next higher layer. The DSME association process for a device that is not tracking the beacon is shown in Figure 6-58.

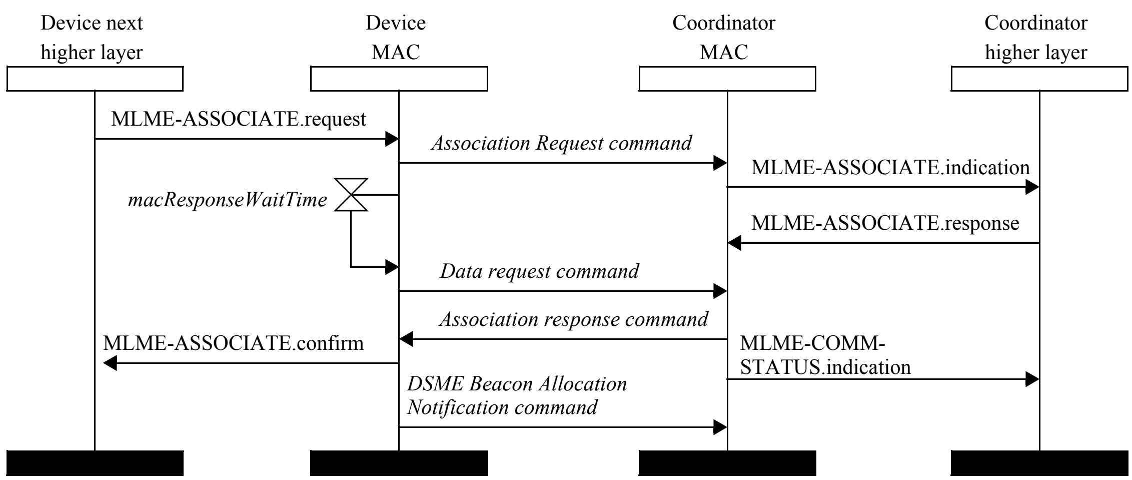


Figure 6-58—DSME association message sequence chart

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

6.11.5.2 DSME GTS deallocation

The DSME GTS source device is instructed to request the deallocation of existing DSME GTS through the MLME-DSME-GTS.request primitive. The destination device may also request the deallocation of an existing DSME GTS upon the expiration of the DSME GTS. From this point onward, the DSME GTS to be deallocated shall not be used by the device, and the *macDsmeSab* and the *macDsmeAct* shall be reset accordingly.

The higher layer of the device initates a DSME GTS deallocation by issuing the MLME-DSME-GTS.request primitive to the MAC with the ManagementType parameter set to deallocation and the DsmeSabSpecification set to indicate the DSME GTSs to deallocate.

When a DSME GTS deallocation is due to the DSME GTS expiring, the device shall issues the MLME-DSME-GTS.indication primitive with which the ManagementType parameter set to EXPIRATION.

To deallocate an existing DSME GTSs, the device shall send the DSME GTS Request command to the corresponding device (the source or destination of which the DSME GTSs are to be deallocated). The destination address of the command shall be set to the address of the corresponding device. The Management Type field shall be set to deallocation and the DSME SAB Specification field shall be set to indicate the DSME GTSs to deallocate.

If a DSME GTS Response command with Management Type field set to deallocation is not received within the expected time, the MLME of the device shall notify the higher layer of the failure by the MLME-DSME-GTS.confirm primitive with a Status parameter set to NO_DATA.

On receipt of a DSME GTS Request command with Management Type field set to deallocation, the device shall check the DSME GTSs specified for deallocation in the received command.

If the DSME GTSs in the command match one or more of the allocated DSME GTSs in *macDsmeAct*, the device shall notify the receipt of the command to the higher layer using MLME-DSME-GTS.indication. The higher layer makes the decision on the deallocation, and informs MLME of its decision using MLME-DSME-GTS.response. Then, the device shall send a DSME GTS Response command to the source device of the received command (i.e., the destination address is set to the short broadcast address, and the DSME GTS destination address is set to the short address of the source device). The Management Type field of the DSME GTS Response command shall be set to deallocation, and the Status field shall be set to approved. The DSME SAB Specification field shall be set to indicate the DSME GTSs to deallocate.

If the DSME GTSs in the command do not match any of the allocated DSME GTSs in *macDsmeAct*, the device shall send a DSME GTS Response command to the source device of the received command (i.e., the destination address is set to the short address of the source device, and also the DSME GTS destination address is set to the short address of the source device). The Management Type field shall be set to deallocation, and the Status field shall be set to disapproved: unknown GTS. The DSME SAB Specification field shall be set to the same as the received command.

On receipt of a DSME GTS Response command with Management Type field set to deallocation, the device shall check the DSME GTS Destination Address field of the received command. If the DSME GTS Destination address is the same as the *macShortAddress*, the device shall inform the next higher layer of the result of the DSME GTS deallocation request using MLME-DSME-GTS.confirm. If the value of the Status field in the command is approved, the device shall send a DSME GTS Notify command to the source device of the received command (i.e., the destination address is set to short broadcast address, and the DSME GTS destination address is set to the short address of the source device). The Management Type field of the DSME GTS Notify command shall be set to deallocation, and the DSME SAB Specification field shall be set to indicate the DSME GTSs to deallocate.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

If the DSME GTS Destination address is not the same as the *macShortAddress*, the device shall update *macDsmeSab* according to the DSME SAB Specification field in this command to reflect the neighbor's deallocated DSME GTSs.

On receipt of a DSME GTS Notify command with Management Type field set to deallocation, the device shall check the DSME GTS Destination Address field of the received command. If the DSME GTS Destination address is the same as the *macShortAddress*, the device shall notify the next higher layer of the receipt of the DSME GTS Notify command using MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication.

If the DSME GTS Destination address is not the same as the *macShortAddress*, the device shall update *macDsmeSab* according to the DSME SAB Specification in this command to reflect the neighbor's deallocated DSME GTSs.

6.11.5.3 DSME GTS expiration

The MLME of the device shall attempt to detect idle DSME GTSs in *macDsmeAct*, described in Table 8-90, using the following rules:

— The MLME of the device shall perform DSME GTS deallocation when a DSME GTS has expired (i.e., a device has stopped using the DSME GTS).
— The MLME of the destination device of DSME GTS shall assume that the source device is no longer using its DSME GTS if a Data frame has not been received in the DSME GTS for *macDsmeGtsExpirationTime*.
— The MLME of the Source device of DSME GTS shall assume that the link quality is bad if an Enh-Ack frame has not been received within *macDsmeGtsExpirationTime* when the acknowledgment was requested.

6.11.5.4 DSME GTS retrieve

A DSME-enabled device needs to maintain time synchronization and DSME GTS related information in order to use DSME GTS.

If the originator device has lost synchronization before its allocated DSME GTSs of current superframe starts, the originator device sends a DSME Information Request command to the target device. The Info Type field shall be set to the appropriate value based on the information that is being requested.

On receipt of a DSME Information Request command with Info Type field set to timestamp, the target device shall determine whether it has an allocated DSME GTS to the requesting device. If it has an allocated DSME GTS, the target device shall send a DSME Information Response command in the DSME GTS. If it does not have an allocated DSME GTS to the originator device, the target device shall ignore the request.

On receipt of a DSME Information Request command with Info Type field set to request SAB specification, the target device shall send a DSME Information Response command with the DSME SAB Specification field set according to the current allocation status of all one-hop neighborhoods of the device. The entire DSME SAB is stored in *macDsmeSab*. The DSME SAB sub-block index and the DSME SAB sub-block length indicate which part of the *macDsmeSab* shall be selected as the DSME SAB sub-block to be included in the DSME Information Response command.

On receipt of a DSME Information Request command with Info Type field set to request the PAN descriptor, the target device shall send a DSME Information Response command with the DSME PAN Descriptor.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

On receipt of a DSME Information Response command containing the Timestamp field, Superframe ID field and the Slot ID field, the originator device may use this information to retrieve synchronization and continue to use DSME GTSs.

The message sequence chart for a successful exchange of DSME information is shown in Figure 6-59.

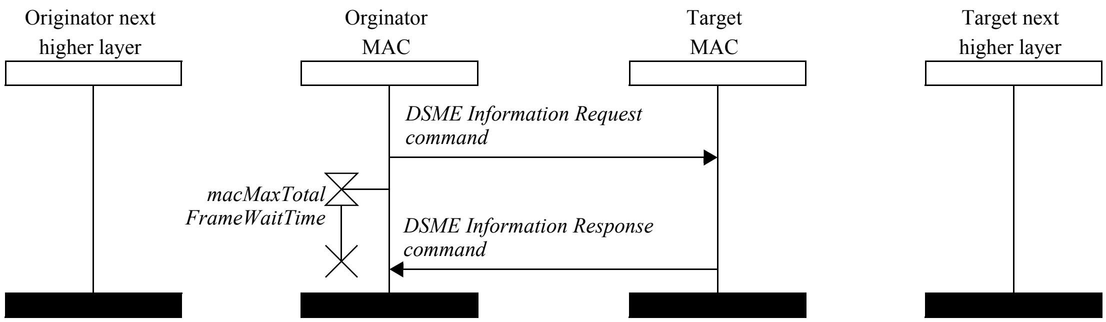


Figure 6-59—Message sequence chart for DSME information request

6.11.5.5 DSME GTS change

The procedure of DSME GTS change shall be initiated either by the MAC or by the next higher layer. The next higher layer initiates a DSME GTS change by issuing an MLME-DSME-GTS.request primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to REDUCE.

To request the change of existing DSME GTSs, the MLME of the device shall send the DSME GTS Request command to the corresponding device of the DSME GTSs. The Management Type field shall be set to either reduce or restart, and DSME GTS SAB Specification field shall be set to indicate the DSME GTSs to change.

On receipt of a DSME GTS Request command for DSME GTS change, if the GTS exists, the device shall immediately change its DSME GTS according to the Management Type field in the received command. Then the MLME of the device shall issue the MLME-DSME-GTS.indication primitive as described in 8.2.20.2 to notify the next higher layer of the change. The device shall send DSME GTS Response command to the source of the DSME GTS Request command.

If the GTS does not exist, then the device sends a DSME GTS Response command to the source of the DSME GTS Request command with the Status field set to "Disapproved, unknown GTS."

On receipt of the DSME GTS Response command, the MLME of the device shall issue the MLME-DSME-GTS.confirm primitive, as described in 8.2.20.4, with a Status of SUCCESS, the ManagementType parameter set to either REDUCE or RESTART, based on the value of the Management Type field in the command, and DSMEGTSSABSpecification parameter set to indicate the DSME GTSs to change.

6.11.6 Beacon scheduling

The transmission of Enhanced Beacon frames from different devices shall be scheduled using the procedure described in this subclause.

When a new device wants to join a network, it uses the MLME-SCAN.request primitive in order to initiate a channel scan over a given set of channels. It searches for all coordinators transmitting Enhanced Beacon frames within the maximum BI period. The neighboring devices (i.e., coordinators) would share their beacon schedule information by transmitting an Enhanced Beacon frame to the new device. The beacon schedule information is expressed in a bitmap sequence that represents the schedule of Enhanced Beacon

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

frames transmitted from all neighboring devices. The corresponding bit in the bitmap shall be set to one if a beacon is occupied in that beacon slot. The new device shall search a vacant beacon slot from the bitmap in all the received Enhanced Beacon frames. Once the new device finds a vacant beacon slot, it uses the slot as its own beacon slot.

There can be a beacon slot collision when two or more devices are trying to compete for same beacon slot number. Figure 6-60 illustrates this circumstance; device D and E are new devices that join the network, and these devices receive the beacon bitmap from their neighboring devices. Since device A is a common neighboring device to device D and E, there can be a collision if both new devices E and D notify the use of the same vacant beacon slot within the CAP. This happens because device D and E are hidden to each other, and cannot listen to each other's transmission. DSME Beacon Allocation Notification command is used to resolve this possible collision. If device D and E send a DSME Beacon Allocation Notification command with same SdIndex value (SdIndex of 1 in Figure 6-60), device A determines which device has notified first. Device A shall respond with the Beacon Collision Notification command to the device that has notified later.

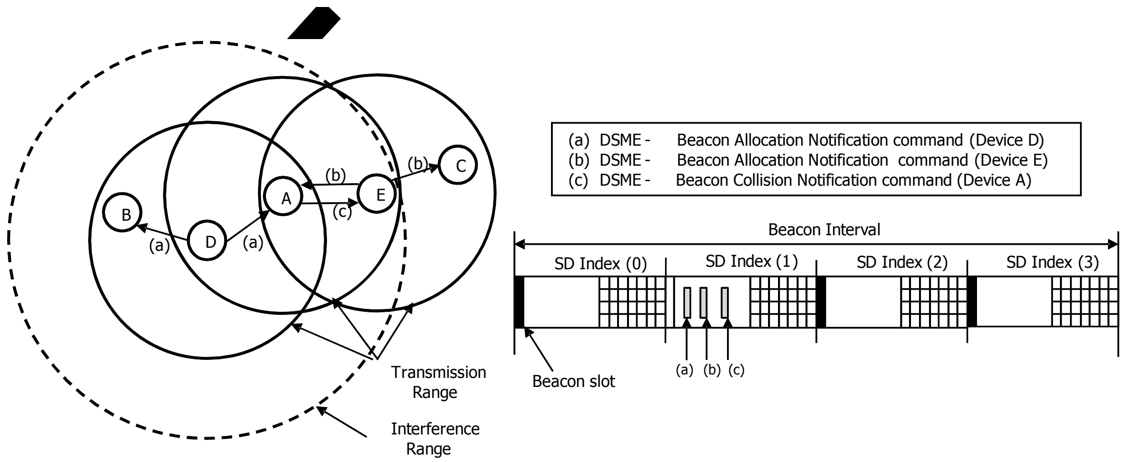


Figure 6-60—Avoidance of beacon slot allocation collision

6.11.7 Time synchronization

A new device discovers its neighboring devices via the scanning process. Upon discovering its neighbor devices, it may associate with one of them to become part of the network. The device with which the new device associates is referred to as its time synchronization parent. Since the new device tracks its time synchronization parent's Enhanced Beacon frame, it shall determine the receiving time of Enhanced Beacon frame.

Each device performs time synchronization using the values of the Timestamp fields in the Enhanced Beacon frame from its time synchronization parent in order to maintain global time synchronization in the PAN. As shown in Figure 6-61, a device locates the start time of superframe using the value of the Beacon Timestamp field in the Enhanced Beacon frame. The device knows when the Enhanced Beacon frame is actually transmitted from the time synchronization parent using value of the Beacon Offset Timestamp field. The difference in timestamp values reflects time delay due to CCA or processing time at PHY to transmit a frame. A device that has received the Enhanced Beacon frame calculates the actual reception time considering the value of the Beacon Offset Timestamp field, and then resets its local time accordingly. The PAN coordinator does not reset its local time according to the received Enhanced Beacon frame since the PAN coordinator does not have the time synchronization parent device.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

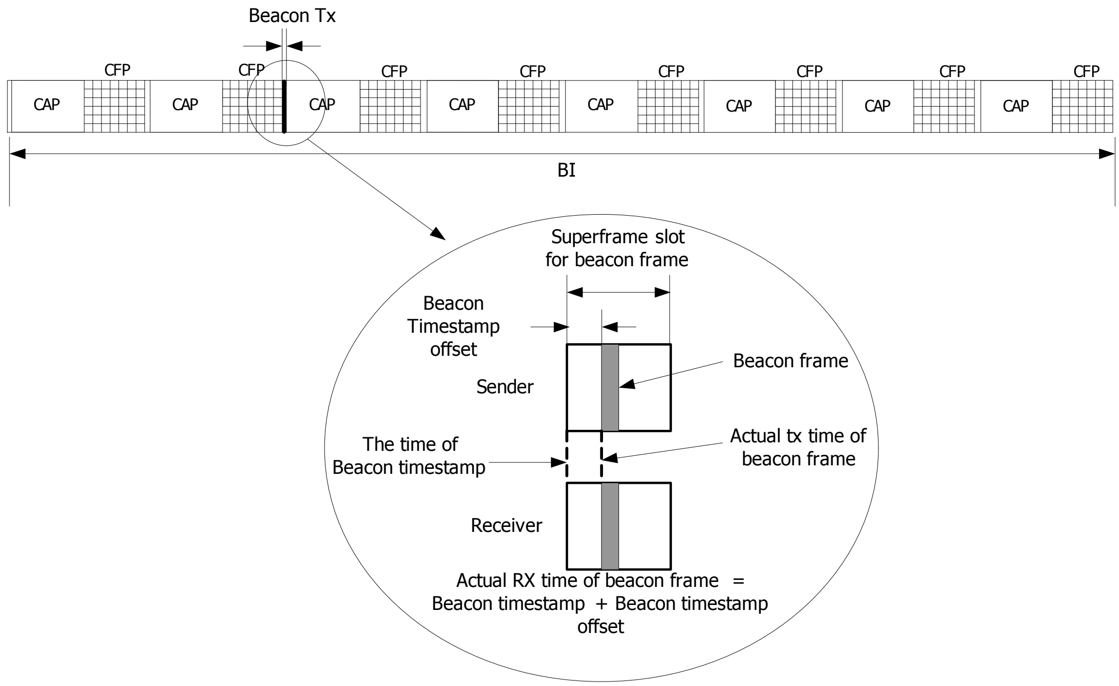


Figure 6-61—Time synchronization in a DSME-enabled PAN

6.11.8 Deferred beacon

Generally in a beacon-enabled PAN, Beacon frames are transmitted without CCA or backoff. However, Beacon frames can experience a collision due to the interference from inside or outside of the PAN. In such an environment, a coordinator may use deferred beacon to avoid the collision problem and improve the reliability of the beacon transmission. If a coordinator is instructed to use the deferred beacon, a coordinator shall set the Deferred Beacon field in its Enhanced Beacon frames to indicate deferred beacons. Then, the coordinator shall use CCA before sending an Enhanced Beacon frame. If CCA confirms the clear channel, the coordinator shall send the beacon. The Beacon Timestamp field of the Enhanced Beacon frame shall be set to the start time of the superframe. The Beacon Offset Timestamp field shall be set to the amount of time that is delayed due to CCA.

6.11.9 Passive channel scan

The Channel Hopping Specification field in the received Enhanced Beacon frame shall update the value of ChannelHoppingSpecification in the PANDescriptor. This value is sent to the next higher layer via the MLME-SCAN.confirm primitive. The value of Channel Offset field in the received beacon shall update the value of *macChannelOffsetBitmap* in the MAC PIB attributes. For instance, if ChannelOffset is set to 0x01, the value of *macChannelOffsetBitmap* corresponding channel shall set to one. Thus, the value of *macChannelOffsetBitmap* shall represent if the channel offset value is used among one hop neighbor devices.

6.12 LE transmission, reception and acknowledgment

6.12.1 LE transmission, reception, and acknowledgment with positive handshakes

When *macLeHsEnabled* is set to TRUE in the coordinator and the device, the data transmission, reception, and acknowledgment process illustrated in Figure 6-62 shall be used.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

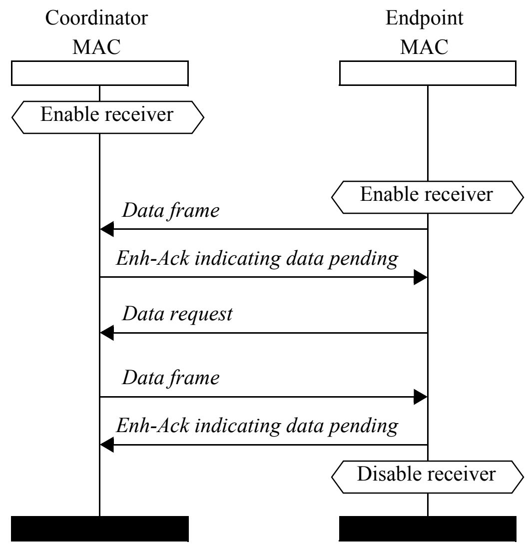


Figure 6-62—LE transmission with positive handshake

If the device received an Enh-Ack frame from the coordinator indicating that the coordinator has a pending frame, the device shall send a Data Request command to the coordinator and wait for the corresponding Data frame from the coordinator.

If the Enh-Ack frame is not received as expected, retransmission shall be performed as defined in 6.7.4.3. If, after sending the Enh-Ack frame with the Frame Pending field set, the Data Request command is not received, the coordinator waits for a retransmission and, if received, repeats the Enh-Ack frame with the Frame Pending field set.

6.12.2 Coordinated sampled listening (CSL)

The CSL mode is turned on when the PIB attribute *macCslPeriod* is nonzero and turned off when *macCslPeriod* is zero. In CSL mode, transmission, reception, and acknowledgment work as follows. Figure 6-63 illustrates the basic CSL operations.

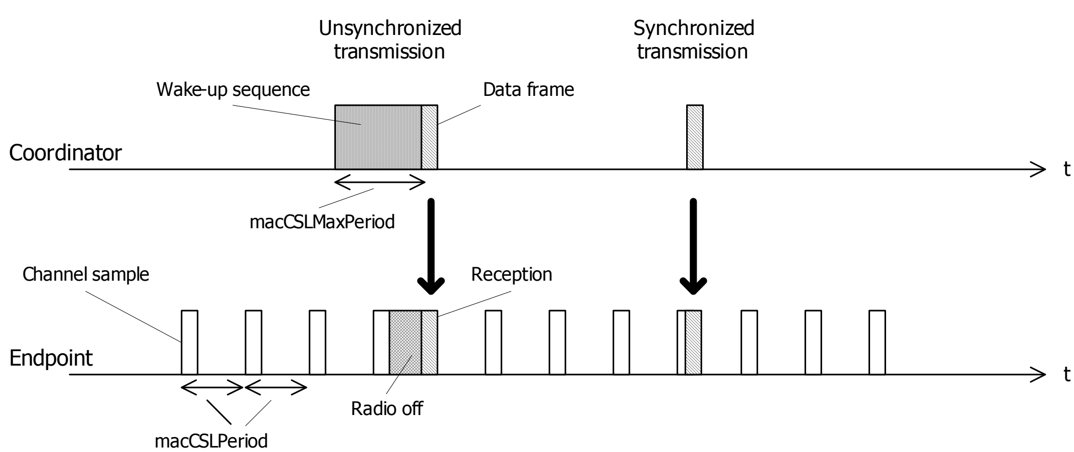


Figure 6-63—Basic CSL operations

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

A wake-up frame is a Multipurpose frame with the following:

— The AR field set to indicate no acknowledgment requested
— Only the Rendezvous Time IE, as defined in 7.4.2.6
— No payload

The CSL Phase is the time from the first symbol of the frame containing the CSL IE, as defined in 7.4.2.3, was transmitted until the next channel sample.

6.12.2.1 CSL idle listening

During idle listening, the CSL coordinator performs a channel sample every *macCslPeriod* time. If a wake-up frame is not received on the channel, the CSL coordinator disables the receiver until the next channel sample time and then performs the next channel sample. If the channel sample contains a wake-up frame, the CSL coordinator checks the destination address in the wake-up frame. Acknowledgment and retransmission are performed as described in 6.7.4.3, with the additional requirement that for each transmission, the process described in this subclause is used. If the destination address of the wake-up frame matches *macShortAddress*, the CSL coordinator checks whether the wake-up frame contains the Wake-up Interval field. If the wake-up frame does not contain the Wake-up Interval field, the CSL coordinator disables the receiver until the rendezvous time and then enables the receiver to receive the Data frame. If the wake-up frame does contain the Wake-up Interval field, and its value is nonzero, the CSL coordinator disables the receiver and transmits the data request frame with the AR field in the Data frame set to one. Then the CSL coordinator waits for the Enh-Ack frame. If the Enh-Ack frame is received, the rendezvous time is updated using the contents of the Enh-Ack frame, and the receiver remains on in order to receive the frame.

When the wake-up frame contains the Wake-up Interval field with a nonzero value, the transmission, reception, and acknowledgment operation is as illustrated in Figure 6-64.

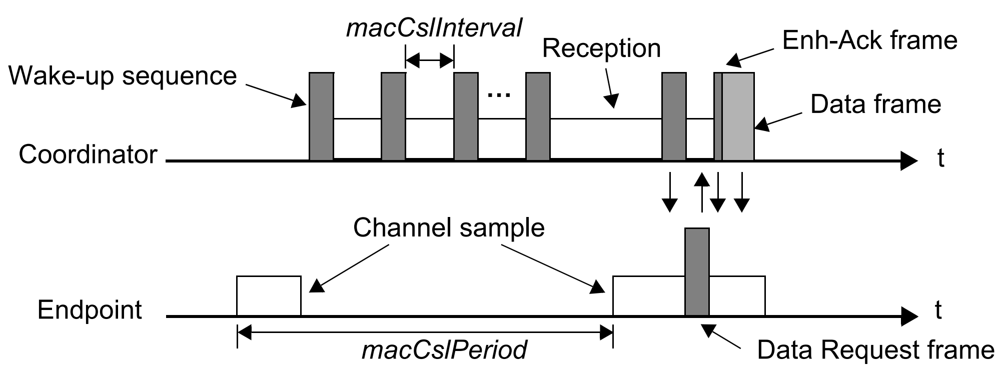


Figure 6-64—CSL operations when the wake-up frame interval is nonzero

If the destination address of the wake-up frame does not match *macShortAddress*, the CSL coordinator disables the receiver until the rendezvous time plus the transmission time of the maximum length payload frame and the secure Enh-Ack frame, and then resumes channel sampling.

6.12.2.2 CSL transmission

Each CSL transmission of a payload frame is preceded with a sequence of wake-up frames (wake-up sequence).

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

6.12.2.3 Unicast transmission

In unicast transmissions, the wake-up sequence length may be long or short based on the following two cases:

Unsynchronized transmission: This is the case when the MAC sublayer does not know the CSL phase, and period of the destination device. In this case, the maximum wake-up sequence length is *macCslMaxPeriod*.

Synchronized transmission: This is the case when the MAC sublayer knows the CSL phase and period of the destination device. In this case, the wake-up sequence length is only the guard time against clock drift based on the last time when CSL phase and period updated about the destination device.

If the next higher layer has multiple frames to transmit to the same destination, it may set the Frame Pending field in the Frame Control field to one in all but the last frame, in order to maximize the throughput.

CSL unicast transmission is performed in the following steps by the MAC:

a) Perform CSMA-CA to acquire the channel.
b) If the previous acknowledged frame to the destination has the Frame Pending field set and is within *macCslFramePendingWait*, as defined in Table 8-91, go to step e).
c) If it is a synchronized transmission, wait until the destination device's next channel sample.
d) For the duration of wake-up sequence length
    1) Construct wake-up frame with the destination short address and remaining time to payload frame transmission (at the end of wake-up sequence).
    2) Transmit wake-up frame.
    3) If *macCslInterval* is not equal to zero, wait for up to *macCslInterval* for the data request frame from the corresponding destination device. If the data request frame is received, then stop the transmission of the wake-up sequence, perform a CSMA-CA to acquire the channel, and transmit an Enh-Ack frame with the Rendezvous Time field updated to zero.
e) Transmit the frame
f) Wait for the Enh-Ack frame if the AR field of the received frame is set to one.
g) If the Enh-Ack frame is received, update CSL phase and period information about the destination device from the CSL IE.
h) If the Enh-Ack frame is not received, start retransmission process.

Retransmissions follow the same process as defined in 6.7.4.3 except that each transmission follows the process above.

6.12.2.4 Broadcast transmission

Broadcast transmission is the same as unicast transmission except for the following conditions:

— It is always unsynchronized transmission.
— The destination address of the wake-up frames is set to the broadcast short address.
— If *macCslInterval* is nonzero, the CSL coordinator will stop sending the wake-up sequence only after either receiving data request frames from all of the destination devices or when the *macCslMaxPeriod* expires.
— It may include a CSL IE.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

6.12.2.5 CSL reception

When a payload frame is received, the MAC layer performs the following steps:

- Immediately sends back an Enh-Ack frame with the destination address set as the transmitting device and its own CSL phase and period filled in the CSL IE. The Enh-Ack frame may be authenticated and/or encrypted depending on the current security mode.
- If the CSL IE is present in the received frame, the CSL phase and period information about the transmitting device is updated with the information in the CSL IE.
- Frame Pending field in the received frame is set to one, the receiver is kept on for *macCslFramePendingWait time* before going back to CSL idle listening. Otherwise, CSL idle listening starts.

6.12.2.6 CSL over multiple channels

When *macCslChannelMask* is nonzero, the CSL operations are extended to all the channels selected in the bitmap. CSL idle listening performs a channel sample on each channel from the lowest number to the highest in a round-robin fashion. In the unsynchronized case, CSL transmission transmits a wake-up sequence of the length number of channels × *macCslMaxPeriod* before each frame. In the synchronized case, CSL transmission calculates the next channel sample time and channel number and transmits at the next channel sample time on the right channel with a short wake-up sequence. In this case, CSL phase is the duration from now to the next channel sample on the first channel selected in *macCslChannelMask*.

6.12.2.7 Turning off CSL mode to reduce latency

The next higher layer has the option to turn off sampled listening and stop sending wake-up sequences to reduce latency for urgent messages. This assumes that the higher layer manages the coordination between the sender and receiver in turning on and off sampled listening. To turn off sampled listening, the next higher layer simply sets *macCslPeriod* to zero. To turn on sampled listening, the high layer restores *macCslPeriod* to its previous nonzero values. Similarly, to stop sending wake-up sequences, the next higher layer sets *macCslMaxPeriod* to zero and restores it to its previous value to return to normal CSL mode. To request a neighboring device to turn off sampled listening, the device shall send a frame to the device with frame pending bit set to one. This prevents CSL from turning off the radio before the request is processed.

6.12.3 RIT

6.12.3.1 General

RIT is an alternative low-energy MAC for nonbeacon-enabled PAN. RIT mode is turned on when PIB attribute *macRitPeriod* is nonzero and is turned off when *macRitPeriod* is zero.

macCslPeriod (in coordinated sample listening) and *macRitPeriod* shall not be nonzero at the same time. Figure 6-65 illustrates the basic RIT operations. Figure 6-66 illustrates the RIT operations when the RIT Data Request command payload carries schedule information, as defined in 7.5.22.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

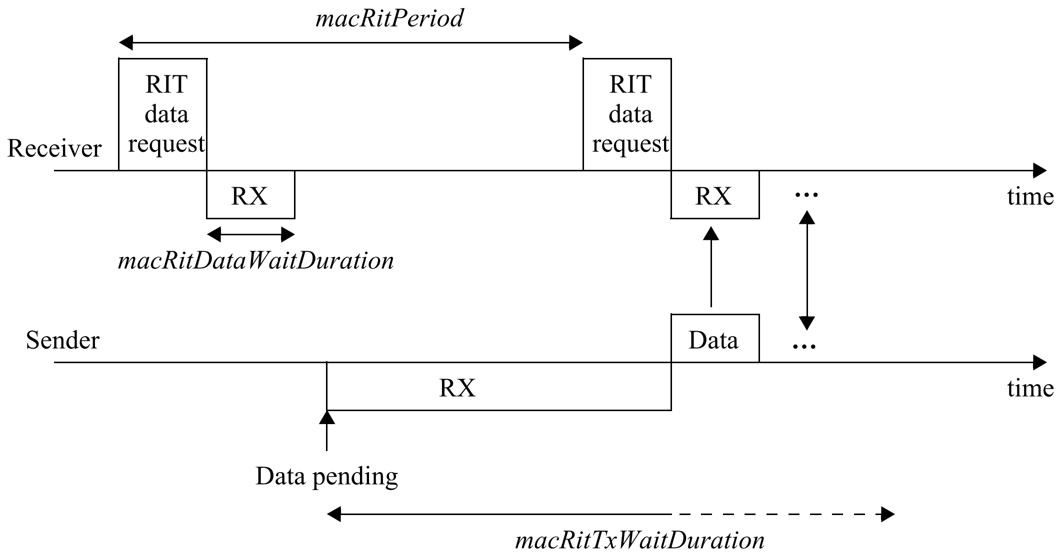


Figure 6-65—Basic RIT operations

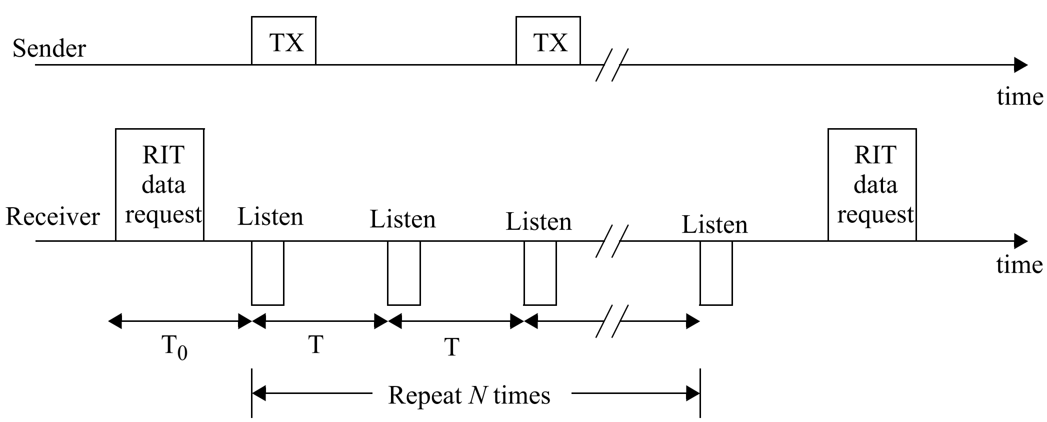


Figure 6-66—RIT operations when data request carries schedule information

6.12.3.2 Periodic RIT data request transmission and reception

In RIT mode, a device transmits an RIT Data Request command every *macRitPeriod* using unslotted CSMA-CA.

The destination address of the command may be broadcast short address or the address of the intended transmitter of data (associated coordinator). The command may optionally contain a payload, as defined in 7.5.22. When the command carries no payload, after the transmission of the RIT Data Request command, the device listens for *macRitDataWaitDuration* for an incoming frame (except for an RIT Data Request command) and then goes back to sleep state till the next periodic transmission of the RIT Data Request command. When a device is in the receiving state after transmission of the RIT Data Request command, an RIT Data Request command that is received from another device shall be discarded. When the RIT Data Request command carries the timing information as payload, the device goes back to sleep after the

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

transmission of the RIT Data Request command until the end of the Time to First Listen (*T0*) period of time. Then the device repeats a listen interval of *macRitDataWaitDuration* every Repeat Listen Interval (*T*) period of time for Number of Repeat Listen (*N*) times. The value of the Number of Repeat Listen field shall be less than (*macRitPeriod* –Time to First Listen field)/(Repeat Listen Interval field).

Upon reception of RIT Data Request command with RIT Request Payload field, the device shall notify the next higher layer by issuing an MLME-RIT-REQ.indication, as defined in 8.2.25.1.

Figure 6-67 shows the message sequence chart for starting RIT mode.

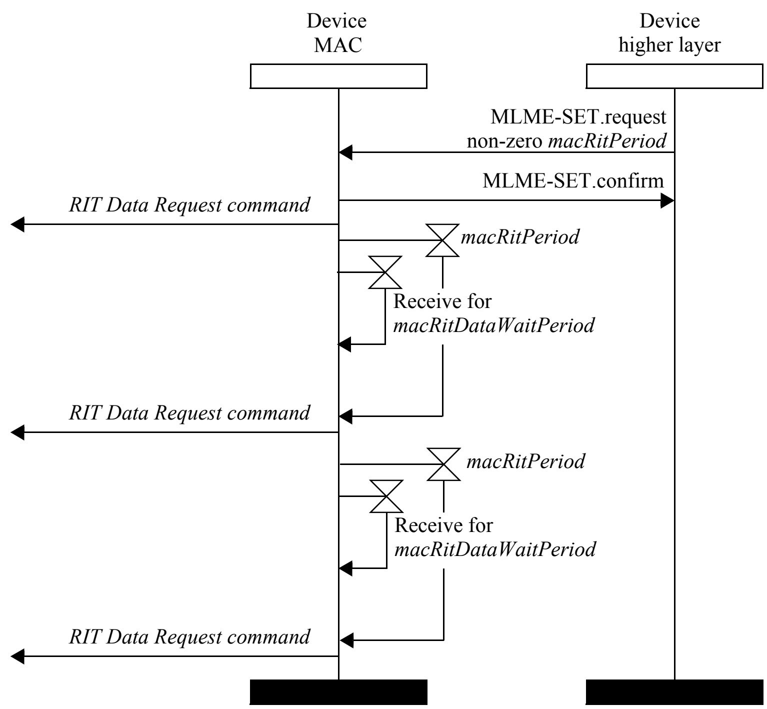


Figure 6-67—Message sequence chart for starting RIT mode

The device shall start listening slightly before each scheduled listen time based on a guard time computed from possible clock skew since the last RIT Data Request command transmission.

Upon reception of frame after the transmission of the RIT Data Request command, the device notifies its arrival to the next higher layer by initiating corresponding indication primitive. At the completion of frame reception, the next higher layer may set *macRitPeriod* to zero (RIT off). If this is the case, the device shall stop periodic transmission of RIT Data Request command and become always active until *macRitPeriod* is set to a nonzero value by the next higher layer. During this period when RIT is off all transactions shall be handled as those of normal nonbeacon-enabled PAN.

Figure 6-68 shows the message sequence chart for RIT mode when the RIT Data Request command contains a payload.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

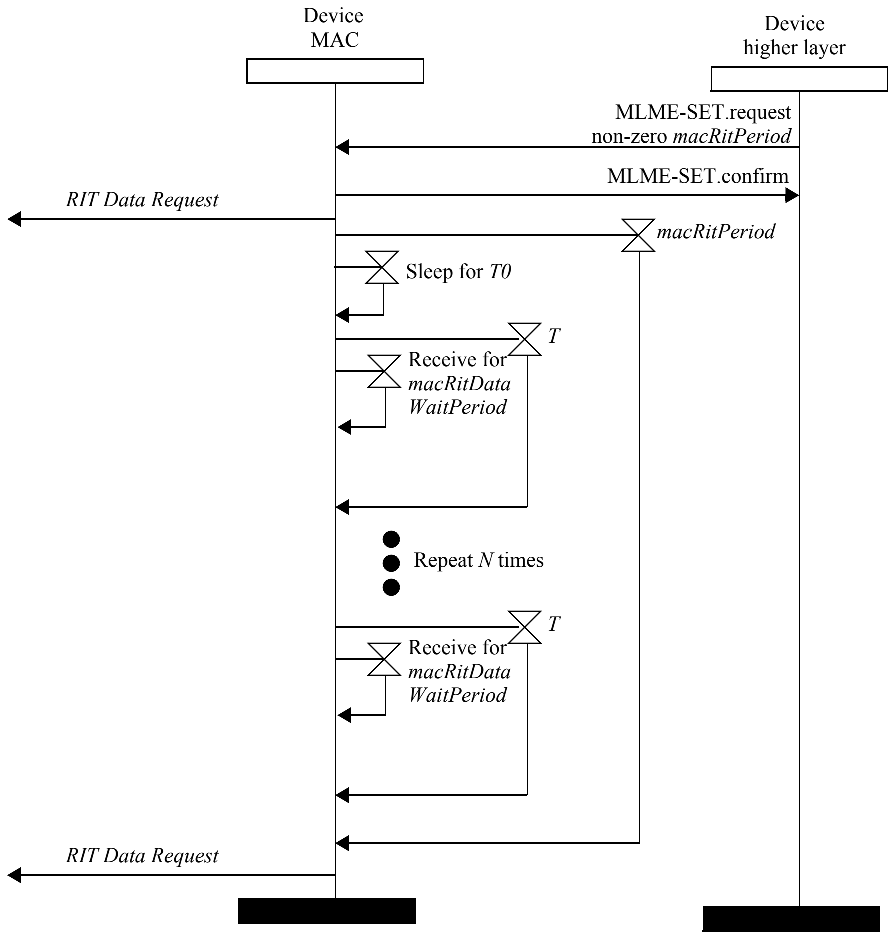


Figure 6-68—Message sequence chart for RIT with the RIT Data Request carrying a payload

6.12.3.3 RIT transmission

In order to transmit frame in RIT mode, the device may stop its periodic transmission of RIT Data Request commands, enable its receiver, and wait at most *macRitTxWaitDuration* for reception of an RIT Data Request command from another device.

Upon reception of RIT Data Request command, the MAC sublayer sends the pending data using unslotted CSMA-CA. The Destination PAN ID field and the Destination Address field of the outgoing Data frame shall be set as the Source PAN ID field and the Source Address field of the received RIT Data Request command, respectively. At the completion of frame transmission, the corresponding confirm primitive shall be issued by the MAC sublayer to the next higher layer. At this point, the device shall restart its transmission of periodic RIT Data Request commands. If the next higher layer sets *macRitPeriod* parameter to RIT off, the device shall stop periodic transmission of RIT Data Request command and become active.

When the RIT Data Request commands carry the Listen Information field, the device may either wait to receive a data request frame from the receiving device, or sleep until the next scheduled listen time by the receiving device and then wake up to transmit the intended frame.

Figure 6-69 shows the message sequence chart for data transmission in RIT mode.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

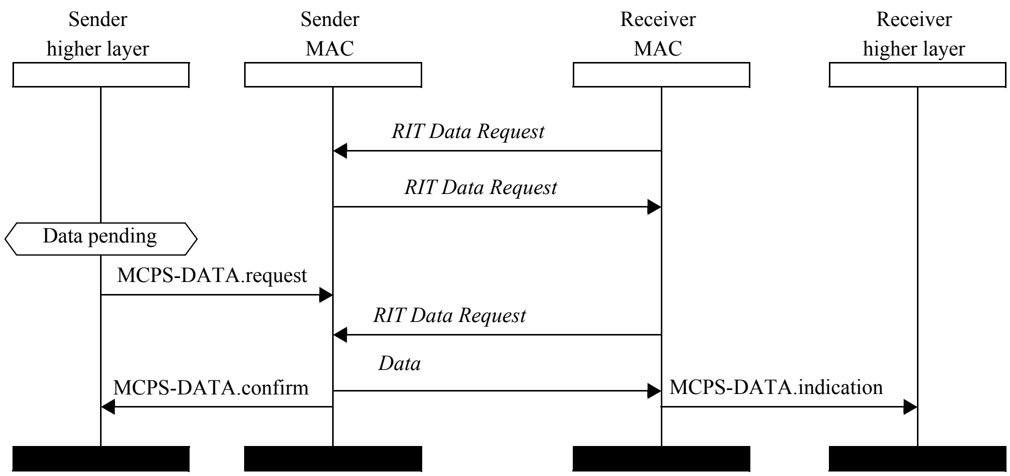


Figure 6-69—Message sequence chart for data transmission in RIT mode

When the RIT Data Request command contains an RIT Request Payload field, the MLME shall issue an MLME-RIT-REQ.indication, as defined in 8.2.25.1. The higher layer may respond with the MLME-RIT-RES.request, as defined in 8.2.25.2.

Optionally, for the devices operating in 920 MHz band, a sender device may skip doing CSMA-CA for transmission of RIT Data Response command as long as it comply with the regulatory requirements.

Figure 6-70 shows the message sequence chart for data transmission in RIT Mode with RIT Request Payload field and using an RIT Data Response command.

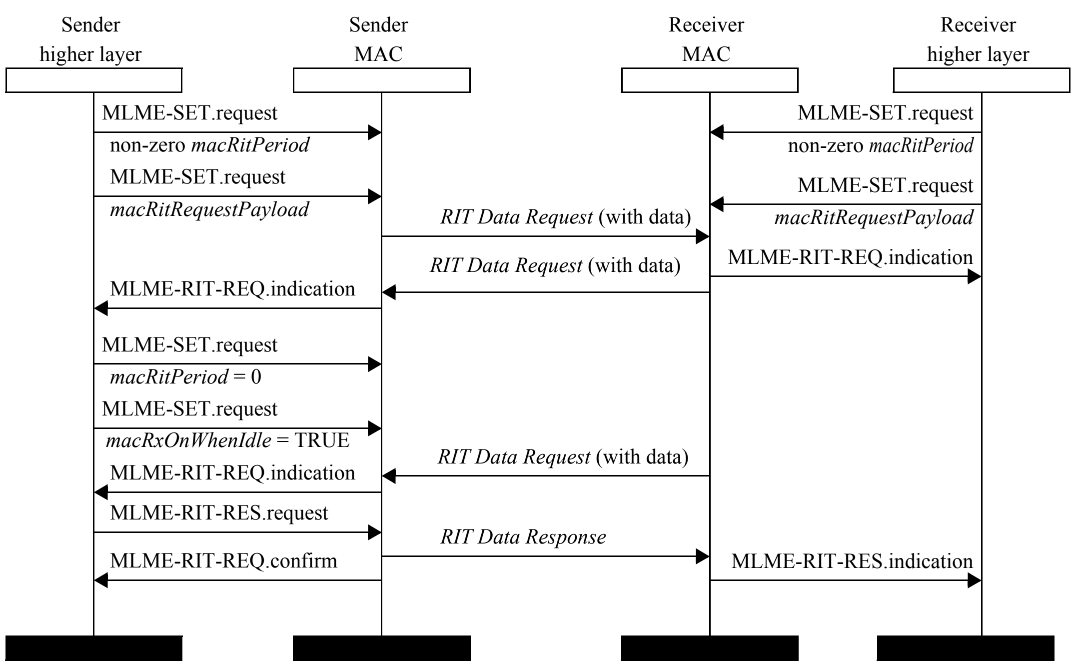


Figure 6-70—Message sequence chart for data transmission in RIT mode with RIT Response Payload field

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

6.12.4 Implicit RIT (I-RIT)

I-RIT is a low energy mode for nonbeacon-enabled PANs. I-RIT is designed to be used by end devices, such as sensors, that primarily transmit information to a coordinator but have no way of determining when they should make use of conventional RIT.

In order to enable I-RIT in an end device, the PIB attribute *macIRitEnabled* is set to TRUE. When an end device has I-RIT enabled, the device shall enable its receiver *macIRitOffsetInterval* after the last bit of its transmitted frame for a period of *macIRitListenDuration*, in order to allow the receipt of a frame from the coordinator. The values of *macCslPeriod* and *macCslInterval* shall be ignored when *macIRitenabled* is TRUE. Transmission and reception in I-RIT mode is illustrated in Figure 6-71.

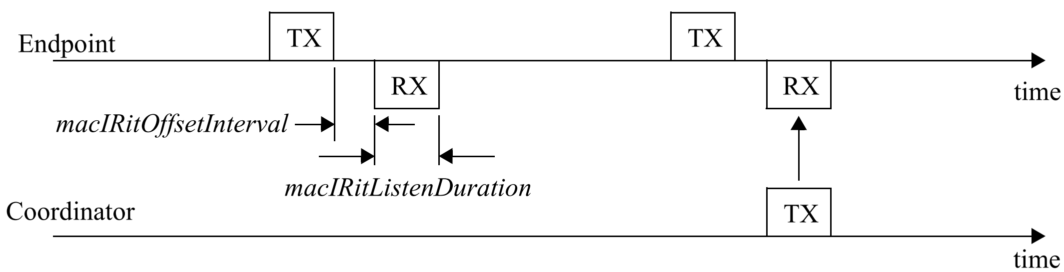


Figure 6-71—I-RIT transmission

6.13 Starting and maintaining TMCTPs

Figure 6-72 shows an example with a suggested message sequence for TMCTP formation between the SPC, which is the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator, and a TMCTP-child PAN Coordinator.

In step A, the SPC obtains the set of available TVWS channels from the GDB through the Internet. The protocol used to access the GDB over the Internet is outside the scope of this standard. Alternatively, the SPC may obtain the set of available TVWS channels from another device. The SPC maps the TVWS channels to corresponding PHY channels, selects one of the available PHY channels, and transmits its Beacon frame in that channel. The TMCTP-child PAN coordinator completes the scan procedure over all PHY channels.

In Step B, the SPC transmits an Enhanced Beacon frame containing a TMCTP Specification IE, as described in 7.4.4.28. The TMCTP Specification IE shall be included in all Enhanced Beacon frames that are sent in a TMCTP-enabled PAN. Upon successful reception of the Enhanced Beacon frame from the SPC, the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator may request a DBS allocation or a DBS deallocation by sending a DBS Request command, as described in 7.5.23, to the SPC. Upon receiving the DBS Request command, the SPC will allocate or deallocate a DBS slot and a channel and generate a DBS Response command, as described in 7.5.24, to report the slot and the channel allocated or deallocated. The SPC may generate the DBS Response command for the deallocation without the request of the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator.

In Step C, the SPC indicates pending data for the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator in its Beacon frame. The TMCTP-child PAN coordinator sends the Data Request command. Upon receiving the Data Request command, the SPC replies with the DBS Response command generated in Step B. The SPC then sends its own Beacon frame.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

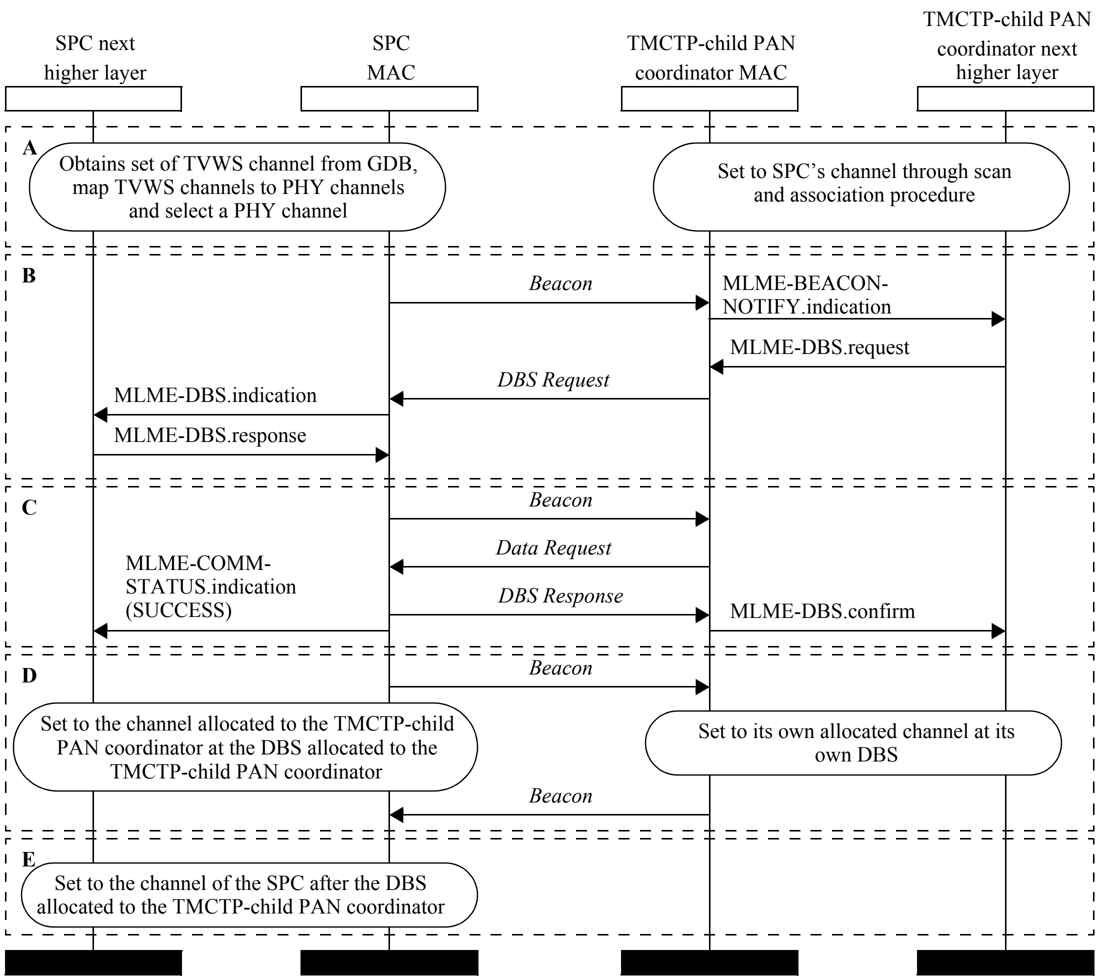


Figure 6-72—Example message sequence chart between SPC and TMCTP-child PAN coordinator

In Step D, the SPC switches to the channel allocated to the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator and listens for the Beacon frame from the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator. If the SPC does not receive a Beacon frame from the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator within three BIs, the SPC switches to the SPC channel and sends a DBS Response command to the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator in next superframe of the SPC.

In Step E, upon receiving the Beacon frame during the slot allocated to the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator on the channel allocated to the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator, the SPC switches to its own dedicated channel.

During the CAP of the SPC TMCTP superframe, each TMCTP-child PAN coordinator sends a DBS Request command to the SPC and receives a DBS Response command from the SPC. The SPC switches to the channel allocated to the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator before the DBS slot time allocated to the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator. Each TMCTP-child PAN coordinator forms an independent PAN by transmitting its beacon during the allocated DBS slot.

Figure 6-73 provides another example for TMCTP formation between two PAN coordinators, where one is the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator and the other is a TMCTP-child PAN Coordinator.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

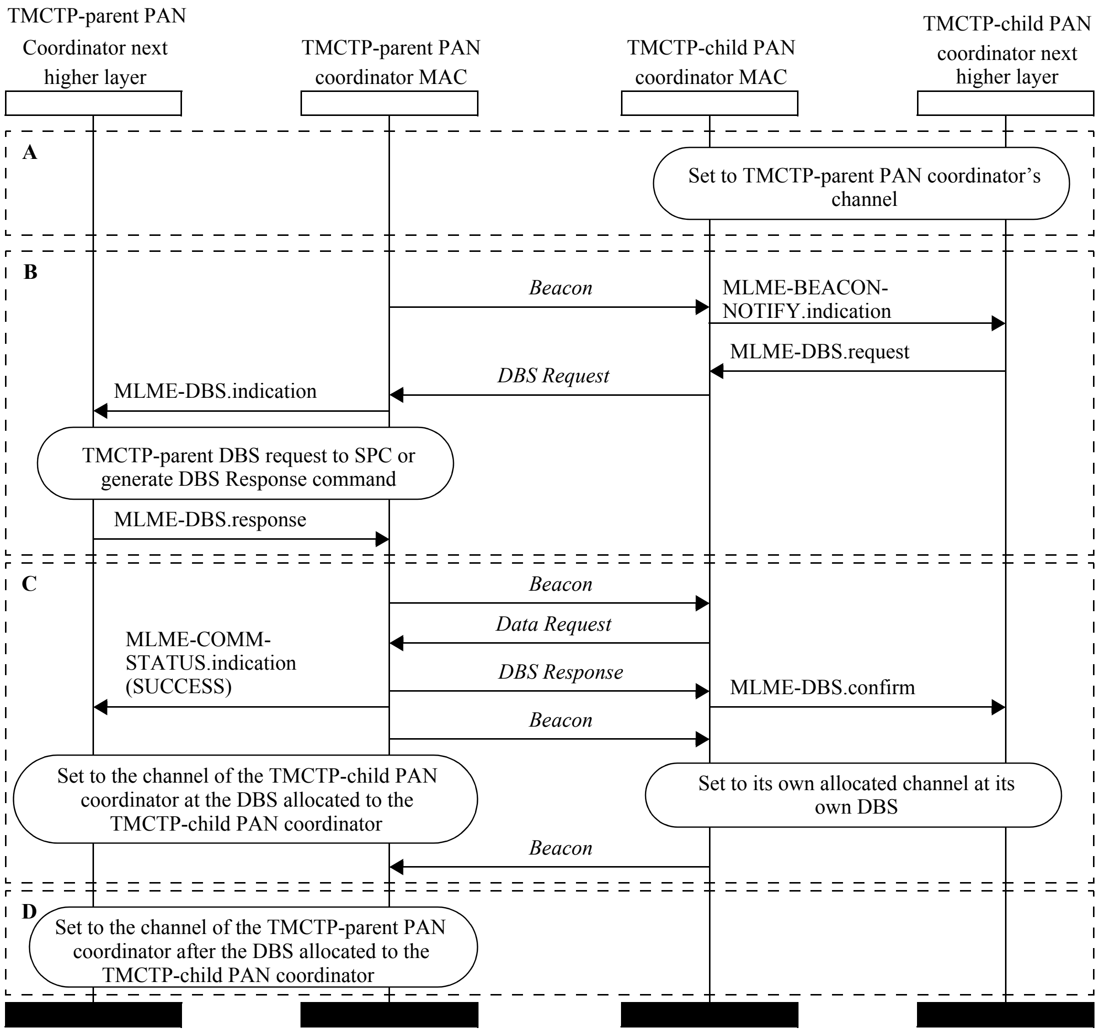


Figure 6-73—Example message sequence chart between TMCTP PAN coordinators

In Step A, the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator performs a scan procedure and waits for the Beacon frame of the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator.

In Step B, the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator sends an Enhanced Beacon frame containing a TMCTP Specification IE, as defined in 7.4.4.28. Upon successful reception of the Enhanced Beacon frame from the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator, the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator requests a channel and a slot by using the DBS Request command sent to the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator. Upon receiving the DBS Request command, the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator either directly generates the DBS Response command reporting the slot and the channel allocated or deallocated, or sends the DBS Request command to the SPC and then receives the DBS Response command from the SPC. The TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator may generate the DBS Response command for the deallocation without a request of the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator.

In Step C, the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator sends a Beacon frame. The TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator switches to the channel allocated to the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator and receives the Beacon frame from the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

In Step D, upon receiving the Beacon frame during the slot allocated to the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator on the channel allocated to the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator, the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator switches to its own dedicated channel.

During CAP of the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator, which has a relay capability or a channel allocation capability, each TMCTP-child PAN coordinator sends a DBS Request command to the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator and receives the DBS Response command from the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator. The TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator switches to the channel allocated to the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator during the DBS slot allocated to each TMCTP-child PAN coordinator. Each TMCTP-child PAN coordinator manages its own WPAN by transmitting a Beacon frame during the allocated DBS slot time.

Figure 6-74 shows an example of the multichannel allocation for the network topology as presented in Figure 5-3. In this case, the SPC operates on the dedicated channel, which is Channel 1 in Figure 6-74, and switches to the dedicated channels of TMCTP-child PAN coordinators 2, 3, and 4 during their DBSs. Similarly TMCTP-child PAN coordinator 4 operates on the dedicated channel, which is Channel 4, and switches to the dedicated channel of TMCTP-child PAN coordinator 5 during its DBS to communicate with TMCTP-child PAN coordinator 5.

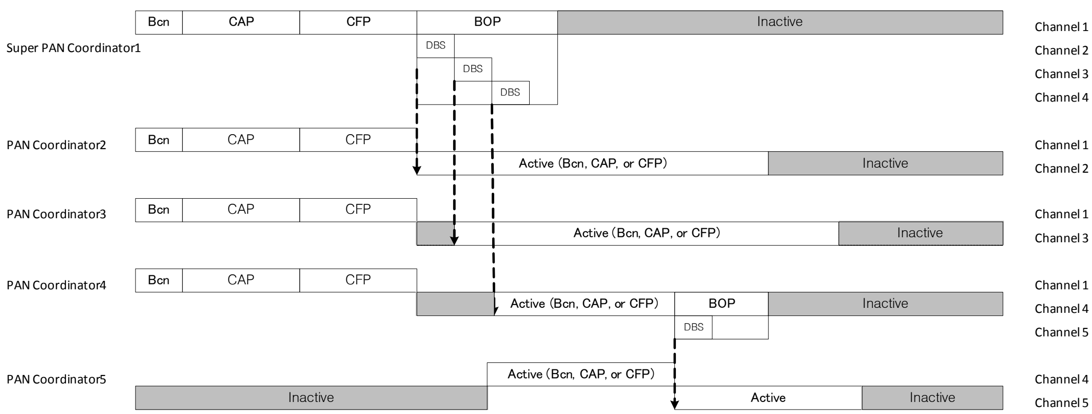


Figure 6-74—Example TMCTP BOP allocation

6.14 MPM procedure for inter-PHY coexistence

To facilitate interference avoidance among multiple SUNs utilizing different PHYs in the same location, all SUN coordinators operating at a duty cycle of more than 1% shall support the MPM procedures. In the MPM scheme, Enhanced Beacon frames are sent using the CSM, as defined in Table 10-17. Enhanced Beacon frames used in the MPM procedures described here are Enhanced Beacon frames containing a Coexistence Specification IE.

The transmission of Enhanced Beacon frames should take place in all the channels defined for CSM, as described in Table 10-17, that overlap with the channel(s) in operation. The scanning for Enhanced Beacon frames and the transmission of Enhanced Beacon Request commands should take place in all the channels defined for CSM that overlap with the channel of interest or at least two channels for PHY modes where the CSM requires frequency hopping.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

In a beacon-enabled PAN, an existing coordinator[10] shall transmit an Enhanced Beacon frame at a fixed interval by using CSM. Any intending coordinator[11] shall first scan for an Enhanced Beacon frame until the expiration of the enhanced beacon interval or until an Enhanced Beacon frame is detected, whichever occurs first. If an intending coordinator detects an Enhanced Beacon frame, it shall either occupy another channel, achieve synchronization with the existing PAN, or stop communication. While specific mechanisms to achieve synchronization between two PANs utilizing different PHY modes are implementation dependent, the timing information applicable for synchronization purposes is specified in the Enhanced Beacon frame. Figure 6-75 illustrates the MPM procedure.

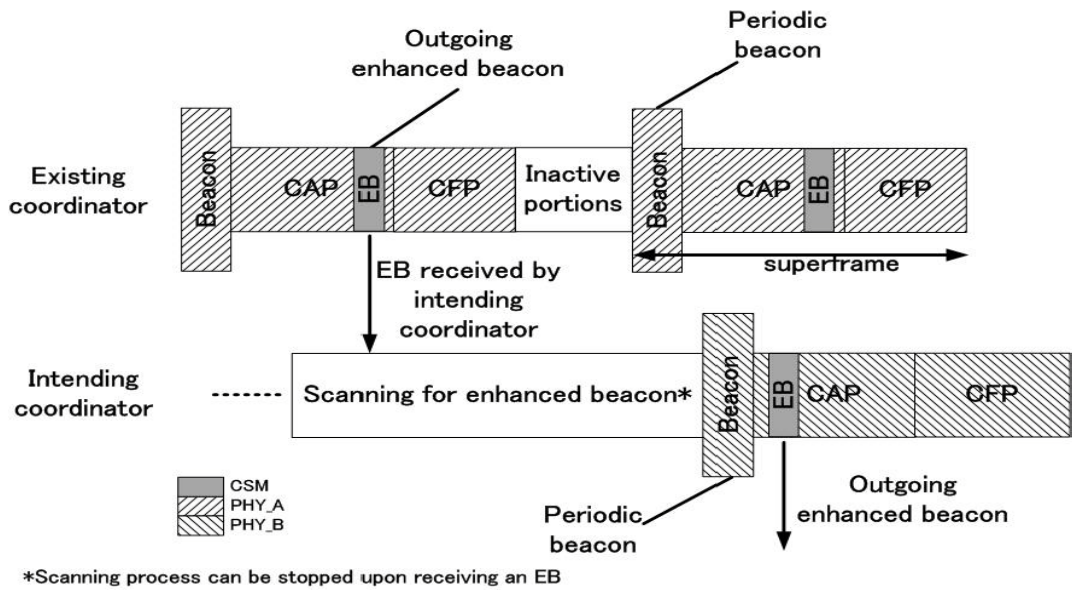


Figure 6-75—Inter-PHY mode coexistence in a beacon-enabled PAN

The Enhanced Beacon frame shall only be sent in the CAP.

In a nonbeacon-enabled PAN, an existing coordinator should transmit an Enhanced Beacon frame periodically using the CSM. Any intending coordinator shall first scan for an Enhanced Beacon frame until the expiration of EBI_{NBPAN} or until an Enhanced Beacon frame is detected, whichever occurs first. The illustration of the procedure is given in Figure 6-76.

Alternatively, an Enhanced Beacon frame may be obtained in an on-demand manner. In this case, an Enhanced Beacon Request command containing the ID of the Coexistence Specification IE in the set of IE IDs is sent by the intending coordinator requesting an Enhanced Beacon frame from the existing coordinator. Upon receiving an Enhanced Beacon Request command, the existing coordinator (or any other device within the same area that is capable of receiving and transmitting an Enhanced Beacon Request command or Enhanced Beacon frame using the CSM) may respond by sending an Enhanced Beacon frame to the intending coordinator. The intending coordinator should transmit an Enhanced Beacon Request command at least once every EBI_{NBPAN}. To increase the probability of receiving an Enhanced Beacon Request command, the existing coordinator may periodically allocate a fraction of the CAP time to scan for the Enhanced Beacon Request command in CSM. The illustration of the procedure is given in Figure 6-77.

[10]An existing coordinator is a coordinator currently operating a network.
[11]An intending coordinator is a coordinator intending to start a separate network.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

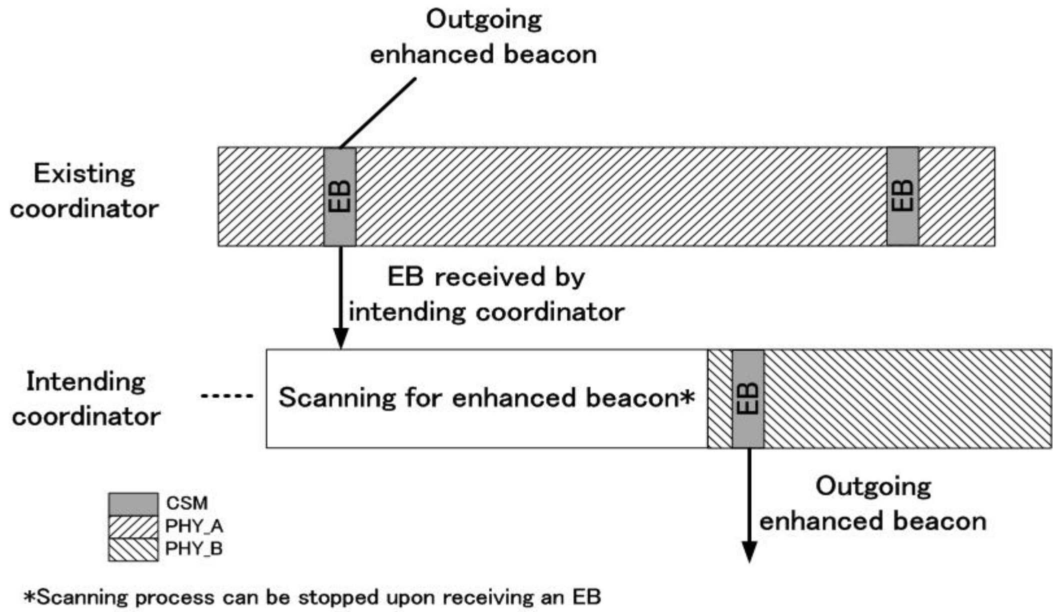


Figure 6-76—Inter-PHY mode coexistence in a nonbeacon-enabled PAN

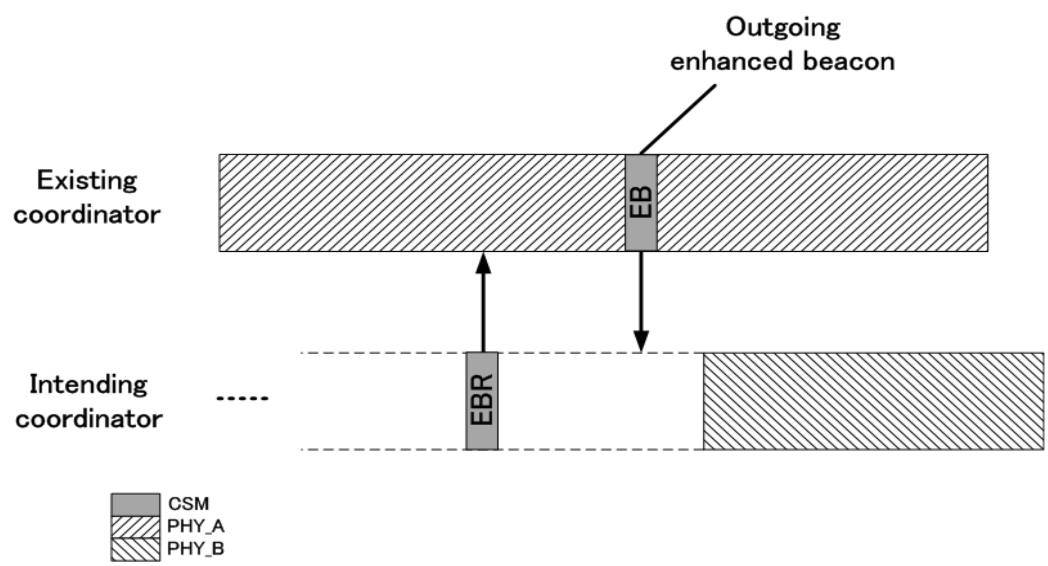


Figure 6-77—Alternative method for inter-PHY mode coexistence in a nonbeacon-enabled PAN

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

6.15 TVWS access procedures

In certain regulatory domains, an independent device operating in TVWS is required to communicate with a database which stores information on operation of primary incumbent systems to obtain permission and radio resource information, prior to starting communications. This database to protect primary systems is typically, but not limited to, a GDB. When a GDB is employed as the database, an independent device first communicates with the GDB to obtain permission to operate in TVWS. The communication between the independent device and the GDB is outside the scope of this standard. In this case, the independent device determines its geolocation to be reported to the GDB. The GDB then provides available channels and relevant operating information. Upon receiving permission from the GDB, the independent device may start a network and begin enabling other devices. Figure 6-78 shows the state transition diagram of the enabling procedure for a dependent device.

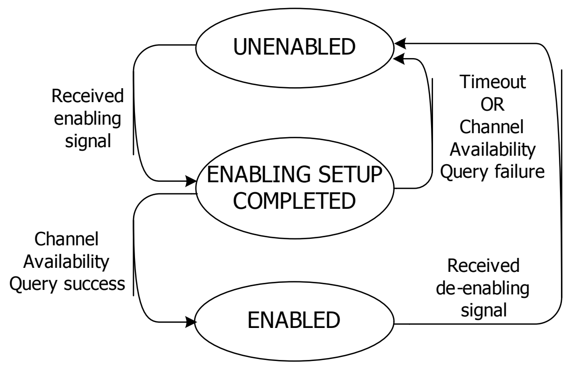


Figure 6-78—State transition of a dependent device

A dependent device, prior to receiving channel availability information (such as at power on or reset condition) begins in the UNENABLED state. The device may perform a channel scan or other procedure to detect transmissions that are active on the channel and determine a suitable source of channel availability data (e.g., an independent device advertisement). Upon receiving a frame with the TVWS Channel Information Source IE, as defined in 7.4.4.24, from an independent device, the state transitions to ENABLING SETUP COMPLETED. From the ENABLING SETUP COMPLETED state, the dependent device will initiate the exchange of information in order to be enabled, as required by the particular regulatory domain in which it is operating. The information exchange is facilitated by several IEs as specified in 7.4.4.20 and 7.4.4.21. Information on the list of locations of particular valid channel is contained in the IE specified in 7.4.4.22. Information on the set of available channels is contained in the IE specified in 7.4.4.23. A device that has access to channel availability information advertises that fact using the TVWS Channel Information Source IE as specified in 7.4.4.24. Upon successfully completing a channel availability query the state transitions to ENABLED. In this state, the dependent device is able to conduct data communications.

6.16 Channel timing management (CTM)

CTM facilitates assessment of the available timing schedule when a channel is available. CTM is used by employing the CTM IE as in 7.4.4.25. Upon receipt of MLME-CTM.request, the MLME shall schedule transmission for a CTM IE as in 7.4.4.25. The CTM IE may be contained in an enhanced beacon frame.

A device transmits a CTM IE to a PAN coordinator that is capable of database access as indicated in the enabling signal. The PAN coordinator capable of database access visits the database and obtains the channel timing information for available channels. The PAN coordinator may respond to a request by sending the CTM IE with CTM Control field set to Request Declined, to indicate that it has no capability to provide schedule information.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

A device may transmit a CTM IE to request channel information from another device. A device shall respond to a CTM IE request using a CTM IE with the CTM Control field set to Success if it is capable of providing channel timing information on WPAN channels obtained from a database. Otherwise it shall respond with the CTM Control field set to Request Declined, to indicate that it has no capability to provide schedule information on available channels due to various reasons.

When the information in a CTM IE is identical to the information in the most recently transmitted CTM IE to the same requesting device, the responding device may set the CTM Control field value in a query response to Successful with no channel schedule changes from the last query and leave the Channel Timing Information field empty.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7. MAC frame formats

7.1 Device extended address

A device's extended address shall be a 64-bit extended universal identifier (EUI-64), as defined by IEEE Std 802-2014 and assigned by the IEEE Registration Authority.[12]

The EUI-64 shall be sent in the canonical form defined in IEEE Std 802-2014.

7.2 General MAC frame format

The general MAC frame for Frame Type values other than fragment and extended, as defined in Table 7-1, shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-1.

Octets: 1/2	0/1	0/2	0/2/8	0/2	0/2/8	variable	variable		variable	2/4
Frame Control	Sequence Number	Destination PAN ID	Destination Address	Source PAN ID	Source Address	Auxiliary Security Header	IE		Frame Payload	FCS
		Addressing fields					Header IEs	Payload IEs		
MHR								MAC Payload		MFR

Figure 7-1—General MAC frame format

The fields of the MHR appear in a fixed order; however, some fields may not be included in all frames.

If the Frame Type field indicates a Fragment packet or Frak then the frame format shall be as formatted as defined in 23.3.3 and 23.3.6.2, respectively.

If the Frame Type field indicates an Extended frame, then the frame format shall be formatted as illustrated in 7.3.6.

7.2.1 Frame Control field

The Frame Control field for frames other than the Multipurpose frame, Fragment frame and Extended frame shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-2. The Frame Control fields for the Multipurpose frame and Extended frame are specified in 7.3.5 and 7.3.6, respectively.

Bits: 0–2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10–11	12–13	14–15
Frame Type	Security Enabled	Frame Pending	AR	PAN ID Compression	Reserved	Sequence Number Suppression	IE Present	Destination Addressing Mode	Frame Version	Source Addressing Mode

Figure 7-2—Format of the Frame Control field

[12]Interested applicants should contact the IEEE Registration Authority, http://standards.ieee.org/develop/regauth/.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Fragment frame type does not have a Frame Control field.

7.2.1.1 Frame Type field

The Frame Type field shall be set as defined in Table 7-1.

Table 7-1—Values of the Frame Type field

Frame type value b2 b1 b0	Description
000	Beacon
001	Data
010	Acknowledgment
011	MAC command
100	Reserved
101	Multipurpose
110	Fragment or Frak[a]
111	Extended

[a]The Fragment and Frak formats are defined in 23.3.3 and 23.3.6.2, respectively.

Frame formats for each of the Frame Type field values are specified in 7.3.

7.2.1.2 Security Enabled field

The Security Enabled field shall be set to one if the frame is protected by the MAC sublayer and shall be set to zero otherwise. The Auxiliary Security Header field of the MHR shall be present only if the Security Enabled field is set to one.

7.2.1.3 Frame Pending field

The Frame Pending field shall be set to one if the device sending the frame has more data for the recipient, as described in 6.7.3. This field shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Frame Pending field shall be used only in Beacon frames or frames transmitted either during the CAP by devices operating on a beacon-enabled PAN or at any time by devices operating on a nonbeacon-enabled PAN.

When operating in low-energy (LE) CSL mode, the frame pending bit may be set to one to indicate that the transmitting device has pending frames to send to the same recipient and expects the recipient to keep the radio on until the frame pending bit is reset to zero.

When operating in TSCH mode, the frame pending bit can be set to one to indicate that the recipient should stay on in the next timeslot and on the same channel if there is no link scheduled.

At all other times, it shall be set to zero on transmission and ignored on reception.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.2.1.4 AR field

The AR field specifies whether an acknowledgment is required from the recipient device on receipt of a Data frame or MAC command. If this field is set to one, the recipient device shall send an Ack frame or only if, upon reception, the frame passes the filtering described in 6.7.2. If this field is set to zero, the recipient device shall not send an Ack frame.

7.2.1.5 PAN ID Compression field

The PAN ID Compression field is used to indicate the presence of the PAN ID field.

When the frame version field value is 0b00 or 0b01, the PAN ID compression field is interpreted as follows:

— If both destination and source addressing information is present, the MAC sublayer shall compare the destination and source PAN identifiers. If the PAN IDs are identical, the PAN ID Compression field shall be set to one, and the Source PAN ID field shall be omitted from the transmitted frame. If the PAN IDs are different, the PAN ID Compression field shall be set to zero, and both Destination PAN ID field and Source PAN ID fields shall be included in the transmitted frame.
— If only either the destination or the source addressing information is present, the PAN ID Compression field shall be set to zero, and the PAN ID field of the single address shall be included in the transmitted frame.

When the frame version field value is 0b10, the PAN ID Compression Field for Beacon frame, Data frame, MAC Command frame and Ack frame shall be set based on the addressing fields present as defined in Table 7-2. Combinations of destination and source address with destination and source PAN ID and PAN Compression not shown in Table 7-2 shall not be generated.

Table 7-2—PAN ID Compression field value for frame version 0b10

Destination Address	Source Address	Destination PAN ID	Source PAN ID	PAN ID Compression
Not Present	Not Present	Not Present	Not Present	0
Not Present	Not Present	Present	Not Present	1
Present	Not Present	Present	Not Present	0
Present	Not Present	Not Present	Not Present	1
Not Present	Present	Not Present	Present	0
Not Present	Present	Not Present	Not Present	1
Extended	Extended	Present	Not Present	0
Extended	Extended	Not Present	Not Present	1
Short[a]	Short[a]	Present	Present	0
Short[a]	Extended	Present	Present	0
Extended	Short[a]	Present	Present	0
Short[a]	Extended	Present	Not Present	1
Extended	Short[a]	Present	Not Present	1
Short[a]	Short[a]	Present	Not Present	1

[a]If both the destination and source addressing information is present and either is a short address, the MAC sublayer shall compare the destination and source PAN IDs and the PAN ID Compression field shall be set to zero if and only if the PAN identifiers are identical.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

NOTE 1—In IEEE Std 802.15.4-2003, i.e., frame version 0b00, the PAN ID Compression field is named Intra-PAN, but it is in the same position and has the same effect as the PAN ID Compression field in 802.15.4-2006.

NOTE 2—The PAN ID Compression field is not present in Multipurpose frames.

7.2.1.6 Sequence Number Suppression

When set to one, this field indicates suppression of the Sequence Number field in the frame, and the sequence number shall be omitted. When set to zero, the Sequence Number field is present. If the Frame Version field is 0b00 or 0b01, the Sequence Number Suppression field shall be zero.

7.2.1.7 IE Present field

The IE Present field shall be set to one if IEs are contained in the frame. This field shall be set to zero otherwise. If the Frame Version field is 0b00 or 0b01, the IE Present field shall be zero.

7.2.1.8 Destination Addressing Mode field

The Destination Addressing Mode field shall be set to one of the values listed in Table 7-3.

If this field is equal to zero and the Frame Type field specifies a Data frame or MAC command and the Frame Version field is set to 0b00 or 0b01, the Source Addressing Mode field shall be nonzero, implying that the frame is directed to the PAN coordinator with the PAN ID as specified in the Source PAN ID field.

For frames with a Frame Version of 0b10, the destination address or destination PAN ID or both may be omitted.

Table 7-3—Valid values of the Destination Addressing Mode and Source Addressing Mode fields

Addressing mode value b1 b0	Description
00	PAN ID and address fields are not present.
01	Reserved
10	Address field contains a short address (16 bit).
11	Address field contains an extended address (64 bit).

7.2.1.9 Frame Version field

The Frame Version field is an unsigned integer that specifies the version number corresponding to the frame. For all frame types, the Frame Version field shall be set as described in that subclause.

A summary of the frame versions, and their applicability, for each of the frame types is shown in Table 7-4.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 7-4—Frame Version field values

Frame type	Frame Version field value			
	0b00	0b01	0b10	0b11
Beacon	IEEE Std 802.15.4-2003	IEEE Std 802.15.4-2006	IEEE Std 802.15.4	Reserved
Data	IEEE Std 802.15.4-2003	IEEE Std 802.15.4-2006	IEEE Std 802.15.4	Reserved
Acknowledgment	IEEE Std 802.15.4-2003	IEEE Std 802.15.4-2006	IEEE Std 802.15.4	Reserved
MAC Command	IEEE Std 802.15.4-2003	IEEE Std 802.15.4-2006	IEEE Std 802.15.4	Reserved
Reserved	—	—	—	—
Multipurpose	IEEE Std 802.15.4	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
Fragment	Frame Version field not present in frame			
Extended	Frame Version field not present in frame			

7.2.1.10 Source Addressing Mode field

The Source Addressing Mode field shall be set to one of the values listed in Table 7-3.

If this field is equal to zero and the Frame Type field specifies a Data frame or MAC command, and the Frame Version field is set to 0b00 or 0b01, the Destination Addressing Mode field shall be nonzero, implying that the frame has originated from the PAN coordinator with the PAN ID as specified in the Destination PAN ID field.

7.2.2 Sequence Number field

The Sequence Number field specifies the sequence identifier for the frame.

For a Beacon frame, the Sequence Number field shall specify a BSN. For other frames, the Sequence Number field shall specify a DSN.

7.2.3 Destination PAN ID field

The Destination PAN ID field, when present, is an unsigned integer that specifies the unique PAN ID of the intended recipient of the frame. A value of the broadcast PAN ID, as defined in 6.1, in the Destination PAN ID field shall be accepted as a valid PAN ID by all devices currently listening to the channel.

7.2.4 Destination Address field

The Destination Address field, when present, with a length specified in the Destination Addressing Mode field of the Frame Control field as described in 7.2.1.8, specifies the address of the intended recipient of the frame. A value the broadcast short address, as defined in 6.1, in the Destination Address field shall be accepted as a valid address by all devices currently listening to the channel.

This field shall be included in the MAC frame only if the Destination Addressing Mode field is nonzero.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.2.5 Source PAN ID field

The Source PAN ID field, when present as described in 7.2.1.5, specifies the unique PAN ID of the originator of the frame.

The PAN ID of a device is initially determined during association on a PAN but may change following a PAN ID conflict resolution, as described in 6.3.2.

7.2.6 Source Address field

The Source Address field, when present, specifies the address of the originator of the frame. This field shall be included in the MAC frame only if the Source Addressing Mode field is nonzero.

7.2.7 Auxiliary Security Header field

The Auxiliary Security Header field specifies information required for security processing. This field shall be present only if the Security Enabled field is set to one. The formatting of the Auxiliary Security Header field is described in 9.4.

7.2.8 IE field

The IE field is variable length and contains one or more IE. This field is comprised of the Header IE and Payload IE subfields. This field shall be present only if the IE Present field in the Frame Control field is set to one. The format of the IE field is shown in Figure 7-3. Each IE consists of a descriptor and an optional payload as described in 7.4. This standard does not limit the number of IEs within the IE field.

Header IEs, if present, follow the Auxiliary Security Header and are part of the MHR. Header IEs, if present, may require termination, as defined in 7.4.1.

Payload IEs, if present, follow the MHR and are considered part of the MAC payload, i.e., they may be encrypted. A set of payload IEs may require termination, as described in 7.4.1.

Octets: variable	…	variable	0/2	variable	…	variable	0/2
Header IE #1	…	Header IE #n	Header Termination IE	Payload IE #1	…	Payload IE #m	Payload Termination IE

Figure 7-3—Format of IE field

7.2.9 Frame Payload field

The Frame Payload field contains information specific to individual frame types. If the Security Enabled field is set to one, the frame payload the frame may be cryptographically protected, as described in Clause 9.

7.2.10 FCS field

The FCS field contains a 16-bit ITU-T CRC or a 32-bit CRC equivalent to ANSI X3.66-1979.[13] The FCS is calculated over the MHR and MAC payload parts of the frame; these parts together are referred to as the calculation field. Devices compliant with one or more of the SUN PHYs or TVWS PHYs shall implement the 4-octet FCS.

[13]Information on references can be found in Clause 2.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The 2-octet FCS shall be calculated using the following standard generator polynomial:

$$G_{16}(x) = x^{16} + x^{12} + x^5 + 1$$

The 2-octet FCS shall be calculated for transmission using the following algorithm:

— Let $M(x) = b_0x^{k-1} + b_1x^{k-2} + \ldots + b_{k-2}x + b_{k-1}$ be the polynomial representing the sequence of bits for which the checksum is to be computed.
— Multiply $M(x)$ by x^{16}, giving the polynomial $x^{16} \times M(x)$.
— Divide $x^{16} \times M(x)$ modulo 2 by the generator polynomial, $G_{16}(x)$, to obtain the remainder polynomial, $R(x) = r_0x^{15} + r_1x^{14} + \ldots + r_{14}x + r_{15}$
— The FCS field is given by the coefficients of the remainder polynomial, *R(x)*.

Here, binary polynomials are represented as bit strings, in highest polynomial degree first order.

As an example, consider an Ack frame with no payload and the following 3 octet MHR:

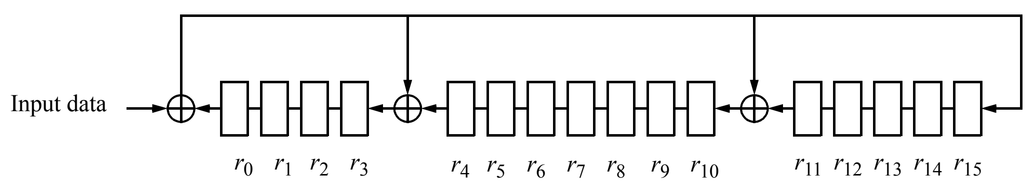
0100 0000 0000 0000 0101 0110 [leftmost bit (b_0) passed to the PHY first in time]
b_0...b_{23}

The FCS for this case would be the following:

0010 0111 1001 1110 [leftmost bit (r_0) passed to the PHY first in time]
r_0..............................r_{15}

A typical implementation is depicted in Figure 7-4.

CRC-16 Generator Polynomial: $G(x) = x^{16} + x^{12} + x^5 + 1$



1. Initialize the remainder register (r_0 through r_{15}) to zero.
2. Shift MHR and payload into the divider in the order of that they are passed to the PHY.
3. After the last bit of the data field is shifted into the divider, the remainder register contains the FCS.
4. The FCS is appended to the data field so that r_0 is passed to the PHY first

Figure 7-4—Typical 2-octet FCS implementation

The 4-octet FCS is calculated using the following standard generator polynomial of degree 32:

$$G_{32}(x) = x^{32} + x^{26} + x^{23} + x^{22} + x^{16} + x^{12} + x^{11} + x^{10} + x^8 + x^7 + x^5 + x^4 + x^2 + x + 1$$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The 4-octet FCS is the one's complement of the (modulo 2) sum of the two remainders in a) and b):

a) The remainder resulting from $[(x^k \times (x^{31} + x^{30} + ...)]$ divided (modulo 2) by $G_{32}(x)$, where the value k is the number of bits in the calculation field.
b) The remainder resulting from the calculation field contents, treated as a polynomial, is multiplied by x^{32} and then divided by $G_{32}(x)$.

At the transmitter, the initial remainder of the division shall be preset to all ones and then modified via division of the calculation field by the generator polynomial $G_{32}(x)$. The one's complement of this remainder is the 4-octet FCS field. The FCS field is passed to the PHY commencing with the coefficient of the highest order term.

At the receiver, the initial remainder shall be preset to all ones. The serial incoming bits of the calculation field and FCS, when divided by $G_{32}(x)$ in the absence of transmission errors, result in a unique nonzero remainder value. The unique remainder value is the polynomial shown:

$$x^{31} + x^{30} + x^{26} + x^{25} + x^{24} + x^{18} + x^{15} + x^{14} + x^{12} + x^{11} + x^{10} + x^{8} + x^{6} + x^{5} + x^{4} + x^{3} + x + 1$$

Upon transmission, if the length of the calculation field is less than 4 octets, the FCS computation shall assume padding the calculation field by appending zero value octets to the most significant bits to make the calculation field length exactly 4 octets; however, these pad bits shall not be transmitted. Upon reception, if the length of the calculation field is less than 4 octets, the received calculation field shall be appended with zero value octets to the most significant bits to make the calculation field length exactly 4 octets prior to computing the FCS for validation.

As an example, consider an Ack frame with no payload and the following 3-byte MHR:

0100 0000 0000 0000 0101 0110 [leftmost bit (b_0) passed to the PHY first in time]
b_0..b_{23}

Prior to FCS computation, the zero padded calculation field is given as follows:

0100 0000 0000 0000 0101 0110 0000 0000
b_0...b_{31}

The 4-octet FCS for this case would be the following:

0101 1101 0010 1001 1111 1010 0010 1000 [leftmost bit (r_0) passed to the PHY first in time]
r_0...r_{31}

7.3 Format of individual frame types

7.3.1 Beacon frame format

The Beacon frame shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-5.

The format of the Beacon frame for Frame Versions 0b00 or 0b01 shall be as illustrated in Figure 7-5. If the Frame Version is 0b00 or 0b01, the Superframe Specification, GTS, and Pending Address fields are always present. If the frame version is 0b10, the IE Present field in the Frame Control field may be set to one to indicate the presence of IEs as described in 7.2.1.7, 7.2.8, and 7.4.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Octets: 2	1	4/10	variable	2	variable	variable	variable	2/4
Frame Control	Sequence Number	Addressing fields	Auxiliary Security Header	Superframe Specification	GTS Info	Pending address	Beacon Payload	FCS
MHR				MAC Payload				MFR

Figure 7-5—Beacon frame format

The Enhanced Beacon frame is differentiated from the Beacon by the frame version being set to 0b10. The MAC frame for the Enhanced Beacon frame shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-6.

Octets: 2	0/1	variable	variable	variable		variable	2/4
Frame Control	Sequence Number	Addressing fields	Auxiliary Security Header	IEs		Beacon Payload	FCS
				Header IEs	Payload IEs		
MHR					MAC Payload		MFR

Figure 7-6—Enhanced Beacon frame format

7.3.1.1 Beacon frame MHR field

The Frame Type field shall contain the value that indicates a Beacon frame, as shown in Table 7-1. The Security Enabled field shall be set to one if security is enabled and the Frame Version field is not zero. If a broadcast frame is pending, the Frame Pending field shall be set to one. If the Frame Version field is not 0b10, all other fields in the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored on reception.

The Sequence Number field shall contain the current value of *macBsn* if it is a Beacon frame or *macEbsn* if it is an Enhanced Beacon frame. As a device may be sending both Beacon frames and Enhanced Beacon frames, separate sequence numbers shall be maintained. If sending an Enhanced Beacon frame, the sequence number may be suppressed by setting the Sequence Number Suppression field in the Frame Control field. When the frame version field is 0b00–0b01 the Sequence Number field shall be present.

When the Frame Version field is 0b00–0b01:

— The Source Addressing mode field shall be set to indicate that the Source Address and Source PAN ID fields are present.
— The Destination Addressing mode field shall be set to indicated that the Destination Address and Destination PAN ID fields are not present.
— The Source PAN ID field and Source Address field shall contain *macPanId* and the address, respectively, of the device transmitting the beacon.

The Auxiliary Security Header field, if present, shall contain the information required for security processing of the Beacon frame, as specified in 7.2.7.

When the Frame Version field is 0b10:

— The MHR may contain a sequence number.
— The MHR may contain any addressing fields supported by the general frame format.
— The Source Address field shall contain the address of the device transmitting the beacon.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

If the Enhanced Beacon frame is sent in response to an Enhanced Beacon Request command:

- If a PAN ID is required, then the Destination PAN ID field is set to the value of *macPanId* and the Source PAN ID field is omitted.
- The Destination Address field shall contain the source address contained in the received Enhanced Beacon Request command.
- The PAN ID Compression field is set as defined in Table 7-2.

7.3.1.2 IEs field

The IEs field may contain IEs.

7.3.1.3 Superframe Specification field

The Superframe Specification field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-7.

Bits: 0–3	**4–7**	**8–11**	**12**	**13**	**14**	**15**
Beacon Order	Superframe Order	Final CAP Slot	Battery Life Extension (BLE)	Reserved	PAN Coordinator	Association Permit

Figure 7-7—Format of the Superframe Specification field

The Beacon Order field shall specify the transmission interval of the beacon. The relationship between the beacon order and the beacon interval is explained in 6.2.1.

The Superframe Order field shall specify the length of time during which the superframe is active (i.e., receiver enabled), including the Beacon frame transmission time. The relationship between the superframe order and the superframe duration is explained in 6.2.1.

The Final CAP Slot field specifies the final superframe slot utilized by the CAP. The duration of the CAP, as implied by this field, shall be greater than or equal to the value specified by *aMinCapLength*. However, an exception is allowed for the accommodation of the temporary increase in the Beacon frame length needed to perform GTS maintenance, as described in 7.3.1.4.

The Battery Life Extension (BLE) field shall be set to one if frames transmitted to the beaconing device during its CAP are required to start in or before *macBattLifeExtPeriods* full backoff periods after the IFS period following the beacon. Otherwise, the BLE field shall be set to zero.

The PAN Coordinator field shall be set to one if the Beacon frame is being transmitted by the PAN coordinator. Otherwise, the PAN Coordinator field shall be set to zero.

The Association Permit field shall be set to one if *macAssociationPermit* is set to TRUE (i.e., the coordinator is accepting association to the PAN). The association permit bit shall be set to zero if the coordinator is currently not accepting Association Requests on its network.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.3.1.4 GTS Info field

The GTS Info field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-8.

Octets: 1	0/1	variable
GTS Specification	GTS Directions	GTS List

Figure 7-8—Format of the GTS information fields

The GTS Specification field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-9.

Bits: 0–2	3–6	7
GTS Descriptor Count	Reserved	GTS Permit

Figure 7-9—Format of the GTS Specification field

The GTS Descriptor Count field specifies the number of 3-octet GTS descriptors contained in the GTS List field of the Beacon frame. If the value of this field is greater than zero, the size of the CAP shall be allowed to dip below *aMinCapLength* to accommodate the temporary increase in the Beacon frame length caused by the inclusion of the field. If the value of this field is zero, the GTS Directions field and GTS List field of the Beacon frame are not present.

The GTS Permit field shall be set to one if *macGtsPermit* is equal to TRUE (i.e., the PAN coordinator is accepting GTS requests). Otherwise, the GTS Permit field shall be set to zero.

The GTS Directions field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-10.

Bits: 0–6	7
GTS Directions Mask	Reserved

Figure 7-10—Format of the GTS Directions field

The GTS Directions Mask field is a mask identifying the directions of the GTSs in the superframe. The lowest bit in the mask corresponds to the direction of the first GTS contained in the GTS List field of the Beacon frame, with the remainder appearing in the order that they appear in the list. Each bit shall be set to one if the GTS is a receive-only GTS or to zero if the GTS is a transmit-only GTS. GTS direction is defined relative to the direction of the Data frame transmission by the device.

The size of the GTS List field is defined by the values specified in the GTS Specification field of the Beacon frame and contains the list of GTS descriptors that represents the GTSs that are being maintained. The maximum number of GTS descriptors shall be limited to seven.

Each GTS descriptor shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-11.

Bits: 0–15	16–19	20–23
Device Short Address	GTS Starting Slot	GTS Length

Figure 7-11—Format of the GTS descriptor

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Device Short Address field shall contain the short address of the device for which the GTS descriptor is intended.

The GTS Starting Slot field contains the superframe slot at which the GTS is to begin.

The GTS Length field contains the number of contiguous superframe slots over which the GTS is active.

7.3.1.5 Pending Address field

The Pending Address field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-12.

Octets: 1	variable
Pending Address Specification	Address List

Figure 7-12—Pending Address field format

The Pending Address Specification field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-13.

Bits: 0–2	3	4–6	7
Number of Short Addresses Pending	Reserved	Number of Extended Addresses Pending	Reserved

Figure 7-13—Format of the Pending Address Specification field

The Number of Short Addresses Pending field indicates the number of short addresses contained in the Address List field of the Beacon frame.

The Number of Extended Addresses Pending field indicates the number of extended addresses contained in the Address List field of the Beacon frame.

The size of the Address List field is determined by the values specified in the Pending Address Specification field. The Address List field contains the set of addresses of the devices that currently have messages pending with the coordinator. The address list shall not contain the broadcast short address.

The maximum number of addresses pending shall be limited to seven and may comprise both short and extended addresses. All pending short addresses shall appear first in the list followed by any extended addresses. If the coordinator is able to store more than seven transactions, it shall indicate them in its beacon on a first-come-first-served basis, ensuring that the Beacon frame contains at most seven addresses.

7.3.1.6 Beacon Payload field

The Beacon Payload field is an optional sequence octets to be transmitted, containing the value from *macBeaconPayload* set by the next higher layer.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.3.2 Data frame format

The Data frame shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-14.

Octets: 2	0/1	variable	variable	variable		variable	2/4
Frame Control	Sequence Number	Addressing fields	Auxiliary Security Header	IEs		Data Payload	FCS
				Header IEs	Payload IEs		
MHR					MAC Payload		MFR

Figure 7-14—Data frame format

7.3.2.1 Data frame MHR field

The Frame Type field shall contain the value that indicates a Data frame, as shown in Table 7-1. The Security Enabled field shall be set to one if security is enabled and the Frame Version field is not zero. All other fields in the Frame Control field shall be set appropriately according to the intended use of the Data frame.

The Sequence Number field, if present, shall contain the current value of *macDsn*. If the frame version is 0b10, the sequence number may be suppressed by setting the Sequence Number Suppression field in the Frame Control field.

The Addressing fields comprise the destination address fields and/or the source address fields, depending on the settings in the Frame Control field.

The Auxiliary Security Header field, if present, shall contain the information required for security processing of the Data frame, as specified in 7.2.7.

If the frame version is 0b10, the IE Present field in the Frame Control field may be set to one to indicate the presence of IEs as described in 7.2.1.7, 7.2.8, and 7.4.

7.3.2.2 Data Payload field

The payload of a Data frame shall contain the sequence of octets that the next higher layer has requested the MAC sublayer to transmit.

7.3.3 Ack frame format

The Ack frame format is used for both an Imm-Ack frame or Enh-Ack frame. The type of Ack frame is determined by the value of the Frame Version field. A Frame Version field values 0b00–0b01 indicates an Imm-Ack frame while a Frame Version field value of 0b10 indicates an Enh-Ack frame.

The Imm-Ack frame shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-15.

Octets: 2	1	2/4
Frame Control	Sequence Number	FCS
MHR		MFR

Figure 7-15—Imm-Ack frame format

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Enh-Ack frame shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-16.

Octets:2	0/1	0/2	0/2/8	0/2	0/2/8	variable	variable		variable	2/4
Frame Control	Sequence Number	Destination PAN ID	Destination Address	Source PAN ID	Source Address	Auxiliary Security Header	IE		Frame Payload	FCS
		Addressing fields					Header IEs	Payload IEs		
MHR								MAC Payload		MFR

Figure 7-16—Enh-Ack frame format

If the Ack frame is being sent in response to a received Data Request command the Frame Pending field shall be set as indicated in 6.7.3.

If the Ack frame is being sent in response to either a Data frame or another type of MAC command, the device shall set the Frame Pending field to zero.

The AR field in an Ack frame shall be set to zero.

In an Imm-Ack frame, all other fields in the Frame Control field shall be set to zero.

In an Enh-Ack frame, the other fields in the Frame Control fields shall be set as follows:

- If *macSecurityEnabled* is TRUE, the Security Enabled field shall be set as defined in 6.7.2 and shall be set to zero otherwise.
- The PAN ID compression field and Sequence Number Compression field shall be set to be the same value as the corresponding fields in the Frame Control field of the frame that is being acknowledged.
- The IEs present field shall be set to one if IEs are included in the Enh-Ack frame.
- The Destination Addressing Mode field shall contain the value of the Source Addressing Mode field in the Frame Control field of the frame that is being acknowledged.
- The Source Addressing mode field shall be set as appropriate for the address of the device transmitting the Enh-Ack frame, as described in Table 7-3.

The Source Address field, when present, contains the address of the device originating the Enh-Ack frame. The Source PAN ID field, when present, contains the PAN ID corresponding to the device originating the Enh-ACK frame.

The Destination Address field, when present, shall contain the value of the Source Address field from the frame that is being acknowledged. The Destination PAN ID, when present, contains the value from the Source PAN ID field from the frame that is being acknowledged.

If the Security Enabled field in the Frame Control field is set to one, the Enh-Ack frame is protected using the procedure described in 9.2.1. The SecurityLevel, KeyIdMode, KeySource and KeyIndex shall be set to match the corresponding fields of the frame that is being acknowedged.

The Sequence Number field, when present shall contain the value of the sequence number received in the frame for which the acknowledgment is to be sent.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.3.4 MAC command frame format

The MAC command shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-17.

Octets: 2	**0/1**	**variable**	**variable**	**variable**		**1**	**variable**	**2/4**
Frame Control	Sequence Number	Addressing fields	Auxiliary Security Header	IE		Command ID	Content	FCS
				Header IEs	Payload IEs			
MHR					MAC Payload			MFR

Figure 7-17—MAC command frame format

7.3.4.1 MHR field

The Sequence Number field, if present, shall contain the current value of *macDsn*. If the Frame Version field is 0b10, the sequence number may be suppressed by setting the Sequence Number Suppression field in the Frame Control field. If the Frame Version field is 0b00 or 0b01 the Sequence Number field shall be present.

The addressing fields shall comprise the destination address fields and/or the source address fields, depending on the settings in the Frame Control field. If the Frame Version field is 0b10, then either address may be suppressed.

The Auxiliary Security Header field, if present, shall contain the information required for security processing of the MAC command, as specified in 7.2.7.

If the frame version is 0b10, the IE Present field in the Frame Control field may be set to one to indicate the presence of IEs as described in 7.2.1.7, 7.2.8, and 7.4.

7.3.4.2 Command ID field

The Command ID field identifies the MAC command being used. Valid values of the Command ID field are defined in Table 7-49.

7.3.4.3 Payload field

The Payload field contains the MAC command itself. The formats of the individual commands are described in 7.5.

7.3.5 Multipurpose frame format

The Multipurpose frame type provides a flexible format that may used for a variety of purposes. The format supports a short and long form of the Frame Control field, and allows for all the fields in the MHR to be present or omitted as specified by the generating service. Multipurpose frames are treated in the same manner as Data frames, and their content is passed to/from the next higher layer using the MCPS DATA primitives. Some suggested uses are described in “Applications of IEEE Std 802.15.4” [B3].

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The multipurpose frame shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-18.

<table>
<tr><th>Octets: 1/2</th><th>0/1</th><th>0/2</th><th>0/2/8</th><th>0/2/8</th><th>variable</th><th colspan="2">variable</th><th>variable</th><th>2/4</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">MP Frame Control</td><td rowspan="2">Sequence Number</td><td>Destination PAN ID</td><td>Destination Address</td><td>Source Address</td><td rowspan="2">Auxiliary Security Header</td><td colspan="2">IE</td><td rowspan="2">Frame Payload</td><td rowspan="2">FCS</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Addressing fields</td><td>Header IEs</td><td>Payload IEs</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">MHR</td><td colspan="2">MAC Payload</td><td>MFR</td></tr>
</table>

Figure 7-18—Multipurpose frame format

The MP Frame Control field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-19.

Bits: 0–2	3	4–5	6–7	8	9	10	11	12–13	14	15
Frame Type	Long Frame Control	Destination Addressing Mode	Source Addressing Mode	PAN ID Present	Security Enabled	Sequence Number Suppression	Frame Pending	Frame Version	Ack Request	IE Present

Figure 7-19—Format of the MP Frame Control field

7.3.5.1 Frame Type field

The Frame Type field shall contain the value that indicates a Multipurpose frame, as shown in Table 7-1.

7.3.5.2 Long Frame Control field

The Long Frame Control field shall be set to zero to indicate an MP Short Frame Control field (only bits 0 to 7 in Figure 7-19 make up the field), and to one to indicate an MP Long Frame Control field (bits 0 to 15 in Figure 7-19 make up the field).

7.3.5.3 Destination Addressing Mode field

The Destination Addressing Mode field shall be set to one of the values listed in Table 7-3. The length of the Destination Address field in the MHR shall correspond to the value of the Destination Addressing Mode field.

7.3.5.4 Source Addressing Mode field

The Source Addressing Mode field shall be set to one of the values listed in Table 7-3. The length of the Source Address field in the MHR shall correspond to the value of the Source Addressing Mode field.

7.3.5.5 PAN ID Present field

The PAN ID Present field is present only if the Long Frame Control field is set to one. It shall be set to one if the destination PAN ID is present in the MHR, otherwise it is set to zero and the PAN ID is not present in the MHR.

The Source PAN ID, not present in the frame, is the same as the destination PAN ID.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.3.5.6 Security Enabled field

The Security Enabled field shall be set to one if the frame is protected by the MAC sublayer and shall be set to zero otherwise.

7.3.5.7 Sequence Number Suppression field

The Sequence Number Suppression field shall be set to one if the Sequence Number field is not to be included in the MHR. Otherwise it shall be set to zero.

7.3.5.8 Frame Pending field

The Frame Pending field shall be set to one if the device sending the frame has more data for the recipient. This field shall be set to zero otherwise.

7.3.5.9 Frame Version field

The Frame Version field is an unsigned integer that specifies the version number of the frame. This field shall be set to zero.

7.3.5.10 Ack Request field

The Ack Request field shall be set to one if an acknowledgment is required from the recipient device on receipt of a valid frame. Otherwise it shall be set to zero.

7.3.5.11 IEs Present field

The IEs Present field shall be set to one if IEs are to be included in the frame. Otherwise it shall be set to zero.

7.3.5.12 Sequence Number field

The Sequence Number field specifies the sequence identifier for the frame, as described in 7.2.2. It is normally present, but can be suppressed using the Sequence Number Suppression field as described in 7.3.5.7.

7.3.5.13 Destination PAN ID field

The Destination PAN ID field specifies the unique PAN ID of the intended recipient of the frame, as described in 7.2.3.

7.3.5.14 Destination Address field

The Destination Address field, when present, specifies the address of the intended recipient of the frame.

7.3.5.15 Source Address field

The Source Address field, when present, specifies the address of the originator of the frame.

7.3.5.16 Auxiliary Security Header field

The Auxiliary Security Header field specifies information required for security processing, including how the frame is actually protected (security level) and which keying material from the MAC security PIB is

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

used, as defined in 9.5. This field shall be present only if the Security Enabled field is set to one. For details on formatting, refer to 9.4.

7.3.5.17 IEs field

The IEs field is present if the IEs Present field is set to one. The format of IEs is specified in 7.4. Each type of IEs is terminated as required per 7.4.1.

7.3.5.18 Payload field

The Payload field has a variable length and contains unformatted (not in an IE) payload.

7.3.6 Extended frame format

The Extended frame shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-20.

Bits: 0–2	3–5	variable
Frame Type	Extended Frame Type	Extended Frame Payload

Figure 7-20—Extended frame format

The Frame Type field is defined in 7.2.1.1.

The Extended Frame Type field is used to specify additional frame types by adding additional bits to the Frame Type field. Valid values of the Extended Frame Type field are give in Table 7-5.

Table 7-5—Extended Frame Type values

Extended Frame Type b5 b4 b3	Description
000–011	Reserved
111	Assigned to Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA)

The Extended Frame Payload field is defined by the frame type indicated by the Extended Frame Type field or by the organization to which the Extended Frame Type has been assigned. Currently, this standard does not have any frame formats defined for the reserved values Extended Frame Type fields.

7.4 IEs

7.4.1 IE list termination

When determining if a termination of the Header IEs or Payload IEs is required, the authentication or encryption procedures are not taken into account. Table 7-6 lists the rules for the inclusion of terminations IEs. In the table, HT1 refers to Header Termination 1 IE, as defined in 7.4.2.17, while HT2 refers to Header Termination 2 IE, as defined in 7.4.2.18.

NOTE—A header termination IE is required prior to the payload IEs because the address space of payload IEs and header IEs is not distinct. Hence it is not possible to detect when the header IEs stop and payload IEs begin.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 7-6—Termination IE inclusion rules

Header IEs present	Payload IEs present	Data payload present	Header Termination IE included	Payload Termination IE included	Notes
No	No	No	None	None	No IE lists present, hence no termination. Included here for completeness
Yes	No	No	None	None	No termination is required because the end of the frame can be determined from the frame length and FCS length.
No	Yes	No	HT1 required	Optional	Header Termination IE 1 is required to signal end of the MHR and beginning of the Payload IE list.
Yes	Yes	No	HT1 required	Optional	Header IE Termination 1 is required while the Payload IE Termination is not required, but is allowed.
No	No	Yes	None	None	No IE lists present, hence no termination. Included here for completeness
Yes	No	Yes	HT2 required	None	Header Termination IE 2 is used in to signal end of the MHR and beginning of the MAC Payload.
No	Yes	Yes	HT1 required	Required	—
Yes	Yes	Yes	HT1 required	Required	—

7.4.2 Header IEs

7.4.2.1 Header IE format

The Header IE shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-21.

Bits: 0–6	7–14	15	Octets: 0–127
Length	Element ID	Type = 0	Content

Figure 7-21—Format of Header IEs

The Length field specifies the number of octets in the Content field.

The Element IDs are defined in Table 7-7 for each of the Header IEs. In the table, an X in the columns for frame indicates that the IE may be used in that frame. If there is not an X in the column, then the IE shall not be used in that frame. In the table, UL refers to the layers above the MAC.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 7-7—Element IDs for Header IEs

Element ID	Name	Enhanced Beacon	Enhanced ACK	Data	Multipurpose	MAC command	Format subclause	Use description	Used by	Created by
0x00	Vendor Specific Header IE	X	X	X	X	X	7.4.2.2	—	UL	UL
0x01–0x19	Reserved									
0x1a	CSL IE	X	X	X	X		7.4.2.3	6.12.2	MAC	MAC
0x1b	RIT IE	X		X		X	7.4.2.4	6.12.3	MAC	MAC
0x1c	DSME PAN descriptor IE	X					7.4.2.5	6.11.2	UL, MAC	UL
0x1d	Rendezvous Time IE		X		X		7.4.2.6	6.12.2	MAC	MAC
0x1e	Time Correction IE		X				7.4.2.7	6.5.4.1, 6.7.4.2	MAC	MAC
0x1f-0x20	Reserved									
0x21	Extended DSME PAN descriptor IE	X					7.4.2.8	6.11.2	UL, MAC	UL
0x22	Fragment Sequence Context Description (FSCD) IE				X	X	7.4.2.9	23.3.1	MAC	MAC
0x23	Simplified Superframe Specification IE	X					7.4.2.10	6.2.3, [B3]	MAC	MAC
0x24	Simplified GTS Specification IE	X					7.4.2.11	6.2.3, [B3]	MAC	MAC
0x25	LECIM Capabilities IE	X		X	X	X	7.4.2.12	10.1.2.10	UL	UL
0x26	TRLE Descriptor IE	X	X	X	X	X	F.5.1.1	F.4.2, F.4.3	MAC	MAC
0x27	RCC Capabilities IE	X		X	X		7.4.2.13	6.2.9, [B3]	UL	UL
0x28	RCCN Descriptor IE	X					7.4.2.14	6.2.9, [B3]	UL, MAC	UL
0x29	Global Time IE	X					7.4.2.15		UL	UL
0x2a	Assigned to external organization [B1]									
0x2b	DA IE	X					7.4.2.16	6.7.9	UL	UL
0x2b–0x7d	Reserved									
0x7e	Header Termination 1 IE	X	X	X	X	X	7.4.2.17	7.4.1	MAC	MAC
0x7f	Header Termination 2 IE	X	X	X	X	X	7.4.2.18	7.4.1	MAC	MAC
0x80–0xff	Reserved									

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.4.2.2 Vendor Specific Header IE

The Vendor Specific Header IE is reserved for the use of other protocols and/or data relevant only to certain implementations. The Vendor Specific Header IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-22.

Octets: 3	Variable
Vendor OUI	Vendor Specific Information

Figure 7-22—Vendor Specific Header IE Content field format

The Vendor OUI field is an organizationally unique identifier (OUI) or company identifier (CID) assigned by the IEEE registration authority, which shall be the sole registration authority. A value of the Vendor OUI field not understood by a receiving device causes the remainder of this IE to be ignored.

The Vendor Specific Information field is defined by the vendor identified in the Vendor OUI field. Its use is outside of the scope of this standard.

7.4.2.3 CSL IE

The CSL IE shall be used in all Enh-Ack frames if *macLeEnabled* is TRUE.

The CSL IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-23.

Octets: 2	2	0/2
CSL Phase	CSL Period	Rendezvous Time

Figure 7-23—CSL IE Content field format

The CSL Phase field shall be set to CSL phase in units of 10 symbols.

The CSL Period field shall be set to CSL period in units of 10 symbols.

The Rendezvous Time field is only present in the transmitted IE when *macCslInterval* is nonzero. The Rendezvous Time field contains the expected time, in units of 10 symbols, between the end of the transmission of the wake-up frame and the beginning of the transmission of the payload frame.

7.4.2.4 RIT IE

The RIT IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-24. The use of the RIT IE is described in 6.3.4

Octets: 1	1	2
Time To First Listen	Number of Repeat Listen	Repeat Listen Interval

Figure 7-24—RIT IE Content field format

The Time to First Listen field shall be set to the time interval in units of *aBaseSuperframeDuration*, until the first time that the device will be receiving, as defined in 6.12.3.2.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Number of Repeat Listen field shall be set to the number of times that the listening interval will be repeated, as defined in 6.12.3.2.

Repeat Listen Interval shall be set to the time interval, in units of *aBaseSuperframeDuration*, between subsequent intervals during which the device will be in receiving, as defined in 6.12.3.2.

7.4.2.5 DSME PAN descriptor IE

The DSME PAN Descriptor IE shall be included in enhanced beacons that are sent every beacon interval in a DSME-enabled PAN.

The DSME PAN Descriptor IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-25.

Octets: 2	**variable**	**1**	**8**	**variable**	**variable**
Superframe Specification	Pending Address	DSME Superframe Specification	Time Synchronization Specification	Beacon Bitmap	Channel Hopping Specification

Figure 7-25—DSME PAN Descriptor IE Content field format

The Superframe Specification field is described in 7.3.1.3.

The Pending Address field is described in 7.3.1.5.

The DSME Superframe Specification field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-26.

Bits: 0–3	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**
Multi-superframe Order	Channel Diversity Mode	Reserved	CAP Reduction	Deferred Beacon

Figure 7-26—DSME Superframe Specification field format

The Multi-superframe Order field shall specify the length of time during which a group of superframes that is considered as one multi-superframe (i.e., receiver enabled). See 6.11.2 for an explanation of the relationship between the multi-superframe order and the multi-superframe duration.

The Channel Diversity Mode field shall indicate the type of channel diversity. If this value is zero, the DSME-enabled PAN operates on channel adaptation mode. If this value is one, the DSME-enabled PAN operates on channel hopping mode.

The CAP Reduction field shall be set to one if the CAP reduction is enabled, otherwise the CAP Reduction field shall be set to zero.

The Deferred Beacon shall be set to one if the device uses CCA before transmitting Beacon frame, otherwise the bit shall be set to zero if the device shall not use CCA before transmitting beacon.

The Time Synchronization Specification field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-27.

Octets: 6	**2**
Beacon Timestamp	Beacon Offset Timestamp

Figure 7-27—Format of the Time Synchronization Specification field

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Beacon Timestamp field shall specify the start time of the beacon slot in which the beacon was transmitted in units of microseconds.

The Beacon Offset Timestamp field specifies that the time difference between the start time of a superframe and the actual time of transmitting a Beacon frame. It reflects the delay due to CCA or processing time of the PHY to transmit a frame.

The Beacon Bitmap field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-28.

Octets: 2	2	variable
SD Index	SD Bitmap Length	SD Bitmap

Figure 7-28—Format of the Beacon Bitmap field

The SD Index field specifies the index of current SD in a beacon interval. The superframe in which the PAN coordinator sends its beacons serves as the reference point (SD Index 0). When this field is contained in an enhanced beacon, this field specifies the index of the superframe that is allocated to the Source device of the beacon for beacon transmission.

The SD Bitmap Length field shall be set to the length of SD Bitmap field in octets.

The SD Bitmap field contains a bitmap indicating the Beacon frame allocation information of all $2^{(BO–SO)}$ superframes within one beacon interval. Each corresponding bit in the bitmap shall be set to one if a beacon of a neighbor device is allocated in that SD, otherwise it is set to zero. It should be noted that the length of the Beacon frame allocation information bitmap, $2^{(BO–SO)}$, may be different than the value of the SD Bitmap Length field since the SD Bitmap Length field is represented in octets. In this case, the value of the SD Bitmap Length field shall be chosen to be the smallest integer that is greater than the length of this bitmap, and those bits after the first $2^{(BO–SO)}$ bits in the SD Bitmap field shall be set to zero.

The Channel Hopping Specification field is present only if the value of Channel Diversity Mode field in DSME Superframe Specification is set to indicate channel hopping. The Channel Hopping Specification field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-29.

Octets: 1	1	2	1	variable
Hopping Sequence ID	PAN Coordinator BSN	Channel Offset	Channel Offset Bitmap Length	Channel Offset Bitmap

Figure 7-29—Format of the Channel Hopping Specification field

The Hopping Sequence ID field contains the ID of the channel hopping sequence in use. The Hopping Sequence ID field set to zero indicates that a default hopping sequence shall be used. A Hopping Sequence ID field set to one indicates that a hopping sequence generated by the PAN coordinator shall be used. The other values of Hopping Sequence ID denote the sequence is set by a higher layer. If the Hopping Sequence ID is one, a device shall request a channel hopping sequence from its coordinator when it associates to a PAN.

The PAN Coordinator BSN field shall contain the BSN of the PAN coordinator.

The Channel Offset field shall contain the channel hopping offset value of the device.

The Channel Offset Bitmap Length field shall be set to the length of ChannelOffsetBitmap field in octets.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Channel Offset Bitmap field shall indicate the occupancy of the channel hopping offset values among neighbor devices and be represented in that bitmap. Each bit shall be set to one if the corresponding channel hopping offset value is already occupied by the neighbor devices, otherwise it shall be set to zero if the corresponding channel hopping value is not occupied. For instance, a Channel Offset Bitmap of 0b1100100..0 indicates that channel hopping offset values of 0, 1, and 4 are being used by neighbor devices. Note that the $(i)^{th}$ bit in the Channel Offset Bitmap corresponds to $(i-1)^{th}$ channel offset value.

7.4.2.6 Rendezvous Time IE

The Rendezvous Time IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-30.

Octets: 2	2
Rendezvous Time	Wake-up Interval

Figure 7-30—Rendezvous Time IE Content field format

The Rendezvous Time field is the expected time in units of 10 symbols between the end of the transmission of the wake-up frame and the beginning of the transmission of the payload frame. The last wake-up frame in a wake-up sequence shall have Rendezvous Time field set to the value zero.

The Wake-up Interval field is only present in the transmitted IE when *macCslInterval* is nonzero. The Wake-up Interval field is the length of the interval between two successive LE wake-up frames in the wake-up sequence, in units of 10 symbols. The Wake-up Interval field shall be set to *macCslInterval*.

7.4.2.7 Time Correction IE

The Time Correction IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-31.

Octets: 2
Time Sync Info

Figure 7-31—Time Correction IE Content field format

The Time Sync Info field shall specify time synchronization information and acknowledgment status. This field is constructed by taking a signed 16-bit twos-complement time correction in the range of −2048 µs to 2047 µs, AND’ing it with 0xfff, and OR’ing again with 0x8000 to indicate a negative acknowledgment. This field shall be set as indicated in Table 7-8.

Table 7-8—Values of the Time Sync Info field for ACK with timing Information

Range	Description
0x000–0x7ff	Acknowledge with positive time correction in microseconds
0x800–0xfff	Acknowledge with negative time correction in microseconds
0x8000–0x87ff	Negative acknowledgment with positive time correction in microseconds
0x8800–0x8fff	Negative acknowledgment with negative time correction in microseconds

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.4.2.8 Extended DSME PAN descriptor IE

The format of the Extended DSME PAN Descriptor IE Content field shall be as illustrated in Figure 7-32.

Octets: 2	variable	2	8	variable	variable	0/1	variable
Superframe Specification	Pending Address	Extended DSME Superframe Specification	Time Synchronization Specification	Beacon Bitmap	Channel Hopping Specification	Hopping Sequence Length	Hopping Sequence

Figure 7-32—Extended DSME PAN Descriptor IE Content field format

The Superframe Specification field is described in 7.3.1.3.

The Pending Address field is described in 7.3.1.5.

The Extended DSME Superframe Specification field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-33.

Bits: 0–7	8	9	10	11	12	13–15
Multi-superframe Order	Channel Diversity Mode	Reserved	CAP Reduction	Deferred Beacon	Hopping Sequence Present	Reserved

Figure 7-33—Format of the Extended DSME Superframe Specification field

The Multi-superframe Order field is defined in 7.4.2.5.

The Channel Diversity Mode field is defined in 7.4.2.5.

The CAP Reduction field is defined in 7.4.2.5.

The Deferred Beacon field is defined in 7.4.2.5.

The Hopping Sequence Present field shall be set to one if an Association Request command is received before the Enhanced Beacon frame transmission and the Hopping Sequence ID of one is used in the DSME-enabled PAN.

The Time Synchronization Specification field is described in 7.4.2.5.

The Beacon Bitmap field is described in 7.4.2.5.

The Channel Hopping Specification field is described in 7.4.2.5 and is present only if the Channel Diversity Mode field in the Extended DSME Superframe Specification is set to indicate channel hopping.

The Hopping Sequence Length field is described in 7.4.2.5 and is present only if the Hopping Sequence Present field of the Extended DSME Superframe Specification field is one.

The Hopping Sequence field is described in 7.4.2.5 and is present only if the Hopping Sequence Present field of the Extended DSME Superframe Specification field is one.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.4.2.9 Fragment Sequence Context Description (FSCD) IE

The FSCD IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-34.

Octets: 2						2		
Bits: 0	**1**	**2–6**	**7–12**	**13–14**	**15**	**16–25**	**26–31**	
Reserved	Secure Fragment	Reserved	TID	Frak Policy	FICS |Length	PSDU Size	Addressing Information	...

	variable	0/4	
		Bits: 0–25	**26–31**
...	Addressing	PSDU Counter	Reserved

Figure 7-34—FSCD IE Content field format

The Secure Fragment field is used to indicate whether the fragments in this transaction will be sent with authentication. When set, the PSDU Counter field shall be present in the FSCD IE, and the fragment validation field shall be set to the MIC, as described in 23.3.4. The field shall be set to one when *phyPSDUFragSecure* is set to TRUE.

A transaction identifier (TID) field value of zero indicates that the TID field will be a reserved field in the fragments that follow. When the TID field value is nonzero, the value identifies the fragment sequence. It associates the context information with each fragment in the transaction. The MAC sets the TID value and should assure that the current value is different from any other active transactions.

The fragment acknowledgment (Frak) Policy field shall be set to one of the values given in Table 23-4.

If Security Fragment field is set to one, then the FICS length field specifies the length of the Frak Validation field in the Frak frames. The FICS Length field shall be set to zero if a 2-octet FICS is used and shall be set to one if the 4-octet FICS is used. If Security Fragment field is set to zero, the PSDU Counter field and the Reserved field of the FCSD Content field shall not be present.

The PSDU Size field contains the number of octets in the PSDU.

The Addressing Information field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-35.

Bit: 0	**1**	**2–3**	**4–5**
Source PAN ID Present	Destination PAN ID Present	Source Address Mode	Destination Address Mode

Figure 7-35—Addressing Information field format

The setting of the Addressing Information field shall be determined by the PAN ID and addressing mode fields of the PSDU being fragmented.

The Source PAN ID Present field shall be set to one if the source PAN ID is included in the Addressing field and shall be set to zero otherwise.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Destination PAN ID Present field shall be set to one if the destination PAN ID is included in the Addressing field and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Source Address Mode field shall be set to one of the values given in Table 7-3.

The Destination Address Mode field shall be set to one of the values given in Table 7-3.

The Addressing field contains source and/or destination addressing information associated with the MPDU being fragmented and shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-36.

Octets: 0/2	0/2	0/2/8	0/2/8
Source PAN ID	Destination PAN ID	Source Address	Destination Address

Figure 7-36—Addressing field format

The content of this field shall be set according to the addresses contained in the MHR of the PSDU being fragmented. Addresses may be omitted to fit into the PSDU size of the PHY in use; algorithms for address suppression are implementation dependent.

The PSDU Counter field shall be present when the Secure Fragment field is set to one. The MAC shall maintain a counter that is incremented with each fragmentation transaction, initiated such that the counter value is not repeated, as described in 9.3.2.3.

7.4.2.10 Simplified Superframe Specification IE

The Simplified Superframe Specification IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-37.

Octets: 2	2	2
Timestamp	Superframe Specification	CFP Specification

Figure 7-37—Simplified Superframe Specification IE Content field format

The Timestamp field shall be updated between transmissions; the initial value, resolution (LSB value), and accuracy are implementation dependent.

The Superframe Specification field is as defined in 7.3.1.3.

The CFP Specification field shall be encoded as illustrated in Figure 7-38.

Bits: 0–3	4–7	8–11	12	13–15
Number of GTSs	First CFP Slot in Superframe	Last CFP Slot in Superframe	GTS Permit	Reserved

Figure 7-38—CFP Specification field format

The Number of GTSs field shall be set to the number of GTSs allocated by the coordinator.

The First CFP Slot in Superframe field shall be set to the slot number in which the CFP begins

The Last CFP Slot in Superframe field shall be set to the slot number in which the CFP ends.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The GTS Permit field shall be set to one if *macGtsPermit* is equal to TRUE, indicating that the coordinator is accepting GTS requests. Otherwise, the field shall be set to zero.

7.4.2.11 Simplified GTS Specification IE

The Simplified GTS Specification IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-39.

Octets: 1	Variable
GTS Directions	GTS Device Address List

Figure 7-39—Simplified GTS Specification IE Content field format

The GTS Directions field is defined in 7.3.1.4.

The GTS Device Address List field is defined in 7.3.1.4.

7.4.2.12 LECIM Capabilities IE

The LECIM Capabilities IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-40.

Octets: 2	2	0/2	0/2
PHY Type and Bands Supported	LECIM PHY Features Supported	Lowest 2.4 GHz Channel	Highest 2.4 GHz Channel

Figure 7-40—Format of the LECIM Capabilities IE

In the PHY Type and Bands Supported field, bit 0 indicates the PHY type supported, which is the PHY type being described by the IE. A value of one indicates that LECIM FSK is described; a value of zero indicates that LECIM DSSS is described. Bits 1–11 indicate support for different bands. A value of one indicates that a band is supported; a value of zero indicates that a band is not supported. The device shall indicate as supported only those bands that are implemented and defined for the indicated PHY type. The encoding for the field is shown in Table 7-9.

Table 7-9—LECIM PHY Type and Bands Supported field encoding

Bit number	Description
0	PHY type described: 0 = LECIM DSSS 1 = LECIM FSK
1	Band 169 supported
2	Band 433 supported
3	Band 470 supported
4	Band 780 supported
5	Band 863 supported
6	Band 915 supported
7	Band 917 supported

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 7-9—LECIM PHY Type and Bands Supported field encoding *(continued)*

Bit number	Description
8	Band 920 supported
9	Band 921 supported
10	Band 922 supported
11	Band 2450 supported
12–15	Reserved

When the PHY Type and Bands Supported field indicates a LECIM DSSS PHY, the LECIM PHY Features Supported field shall be encoded as shown in Table 7-10. A value of one indicates that the feature is supported; a value of zero indicates that the feature is not supported.

Table 7-10—LECIM PHY Features Supported field encoding for DSSS

Bit number	Description
0	BPSK modulation supported
1	O-QPSK modulation supported
2–5	Maximum spreading factor supported; see Table 11-2 for the definition of *phyLecimDsssPsduSpreadingFactor*.
6	16 octet PSDU supported
7	24 octet PSDU supported
8	32 octet PSDU supported
9	OVSF supported
10–15	Reserved

When the PHY Type and Bands Supported field indicates a LECIM FSK PHY, the LECIM PHY Features Supported field shall be encoded as shown in Table 7-11. A value of one indicates that the feature is supported; a value of zero indicates that the feature is not supported.

Table 7-11—LECIM PHY Features Supported field encoding for FSK

Bit number	Description
0	Positional modulation supported
1	Symbol rate 37.5 ksymbol/s supported, 200 kHz channel spacing [a]
2	Symbol rate 25 ksymbol/s supported, 200 kHz channel spacing [a]
3	Symbol rate 12.5 ksymbol/s supported, 200 kHz channel spacing [a]
4	Symbol rate 37.5 ksymbol/s supported, 100 kHz channel spacing [a]

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 7-11—LECIM PHY Features Supported field encoding for FSK *(continued)*

Bit number	Description
5	Symbol rate 25 ksymbol/s supported, 100 kHz channel spacing [a]
6	Symbol rate 12.5 ksymbol/s supported, 100 kHz channel spacing [a]
7	Forward error correction (FEC) supported
8	Interleaving supported
9	Scrambling supported
10	SF 2 supported
11	SF 4 supported
12	SF 8 supported
13	SF 16 supported
14	Alternating SF pattern supported
15	Non-alternating SF pattern supported

[a]Defined in 24.3.

The Lowest 2.4 GHz Channel and the Highest 2.4 GHz Channel fields specify the range of channels within the 2450 MHz band that are supported. These fields shall only be present when the PHY Type and Bands Supported field indicates support for the 2450 MHz band. The range of channels supported includes all of the channels starting from the channel number specified in the Lowest 2.4 GHz Channel field to the channel number specified in the Highest 2.4 GHz Channel field, inclusive.

7.4.2.13 RCC Capabilities IE

The presence of this IE in a transmitted frame indicates that the coordinator supports an RCC PHY. The RCC Capabilites IE Content field shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-41.

Octets: 2	2	2
RCC Frequency Bands Supported	RCC PHY and Modulation Supported	RCC DSSS DPSK Modulation Supported

Figure 7-41—RCC Capabilities IE Content field format

The RCC Frequency Bands Supported field shall be formatted as given in Table 7-12.

Table 7-12—RCC Frequency Bands Supported field encoding

Bit number	Description
0	161 MHz band supported
1	216 MHz band supported
2	217 MHz band supported
3	220 MHz band supported

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 7-12—RCC Frequency Bands Supported field encoding *(continued)*

Bit number	Description
4	450 MHz band supported
5	770 MHz band supported
6	800 MHz band supported
7	806 MHz band supported
8	896 MHz band supported
9	915 MHz band supported
10	928 MHz band supported
11	2450 MHz band supported
12	4965 MHz band supported
13	5800 MHz band supported
14–15	Reserved

The RCC PHY and Modulation Supported field shall be formatted as given in Table 7-13

Table 7-13—RCC PHY and Modulation Supported field encoding

Bit number	Description
0	LMR GMSK 9.6 kb/s supported
1	LMR GMSK 19.2 kb/s supported
2	LMR 4-FSK 9.6 kb/s supported
3	LMR 4-FSK 19.2 kb/s supported
4	LMR 4-FSK 38.4 kb/s supported
5	LMR QPSK 16 kb/s supported
6	LMR QPSK 32 kb/s supported
7	LMR $\pi/4$ DQPSK 16 kb/s supported
8	LMR $\pi/4$ DQPSK 32 kb/s supported
9	LMR $\pi/4$ DQPSK 36 kb/s supported
10	LMR DSSS DPSK supported
11	LMR DSSS BPSK supported
12–15	Reserved

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The RCC DSSS DPSK Modulation Supported field shall be formatted as given in Table 7-14.

Table 7-14—RCC DSSS DPSK Modulation Supported field encoding

Bit number	Description
0	300 kcps chip rate supported
1	600 kcps chip rate supported
2	800 kcps chip rate supported
3	1 Mcps chip rate supported
4	1.6 Mcps chip rate supported
5	2 Mcps chip rate supported
6	3 Mcps chip rate supported
7	4 Mcps chip rate supported
8	11-chip spreading sequence supported
9	15-chip spreading sequence supported
10	20-chip spreading sequence supported
11	40-chip spreading sequence supported
12	DSSS DBPSK supported
13	DSSS DQPSK supported
14–15	Reserved

7.4.2.14 RCCN Descriptor IE

The RCCN Descriptor IE Content field shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-42.

Octets: 1	2	4	1	1	variable
Version	Slot Size Multiplier	RCCN Slots	Inactive Duration	Network ID Length	Network ID

Figure 7-42—RCCN Descriptor IE Content field format

The Version field indicates the version of the RCCN descriptor IE and shall be set to zero for this version of the standard.

The Slot Size Multiplier field is used to calculate the superframe slot duration, as described in 6.2.9.

The RCCN Slots field shall be formated as shown in Figure 7-43.

Octets: 1	1	1	1
Management Downlink Slots	Management Uplink Slots	CAP Slots	CFP Slots

Figure 7-43—RCCN Slots field format

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Management Downlink Slots field indicates the number of superframe slots allocated to the PAN coordinator for the purpose of sending frames to RCCN endpoints.

The Management Uplink Slots field indicates the number of superframe slots allocated to RCCN endpoints for the purposed of sending frames to the RCCN PAN coordinator.

The CAP Slots field indicates the number of superframe slots allocated to the CAP.

The CFP Slots field indicates the number of superframe slots allocated to the CFP.

The Inactive Duration field specifies the length, in units of superframe slot duration, of the inactive portion of the superframe structure.

The Network ID Length field indicates the length of the Network ID field.

The Network ID field contains a set of octets which contains a network-specific identification. The value of the field shall be set to *macRccnNetId*.

7.4.2.15 Global Time IE

The presence of this IE indicates that the transmitting device has a reference to global time, e.g., GPS reference time. The Global time IE Content field shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-44.

Octets: 4
Global Time

Figure 7-44—Global Time IE Content field format

The Global Time field is an unsigned integer that contains the number of seconds elapsed since 00:00:00 UTC, January 1,1970.

7.4.2.16 DA IE

The DA IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-45.

Bits: 0	**1**	**2–5**	**6–15**	**16–20**	**21–23**	**variable**
Address Mode	Addresses Pending	Reserved	Number of Addresses	Sequence Number	Page Number	Address List

Figure 7-45—DA IE Content field format

When Address Mode field is set to zero, each address included in Address List is a short address. When Address Mode field is set to one, each address included in Address List is an extended address.

The Number of Addresses field is the number of neighbor addresses included in the Address List field of this DA IE.

The Address Pending field shall be set to one when the set of neighbor addresses is to be announced in multiple Beacon frames. An Addresses Pending field set to one indicates that this IE contains a subset of the set of neighbor addresses known by the device and more neighbor addresses are to be sent in following Beacon frames with a DA IE.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Sequence Number field shall be set to a value identifying the set of addresses to be announced. An increment in the Sequence Number indicates that a new set of neighbor addresses is being announced. The Sequence Number shall be incremented when any address in the set of neighbor addresses has been changed.

The Page Number field shall be set to one for the first subset of address and incremented by one for each subsequent subset of addresses.

The Address Pending field shall be set to zero when the set of addresses to be announced is contained in a single DA IE. When Addresses Pending field is set to zero, the Sequence Number and Page Number fields shall be set to zero.

The Address List field contains the addresses of the device's neighbors.

7.4.2.17 Header Termination 1 IE

The Header Termination 1 IE shall have a zero-length Content field. The use of the Header Termination 1 IE is described in 7.4.1.

7.4.2.18 Header Termination 2 IE

The Header Termination 2 IE shall have a zero-length Content field. The use of the Header Termination 2 IE is described in 7.4.1.

7.4.3 Payload IEs

The general format of the Payload IE is shown in Figure 7-46.

Bits: 0–10	11–14	15	Octets: 0–2047
Length	Group ID	Type = 1	Content

Figure 7-46—Format of Payload IEs

The Length field specifies the number of octets in the Content field.

The Group ID values are defined in Table 7-15 for each of the Payload IEs. In the table, an X in the columns for frame indicates that the IE may be used in that frame. If there is not an X in the column, then the IE shall not be used in that frame. In the table, UL refers to the layers above the MAC.

7.4.3.1 Encapsulated Service Data Unit (ESDU) IE

An ESDU IE encapsulates a higher layer payload that is carried in the Content field. Content is sent as received, i.e., no octet ordering changes shall be made.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 7-15—Payload IE Group ID

Group ID value	Name	Enhanced Beacon	Enhanced ACK	Data	Multipurpose	MAC command	Format subclause	Use description	Used by	Created by
0x0	Encapsulated Service Data Unit (ESDU) IE	X		X	X	X	7.4.3.1	7.4.3.1	UL	UL
0x1	MLME IE	X	X	X	X	X	7.4.3.2	7.4.3.2	MAC	MAC
0x2	Vendor Specific Nested IE	X	X	X	X	X	7.4.4.30	—	UL	UL
0x3–0xe	Reserved									
0xf	Payload Termination IE	X	X	X	X	X	7.4.3.3	7.4.1	MAC	MAC

7.4.3.2 MLME IE

The Content field of the MLME IE shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-47.

Octets: variable	variable	…	variable
Nested IE	Nested IE	…	Nested IE

Figure 7-47—MLME IE Content field format

The Nested IEs formats are defined in 7.4.4.1.

7.4.3.3 Payload Termination IE

The Payload Termination IE shall have a zero-length Content field.

7.4.4 Nested IE

7.4.4.1 Format of Nested IE

The Nested IE of type short shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-48.

Bits: 0–7	8–14	15	Octets: 0–255
Length	Sub-ID	Type = 0	Content

Figure 7-48—Nested IE of type short format

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Nested IE of type long shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-49.

Bits: 0–10	11–14	15	Octets: 0–2047
Length	Sub-ID	Type = 1	Content

Figure 7-49—Nested IE of type long format

The Length field specifies the number of octets in the Content field.

The Sub-ID field values for Nested IEs of type short are defined in Table 7-16. In the table, an X in the columns for frame indicates that the IE may be used in that frame. If there is not an X in the column, then the IE shall not be used in that frame. In the table, UL refers to the layers above the MAC.

Table 7-16—Sub-ID allocation for short format

Sub-ID value	Name	Enhanced Beacon	Enhanced ACK	Data	Multipurpose	MAC command	Format subclause	Use description	Used by	Created by
0x00–0x0f	Reserved for type long format									
0x10–0x19	Reserved									
0x1a	TSCH Synchronization IE	X					7.4.4.2	6.3.6	MAC	MAC
0x1b	TSCH Slotframe and Link IE	X					7.4.4.3	6.3.6	UL	UL
0x1c	TSCH Timeslot IE	X					7.4.4.4	6.3.6, 6.5.4	UL	MAC
0x1d	Hopping timing IE	X					7.4.4.5	6.2.10	MAC	MAC
0x1e	Enhanced Beacon Filter IE					X	7.4.4.6	6.3.1.2, 6.3.4	MAC	UL
0x1f	MAC Metrics IE	X		X	X		7.4.4.7	8.4.2.6	UL	MAC
0x20	All MAC Metrics IE	X		X	X		7.4.4.8	8.4.2.6	UL	MAC
0x21	Coexistence Specification IE	X					7.4.4.9	6.2.3, 6.3.3.1, 6.14	UL	MAC
0x22	SUN Device Capabilities IE			X	X		7.4.4.10	10.1.2.8, 20.2.1.2, 20.3.4, 20.5, [B3]	UL, MAC	MAC
0x23	SUN FSK Generic PHY IE	X		X	X	X	7.4.4.11	10.1.2.8, 20.3	UL, MAC	MAC
0x24	Mode Switch Parameter IE	X		X	X	X	7.4.4.12	20.2.3, 20.5,	MAC	UL
0x25	PHY Parameter Change IE	X			X		7.4.4.13	6.10	MAC	UL

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 7-16—Sub-ID allocation for short format *(continued)*

Sub-ID value	Name	Enhanced Beacon	Enhanced ACK	Data	Multipurpose	MAC command	Format subclause	Use description	Used by	Created by
0x26	O-QPSK PHY Mode IE			X	X		7.4.4.14	6.10	MAC	UL
0x27	PCA Allocation IE	X					7.4.4.15	6.2.5.4	MAC	UL
0x28	LECIM DSSS Operating Mode IE			X	X		7.4.4.16	6.10	MAC	UL
0x29	LECIM FSK Operating Mode IE			X	X		7.4.4.17	6.10	MAC	UL
0x2a	Reserved									
0x2b	TVWS PHY Operating Mode Description IE				X		7.4.4.18	6.15	MAC	UL
0x2c	TVWS Device Capabilities IE	X		X	X		7.4.4.19	6.15	UL, MAC	UL
0x2d	TVWS Device Category IE	X					7.4.4.20	6.15	UL	UL
0x2e	TVWS Device Identification IE	X					7.4.4.21	6.15	UL	UL
0x2f	TVWS Device Location IE	X					7.4.4.22	6.15	UL	UL
0x30	TVWS Channel Information Query IE	X					7.4.4.23	6.15	UL	UL
0x31	TVWS Channel Information Source IE	X					7.4.4.24	6.15	UL	UL
0x32	CTM IE	X					7.4.4.25	6.16	UL	UL
0x33	Timestamp IE	X					7.4.4.26	6.9.5	MAC	MAC
0x34	Timestamp Difference IE	X					7.4.4.27	6.9.5, 6.7.4.2	MAC	MAC
0x35	TMCTP Specification IE	X					7.4.4.28	6.13	UL	UL
0x36	RCC PHY Operating Mode IE			X	X		7.4.4.29	6.10	MAC	UL
0x37–0x7f	Reserved									

The Sub-ID field values for Nested IEs of type long are given in Table 7-17. In the table, an X in the columns for frame indicates that the IE may be used in that frame. If there is not an X in the column, then the IE shall not be used in that frame. In the table, UL refers to the layers above the MAC

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 7-17—Sub-ID allocation for long format

Sub-ID value	Name	Enhanced Beacon	Enhanced ACK	Data	Multipurpose	MAC command	Format subclause	Use description	Used by	Created by
0x0–0x7	Reserved									
0x8	Vendor Specific Nested IE	X	X	X	X	X	7.4.4.30	—	UL	UL
0x9	Channel hopping IE	X					7.4.4.31	6.2.10, 6.3.6	MAC	MAC
0xa–0xf	Reserved									

7.4.4.2 TSCH Synchronization IE

The TSCH Synchronization IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-50.

Octets: 5	1
ASN	Join Metric

Figure 7-50—TSCH Synchronization IE Content field format

The ASN field contains the ASN corresponding to the timeslot in which the enhanced beacon is sent. The ASN is used as the Frame Counter for security operations if enabled.

The Join Metric field is an unsigned integer and shall be set to *macJoinMetric*.

7.4.4.3 TSCH Slotframe and Link IE

The TSCH Slotframe and Link IE is used in Enhanced Beacon frames to allow new devices to synchronize to a TSCH PAN. The TSCH Slotframe and Link IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-51.

Octets: 1	variable	…	variable
Number of Slotframes	Slotframe Descriptor 1	…	Slotframe Descriptor *n*

Figure 7-51—TSCH Slotframe and Link IE Content field format

The Number of Slotframes field is set to the total number of Slotframe Descriptor fields IE.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Slotframe Descriptor shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-52.

Octets: 1	**2**	**1**	**5**	**…**	**5**
Slotframe handle	Slotframe size	Number of Links	Link Information 1	…	Link Information *m*

Figure 7-52—Slotframe Descriptor field format

The Slotframe Handle field shall be set to the *macSlotframeHandle* from *macSlotframeTable* for this slotframe.

The Slotframe Size field is the size of the slotframe in number of timeslots and shall be set to the corresponding *macSlotframeSize* from *macSlotframeTable*.

The Number of Links field shall be set to the number of links that belong to the slotframe identified by the Slotframe Handle field.

The Link Information field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-53.

Octets: 2	**2**	**1**
Timeslot	Channel Offset	Link Options

Figure 7-53—Link Information field format

The Timeslot field shall be set to *macTimeslot* of the *macLinkTable*.

The Channel Offset field shall be set to *macChannelOffset* of the *macLinkTable*.

The Link Options field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-54.

Bits: 0	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5–7**
TX Link	RX Link	Shared Link	Timekeeping	Priority	Reserved

Figure 7-54—Link Options field format

The TX Link field shall be set to one if it is a TX link and shall be set to zero otherwise.

TX Shared links, indicated by the TX link field and Shared Link field both set to one, may be used by a joining device to send an Association Request command or higher layer message to the advertising device.

The RX Link field shall be set to one if the link is an RX link and shall be set to zero otherwise. RX links are used by a joining device to receive an Association Response command or higher layer message from an advertising device.

The Shared Link field shall be set to one if the link is a shared link and shall be set to zero otherwise. A shared link is one that uses contention to access the medium.

A link may be used as both a TX shared link and RX link.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Timekeeping field shall be set to one if the link is to be used for clock synchronization and shall be set to zero otherwise. RX links shall have the Timekeeping field set to one.

The Priority field shall be set to one if the link is a priority channel access, as defined in 6.2.5.2, and shall be set to zero otherwise.

7.4.4.4 TSCH Timeslot IE

The TSCH Timeslot IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-55. The TSCH Timeslot IE may be sent with only the Timeslot ID field to reduce the size of the beacon. Otherwise, all the fields are included. All slotframes are referred to by an ID, *macTimeslotTemplateId*, with ID = 0x00 denoting the default values for the band in use.with values given in Table 8-86.

Octets: 1	**0/2**	**0/2**	**0/2**	**0/2**	**0/2**	**02**	**0/2**	**0/2**	**0/2**	**0/2**	**0/2/3**	**0/2/3**
Timeslot ID	CCA Offset	CCA	TX Offset	RX Offset	RX Ack Delay	TX Ack Delay	RX Wait	Ack Wait	RX TX	Max Ack	Max TX	Time-slot Length

Figure 7-55—TSCH Timeslot IE Content field format

The Timeslot ID field is set to the value of *macTimeslotTemplateId* encoded as an unsigned integer.

The CCA Offset field shall be set to the value of *macTsCcaOffset* encoded as an unsigned integer.

The CCA field shall be set to *macTsCca* encoded as an unsigned integer.

The TX Offset field shall be set to *macTsTxOffset* encoded as an unsigned integer.

The RX Offset field shall be set to *macTsRxOffset* encoded as an unsigned integer.

The RX Ack Delay field shall be set to *macTsRxAckDelay* encoded as an unsigned integer.

The TX Ack Delay field shall be set to *macTsTxAckDelay* encoded as an unsigned integer.

The RX Wait field shall be set to *macTsRxWait* encoded as an unsigned integer.

The Ack Wait field shall be set to *macTsAckWait* encoded as an unsigned integer.

The RX TX field shall be set to *macTsRxTx* encoded as an unsigned integer.

The Max Ack field shall be set to *macTsMaxAck* encoded as an unsigned integer.

The length of the Max TX field and Timeslot Length field shall be the same and can be determined from the length of the IE.

The Max TX field shall be set to *macTsMaxTx* encoded as an unsigned integer.

The Timeslot Length field shall be set to *macTsTimeslotLength* encoded as an unsigned integer.

The PIB values used for this IE are defined in Table 8-85.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.4.4.5 Hopping timing IE

The Hopping Timing IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-56.

Octets: 3	2
Present Hop Time Offset	Hop Dwell Time

Figure 7-56—Hopping Timing IE Content field format

The Present Hop Time Offset field contains the amount of time in microseconds that has passed at the time of frame transmission since the transmitting device hopped to the present channel.

The Hop Dwell Time field shall be set to *macHopDwellTime* encoded as an unsigned integer.

7.4.4.6 Enhanced Beacon Filter IE

The Enhanced Beacon Filter IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-57. No more than one Enhanced Beacon Filter IE shall be conveyed per Enhanced Beacon Request frame.

Bits: 0	1	2	3–4	5–7	Octets: 0/1	0/1	0/1/2/3
Permit Joining On	Include Link Quality Filter	Include Percent Filter	Attribute IDs Length	Reserved	Link Quality	Percent Filter	Attribute IDs

Figure 7-57—Enhanced Beacon Filter IE Content field format

If the Permit Joining On field is set, only devices supporting Enhanced Beacon Request command/Enhanced Beacon frame with permit joining on shall respond to the Enhanced Beacon Request command.

The Include Link Quality Filter field shall be set to one if a Link Quality field is included and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Link Quality filter is an unsigned integer that indicates the minimum link quality that should be met in order for a device to respond to the request.

The Include Percent filter bit shall be set to one if a Percent Filter field is included and shall be set to zero otherwise

The Percent Filter field contains a scaled value from 0x00 to 0x64 representing zero to 100% probability for a given device to respond to the enhanced beacon request. The receiving device shall then randomly determine if it is to respond to the Enhanced Beacon Request command (if supporting Enhanced Beacon Request command/Enhanced Beacon frame) based on meeting this probability. For example, if the probability is set to 10%, then a device would respond, on average, to one out of every ten requests.

The Attribute IDs Length field is an unsigned integer that shall be set to the length in octets of the Attribute IDs field.

The Attribute IDs field is a bitmap identifying which of the Attribute Request IDs, defined in Table 6-3, are being requested. If attribute ID *n* is being requested, then bit *n* of the Attribute IDs field would be set to one. All other bits shall be set to zero.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.4.4.7 MAC Metrics IE

The MAC Metrics IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-58.

Octets: 1	4
Metric ID	Count

Figure 7-58—MAC Metrics IE Content field format

The Metric ID field shall be set to one of the values in Table 7-18.

Table 7-18—Metric Count IDs

Attribute name	Metric ID
macCounterOctets	0x01
macRetryCount	0x02
macMultipleRetryCount	0x03
*macTxFailCoun*t	0x04
macTxSuccessCount	0x05
macFcsErrorCount	0x06
macSecurityFailure	0x07
*macDuplicateFrameCoun*t	0x08
macRxSuccessCount	0x09
macNackCount	0x0a

7.4.4.8 All MAC Metrics IE

The All MAC Metrics IE Content shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-59.

Octets: 4	4	–	4
MAC Metric 1	MAC Metric 2	–	MAC Metric *n*

Figure 7-59—All MAC metrics IE Content field format

The MAC Metric field contains the PIB attribute value in the order given in Table 7-18.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.4.4.9 Coexistence Specification IE

The Coexistence Specification IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-60.

Bits: 0–3	4–7	8–11	12–15	16–19	20–23	24–39
Beacon Order	Superframe Order	Final CAP Slot	Enhanced Beacon Order	Offset Time Slot	CAP Backoff Offset	Enhanced Beacon Order

Figure 7-60—Coexistence Specification IE Content field format

The Beacon Order field, Superframe Order field, and Final CAP Slot field are as specified in 7.3.1.3. If the Beacon Order field is set to 15, the Superframe Order, Final CAP Slot, and Offset Time Slot fields shall be set to zero upon transmission and ignored upon reception.

The Enhanced Beacon Order field specifies the transmission interval of the Enhanced Beacon frames, as specified in 6.2.3.

The Offset Time Slot field specifies the time offset between the periodic beacon and the following Enhanced Beacon frame, as described in 6.2.3.

The CAP Backoff Offset field specifies the actual slot position in which the Enhanced Beacon frame is transmitted due to the backoff procedure in the CAP.

The Enhanced Beacon Order field specifies the transmission interval between consecutive Enhanced Beacon frames in the nonbeacon-enabled mode. The valid range for this field shall be 0–16383.

When generated in response to an Enhanced Beacon Request command that contained a set of requested IEs, the content of the Enhanced Beacon frame shall include the IEs corresponding to the requested IE IDs, as shown in Table 6-3.

7.4.4.10 SUN Device Capabilities IE

The SUN Device Capabilities IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-61.

Octets: 1	2	Variable
SUN Features	Frequency Bands Supported	PHY Type Descriptor(s)

Figure 7-61—SUN Device Capabilities IE Content field format

The SUN Features field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-62.

Bits: 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Enh-Ack	Data Whitening	Interleaving	SFD G1	NRNSC FEC	RSC FEC	Mode Switch	Reserved

Figure 7-62—SUN Features field format

The Enh-Ack field shall be set to one if the Enh-Ack frame, as described in 6.7.4.2, is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Data Whitening field shall be set to one if data whitening, as described in 20.4, is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Interleaving field shall be set to one if interleaving, as described in 20.3.5, is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The SFD G1 field shall be set to one if the start-of-frame delimiter (SFD) group 1, as described in 20.2.1.2, is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The NRNSC FEC field shall be set to one if the nonrecursive and nonsystematic code (NRNSC) FEC, as described in 20.3.4, is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The RSC FEC field shall be set to one if the recursive and systematic code (RSC) FEC, as described in 20.3.4, is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Mode Switch field shall be set to one if the mode switch mechanism, as described in 20.5, is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Frequency Bands Supported field is a bitmap indexed by the frequency band identifier values given in Table 7-19. The least significant bit of the bitmap corresponds to frequency band identifier zero. A bit set to one indicates that the device supports operation in that frequency band; otherwise, it does not.

Table 7-19—Frequency band identifier values

Frequency band identifier	Band Designation
0	169 MHz band
1	450 MHz band
2	470 MHz band
3	780 MHz band
4	863 MHz band
5	896 MHz band
6	901 MHz band
7	915 MHz band
8	917 MHz band
9	920 MHz band
10	928 MHz band
11	920 MHz band
12	1427 MHz band
13	2450 MHz band
14–15	Reserved

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The PHY Type Descriptor field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-63.

Bits: 0–3	4	5–15	16–31
PHY Type	All Frequency Bands	PHY Modes Supported (PHY Mode ID bitmap: b0…b10)	Specific Frequency Bands (only present if All Frequency Bands = 0)

Figure 7-63—PHY Type Descriptor field format

The PHY Type field contains an unsigned integer whose value identifies a PHY Type defined in Table 7-20.

The All Frequency Bands field indicates whether the optional Specific Frequency Bands field is present. If the All Frequency Bands field is set to one, the optional Specific Frequency Bands field is absent and the PHY Type is supported in all frequency bands declared in the Frequency Bands Supported field of the SUN device capabilities IE. If the All Frequency Bands field is set to zero, the optional Specific Frequency Bands field is present and the PHY Type is only supported in the frequency bands declared in the Specific Frequency Bands field of this PHY Type Descriptor.

The PHY Modes Supported field is a bitmap indicating which PHY modes are supported for the PHY Type. The PHY modes for each possible PHY Type are defined in Table 7-21, Table 7-22, Table 7-23, Table 7-24, Table 7-25, and Table 7-26. A bit set to one in bit b_n of the PHY Mode ID bitmap indicates that the PHY Mode with ID *n* in the table of PHY Modes corresponding to the PHY Type is supported; otherwise, it is not supported.

The optional Specific Frequency Bands field is encoded in the same manner as the Frequency Bands Supported field of the SUN device capabilities IE.

Table 7-20—Modulation scheme encoding

PHY type	Modulation scheme
0	FSK-A
1	FSK-B
2	O-QPSK-A
3	O-QPSK-B
4	O-QPSK-C
5	OFDM Option 1
6	OFDM Option 2
7	OFDM Option 3
8	OFDM Option 4
9–15	Reserved

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The FSK-A PHY mode encodings are defined in Table 7-21.

Table 7-21—FSK-A PHY mode encoding

PHY Mode ID	Narrowband FSK PHY mode
0	4.8 kb/s; 2-FSK; mod index = 1.0; channel spacing = 12.5 kHz
1	9.6 kb/s; 4-FSK; mod index = 0.33; channel spacing = 12.5 kHz
2	10 kb/s; 2-FSK; mod index = 0.5; channel spacing = 12.5 kHz
3	20 kb/s; 2-FSK; mod index = 0.5; channel spacing = 12.5 kHz
4	40 kb/s; 2-FSK; mod index = 0.5; channel spacing = 12.5 kHz
5	4.8 kb/s; 2-FSK; mod index = 0.5; channel spacing = 12.5 kHz
6	2.4 kb/s; 2-FSK; mod index = 2.0; channel spacing = 12.5 kHz
7	9.6 kb/s; 4-FSK; mod index = 0.33; channel spacing = 12.5 kHz
8–10	Reserved

The FSK-B PHY mode encodings are defined in Table 7-22.

Table 7-22—FSK-B PHY mode encoding

PHY Mode ID	FSK PHY mode
0	50 kb/s; 2-FSK; mod index = 1.0; channel spacing = 200 kHz
1	100 kb/s; 2-FSK; mod index = 1.0; channel spacing = 400 kHz
2	150 kb/s; 2-FSK; mod index = 0.5; channel spacing = 400 kHz
3	200 kb/s; 2-FSK; mod index = 0.5; channel spacing = 400 kHz
4	200 kb/s; 4-FSK; mod index = 0.33; channel spacing = 400 kHz
5	200 kb/s; 2-FSK; mod index = 1.0; channel spacing = 600 kHz
6	400 kb/s; 4-FSK; mod index = 0.33; channel spacing = 600 kHz
7–10	Reserved

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The O-QPSK-A PHY mode encodings are defined in Table 7-23.

Table 7-23—O-QPSK-A PHY mode encoding

PHY Mode ID	Narrowband O-QPSK PHY mode
0	chip rate = 100 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = DSSS; RateMode = 0; data rate = 6.25 kb/s
1	chip rate = 100 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = DSSS; RateMode = 1; data rate = 12.5 kb/s
2	chip rate = 100 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = DSSS; RateMode = 2; data rate = 25 kb/s
3	chip rate = 100 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = DSSS; RateMode = 3; data rate = 50 kb/s
4–10	Reserved

The O-QPSK-B PHY mode encodings are defined in Table 7-24.

Table 7-24—O-QPSK-B PHY mode encoding

PHY Mode ID	O-QPSK PHY mode
0	chip rate = 1000 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = DSSS; RateMode = 0; data rate = 31.25 kb/s
1	chip rate = 1000 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = DSSS; RateMode = 1; data rate = 125 kb/s
2	chip rate = 1000 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = DSSS; RateMode = 2; data rate = 250 kb/s
3	chip rate = 1000 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = DSSS; RateMode = 3; data rate = 500 kb/s
4	chip rate = 1000 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = MDSSS; RateMode = 0; data rate = 62.5 kb/s
5	chip rate = 1000 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = MDSSS; RateMode = 1; data rate = 125 kb/s
6	chip rate = 1000 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = MDSSS; RateMode = 2; data rate = 250 kb/s
7	chip rate = 1000 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = MDSSS; RateMode = 3; data rate = 500 kb/s
8–10	Reserved

The O-QPSK-C PHY mode encodings are defined in Table 7-25.

Table 7-25—O-QPSK-C PHY mode encoding

PHY Mode ID	O-QPSK PHY mode
0	chip rate = 2000 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = DSSS; RateMode = 0; data rate = 31.25 kb/s
1	chip rate = 2000 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = DSSS; RateMode = 1; data rate = 125 kb/s
2	chip rate = 2000 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = DSSS; RateMode = 2; data rate = 250 kb/s
3	chip rate = 2000 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = DSSS; RateMode = 3; data rate = 500 kb/s
4	chip rate = 2000 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = MDSSS; RateMode = 0; data rate = 62.5 kb/s

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 7-25—O-QPSK-C PHY mode encoding *(continued)*

PHY Mode ID	O-QPSK PHY mode
5	chip rate = 2000 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = MDSSS; RateMode = 1; data rate = 125 kb/s
6	chip rate = 2000 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = MDSSS; RateMode = 2; data rate = 250 kb/s
7	chip rate = 2000 kchip/s; SpreadingMode = MDSSS; RateMode = 3; data rate = 500 kb/s
8–10	Reserved

For each OFDM option, the supported MCSs are defined in Table 7-26.

Table 7-26—OFDM PHY mode encoding

PHY Mode ID	OFDM PHY modes (Option 1,2,3,4)
0	MCS0 supported
1	MCS1 supported
2	MCS2 supported
3	MCS3 supported
4	MCS4 supported
5	MCS5 supported
6	MCS6 supported
7–10	Reserved

In each encoding of PHY modes in the PHY Type Descriptor field, a bit set to one in a bit position corresponding to a given modulation scheme in Table 7-21, Table 7-22, Table 7-23, Table 7-24, Table 7-25, and Table 7-26 indicates the PHY mode for that modulation scheme is supported. A value of zero similarly indicates that the PHY mode is not supported.

The value of the SUN PHY Capabilities IE length field is computed as follows:

$$Length = 1 + 2 + 2 \times NumPHYTypeAllFreq1 + 4 \times NumPHYTypeAllFreq0$$

where

NumPHYTypeAllFreq1 is the number of PHY Type Descriptor fields that have the All Frequency Bands field set to one

NumPHYTypeAllFreq0 is the number of PHY Type Descriptor fields that have the All Frequency Bands field set to zero

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.4.4.11 SUN FSK Generic PHY IE

The SUN FSK Generic PHY IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-64.

Octets: 1			1		4	2	4	4
Bits: 0–1	2–3	4–7	Bit #: 0–5	6–7				
Reserved	Modulation Scheme	SUN FSK Generic PHY ID	Modulation Index	BT	First Channel Center Frequency	Number of Channels	Channel Spacing	Symbol Rate

Figure 7-64—SUN FSK Generic PHY IE Content field format

The Modulation Scheme is an unsigned integer that shall be to zero to indicate 2-FSK and shall be set to one to indicate 4-FSK. All other values are reserved.

SUN FSK Generic PHY ID is unsigned integers that is used to identify the PHY configuration contained in this IE.

The Modulation Index field is encoded as an unsigned integer with permissible values in the range 0–45. Values in the range 46–63 are undefined. The value of the modulation index for 2-FSK is computed using the value of the Modulation Index field in the following way:

modulation index = 0.25 + (Modulation Index field value) × 0.05

For example, a modulation index of 0.5 would be encoded as 0b00101.

The BT field is an unsigned integer. The BT field shall be set to zero if the BT is 0.5 and shall be set to one if the BT is 1.0. All other values are reserved.

The First Channel Center Frequency field contains an unsigned integer whose value is the center frequency of the first channel in hertz.

The Number of Channels field contains an unsigned integer whose value is the number of channels for the generic PHY.

The Channel Spacing field contains an unsigned integer whose value is the difference between adjacent channel center frequencies in hertz. For example, 300 kHz channel spacing would be encoded as 0x493E0.

The Symbol Rate field contains an unsigned integer whose value is the number of symbols transmitted per second. For example, 100 ksymbol/s would be encoded as 0x186A0.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.4.4.12 Mode Switch Parameter IE

The Mode Switch Parameter IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-65.

<table>
<tr><th colspan="4">Octets: 1</th><th>1</th><th>1</th></tr>
<tr><th>Bits: 0</th><th>1–4</th><th>5</th><th>6–7</th><td rowspan="2">Settling Delay</td><td rowspan="2">Secondary FSK Preamble Length</td></tr>
<tr><td>Secondary FSK SFD</td><td>Target Mode</td><td>Source Mode</td><td>Mode Switch Parameter Index</td></tr>
</table>

Figure 7-65—Mode Switch Parameter IE Content field format

The Secondary FSK SFD field value is set to one if a secondary SFD is present; otherwise, it is set to zero, as described in Table 11-3.

The Target Mode field contains an unsigned integer indicating the PHY Mode of the new mode PPDU. The values are as defined in Table 7-20.

The Source Mode field contains the mode that is used to transmit the mode switch PPDU. It is set to zero for 2-FSK or to one for 4-FSK.

The Mode Switch Parameter Index field contains an unsigned integer whose value is the index into the *phyModeSwitchParameterEntries* PIB attribute array containing the mode switch parameter.

The Settling Delay field contains an unsigned integer whose value times two is the settling delay in microseconds (0–510 μsec), as described in Table 11-3.

The Secondary FSK Preamble Length field contains an unsigned integer whose value is the number of preamble repetitions for the secondary preamble when the new mode is SUN FSK, as described in Table 11-3.

7.4.4.13 PHY Parameter Change IE

The PHY Parameter Change IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-66.

Octets: 4	4
Effective Time of Change	Notification Time

Figure 7-66—PHY Parameter Change IE

The Effective Time of Change field shall contain a time in the future, in microseconds, when the change is scheduled to occur.

The Notification Time field shall contain the local time value in the generating device at the time the frame containing the PHY Parameter Change IE is generated.

The PHY Parameter Change IE shall always be followed in the frame by a valid Operating Mode Description IE.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.4.4.14 O-QPSK PHY Mode IE

The O-QPSK PHY Mode IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-67.

Octets: 1	1
Band Selector	Channel Index

Figure 7-67—O-QPSK PHY Mode IE Content field format

The Band Selector field identifies the band for the operating mode and shall take one of the values in Table 7-27.

Table 7-27—Band Selector frequency bands

Band Selector value	Corresponding band
0	Reserved
1	780 MHz band
2	868 MHz band
3	915 MHz band
4	2380 MHz band
5	2450 MHz band
6–7	Reserved

The Channel Index field shall contain a valid channel number as defined in 10.1.2.1, 10.1.2.2, or 10.1.2.9 as appropriate to the band selector value.

7.4.4.15 PCA Allocation IE

The PCA Allocation IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-68.

Bit: 0	1	2–15	16–23
PCA Used	Super-rate	Delay Tolerance	Allocation Rate

Figure 7-68—PCA Allocation IE Content field format

The PCA Used field is set according to the MAC PIB attribute *macPriorityChannelAccess*, with a value of zero indicating *macPriorityChannelAccess* is FALSE and a value of one indicating *macPriorityChannelAccess* is TRUE.

The Super-rate field is set according to the MAC PIB attribute *macPcaAllocationSuperRate* with a value of zero indicating *macPcaAllocationSuperRate* is FALSE and a value of one indicating *macPcaAllocationSuperRate* is TRUE.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Delay Tolerance field describes the delay tolerance of a critical event message in units of 4 ms. The relation of *macCritMsgDelayTol* to the Delay Tolerance field value is as follows:

macCritMsgDelayTol = 4 × Delay Tolerance (ms)

The Allocation Rate field is set according to the MAC PIB attribute *macPcaAllocationRate,* and in conjunction with *macPcaAllocationSuperRate*, it provides the rate at which PCA allocations are made, as described in 6.2.5.4.

7.4.4.16 LECIM DSSS Operating Mode IE

The LECIM DSSS Operating Mode IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-69.

Bits: 0–3	4–12	13	14–16	17	18–21	20	…
Operating Band	Channel Number	Modulation Selection	Chip Rate	Channel Spacing	PSDU Size	Preamble Present	…

…	21	22–25	26–29	30–53	54–63
…	SFD Present	Spreading Factor	OVSF Spreading Factor	Gold Code Initialization	Reserved

Figure 7-69—LECIM DSSS Operating Mode IE Content field

The Operating Band field contains an unsigned integer corresponding to a bit number given in Table 7-9. Values not corresponding to an assigned frequency band in Table 7-9 are reserved.

The Channel Number field contains the channel number, as defined in 10.1.2.

The Modulation Selection field shall be set to zero for BPSK and shall be set to one for O-QPSK.

The Chip Rate field is an unsigned integer that corresponds the chip rate, as defined in Table 7-28:

Table 7-28—Chip Rate field valid values

Field value	Chip rate (kchips/s)
0	Reserved
1	100
2	200
3	400
4	600
5	800
6	1000
7	2000

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Channel Spacing shall be set to zero for 0.1 MHz channel spacing and shall be set to one for 0.2 MHz channel spacing.

The PSDU Size field shall be set to one of the values in Table 7-29.

Table 7-29—PSDU Size field valid values

Field value (b18 b19)	PSDU size
00	invalid
01	16 octets
10	24 octets
11	32 octets

The Preamble Present shall be set to one if the preamble is present and shall be set to zero if the preamble is not present.

The SFD Present shall be set to one if the SFD is present and shall be set to zero if the SFD is not present.

The Spreading Factor field contains *phyLecimDsssPsduSpreadingFactor*, as defined in Table 11-2.

The OVSF Spreading Factor field shall be set to one of the valid value defined in Table 7-30. All other values are reserved.

Table 7-30—OVSF Spreading Factor field values

Field value (b26 b27 b28 b29)	OVSF spreading factor
0000	OVSF not applied
0001	SF of 2
0010	SF of 4
0011	SF of 8
0100	SF of 16
0101	SF of 32
0110	SF of 64
0111	SF of 128
1000	SF of 256

The Gold Code Initialization field shall be set to the Gold code LFSR2 initialization value, as specified in 23.2.6.1.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.4.4.17 LECIM FSK Operating Mode IE

The LECIM FSK Operating Mode IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-70.

Bits: 0–3	4–12	13	14–15	16	17	18	…	19	20	21–22	23	23–31
Operating Band	Channel Number	Position Modulation	Symbol Rate	Channel Spacing	FEC Enabled	Interleaving Enabled	…	Scrambler Enabled	Spreading Enabled	Spreading Factor	Spreading Pattern	Reserved

Figure 7-70—LECIM FSK Operating Mode IE Content field

The Operating Band field shall be set to an unsigned integer that corresponds to a bit number given in Table 7-9. Values not corresponding to a valid frequency band in Table 7-9 are reserved.

The Channel Number field is defined in 10.1.2 and 10.2.

The Position Modulation shall be set to one if the position modulation is used and shall be set to zero otherwise

The Symbol Rate field is an unsigned integer that corresponds to a symbol rate in Table 7-31.

Table 7-31—Symbol Rate field valid values

Field value	Symbol rate
0	37.5 ksymbol/s
1	25 ksymbol/s
2	12.5 ksymbol/s
3	Reserved

The Channel Spacing field indicates the channel spacing in the operating band specified in this IE. It shall be set to zero to indicate a 200 kHz channel spacing and shall be set to one to indicate a 100 kHz channel spacing.

The FEC Enabled field shall be set to one if FEC is enabled and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Interleaving Enabled field shall be set to one if interleaving is enabled and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Scrambler Enabled field shall be set to one if the scrambler is enabled and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Spreading Enabled field shall be set to one if spreading is enabled and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Spreading Factor field is an unsigned integer that corresponds to a spreading factor in Table 7-32.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 7-32—Spreading Factor field valid values

Field value	Spreading factor
0	2
1	4
2	8
3	16

The Spreading Pattern field shall be set to zero if a non-alternating spreading pattern is used and shall be set to one if an alternating spreading pattern is used.

7.4.4.18 TVWS PHY Operating Mode Description IE

The TVWS PHY Operating Mode Description IE Content field shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-71. The values in the TVWS PHY Operating Mode Description IE correspond to those values that will take effect after the PHY change operation, as described in 6.10.

Bits: 0–7	8–15	16–17	18–31	32–71
Band ID	PHY Channel ID	PHY Type Selector	Operating Parameters	Available Frequency Range

Figure 7-71—TVWS PHY Operating Mode Description IE Content field format

The Band ID field contains the bit number of the matching Band ID in Table 7-39.

The PHY Channel ID field contains channel number, *NumChan*, for the TVWS PHY channel as defined in 10.1.2.8.

The PHY Type Selector field indicates which TVWS PHY is described in the Operating Parameters field. Valid values for the PHY Type Selector field are given in Table 7-33.

Table 7-33—PHY Type Selector field values

Field value	PHY type
0	TVWS FSK PHY
1	TVWS OFDM PHY
2	TVWS NB OFDM PHY
3	Reserved

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Operating Parameters field for a TVWS FSK PHY shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-72.

Bits: 0	1–2	3	4	5	6–8	9	10	11–13
FEC	FEC scheme	Interleaving	Spreading	Data Whitening	Mode	Modulation Index	SFD Length	Reserved

Figure 7-72—Operating Parameters field format for TVWS FSK PHY

The FEC field shall be set to one if FEC is enabled and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The FEC Scheme field indicates the type of FEC that will be used. When the FEC field is set to zero, the FEC Scheme field is reserved. Valid values of the FEC Scheme field are given in Table 7-34.

Table 7-34—FEC Scheme field values

Field value	FEC scheme used (as defined in 25.2.2)
0	First FEC scheme
1	Second FEC scheme
2	Third FEC scheme
3	Reserved

The Interleaving field shall be set to one if interleaving is enabled and shall be set to zero otherwise.

NOTE—The Interleaving field is reserved if FEC is not enabled or the FEC Scheme field value is not one.

The Spreading field shall be set to one if spreading is enabled and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Data Whitening field shall be set to one if data whitening is enabled and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Mode field shall be set to the TVWS FSK mode, as defined in Table 25-3, that is used.

For Mode field values of one, two or three, the Modulation Index field shall be set to zero for a modulation index of 0.5 and shall be set to one for a modulation index of 1.0. For all other values of the Mode field, the Modulation Index field is reserved.

The SFD Length field shall be set to zero for a 16-bit SFD and shall be set to one for a 24-bit SFD.

The Operating Parameters field for a TVWS OFDM PHY shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-73.

Bits: 0–1	2–4	5–13
Modulation	MCS Mode	Reserved

Figure 7-73—Operating Parameters field format for TVWS OFDM PHY

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Modulation field specifies the modulation that is used. Valid values for the Modulation field are given in Table 7-35.

Table 7-35—Modulation field values

Field value	Modulation type
0	BPSK
1	QPSK
2	16-QAM
3	Reserved

The MCS Mode field shall be set to one of the values in Table 7-36.

Table 7-36— MCS Mode field values for TVWS OFDM

MCS Mode field	MCS
0	Reserved
1	MCS 1
2	MCS 2
3	MCS 3
4	MCS 4
5	MCS 5
6–7	Reserved

The Operating Parameters field for a TVWS NB OFDM PHY shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-74.

Bits: 0–3	4	5–13
MCS Mode	Channel Aggregation	Reserved

Figure 7-74—Operating Parameters field format for TVWS NB OFDM PHY

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The MCS Mode field shall be set to one of the values in Table 7-37. All other values are reserved.

Table 7-37—MCS Mode field values for TVWS NB OFDM

MCS Mode field	MCS
0	Reserved
1	MCS 1
2	MCS 2
3	MCS 3
4	MCS 4
5	MCS 5
6	MCS 6
7	MCS 7
8	MCS 8
9–15	Reserved

The Channel Aggregation shall be set to one if channel aggregation is enabled and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Available Frequency Range field shall be only be present when the Band ID field value is less than or equal to five. The Available Frequency Range field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-91 with field values described in 7.4.4.23.

7.4.4.19 TVWS Device Capabilities IE

The presence of this IE in a transmitted frame indicates that the device supports operation of a TVWS PHY. The TVWS Device Capabilities IE Content field shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-75.

Octets: 1	3	3	variable
TVWS PHY Type	Supported Bands	TVWS Supported PHY Features	TVWS Supported Channels

Figure 7-75—TVWS Device Capabilities IE

The TVWS PHY Type field indicates the PHY type being described in the IE. Valid values of the TVWS PHY Type field shall be set to one of the non-reserved values shown in Table 7-38.

Table 7-38—TVWS PHY Type field values

Value	Description
0	TVWS-FSK
1	TVWS-OFDM
2	TVWS-NB-OFDM
3–255	Reserved

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Supported Bands field is a bitmap indicating the bands, as defined in Table 10-1, supported by the device. A value of one indicates that the band is supported, and zero indicates the band is not supported. The supported bands shall be encoded as shown in Table 7-39. The device shall indicate only those bands that are implemented and defined for the indicated PHY type.

Table 7-39—Supported Bands field values

Bit number	Band ID
0	TVWS Band USA
1	TVWS Band UK
2	TVWS Band Japan
3	TVWS Band Canada
4	TVWS Band Korea
5	TVWS Band EU
6	450 MHz
7	470 MHz
8	780 MHz
9	863 MHz
10	896 MHz
11	901 MHz
12	915 MHz
13	917 MHz
14	928 MHz
15	920 MHz
16	Reserved
17	2450 MHz
18–23	Reserved

The TVWS Supported PHY Features field indicates the supported features of a TVWS PHY. The content depends on the value of the TVWS PHY Type field.

The Supported Features field for TVWS FSK PHY shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-76.

Bits: 0	1–4	5–8	9	10	11	12	13–20	21–23
24-bit SFD Length	FEC Scheme	Spreading Factor	Data Whitening	Alternating Spreading Pattern	Non-alternating Spreading Pattern	Ranging	Operating Mode	Reserved

Figure 7-76—TVWS FSK PHY Supported Features field format

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The 24-bit SFD Length field shall be set to one if the 24-bit SFD length is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The FEC Scheme field is a bitmap that indicates if an FEC scheme is supported. Valid values are given in Table 7-40.

Table 7-40—FEC Scheme field valid values

Bit number	Description
1	First FEC scheme as defined in 20.2.2
2	Second FEC scheme as defined in 20.2.2
3	Interleaver for the second FEC scheme as defined in 20.2.2
4	Third FEC scheme as defined in 20.2.2

The Spreading Factor field is a bitmap that indicates if a spreading factor is supported. Valid values are given in Table 7-41.

Table 7-41—Spreading Factor field valid values

Bit number	Description
5	Spreading factor 2 supported
6	Spreading factor 4 supported
7	Spreading factor 8 supported
8	Spreading factor 16 supported

The Data Whitening field shall be set to one if data whitening is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Alternating Spreading Pattern field shall be set to one if alternating spreading patterns are supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Non-alternating Spreading Pattern field shall be set to one if non-alternating spreading patterns are supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Ranging field shall be set to one if ranging is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Operating Mode field is a bit map that indicates if a particular operating mode is supported. Valid values of the operating mode field are given in Table 7-42.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 7-42—Operating Mode field valid values

Bit number	Description
13	Mode#1 with modulation index = 0.5
14	Mode#1 with modulation index = 1
15	Mode#2 with modulation index = 0.5
16	Mode#2 with modulation index = 1
17	Mode#3 with modulation index = 0.5
18	Mode#3 with modulation index = 1
19	Mode#4
20	Mode#5

The Supported Features field for TVWS OFDM PHY shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-77.

Bits: 0	1	2	3–6	7	8–23
MCS3	MCS4	MCS 5	Number of STF Symbols	Ranging	Reserved

Figure 7-77—TVWS-OFDM PHY Supported Features field format

The MCS3 field shall be set to one if MCS3, as defined in 26.3, is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The MCS4 field shall be set to one if MCS4, as defined in 26.3, is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The MCS5 field shall be set to one if MCS5, as defined in 26.3, is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Number of STF Symbols field shall be set to the maximum number of STF symbols, as defined in 26.2.1, supported by the device during reception.

The Ranging field shall be set to one if ranging is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Supported Features field for TVWS NB OFDM PHY shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-78.

Bits: 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8–23
Channel Aggregation	Cyclic prefix 1/16	Cyclic prefix 1/8	Guard Interval 1/16	Guard Interval 1/8	Symbol Interval 1/16	Symbol Interval 1/8	Ranging	Reserved

Figure 7-78—TVWS NB OFDM PHY Supported Features field format

The Channel Aggregation field shall be set to one if channel aggregation is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Cyclic Prefix 1/16 field hall be set to one if a 1/16 cyclic prefix is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Cyclic Prefix 1/8 field hall be set to one if a 1/8 cyclic prefix is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Guard Interval 1/16 field hall be set to one if a 1/16 guard interval is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Guard Interval 1/8 field hall be set to one if a 1/8 guard interval is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Symbol Interval 1/16 field hall be set to one if a 1/16 symbol interval is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Symbol Interval 1/8 field hall be set to one if a 1/8 symbol interval is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Ranging field hall be set to one if ranging is supported and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Channels Supported field is a set of channel lists that shall be formatted as described in Figure 7-79.

Octets: 1/variable	**1/variable**	**…**	**1/variable**
Channel List for Band 1	Channel List for Band 2	…	Channel List for Band *n*

Figure 7-79—TVWS Supported Channels field format

The TVWS Supported Channels field content depends on the value of the Supported Bands field. For each defined band, the channel numbering is given in Table 7-39. For each band indicated as supported, a corresponding Channel List for Band field map shall be included. Each Channel List for Band field shall be encoded as shown in Figure 7-80. The first bit field of each map indicates whether all channels in that band are supported. If this field is set to one, then all channels defined for the band in Table 7-39 are supported, and the channel list is 1 octet, with bits 1 to 7 set to zero. If the first bit field is set to zero (i.e., not all channels in that band are supported), then the subsequent bit fields indicate which individual channels are supported. The bit field corresponding to a channel number shall be set to one to indicate that the channel is supported and set to zero to indicate the channel is not supported. Bit maps are allocated on octet boundaries; unused bits are reserved. When multiple bands are supported, as indicated in the Supported Bands field, the corresponding channel lists are concatenated in order, such that the channel lists occur in the order of the bands given in Table 7-39, i.e., channel list corresponding to the band indicated by bit 0 of the Supported Bands field is first if bit 0 is set to one. The term channel here refers to a WPAN channel, as defined in 10.1.2.8. The mapping between a TVWS channel and a PHY channel is not within the scope of this standard.

0	**1**	**2**	**…**	***n***
All channels supported	Channel 1 supported	Channel 2 supported	…	Channel *n* supported

Figure 7-80—Channel List field format

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.4.4.20 TVWS Device Category IE

The TVWS Device Category IE Content field shall be formatted as in Figure 7-81.

Octets: 1
Device Category

Figure 7-81—TVWS Device Category IE Content field format

Valid values of the Device Category field are given in Table 7-43.

Table 7-43—Device Category field values

Value	Description
0	Stationary and independent device
1	Stationary and dependent device
2	Non-stationary and independent device
3	Non-stationary and dependent device
4–255	Reserved

7.4.4.21 TVWS Device Identification IE

The TVWS Device Identification IE Content field shall be formatted as shown Figure 7-82.

Octets: 1	variable
ID Type	Device ID

Figure 7-82—TVWS Device Identification IE Content field format

Valid values of the ID Type field are given in Table 7-44.

Table 7-44—ID Type field values

Value	Description
0	US specific regulator assigned ID
1	UK specific regulator assigned ID
2	Canada specific regulator assigned ID
3	Japan specific regulator assigned ID
4	Korea specific regulator assigned ID
5	EU specific regulator assigned ID

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 7-44—ID Type field values *(continued)*

Value	Description
6	Manufacturer serial number
7	Vendor specific
8–255	Reserved

For an ID Type field indicated as regulator assigned, the Device ID field shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-83. For other non-reserved values in Table 7-44, the Device ID field contains only the ID String field.

Octets: 1	variable
Device Category	ID String

Figure 7-83—Device ID field format

The Device Category field is defined in 7.4.4.20.

The ID String field shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-84.

Octets: 1	variable
Length	ID Value

Figure 7-84—ID String field format

The Length field specifies the number of octets that follows in the ID Value field.

The encoding of characters into the ID Value field is defined by regulators or can be vendor specific and is outside the scope of this standard.

7.4.4.22 TVWS Device Location IE

The TVWS Device Location IE Content field shall be formatted as shown Figure 7-85.

Octets: 1	17	17	…	17
Number of Locations	Device Location 1	Device Location 2	…	Device Location *n*

Figure 7-85—TVWS Device Location IE Content field format

The Number of Locations field indicates the number of Device Location fields in the IE.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Device Location field shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-86.

Octets: 1	16
Location ID	Device Location Element

Figure 7-86—Device Location field format

The Location ID field provides an ID of a particular location for which a device is requesting channel list info. This field is used as part of the channel list response to allocate available channel info to a particular location ID.

The Device Locations Element field shall be encoded as described in IETF RFC 6225, section 2.1. The first two fields, Option Code and OptLen are omitted for the Device Location Element field.

7.4.4.23 TVWS Channel Information Query IE

The TVWS Channel Information Query IE Content field shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-87.

Octets: 1	1	0/variable
Channel List ID	Channel Info Status	Channel List Info

Figure 7-87—TVWS Channel Information Query IE Content field format

The Channel List ID field is incremented when the channel data is updated. When the Channel Info Status field indicates that this is a channel data request, the Channel List ID field is set to the ID value provided when channel data was last received. If channel data has not been received the Channel List ID field is set to zero in the request.

The Channel Info Status field shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-88.

Bits: 0	1–3	4–7
Channel List Request/Response	Number of Locations	Reserved

Figure 7-88—Channel Info Status Content field format

The Channel List Request/Response field shall be set to zero if this is a request for information and shall be set to one if it is a response to a request. When the Channel Info Status field indicates a request, TVWS Device Identification IEs and a TVWS Device Location IE may be included in the request frame.

When the Channel List Request/Response field is set to indicate a response, the Number of Locations field indicates the number of locations for which the channel info is available. Otherwise, the Number of Locations field is reserved.

The Channel List info field shall be present when Channel List Request/Response is set to indicate a response.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Each entry in the Channel List Info field contains the specific information on available channels as shown in Figure 7-89.

Octets: 1	1	0/1	0/variable
Location ID	Channel List Status	Number of TVWS Channels	Available Channel

Figure 7-89—Channel List Info field format

The Channel List Status field shall be present when Channel list Request/Response is set to indicate a response. Valid values of the Channel List Staus field are given in Table 7-45.

Table 7-45—Channel List Status field values

Status	Description
0	Available channel list verified for a device location
1	Request not successful due to device ID not being verified
2	Request not successful due to device location being out of the geographic coordinate
3	Request not successful due to one or more parameters having invalid values
4–255	Reserved

When the Channel Info Status field indicates that this is a response with available channel list for verified device locations, the Number of TVWS Channels field and Available Channel field are included in the IE. For other status values these fields are not present.

The Available Channel field shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-90.

Octets: 5	1	2
Available Frequency Range	Maximum TX Power	Valid Time

Figure 7-90—Available Channel field format

Available Frequency Range field shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-91.

Octets: 3	2
Starting Frequency	Bandwidth

Figure 7-91—Available Frequency Range field format

The Starting Frequency field specifies the starting frequency, in units of 1 kHz, where the TVWS spectrum is available.

The Bandwidth field indicates the bandwidth, in units of 1 kHz, of the available TVWS spectrum.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Maximum TX Power field contains the maximum allowed transmit EIRP authorized for TVWS channel, encoded as a twos-complement number in 0.5 dBm increments, in the range of –64 dBm to 63.5 dBm.

The Valid Time field contains the time, in minutes from the time of transmission, that the channel availability data is expected to remain valid; a valid time of zero indicates that the channel is available until further notice (e.g., as might be used for contact verification).

7.4.4.24 TVWS Channel Information Source IE

The TVWS Channel Information Source IE shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-92.

Octets: 1	0/16	0/8	0/8
Source Info	Known Source Location	Known Source Address	Known Source Available Channel

Figure 7-92—TVWS Channel Information Source IE Content field format

The Source Info field shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-93.

Bits: 0	1	2	3–7
Location Present	Address Present	Available Channel Present	Reserved

Figure 7-93—Source Info field format

The Location Present field shall be set to one if the Known Source Location field is present and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Address Present field shall be set to one if the Known Source Address field is present and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Available Channel Present field shall be set to one if the Known Source Available Channel field is present and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Known Source Location field contains the location of the device acting as the source of channel availability data and shall be encoded as described in IETF RFC 6225, section 2.1. First two fields, Option Code and OptLen are omitted for the Device Location Element field.

The Known Source Address field contains the extended address of the known source device.

The Known Source Available Channel field contains the TVWS channel being used by the known source and shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-90.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.4.4.25 CTM IE

The CTM IE Content field shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-94.

Octets: 1	15	…	15
CTM Control	Channel Timing Information 1	…	Channel Timing Information *n*

Figure 7-94—CTM IE Content field format

Valid values of the CTM Control field are given in Table 7-46.

Table 7-46—CTM Control field values

Value	Description
0	Request for channel timing information
1	Success with full channel timing information on the available channels
2	Success with subset of channel timing information on the available channels
3	Success with no channel timing changes from previous query
4	Request declined due to unspecified reason
5	Request declined because of no capability for providing channel timing information
6	Request declined, database access timeout
7–255	Reserved

The Channel Timing Information fields shall only be present, when it is a response to a request and the CTM Control field value indicates that channel timing information is available. The Channel Timing Information field shall be formatted as shown Figure 7-95.

Octets: 5	8	2
Available Frequency Range	Channel Availability Starting Time	Valid Time

Figure 7-95—Channel Timing Information field format

The Available Frequency Range field is defined in Figure 7-91.

The Channel Availability Starting Time field indicates the starting time in Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) from when the channel indicated in the Channel Number field is available for operation. UTC is defined by CCIR Recommendation 460-4.

The Valid Time field indicates the duration of frequency availability as described in 7.4.4.23.

The information in Figure 7-95 may be aggregated to show multiple durations of the channel time scheduling.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.4.4.26 Timestamp IE

The Timestamp IE is shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-96.

Octets: 4
Transmit Timestamp

Figure 7-96—Timestamp IE Content field format

The Transmit Timestamp field shall be set to the time, in units of 10 picoseconds, of the transmitter time reference at the antenna, when the packet containing this IE is transmitted. The timing reference is the RMARKER of the frame, as defined in 6.9.1.

7.4.4.27 Timestamp Difference IE

The Timestamp Difference IE shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-97.

Octets: 4
RX TX Time Difference

Figure 7-97—Timestamp Difference IE Content field format

The RX TX Time Difference field contains the difference in time, in units of 10 picoseconds, from the time the most recent RFRAME was received to the time the frame containing the IE is transmitted. The reference for these time values is the RMARKER.

7.4.4.28 TMCTP Specification IE

The TMCTP Specification IE shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-98

Bits: 0–3	4	5	6	7	8–15	16–23	variable
BOP Order	TMCTP Frame Pending	DBS Allocation Capability	Channel Allocation Capability	Channel Allocation Relay Capability	Hop Count to SPC	Number of PAN IDs Pending	PAN ID List

Figure 7-98—TMCTP Specification IE Content field format

The BOP Order field contains the value *macTmctpExtendedOrder* as an unsigned integer.

The TMCTP Frame Pending field shall be set to one if the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator has more frames for the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator. Otherwise, this field shall be set to zero.

The DBS Allocation Capability field shall be set to one if the device is capable of allocating a DBS to the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator; it shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Channel Allocation Capability field shall be set to one if the device is capable of allocating a dedicated channel to the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator; it shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Channel Allocation Relay Capability field shall be set to one if the device is capable of relaying a DBS request of the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator; it shall be set to zero otherwise.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Hop Count to SPC field indicates the number of hops to reach the SPC.

The Number of PAN IDs Pending field indicates the number of PAN IDs contained in the PAN ID List field of the beacon frame.

The PAN ID List field contains the PAN IDs of the TMCTP-child PAN coordinators that currently have messages pending with the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator.

7.4.4.29 RCC PHY Operating Mode IE

The RCC PHY Operating Mode IE Content field shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-99.

Bits: 0–13	14–18	19–22	23–25	26–27	28–31
Channel Number	Operating Band	PHY/Modulation	Chip Rate	Spreading Sequence	Reserved

Figure 7-99—RCC PHY Operating Mode IE Content field format

The Channel Number field contains a valid channel number for an RCC PHY, as defined in 10.1.2.11.

The Operating Band field shall be set to the current operating band where the bands are defined as the integers greater than zero that correspond to the bit numbers given in Table 7-12.

The PHY/Modulation field shall be set to the current PHY and modulation where the value corresponds to the bit number given in Table 7-13.

The Chip Rate field is valid for LMR PHY and is reserved otherwise. Valid values for the Chip Rate field are given in Table 7-47.

Table 7-47—Chip Rate field values

Field value	Definition
0	300 kchip/s
1	600 kchip/s
2	800 kchip/s
3	1 Mchips/s
4	1.6 Mchips/s
5	2 Mchips/s
6	3 Mchips/s
7	4 Mchips/s

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Spreading Sequence field is valid for LMR PHY is reserved otherwise. Valid value for the Spreading Sequence field are given in Table 7-48.

Table 7-48—Spreading Sequence field values

Field value	Definition
0	11-chip
1	15-chip
2	20-chip
3	40-chip

7.4.4.30 Vendor Specific Nested IE

The Vendor Specific Nested IE is reserved for the use of other protocols and/or data relevant only to certain implementations. The Vendor Specific Nested IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-100.

Octets: 3	Variable
Vendor OUI	Vendor Specific Information

Figure 7-100—Vendor Specific Nested IE Content field format

The Vendor OUI field is is defined in 7.4.2.2. A value of the Vendor OUI field not understood by a receiving device causes the remainder of this IE to be ignored.

The Vendor Specific Information field is defined by the vendor identified in the Vendor OUI field. Its use is outside of the scope of this standard.

7.4.4.31 Channel hopping IE

The Channel Hopping IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-101. The Channel Hopping IE may be sent with only the Hopping Sequence ID field to reduce the size of the beacon. Otherwise, all the fields are included.

Octets: 1	0/1	0/2	0/4	0/variable	0/2	0/variable	0/2
Hopping Sequence ID	Channel Page	Number of Channels	PHY Configuration	Extended Bitmap	Hopping Sequence Length	Hopping Sequence	Current Hop

Figure 7-101—Channel Hopping Timing IE Content field format

The Hopping Sequence ID field shall be set equal to the value of *macHoppingSequenceId*.

The Channel Page field is shall be set equal to the value of *macChannelPage*.

The Number of Channels field shall be set equal to the value of *macNumberofChannels*.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The PHY Configuration shall be set to *macPhyConfiguration*.

The Extended Bitmap field is valid only for channel pages 9 and 10. The Extended Bitmap field contains *macExtendedBitmap* which is a bitmap in which a bit is set to one if a channel is to be used and is set to zero otherwise. For channel pages 9 and 10, the Extended Bitmap field is *macNumberOfChannels* bits long, with additional bits added to make it an integer number of octets. For all other values of the Channel Page field, it is zero length.

The Hopping Sequence Length field shall be set to the number of channels in the Hopping Sequence field.

The Hopping Sequence field is a set of unsigned integers, each two octets in length, that contains a channel number in the hopping sequence.

The Current Hop field shall be set to the index of the current position in the hopping sequence list.

7.5 MAC commands

7.5.1 Command ID field

The MAC commands are listed in Table 7-49 along with their associated command ID. All FFDs shall be capable of transmitting and receiving all MAC command with Comamnd ID field of values 0x01–0x08. The requirements for an RFD are indicated by an “X” in the table. An FFD supporting one of TRLE, DSME, RIT or DBS options shall support the associated MAC commands as identified by the associated functional group prefix, e.g., “DSME” for the DSME option.

Table 7-49—MAC commands

Command ID	Command name	RFD		Subclause
		TX	RX	
0x01	Association Request command	X		7.5.2
0x02	Association Response command		X	7.5.3
0x03	Disassociation Notification command	X	X	7.5.4
0x04	Data Request command	X		7.5.5
0x05	PAN ID Conflict Notification command	X		7.5.6
0x06	Orphan Notification command	X		7.5.7
0x07	Beacon Request command			7.5.8
0x08	Coordinator realignment command		X	7.5.10
0x09	GTS request command			7.5.11
0x0a	TRLE Management Request command			F.5.2.1
0x0b	TRLE Management Response command			F.5.2.2
0x0c–0x12	Reserved			
0x13	DSME Association Request command			7.5.12
0x14	DSME Association Response command			7.5.13

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 7-49—MAC commands *(continued)*

Command ID	Command name	RFD		Subclause
		TX	RX	
0x15	DSME GTS Request command			7.5.14
0x16	DSME GTS Response command			7.5.15
0x17	DSME GTS Notify command			7.5.16
0x18	DSME Information Request command			7.5.17
0x19	DSME Information Response command			7.5.18
0x1a	DSME Beacon Allocation Notification command			7.5.19
0x1b	DSME Beacon Collision Notification command			7.5.20
0x1c	DSME Link Report command			7.5.21
0x1d–0x1f	Reserved			
0x20	RIT Data Request command			7.5.22
0x21	DBS Request command			7.5.23
0x22	DBS Response command			7.5.24
0x23	RIT Data Response command			7.5.25
0x24	Vendor Specific command			7.5.26
0x25–0xff	Reserved			—

7.5.2 Association Request command

This command shall only be sent by an unassociated device that wishes to associate with a PAN. A device shall only associate with a PAN through the PAN coordinator or a coordinator allowing association, as determined through the scan procedure.

All devices, except for RFD-RX and RFD-TX devices, shall be capable of transmitting this command, although an RFD is not required to be capable of receiving it.

The Source Addressing Mode field shall be set to indicate extended addressing. The Destination Addressing Mode field shall be set to the same mode as indicated in the Beacon frame to which the Association Request command refers.

The Frame Pending field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and the AR field shall be set to one.

The Destination PAN ID field shall contain the identifier of the PAN to which to associate. The Destination Address field shall contain the address from the Beacon frame that was transmitted by the coordinator to which the Association Request command is being sent. If the Version field is set to 0b10, the Source PAN ID field is omitted, otherwise the Source PAN ID field shall contain the broadcast PAN ID. The Source Address field shall contain the value of *macExtendedAddress*.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Association Request command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-102.

Octets: 1
Capability Information

Figure 7-102—Association Request command Content field format

The Capability Information field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-103.

Bits: 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Reserved	Device Type	Power Source	Receiver On When Idle	Association Type	Reserved	Security Capability	Allocate Address

Figure 7-103—Capability Information field format

The Device Type field shall be set to one if the device is an FFD. Otherwise, the Device Type field shall be set to zero to indicate an RFD.

The Power Source field shall be set to one if the device is receiving power from the alternating current mains. Otherwise, the Power Source field shall be set to zero.

The Receiver On When Idle field shall be set to one if the device does not disable its receiver to conserve power during idle periods. Otherwise, the Receiver On When Idle field shall be set to zero.

The Security Capability field shall be set to one if the device is capable of sending and receiving cryptographically protected MAC frames as specified in 9.2; it shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Allocate Address field shall be set to one if the device wishes the coordinator to allocate a short address as a result of the association procedure. Otherwise, it shall be set to zero.

The Association Type field shall be set to one if the device requests fast association and zero otherwise.

7.5.3 Association Response command

This command shall only be sent by the PAN coordinator or coordinator to a device that is currently trying to associate.

All devices, except for RFD-RX and RFD-TX devices, shall be capable of receiving this command, although an RFD is not required to be capable of transmitting it.

The Destination Addressing Mode and Source Addressing Mode fields shall each be set to indicate extended addressing.

The Frame Pending field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and the AR field shall be set to one.

The Destination PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, while the Source PAN ID field shall be omitted. The Destination Address field shall contain the extended address of the device requesting association. The Source Address field shall contain the value of *macExtendedAddress*. The PAN ID Compression field shall be set as specified in 7.2.1.5.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Association Response command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-104.

Octets: 2	1
Short Address	Association Status

Figure 7-104—Association Response command Content field format

If the coordinator was not able to associate the device to its PAN, the Short Address field shall be set to 0xffff, and the Association Status field shall contain the reason for the failure. If the coordinator was able to associate the device to its PAN, this field shall contain the short address that the device may use in its communications on the PAN until it is disassociated.

A Short Address field value equal to 0xfffe shall indicate that the device has been successfully associated with a PAN but has not been allocated a short address. In this case, the device shall communicate on the PAN using only its extended address.

Valid values of the Association Status field are defined in Table 7-50.

Table 7-50—Valid values of the Association Status field

Association status	Description
0x00	Association successful.
0x01	PAN at capacity.
0x02	PAN access denied.
0x03	Hopping sequence offset duplication
0x04–0x7f	Reserved.
0x80	Fast association successful.
0x81–0xff	Reserved.

7.5.4 Disassociation Notification command

The PAN coordinator, a coordinator, or an associated device may send the Disassociate Notification command.

All devices, except for RFD-RX and RFD-TX devices, shall implement this command.

The Destination Addressing Mode field shall be set according to the addressing mode specified by the corresponding primitive. The Source Addressing Mode field shall be set to indicate extended addressing.

The Frame Pending field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and the AR field shall be set to one.

The Destination PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*. The Source PAN ID field shall be omitted. If the coordinator is disassociating a device from the PAN, then the Destination Address field shall contain the address of the device being removed from the PAN. If an associated device is disassociating from the PAN, then the Destination Address field shall contain the value of either *macCoordShortAddress*, if the Destination Addressing Mode field is set to indicated short addressing, or *macCoordExtendedAddress*,

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

if the Destination Addressing Mode field is set to indicated extended addressing. The Source Address field shall contain the value of *macExtendedAddress*. The PAN ID Compression field shall be set as specified in 7.2.1.5.

The Disassociation Notification command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-105.

Octets: 1
Disassociation Reason

Figure 7-105—Disassociation Notification command Content field format

Valid values of the Disassociation Reason field are defined in Table 7-51.

Table 7-51—Valid disassociation reason codes

Disassociate reason	Description
0x00	Reserved.
0x01	The coordinator wishes the device to leave the PAN.
0x02	The device wishes to leave the PAN.
0x03–0xff	Reserved.

7.5.5 Data Request command

There are three cases for which this command is sent. On a beacon-enabled PAN, this command shall be sent by a device when *macAutoRequest* is equal to TRUE and a Beacon frame indicating that data are pending for that device is received from its coordinator. The coordinator indicates pending data in its Beacon frame by adding the address of the recipient of the data to the Address List field. This command shall also be sent when instructed to do so by the next higher layer on reception of the MLME-POLL.request primitive. In addition, a device may send this command to the coordinator *macResponseWaitTime* after the acknowledgment to an Association Request command.

All devices, except for RFD-TX devices, shall be capable of transmitting this command, although an RFD is not required to be capable of receiving it.

The Data Request command has a zero-length Content field.

If the Data Request command is being sent in response to the receipt of a Beacon frame indicating that data are pending for that device, the Destination Addressing Mode field may be set to indicate that destination addressing information is not present if the Beacon frame indicated in its Superframe Specification field, as defined in 7.3.1.3, that it originated from the PAN coordinator, as defined in 7.2.1.8, or set otherwise according to the coordinator to which the Data Request command is directed. If the destination addressing information is to be included, the Destination Addressing Mode field shall be set according to the value of *macCoordShortAddress*. If *macCoordShortAddress* is equal to 0xfffe, the Destination Addressing Mode field shall be set to indicate extended addressing, and the Destination Address field shall contain the value of *macCoordExtendedAddress*. Otherwise, the Destination Addressing Mode field shall be set to indicate short addressing and the Destination Address field shall contain the value of *macCoordShortAddress*.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

If the Data Request command is being sent in response to the receipt of a Beacon frame indicating that data are pending for that device, the Source Addressing Mode field shall be set according to the addressing mode used for the pending address. If the Source Addressing Mode field is set to indicate short addressing, the Source Address field shall contain the value of *macShortAddress*. Otherwise, the Source Addressing Mode field shall be set to indicate extended addressing and the Source Address field shall contain the value of *macExtendedAddress*.

If the Data Request command is triggered by the reception of an MLME-POLL.request primitive from the next higher layer, then the destination addressing information shall be the same as that contained in the primitive. The Source Addressing Mode field shall be set according to the value of *macShortAddress*. If *macShortAddress* is less than 0xfffe, short addressing shall be used. Extended addressing shall be used otherwise.

If the Data Request command is being sent following the acknowledgment to an Association Request command, the Destination Addressing Mode field shall be set according to the coordinator to which the Data Request command is directed. If *macCoordShortAddress* is equal to 0xfffe, extended addressing shall be used. Short addressing shall be used otherwise. The Source Addressing Mode field shall be set to use extended addressing.

If the Destination Addressing Mode field is set to indicate that destination addressing information is not present, the source PAN ID shall contain the value of *macPanId*. Otherwise, the Destination PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, while the Source PAN ID field shall be omitted. The PAN ID Compression field shall be set as specified in 7.2.1.5.

The Frame Pending field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and the AR field shall be set to one.

7.5.6 PAN ID Conflict Notification command

All devices, except for RFD-RX and RFD-TX devices, shall be capable of transmitting this command, although an RFD is not required to be capable of receiving it.

The PAN ID Conflict Notification command has no Content field.

The Destination Addressing Mode and Source Addressing Mode fields shall both be set to indicate extended addressing.

The Frame Pending field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and the AR field shall be set to one.

The Destination PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, while the Source PAN ID field shall be omitted. The Destination Address field shall contain the value of *macCoordExtendedAddress*. The Source Address field shall contain the value of *macExtendedAddress*. The PAN ID Compression field shall be set as specified in 7.2.1.5.

7.5.7 Orphan Notification command

All devices, except for RFD-RX and RFD-TX devices, shall be capable of transmitting this command, although an RFD is not required to be capable of receiving it.

The Orphan Notification command has no Content field.

The Source Addressing Mode field shall be set to indicate extended addressing. The Destination Addressing Mode field shall be set to indicate short addressing.

The Frame Pending field and AR field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Destination PAN ID field shall contain the value of the broadcast PAN ID, while the Source PAN ID field shall be omitted. The Destination Address field shall contain the broadcast short address. The Source Address field shall contain the value of *macExtendedAddress*. The PAN ID Compression field shall be set as specified in 7.2.1.5.

7.5.8 Beacon Request command

This command is optional for an RFD.

The Beacon Request command has no Content field.

The Destination Addressing Mode field shall be set to indicate short addressing, and the Source Addressing Mode field shall be set to indicate that the source addressing information is not present.

The Frame Pending field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception. The AR field and Security Enabled field shall also be set to zero.

The Destination PAN ID field shall contain the broadcast PAN ID. The Destination Address field shall contain the broadcast short address.

7.5.9 Enhanced Beacon Request command

The Enhanced Beacon Request command is a Beacon Request command with a Frame Version field set to 0b10.

The Enhanced Beacon Request command is optional for an FFD and an RFD.

The Enhanced Beacon Request command has no Content field.

The Enhanced Beacon Request command may contain an Enhanced Beacon Filter IE, as defined in 7.4.4.6, and/or a set of IE IDs. The Enhanced Beacon Filter allows a device to request Enhanced Beacon frames, as described in 6.3.4.

The Frame Pending field of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception.

The AR field shall be set to zero. If the Enhanced Beacon Request command is being sent on a particular PAN ID that is not the broadcast PAN ID, the Security Enable field may be set to one, otherwise it shall be set to zero.

The Destination PAN ID field, if present, shall contain either a specific PAN ID or a broadcast PAN ID if *macImplicitBroadcast* is FALSE.

Frames intended for all coordinators shall set the Destination Address field to the broadcast short address. Frames intended for a specific coordinator shall set the Destination Address field to the coordinator’s short address.

7.5.10 Coordinator realignment command

All devices, except for RFD-RX and RFD-TX devices, shall be capable of receiving this command, although an RFD is not required to be capable of transmitting it.

The Destination Addressing Mode field shall be set to indicate extended addressing if the command is directed to an orphaned device or set to indicate short addressing if it is to be broadcast to the PAN. The Source Addressing Mode field shall be set to indicate extended addressing.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Frame Pending field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception.

The AR field shall be set to one if the command is directed to an orphaned device or set to zero if the command is to be broadcast to the PAN.

The Frame Version field shall be set to 0x01 if the Channel Page field is present.

The Destination PAN ID field when present shall contain the broadcast PAN ID. The Destination Address field shall contain the extended address of the orphaned device if the command is directed to an orphaned device. Otherwise, the Destination Address field shall contain the broadcast short address. The Source PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, and the Source Address field shall contain the value of *macExtendedAddress*.

The Coordinator Realignment command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-106.

Octets: 2	**2**	**1**	**2**	**Bits: 0–6**	**7**
PAN ID	Coordinator Short Address	Channel Number	Short Address	Channel Page/ Channel Number	Page/Number

Figure 7-106—Coordinator Realignment command Content field format

The PAN ID field shall contain the PAN ID that the coordinator intends to use for all future communications.

The Coordinator Short Address field shall contain the value of *macShortAddress*.

The Channel Page/Channel Number field and Page/Number field may omitted from the Coordinator Realignment command. The Length field of the Coordinator Realignment command is used to determine if these fields are present.

The Page/Number field indicates the contents of the Channel Page/Channel Number field.

If the Page/Number field is set to zero, the Channel Page/Channel Number field shall contain the channel page that the coordinator intends to use for all future communications. This field may be omitted if the new channel page is the same as the previous channel page. The Channel Number field shall contain the channel number that the coordinator intends to use for all future communications.

If the Page/Number field is set to one, the Channel Page/Channel Number field shall be used for the most significant bits of the channel number and the Channel Number field shall contain the least significant bits of the channel number.

For example, in the case that the Channel Page/Channel Number field contains 0x1E and the Channel Number field contains 0xad, then if the Page/Number field is set to zero, then the channel page is 0x1e and the channel number is 0xad. If the Page/Number field is set to one, then the channel page is unchanged and the channel number is 0x1ead.

If the coordinator realignment command is broadcast to the PAN, the Short Address field shall be set to 0xffff and ignored on reception. If the coordinator realignment command is sent directly to an orphaned device, the Short Address field shall contain the short address that the orphaned device shall use to operate on the PAN. If the orphaned device does not have a short address, because it always uses its extended address, this field shall contain the value 0xfffe.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.5.11 GTS request command

Only devices that have been assigned a short address shall send GTS Request command. This command is optional.

The Destination Addressing Mode field shall be set to indicate that destination addressing information is not present, and the Source Addressing Mode field shall be set to indicate short addressing.

The Frame Pending field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and the AR field shall be set to one.

The Source PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, and the Source Address field shall contain the value of *macShortAddress*.

The GTS Request command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-107.

Octets: 1
GTS Characteristics

Figure 7-107—GTS Request command Content field format

The GTS Characteristics field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-108.

Bits: 0–3	**4**	**5**	**6–7**
GTS Length	GTS Direction	Characteristics Type	Reserved

Figure 7-108—GTS Characteristics field format

The GTS Length field shall contain the number of superframe slots being requested for the GTS.

The GTS Direction field shall be set to one if the GTS is to be a receive-only GTS. Conversely, this field shall be set to zero if the GTS is to be a transmit-only GTS. GTS direction is defined relative to the direction of Data frame transmissions by the device.

The Characteristics Type field shall be set to one if the characteristics refer to a GTS allocation or zero if the characteristics refer to a GTS deallocation.

7.5.12 DSME Association Request command

This command shall only be sent by an unassociated device that wishes to associate with a PAN. A device shall only associate with a PAN through the PAN coordinator or a coordinator allowing association, as determined through the scan procedure.

The Source Addressing Mode field of the Frame Control field shall be set to indicate extended addressing. The Destination Addressing Mode field shall be set to the same mode as indicated in the Beacon frame to which the DSME Association Request command refers.

The Frame Pending field of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and the AR field shall be set to one.

The Destination PAN ID field shall contain the identifier of the PAN to which to associate. The Destination Address field shall contain the address from the Beacon frame that was transmitted by the coordinator to

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

which the DSME Association Request command is being sent. The Source PAN ID field shall contain the broadcast PAN ID. The Source Address field shall contain the value of *macExtendedAddress*. The PAN ID Compression field shall be set as specified in 7.2.1.5.

The DSME Association Request command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-109.

Octets: 1	**1**	**2**	**0/1**
Capability Information	Hopping Sequence ID	Channel Offset	Extended DSME GTS Allocation

Figure 7-109—DSME Association Request command Content field format

The Capability Information field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-110.

Bits: 0	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**
Reserved	Device Type	Power Source	Receiver On When Idle	DSME Association Type	Reserved	Security Capability	Allocate Address

Figure 7-110—Capability Information field format

The Device Type field, Power Source field, Receiver On When Idle field, Security Capability field, and Allocate Address field are described in 5.3.1.2.

The DSME Association Type field shall be set to one if a device requests assignment of a DSME GTS by a coordinator during association. Otherwise, the DSME Association Type field shall be set to zero.

The Hopping Sequence ID field shall indicate the ID of channel hopping sequence in use. The Hopping Sequence ID of zero indicates that a default hopping sequence shall be used. The HoppingSequenceId of one indicates that a hopping sequence generated by PAN coordinator shall be used. The other value of the Hopping Sequence ID denotes the sequence set by a higher layer shall be used. A device is requesting a channel hopping sequence to its coordinator if the Hopping Sequence ID is one.

The Channel Offset field shall be set to the offset value of the unassociated device that wished to associate with a PAN, this value is specified by the next higher layer.

The Extended DSME GTS Allocation field shall be present if *macExtendedDsmeEnabled* is TRUE and the value of the DSME Association Type field is one. This field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-111.

Bits: 0	**1–4**	**5–7**
Direction	Allocation Order	Reserved

Figure 7-111—Extended DSME GTS Allocation field format

The Direction field specifies the direction of the DSME GTSs, which is relative to the data flow from the requesting device. The direction is specified as either transmit or receive. The value of this field shall be set to zero if the allocation is for transmission. The value shall be set to one if the allocation is for reception.

The Allocation Order field is described in 7.5.13.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

7.5.13 DSME Association Response command

This command shall only be sent by an unassociated device that wishes to associate with a PAN. A device shall only associate with a PAN through the PAN coordinator or a coordinator allowing association, as determined through the scan procedure.

The Destination Addressing Mode and Source Addressing Mode fields of the Frame Control field shall each be set to indicate extended addressing.

The Frame Pending field of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and the AR field shall be set to one.

The Destination PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, while the Source PAN ID field shall be omitted. The Destination Address field shall contain the extended address of the device requesting association. The Source Address field shall contain the value of *macExtendedAddress*. The PAN ID Compression field shall be set as specified in 7.2.1.5.

The DSME Association Response command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-112.

Octets: 2	**1**	**0/1**	**variable**	**0/1**	**0/1**	**0/2**	**0/1**	**0/2**
Short Address	Association Status	Hopping Sequence Length	Hopping Sequence	Allocation Order	BI Index	Superframe ID	Slot ID	Channel Index

Figure 7-112—DSME Association Response command Content field format

If the coordinator was not able to associate this device to its PAN, the Short Address field shall be set to 0xffff, and the Association Status field shall contain the reason for the failure. If the coordinator was able to associate the device to its PAN, this field shall contain the short address that the device may use in its communications on the PAN until it is disassociated.

A Short Address field value equal to 0xfffe shall indicate that the device has been successfully associated with a PAN, but has not been allocated a short address. In this case, the device shall communicate on the PAN using only its 64-bit extended address.

The Association Status field shall contain one of the nonreserved values listed in Table 7-50.

The Hopping Sequence Length field shall specify the length of the Hopping Sequence used in the PAN if the PAN runs in both beacon-enabled mode and channel hopping mode. When the value of HoppingSequenceId is other than one or DsmeAssociation is one, this field shall be set to zero. The Hopping Sequence field shall be present only if the value of the Hopping Sequence Length field is not zero.

The Hopping Sequence field shall contain the current value of *macHoppingSequenceList*. The size of the Hopping Sequence field is defined by the Hopping Sequence Length field and the Hopping Sequence field contains the current value of *macHoppingSequenceList*. This field shall be present only if the PAN runs in both beacon-enabled mode and channel hopping mode and the value of the Hopping Sequence Length field is not zero.

The Allocation Order field shall be present if *macExtendedDsmeEnabled* is TRUE and the DsmeAssociation parameter of the device requesting association is set to one. This field shall indicate the DSME GTS allocation interval and be set to the value of AllocationOrder, AO, of the device requesting association. The value of AO and the DSME GTS allocation interval are related as follows:

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

$$\text{DSME-GTS allocation interval} = \text{BI} \times 2^{(\text{MO} - \text{BO})} / 2^{\text{AO}} \text{ for MO} > \text{BO}$$

If $\text{MO} \le \text{BO}$, the DSME GTS allocation interval is the same as an MD.

The BI Index field shall be present if *macExtendedDsmeEnabled* is TRUE and the DsmeAssociation parameter of the device requesting association is set to one. This field shall contain the index of the beacon interval *macBiIndex*, BI, in which the DSME GTS needs to be allocated. The BI Index is the sequence number of the BI in a multi-superframe beginning from zero.

A device can locate the value of BI Index in which the DSME Associate response command is received by using the value of *macPanCoordinatorBsn* as follows:

$$\text{BI Index} = \textit{macPanCoordinatorBsn} \ \% \ 2^{(\text{MO-BO})}$$

The Superframe ID field shall be present if *macExtendedDsmeEnabled* is TRUE and the DsmeAssociation parameter of the device requesting association is set to one. This field shall contain the index of the superframe in which the DSME GTS needs to be allocated. The Superframe ID is the sequence number of the superframe in a multi-superframe beginning from zero. The superframe in which the PAN coordinator sends its beacons serves as the reference point (Superframe ID 0). An example of superframe IDs is illustrated in Figure 6-54.

The Slot ID field shall be present if *macExtendedDsmeEnabled* is TRUE and the DsmeAssociation parameter of the device requesting association is set to one. This field shall contain the index of the DSME GTS to be allocated. The slot ID is the sequence number of the DSME GTS in a superframe beginning from zero. An example of slot IDs is illustrated in Figure 6-54.

The Channel Index field shall be present if *macExtendedDsmeEnabled* is TRUE and the DsmeAssociation parameter of the device requesting association is set to one. This field shall contain the channel number of the DSME GTS to be allocated.

7.5.14 DSME GTS Request command

Only devices that have been assigned a short address shall send this command in the CAP.

The Destination Addressing Mode and the Source Addressing Mode fields of the Frame Control field shall both be set to indicates short addressing.

The Frame Pending field of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and the AR field shall be set to one.

The Source PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, and the Source Address field shall contain the value of *macShortAddress*.

The Destination PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, and the Destination Address field shall be set to the short address of the destination device.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The DSME GTS Request command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-113.

Octets: 1	0/1	0/2	0/1	Variable	0/1
DSME GTS Management	Number of Slots	Preferred Superframe	Preferred Slot ID	DSME SAB Specification	Allocation Order

Figure 7-113—DSME GTS Request command Content field format

The DSME GTS Management field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-114.

Bits: 0–2	3	4	5–7
Management Type	Direction	Prioritized Channel Access	Reserved

Figure 7-114—DSME GTS Management field format

The Management Type field shall be set to one of the nonreserved values listed in Table 7-52.

Table 7-52—Values of the Management Type field

Management Type value (b2 b1 b0)	Description
000	Deallocation
001	Allocation
010	Duplicated allocation notification
011	Reduce
100	Restart
101	DSME GTS expiration
110–111	Reserved

The Direction field shall indicate the DSME GTSs are being allocated for TX or for RX of the requesting device. The value of this field is set to zero if the allocation is for TX. The value of this field is set to one if the allocation is for RX. This field is ignored if the management type is not allocation.

The Prioritized Channel Access field shall be set to one if DSME GTS should be reserved as high priority, or set to zero if DSME GTS should be reserved as low priority. When the DSME GTS request command is used in the DSME GTS change procedure, the Prioritized Channel Access shall be set according to the original DSME GTS.

The number of slots field shall contain the number DSME GTSs that this command is requesting. This field is valid only if the management type is allocation.

The Preferred Superframe ID field shall contain the index of the preferred superframe in which the DSME GTSs need be allocated. The superframe ID is the sequence number of the superframe in a multi-superframe beginning from zero. The superframe in which the PAN coordinator sends its beacons serves as the reference point (Superframe ID 0). An example of superframe IDs are illustrated in Figure 6-50. This field is valid only if the management type is allocation.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Preferred slot ID shall contain the index of the preferred slot from which the DSME GTSs need to be allocated. The slot ID is the sequence number of the DSME GTSs (not including beacon or CAP slots) in a superframe beginning from zero. An example of slot IDs are illustrated in Figure 6-50. This field is valid only if the management type is allocation.

The DSME SAB Specification field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-115.

Octets: 1	2	variable
DSME SAB Sub-block Length	DSME SAB Sub-block Index	DSME SAB Sub-block

Figure 7-115—DSME SAB Specification field format

The DSME SAB Sub-block Length field shall contain the length of the DSME SAB sub-block in units defined in Figure 6-53 for channel adaptation mode or in Figure 6-55 for channel hopping mode.

The DSME SAB Sub-block Index field shall indicate the beginning of the DSME SAB sub-block in the entire SAB as illustrated in Figure 6-53 for channel adaptation mode or in Figure 6-55 for channel hopping mode.

The DSME SAB sub-block shall contain the sub-block of the DSME Slot Allocation Bitmap as described in Figure 6-53 for channel adaptation mode or in Figure 6-55 for channel hopping mode. However, the meaning of zeros and ones in the DSME SAB sub-block has different meaning from the descriptions in those figures if the management type is not allocation. If the management type is allocation, the ones in the DSME SAB Sub-block field indicate readily allocated or unavailable slots and the zeros indicate vacant and available slots. If the management type is not allocation, the ones in the DSME SAB Sub-block field indicate the slots that are being requested for deallocation, duplicated allocation notification, reduce, or restart.

The Allocation Order field shall be present if *macExtendedDsmeEnabled* is TRUE. This field shall indicate the DSME GTS allocation interval and be set to the value of AllocationOrder of the device requesting a DSME GTS. The relationship between the value of this field and the DSME GTS allocation interval is described in 7.5.13.

7.5.15 DSME GTS Response command

Only devices that have been assigned a short address shall send this command in the CAP.

The Destination Addressing Mode and the Source Addressing Mode fields of the Frame Control field shall both be set to indicate short addressing.

The Frame Pending field of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and the AR field shall be set to one.

The Source PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, and the Source Address field shall contain the value of *macShortAddress*.

The Destination PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, and the Destination Address field shall be set to the broadcast PAN ID.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The DSME GTS Response command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-116.

Octets: 1	2	0/2	variable	0/1	0/1	0/2	0/1	0/2
DSME GTS Management	Destination Address	Channel Offset	DSME SAB Specification	Allocation Order	BI Index	Superframe ID	Slot ID	Channel Index

Figure 7-116—DSME GTS Response command Content field format

The DSME GTS Management field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-117.

Bits: 0–2	3	4	5–7
Management Type	Direction	Prioritized Channel Access	Status

Figure 7-117—DSME GTS Management field format

The Management Type field shall be set to one of the nonreserved values listed in Table 7-52.

The Direction field shall indicate the DSME GTSs are being allocated for TX or for RX of the requesting device. The value of this field is set to 0 if the allocation is for TX. The value of this field is set to one if the allocation is for RX. This field is ignored if the management type is not allocation.

The Prioritized Channel Access field shall be set to one if DSME GTS should be reserved as high priority, or set to zero if DSME GTS should be reserved as low priority. When the DSME GTS request command is used in the DSME GTS change procedure, the Prioritized Channel Access shall be set according to the original DSME GTS.

The Status field indicates the result of a request. Valid values of the Status field are given in Table 7-53.

Table 7-53—Status field values

Status (b0 b1 b2)	Description
000	Approved
001	Disapproved: lack of availability
010	Disapproved, unknown GTS
011–111	Reserved

The DSME GTS Destination Address field shall contain the short address of the destination device.

The Channel Offset field shall contain the channel offset of the RX device of the allocated DSME GTSs. This field is not valid in the channel adaptation mode.

The DSME SAB Specification field is defined in 7.5.14.

The Allocation Order field shall be present if *macExtendedDsmeEnabled* is TRUE. This field shall indicate the DSME GTS allocation interval and be set to the value of AllocationOrder of the device requesting a DSME GTS. The relationship between the value of this field and the DSME GTS allocation interval is described in 7.5.13.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The BI Index field shall be present if *macExtendedDsmeEnabled* is TRUE. This field shall contain the index of the beacon interval *macBiIndex*, BI, in which the DSME GTS needs to be allocated. The BI Index is the sequence number of the BI in a multi-superframe beginning from zero.

The Superframe ID field shall be present if *macExtendedDsmeEnabled* is TRUE. This field shall contain the index of the superframe in which the DSME GTS is to be allocated. The Superframe ID is the sequence number of the superframe in a multi-superframe beginning from zero. The superframe in which the PAN coordinator sends its beacons serves as the reference point (Superframe ID 0).

The Slot ID field shall be present if *macExtendedDsmeEnabled* is TRUE. This field shall contain the index of the DSME GTS to be allocated. The Slot ID is the sequence number of the DSME GTS in a superframe beginning from zero.

The Channel Index field shall be present if *macExtendedDsmeEnabled* is TRUE. This field shall contain the channel number of the DSME GTS to be allocated.

7.5.16 DSME GTS Notify command

Only devices that have been assigned a short address shall send this command in the CAP.

The Destination Addressing Mode and the Source Addressing Mode fields of the Frame Control field shall both be set to indicate short addressing.

The Frame Pending field of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and the AR field shall be set to one.

The Source PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, and the Source Address field shall contain the value of *macShortAddress*.

The Destination PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, and the Destination Address field shall be set to broadcast PAN ID.

The DSME GTS Notify command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-118.

Octets: 1	**2**	**0/2**	**variable**
DSME GTS Management	Destination Address	Channel Offset	DSME SAB Specification

Figure 7-118—DSME GTS Notify command Content field format

The DSME GTS Management field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-117.

The Management Type field shall be set to one of the nonreserved values listed in Table 7-52.

The Direction field shall indicate the DSME GTSs are being allocated for TX or for RX of the requesting device. The value of this field is set to zero if the allocation is for TX. The value of this field is set to one if the allocation is for RX. This field is ignored if the management type is not allocation.

The Prioritized Channel Access field shall be set to one if DSME GTS should be reserved as high priority, or set to zero if DSME GTS should be reserved as low priority. When the DSME GTS request command is used in the DSME GTS change procedure, the Prioritized Channel Access shall be set according to the original DSME GTS.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Status field indicates the result of a DSME GTS request. Valid values of the Status field are given in Table 7-53.

The DSME GTS Destination Address shall contain the short address of the Destination device.

The Channel Offset field shall contain the channel offset of the RX device of the allocated DSME GTSs. This field is not valid in the channel adaptation mode.

The DSME SAB Specification field is defined in 7.5.14.

7.5.17 DSME Information Request command

The DSME Information Request command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-119.

Octets: 1	**1**	**2**
Info type	DSME SAB sub-block length	DSME SAB sub-block index

Figure 7-119—DSME Information Request command Content field format

The Info Type field indicates the type of DSME information that are requested by the device. Valid values of the Info Type field are given in Table 7-54.

Table 7-54—Info Type field values

Info Type value	Information requested
0	Timestamp
1	DSME SAB Specification
2	DSME PAN descriptor
3–255	Reserved

The DSME SAB Sub-block Length field shall contain the length of the DSME SAB sub-block in units defined in Figure 6-53 for channel adaptation mode or in Figure 6-55 for channel hopping mode. This field is valid only if the value of the Info type field is set to request the DSME SAB specification.

The DSME SAB Sub-block Index field shall indicate the beginning of the DSME SAB Sub-block in the entire SAB as illustrated in Figure 6-53 for channel adaptation mode or in Figure 6-55 for channel hopping mode. This field is valid only if the value of the Info Type field is set to request the DSME SAB specification.

7.5.18 DSME Information Response command

The DSME Information Response command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-120.

Octets: 1	**6**	**2**	**1**	**variable**	**variable**
Info Type	Timestamp	Superframe ID	Slot ID	DSME SAB Specification	DSME PAN Descriptor

Figure 7-120—DSME Information Response command Content field format

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Info Type field indicates the type of DSME information that was requested. Valid value for the Info Type field are given in Table 7-55.

Table 7-55—Info Type field

Info Type value	Fields present
0	Timestamp, Superframe ID, Slot ID
1	DSME SAB Specification
2	DSME PAN Descriptor
3–255	Reserved

The Timestamp field shall contain the time, in symbols, at which this command was transmitted. The time is measured from the first symbol of the most recent beacon transmitted by the coordinator.

The Superframe ID field shall contain the ID of the superframe in which this command will be transmitted. The superframe ID is the sequence number of the superframe in a multi-superframe beginning from zero.

The Slot ID field shall contain the ID of the superframe slot in which this command will be transmitted. The slot ID is the sequence number of the DSME GTSs (not including beacon or CAP slots) in a superframe beginning from zero. This field is valid only if the value of the Info Type field is zero.

The DSME SAB Specification field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-115.

The DSME SAB Sub-block Length field shall contain the length of the DSME SAB sub-block in units defined in Figure 6-55.

The DSME SAB Sub-block Index field shall indicate the beginning of the DSME SAB Sub-block in the entire SAB as illustrated in Figure 6-55.

The DSME SAB sub-block shall contain the sub-block of the DSME Slot Allocation Bitmap as illustrated in Figure 6-55.

The DSME PAN Descriptor field shall be set as described in 7.4.2.5.

7.5.19 DSME Beacon Allocation Notification command

The Destination Addressing Mode and Source Addressing Mode fields of the Frame Control field shall both be set to indicate short addressing.

The Frame Pending field of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and the AR field shall be set to zero.

The Destination PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, while the Source PAN ID field shall be omitted. The Destination Address field shall be set to 0xffff. The Source Address field shall contain the value of *macShortAddress*. The PAN ID Compression field shall be set as specified in 7.2.1.5.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The DSME Beacon Allocation Notification command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-121.

Octets: 2
Allocation Beacon SD Index

Figure 7-121—DSME Beacon Allocation Notification command Content field format

The Allocation Beacon SD Index field shall contain the allocating SD index number for Beacon frame that is allocated to the Source device.

7.5.20 DSME Beacon Collision Notification command

The Destination Addressing Mode and Source Addressing Mode fields of the Frame Control field shall both be set to indicate short addressing.

The Frame Pending field of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and the AR field shall be set to one.

The Destination PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, while the Source PAN ID field shall be omitted. The Destination Address field shall be set to the node address that has requested later. The Source Address field shall contain the value of *macShortAddress*. The PAN ID Compression field shall be set as specified in 7.2.1.5.

The DSME Beacon Collision Notification command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-122.

Octets: 2
Collision SD Index

Figure 7-122—DSME Beacon Collision Notification command Content field format

The Collision SD Index field shall contain the SD index number of collision Beacon frame.

7.5.21 DSME Link Report command

The Source Addressing Mode field of the Frame Control field shall be set to indicate extended addressing, and the Destination Addressing Mode field shall be set to the same mode as the destination device to which the command is sent.

The Frame Pending field of the Frame Control field shall be set to one, and the AR field shall be set to one.

The Destination PAN ID field shall contain the identifier of the PAN of the destination device. The Destination Address field shall contain the address of the destination device.

The Source PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, and the Source Address field shall contain the value of *macShortAddress*.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The DSME Link Report command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-123.

Octets: variable
DSME Link Report

Figure 7-123—DSME Link Report command Content field format

The DSME Link Report field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-124.

Octets: 1	4	…	4
Link Descriptor Count	Link Descriptor 1	…	Link Descriptor *n*

Figure 7-124—DSME Link Report field format

The Link Descriptor Count field specifies the number of the Link Descriptors in the DSME Link Report field.

The Link Descriptor shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-125.

Octets: 1	1	1	1
Channel	Average LQI	Average RSSI	Reserved

Figure 7-125—Link Descriptor field format

The Channel field specifies the channel index reported by the source device.

The Average LQI field contains the average received LQI of the channel specified in Channel field within *macLinkStatisticPeriod* symbols.

The Average RSSI field contains the average received signal power by ED measurement during a period of *macLinkStatisticPeriod* symbols. The Average RSSI measurement shall be performed for each received packet, and the use of the Average RSSI result by the next higher layer is not specified in this standard.

7.5.22 RIT Data Request command

The RIT Data Request command shall only be sent by a device supporting RIT mode. This command is optional and applicable for FFD only.

The Frame Pending field of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and the AR field shall also be set to zero. All other fields shall be set appropriately according to the intended use of the command.

The RIT Data Request command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-126.

Octets: variable
Listen Information/RIT Payload

Figure 7-126—RIT Data Request command Content field format

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

If the Content field is present and the first octet of the Content field is 0xff, then the Content field contains the RIT Payload field. Otherwise, if the Content field is present and the first octets is not 0xff, then Content field contains the List Information field.

The List Information field, when present, shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-127.

Octets: 1	**1**	**2**
Time to First Listen	Number of Repeat Listen	Repeat Listen Interval

Figure 7-127—Format of the Listen Information field

Time to First Listen field is defined in 7.4.2.4. The value 0xff shall not be used for the Time to First Listen field.

The Number of Repeat Listen field is defined in 7.4.2.4.

The Repeat Listen Interval field is defined in 7.4.2.4.

The RIT Payload field shall be included if and only if *macRitRequestPayload* is nonzero length. The RIT Payload field, when present, shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-128.

Octets: 1	**variable**
0xFF	RIT Request Payload

Figure 7-128—Format of the RIT Payload field

The RIT Request Payload field shall be set to the value of *macRitRequestPayload*.

7.5.23 DBS Request command

The Destination Addressing Mode field and Source Addressing Mode field shall be set to indicate short addressing.

The Frame Pending field shall be set to zero. The AR field shall be set to one. the Frame Version field shall be set to two.

The Destination PAN ID field shall contain the PAN ID of the SPC, and the Destination Address field shall contain the address of the SPC. The Source PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*. The network management entity should assure that each PAN coordinator has a unique PAN ID. The Source Address field shall contain the value of *macShortAddress*.

The DBS Request command Content field shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-129.

Octets: 4
DBS Request Information

Figure 7-129—DBS Request command Content field format

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The DBS Request Information field shall be encoded as shown in Figure 7-130.

Bits: 0:15	16:19	20:22	23	24:31
Requester Short Address	DBS Length	Reserved	Characteristics Type	Number of the Descendant

Figure 7-130—DBS Request Information field format

The Requester Short Address field shall be set to the short address of the coordinator requesting a DBS.

The DBS Length field shall contain the number of *aBaseSlotDuration* being requested for a DBS.

The Characteristics Type field shall be set to one if the characteristics refer to a DBS allocation or zero if the characteristics refer to a DBS deallocation.

The Number of the Descendant field indicates the actual or expected number of TMCTP-child PAN coordinators. It may be set to zero if the PAN coordinator is not clear about how many descendants it will have.

7.5.24 DBS Response command

The Destination Addressing Mode field and Source Addressing Mode field shall be set to indicate short addressing.

The Frame Pending field, the AR field, and the Frame Version field shall set to zero, one, and two, respectively.

The Destination PAN ID field shall contain the source PAN ID from the DBS request frame, and the Destination Address field shall contain the source address from the DBS request frame. The Source PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, and the Source Address field shall contain the value of *macShortAddress*.

The DBS Response command Content field shall be formatted as shown in Figure 7-131.

Octets: 10
DBS Response Information

Figure 7-131—DBS Response command Content field format

The DBS Response Information field shall be encoded as shown in Figure 7-132.

Octets: 2	1	1	1	3	1	1
Requester Short Address	Allocated DBS Starting Slot	Allocated DBS Length	Allocated PHY Channel Number	Start Band Edge	Starting PHY Channel ID	Ending PHY Channel ID

Figure 7-132—DBS Response Information field format

The Requester Short Address field shall be set to the short address of the coordinator requesting a DBS.

The Allocated DBS Starting Slot field shall contain the time of first slot of the allocated DBS in the BOP, in units of *aBaseSlotDuration*.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Allocated DBS Length field shall contain the length of the allocated DBS. If the Allocated DBS Length field is equal to zero, it indicates that the DBS slot and the dedicated channel are deallocated.

The Allocated PHY Channel Number field shall contain the channel number that the coordinator intends to use for all future communications.

The Start Band Edge field is the frequency in kilohertz indicating the lower edge of band that the coordinator will use for all future communications.

The Starting PHY Channel ID field shall contain the lowest channel number, which is assigned by the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator, including the SPC.

The Ending PHY Channel ID field shall contain the highest channel number, which is assigned by the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator, including the SPC.

7.5.25 RIT Data Response command

The RIT Data Response command shall only be sent by a device supporting RIT mode.

The Frame Pending field of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception, and the AR field shall also be set to zero. All other fields shall be set appropriately according to the intended use of the command.

The RIT Data Response command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-133.

Octets: variable
RIT Response Payload

Figure 7-133—RIT Data Response command Content field format

The RIT Response Payload field contains RitResponsePayload received in an MLME-RIT-RES.request primitive. The field is passed as received from the higher layer, no octet ordering changes shall be made.

7.5.26 Vendor Specific command

The Vendor Specific command is reserved for the use of other protocols and/or data relevant only to certain implementations. The Vendor Specific command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 7-134.

Octets: 3	Variable
Vendor OUI	Vendor Specific Information

Figure 7-134—Vendor Specific command Content field format

The Vendor OUI field is defined in 7.4.2.2. A value of the Vendor OUI field not understood by a receiving device causes the command to be ignored.

The Vendor Specific Information field is defined by the vendor identified in the Vendor OUI field. Its use is outside of the scope of this standard.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8. MAC services

8.1 Overview

The MAC sublayer provides an interface between the next higher layer and the PHY. The MAC sublayer conceptually includes a management entity called the MLME. This entity provides the service interfaces through which layer management may be invoked. The MLME is also responsible for maintaining a database of managed objects pertaining to the MAC sublayer. This database is referred to as the MAC sublayer PIB.

Figure 8-1 depicts the components and interfaces of the MAC sublayer.

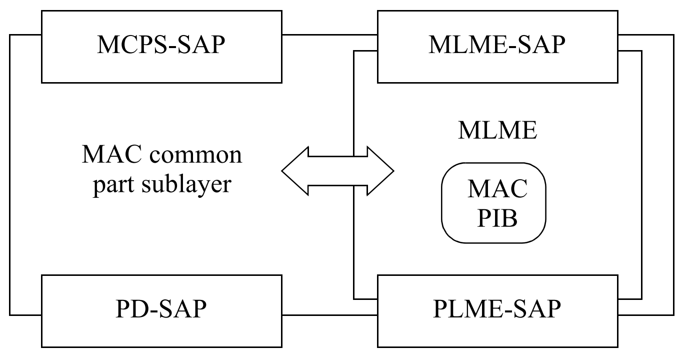


Figure 8-1—MAC sublayer reference model

The MAC sublayer provides two services, accessed through two SAPs:

— The MAC data service, accessed through the MAC common part sublayer (MCPS) data SAP (MCPS-SAP)
— The MAC management service, accessed through the MLME-SAP

These two services provide the interface between the next higher layer and the PHY. In addition to these external interfaces, an implicit interface also exists between the MLME and the MCPS that allows the MLME to use the MAC data service.

8.2 MAC management service

8.2.1 Primitives supported by the MLME-SAP interface

The MLME-SAP allows the transport of management commands between the next higher layer and the MLME. Table 8-1 summarizes the primitives supported by the MLME through the MLME-SAP interface. Primitives marked with a diamond (♦) are optional for an RFD. Primitives marked with an asterisk (*) are optional for both device types (i.e., RFD and FFD). Primitives marked with a circle (●) are optional for both RFD-RX and RFD-TX device types.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-1—Summary of the primitives accessed through the MLME-SAP

Name	Request	Indication	Response	Confirm
MLME-ASSOCIATE	8.2.3.1●	8.2.3.2♦●	8.2.3.3♦●	8.2.3.4●
MLME-BEACON-NOTIFY		8.2.5.1●		
MLME-BEACON	8.2.18.1			8.2.18.2
MLME-CALIBRATE	8.2.17.1*●			8.2.17.2*●
MLME-COMM-STATUS		8.2.5.2		
MLME-DBS	8.2.23.1*	8.2.23.2*	8.2.23.3*	8.2.23.4*
MLME-DA	8.2.24.1*	8.2.24.2*		8.2.24.3*
MLME-DISASSOCIATE	8.2.4.1●	8.2.4.2●		8.2.4.3●
MLME-DPS	8.2.15.1*●	8.2.15.3*●		8.2.15.2*●
MLME-GET	8.2.6.1			8.2.6.2
MLME-GTS	8.2.7.1*●	8.2.7.3*●		8.2.7.2*●
MLME-IE-NOTIFY		8.2.5.3●		
MLME-ORPHAN		8.2.8.1♦●	8.2.8.2♦●	
MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH*	8.2.20	8.2.21		8.2.22.3
MLME-POLL	8.2.14.1●			8.2.14.2●
MLME-RESET	8.2.9.1			8.2.9.2
MLME-RIT-REQ		8.2.25.1*		
MLME-RIT-RES	8.2.25.2*	8.3*		8.2.25.4*
MLME-RX-ENABLE	8.2.10.1*			8.2.10.2*
MLME-SCAN	8.2.11.1●			8.2.11.2●
MLME-SET	8.2.6.3			8.2.6.4
MLME-START	8.2.12.1♦●			8.2.12.2♦●
MLME-SYNC	8.2.13.1*●			
MLME-SYNC-LOSS		8.2.13.2●		
MLME-SOUNDING	8.2.16.1* ●			8.2.16.1*●

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

When the optional TSCH mode is implemented (i.e., *macTschEnabled* = TRUE), the primitives listed in Table 8-2 shall be implemented.

Table 8-2—TSCH primitives

Name	Request	Indication	Response	Confirm
MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME	8.2.19.1	—	—	8.2.19.2
MLME-SET-LINK	8.2.19.3	—	—	8.2.19.4
MLME-TSCH-MODE	8.2.19.5	—	—	8.2.19.6
MLME-KEEP-ALIVE	8.2.19.7	—	—	8.2.19.8

In a DSME-enabled PAN, the primitives listed in in Table 8-3 shall be implemented.

Table 8-3—DSME MLME-SAP primitives

Name	Request	Indication	Response	Confirm
MLME-DSME-GTS	8.2.20.1	8.2.20.2	8.2.20.3	8.2.20.4
MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT	8.2.21.1	8.2.21.2	—	8.2.21.3

8.2.2 Common requirements for MLME primitives

If any error occurs during the outgoing frame security procedure, as described in 9.2.1, for a request primitive, the MLME will discard the frame and issue the corresponding confirm primitive with the error returned by the outgoing frame security procedure.

If any error occurs during the outgoing frame security procedure, as described in 9.2.1, for a response primitive, the MLME will discard the frame and issue the MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication primitive with the error returned by the outgoing frame security procedure.

If any parameter in request primitive is not supported or is out of range, the MAC sublayer will issue the corresponding confirm primitive with a Status of INVALID_PARAMETER.

If any parameter in response primitive is not supported or is out of range, the MAC sublayer will issue the MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication primitive with a Status of INVALID_PARAMETER.

If the MLME is unable to send the frame required by a request primitive due to a CSMA-CA algorithm failure, the MLME will issue the corresponding confirm primitive with a Status parameter value of CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE.

If the MLME successfully transmits the frame required by a request primitive, but the expected acknowledgment is not received, the MLME will issue the corresponding confirm primitive with a Status parameter value of NO_ACK.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8.2.3 Association primitives

These primitives are used when a device becomes associated with a PAN.

8.2.3.1 MLME-ASSOCIATE.request

The MLME-ASSOCIATE.request primitive is used by a device to request an association with a coordinator.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-ASSOCIATE.request          (
                                ChannelNumber,
                                ChannelPage,
                                CoordAddrMode,
                                CoordPanId,
                                CoordAddress,
                                CapabilityInformation,
                                SecurityLevel,
                                KeyIdMode,
                                KeySource,
                                KeyIndex
                                ChannelOffset,
                                HoppingSequenceId,
                                DsmeAssociation,
                                Direction,
                                AllocationOrder,
                                HoppingSequenceRequest
                                )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-4.

Table 8-4—MLME-ASSOCIATE.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
ChannelNumber	Integer	Any valid channel number	The channel number on which to attempt association.
ChannelPage	Integer	Any valid channel page	The channel page on which to attempt association.
CoordAddrMode	Enumeration	SHORT, EXTENDED	The coordinator addressing mode for this primitive and subsequent MPDU.
CoordPanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The identifier of the PAN with which to associate.
CoordAddress	Short address or extended address	As specified by the CoordAddrMode parameter	The address of the coordinator with which to associate.
CapabilityInformation	Bitmap	As defined in 7.5.2	Specifies the operational capabilities of the associating device.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-4—MLME-ASSOCIATE.request parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
ChannelOffset	Integer	0x00–0xffff	Specifies the offset value of Hopping Sequence.
HoppingSequenceId	Integer	0x00–0x0f	Indicate the ID of channel hopping sequence in use: 0x00: a default hopping sequence 0x01: a hopping sequence generated by PAN coordinator 0x02─0x0f: a hopping sequence set by the next higher layer If a coordinator receives an Association Request command with HoppingSequenceId of 1, it replies with a channel hopping sequence in an association response command.
DsmeAssociation	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Set to TRUE if the device is requesting GTS allocation during association, FALSE otherwise.
Direction	Integer	0x00–0x01	As defined in Table 8-52.
AllocationOrder	Integer	0x00–0x08	As defined in 7.5.13.
HoppingSequenceRequest	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indicates whether a hopping sequence is requested. A value of FALSE indicates that a hopping sequence is not requested. A value of TRUE indicates that a hopping sequence is requested.

On receipt of the MLME-ASSOCIATE.request primitive, the MLME of an unassociated device first updates the appropriate PHY and MAC PIB attributes, as described in 6.4.1, and then generates an Association Request command, as defined in 7.5.2.

The SecurityLevel parameter specifies the level of security to be applied to the Association Request command. Typically, the Association Request command should not be implemented using security. However, if the device requesting association shares a key with the coordinator, then security may be specified.

8.2.3.2 MLME-ASSOCIATE.indication

The MLME-ASSOCIATE.indication primitive is used to indicate the reception of an Association Request command.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-ASSOCIATE.indication    (
                              DeviceAddress,
                              CapabilityInformation,
                              SecurityLevel,
                              KeyIdMode,
                              KeySource,
                              KeyIndex
                              ChannelOffset,
                              HoppingSequenceId,
                              DsmeAssociation,
                              Direction,
                              AllocationOrder,
                              HoppingSequenceRequest
                              )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-5.

Table 8-5—MLME-ASSOCIATE.indication parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DeviceAddress	Extended address	An extended address	The address of the device requesting association.
CapabilityInformation	Bitmap	As defined in 7.5.2	The operational capabilities of the device requesting association.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
ChannelOffset	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Specifies the offset value of Hopping Sequence.
HoppingSequenceId	Integer	0x00–0x0f	Indicates the ID of channel hopping sequence in use: 0x00: the default hopping sequence 0x01: a hopping sequence generated by PAN coordinator 0x02–0x0f: a hopping sequence set by the next higher layer If a coordinator receives an Association Request command with HoppingSequenceId of 0x01, it replies with a channel hopping sequence in an association response command.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-5—MLME-ASSOCIATE.indication parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DsmeAssociation	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Set to TRUE if the device is requesting GTS allocation during association, FALSE otherwise.
Direction	Integer	0x00–0x01	As defined in Table 8-52.
AllocationOrder	Integer	0x00–0x08	As defined in 7.5.13.
HoppingSequenceRequest	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indicates whether a hopping sequence is requested. A value of FALSE indicates that a hopping sequence is not requested. A value of TRUE indicates that a hopping sequence is requested.

When the next higher layer of a coordinator receives the MLME-ASSOCIATE.indication primitive, the coordinator determines whether to accept or reject the unassociated device using an algorithm outside the scope of this standard.

8.2.3.3 MLME-ASSOCIATE.response

The MLME-ASSOCIATE.response primitive is used to initiate a response to an MLME-ASSOCIATE.indication primitive.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-ASSOCIATE.response        (
                               DeviceAddress,
                               AssocShortAddress,
                               SecurityLevel,
                               KeyIdMode,
                               KeySource,
                               KeyIndex
                               ChannelOffset,
                               HoppingSequence,
                               DsmeAssociation,
                               AllocationOrder,
                               BiIndex,
                               SuperframeId,
                               SlotId,
                               ChannelIndex,
                               Status
                               )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-6.

When the MLME of a coordinator receives the MLME-ASSOCIATE.response primitive, it generates an Association Response command, as described in 7.5.3, and attempts to send it to the device requesting association, as described in 6.4.1.

If the Status field of MLME-ASSOCIATE.response primitive is set to Fast association successful, the association response command shall be sent to the device requesting fast association directly.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-6—MLME-ASSOCIATE.response parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DeviceAddress	Extended address	Any valid extended address	The address of the device requesting association.
AssocShortAddress	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The short address allocated by the coordinator on successful association. This parameter is set to 0xffff if the association was unsuccessful.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
ChannelOffset	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Specifies the offset value of Hopping Sequence.
Hopping Sequence	Set of octets	—	For TSCH, specifies the sequence of channel numbers that is set by a higher layer as described in 6.2.10. For DSME, as defined in 7.5.13.
DsmeAssociation	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Set to TRUE if the device is requesting GTS allocaiton during association, FALSE otherwise.
AllocationOrder	Integer	0x00–0x08	As defined in 7.5.13.
BiIndex	Integer	0x00–0xff	As defined in 7.5.13.
SuperframeId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	As defined in 7.5.13.
SlotId	Integer	0x00–0x0e	As defined in 7.5.13.
ChannelIndex	Integer	0x00–0x1f	As defined in 7.5.13.
Status	Enumeration	As defined in 7.5.3	The status of the association attempt.

8.2.3.4 MLME-ASSOCIATE.confirm

The MLME-ASSOCIATE.confirm primitive is used to inform the next higher layer of the initiating device whether its request to associate was successful or unsuccessful.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-ASSOCIATE.confirm        (
                              AssocShortAddress,
                              SecurityLevel,
                              KeyIdMode,
                              KeySource,
                              KeyIndex
                              ChannelOffset,
                              HoppingSequence,
                              DsmeAssociation,
```


Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

AllocationOrder,
BiIndex,
SuperframeId,
SlotId,
ChannelIndex,
Status
)

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-7.

Table 8-7—MLME-ASSOCIATE.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
AssocShortAddress	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The short address allocated by the coordinator on successful association. This parameter will be equal to 0xffff if the association attempt was unsuccessful.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75 or Table 8-77	If the primitive were generated following failed outgoing processing of an Association Request command, then it is as defined in Table 8-75. If the primitive were generated following receipt of an association response command, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75 or Table 8-77	If the primitive were generated following failed outgoing processing of an Association Request command, then it is as defined in Table 8-75. If the primitive were generated following receipt of an association response command, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-75 or Table 8-77	If the primitive were generated following failed outgoing processing of an Association Request command, then it is as defined in Table 8-75. If the primitive were generated following receipt of an association response command, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75 or Table 8-77	If the primitive were generated following failed outgoing processing of an Association Request command, then it is as defined in Table 8-75. If the primitive were generated following receipt of an association response command, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.
ChannelOffset	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Specifies the offset value of Hopping Sequence.
Hopping Sequence	Set of octets	—	As defined in Table 8-6.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-7—MLME-ASSOCIATE.confirm parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DsmeAssociation	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Set to TRUE if the device is requesting GTS allocaiton during association, FALSE otherwise.
AllocationOrder	Integer	0x00–0x08	As defined in 7.5.13.
BiIndex	Integer	0x00–0xff	As defined in 7.5.13.
SuperframeId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	As defined in 7.5.13.
SlotId	Integer	0x00–0x0e	As defined in 7.5.13.
ChannelIndex	Integer	0x00–0x1f	As defined in 7.5.13.
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE, NO_ACK, NO_DATA, COUNTER_ERROR, FRAME_TOO_LONG, IMPROPER_KEY_TYPE, IMPROPER_SECURITY_LEVEL, SECURITY_ERROR, UNAVAILABLE_KEY, UNSUPPORTED_LEGACY, UNSUPPORTED_SECURITY, UNSUPPORTED FEATURE, INVALID_PARAMETER	The status of the association attempt.

If the association request was successful, then the Status parameter will be set to SUCCESS. Otherwise, the Status parameter will be set to indicate the type of failure.

8.2.4 Disassociation primitives

These primitives are used by a device to disassociate from a PAN or by the coordinator to disassociate a device from a PAN.

8.2.4.1 MLME-DISASSOCIATE.request

The MLME-DISASSOCIATE.request primitive is used by an associated device to notify the coordinator of its intent to leave the PAN. It is also used by the coordinator to instruct an associated device to leave the PAN.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DISASSOCIATE.request      (
                               DeviceAddrMode,
                               DevicePanId,
                               DeviceAddress,
                               DisassociateReason,
                               TxIndirect,
                               SecurityLevel,
                               KeyIdMode,
```


Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

KeySource,
KeyIndex
)

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-8.

Table 8-8—MLME-DISASSOCIATE.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DeviceAddrMode	Enumeration	SHORT, EXTENDED	The addressing mode of the device to which to send the Disassociation Notification command.
DevicePanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The PAN ID of the device to which to send the Disassociation Notification command.
DeviceAddress	Short address or extended address	As specified by the DeviceAddrMode parameter	The address of the device to which to send the Disassociation Notification command.
DisassociateReason	Integer	0x00–0xff	The reason for the disassociation, as described in 7.5.4.
TxIndirect	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	TRUE if the Disassociation Notification command is to be sent indirectly.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.

If the DeviceAddrMode parameter is equal to SHORT and the DeviceAddress parameter is equal to *macCoordShortAddress* or if the DeviceAddrMode parameter is equal to EXTENDED and the DeviceAddress parameter is equal to *macCoordExtendedAddress*, the TxIndirect parameter is ignored, and the MLME sends a Disassociation Notification command, as defined in 7.5.4, to its coordinator in the CAP for a beacon-enabled PAN or immediately for a nonbeacon-enabled PAN.

If the DeviceAddrMode parameter is equal to SHORT and the DeviceAddress parameter is not equal to *macCoordShortAddress* or if the DeviceAddrMode parameter is equal to EXTENDED and the DeviceAddress parameter is not equal to *macCoordExtendedAddress*, and if this primitive was received by the MLME of a coordinator with the TxIndirect parameter set to TRUE, the Disassociation Notification command will be sent using indirect transmission, as described in 6.6.

If the DeviceAddrMode parameter is equal to SHORT and the DeviceAddress parameter is not equal to *macCoordShortAddress* or if the DeviceAddrMode parameter is equal to EXTENDED and the DeviceAddress parameter is not equal to *macCoordExtendedAddress*, and if this primitive was received by the MLME of a coordinator with the TxIndirect parameter set to FALSE, the MLME sends a Disassociation Notification command to the device in the CAP for a beacon-enabled PAN or immediately for a nonbeacon-enabled PAN.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8.2.4.2 MLME-DISASSOCIATE.indication

The MLME-DISASSOCIATE.indication primitive is used to indicate the reception of a Disassociation Notification command.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DISASSOCIATE.indication    (
                                DeviceAddress,
                                DisassociateReason,
                                SecurityLevel,
                                KeyIdMode,
                                KeySource,
                                KeyIndex
                                )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-9.

Table 8-9—MLME-DISASSOCIATE.indication parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DeviceAddress	Extended address	Any valid extended address	The address of the device requesting disassociation.
DisassociateReason	Integer	0x00–0xff	The reason for the disassociation, as defined in 7.5.4.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.

8.2.4.3 MLME-DISASSOCIATE.confirm

The MLME-DISASSOCIATE.confirm primitive reports the results of an MLME-DISASSOCIATE.request primitive.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DISASSOCIATE.confirm       (
                                DeviceAddrMode,
                                DevicePanId,
                                DeviceAddress,
                                Status
                                )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-10.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-10—MLME-DISASSOCIATE.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DeviceAddrMode	Enumeration	SHORT, EXTENDED	The addressing mode of the device that has either requested disassociation or been instructed to disassociate by its coordinator.
DevicePanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The PAN ID of the device that has either requested disassociation or been instructed to disassociate by its coordinator.
DeviceAddress	Short address or extended address	As specified by the DeviceAddrMode parameter	The address of the device that has either requested disassociation or been instructed to disassociate by its coordinator.
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, NO_ACK, TRANSACTION_OVERFLOW, TRANSACTION_EXPIRED, CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE, COUNTER_ERROR, FRAME_TOO_LONG, UNAVAILABLE_KEY, UNSUPPORTED_SECURITY, INVALID_PARAMETER	The status of the disassociation attempt.

This primitive returns a Status of either SUCCESS, indicating that the Disassociation Notification was successful, or the appropriate Status parameter value indicating the reason for failure.

If the DevicePanId parameter is not equal to *macPanId* in the MLME-DISASSOCIATE.request primitive, the Status parameter shall be set to INVALID_PARAMETER.

8.2.5 Communications notification primitives

The MLME-SAP beacon primitives define how a coordinator in a nonbeacon-enabled PAN may send a beacon or an enhanced beacon, or respond to beacon/enhanced beacon requests. Coordinators operating in a beaconing PAN use MLME-START to configure beacons and enhanced beacons. Only FFDs capable of acting as a coordinator are required to provide the MLME-BEACON SAPs.

The MLME-BEACON-NOTIFY.indication primitive is used to notify the next higher layer when a beacon or enhanced beacon is received during normal operating conditions. The MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication primitive is used to notify the next higher layer that an error has occurred during the processing of a frame that was instigated by a response primitive.

8.2.5.1 MLME-BEACON-NOTIFY.indication

The MLME-BEACON-NOTIFY.indication primitive is used to send parameters contained within a beacon frame or an enhanced beacon frame received by the MAC sublayer to the next higher layer when either *macAutoRequest* is set to FALSE or when the beacon frame contains one or more octets of payload. The primitive also sends a measure of the LQI and the time the beacon frame was received. When an enhanced beacon is received, the SDU contains a list of IEs, and Superframe Specification, GTS fields, PendingADD, and beacon Payload parameters are not present.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-BEACON-NOTIFY.indication   (
                                Bsn,
                                PanDescriptor,
                                PendAddrSpec,
                                AddrList,
                                Ebsn,
                                BeaconType,
                                HeaderIeList,
                                PayloadIeList,
                                BeaconPayload
                                )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-11.

Table 8-11—MLME-BEACON-NOTIFY.indication parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
Bsn	Integer	0x00–0xff	The BSN of the Beacon frame.
PanDescriptor	PANDescriptor value	As defined in Table 8-12	The PANDescriptor for the received Beacon frame.
PendAddrSpec	Bitmap	As defined in 7.3.1	The beacon pending address specification.
AddrList	Set of extended addresses	—	The addresses of the devices for which the beacon source has data.
Ebsn	Integer	0x00–0xff	BSN used for Enhanced Beacon frames.
BeaconType	Enumeration	BEACON, ENHANCED_BEACON	Indicates a beacon or enhanced beacon was received.
HeaderIeList	Set of header IEs as described in 7.4.2	—	The header IEs, excluding Termination IEs, that were included in the Beacon frame. If empty, then no header IEs were included.
PayloadIeList	Set of payload IEs as described in 7.4.3	—	The payload IEs, excluding Termination IEs, that were included in the Beacon frame. If empty, then no payload IEs were included.
BeaconPayload	Set of octets	—	The set of octets comprising the Beacon Payload field, if present.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The elements of the PANDescriptor type are defined in Table 8-12.

Table 8-12—Elements of PANDescriptor

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
CoordAddrMode	Enumeration	SHORT, EXTENDED	The coordinator addressing mode corresponding to the received beacon frame.
CoordPanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The PAN ID of the coordinator as specified in the received beacon frame.
CoordAddress	Short address or extended address	As specified by the CoordAddrMode parameter	The address of the coordinator as specified in the received beacon frame.
ChannelNumber	Integer	Any valid channel number	The current channel number occupied by the network.
ChannelPage	Integer	Any valid channel page	The current channel page occupied by the network.
SuperframeSpec	Bitmap	As defined in 7.3.1	The superframe specification as specified in the received beacon frame.
GtsPermit	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	TRUE if the beacon is from the PAN coordinator that is accepting GTS requests.
LinkQuality	Integer	0x00–0xff	The LQI at which the network beacon was received. Lower values represent lower LQI, as defined in 10.2.6.
TimeStamp	Integer	0x000000–0xffffff	The time at which the Beacon frame was received, in symbols. This value is equal to the timestamp taken when the Beacon frame was received, as described in 6.5.2. The precision of this value shall be a minimum of 20 bits, with the lowest 4 bits being the least significant.
SecurityStatus	Enumeration	SUCCESS, COUNTER_ERROR, IMPROPER_KEY_TYPE, IMPROPER_SECURITY_LEVEL, SECURITY_ERROR, UNAVAILABLE_KEY, UNSUPPORTED_LEGACY, UNSUPPORTED_SECURITY	SUCCESS if there was no error in the security processing of the frame. One of the other Status codes indicating an error in the security processing otherwise, as described in 9.2.3.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-12—Elements of PANDescriptor *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
CodeList	Set of integers	—	The HRP UWB preamble codes, as described in 16.2.5.1, or CSS subchirp codes, as described in 15.3, in use when the channel was detected. For all other PHY types, this is empty.
DsmeSuperframeSpecification	Bitmap	Defined in 7.4.2.5	The DSME superframe specification as specified in the received enhanced frame. This element is present when *macDsmeEnabled* is TRUE.
TimeSynchronizationSpecification	Bitmap	Defined in 7.4.2.5	The time synchronization specification as specified in the received enhanced beacon frame. This element is present when *macDsmeEnabled* is TRUE.
BeaconBitmap	Bitmap	Defined in 7.4.2.5	The beacon bitmap as specified in the received enhanced beacon frame. This element is present when *macDsmeEnabled* is TRUE.
ChannelHopping Specification	Bitmap	Defined in 7.4.2.5	The channel hopping specification specified in the received enhanced beacon frame. This element is present when *macDsmeEnabled* is TRUE and the value of Channel Diversity Mode field in the received enhanced beacon frame indicates channel hopping.
TrleDescriptor	TRLE Descriptor value	As defined in F.5.1.1	The TRLE Descriptor for the received beacon.

8.2.5.2 MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication

The MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication primitive allows the MLME to indicate a communications status.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication    (
                               PanId,
                               SrcAddrMode,
                               SrcAddr,
                               DstAddrMode,
                               DstAddr,
                               SecurityLevel,
                               KeyIdMode,
                               KeySource,
                               KeyIndex,
                               Status
                               )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-13.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-13—MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
PanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The PAN ID of the device from which the frame was received or to which the frame was being sent.
SrcAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, EXTENDED	The source addressing mode for this primitive.
SrcAddr	—	As specified by the SrcAddrMode parameter	The address of the entity from which the frame causing the error originated.
DstAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, EXTENDED	The destination addressing mode for this primitive.
DstAddr	—	As specified by the DstAddrMode parameter	The address of the device for which the frame was intended.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75 or Table 8-77	If the primitive were generated following a transmission instigated through a response primitive, then it is as defined in Table 8-75. If the primitive were generated on receipt of a frame that generates an error in its security processing, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75 or Table 8-77	If the primitive were generated following a transmission instigated through a response primitive, then it is as defined in Table 8-75. If the primitive were generated on receipt of a frame that generates an error in its security processing, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-75 or Table 8-77	If the primitive were generated following a transmission instigated through a response primitive, then it is as defined in Table 8-75. If the primitive were generated on receipt of a frame that generates an error in its security processing, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75 or Table 8-77	If the primitive were generated following a transmission instigated through a response primitive, then it is as defined in Table 8-75. If the primitive were generated on receipt of a frame that generates an error in its security processing, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-13—MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, TRANSACTION_OVERFLOW, TRANSACTION_EXPIRED, CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE, NO_ACK, COUNTER_ERROR, FRAME_TOO_LONG, IMPROPER_KEY_TYPE, IMPROPER_SECURITY_LEVEL, SECURITY_ERROR, UNAVAILABLE_KEY, UNSUPPORTED_LEGACY, UNSUPPORTED_SECURITY, INVALID_PARAMETER	The communications status.

The MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication primitive is generated by the MLME and issued to its next higher layer either following a transmission instigated through a response primitive or on receipt of a frame that generates an error in its security processing, as described in 9.2.3. If the request to transmit was successful, the Status parameter shall be set to SUCCESS. Otherwise, the Status parameter shall be set to indicate the error with one of the following values:

- TRANSACTION_OVERFLOW – The MLME does not have the capacity to store the frame that was to be sent using indirect transmission.
- TRANSACTION_EXPIRED – The transaction was not handled within *macTransactionPersistenceTime*.
- CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE – There was a failure in the CSMA-CA algorithm while attempting to send the frame.
- NO_ACK – An acknowledgment was expected but not received.
- INVALID_PARAMETER – One or more of the parameters in the response primitive were in error.
- A security error, as defined in 9.2.

8.2.5.3 MLME-IE-NOTIFY.indication

The MLME-IE-NOTIFY.indication primitive is used to send IEs contained in a MAC Command frame or an Enh-Ack frame.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-IE-NOTIFY.indication      (
                               SrcAddrMode,
                               SrcPanId,
                               SrcAddr,
                               DstAddrMode,
                               DstPanId,
                               DstAddr,
                               FrameType,
                               CommandIdentifier,
                               HeaderIeList,
                               PayloadIeList,
                               SecurityLevel,
```


Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

KeyIdMode,
KeySource,
KeyIndex
)

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-14.

Table 8-14—MLME-IE-NOTIFY.indication parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
SrcAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, EXTENDED	The source addressing mode of the source of the frame that was received.
SrcPanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The PAN ID of the source of the frame that was received. Valid only when a source PAN ID is included in the received frame.
SrcAddr	—	As specified by the SrcAddrMode parameter	The source address of the frame that was received. Valid only when the source address is included in the received frame.
DstAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, EXTENDED	The destination addressing mode of the source of the frame that was received.
DstPanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The PAN ID of the destination of the frame that was received. Valid only when a destination PAN ID is included in the received frame.
DstAddr	—	As specified by the DstAddrMode parameter	The destination address of the frame that was received. Valid only when the destination address is included in the received frame.
FrameType	Enumeration	MAC_COMMAND, ENH_ACK, MULTIPURPOSE	The type of frame in which the IEs were received.
CommandIdentifier	Integer	As defined in Table 7-49	If the frame is a MAC Command, the command type of the frame, otherwise empty.
HeaderIeList	Set of header IEs as described in 7.4.2	—	The header IEs, excluding Termination IEs, that were included in the frame. If empty, then no header IEs were included.
PayloadIeList	Set of payload IEs as described in 7.4.3	—	The payload IEs, excluding Termination IEs, that were included in the frame. If empty, then no payload IEs were included.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8.2.6 Primitives for reading and writing PIB attributes

These primitives are used to read values from the PIB and write values to the PIB.

8.2.6.1 MLME-GET.request

The MLME-GET.request primitive requests information about a given PIB attribute.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-GET.request          (
                          PibAttribute
                          )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-15.

Table 8-15—MLME-GET.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
PibAttribute	Octet string	Any of the PIB attributes defined in 8.4.2 and those in Table 9-8, or Table 11-2	The name of the PIB attribute to read.

On receipt of the MLME-GET.request primitive, the MLME checks to see whether the PIB attribute is a MAC PIB attribute or PHY PIB attribute. If the requested attribute is a MAC attribute, the MLME attempts to retrieve the requested MAC PIB attribute from its database. If the requested attribute is a PHY PIB attribute, the MLME attempts to retrieve the value from the PHY.

8.2.6.2 MLME-GET.confirm

The MLME-GET.confirm primitive reports the results of an information request from the PIB.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-GET.confirm          (
                          PibAttribute,
                          PibAttributeValue,
                          Status
                          )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-16.

If the request to read a PIB attribute was successful, the primitive returns with a Status of SUCCESS. If the identifier of the PIB attribute is not found, the primitive returns with a Status of UNSUPPORTED_ATTRIBUTE. When an error code of UNSUPPORTED_ATTRIBUTE is returned, the PIBAttribute value parameter will be set to length zero.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-16—MLME-GET.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
PibAttribute	Octet string	Any of the PIB attributes defined in 8.4.2 and those in Table 9-8, or Table 11-2	The name of the PIB attribute that was read.
PibAttributeValue	Various	Attribute specific; as defined in As defined in Table 8-81, Table 9-8, or Table 11-2	The value of the indicated PIB attribute that was read. This parameter has zero length when the Status parameter is set to UNSUPPORTED_ATTRIBUTE.
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, UNSUPPORTED_ATTRIBUTE	The result of the request for PIB attribute information.

8.2.6.3 MLME-SET.request

The MLME-SET.request primitive attempts to write the given value to the indicated PIB attribute.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-SET.request          (
                          PibAttribute,
                          PibAttributeValue
                          )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-17.

Table 8-17—MLME-SET.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
PibAttribute	Octet string	As defined in Table 8-81, Table 9-8, or Table 11-2	The name of the PIB attribute to write.
PibAttributeValue	Various	Attribute specific; as defined in Table 8-81, Table 9-8, or Table 11-2	The value to write to the indicated PIB attribute.

On receipt of the MLME-SET.request primitive, the MLME checks to see whether the PIB attribute is a MAC PIB attribute or a PHY PIB attribute. If the requested attribute is a MAC attribute, the MLME attempts to write the given value to the indicated MAC PIB attribute. If the requested attribute is a PHY attribute, the MLME attempts to write the given value to the indicated PHY PIB attribute.

8.2.6.4 MLME-SET.confirm

The MLME-SET.confirm primitive reports the results of an attempt to write a value to a PIB attribute.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-SET.confirm          (
                          PibAttribute,
                          Status
                          )
```


Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-18.

Table 8-18—MLME-SET.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
PibAttribute	Octet string	As defined in Table 8-81, Table 9-8, or Table 11-2	The name of the PIB attribute that was written.
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, READ_ONLY, UNSUPPORTED_ATTRIBUTE, INVALID_INDEX, INVALID_PARAMETER	The result of the request to write the PIB attribute.

The MLME-SET.confirm primitive is generated by the MLME and issued to its next higher layer in response to an MLME-SET.request primitive. The MLME-SET.confirm primitive returns a Status of either SUCCESS, indicating that the requested value was written to the indicated PIB attribute or with the Status parameter set as follows:

— READ_ONLY – The PIBAttribute parameter specifies an attribute that is a read-only attribute.
— UNSUPPORTED_ATTRIBUTE – The PIBAttribute parameter specifies an attribute that was not found in the database.
— INVALID_PARAMETER– The PIBAttributeValue parameter specifies a value that is out of the valid range for the given attribute.

If the PIBAttribute parameter indicates that *macBeaconPayload* is to be set and the length of the resulting beacon frame exceeds *aMaxPhyPacketSize* (e.g., due to the additional overhead required for security processing), the MAC sublayer shall not update *macBeaconPayload* and will issue the MLME-SET.confirm primitive with a Status of INVALID_PARAMETER.

8.2.7 GTS management primitives

These primitives are used to request and maintain GTSs.

8.2.7.1 MLME-GTS.request

The MLME-GTS.request primitive allows a device to send a request to the PAN coordinator to allocate a new GTS or to deallocate an existing GTS. This primitive is also used by the PAN coordinator to initiate a GTS deallocation.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-GTS.request          (
                          GtsCharacteristics,
                          SecurityLevel,
                          KeyIdMode,
                          KeySource,
                          KeyIndex
                          )
```


Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-19.

Table 8-19—MLME-GTS.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
GtsCharacteristics	GTS characteristics	As defined in 7.5.11	The characteristics of the GTS request, including whether the request is for the allocation of a new GTS or the deallocation of an existing GTS.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.

On receipt of the MLME-GTS.request primitive by a device, the MLME of a device performs either the GTS request procedure, as described in 6.8.3, or the GTS deallocation procedure, as described in 6.8.5, depending on the value of the GTSCharacteristics field.

8.2.7.2 MLME-GTS.confirm

The MLME-GTS.confirm primitive reports the results of a request to allocate a new GTS or to deallocate an existing GTS.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-GTS.confirm          (
                          GtsCharacteristics,
                          Status
                          )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-20.

Table 8-20—MLME-GTS.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
GtsCharacteristics	GTS characteristics	As defined in 7.5.11	The characteristics of the GTS.
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, DENIED, NO_SHORT_ADDRESS, CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE, NO_DATA, COUNTER_ERROR, FRAME_TOO_LONG, UNAVAILABLE_KEY, UNSUPPORTED_SECURITY, INVALID_PARAMETER.	The status of the GTS request.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

If the request to allocate or deallocate a GTS was successful, this primitive will return a Status of SUCCESS and the Characteristics Type field of the GtsCharacteristics parameter will have the value of one or zero, respectively. Otherwise, the Status parameter will indicate the appropriate error code, as defined in 6.8.3 or 6.8.5.

If *macShortAddress* is equal to 0xfffe or 0xffff, the device is not permitted to request a GTS and the Status parameter will be set to NO_SHORT_ADDRESS.

8.2.7.3 MLME-GTS.indication

The MLME-GTS.indication primitive indicates that a GTS has been allocated or that a previously allocated GTS has been deallocated.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-GTS.indication          (
                             DeviceAddress,
                             GtsCharacteristics,
                             SecurityLevel,
                             KeyIdMode,
                             KeySource,
                             KeyIndex
                             )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-21.

Table 8-21—MLME-GTS.indication parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DeviceAddress	Short address	0x0000–0xfffd	The short address of the device that has been allocated or deallocated a GTS.
GtsCharacteristics	GTS characteristics	As defined in 7.5.11	The characteristics of the GTS.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	If the primitive were generated when a GTS deallocation is initiated by the PAN coordinator itself, the security level to be used is set to 0x00. If the primitive were generated whenever a GTS is allocated or deallocated following the reception of a GTS request command, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	If the primitive were generated when a GTS deallocation is initiated by the PAN coordinator itself, this parameter is ignored. If the primitive were generated whenever a GTS is allocated or deallocated following the reception of a GTS request command, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-21—MLME-GTS.indication parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-77	If the primitive were generated when a GTS deallocation is initiated by the PAN coordinator itself, this parameter is ignored. If the primitive were generated whenever a GTS is allocated or deallocated following the reception of a GTS request command, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	If the primitive were generated when a GTS deallocation is initiated by the PAN coordinator itself, this parameter is ignored. If the primitive were generated whenever a GTS is allocated or deallocated following the reception of a GTS request command, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.

The value of the Characteristics Type field, as defined in 7.5.11, in the GtsCharacteristics parameter indicates if the GTS has been allocated or if a GTS has been deallocated.

8.2.8 Primitives for orphan notification

These primitives are used by a coordinator to issue a notification of an orphaned device.

8.2.8.1 MLME-ORPHAN.indication

The MLME-ORPHAN.indication primitive is generated by the MLME of a coordinator and issued to its next higher layer on receipt of an Orphan Notification command, as defined in 7.5.7.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-ORPHAN.indication          (
                                OrphanAddress,
                                SecurityLevel,
                                KeyIdMode,
                                KeySource,
                                KeyIndex
                                )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-22.

Table 8-22—MLME-ORPHAN.indication parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
OrphanAddress	Extended address	Any valid extended address	The address of the orphaned device.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8.2.8.2 MLME-ORPHAN.response

The MLME-ORPHAN.response primitive allows the next higher layer of a coordinator to respond to the MLME-ORPHAN.indication primitive.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-ORPHAN.response        (
                            OrphanAddress,
                            ShortAddress,
                            AssociatedMember,
                            SecurityLevel,
                            KeyIdMode,
                            KeySource,
                            KeyIndex
                            )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-23.

Table 8-23—MLME-ORPHAN.response parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
OrphanAddress	Extended address	Any valid extended address	The address of the orphaned device.
ShortAddress	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The short address allocated to the orphaned device if it is associated with this coordinator. The special short address 0xfffe indicates that no short address was allocated, and the device will use its extended address in all communications. If the device was not associated with this coordinator, this field will contain the value 0xffff and be ignored on receipt.
AssociatedMember	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	TRUE if the orphaned device is associated with this coordinator or FALSE otherwise.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.

If the AssociatedMember parameter is set to TRUE, the orphaned device is associated with the coordinator. In this case, the MLME generates and sends the Coordinator Realignment command, as defined in 7.5.10, to the orphaned device containing the value of the ShortAddress field. This command is sent in the CAP if the coordinator is on a beacon-enabled PAN or immediately otherwise. If the AssociatedMember parameter is set to FALSE, the orphaned device is not associated with the coordinator and this primitive will be ignored. If the orphaned device does not receive the coordinator realignment command following its orphan notification within *macResponseWaitTime*, it will assume it is not associated to any coordinator in range.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

If the frame was successfully transmitted and an acknowledgment was received, if requested, the MAC sublayer will issue the MLME-COMM-STATUS.indication primitive with a Status of SUCCESS.

8.2.9 Primitives for resetting the MAC sublayer

These primitives are used to reset the MAC sublayer.

8.2.9.1 MLME-RESET.request

The MLME-RESET.request primitive is used by the next higher layer to request that the MLME performs a reset operation.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-RESET.request          (
                            SetDefaultPib
                            )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-24.

Table 8-24—MLME-RESET.request parameter

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
SetDefaultPib	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If TRUE, the MAC sublayer is reset, and all MAC PIB attributes are set to their default values. If FALSE, the MAC sublayer is reset, but all MAC PIB attributes retain their values prior to the generation of the MLME-RESET.request primitive.

On receipt of the MLME-RESET.request primitive, the MLME resets the PHY in an implementation-dependent manner.

8.2.9.2 MLME-RESET.confirm

The MLME-RESET.confirm primitive reports the results of the reset operation.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-RESET.confirm          (
                            Status
                            )
```

The primitive parameter is defined in Table 8-25.

Table 8-25—MLME-RESET.confirm parameter

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS	The result of the reset operation.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Status parameter is set to SUCCESS on completion of the reset procedure.

8.2.10 Primitives for specifying the receiver enable time

These primitives are used to enable or disable a device's receiver at a given time.

8.2.10.1 MLME-RX-ENABLE.request

The MLME-RX-ENABLE.request primitive allows the next higher layer to request that the receiver is either enabled for a finite period of time or disabled.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-RX-ENABLE.request        (
                              DeferPermit,
                              RxOnTime,
                              RxOnDuration,
                              RangingRxControl
                              )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-26.

Table 8-26—MLME-RX-ENABLE.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DeferPermit	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	TRUE if the requested operation can be deferred until the next superframe if the requested time has already passed. FALSE if the requested operation is only to be attempted in the current superframe. This parameter is ignored for nonbeacon-enabled PANs. If the issuing device is the PAN coordinator, the term *superframe* refers to its own superframe. Otherwise, the term refers to the superframe of the coordinator through which the issuing device is associated.
RxOnTime	Integer	0x000000–0xffffff	The number of symbols measured from the start of the superframe before the receiver is to be enabled or disabled. This is a 24-bit value, and the precision of this value shall be a minimum of 20 bits, with the lowest 4 bits being the least significant. This parameter is ignored for nonbeacon-enabled PANs. If the issuing device is the PAN coordinator, the term *superframe* refers to its own superframe. Otherwise, the term refers to the superframe of the coordinator through which the issuing device is associated.
RxOnDuration	Integer	0x000000–0xffffff	The number of symbols for which the receiver is to be enabled. If this parameter is equal to 0x000000, the receiver is to be disabled.
RangingRxControl	Enumeration	RANGING_OFF, RANGING_ON	Configure the transceiver to Rx with ranging for a value of RANGING_ON or to not enable ranging for RANGING_OFF.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The MLME-RX-ENABLE.request primitive is generated by the next higher layer and issued to the MLME to enable the receiver for a fixed duration, at a time relative to the start of the current or next superframe on a beacon-enabled PAN or immediately on a nonbeacon-enabled PAN. This primitive may also be generated to cancel a previously generated request to enable the receiver. The receiver is enabled or disabled exactly once per primitive request.

The MLME will treat the request to enable or disable the receiver as secondary to other responsibilities of the device (e.g., GTSs, coordinator beacon tracking, or beacon transmissions). When the primitive is issued to enable the receiver, the device will enable its receiver until either the device has a conflicting responsibility or the time specified by RxOnDuration has expired. In the case of a conflicting responsibility, the device will interrupt the receive operation. After the completion of the interrupting operation, the RxOnDuration will be checked to determine whether the time has expired. If so, the operation is complete. If not, the receiver is re-enabled until either the device has another conflicting responsibility or the time specified by RxOnDuration has expired. When the primitive is issued to disable the receiver, the device will disable its receiver unless the device has a conflicting responsibility.

On a nonbeacon-enabled PAN, the MLME ignores the DeferPermit and RxOnTime parameters and requests that the PHY enable or disable the receiver immediately. If the request is to enable the receiver, the receiver will remain enabled until RxOnDuration has elapsed.

Before attempting to enable the receiver on a beacon-enabled PAN, the MLME first determines whether (RxOnTime + RxOnDuration) is less than the beacon interval, as defined by *macBeaconOrder*. If (RxOnTime + RxOnDuration) is not less than the beacon interval, the MLME issues the MLME-RX-ENABLE.confirm primitive with a Status of ON_TIME_TOO_LONG.

The MLME then determines whether the receiver can be enabled in the current superframe. If the current time measured from the start of the superframe is less than (RxOnTime – *macSifsPeriod*), the MLME attempts to enable the receiver in the current superframe. If the current time measured from the start of the superframe is greater than or equal to (RxOnTime – *macSifsPeriod*) and DeferPermit is equal to TRUE, the MLME defers until the next superframe and attempts to enable the receiver in that superframe. Otherwise, if the MLME cannot enable the receiver in the current superframe and is not permitted to defer the receive operation until the next superframe, the MLME issues the MLME-RX-ENABLE.confirm primitive with a Status of PAST_TIME.

If the RxOnDuration parameter is equal to zero, the MLME requests that the PHY disable its receiver.

8.2.10.2 MLME-RX-ENABLE.confirm

The MLME-RX-ENABLE.confirm primitive reports the results of the attempt to enable or disable the receiver.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-RX-ENABLE.confirm        (
                              Status
                              )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-27.

The MLME-RX-ENABLE.confirm primitive is generated by the MLME and issued to its next higher layer in response to an MLME-RX-ENABLE.request primitive. This primitive returns a Status of either SUCCESS, if the request to enable or disable the receiver was successful, or the appropriate error code. The Status values are fully described in 8.2.10.1.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-27—MLME-RX-ENABLE.confirm parameter

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, PAST_TIME, ON_TIME_TOO_LONG, INVALID_PARAMETER, RANGING_NOT_SUPPORTED	The result of the request to enable or disable the receiver.

8.2.11 Primitives for channel scanning

These primitives are used to either find PANs in a channel or measure the energy in the channel.

8.2.11.1 MLME-SCAN.request

The MLME-SCAN.request primitive is used to initiate a channel scan over a given set of channels.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-SCAN.request          (
                           ScanType,
                           ScanChannels,
                           ScanDuration,
                           ChannelPage,
                           SecurityLevel,
                           KeyIdMode,
                           KeySource,
                           KeyIndex,
                           LinkQualityScan,
                           PanIdSuppressed,
                           SeqNumSuppressed,
                           HeaderIeList,
                           PayloadIeList,
                           HeaderIeIdList,
                           NestedIeSubIdList,
                           MpmScanDurationBPan,
                           MpmScanDurationNbPan,
                           MpmScan,
                           MpmScanType
                           )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-28.

Table 8-28—MLME-SCAN.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
ScanType	Enumeration	ED, ACTIVE, PASSIVE, ORPHAN, ENHANCED_ACTIVE _ SCAN, RIT_PASSIVE	Indicates the type of scan performed, as described in 6.3.1. For an RFD, ED, ACTIVE, ENHANCED_ACTIVE_SCAN, and RIT_PASSIVE are optional. SetDefaultPib.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-28—MLME-SCAN.request parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
ScanChannels	Set of integers	Any set of valid channel numbers	The channel numbers to be scanned. For pages 0 to 6, the 27 bits (b0, b1, …, b26) indicate which channels are to be scanned (1 = scan, 0 = do not scan) for each of the 27 channels supported by the ChannelPage parameter. For pages 7 and 8, a bitmap corresponding to the number of channels, *n*, where (b0, b1, …, b*n*) indicate which channels are to be scanned (1 = scan, 0 = do not scan) for each of the n channels supported by the ChannelPage and PHY configuration.
ScanDuration	Integer	0–14	A value used to calculate the length of time to spend scanning each channel for ED, active, and passive scans. This parameter is ignored for orphan scans. The time spent scanning each channel is [$aBaseSuperframeDuration \times (2^n + 1)$], where *n* is the value of the ScanDuration parameter.
ChannelPage	Integer	Any valid channel page	The channel page on which to perform the scan.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
LinkQualityScan	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If TRUE, Link Quality Scan should be enabled, otherwise FALSE.
PanIdSuppressed	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Set to TRUE if the PAN ID is suppressed in the frame, FALSE otherwise.
SeqNumSuppressed	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Set to TRUE if the sequence number is suppressed in the frame, FALSE otherwise.
HeaderIeList	List of IEs as described in 7.4.2	—	The header IEs, excluding Termination IEs, to be added to the frame.
PayloadIeList	List of IEs as described in 7.4.3	—	The payload IEs, excluding Termination IEs, to be added to the frame.
HeaderIeIdList	Set of header IE IDs, as described in Table 7-7	—	The IDs of header IEs, excluding Termination IEs, to be added to the frame. The MAC will provide the content for the IE.
NestedIeSubIdList	Set of Nested IE sub-IDs, as described in Table 7-16 and Table 7-17	—	The sub-IDs of nested IEs, excluding Termination IEs, to be added to the frame. The MAC will provide the content for the IE.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-28—MLME-SCAN.request parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
MpmScanDurationBPan	Integer	0–14	The maximum time spent scanning for an Enhanced Beacon frame in a beacon-enabled PAN on the channel is [*aBaseSuperframeDuration* * 2^n] symbols, where symbol refers to the symbol time in the current PHY, and n is equal to MpmScanDurationBPan. See 6.2.3.
MpmScanDuration NbPan	Integer	1–16 383	The maximum time spent scanning for an Enhanced Beacon frame in a nonbeacon-enabled PAN on the channel is [*aBaseSlotDuration* * n] symbols, where symbol refers to the symbol time in the current PHY, and n is equal to MpmScanDurationNbPan. See 6.2.3.
MpmScan	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	This parameter is only valid for SUN devices. When set to TRUE, an MPM scan is invoked and the ScanDuration parameter shall be ignored. When set to FALSE, the scan duration shall be set according to the ScanDuration parameter; the MpmScanType, MpmScanDurationBPan, and MpmScanDurationNbPan parameters shall be ignored.
MpmScanType	Enumeration	BEACON_ENABLED, NONBEACON_ENABLED	This parameter is only valid for SUN devices. When the MpmScan parameter is set to TRUE and the MpmScanType parameter is set to BEACON_ENABLED, the scan duration shall be set according to the MpmScanDurationBPan parameter. When the MpmScan parameter is set to TRUE and the MpmScanType parameter is set to NONBEACON_ENABLED, the scan duration shall be set according to the MpmScanDurationNbPan parameter.

When the MLME receives this primitive, it begins the appropriate scan procedure, as defined in 6.3.

The SecurityLevel, KeyIdMode, KeySource, and KeyIndex parameters are used only in an orphan scan.

When the ScanType is set to ENHANCED_ACTIVE_SCAN, this primitive is used to initiate an enhanced active scan.

The active scan, as described in 6.3.1.2, is performed on each channel by the MLME first sending a Beacon Request command as described in 7.5.8 or an Enhanced Beacon Request command as described in 7.5.9 if using an enhanced active scan. The MLME then enables the receiver and records the information contained in each received beacon in a PAN descriptor structure as described in Table 8-12. The active scan on a particular channel terminates when the number of PAN descriptors stored equals an implementation-specified maximum or when [*aBaseSuperframeDuration* × (2^n + 1)] symbols, where n is the value of the ScanDuration parameter, have elapsed, whichever comes first.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8.2.11.2 MLME-SCAN.confirm

The MLME-SCAN.confirm primitive reports the result of the channel scan request.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-SCAN.confirm          (
                           ScanType,
                           ChannelPage,
                           UnscannedChannels,
                           ResultListSize,
                           EnergyDetectList,
                           PanDescriptorList,
                           DetectedCategory
                           HrpUwbEnergyDetectList,
                           Status
                           )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-29.

Table 8-29—MLME-SCAN.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
ScanType	Integer	ED, ACTIVE, PASSIVE, ORPHAN, RIT_PASSIVE, ENHANCED_ACTIVE_ SCAN	As defined in Table 8-29.
ChannelPage	Integer	Any valid channel page	The channel page on which the scan was performed, as defined in 10.1.2.
Unscanned Channels	List of integers	Any list of valid channels	A list of the channels given in the request which were not scanned. This parameter is not valid for ED scans.
ResultListSize	Integer	Implementation specific	The number of elements returned in the appropriate result lists. This value is zero for the result of an orphan scan.
EnergyDetectList	List of integers	0x00–0xff for each integer	The list of energy measurements, one for each channel searched during an ED scan. This parameter is null for active, passive, and orphan scans.
PanDescriptorList	List of PAN descriptor values	As defined in Table 8-12	The list of PAN descriptors, one for each beacon found during an active or passive scan if *macAutoRequest* is set to TRUE. This parameter is null for ED and orphan scans or when *macAutoRequest* is set to FALSE during an active or passive scan.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-29—MLME-SCAN.confirm parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DetectedCategory	Integer	0x00–0xff	Categorization of energy detected in channel with the following values: 0: Category detection is not supported 1: HRP UWB PHY detected 2: Non-HRP UWB PHY signal source detected 3–25: Reserved for future use.
HrpUwbEnergyDetectList	List of Integers	0x00–0xff for each element of the list	For HRP UWB PHYs, the list of energy measurements taken. The total number of measurements is indicated by ResultListSize. This parameter is null for active, passive, and orphan scans. It is also null for non-HRP UWB PHYs.
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, LIMIT_REACHED, NO_BEACON, SCAN_IN_PROGRESS, COUNTER_ERROR, FRAME_TOO_LONG, UNAVAILABLE_KEY, UNSUPPORTED_SECURITY, BAD_CHANNEL, INVALID_PARAMETER	The status of the scan request.

If the requested scan was successful, the Status parameter will be set to SUCCESS.

If the MLME receives the MLME-SCAN.request primitive while performing a previously initiated scan operation, the MLME will not perform the scan and the Status parameter will be set to SCAN_IN_PROGRESS.

If, during an active scan, the MLME is unable to transmit a Beacon Request command on a channel specified by the ScanChannels parameter due to a channel access failure, the channel will appear in the set of unscanned channels returned by the MLME-SCAN.confirm primitive. If the MLME was able to send a Beacon Request command on at least one of the channels but no beacons were found, the MLME-SCAN.confirm primitive will contain a null set of PAN descriptor values, regardless of the value of *macAutoRequest*, and a Status of NO_BEACON.

If the MLME-SCAN.request primitive requested an orphan scan, the ResultListSize parameter will be set to zero. If the MLME is unable to transmit an Orphan Notification command on a channel specified by the ScanChannels parameter due to a channel access failure, the channel will appear in the set of unscanned channels returned by the MLME-SCAN.confirm primitive. If the MLME was able to send an Orphan Notification command on at least one of the channels but the device did not receive a coordinator realignment command, the MLME-SCAN.confirm primitive will contain a Status of NO_BEACON.

If the MLME-SCAN.request primitive requested an active, passive, or orphan scan, the EnergyDetectList and HrpUwbEnergyDetectList parameters will be null. If the MLME-SCAN.request primitive requested an ED or orphan scan, the PANDescriptorList parameter will be null.

If, during an ED, active, or passive scan, the implementation-specified maximum of PAN descriptors is reached thus terminating the scan procedure, the MAC sublayer will issue the MLME-SCAN.confirm primitive with a Status of LIMIT_REACHED.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

If the MLME-SCAN.request primitive requested an ED and the PHY type is HRP UWB, as indicated by the *phyChannelPage*, then the HrpUwbEnergyDetectList contains the results for the HRP UWB channels scanned, and the EnergyDetectList and PANDescriptorList are null. The HRP UWB scan is fully described in 6.3.1.

8.2.12 Primitives for updating the superframe configuration

These primitives are used by an FFD to initiate a PAN, to begin using a new superframe configuration, or to stop transmitting beacons. In addition, a device uses these primitives to begin using a new superframe configuration.

8.2.12.1 MLME-START.request

The MLME-START.request primitive is used by the PAN coordinator to initiate a new PAN or to begin using a new superframe configuration. This primitive is also used by a device already associated with an existing PAN to begin using a new superframe configuration.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-START.request          (
                            PanId,
                            ChannelNumber,
                            ChannelPage,
                            StartTime,
                            BeaconOrder,
                            SuperframeOrder,
                            PanCoordinator,
                            BatteryLifeExtension,
                            CoordRealignment,
                            CoordRealignSecurityLevel,
                            CoordRealignKeyIdMode,
                            CoordRealignKeySource,
                            CoordRealignKeyIndex,
                            BeaconSecurityLevel,
                            BeaconKeyIdMode,
                            BeaconKeySource,
                            BeaconKeyIndex,
                            HeaderIeList,
                            PayloadIeList,
                            HeaderIeIdList,
                            NestedIeSubIdList,
                            )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-30.

Table 8-30—MLME-START.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
PanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The PAN ID to be used by the device.
ChannelNumber	Integer	Any valid channel number	The channel number to use.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-30—MLME-START.request parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
ChannelPage	Integer	Any valid channel page	The channel page to use.
StartTime	Integer	0x000000–0xffffff	The time at which to begin transmitting beacons. If this parameter is equal to 0x000000, beacon transmissions will begin immediately. Otherwise, the specified time is relative to the received Beacon frame of the coordinator with which the device synchronizes. This parameter is ignored if either the BeaconOrder parameter has a value of 15 or the PanCoordinator parameter is TRUE. This parameter is ignored in a DSME-enabled PAN. The time is specified in symbols and is rounded to a backoff period boundary. The precision of this value shall be a minimum of 20 bits, with the lowest 4 bits being the least significant.
BeaconOrder	Integer	0–15	Indicates the frequency with which the beacon is transmitted, as defined in 6.2.1.
SuperframeOrder	Integer	0–*BO* or 15	The length of the active portion of the superframe, including the beacon frame, as defined in 6.2.1.
PanCoordinator	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If this value is TRUE, the device will become the PAN coordinator of a new PAN. If this value is FALSE, the device will begin using a new superframe configuration on the PAN with which it is associated.
BatteryLifeExtension	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If this value is TRUE, the receiver of the beaconing device is disabled *macBattLifeExtPeriods* full backoff periods after the IFS period following the beacon frame. If this value is FALSE, the receiver of the beaconing device remains enabled for the entire CAP. This parameter is ignored if the BeaconOrder parameter has a value of 15.
CoordRealignment	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	TRUE if a coordinator realignment command is to be transmitted prior to changing the superframe configuration or FALSE otherwise.
CoordRealignSecurityLevel	Integer	0x00–0x07	The security level to be used for Coordinator Realignment commands, as described in Table 9-6.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-30—MLME-START.request parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
CoordRealignKeyIdMode	Integer	0x00–0x03	The mode used to identify the key to be used, as described in 9.4.1.2. This parameter is ignored if the CoordRealignSecurityLevel parameter is set to 0x00.
CoordRealignKeySource	Set of octets	As specified by the CoordRealignKeyIdMode parameter	The originator of the key to be used, as described in 9.4.3.1. This parameter is ignored if the CoordRealignKeyIdMode parameter is ignored or is set to 0x00 or 0x01.
CoordRealignKeyIndex	Integer	0x01–0xff	The index of the key to be used, as described in 9.4.3.2. This parameter is ignored if the CoordRealignKeyIdMode parameter is ignored or is set to 0x00.
BeaconSecurityLevel	Integer	0x00–0x07	The security level to be used for beacon frames, as described in Table 9-6.
BeaconKeyIdMode	Integer	0x00–0x03	The mode used to identify the key to be used, as described in Table 9-7. This parameter is ignored if the BeaconSecurityLevel parameter is set to 0x00.
BeaconKeySource	Set of octets	As specified by the BeaconKeyIdMode parameter	The originator of the key to be used, as described in 9.4.3.1. This parameter is ignored if the BeaconKeyIdMode parameter is ignored or set to 0x00 or 0x01.
BeaconKeyIndex	Integer	0x01–0xff	The index of the key to be used, as described in 9.4.3.2. This parameter is ignored if the BeaconKeyIdMode parameter is ignored or set to 0x00.
HeaderIeList	Set of IEs as described in 7.4.2	—	The header IEs, excluding Termination IEs, that are to be included in the Beacon frame, in addition to any header IEs added by the MAC.
PayloadIeList	Set of IEs as described in 7.4.3	—	The payload IEs, excluding Termination IEs, that are to be included in the Beacon frame, in addition to any payload IEs added by the MAC.
HeaderIeIdList	Set of header IE IDs, as described in Table 7-7	—	The IDs of header IEs, excluding Termination IEs, to be added to the Beacon frame. The MAC will provide the content for the IE.
NestedIeSubIdList	Set of Nested IE sub-IDs, as described in Table 7-16 and Table 7-17	—	The sub-IDs of nested IEs, excluding Termination IEs, to be added to the Beacon frame. The MAC will provide the content for the IE.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

When the CoordRealignment parameter is set to TRUE, the coordinator attempts to transmit a Coordinator Realignment command as described in 7.5.10. If the transmission of the coordinator realignment command fails due to a channel access failure, the MLME will not make any changes to the superframe configuration. (i.e., no PIB attributes will be changed). If the coordinator realignment command is successfully transmitted, the MLME updates the PIB attributes BeaconOrder, SuperframeOrder, PanId, ChannelPage, and ChannelNumber parameters.

When the CoordRealignment parameter is set to FALSE, the MLME updates the appropriate PIB attributes with the values of the BeaconOrder, SuperframeOrder, PanId, ChannelPage, and ChannelNumber parameters, as described in 6.3.3.4.

The address used by the coordinator in its beacon frames is determined by the current value of *macShortAddress*, which is set by the next higher layer before issuing this primitive. If the BeaconOrder parameter is less than 15, the MLME sets *macBattLifeExt* to the value of the BatteryLifeExtension parameter. If the BeaconOrder parameter equals 15, the value of the BatteryLifeExtension parameter is ignored.

If the CoordRealignment parameter is set to TRUE, the CoordRealignSecurityLevel, CoordRealignKeyIdMode, CoordRealignKeySource, and CoordRealignKeyIndex parameters will be used to process the MAC command. If the BeaconOrder parameter indicates a beacon-enabled network, the BeaconSecurityLevel, BeaconKeyIdMode, BeaconKeySource, and BeaconKeyIndex parameters will be used to process the beacon frame.

The MLME shall ignore the StartTime parameter if the BeaconOrder parameter is equal to 15 because this indicates a nonbeacon-enabled PAN. If the BeaconOrder parameter is less than 15, the MLME examines the StartTime parameter to determine the time to begin transmitting beacons. If the PAN coordinator parameter is set to TRUE, the MLME ignores the StartTime parameter and begins beacon transmissions immediately. Setting the StartTime parameter to 0x000000 also causes the MLME to begin beacon transmissions immediately. If the PanCoordinator parameter is set to FALSE and the StartTime parameter is nonzero, the MLME calculates the beacon transmission time by adding StartTime to the time, obtained from the local clock, when the MLME receives the beacon of the coordinator through which it is associated. If the time calculated causes the outgoing superframe to overlap the incoming superframe, the MLME shall not begin beacon transmissions. Otherwise, the MLME then begins beacon transmissions when the current time, obtained from the local clock, equals the calculated time.

If the SdIndex parameter is nonzero and the MLME is not currently tracking the beacon of the coordinator through which it is associated, the MLME shall issue the MLME-START.confirm primitive with a Status of TRACKING_OFF.

If *macUseEnhancedBeacon* is TRUE, the MLME shall use enhanced beacons rather than standard beacons containing the IEs provided. The enhanced beacon shall be secured according to the value of the BeaconSecurityLevel parameter.

8.2.12.2 MLME-START.confirm

The MLME-START.confirm primitive reports the results of the attempt to start using a new superframe configuration.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-START.confirm          (
                            Status
                            )
```


Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-31.

Table 8-31—MLME-START.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, NO_SHORT_ADDRESS, SUPERFRAME_OVERLAP, TRACKING_OFF, INVALID_PARAMETER, COUNTER_ERROR, FRAME_TOO_LONG, UNAVAILABLE_KEY, UNSUPPORTED_SECURITY, CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE	The result of the attempt to start using an updated superframe configuration.

The MLME-START.confirm primitive is generated by the MLME and issued to its next higher layer in response to an MLME-START.request primitive. The MLME-START.confirm primitive returns a Status of either SUCCESS, indicating that the MAC sublayer has started using the new superframe configuration, or the appropriate error code as follows:

— NO_SHORT_ADDRESS – The *macShortAddress* is set to 0xffff.
— CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE – The transmission of the coordinator realignment frame failed.
— FRAME_TOO_LONG – The length of the beacon frame exceeds *aMaxPhyPacketSize*.
— SUPERFRAME_OVERLAP – The outgoing superframe overlaps the incoming superframe.
— TRACKING_OFF – The StartTime parameter is nonzero, and the MLME is not currently tracking the beacon of the coordinator through which it is associated.
— A security error code, as defined in 9.2.

8.2.13 Primitives for synchronizing with a coordinator

These primitives are used to synchronize with a coordinator and to communicate loss of synchronization to the next higher layer.

8.2.13.1 MLME-SYNC.request

The MLME-SYNC.request primitive requests to synchronize with the coordinator by acquiring and, if specified, tracking its beacons.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-SYNC.request          (
                           ChannelNumber,
                           ChannelPage,
                           TrackBeacon
                           )
```


Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-32.

Table 8-32—MLME-SYNC.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
ChannelNumber	Integer	Any valid channel number	The channel number on which to attempt coordinator synchronization.
ChannelPage	Integer	Any valid channel page	The channel page on which to attempt coordinator synchronization.
TrackBeacon	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	TRUE if the MLME is to synchronize with the next beacon and attempts to track all future beacons. FALSE if the MLME is to synchronize with only the next beacon.

If the MLME-SYNC.request primitive is received by the MLME on a beacon-enabled PAN, it will first set *phyCurrentPage* and *phyCurrentChannel* equal to the values of the ChannelPage and ChannelNumber parameters, respectively. If the TrackBeacon parameter is equal to TRUE, the MLME will track the beacon, i.e., enable its receiver just before the expected time of each beacon so that the beacon frame can be processed. If the TrackBeacon parameter is equal to FALSE, the MLME will locate the beacon but not continue to track it.

If this primitive is received by the MLME while it is currently tracking the beacon, the MLME will not discard the primitive, but will treat it as a new synchronization request.

8.2.13.2 MLME-SYNC-LOSS.indication

The MLME-SYNC-LOSS.indication primitive indicates the loss of synchronization with a coordinator.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-SYNC-LOSS.indication      (
                               LossReason,
                               PanId,
                               ChannelNumber,
                               ChannelPage,
                               SecurityLevel,
                               KeyIdMode,
                               KeySource,
                               KeyIndex
                               )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-33.

Table 8-33—MLME-SYNC-LOSS.indication parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
LossReason	Enumeration	PAN_ID_CONFLICT, REALIGNMENT, BEACON_LOST, SUPERFRAME_OVERLAP	The reason that synchronization was lost.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-33—MLME-SYNC-LOSS.indication parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
PanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The PAN ID with which the device lost synchronization or to which it was realigned.
ChannelNumber	Integer	Any valid channel	The channel number on which the device lost synchronization or to which it was realigned.
ChannelPage	Integer	Any valid channel page	The channel page on which the device lost synchronization or to which it was realigned.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	If the primitive were either generated by the device itself following loss of synchronization or generated by the PAN coordinator upon detection of a PAN ID conflict, the security level is set to 0x00. If the primitive were generated following the reception of either a coordinator realignment command or a PAN ID Conflict Notification command, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	If the primitive were either generated by the device itself following loss of synchronization or generated by the PAN coordinator upon detection of a PAN ID conflict, this parameter is ignored. If the primitive were generated following the reception of either a coordinator realignment command or a PAN ID Conflict Notification command, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-77	If the primitive were either generated by the device itself following loss of synchronization or generated by the PAN coordinator upon detection of a PAN ID conflict, this parameter is ignored. If the primitive were generated following the reception of either a coordinator realignment command or a PAN ID Conflict Notification command, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	If the primitive were either generated by the device itself following loss of synchronization or generated by the PAN coordinator upon detection of a PAN ID conflict, this parameter is ignored. If the primitive were generated following the reception of either a coordinator realignment command or a PAN ID Conflict Notification command, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.

The MLME-SYNC-LOSS.indication primitive is generated by the MLME of a device and issued to its next higher layer in the event of a loss of synchronization with the coordinator. It is also generated by the MLME of the PAN coordinator and issued to its next higher layer in the event of either a PAN ID conflict or an overlap between the outgoing superframe and the incoming superframe, as described in 6.2.2.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The LossReason parameter indicates the reason why the primitive was issued. Values for the LossReason parameter are as follows:

- PAN_ID_CONFLICT – The device has detected a PAN ID conflict and has communicated it to the PAN coordinator or the PAN coordinator has received a PAN ID Conflict Notification command regarding a device that is associated with it, as described in 6.3.2.
- REALIGNMENT – The device has received the coordinator realignment command from the coordinator through which it is associated and the MLME was not carrying out an orphan scan, as described in 6.3.3.3.
- BEACON_LOST – The device has missed too many beacons, as described in 6.5.2.
- SUPERFRAME_OVERLAP – The device has received a coordinator realignment comment from its coordinator that would cause the incoming and outgoing superframes to overlap, as described in 6.2.2.

8.2.14 Primitives for requesting data from a coordinator

These primitives are used to request data from a coordinator.

8.2.14.1 MLME-POLL.request

The MLME-POLL.request primitive prompts the device to request data from the coordinator.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-POLL.request          (
                           CoordAddrMode,
                           CoordPanId,
                           CoordAddress,
                           SecurityLevel,
                           KeyIdMode,
                           KeySource,
                           KeyIndex
                           )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-34.

Table 8-34—MLME-POLL.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
CoordAddrMode	Enumeration	SHORT, EXTENDED	The addressing mode of the coordinator to which the poll is intended.
CoordPanId	Integer	0x0000–0xfffe	The PAN ID of the coordinator to which the poll is intended.
CoordAddress	—	As specified by the CoordAddrMode parameter	The address of the coordinator to which the poll is intended.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

On receipt of the MLME-POLL.request primitive, the MLME requests data from the coordinator, as described in 6.7.3. If the poll is directed to the PAN coordinator, the Data Request command may be generated without any destination address information present. Otherwise, the Data Request command is always generated with the destination address information in the CoordPanId and CoordAddress parameters.

8.2.14.2 MLME-POLL.confirm

The MLME-POLL.confirm primitive reports the results of a request to poll the coordinator for data.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-POLL.confirm          (
                           Status
                           )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-35.

Table 8-35—MLME-POLL.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
Status	Integer	SUCCESS, CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE, NO_ACK, NO_DATA, COUNTER_ERROR, FRAME_TOO_LONG, UNAVAILABLE_KEY, UNSUPPORTED_SECURITY, INVALID_PARAMETER	The status of the data request.

The MLME-POLL.confirm primitive is generated by the MLME and issued to its next higher layer in response to an MLME-POLL.request primitive. If the request was successful, the Status parameter will be equal to SUCCESS, indicating a successful poll for data. Otherwise, the Status parameter indicates the appropriate error code. The Status values are fully described in 8.2.14.1.

If the Frame Pending field of the Ack frame is set to zero, the MLME will issue the MLME-POLL.confirm primitive with a Status of NO_DATA.

If a frame is received from the coordinator with a zero-length payload or if the frame is a MAC command, the MLME will issue the MLME-POLL.confirm primitive with a Status of NO_DATA. If a frame is received from the coordinator with nonzero-length payload, the MLME will issue the MLME-POLL.confirm primitive with a Status of SUCCESS. In this case, the actual data are indicated to the next higher layer using the MCPS-DATA.indication primitive, as described in 8.3.3.

If a frame is not received at the expected time even though the acknowledgment to the Data Request command has its Frame Pending field set to one, the MLME will issue the MLME-POLL.confirm primitive with a Status of NO_DATA.

8.2.15 Primitives for specifying dynamic preamble

These primitives are used by a device to enable or disable DPS as well as to define the value of dynamic preamble for transmission and reception for a given time. DPS is only supported by the HRP UWB PHY.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8.2.15.1 MLME-DPS.request

The MLME-DPS.request primitive allows the next higher layer to request that the PHY utilize a given pair of preamble codes for a single use pending expiration of the DpsIndexDuration.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DPS.request        (
                        TxDpsIndex
                        RxDpsIndex
                        DpsIndexDuration
                        )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-36.

Table 8-36—MLME-DPS.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
TxDpsIndex	Integer	0, 13–16, 21–24	The index value for the transmitter. A value of 0 disables the index and indicates that the *phyCurrentCode* value is to be used, as defined in 16.2.5.1. Other values indicate the preamble code, as defined in Table 16-7.
RxDpsIndex	Integer	0, 13–16, 21–24	The index value for the receiver. A value of 0 disables the index and indicates that the *phyCurrentCode* value is to be used, as defined in 16.2.5.1. Other values indicate the preamble code, as defined in Table 16-7.
DpsIndexDuration	Integer	0x000000–0xffffff	The number of symbols for which the transmitter and receiver will utilize the respective DPS indices if a MCPS-DATA.request primitive is not issued.

This primitive may also be generated to cancel a previously generated request to enable the transmitter and receiver dynamic preambles. The use of the index for the transmitter and receiver is enabled or disabled exactly once per primitive request.

The MLME starts the timer that assures that the device returns to a normal operating state with default preambles if a following MCPS-DATA.request primitive does not occur. After starting the timer, the MLME responds with a MLME-DPS.confirm primitive with the appropriate Status parameter.

8.2.15.2 MLME-DPS.confirm

The MLME-DPS.confirm primitive reports the results of the attempt to enable or disable the DPS.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DPS.confirm        (
                        Status
                        )
```

The primitive parameter is defined in Table 8-37.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-37—MLME-DPS.confirm parameter

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, DPS_NOT_SUPPORTED	The result of the request to enable or disable dynamic preambles.

The MLME-DPS.confirm primitive is generated by the MLME and issued to its next higher layer in response to an MLME-DPS.request primitive.

If any parameter in the MLME-DPS.request primitive is not supported or is out of range, the Status of DPS_NOT_SUPPORTED is returned. If the request to enable or disable the DPS was successful, the MLME issues the MLME-DPS.confirm primitive with a Status of SUCCESS.

8.2.15.3 MLME-DPS.indication

The MLME-DPS.indication primitive indicates the expiration of the DpsIndexDuration and the resetting of the DPS values in the PHY.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DPS.indication        ()
```

If a MCPS-DATA.request primitive is not received before the timer expires, the MLME issues the MLME-DPS.indication primitive to the next higher layer.

8.2.16 Primitives for channel sounding

These primitives are used to obtain the results of a channel sounding from an RDEV that supports the optional sounding capability.

8.2.16.1 MLME-SOUNDING.request

The MLME-SOUNDING.request primitive is used by the next higher layer to request that the PHY respond with channel sounding information. The MLME-SOUNDING.request primitive shall be supported by all RDEVs; however, the underlying sounding capability is optional in all cases.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-SOUNDING.request      ()
```

If the feature is supported, the MLME will begin the sounding procedure.

8.2.16.2 MLME-SOUNDING.confirm

The MLME-CHANNEL.confirm primitive reports the result of a request to the PHY to provide channel sounding information. The MLME-SOUNDING.confirm primitive shall be supported by all RDEVs; however, the underlying sounding capability is optional in all cases.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-SOUNDING.confirm        (
                             SoundingList,
                             Status
                             )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-38.

Table 8-38—MLME-SOUNDING.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
SoundingList	List of sounding points	—	Results of the sounding measurement.
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, NO_DATA, SOUNDING_NOT_SUPPORTED	The status of the attempt to return sounding data.

The elements of a SoundingList are defined in Table 8-39.

Table 8-39—Elements of a SoundingList

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
SoundingTime	Signed integer	—	The LSB represents a nominal 16 ps. (see NOTE).
SoundingAmplitude	Signed integer	—	A relative measurement or the received signal strength.
NOTE—Each element of the *SoundingList* contains a *SoundingTime* and a *SoundingAmplitude*. The *SoundingTime* is a signed integer, and the LSB for the HRP UWB PHY represents a nominal 16 ps (2^{-7} of a chip time), and for the LRP UWB PHY 1ps (2^{-20} of a chip time). The *SoundingAmplitude* is a signed integer representing a relative measurement. The *SoundingAmplitudes* have no absolute meaning, only a relative meaning.			

If the channel sounding information is available, the Status parameter will be set to SUCCESS and the SoundingList will contain valid data.

If the MLME-SOUNDING.request primitive is received when there is no information present, e.g., when the PHY is in the process of performing a measurement, the Status parameter will be set to NO_DATA.

If the channel sounding capability is not supported by the PHY, the Status parameters will be set to UNSUPPORTED_ATTRIBUTE.

8.2.17 Primitives for ranging calibration

These primitives are used to obtain the results of a ranging calibration request from an RDEV.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8.2.17.1 MLME-CALIBRATE.request

The MLME-CALIBRATE.request primitive attempts to have the PHY respond with RMARKER offset information. The MLME-CALIBRATE.request primitive shall be implemented by RDEVs.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-CALIBRATE.request          ()
```

The MLME issues the MLME-CALIBRATE.confirm primitive with the appropriate information.

8.2.17.2 MLME-CALIBRATE.confirm

The MLME-CALIBRATE.confirm primitive reports the result of a request to the PHY to provide internal propagation path information. The MLME-CALIBRATE.confirm primitive shall be implemented by RDEVs.

```
MLME-CALIBRATE.confirm          (
                                CalTxRMarkerOffset,
                                CalRxRMarkerOffset,
                                Status
                                )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-40.

Table 8-40—MLME-CALIBRATE.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
CalTxRMarkerOffset	Unsigned Integer	0x00000000–0xffffffff	A count of the propagation time from the ranging counter to the transmit antenna. For the HRP UWB PHY the LSB of a time value represents 2^{-7} of a chip time at the mandatory chipping rate of 499.2 MHz. For the LRP UWB PHY the LSB of a time value represents 2^{-20} of the base mode chipping rate of 1 MHz.
CalRxRMarkerOffset	Unsigned Integer	0x00000000–0xffffffff	A count of the propagation time from the receive antenna to the ranging counter. For the HRP UWB PHY the LSB of a time value represents 2^{-7} of a chip time at the mandatory chipping rate of 499.2 MHz. For the LRP UWB PHY the LSB of a time value represents 2^{-20} of the base mode chipping rate of 1 MHz.
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, NO_DATA, COMPUTATION_NEEDED, UNSUPPORTED_ATTRIBUTE	The status of the attempt to retrieve internal propagation path information from the PHY.

The MLME-CALIBRATE.confirm primitive is generated by the MLME and issued to its next higher layer in response to a MLME-CALIBRATE.request primitive.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

If the feature is supported, the MLME issues the MLME-CALIBRATE.confirm primitive with a Status of SUCCESS.

If the MLME-CALIBRATE.request primitive is received when there is no information present, e.g., when the PHY is in the process of performing a measurement, the Status parameter will be set to NO_DATA.

If the PHY does not support autonomous self-calibration, the Status parameter will be set to a value of COMPUTATION_NEEDED. This indicates to the next higher layer that it should use the sounding primitives to finish the calibration.

If the channel sounding capability is not present in the PHY, the Status parameter will be set to a value of UNSUPPORTED_ATTRIBUTE.

8.2.18 Primitives for Beacon Generation

8.2.18.1 MLME-BEACON.request

The MLME-BEACON.request primitive requests the generation of a Beacon frame or Enhanced Beacon frame in a nonbeacon-enabled PAN, either in response to a Beacon Request command or Enhanced Beacon Request command when *macBeaconAutoRespond* is FALSE, or on demand, e.g., to send beacons to enable a TSCH passive scan.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-BEACON.request          (
                             BeaconType,
                             Channel,
                             ChannelPage,
                             SuperFrameOrder,
                             HeaderIeList,
                             PayloadIeList,
                             HeaderIeIdList,
                             NestedIeSubIdList,
                             BeaconSecurityLevel,
                             BeaconKeyIdMode,
                             BeaconKeySource,
                             BeaconKeyIndex,
                             DstAddrMode
                             DstAddr,
                             BsnSuppression
                             )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-41.

Table 8-41—MLME-BEACON.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
BeaconType	Enumeration	BEACON, ENHANCED BEACON	Indicates if the beacon request to be sent is a beacon or an enhanced beacon.
Channel	Integer	Any valid channel number	The channel number to use.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-41—MLME-BEACON.request parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
ChannelPage	Integer	Any valid channel page	The channel page to use.
SuperframeOrder	Integer	0–15	The length of the active portion of the superframe, including the beacon frame.
HeaderIeList	List of header IEs as described in 7.4.2	—	The header IEs, excluding Termination IEs, to be included in the Beacon frame. If empty, then no header IEs are included.
PayloadIeList	List of payload IEs as described in 7.4.3	—	The payload IEs, excluding Termination IEs, to be included in the Beacon frame. If empty, then no payload IEs are included.
HeaderIeIdList	List of header IE IDs, as described in Table 7-7.	—	The IDs of header IEs, excluding Termination IEs, to be added to the frame. The MAC will provide the content for the IE.
NestedIeSubIdList	List of Nested IE sub-IDs, as described in Table 7-16 and Table 7-17	—	The sub-IDs of nested IEs, excluding Termination IEs, to be added to the Data frame. The MAC will provide the content for the IE.
BeaconSecurityLevel	Integer	0x00–0x07	The security level to be used for beacon frames, as described in Table 9-6.
BeaconKeyIdMode	Integer	0x00–0x03	The mode used to identify the key to be used, as defined in Table 9-7. This parameter is ignored if the BeaconSecurityLevel parameter is set to 0x00.
BeaconKeySource	Set of octets	As specified by the BeaconKeyIdMode parameter	The originator of the key to be used, as defined in 9.4.3.1. This parameter is ignored if the BeaconKeyIdMode parameter is ignored or set to 0x00 or 0x01.
BeaconKeyIndex	Integer	0x01–0xff	The index of the key to be used, as defined in 9.4.3.2. This parameter is ignored if the BeaconKeyIdMode parameter is ignored or set to 0x00.
DstAddrMode	Enumeration	NO_ADDRESS, SHORT, EXTENDED	The destination addressing mode, as described in 7.2.1.8, for this primitive and subsequent beacon.
DstAddr	Short address or extended address	As specified by the DstAddrMode parameter	If sent in response to an MLME-BEACON-REQUEST.indication, the device who sent the beacon request, otherwise the short broadcast address.
BsnSuppression	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If BeaconType is ENHANCED_BEACON, then if BsnSuppression is TRUE, the EBSN is omitted from the frame and the Sequence Number Suppression field of the Frame Control field is set to one.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The MLME-BEACON.request primitive may be generated by a higher layer when a beacon or enhanced beacon is to be sent in a nonbeacon-enabled PAN, either on demand, or in response to a MLME-BEACON-REQUEST.indication when *macBeaconAutoRespond* is FALSE.

On receipt of the MLME-BEACON.request primitive, the MAC sublayer entity constructs and transmits a beacon or enhanced beacon depending on the value of the BeaconType parameter.

The MAC sublayer builds an MPDU to transmit from the supplied arguments. The DstAddrMode parameters correspond to the Addressing fields in the Frame Control field, as described in 7.2.1, and are used to construct both the Frame Control and Addressing fields of the MHR.

The frame control and addressing mode options for beacon and enhanced beacons are described in 7.3.1.

The address used by the coordinator in its beacon frames is determined by the current value of *macShortAddress*, which is set by the next higher layer before issuing this primitive.

If the SecurityLevel parameter is set to a valid value other than 0x00, indicating that security is required for this frame, the MLME will set the Security Enabled field of the Frame Control field to one. The MAC sublayer will perform outgoing processing on the frame, as described in 7.2.1.

If BeaconType is set to zero, the *macBsn* is used for the sequence number. If BeaconType is set to one, and BsnSuppression is FALSE, the *macEbsn* is used. If BeaconType is set to one, and BsnSuppression is TRUE, then the sequence number is omitted and the Sequence Number Suppression field of the Frame Control field is set to one.

If BeaconType is set to one, then an enhanced beacon is constructed using the list of IEs in *macEbIeList*, and the IE Present field of the Frame Control field is set to one.

If the length of the beacon frame exceeds *aMaxPhyPacketSize* (e.g., due to the additional overhead required for security processing), the MAC sublayer shall discard the beacon frame and issue the MLME-BEACON.confirm primitive with a Status of FRAME_TOO_LONG.

If the transmission uses CSMA-CA and the CSMA-CA algorithm failed due to adverse conditions on the channel, and the TxOptions parameter specifies that a direct transmission is required, the MAC sublayer will discard the MSDU and issue the MLME-BEACON.confirm primitive with a Status of CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE.

If the MPDU was successfully transmitted and, if requested, an acknowledgment was received, the MAC sublayer will issue the MLME-BEACON.confirm primitive with a Status of SUCCESS.

If any parameter in the MLME-BEACON.request primitive is not supported or is out of range, the MAC sublayer will issue the MLME-BEACON.confirm primitive with a Status of INVALID_PARAMETER.

8.2.18.2 MLME-BEACON.confirm

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-BEACON.confirm          (
                             Status
                             )
```

The primitive parameter is defined in Table 8-42.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-42—MLME-BEACON.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE, FRAME_TOO_LONG, INVALID_PARAMETER	The result of the attempt to send the beacon or enhanced beacon.

The MLME-BEACON.confirm primitive is generated by the MAC sublayer entity in response to an MLME-BEACON.request primitive. The MLME-BEACON.confirm primitive returns a Status of either SUCCESS, indicating that the request to transmit was successful, or the appropriate error code. The Status values are fully described in 8.2.18.1.

On receipt of the MLME-BEACON.confirm primitive, the higher layer is notified of the result of its request to transmit a beacon or enhanced beacon. If the transmission attempt was successful, the Status parameter will be set to SUCCESS. Otherwise, the Status parameter will indicate the error. If an enhanced beacon was requested, and the device does not support enhanced beacons, INVALID_PARAMETER will be returned.

8.2.18.3 MLME-BEACON-REQUEST.indication

The MLME-BEACON-REQUEST.indication primitive indicates the receipt of a Beacon Request command or an Enhanced Beacon Request command. It is only available when *macBeaconAutoRespond* is FALSE.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-BEACON-REQUEST.indication(
                                BeaconType,
                                SrcAddrMode,
                                SrcAddr,
                                DstPanId,
                                HeaderIeList,
                                PayloadIeList
                                )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-43.

Table 8-43—MLME-BEACON-REQUEST.indication parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
BeaconType	Enumeration	BEACON, ENHANCED BEACON	Indicates if the beacon request was for a beacon or an enhanced beacon.
SrcAddr Mode	Enumeration	NO_ADDRESS, SHORT, EXTENDED	The source addressing mode, as described in 7.2.1.10, for device from whom the beacon request was received.
SrcAddr	Short address or extended address	As specified by the SrcAddrMode parameter	The device who sent the beacon request, if present, otherwise the short broadcast address.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-43—MLME-BEACON-REQUEST.indication parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DstPanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The PAN ID contained in the beacon request, or the broadcast PAN ID if PAN ID not present.
HeaderIeList	Set of header IEs as described in 7.4.2	—	The header IEs, excluding Termination IEs, to be included in the Beacon frame. If empty, then no header IEs are included.
PayloadIeList	Set of payload IEs as described in 7.4.3	—	The payload IEs, excluding Termination IEs, to be included in the Beacon frame. If empty, then no payload IEs are included.

The MLME-BEACON-REQUEST.indication primitive is generated by the MAC sublayer and issued to a higher layer on receipt of a beacon request or enhanced beacon request. The MLME-BEACON-REQUEST.indication is only generated when *macBeaconAutoRespond* is FALSE.

A higher layer may use the information contained in the MLME-BEACON-REQUEST.indication to construct and send a beacon or enhanced beacon using the MLME-BEACON.request primitive.

8.2.19 Primitives for TSCH

8.2.19.1 MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request

The MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request primitive is used to add, delete, or modify a slotframe at the MAC sublayer. The SlotframeHandle is supplied by a higher layer.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request     (
                                SlotframeHandle,
                                Operation,
                                Size
                               )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-44.

Table 8-44—MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
SlotframeHandle	Integer	0x00–0xff	Unique identifier of the slotframe.
Operation	Enumeration	ADD, DELETE, MODIFY	Operation to perform on the slotframe.
Size	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Number of timeslots in the new slotframe.

An MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request may be used by a higher layer to add, delete, or modify a slotframe at the MAC sublayer.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

On receipt of an MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request, the MLME shall verify the parameters passed with the primitive. If the requested operation is set to ADD, the MLME shall attempt to add an entry into the *macSlotframeTable*. A *macSlotframeTable* entry shall be stored for each slotframe. If the operation is set to DELETE, all parameters except SlotframeHandle and operation shall be ignored, and the slotframe record shall be deleted from the *macSlotframeTable*. If there are links in the slotframe that are being deleted, the links shall be deleted from the MAC layer. If the device is in the middle of using a link in the slotframe that is being updated or deleted, the update shall be postponed until after the link operation completes either through a successful unacknowledged transmission, time-out for receipt of an expected acknowledgment, receipt of an invalid or unacknowledged frame, or transmission of an acknowledgment upon receipt of a valid frame. If the operation is set to MODIFY, it shall attempt to update an existing slotframe record in the table.

8.2.19.2 MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.confirm

The MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.confirm primitive reports the results of the MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request command. The SlotframeHandle is that which was supplied by a higher layer in the prior call to the MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.confirm     (
                               SlotframeHandle,
                               Status
                               )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-45.

Table 8-45—MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
Slotframe Handle	Integer	0x00–0xff	Unique identifier of the slotframe to be added, deleted, or modified.
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, INVALID_PARAMETER, SLOTFRAME_NOT_FOUND, MAX_SLOTFRAMES_EXCEEDED	Indicates results of the MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request.

The MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.confirm primitive is generated by the MLME when the MLME-SET-SLOTFRAME.request is completed.

If any of the arguments fail a range check, the Status shall be INVALID_PARAMETER. If a new slotframe is being added and the *macSlotframeTable* is already full, the Status shall be MAX_SLOTFRAMES_EXCEEDED. If an update or deletion is being requested and the corresponding slotframe cannot be found, the Status shall be SLOTFRAME_NOT_FOUND. If an add is being requested with a SlotframeHandle corresponding to an existing slotframe, the Status shall be INVALID_PARAMETER. Otherwise the Status code shall be set to SUCCESS.

8.2.19.3 MLME-SET-LINK.request

The MLME-SET-LINK.request primitive requests to add a new link, or delete or modify an existing link at the MAC sublayer.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-SET-LINK.request        (
                             Operation,
                             LinkHandle,
                             SlotframeHandle,
                             Timeslot,
                             ChannelOffset,
                             TxLink,
                             RxLink,
                             SharedLink,
                             TimekeepingLink,
                             PriorityLink,
                             LinkType,
                             NodeAddrMode,
                             NodeAddr
                             )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-46.

Table 8-46—MLME-SET-LINK.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
Operation	Enumeration	ADD_LINK, DELETE_LINK, MODIFY_LINK	Type of link management operation to be performed.
LinkHandle	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Unique identifier, local to specified slotframe, for the link, as described in Table 8-85.
SlotframeHandle	Integer	0x00–0xff	The slotframe handle of the slotframe to which the link is associated.
Timeslot	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Timeslot of the link to be added, as described in 6.2.6.
ChannelOffset	Integer	As defined in 6.2.6.3	The Channel offset of the link.
TxLink	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Set to TRUE if the link is a TX link, otherwise set to FALSE.
RxLink	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Set to TRUE if the link is an RX link, otherwise set to FALSE.
SharedLink	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Set to TRUE if the link is a shared link, otherwise set to FALSE.
TimekeepingLink	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Set to TRUE if the link is to be used for clock synchronization, as described 6.5.4, otherwise set to FALSE.
PriorityLink	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Set to TRUE if the link is to be used only for high priority traffic, as described 6.2.5.2, otherwise set to FALSE.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-46—MLME-SET-LINK.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
LinkType	Enumeration	ADVERTISING, NORMAL	Set to ADVERTISING if the link is to be used to advertise the network, otherwise set to NORMAL.
NodeAddrMode	Enumeration	SHORT, EXTENDED	The addressing mode of the neighbor device connected to the link.
NodeAddr	Short address or extended address	As specified by NodeAddrMode	Address of neighbor device connected by the link.

MLME-SET-LINK.request primitive may be used by the device management layer to add, delete, or modify a link in a slotframe.

When Operation is set to ADD_LINK, the MAC layer shall attempt to add the link to a new *macLinkTable* associated with the indicated slotframe. When Operation is set to DELETE_LINK, all parameters except LinkHandle and SlotframeHandle shall be ignored, and the indicated link shall be deleted from the associated *macLinkTable*. When Operation is set to MODIFY_LINK, the MAC layer shall attempt to update the indicated link. If the link is currently in use, the delete or modify operation shall be postponed until the link operation completes, either through a successful unacknowledged transmission, time-out for receipt of an expected acknowledgment, receipt of an invalid or unacknowledged frame, or transmission of an acknowledgment upon receipt of a valid frame. Upon completion, the result of the operation shall be reported through the corresponding MLME-SET-LINK.confirm primitive.

If the TxLink is TRUE and SharedLink is TRUE, then the device shall back off according to the method described in 6.2.5.2.

If TimekeepingLink is TRUE and RxLink is TRUE, then a neighbor is to be used for timing synchronization.

If LinkType is set to ADVERTISE, the links may be used to send Enhanced Beacon frames as the result of the MAC receiving a MLME-BEACON.request.

8.2.19.4 MLME-SET-LINK.confirm

The MLME-SET-LINK.confirm primitive indicates the result of add, delete, or modify link operation. The LinkHandle and SlotframeHandle are those that were supplied by a higher layer in the prior call to MLME-SET-LINK.request

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-SET-LINK.confirm        (
                             LinkHandle,
                             SlotframeHandle,
                             Status
                             )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-47.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-47—MLME-SET-LINK.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
LinkHandle	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Unique identifier, local to specified slotframe, for the link, as described in Table 8-85.
SlotframeHandle	Integer	0x00–0xff	The slotframe handle of the slotframe to which the link is associated.
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, INVALID_PARAMETER, UNKNOWN_LINK, MAX_LINKS_EXCEEDED	Result of the request operation.

The Status of the primitive shall indicate SUCCESS if the operation completed successfully. If any of the arguments fail a range check, the Status shall be INVALID_PARAMETER. If a new link is being added and the *macLinkTable* is already full, the Status shall be MAX_LINKS_EXCEEDED. A *macLinkTable* shall be stored for each link in a slotframe. If an update or deletion is being requested and the corresponding link cannot be found, the Status shall be UNKNOWN_LINK. If an add is being requested with a LinkHandle corresponding to an existing link, the Status shall be INVALID_PARAMETER.

8.2.19.5 MLME-TSCH-MODE.request

The MLME-TSCH-MODE.request requests to put the MAC into or out of the TSCH mode.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-TSCH-MODE.request        (
                              TschMode,
                              TschCca
                              )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-48.

Table 8-48—MLME-TSCH-MODE.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
TschMode	Enumeration	ON, OFF	Used to indicate if the TSCH mode is to be started or stopped.
TschCca	Enumeration	ON, OFF	Used to indicate that CCA is to be used for transmission.

The MLME-TSCH-MODE.request may be generated by a higher layer after the device has received advertisements from the network and is synchronized to a network, i.e., in response to an MLME-BEACON-NOTIFY.indication.

Upon receipt of the request with TschMode set to ON, the MAC shall start operating its TSCH state machine using slotframes and links already contained in its *macSlotframeTable* and *macLinkTable* MAC PIB attributes. To successfully complete this request the device shall already be synchronized to a network. The MAC shall stop using slotframes and links upon receipt of the request with TschMode set to off.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8.2.19.6 MLME-TSCH-MODE.confirm

The MLME-TSCH-MODE.confirm primitive reports the result of the MLME-TSCH-MODE.request primitive.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-TSCH-MODE.confirm        (
                              TschMode,
                              Status
                              )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-49.

Table 8-49—MLME-TSCH-MODE.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
TschMode	Enumeration	ON, OFF	Used to indicate if the TSCH mode was started or stopped.
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, NO_SYNC	Indicates results of the MLME-TSCH-MODE.request.

The MLME-TSCH-MODE.confirm is generated by the MAC layer to indicate completion of the corresponding request. If the corresponding request was to turn on its TSCH state machine, but the MAC layer has not been synchronized to a network, the Status shall be NO_SYNC. Otherwise, the Status shall be SUCCESS.

If the corresponding request was to turn off its TSCH state machine, the Status shall be SUCCESS, and the MAC layer shall stop its TSCH state machine if in use.

8.2.19.7 MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.request

The MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.request primitive requests that frames be sent to a device with a minimum period.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.request       (
                              DstAddr,
                              DstAddrMode,
                              KeepAlivePeriod
                              )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-50.

Upon receipt of the request, the MAC layer shall monitor for frames sent to the destination node specified in the DstAddr parameter. If no frame is sent to the destination node in KeepAlivePeriod, the MAC shall send a Data frame with no payload and the AR field set to request acknowledgment to its time source neighbor and use the resulting Enh-Ack frame to perform acknowledgment based synchronization.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-50—MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DstAddr	Short address or extended address	As specified by the DstAddrMode parameter	Address of the neighbor device with which to maintain timing.
DstAddrMode	Enumeration	SHORT, EXTENDED	The destination addressing mode of the device to monitor.
KeepAlivePeriod	Integer	0x0001–0xffff	Period in timeslots after which a frame is sent if no frames have been sent to DstAddr.

8.2.19.8 MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.confirm

The MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.confirm primitive reports the results of a request that frames be sent to a device with a minimum period.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.confirm         (
                                Status
                                )
```

The primitive parameter is defined in Table 8-51.

Table 8-51—MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, INVALID_PARAMETER	Indicates results of the MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.request.

The MAC layer shall generate MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.confirm to acknowledge that it received MLME-KEEP-ALIVE request. If the DstAddr of the MLME-KEEP-ALIVE.request does not exist in the devices neighbor table and is not 0xffff, the Status of the primitive shall indicate INVALID_PARAMETER. Otherwise it shall return SUCCESS.

8.2.20 Primitives for DSME GTS management

The MLME-SAP DSME GTS management primitives define how DSME GTSs are requested and maintained. A device wishing to use these primitives and DSME GTSs in general will already be tracking the beacons of its coordinator.

8.2.20.1 MLME-DSME-GTS.request

This primitive allows a DSME-enabled device to perform one of the following actions:

— Allocation of new DSME GTS
— Deallocation of an existing DSME GTS
— Notification of a duplicated allocation

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

— Reduction of an existing DSME GTSs
— Restart of an existing DSME GTSs

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DSME-GTS.request        (
                              DeviceAddress,
                              ManagementType,
                              Direction,
                              PrioritizedChannelAccess,
                              NumSlot,
                              PreferredSuperframeId,
                              PreferredSlotId,
                              DsmeSabSpecification,
                              SecurityLevel,
                              KeyIdMode,
                              KeySource,
                              KeyIndex,
                              AllocationOrder
                              )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-52.

Table 8-52—MLME-DSME-GTS.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DeviceAddress	Integer	0x0000–0xfffd	The address of the neighboring device to request the management of DSME GTSs.
ManagementType	Enumeration	DEALLOCATION, ALLOCATION, DUPLICATE_ ALLOCATION, REDUCE, RESTART, EXPIRATION	The type of the management request.
Direction	Enumeration	TX, RX	The direction of DSME GTSs.
PrioritizedChannelAccess	Enumeration	LOW, HIGH	The priority level.
NumSlot	Integer	0x00–0xff	The number of slots to be requested for allocation. This parameter is ignored if the ManagementType is not ALLOCATION.
PreferredSuperframeId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The index of the preferred superframe in a multi-superframe. This parameter is ignored if the ManagementType is not ALLOCATION.
PreferredSlotId	Integer	0x00–0x0e	The index of the preferred slot in the preferred superframe. This parameter is ignored if the ManagementType is not ALLOCATION.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-52—MLME-DSME-GTS.request parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DsmeSabSpecification	—	As defined in Table 8-53	If the ManagementType is ALLOCATION, this parameter contains the information of the current DSME GTS allocation and slot availability in one hop neighborhood of the requesting device. If the ManagementType is not 0b001, this parameter indicates the DSME GTSs to deallocate, notify duplicated allocation, reduce, or restart.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
AllocationOrder	Integer	0x00–0x08	As defined in 7.5.13.

The elements of the DsmeSabSpecification are given in Table 8-53.

Table 8-53—Elements of a DsmeSabSpecification

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DsmeSabSubBlockLength	Integer	0x00–0xff	The length of the DSME SAB sub-block in units in Figure 6-53 for channel adaptation mode or in Figure 6-55 for channel hopping mode.
DsmeSabSubBlockIndex	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The beginning of the DSME SAB sub-block in the entire SAB as illustrated in Figure 6-53 for channel adaptation mode or in Figure 6-55 for channel hopping mode.
DsmeSabSubBlock	Integer	—	The sub-block of the DSME SAB as described in Figure 6-53 for channel adaptation mode or in Figure 6-55 for channel hopping mode.

The MLME-DSME-GTS.request primitive is generated by the higher layer of a device and issued to its MLME to request the allocation of new DSME GTSs or to request the deallocation, duplicated allocation notification, reduce, or change of existing DSME GTSs.

On receipt of the MLME-DSME-GTS.request primitive, the MLME of the device shall send a DSME GTS Request command, as described in 7.5.14, to the DeviceAddress. The ManagementType, Direction, PrioritizedChannelAccess, NumSlot, PreferredSuperframeId, PreferredSlotId, DsmeSabSubBlockIndex, and DsmeSabSubBlockLength parameters shall be contained in the corresponding fields of the command.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The DSME SAB Sub-block field shall contain a bitmap of a sub-block of *macDsmeSab*. The DsmeSabSubBlockIndex and DsmeSabSubBlockLength indicate the bitmap of which sub-block shall be contained in the command.

If *macShortAddress* is equal to 0xfffe or 0xffff, the Source device is not permitted to request a DSME GTS allocation. In this case, the MLME issues the MLME-DSME-GTS.confirm primitive containing a Status of NO_SHORT_ADDRESS.

If the SecurityLevel parameter is set to a valid value other than 0x00, indicating that security is required for this frame, the MLME shall set the Security Enabled field of the Frame Control field to one. The MAC sublayer shall perform outgoing processing on the frame based on SecurityLevel, KeyIdMode, KeySource, and KeyIndex parameters, as described in 9.2.1. If any error occurs during outgoing frame processing, the MLME shall discard the frame and issue the MLME-DSME-GTS.confirm primitive with the Status returned by outgoing frame processing.

If the DSME GTS Request command cannot be sent due to the channel condition, the MLME shall issue the MLME-DSME-GTS.confirm primitive with a Status of CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE.

If the MLME successfully transmits a DSME GTS request command, the MLME expects an acknowledgment in return. If an acknowledgment is not received, the MLME shall issue the MLME-DSME-GTS.confirm primitive with a Status of NO_ACK.

If the DSME GTS Response command from the destination device is not received within the expected time, the MLME of the source device shall notify the next higher layer of the failure by the MLME-DSME-GTS.confirm primitive with a Status of NO_DATA.

8.2.20.2 MLME-DSME-GTS.indication

This primitive reports the reception of a DSME GTS request command.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DSME-GTS.indication        (
                                DeviceAddress,
                                ManagementType,
                                Direction,
                                PrioritizedChannelAccess,
                                NumSlot,
                                PreferredSuperframeId,
                                PreferredSlotId,
                                DsmeSabSpecification,
                                AllocationOrder
                                )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-54.

This primitive is generated by the MLME of a device and issued to its next higher layer upon the reception of a DSME GTS Request command.

On receipt of the MLME-DSME-GTS.indication primitive, the higher layer is notified of the reception of a DSME GTS request.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-54—MLME-DSME-GTS.indication parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DeviceAddress	Short address	0x0000–0xfffd	The address of the device that has transmitted the received DSME GTS request command.
ManagementType	Enumeration	DEALLOCATION, ALLOCATION, DUPLICATED_ ALLOCATION, REDUCE, RESTART, EXPIRATION	The type of the management request.
Direction	Enumeration	TX, RX	The direction of DSME GTSs.
PrioritizedChanne lAccess	Enumeration	LOW, HIGH	The priority level.
NumSlot	Integer	0x00–0xff	The number of slots to be requested for allocation. This parameter is ignored if the ManagementType is not ALLOCATION.
PreferredSuperfra meId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The index of the preferred superframe in a multi-superframe. This parameter is ignored if the ManagementType is not ALLOCATION.
PreferredSlotId	Integer	0x00–0x0e	The index of the preferred slot in the preferred superframe. This parameter is ignored if the ManagementType is not ALLOCATION.
DsmeSabSpecific ation	—	As defined in Table 8-53	If the ManagementType is ALLOCATION, this parameter contains the information of the current DSME GTS allocation and slot availability in one hop neighborhood of the requesting device. If the ManagementType is not ALLOCATION, this parameter indicates the DSME GTSs to deallocate, notify duplicated allocation, reduce, or restart.
AllocationOrder	Integer	0x00–0x08	As defined in 7.5.13.

8.2.20.3 MLME-DSME-GTS.response

This primitive allows the next higher layer of a device to respond to the MLME-DSME-GTS.indication primitive.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DSME-GTS.response      (
                            DeviceAddress,
                            ManagementType,
                            Direction,
                            PrioritizedChannelAccess,
                            ChannelOffset,
                            DsmeSabSpecification,
                            AllocationOrder,
                            BiIndex,
                            SuperframeId,
```


Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

SlotId
ChannelIndex,
Status
)

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-55.

Table 8-55—MLME-DSME-GTS.response parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DeviceAddress	Short address	0x0000–0xfffd	The address of the device that has transmitted the received DSME GTS request command.
ManagementType	Enumeration	DEALLOCATION, ALLOCATION, DUPLICATED_ ALLOCATION, REDUCE, RESTART, EXPIRATION	The type of the management request.
Direction	Enumeration	TX, RX	The direction of DSME GTSs.
PrioritizedChannel Access	Enumeration	LOW, HIGH	The priority level.
ChannelOffset	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	This parameter specifies the offset value of Hopping Sequence.
DsmeSabSpecificat ion	—	As defined in Table 8-53	This parameter indicates the DSME GTSs to allocate, deallocate, notify duplicated allocation, reduce, or restart.
AllocationOrder	Integer	0x00–0x08	As defined in 7.5.13.
BiIndex	Integer	0x00–0xff	As defined in 7.5.13.
SuperframeId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	As defined in 7.5.13.
SlotId	Integer	0x00–0x0e	As defined in 7.5.13.
ChannelIndex	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	As defined in 7.5.13.
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, DENIED, INVALID_PARAMETER	The status of the DSME-GTS request.

The MLME-DSME-GTS.response primitive can be generated by the next higher layer and issued to its MLME to respond to the allocation, deallocation, duplicated allocation notification, reduce, or restart of DSME GTS.

On receipt of the MLME-DSME-GTS.response primitive, the MLME of the device shall generate a DSME GTS Response command, as described in 7.5.15. The ManagementType, Direction, PrioritizedChannelAccess, ChannelOffset, and DsmeSabSpecification parameters shall be contained in the corresponding fields of the command. The DSME GTS Destination Address field shall be set to the value of DeviceAddress parameter. The Status field of the command shall be set to zero if the Status parameter value is SUCCESS. The Status field shall be set to one if the Status parameter value is DENIED. The Status field shall be set to two if the Status parameter value is INVALID_PARAMETER. Then the device shall send the

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

DSME GTS Response command to its one-hop neighbors with the destination address set to the short broadcast address.

8.2.20.4 MLME-DSME-GTS.confirm

This primitive reports the results of a request to allocate, deallocate, notify duplicated allocation, reduce, or restart DSME GTSs to the higher layer of the device.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DSME-GTS.confirm        (
                             DeviceAddress,
                             ManagementType,
                             Direction,
                             PrioritizedChannelAccess,
                             ChannelOffset,
                             DsmeSabSpecification,
                             Status,
                             AllocationOrder
                             BiIndex,
                             SuperframeId,
                             SlotId,
                             ChannelIndex
                             )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-56.

Table 8-56—MLME-DSME-GTS.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DeviceAddress	Short address	0x0000–0xfffd	The address of the device that has transmitted the received DSME-GTS Response command.
ManagementType	Enumeration	DEALLOCATION, ALLOCATION, DUPLICATED_ ALLOCATION, REDUCE, RESTART, EXPIRATION	The type of the management request.
Direction	Enumeration	TX, RX	The direction of DSME GTSs.
PrioritizedChannel Access	Enumeration	LOW, HIGH	The priority level.
ChannelOffset	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	This parameter specifies the offset value of Hopping Sequence.
DsmeSabSpecificati on	—	As defined in Table 8-53	This parameter indicates the DSME GTSs to allocate, deallocate, notify duplicated allocation, reduce, or restart.
AllocationOrder	Integer	0x00–0x08	As defined in 7.5.13.
BiIndex	Integer	0x00–0xff	As defined in 7.5.13.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-56—MLME-DSME-GTS.confirm parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
SuperframeId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	As defined in 7.5.13.
SlotId	Integer	0x00–0x0e	As defined in 7.5.13.
ChannelIndex	Integer	0x00–0x1f	As defined in 7.5.13.
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, DENIED, INVALID_PARAMETER, NO_ACK, NO_DATA, CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE	The status of the DSME-GTS request.

On receipt of a DSME GTS Response command, the device shall check the DSME GTS Destination Address field of the command.

If the DSME GTS Destination Address in this command is the same as *macShortAddress*, the device shall check the Status field of the command. If the value of the Status field in the command is zero (SUCCESS), the device shall generate a DSME GTS Notify command, as described in . The ManagementType, Direction, PrioritizedChannelAccess, ChannelOffset, and DsmeSabSpecification parameters shall be contained in the corresponding fields of the command. The DSME GTS Destination Address field shall be set to the value of DeviceAddress parameter. The Status field of the command shall be set to zero if the Status parameter value is SUCCESS. The Status field shall be set to one if the Status parameter value is DENIED. The Status field shall be set to two if the Status parameter value is INVALID_PARAMETER. Then the device shall broadcast the DSME GTS notify command to its one-hop neighbor.

Also, the MLME of the device shall notify the higher layer with the result of the request to allocate, deallocate, notify duplicated allocation, reduce, or restart DSME GTSs. If the value of the Status field in the command is zero, the Status in this primitive shall be set to SUCCESS. If the value of the Status field is one, the Status parameter shall be set to DENIED. If the value of the Status field is two, the Status parameter shall be set to INVALID_PARAMETER.

If the DSME GTS Destination Address field is different from *macShortAddress*, the device shall update its DSME SAB according to the DSME GTS SAB Specification of the received command.

On receipt of the MLME-DSME-GTS.confirm primitive, the higher layer is notified of the result of its request to notify duplicated allocation, reduce, or restart a DSME GTS.

8.2.21 Primitives for reporting the link status

8.2.21.1 MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.request

The MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.request primitive is used to request that a device start monitoring link quality statistic and periodically report the statistic results to the destination device.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.request (
                               DstAddr,
                               ReportPeriod
                               )
```


Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-57.

Table 8-57—MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DstAddr	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Short address of the Destination device to which the DSME-link report request is intended.
ReportPeriod	Integer	0x000000–0xffffff	The time interval between two DSME Link Status Report commands is defined as ReportPeriod × *aBaseSuperframeDuration* × 2^{MO} symbols. If the parameter equals to 0x000000, DSME Link Status Report command is not allowed to be sent.

On receipt of MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.request primitive by a device, the MLME of the device attempts to generate a DSME Link Status Report command as described in 8.2.21 with the information contained in this primitive, and if successful, sends it to the destination device according to the DstAddr parameter.

If the DSME Link Status Report command cannot be sent due to a CSMA-CA algorithm failure, the MLME shall issue the MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.confirm primitive with a Status of CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE.

If the MLME successfully transmits a DSME Link Status Report command, the MLME expects an acknowledgment in return. If an acknowledgment is not received, the MLME shall issue the MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.confirm primitive with a Status of NO_ACK.

If the DSME Link Status Report command has been acknowledged, the device shall send another DSME Link Report command again in the interval defined in the parameter ReportPeriod.

8.2.21.2 MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.indication

The MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.indication primitive is generated by the MAC sublayer and issued to the next higher layer on receipt of a DSME Link Status Report command.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.indication(
                                  DstAddr,
                                  LinkReportSpecification
                                  )
```

Table 8-58 specifies the parameters for the MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.indication request primitive.

The usage of the MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.indication primitive by the next higher layer is beyond the scope of this document.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-58—MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.indication parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DstAddr	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Short address of the Destination device to which the DSME link report request is intended.
LinkReportSpecification	Link Report Specification	As defined in 7.5.21	As defined in 7.5.21.

8.2.21.3 MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.confirm

The MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.confirm primitive is generated by the MLME and issued to its next higher layer in response to an MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.request primitive.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.confirm (
                                Status
                                )
```

Table 8-59 specifies the parameters for the MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.confirm primitive.

Table 8-59—MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
Status	Enumeration	CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE, NO_ACK, SUCCESS	The status of starting DSME link report.

The MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.confirm primitive returns a Status of either SUCCESS, indicating the MAC sublayer has started reporting its statistic results periodically, or the appropriate error code.

On receipt of the MLME-DSME-LINK-REPORT.confirm primitive by a device, the next higher layer is notified of the result of its request to start reporting link status in the PAN. If the request was successful, the Status parameter shall be set to SUCCESS. Otherwise, the Status parameter shall indicate the error.

8.2.22 Operating parameter change primitives

These primitives support the coordination of a change in PHY operating parameters among peer devices.

8.2.22.1 MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.request

The MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.request primitive is used by a device to instruct a second device to switch PHY operating parameters, including channel, band, PHY type, or other parameters specific to a PHY.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.request    (
                              DeviceAddrMode,
                              DeviceAddr,
                              PhyParameterList,
                              TxIndirect,
                              TargetTime,
                              SignalMethod,
                              RepeatCount,
                              RepeatInterval,
                              SecurityLevel,
                              KeyIdMode,
                              KeySource,
                              KeyIndex
                              )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-60.

Table 8-60—MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DeviceAddrMode	Enumeration	SHORT, EXTENDED	The addressing mode of the device being instructed to change its operating parameters.
DeviceAddr	Short address or extended address	As specified by the DeviceAddrMode parameter	The address of the device being instructed to change its operating parameters.
PhyParameterList	List of PHY PIB attributes and values	As defined in 11.3	A list of the PHY PIB attribute names and values representing the PHY operating parameters to be changed.
TxIndirect	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	When the TxIndirect parameter is set to TRUE, the multipurpose frame shall be sent using indirect transmission. When the parameter is set to FALSE, the multipurpose frame shall be sent using direct transmission.
TargetTime	Integer	$0–(2^{32}–1)$	The time, in microseconds, from the current time that the PHY operating parameter switch is to be carried out.
SignalMethod	Enumeration	USE_MP, USE_BEACON	The method to be used to signal intended switch.
RepeatCount	Integer	0–127	Number of times that the notification containing the PHY Parameter Change IE is repeated.
RepeatInterval	Integer	0–0xffff	The time, in microseconds, to delay between repeated transmissions.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-60—MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.request parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.

On receipt of the MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.request primitive, the MLME initiates the PHY parameter change notification procedure, as defined in 6.10.

If the device is the PAN coordinator of a beacon-enabled PAN that is using enhanced beacons, and the SignalMethod parameter value is USE_BEACON, the method described in 6.10.1 shall be initiated.

If the SignalMethod parameter value is USE_MP indicating the use of a multipurpose frame, the method described in 6.10.2 shall be initiated. The RepeatInterval parameter value should be greater than the time required to complete a transmission, acknowledgment, and possible retransmissions.

This primitive returns a Status of either SUCCESS, if the PHY parameter change notification procedure has been completed, or the appropriate Status parameter value indicating the reason for the request failure.

If the SignalMethod parameter in the request primitive is USE_BEACON and the device is a PAN coordinator in a beacon-enabled PAN that is not using enhanced beacon frames, the MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.confirm primitive shall return a Status of UNSUPPORTED_FEATURE.

If the SignalMethod parameter in the request primitive is USE_BEACON and the device is not a PAN coordinator in a beacon-enabled PAN, the MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.confirm primitive shall return a Status of INVALID_PARAMETER.

If the SignalMethod parameter value is USE_MP and the device does not support the use of multipurpose frames, the MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.confirm primitive shall return a Status of UNSUPPORTED_FEATURE.

If the SignalMethod parameter value is USE_MP, the RepeatCount parameter value in the request primitive is greater than zero, and the RepeatInterval value is not greater than zero, the MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.confirm primitive shall return with a Status of INVALID_PARAMETER.

8.2.22.2 MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.indication

The MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.indication primitive is used to indicate the reception of a multipurpose frame with a PHY Parameter Change IE and a Operating Mode Description IE.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.indication   (
                                DeviceAddrMode,
                                DeviceAddress,
                                PhyParameterList,
                                TargetTime,
                                NotificationTime,
```


Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

```
LocalTime,
SecurityLevel,
KeyIdMode,
KeySource,
KeyIndex
)
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-61.

Table 8-61—MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.indication parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DeviceAddrMode	Enumeration	SHORT, EXTENDED	The addressing mode of the device that transmitted the channel switch notification command.
DeviceAddress	—	As specified by the DeviceAddrMode parameter	The address of the device that transmitted the channel switch notification command.
PhyParameterList	List of PHY PIB attributes and values	As described in 11.3	A list of the PHY PIB attribute names and values representing the PHY operating parameters to be changed.
TargetTime	Integer	0–(2^{32}–1)	The time, in microseconds, from the current time that the PHY operating parameter switch is to be carried out.
NotificationTime	Integer	0–0xffff	Value of the Notification Time field of the received PHY Parameter Change IE.
LocalTime	Integer	Implementation-dependent	The time of reception of the multipurpose frame containing the IEs in the local device time reference.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.

On receipt of the MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.request primitive, the MLME initiates the PHY parameter change notification procedure, as defined in 6.10.

If the device is the PAN coordinator of a beacon-enabled PAN that is using enhanced beacons, and the SignalMethod parameter value is USE_BEACON, the method described in 6.10.1 shall be initiated.

If the SignalMethod parameter value is USE_MP indicating the use of a multipurpose frame, the method described in 6.10.2 shall be initiated. The RepeatInterval parameter value should be greater than the time required to complete a transmission, acknowledgment, and possible retransmissions.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8.2.22.3 MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.confirm

The MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.confirm primitive is used to inform the next higher layer of the initiating device whether the channel switching notification has completed successfully.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.confirm      (
                                DeviceAddrMode,
                                DeviceAddress,
                                Status
                                )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-62.

Table 8-62—MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DeviceAddrMode	Enumeration	SHORT, EXTENDED	The addressing mode given in the request primitive.
DeviceAddress	Short address or extended address	As specified by the DeviceAddrMode parameter	The address of the device given in the request primitive.
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, TRANSACTION_OVERFLOW, TRANSACTION_EXPIRED, NO_ACK, CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE, COUNTER_ERROR, FRAME_TOO_LONG, UNAVAILABLE_KEY, UNSUPPORTED_SECURITY, INVALID_PARAMETER, UNSUPPORTED_FEATURE	The status of the attempt to transmit the channel switching notification command.

This primitive returns a Status of either SUCCESS, if the PHY parameter change notification procedure has been completed, or the appropriate Status parameter value indicating the reason for the request failure.

If the SignalMethod parameter in the request primitive is USE_BEACON and the device is a PAN coordinator in a beacon-enabled PAN that is not using enhanced beacon frames, the MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.confirm primitive shall return a Status of UNSUPPORTED_FEATURE.

If the SignalMethod parameter in the request primitive is USE_BEACON and the device is not a PAN coordinator in a beacon-enabled PAN, the MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.confirm primitive shall return a Status of INVALID_PARAMETER.

If the SignalMethod parameter value is USE_MP and the device does not support the use of multipurpose frames, the MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.confirm primitive shall return a Status of UNSUPPORTED_FEATURE.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

If the SignalMethod parameter value is USE_MP, the RepeatCount parameter value in the request primitive is greater than zero, and the RepeatInterval value is not greater than zero, the MLME-PHY-OP-SWITCH.confirm primitive shall return with a Status of INVALID_PARAMETER.

8.2.23 TMCTP DBS allocation primitives

8.2.23.1 MLME-DBS.request

The MLME-DBS.request primitive is used when a TMCTP-child PAN coordinator requests the allocation or deallocation of a DBS and a channel to its TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator including the SPC.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DBS.request          (
                          RequesterCoordAddr,
                          RequestType,
                          DbsLength,
                          NumberOfDescendents,
                          SecurityLevel,
                          KeyIdMode,
                          KeySource,
                          KeyIndex
                          )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-63.

Table 8-63—MLME-DBS.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
RequesterCoordAddr	Short address	0x0000–0xffff	The address of the source requester PAN coordinator.
RequestType	Enumeration	ALLOCATION, DEALLOCATION	Indicates if the request is for allocation or deallocation of a TMCTP DBS.
DbsLength	Integer	0x00–0xff	Number of BOP slots being requested for the DBS.
NumberOfDescendents	Integer	0x00–0xff	The actual or expected number of descendant PAN coordinators. Set as zero if the PAN coordinator is not clear about how many descendants it will have.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.

On receipt of an MLME-DBS.request primitive, the MLME generates a DBS request command, as described in 7.5.23.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The SecurityLevel parameter specifies the level of security to be applied to the DBS request command frame. Typically, the DBS request command should not be implemented using security. However, if the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator requesting DBS allocation shares a key with the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator, then security may be specified.

8.2.23.2 MLME-DBS.indication

The MLME-DBS.indication primitive is generated to indicate the reception of a DBS Request command.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DBS.indication          (
                             CoordAddress,
                             RequesterCoordAddr,
                             RequestType,
                             DbsLength,
                             NumberOfDescendents,
                             SecurityLevel,
                             KeyIdMode,
                             KeySource,
                             KeyIndex
                             )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-64.

Table 8-64—MLME-DBS.indication parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
CoordAddress	Short address	0x0000–0xffff	The address of the Coordinator that sent the DBS Request command.
RequesterCoordAddr	Short address	0x0000–0xffff	The address of the source requester PAN coordinator.
RequestType	Enumeration	ALLOCATION, DEALLOCATION	Indicates if the received request is for an allocation or deallocation of TMCTP DBS.
DbsLength	Integer	0x00–0xff	The value of the DBS Length field of the received DBS Request command.
NumberOfDescendents	Integer	0x00–0xff	The number of TMCTP-child PAN coordinators. Set as zero if the PAN coordinator is not clear about how many descendants it will have.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Upon receipt of this primitive, the next higher layer of a TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator is notified of a request for a DBS allocation or deallocation.

8.2.23.3 MLME-DBS.response

The MLME-DBS.response primitive is used to initiate a response to an MLME-DBS.indication primitive.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DBS.response          (
                           CoordAddress,
                           RequesterCoordAddr,
                           DbsStartingSlot,
                           DbsLength,
                           ChannelNumber,
                           StartBandEdge,
                           StartingChNum,
                           EndingChNum,
                           SecurityLevel,
                           KeyIdMode,
                           KeySource,
                           KeyIndex
                           )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-65.

Table 8-65—MLME-DBS.response parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
CoordAddress	Short address	0x0000–0xffff	The address of the Coordinator that sent DBS Request command.
RequesterCoordAddr	Short address	0x0000–0xffff	The address of the source requester PAN coordinator.
DbsStartingSlot	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The first slot of the allocated DBS in the BOP.
DbsLength	Integer	0x00–0xff	The size, in BOP slots, of the allocated DBS.
ChannelNumber	PHY Channel ID	As defined in Table 7-39	The channel number that the coordinator intends to use for all future communications.
StartBandEdge	Set of octets	As defined in 7.5.24	The frequency in kilohertz indicating the lower edge of the band, as defined in 7.5.24.
StartingChNum	PHY Channel ID	As defined in Table 7-39	The lowest channel number, which is assigned by the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator.
EndingChNum	PHY Channel ID	As defined in Table 7-39	The highest channel number, which is assigned by the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-65—MLME-DBS.response parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75.

When the MLME of a TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator receives an MLME-DBS.response primitive, it generates a DBS response command, as described in 7.5.24, and attempts to send it to the TMCTP-child PAN coordinator requesting the allocation of a DBS and a channel.

8.2.23.4 MLME-DBS.confirm

The MLME-DBS.confirm primitive is used to inform the next higher layer of the initiating device of the result of its request for the allocation of a DBS and a channel.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DBS.confirm            (
                            RequesterCoordAddr,
                            DbsStartingSlot,
                            DbsLength,
                            ChannelNumber,
                            StartBandEdge,
                            StartingChNum,
                            EndingChNum,
                            Status
                            )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-66.

Table 8-66—MLME-DBS.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
Requester CoordAddr	Short address	0x0000–0xffff	The address of the source requester PAN coordinator.
DbsStarting Slot	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The first slot of the allocated DBS in the BOP.
DbsLength	Integer	0x00–0xff	Number of slots allocated for the DBS.
ChannelNumb er	PHY Channel ID	As defined in Table 7-39	The channel number that the coordinator intends to use for all future communications.
StartBandEdge	Set of octets	As in defined in 7.5.24	The frequency in kilohertz indicating the lower edge of the band.
Starting ChNum	PHY Channel ID	As defined in Table 7-39	The lowest channel number, which is assigned by the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-66—MLME-DBS.confirm parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
EndingChNum	PHY Channel ID	As defined in Table 7-39	The highest channel number, which is assigned by the TMCTP-parent PAN coordinator.
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, NO_ACK, DENIED, UNAVAILABLE_KEY, UNSUPPORTED_SECURITY, INVALID_PARAMETER	The status of the attempt of the allocation of a DBS and a channel.

If the DBS allocation request was successful, then the status parameter will be set to SUCCESS. Otherwise, the status parameter will be set to indicate the type of failure.

8.2.24 Primitives for device announcement

8.2.24.1 MLME-DA.request primitive

The MLME-DA.request primitive requests that the device to announce its address to neighbor devices.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DA.request          (
                         CoordAddrMode,
                         CoordPanId,
                         CoordAddress,
                         DaAddrMode,
                         DaAddrList
                         )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-67.

Table 8-67—MLME-DA.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
CoordAddrMode	Enumeration	SHORT, EXTENDED	The addressing mode of the coordinator to which this device is associated with.
CoordPanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The identifier of the PAN to which this device is associated with.
CoordAddress	—	As specified by the CoordAddrMode parameter	The address of the coordinator to which this device is associated with.
DaAddrMode	Enumeration	SHORT, EXTENDED	The addressing mode of the neighbors' addresses to be transmitted.
DaAddrList	Addresses list	As specified by the DaAddrMode parameter	The neighbors' addresses list to be sent.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8.2.24.2 MLME-DA.indication primitive

The MLME-DA.indication primitive indicates reception addresses with a DA IE.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DA.indication          (
                            CoordAddrMode,
                            CoordPanId,
                            CoordAddress,
                            AddrMode,
                            Address,
                            DaAddrMode,
                            DaAddrList
                            )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-68.

Table 8-68—MLME-DA.indication parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
CoordAddrMode	Enumeration	SHORT, EXTENDED	The addressing mode of the coordinator with which the transmitting device is associated.
CoordPanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The identifier of the PAN with which the transmitting device is associated.
CoordAddress	—	As specified by the CoordAddrMode parameter	The address of the coordinator with which the transmitting device is associated.
AddrMode	Enumeration	SHORT, EXTENDED	The addressing mode of the transmitting device.
Address	—	As specified by the AddrMode parameter	The address of the transmitting device.
DaAddrMode	Enumeration	SHORT, EXTENDED	The addressing mode of the addresses included in the Address List field of a DA IE.
DaAddrList	Set of addresses	As specified by the DaAddrMode parameter	The addresses included in a DA IE.

When the MAC has received all the DA IEs sent by the transmitting device, the MAC passes the addresses to the next higher layer using the MLME-DA.indication primitive.

8.2.24.3 MLME-DA.confirm primitive

The MLME-DA.confirm primitive reports results of broadcasting the beacon frame with DA IE.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-DA.confirm             (
                            Status
                            )
```


Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The primitive parameter is defined in Table 8-69.

Table 8-69—MLME-DA.confirm parameter

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, FAILURE	The results of broadcasting a beacon frame with DA IE.

8.2.25 RIT data commands

8.2.25.1 MLME-RIT-REQ.indication

This primitive reports the reception of an RIT Data Request command with RIT Request Payload field.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-RIT-Data-Req.indication    (
                                SrcAddrMode,
                                SrcPanId,
                                SrcAddr,
                                DstAddrMode,
                                DstPanId,
                                DstAddr,
                                RitRequestPayload,
                                HeaderIeList,
                                PayloadIeList,
                                LinkQuality,
                                Dsn,
                                Timestamp,
                                SecurityLevel,
                                KeyIdMode,
                                KeySource,
                                KeyIndex
                                )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-70.

Table 8-70—MLME-RIT-REQ.indication parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
SrcAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, EXTENDED	The source addressing mode of the frame that was received.
SrcPanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The Source PAN ID from the frame that was received. Valid only when a source PAN ID is included in the received frame.
SrcAddr	—	As specified by the SrcAddrMode parameter	The source address of the frame that was received.
DstAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, EXTENDED	The destination addressing mode of the frame that was received.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-70—MLME-RIT-REQ.indication parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DstPanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The Destination PAN ID from the frame that was received. Set to the receiver's PAN ID if the PAN ID is not carried in the received frame.
DstAddr	—	As specified by the DstAddrMode parameter	The destination address of the frame that was received.
RitRequestPayload	Set of octets	—	The set of octets from the RIT Request Payload field in the frame that was received.
HeaderIeList	List of header IEs as described in 7.4.2	—	The header IEs, excluding Termination IEs, that were included in the frame. If empty, then no header IEs were in the frame.
PayloadIeList	List of payload IEs as described in 7.4.3	—	The payload IEs, excluding Termination IEs, that were included in the frame. If empty, then no payload IEs were in the frame.
LinkQuality	Integer	0x00–0xff	LQI value measured during reception of the RIT Data Request command. Lower values represent lower LQI, as described in 10.2.6.
Dsn	Integer	0x00–0xff	The DSN of the received RIT Data Request command, if one was present.
Timestamp	Integer	0x000000–0xffffff	Optional. The time, in symbols, at which the command was received, as described in 6.5.2. The symbol boundary is described by *macSyncSymbolOffset*, as described in Table 8-81. The precision of this value shall be a minimum of 20 bits, with the lowest 4 bits being the least significant.
SecurityLevel	Integer	0x00–0x07	The security level purportedly used by the received frame, as defined in Table 9-6.
KeyIdMode	Integer	0x00–0x03	The mode used to identify the key purportedly used by the originator of the received frame, as defined in Table 9-7. This parameter is invalid if the SecurityLevel parameter is set to 0x00.
KeySource	Set of octets	As specified by the KeyIdMode parameter	The originator of the key purportedly used by the originator of the received frame, as described in 9.4.3.1. This parameter is invalid if the KeyIdMode parameter is invalid or set to 0x00 or 0x01.
KeyIndex	Integer	0x01–0xff	The index of the key purportedly used by the originator of the received frame, as described in 9.4.3.2. This parameter is invalid if the KeyIdMode parameter is invalid or set to 0x00.

This primitive is generated by the MLME of a device and issued to its next higher layer upon the reception of an RIT Data Request command containing an RIT Request Payload field.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8.2.25.2 MLME-RIT-RES.request

This primitive allows the next higher layer of a device to respond to the MLME-RIT-RES.indication primitive.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-RIT-RES.request          (
                              SrcAddrMode,
                              DstAddrMode,
                              DstPanId,
                              DstAddr,
                              RitResponsePayload,
                              HeaderIeList,
                              PayloadIeList,
                              HeaderIeIdList,
                              NestedIeIdList,
                              AckTx,
                              SecurityLevel,
                              KeyIdMode,
                              KeySource,
                              KeyIndex
                              )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-71.

Table 8-71—MLME-RIT-RES.response parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
SrcAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, EXTENDED	The source addressing mode for this frame.
DstAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, EXTENDED	The destination addressing mode for this frame.
DstPanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The PAN ID of the entity to which the frame is being transferred.
DstAddr	—	As specified by the DstAddrMode parameter	The address of the entity to which the frame is being transferred.
RitResponsePayload	Set of octets	—	The set of octets forming the RIT Response Payload field in the frame.
HeaderIeList	Set of IEs as described in Table 7-7	As defined in Table 7-7	The header IEs, excluding Termination IEs, that are to be included with the frame in addition to any header IEs added by the MAC. If empty, no additional header IEs are to be included.
PayloadIeList	Set of IEs as described in Table 7-15	As defined in Table 7-15	The payload IEs, excluding Termination IEs, that are to be included with the frame in addition to any payload IEs added by the MAC. If empty, no additional payload IEs are to be included.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-71—MLME-RIT-RES.response parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
HeaderIeIdList	List of header IE IDs, as described in Table 7-7	—	The IDs of header IEs, excluding Termination IEs, to be added to the frame. The MAC will provide the content for the IE.
NestedIeSubIdList	List of Nested IE sub-IDs, as described in Table 7-16 and Table 7-17	—	The sub-IDs of nested IEs, excluding Termination IEs, to be added to the Data frame. The MAC will provide the content for the IE.
AckTx	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	TRUE if acknowledged transmission is used, FALSE otherwise.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 9-6	The security level to be used.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 9-7	The mode used to identify the key to be used. This parameter is ignored if the SecurityLevel parameter is set to 0x00.
KeySource	Set of octets	As specified by the KeyIdMode parameter	The originator of the key to be used, as described in 9.4.3.1. This parameter is ignored if the KeyIdMode parameter is ignored or set to 0x00 or 0x01.
KeyIndex	Integer	0x01–0xff	The index of the key to be used, as described in 9.4.3.2. This parameter is ignored if the KeyIdMode parameter is ignored or set to 0x00.

If the MLME-RIT-RES.request primitive has invalid parameters, the MLME will issues an MLME-RIT-RES.confirm primitive with Status set to INVALID_PARAMETER and take no further action.

Otherwise, the MLME of the device shall generate an RIT Data Response command, as described in 7.5.25. If the acknowledgment is received for the command, the MLME shall issue an MLME-RIT-RES.confirm primitive with Status set to SUCCESS. If the number of retries is exceeded and an acknowledgment is not received, the MLME shall issue an MLME-RIT-RES.confirm primitive with Status set to NO_ACK.

8.2.25.3 MLME-RIT-RES.indication

This primitive reports the reception of an RIT Data Response command.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-RIT-Data-Response.indication (
                                    SrcAddrMode,
                                    SrcPanId,
                                    SrcAddr,
                                    DstAddrMode,
                                    DstPanId,
                                    DstAddr,
                                    RitResponsePayload,
                                    HeaderIeList,
```


Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

PayloadIeList,
LinkQuality,
Dsn,
Timestamp,
SecurityLevel,
KeyIdMode,
KeySource,
KeyIndex
)

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-72.

Table 8-72—MLME-RIT-RES.indication parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
SrcAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, EXTENDED	The source addressing mode of the frame that was received.
SrcPanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The Source PAN ID from the frame that was received. Valid only when a source PAN ID is included in the received frame.
SrcAddr	—	As specified by the SrcAddrMode parameter	The source address of the frame that was received.
DstAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, EXTENDED	The destination addressing mode of the frame that was received.
DstPanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The Destination PAN ID from the frame that was received. Set to the receiver's PAN ID if the PAN ID is not carried in the received frame.
DstAddr	—	As specified by the DstAddrMode parameter	The destination address of the frame that was received.
RitResponsePayload	Set of octets	—	The set of octets from the RIT Response Payload field in the frame that was received.
HeaderIeList	List of header IEs as described in 7.4.2	—	The header IEs, excluding Termination IEs, that were included in the frame. If empty, then no header IEs were in the frame.
PayloadIeList	List of payload IEs as described in 7.4.3	—	The payload IEs, excluding Termination IEs, that were included in the frame. If empty, then no payload IEs were in the frame.
LinkQuality	Integer	0x00–0xff	LQI value measured during reception of the RIT Data Request command. Lower values represent lower LQI, as described in 10.2.6.
Dsn	Integer	0x00–0xff	The DSN of the received RIT Data Request command, if one was present.
Timestamp	Integer	0x000000–0xffffff	Optional. The time, in symbols, at which the command was received, as described in 6.5.2. The symbol boundary is described by *macSyncSymbolOffset*, as described in Table 8-81. The precision of this value shall be a minimum of 20 bits, with the lowest 4 bits being the least significant.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-72—MLME-RIT-RES.indication parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
SecurityLevel	Integer	0x00–0x07	The security level purportedly used by the received frame, as defined in Table 9-6.
KeyIdMode	Integer	0x00–0x03	The mode used to identify the key purportedly used by the originator of the received frame, as defined in Table 9-7. This parameter is invalid if the SecurityLevel parameter is set to 0x00.
KeySource	Set of octets	As specified by the KeyIdMode parameter	The originator of the key purportedly used by the originator of the received frame, as described in 9.4.3.1. This parameter is invalid if the KeyIdMode parameter is invalid or set to 0x00 or 0x01.
KeyIndex	Integer	0x01–0xff	The index of the key purportedly used by the originator of the received frame, as described in 9.4.3.2. This parameter is invalid if the KeyIdMode parameter is invalid or set to 0x00.

This primitive is generated by the MLME of a device and issued to its next higher layer upon the reception of an RIT Data Response command.

8.2.25.4 MLME-RIT-RES.confirm

This primitive reports the result of a request to send an RIT Data Response command.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-RIT-Data-Response.confirm    (
                                  Status
                                  )
```

The primitive parameter is defined in Table 8-73.

Table 8-73—MLME-RIT-RES.confirm parameter

Name	Type	Valid Range	Description
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, NO_ACK, INVALID_PARAMETER	The status of MLME-RIT-RES.request primitive.

The value of the Status parameter is set as described in 8.2.25.2.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8.3 MAC data service

The MCPS-SAP supports the transport of data. Table 8-74 lists the primitives supported by the MCPS-SAP. Primitives marked with a diamond (♦) are optional for an RFD. These primitives are discussed in the subclauses referenced in the table.

Table 8-74—MCPS-SAP primitives

MCPS-SAP primitive	Request	Confirm	Indication
MCPS-DATA	8.3.1	8.3.2	8.3.3
MCPS-PURGE	8.3.4♦	8.3.5♦	—

8.3.1 MCPS-DATA.request

The MCPS-DATA.request primitive requests the transfer of data to another device.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MCPS-DATA.request           (
                            SrcAddrMode,
                            DstAddrMode,
                            DstPanId,
                            DstAddr,
                            Msdu,
                            MsduHandle,
                            HeaderIeList,
                            PayloadIeList,
                            HeaderIeIdList,
                            NestedIeSubIdList,
                            AckTx,
                            GtsTx,
                            IndirectTx,
                            SecurityLevel,
                            KeyIdMode,
                            KeySource,
                            KeyIndex,
                            UwbPrf,
                            Ranging,
                            UwbPreambleSymbolRepetitions,
                            DataRate,
                            LocationEnhancingInformationPostamble,
                            LocationEnhancingInformationPostambleLength,
                            PanIdSuppressed,
                            SeqNumSuppressed,
                            SendMultipurpose
                            FrakPolicy,
                            CriticalEventMessage
                            )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-75.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-75—MCPS-DATA.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
SrcAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, EXTENDED	The source addressing mode for this MPDU.
DstAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, EXTENDED	The destination addressing mode for this MPDU.
DstPanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The PAN ID of the entity to which the MSDU is being transferred.
DstAddr	—	As specified by the DstAddrMode parameter	The address of the entity to which the MSDU is being transferred.
Msdu	Set of octets	—	The set of octets forming the MSDU to be transmitted by the MAC sublayer entity.
MsduHandle	Integer	0x00–0xff	The handle associated with the MSDU to be transmitted by the MAC sublayer entity.
HeaderIeList	Set of IEs as described in Table 7-7	As defined in Table 7-7	The header IEs, excluding Termination IEs, that are to be included with the frame in addition to any header IEs added by the MAC. If empty, no additional header IEs are to be included.
PayloadIeList	Set of IEs as described in Table 7-15	As defined in Table 7-15	The payload IEs, excluding Termination IEs, that are to be included with the frame in addition to any payload IEs added by the MAC. If empty, no additional payload IEs are to be included.
HeaderIeIdList	Set of header IE IDs, as described in Table 7-7	—	The IDs of header IEs, excluding Termination IEs, to be added to the Data frame. The MAC will provide the content for the IE.
NestedIeSubIdList	Set of Nested IE sub-IDs, as described in Table 7-16 and Table 7-17	—	The sub-IDs of nested IEs, excluding Termination IEs, to be added to the Data frame. The MAC will provide the content for the IE.
AckTx	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	TRUE if acknowledged transmission is used, FALSE otherwise.
GtsTx	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	TRUE if a GTS is to be used for transmission. FALSE indicates that the CAP will be used.
IndirectTx	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	TRUE if indirect transmission is to be used, FALSE otherwise.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 9-6	The security level to be used.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 9-7	The mode used to identify the key to be used. This parameter is ignored if the SecurityLevel parameter is set to 0x00.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-75—MCPS-DATA.request parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
KeySource	Set of octets	As specified by the KeyIdMode parameter	The originator of the key to be used, as described in 9.4.3.1. This parameter is ignored if the KeyIdMode parameter is ignored or set to 0x00 or 0x01.
KeyIndex	Integer	0x01–0xff	The index of the key to be used, as described in 9.4.3.2. This parameter is ignored if the KeyIdMode parameter is ignored or set to 0x00.
UwbPrf	Enumeration	PRF_OFF, NOMINAL_4_M, NOMINAL_16_M, NOMINAL_64_M	The pulse repetition value of the transmitted PPDU. Non-HRP UWB PHYs use a value of PRF_OFF.
Ranging	Enumeration	NON_RANGING, ALL_RANGING, PHY_HEADER_ONLY	A value of NON_RANGING indicates that ranging is not to be used. A value of ALL_RANGING indicates that ranging operations using both the ranging bit in the PHR and the counter operation are enabled. A value of PHY_HEADER_ONLY indicates that only the ranging bit in the PHR will be used. A value of NON_RANGING is PHYs that do not support ranging.
UwbPreambleSymbolRepetitions	Integer	0, 16, 32, 64, 128, 256, 512, 1024, 4096, 8192	The preamble symbol repetitions of the HRP UWB PHY or LRP UWB frame. A zero value is used for all other PHYs. (see NOTE)
DataRate	Integer	—	Indicates the data rate. For CSS PHYs, a value of one indicates 250 kb/s while a value of two indicates 1 Mb/s. For HRP UWB PHYs, values 1–4 are valid and are defined in 16.2.6. For LRP UWB PHYs, valid values are defined in Table 19-1. For the SUN OFDM PHY, values 1–7 are valid; each data rate value corresponds to the variable MCS{DataRate–1}, as described in Table 21-9. For the SUN O-QPSK PHY with DSSS spreading, values 1–4 are valid; each data rate value corresponds to the Rate Mode plus one, as described in Table 22-1. For the SUN O-QPSK PHY with MDSSS spreading, values 5–8 are valid; each data rate value corresponds to the Rate Mode plus five, as described in Table 22-1. For MSK PHYs, valid values are defined in Table 18-1. For all other PHYs, the parameter is set to zero.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-75—MCPS-DATA.request parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
LocationEnhancingInformationPostamble	Enumeration	LEIP_NONE, LEIP_IMMEDIATE, LEIP_DELAYED	For the LRP UWB PHY this parameter specifies whether the Location enhancing information postamble sequence is to be sent or not and, if present, whether it directly follows the CRC or is delayed by the *aLeipDelayTime*. A value of LEIP_NONE is used for non-LRP UWB PHYs.
LocationEnhancingInformationPostambleLength	Enumeration	LEIP_LEN_16, LEIP_LEN_64, LEIP_LEN_128, LEIP_LEN_192, LEIP_LEN_256, LEIP_LEN_512, LEIP_LEN_1024	For the LRP UWB PHY when the LocationEnhancingInformationPostamble parameter has a value of either LEIP_IMMEDIATE or LEIP_DELAYED, then this parameter specifies the length in pulses of the location enhancing information postamble to send. This parameter is ignored when the LocationEnhancingInformationPostamble parameter has a value of LEIP_NONE.
PanIdSuppressed	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Set to TRUE if the PAN ID is suppressed in the frame, FALSE otherwise.
SeqNumSuppressed	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Set to TRUE if the sequence number is suppressed in the frame, FALSE otherwise.
SendMultipurpose	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If TRUE, use a Multipurpose frame. If FALSE, use a Data frame.
FrakPolicy	Integer	0b00–0b10	Specifies the Frak policy to be employed, as described in 7.4.2.9. This parameter is only used when MPDU fragmentation is enabled.
CriticalEventMessage	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	A value of TRUE indicates that the message shall be processed as a critical event message, as described in 6.2.5.4. A value of FALSE indicates that the message is not a critical event message and shall be processed as described in 6.2.5.1.
NOTE—Some values may be unsupported or invalid depending on the capabilities of the PHY or its current transmission mode as selected by other parameters.			

On receipt of the MCPS-DATA.request primitive, the MAC sublayer entity begins the transmission of the supplied MSDU.

The TxOptions parameter indicates the method used by the MAC sublayer data service to transmit the supplied MSDU. If the TxOptions parameter specifies that an acknowledged transmission is required, the AR field will be set appropriately, as described in 6.7.4.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

If the TxOptions parameter specifies that a GTS transmission is required, the MAC sublayer will determine whether it has a valid GTS as described 6.8.4. If a valid GTS could not be found, the MAC sublayer will discard the MSDU. If a valid GTS was found, the MAC sublayer will defer, if necessary, until the GTS. If the TxOptions parameter specifies that a GTS transmission is not required, the MAC sublayer will transmit the MSDU using either slotted CSMA-CA in the CAP for a beacon-enabled PAN or unslotted CSMA-CA for a nonbeacon-enabled PAN. Specifying a GTS transmission in the TxOptions parameter overrides an indirect transmission request.

If the TxOptions parameter specifies that an indirect transmission is required and this primitive is received by the MAC sublayer of a coordinator, the Data frame is sent using indirect transmission, as described in 6.6 and 6.7.3.

If the TxOptions parameter specifies that an indirect transmission is required and if the device receiving this primitive is not a coordinator, the destination address is not present, or the TxOptions parameter also specifies a GTS transmission, the indirect transmission option will be ignored.

If the TxOptions parameter specifies that an indirect transmission is not required, the MAC sublayer will transmit the MSDU using CSMA-CA either in the CAP for a beacon-enabled PAN or immediately for a nonbeacon-enabled PAN, or at the next timeslot to the destination address if in TSCH mode.

If SendMultipurpose is TRUE, then the Msdu is to be sent using a Multipurpose frame.

If SendMultipurpose is FALSE, then the Msdu is to be sent using a Data frame.

8.3.2 MCPS-DATA.confirm

The MCPS-DATA.confirm primitive reports the results of a request to transfer data to another device.

The semantics of the MCPS-DATA.confirm primitive are as follows:

```
MCPS-DATA.confirm          (
                           MsduHandle,
                           Timestamp,
                           RangingReceived,
                           RangingCounterStart,
                           RangingCounterStop,
                           RangingTrackingInterval,
                           RangingOffset,
                           RangingFom,
                           NumBackoffs,
                           AckPayload,
                           Status
                           )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-76.

Table 8-76—MCPS-DATA.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
MsduHandle	Integer	0x00–0xff	The handle associated with the MSDU being confirmed.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-76—MCPS-DATA.confirm parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
Timestamp	Integer	0x000000–0xffffff	Optional. The time, in symbols, at which the data were transmitted, as described in 6.5.2. The value of this parameter will be considered valid only if the value of the Status parameter is SUCCESS; if the Status parameter is not equal to SUCCESS, the value of the Timestamp parameter shall not be used for any other purpose. The symbol boundary is described by *macSyncSymbolOffset*, as described in Table 8-81. The precision of this value shall be a minimum of 20 bits, with the lowest 4 bits being the least significant.
RangingReceived	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	A value of FALSE indicates that ranging is either not supported by the PHY or that it was not indicated by the received PSDU. A value of TRUE indicates ranging operations were indicated for this PSDU.
RangingCounterStart	Unsigned Integer	0x00000000–0xffffffff	A count of the time units corresponding to an RMARKER at the antenna at the beginning of a ranging exchange, as described in 16.7.1. A value of 0x00000000 is used if ranging is not supported, not enabled or if counter was not used for this PPDU. A value of 0x00000000 is also used when one-way ranging is being employed. One-way ranging is described in “Applications of IEEE Std 802.15.4” [B3].
RangingCounterStop	Unsigned Integer	0x00000000–0xffffffff	A count of the time units corresponding to an RMARKER at the antenna at the end of a ranging exchange, as described in 16.7.1. A value of 0x00000000 is used if ranging is not supported, not enabled, or if the counter is not used for this PPDU. For one-way ranging this parameter reports the arrival time of the RMARKER at the antenna.
RangingTrackingInterval	Integer	0x00000000–0xffffffff	A count of the time units in a message exchange over which the tracking offset was measured, as described in 16.7.2.2. If tracking-based crystal characterization is not supported or if ranging is not supported, a value of 0x00000000 is used.
RangingOffset	Signed Magnitude Integer	0x000000–0xffffff	A count of the time units slipped or advanced by the radio tracking system over the course of the entire tracking interval, as described in 16.7.2.1. The top 4 bits are reserved and set to zero. The most significant of the active bits is the sign bit.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-76—MCPS-DATA.confirm parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
RangingFom	Integer	0x00–0x7f	The figure of merit (FoM) characterizing the ranging measurement, as described in 16.7.3.
NumBackoffs	Integer	0x00–0xff	The number of times the CSMA-CA algorithm was required to backoff as described in 6.2.3 while attempting the current transmission. If "Status" is anything other than "SUCCESS," this value is undefined.
AckPayload	Set of octets	—	The set of octets received in the Frame Payload field of the Ack frame, if present.
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, TRANSACTION_OVERFLOW, TRANSACTION_EXPIRED, CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE, INVALID_ADDRESS, INVALID_GTS, NO_ACK, COUNTER_ERROR, FRAME_TOO_LONG, UNAVAILABLE_KEY, UNSUPPORTED_SECURITY, UNSUPPORTED FEATURE, INVALID_PARAMETER, UNSUPPORTED_PRF, UNSUPPORTED_RANGING, UNSUPPORTED_PSR, UNSUPPORTED_DATARATE, UNSUPPORTED_LEIP, ACK_RCVD_NODSN_NOSA	The status of the last MSDU transmission.

The MCPS-DATA.confirm primitive is generated by the MAC sublayer entity in response to an MCPS-DATA.request primitive. The MCPS-DATA.confirm primitive returns a Status of either SUCCESS, indicating that the request to transmit was successful, or the appropriate error code.

If the generated MAC frame is a Data frame with the Frame Version subfield set to 0b00 or 0b01, and both the SrcAddrMode and the DstAddrMode parameters are set to NO_ADDRESS in the MCPS-DATA.request primitive, the Status shall be set to INVALID_ADDRESS.

If a valid GTS could not be found, the Status shall be set to INVALID_GTS.

If there is no capacity to store the transaction, the Status will be set to TRANSACTION_OVERFLOW.

If the transaction is not handled within the required time, the transaction information will be discarded and the Status will be set to TRANSACTION_EXPIRED.

If the TxOptions parameter specifies that a direct transmission is required and the MAC sublayer does not receive an acknowledgment from the recipient after *macMaxFrameRetries* retransmissions, as described in 6.7.4, it will discard the MSDU and issue the MCPS-DATA.confirm primitive with a Status of NO_ACK.

If the requested transaction is too large to fit in the CAP or GTS, as appropriate, the MAC sublayer shall discard the frame and issue the MCPS-DATA.confirm primitive with a Status of FRAME_TOO_LONG.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

If the transmission uses CSMA-CA and the CSMA-CA algorithm failed due to adverse conditions on the channel, and the TxOptions parameter specifies that a direct transmission is required, the MAC sublayer will discard the MSDU and the Status will be set to CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE.

If an acknowledgment is received without a DSN or Source Address field, the Status will be set to ACK_RCVD_NODSN_NOSA.

If an acknowledgment is received that contains user data encapsulated in payload IEs or included in the Payload field, the received AckPayload will contain the received data.

If the MAC PIB attributes *macPriorityChannelAccess* or *macPcaAllocationSuperRate* are set differently from their respective conditions in Table 6-1, or if the attribute *macPcaAllocationRate* does not satisfy the minimum value defined by its respective condition in Table 6-1, then the MAC sublayer may discard the PCA MSDU and set the Status of the MCPS-DATA.confirm primitive to INVALID_PARAMETER.

If the MAC PIB attribute *macPriorityChannelAccess* is set to FALSE, the MAC sublayer will discard the PCA MSDU and the Status of the MCPS-DATA.confirm primitive will be set to INVALID_PARAMETER.

8.3.3 MCPS-DATA.indication

The MCPS-DATA.indication primitive indicates the reception of data from another device.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MCPS-DATA.indication          (
                              SrcAddrMode,
                              SrcPanId,
                              SrcAddr,
                              DstAddrMode,
                              DstPanId
                              DstAddr,
                              Msdu,
                              HeaderIeList,
                              PayloadIeList,
                              MpduLinkQuality,
                              Dsn,
                              Timestamp,
                              SecurityLevel,
                              KeyIdMode,
                              KeySource,
                              KeyIndex,
                              RangingReceived,
                              RangingCounterStart,
                              RangingCounterStop,
                              RangingTrackingInterval,
                              RangingOffset,
                              RangingFom,
                              AngleOfArrivalAzimuth,
                              AngleOfArrivalElevation,
                              AngleOfArrivalSupported,
                              DataRate,
                              Rssi
                              )
```


Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-77.

Table 8-77—MCPS-DATA.indication parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
SrcAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, EXTENDED	The source addressing mode for this primitive corresponding to the received MPDU.
SrcPanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The PAN ID of the entity from which the MSDU was received. Valid only when a source PAN ID is included in the received frame.
SrcAddr	—	As specified by the SrcAddrMode parameter	The address of the entity from which the MSDU was received.
DstAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, EXTENDED	The destination addressing mode for this primitive corresponding to the received MPDU.
DstPanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The PAN ID of the entity to which the MSDU is being transferred. Set to the receiver's PAN ID if the PAN ID is not carried in the received frame.
DstAddr	—	As specified by the DstAddrMode parameter	The address of the entity to which the MSDU is being transferred.
Msdu	Set of octets	—	The set of octets forming the MSDU being indicated by the MAC sublayer entity including payload IEs if present.
HeaderIeList	Set of header IEs as described in 7.4.2	—	The header IEs, excluding Termination IEs, that were included in the MAC frame. If empty, then no header IEs were in the MAC frame.
PayloadIeList	Set of payload IEs as described in 7.4.3	—	The payload IEs, excluding Termination IEs, that were included in the MAC frame. If empty, then no payload IEs were in the MAC frame.
MpduLinkQuality	Integer	0x00–0xff	LQI value measured during reception of the MPDU. Lower values represent lower LQI, as described in 10.2.6.
Dsn	Integer	0x00–0xff	The DSN of the received Data frame if one was present.
Timestamp	Integer	0x000000–0xffffff	Optional. The time, in symbols, at which the data were received, as described in 6.5.2. The symbol boundary is described by *macSyncSymbolOffset*, as described in Table 8-81. The precision of this value shall be a minimum of 20 bits, with the lowest 4 bits being the least significant.
SecurityLevel	Integer	0x00–0x07	The security level purportedly used by the received Data frame, as defined in Table 9-6.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-77—MCPS-DATA.indication parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
KeyIdMode	Integer	0x00–0x03	The mode used to identify the key purportedly used by the originator of the received frame, as defined in Table 9-7. This parameter is invalid if the SecurityLevel parameter is set to 0x00.
KeySource	Set of octets	As specified by the KeyIdMode parameter	The originator of the key purportedly used by the originator of the received frame, as described in 9.4.3.1. This parameter is invalid if the KeyIdMode parameter is invalid or set to 0x00 or 0x01.
KeyIndex	Integer	0x01–0xff	The index of the key purportedly used by the originator of the received frame, as described in 9.4.3.2. This parameter is invalid if the KeyIdMode parameter is invalid or set to 0x00.
RangingReceived	Enumeration	NO_RANGING_REQUESTED, RANGING_ACTIVE, RANGING_REQUESTED_BUT_NOT_SUPPORTED	A value of RANGING_REQUESTED_BUT_NOT_SUPPORTED indicates that ranging is not supported but has been requested. A value of NO_RANGING_REQUESTED indicates that no ranging is requested for the PSDU received. A value of RANGING_ACTIVE denotes ranging operations requested for this PSDU. A value of NO_RANGING_ REQUESTED is used for PHYs that do not support ranging.
RangingCounterStart	Unsigned Integer	As defined in Table 8-76	As defined in Table 8-76.
RangingCounterStop	Unsigned Integer	As defined in Table 8-76	As defined in Table 8-76.
RangingTrackingInterval	Integer	As defined in Table 8-76	As defined in Table 8-76.
RangingOffset	Signed Magnitude Integer	As defined in Table 8-76	As defined in Table 8-76.
RangingFom	Integer	As defined in Table 8-76	As defined in Table 8-76.
AngleOfArrivalAzimuth	Float	$-\pi$ to $+\pi$	Angle of arrival of signal in azimuth measured in radians. This parameter is valid only when AngleOfArrivalSupported is set to either AZIMUTH, or BOTH. The real world direction indicated (e.g., by 0 radians) is a system set-up parameter beyond the scope of this standard.
AngleOfArrivalElevation	Float	$-\pi/2$ to $+\pi/2$	Angle of arrival of signal in elevation measured in radians. This parameter is valid only when AngleOfArrivalSupported is set to either ELEVATION, or BOTH.
AngleOfArrivalSupported	Enumeration	NONE, BOTH, AZIMUTH, ELEVATION	Indicates validity of AngleOfArrivalAzimuth and AngleOfArrivalElevation. Where the underlying PHY does not support angle of arrival measurement, then this parameter shall be set to NONE.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-77—MCPS-DATA.indication parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
DataRate	Integer	—	As defined in Table 8-75.
Rssi	Integer	0x00–0xff	The Received Signal Strength Indicator is a measure of the RF power level at the input of the transceiver measured during the PHR and is valid after the SFD is detected.

The MCPS-DATA.indication primitive is generated by the MAC sublayer and issued to the next higher layer on receipt of a Data frame or a Multipurpose frame at the local MAC sublayer entity that passes the appropriate message filtering operations as described in 6.7.2. If the primitive is received while the device is in promiscuous mode, the parameters will be set as specified in 6.7.7.

8.3.4 MCPS-PURGE.request

The MCPS-PURGE.request primitive allows the next higher layer to purge an MSDU from the transaction queue.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MCPS-PURGE.request          (
                            MsduHandle
                            )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-78.

Table 8-78—MCPS-PURGE.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
MsduHandle	Integer	0x00–0xff	The handle of the MSDU to be purged from the transaction queue.

On receipt of the MCPS-PURGE.request primitive, the MAC sublayer attempts to find in its transaction queue the MSDU indicated by the msduHandle parameter. If an MSDU has left the transaction queue, the handle will not be found, and the MSDU can no longer be purged. If an MSDU matching the given handle is found, the MSDU is discarded from the transaction queue.

8.3.5 MCPS-PURGE.confirm

The MCPS-PURGE.confirm primitive allows the MAC sublayer to notify the next higher layer of the success of its request to purge an MSDU from the transaction queue.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MCPS-PURGE.confirm          (
                            MsduHandle,
                            Status
                            )
```


Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The primitive parameters are defined in Table 8-79.

Table 8-79—MCPS-PURGE.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
MsduHandle	Integer	0x00–0xff	The handle of the MSDU requested to be purged from the transaction queue.
Status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, INVALID_HANDLE	The status of the request to purge an MSDU from the transaction queue.

The MCPS-PURGE.confirm primitive is generated by the MAC sublayer entity in response to an MCPS-PURGE.request primitive. If an MSDU matching the given handle is found, the Status will be set to SUCCESS. If an MSDU matching the given handle is not found, the Status will be set to INVALID_HANDLE.

8.4 MAC constants and PIB attributes

This subclause specifies the constants and attributes required by the MAC sublayer.

8.4.1 MAC constants

The constants that define the characteristics of the MAC sublayer are presented in Table 8-80.

Table 8-80—MAC sublayer constants

Constant	Description	Value
aBaseSlotDuration	The number of symbols forming a superframe slot when *the superframe order* is equal to zero, as described in 6.2.1.	60
aBaseSuperframeDuration	The number of symbols forming a superframe when *the superframe order* is equal to zero.	*aBaseSlotDuration* × aNumSuperframeSlots
aGtsDescPersistenceTime	The number of superframes in which a GTS descriptor exists in the beacon frame of the PAN coordinator.	4
aMaxLostBeacons	The number of consecutive lost beacons that will cause the MAC sublayer of a receiving device to declare a loss of synchronization.	4
aMaxSifsFrameSize	The maximum size of an MPDU, in octets, that can be followed by a SIFS period.	18
aMinCapLength	The minimum number of symbols forming the CAP. This ensures that MAC commands can still be transferred to devices when GTSs are being used. An exception to this minimum shall be allowed for the accommodation of the temporary increase in the beacon frame length needed to perform GTS maintenance, as described in 7.3.1.4. Additional restrictions apply when PCA is enabled, as described in 6.2.5.4.	440

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-80—MAC sublayer constants (continued)

Constant	Description	Value
aNumSuperframeSlots	The number of slots contained in any superframe.	16
aUnitBackoffPeriod	The number of symbols forming the basic time period used by the CSMA-CA algorithm.	For all PHYs except SUN PHYs operating in the 920 MHz band, *aTurnaroundTime* + *aCcaTime*. For SUN PHYs operating in the 920 MHz band, *aTurnaroundTime* + *phyCCADuration*.
aRccnBaseSlotDuration	The number of symbols forming an RCCN superframe slot.	60

8.4.2 MAC PIB attributes

The MAC PIB comprises the attributes required to manage the MAC sublayer of a device. The attributes contained in the MAC PIB are presented in Table 8-81, Table 8-82, Table 8-83, Table 8-88, Table 8-91, Table 8-92, Table 8-93, and Table 8-94. Attributes marked with a dagger (†) are read-only attributes (i.e., attribute can only be set by the MAC sublayer), which can be read by the next higher layer using the MLME-GET.request primitive. All other attributes can be read or written by the next higher layer using the MLME-GET.request or MLME-SET.request primitives, respectively. Attributes marked with a diamond (◆) are optional for an RFD; attributes marked with an asterisk (*) are optional for both device types (i.e., RFD and FFD).

Table 8-81—MAC PIB attributes

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macExtendedAddress†	IEEE address	Device specific	The extended address assigned to the device.	—
macAssociatedPanCoord	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indication of whether the device is associated to the PAN through the PAN coordinator. A value of TRUE indicates the device has associated through the PAN coordinator. Otherwise, the value is set to FALSE.	FALSE
macAssociation Permit◆	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indication of whether a coordinator is currently allowing association. A value of TRUE indicates that association is permitted.	FALSE

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-81—MAC PIB attributes *(continued)*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macAutoRequest	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indication of whether a device automatically sends a Data Request command if its address is listed in the beacon frame. A value of TRUE indicates that the Data Request command is automatically sent. This attribute also affects the generation of the MLME-BEACON-NOTIFY.indication primitive, as described in 8.2.5.1.	TRUE
macBattLifeExt	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indication of whether BLE, through the reduction of coordinator receiver operation time during the CAP, is enabled. A value of TRUE indicates that it is enabled. The effect of this attribute on the backoff exponent in the CSMA-CA algorithm is described in 6.2.5.1.	FALSE
macBattLifeExtPeriods	Integer	6–41	In BLE mode, the number of backoff periods during which the receiver is enabled after the IFS following a beacon. This value is dependent on the supported PHY and is the sum of three terms: Term 1: The value $2^x - 1$, where x is the maximum value of *macMinBe* in BLE mode (equal to two). This term is thus equal to three backoff periods. Term 2: The duration of the initial contention window length, as described in 6.2.5.1. Term 3: The Preamble field length and the SFD field length of the supported PHY summed together and rounded up (if necessary) to an integer number of backoff periods.	Dependent on currently selected PHY, indicated by *phyCurrentPage*
macBeaconPayload◆	Set of octets	—	A sequence of zero or more octets to be transmitted in the Beacon Payload field.	NULL
macBeaconOrder◆	Integer	0–15	Indicates the frequency with which the beacon is transmitted, as defined in 6.2.1.	15
macBeaconTxTime†◆	Integer	0x000000–0xffffff	The time that the device transmitted its last beacon frame, in symbol periods. The measurement shall be taken at the same symbol boundary within every transmitted beacon frame, the location of which is implementation specific. The precision of this value shall be a minimum of 20 bits, with the lowest four bits being the least significant.	0x000000

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-81—MAC PIB attributes *(continued)*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macBsn◆	Integer	0x00–0xff	The sequence number added to the transmitted beacon frame.	Random value from within the range
macCoordExtendedAddress	IEEE address	An extended IEEE address	The address of the coordinator through which the device is associated.	—
macCoordShortAddress	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The short address assigned to the coordinator through which the device is associated. A value of 0xfffe indicates that the coordinator is only using its extended address. A value of 0xffff indicates that this value is unknown.	0xffff
macDsn	Integer	0x00–0xff	The sequence number added to the transmitted Data frame or MAC command.	Random value from within the range
*macGtsPermit**	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	TRUE if the PAN coordinator is to accept GTS requests. FALSE otherwise.	TRUE
macMaxBe	Integer	3–8	The maximum value of the backoff exponent, BE, in the CSMA-CA algorithm, as defined in 6.2.5.1.	5
macMaxCsmaBackoffs	Integer	0–5	The maximum number of backoffs the CSMA-CA algorithm will attempt before declaring a channel access failure.	4
macMaxFrameRetries	Integer	0–7	The maximum number of retries allowed after a transmission failure.	3
macMinBe	Integer	0–*macMaxBe*	The minimum value of the backoff exponent (BE) in the CSMA-CA algorithm, as described in 6.2.5.1.	3
macLifsPeriod†	Integer	As defined in 10.1.3	The minimum time forming a LIFS period.	PHY dependent
macSifsPeriod†	Integer	As defined in 10.1.3	The minimum time forming a SIFS period.	PHY dependent
macPanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The identifier of the PAN on which the device is operating. If this value is 0xffff, the device is not associated.	0xffff
macPromiscuousMode◆	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indication of whether the MAC sublayer is in a promiscuous (receive all) mode. A value of TRUE indicates that the MAC sublayer accepts all frames received from the PHY.	FALSE

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-81—MAC PIB attributes *(continued)*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macRangingSupported†*	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	This indicates whether the MAC sublayer supports the optional ranging features.	—
macResponseWaitTime	Integer	2–64	The maximum time, in multiples of *aBaseSuperframeDuration*, a device shall wait for a response command to be available following a request command.	32
macRxOnWhenIdle	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indication of whether the MAC sublayer is to enable its receiver during idle periods. For a beacon-enabled PAN, this attribute is relevant only during the CAP of the incoming superframe. For a nonbeacon-enabled PAN, this attribute is relevant at all times.	FALSE
macSecurityEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indication of whether the MAC sublayer has security enabled. A value of TRUE indicates that security is enabled, while a value of FALSE indicates that security is disabled.	FALSE
macShortAddress	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The address that the device uses to communicate in the PAN. If the device is the PAN coordinator, this value shall be chosen before a PAN is started. Otherwise, the short address is allocated by a coordinator during association.	0xffff
macSuperframeOrder†◆	Integer	0–15	The length of the active portion of the outgoing superframe, including the beacon frame, as defined in 6.2.1	15
macSyncSymbolOffset†	Integer	0x000–0x100 for the 2.4 GHz band 0x000–0x400 for the 868 MHz and 915 MHz bands, and the SUN FSK and SUN OFDM PHYs	The offset, measured in symbols, between the symbol boundary at which the MLME captures the timestamp of each transmitted or received frame, and the onset of the first symbol past the SFD.	—
macEnhancedBeaconOrder	Integer	0–15	Specification of how often the coordinator transmits an Enhanced Beacon frame. If *macEnhancedBeaconOrder* = 15, no periodic Enhanced Beacon frame will be transmitted.	0

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-81—MAC PIB attributes *(continued)*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macMpmIe	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	An indication of whether the Coexistence Specification IE, as defined in 7.4.4.9, is to be included in the Enhanced Beacon frame. If this value is TRUE, the Enhanced Beacon frame will include the Coexistence Specification IE. If this value is FALSE, the Enhanced Beacon frame will not include the Coexistence Specification IE.	FALSE
macNbPanEnhancedBeaconOrder	Integer	0–16383	Specification of how often the coordinator transmits an Enhanced Beacon frame in a nonbeacon-enabled PAN (i.e., *macBeaconOrder* = 15). If *macNbPanEnhancedBeaconOrder* =16383, no Enhanced Beacon frame will be transmitted.	16383
macOffsetTimeSlot	Integer	1–15	The offset between the start of the periodic beacon transmission and the start of the following Enhanced Beacon frame transmission expressed in superframe time slots.	15
macFcsType	Integer	0–1	The type of the FCS, as defined in 7.2.10. A value of zero indicates a 4-octet FCS. A value of one indicates a 2-octet FCS. This attribute is only valid for LECIM, TVWS, and SUN PHYs.	0
macTimestampSupported†	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indication of whether the MAC sublayer supports the optional timestamping feature for incoming and outgoing Data frames.	—
macTransactionPersistenceTime◆	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The maximum time (in unit periods) that a transaction is stored by a coordinator and indicated in its beacon. The unit period is governed by *macBeaconOrder*, *BO*, as follows: For $0 \leq BO \leq 14$, the unit period will be *aBase-SuperframeDuration* $\times 2^{BO}$. For $BO = 15$, the unit period will be *aBaseSuperframeDuration*.	0x01f4
macImplicitBroadcast	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indicates whether frames without a destination PAN ID and a destination address are to treated as though they are addressed to the broadcast PAN ID and broadcast short address.	FALSE
macLecimAlohaUnitBackoffPeriod	Integer	As defined in 6.2.5.5	The number of symbols for backoff when PCA backoff algorithm is in use, as defined in 6.2.5.5.	—

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-81—MAC PIB attributes *(continued)*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macLecimAlohaBe	Integer	0–*macMinBe*	The value of the constant backoff exponent for priority messages using CCA Mode 4 (ALOHA), as described in 6.2.5.5.	*macMinBe*–1
macPriorityChannelAccess	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indicates whether PCA is enabled.A value of TRUE indicates that it is enabled, while a value of FALSE indicates that it is disabled.	FALSE
macPcaAllocationSuperRate	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indicates the PCA allocation rate per superframe. A value of TRUE indicates one or more allocations per superframe. A value of FALSE indicates less than one allocation per superframe.	TRUE
macPcaAllocationRate	Integer	Minimum rate defined in 6.2.5.4; the maximum rate is 255.	The PCA allocation rate. If *macPcaAllocationSuperRate* is TRUE, the value is the number of allocations per superframe. If *macPcaAllocationSuperRate* is FALSE, the value is the number of superframes per PCA allocation.	1
macCritMsgDelayTol	Integer	0–65 532	The maximum transaction delay, in milliseconds, for a critical event message before issuing an MCPS-DATA.confirm with Status set to TRANSACTION_EXPIRED, as defined in 7.4.4.15.	15 000
macStartBandEdge	Integer	0–16 777 215	Frequency in kilohertz indicating the lower edge of the band.	608 000
macEndBandEdge	Integer	0–16 777 215	Frequency in kilohertz indicating the upper edge of the band.	614 000
macGroupRxMode	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Enables the reception of EUI-64 group addresses.	FALSE
macTmctpExtendedOrder	Integer	0–14	The extended length of the active portion of the superframe, as defined in 6.2.8.	0

8.4.2.1 General MAC PIB attributes for functional organization

Table 8-82 provides the General MAC PIB attributes for functional organization. Attributes marked with a dagger (†) are read-only attributes (i.e., attribute may only be set by the MAC sublayer), which can be read by the next higher layer using the MLME-GET.request primitive. All other attributes can be read or written by the next higher layer using the MLME-GET.request or MLME-SET.request primitives, respectively.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-82—General MAC PIB attributes for functional organization

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macTschCapable	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If TRUE, the device is capable of functionality specific to TSCH.	—
macDsmeCapable	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If TRUE, the device is capable of functionality specific to DSME.	—
macLeCapable	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If TRUE, the device is capable of functionality specific to low energy.	—
macHoppingCapable	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If TRUE, the device is capable of unslotted channel hopping.	—
macMetricsCapable	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If TRUE, the device is capable of providing additional MAC metrics.	—
macTschEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If TRUE, the device is using functionality specific to TSCH.	—
macDsmeEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If TRUE, the device is using functionality specific to DSME.	—
macLeEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If TRUE, the device is using functionality specific to low energy.	—
macHoppingEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If TRUE, the device is using unslotted channel hopping.	—
macMetricsEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If TRUE, the device is providing additional MAC metrics.	—
macExtendedDsmeCapable†	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	A value of TRUE indicates that the device is capable of functionality specific to ExtendedDSME. A value of FALSE indicates that the device is not capable of functionality specific to ExtendedDSME.	—
macExtendedDsmeEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	A value of TRUE indicates that the device is using functionality specific to ExtendedDSME. A value of FALSE indicates that the device is not using functionality specific to ExtendedDSME.	FALSE

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-82—General MAC PIB attributes for functional organization *(continued)*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macLeHsEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	A value of TRUE indicates that the device is using functionality specific to low-energy handshake. A value of FALSE indicates that the low-energy handshake is not used.	—
macRelayingMode	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If TRUE, the device is using TRLE relaying mode, as defined in F.3. If FALSE, the device is not using TRLE relaying mode.	
macTrleEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If TRUE, the device is using functionality specific to TRLE. If FALSE, the device is not operating as a TRLE PAN.	—
macRccnEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	An indication of whether the device is using functionality specific to an RCCN. If TRUE, the device is using this functionality. If FALSE, it is not.	—
macRccnNumTimeSlots	Integer	0–254	The number of timeslots within a superframe, excluding the timeslot for beacon frame and management timeslots.	48
macRccnNumMgmtTs	Integer	0–254	The number of management timeslots.	4
macRccnNumGtsTs	Integer	0–254	The number of GTS timeslots.	24
macRccnNetId	Set of octets	—	A network specific identification.	0
macRccnDevType	Enumerati on	RCCPANC, MOBILE, FIXED	Indicates the type of RCCN device. It may be one of the following device types: a PAN coordinator, a mobile device that is not a PAN coordinator, or a fixed device that is not a PAN coordinator.	—
macRccnCap†	List of octets	—	The PHY capabilities supported.	—

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8.4.2.2 TSCH-specific MAC PIB attributes

Table 8-83 contains the PIB values for TSCH.

Table 8-83—TSCH-specific MAC PIB attributes

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macMinBe	Integer	0–*macMaxBe*	The minimum value of the backoff exponent (BE) in the CSMA-CA algorithm, as defined in 6.2.5.1, or the TSCH-CA algorithm, as defined in 6.2.5.3.	3—CSMA-CA 1—TSCH-CA
macMaxBe	Integer	3–8	The maximum value of the BE in the CSMA-CA algorithm, as defined in 6.2.5.1, or the TSCH-CA algorithm, as defined in 6.2.5.3.	5—CSMA-CA 7—TSCH-CA
macDisconnectTime	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Time (in Timeslots) to send out Disassociate frames before disconnecting.	0xff
macJoinMetric	Integer	0x00–0xff	The sum of one and the value of the Join Metric field from the TSCH Synchronization IE, 7.4.4.2, received in the Enhanced Beacon frame used by the device joining the network. If the device is the an endpoint, the value shall be set to zero.	1
macAsn	Integer	0x0000000000–0xffffffffff	The Absolute Slot Number, i.e., the number of slots that has elapsed since the start of the network. Used for nonce construction when security is enabled.	0x0000000000

8.4.2.2.1 TSCH MAC PIB attributes for *macSlotframeTable*

The attributes contained in the MAC PIB for *macSlotframeTable* are presented in Table 8-84. Each slotframe requires a *macSlotframeTable* to be stored.

Table 8-84—TSCH MAC PIB attributes for *macSlotframeTable*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macSlotframeHandle	Integer	0x00–0xff	Identifier of the slotframe, as described in 6.2.6.1.	—
macSlotframeSize	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Number of timeslots in the slotframe.	—

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8.4.2.2.2 TSCH MAC PIB attributes for *macLinkTable*

The attributes contained in the MAC PIB for *macLinkTable* are presented in Table 8-85. Each link requires a *macLinkTable* to be stored.

Table 8-85—TSCH MAC PIB attributes for *macLinkTable*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macLinkHandle	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Identifier of Link.	—
macTxType	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Set to TRUE if the link is a TX link, otherwise set to FALSE.	—
macRxType	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Set to TRUE if the link is a RX link, otherwise set to FALSE.	—
macSharedType	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Set to TRUE if the link is a shared link, otherwise set to FALSE.	—
macLinkTimekeeping	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Set to TRUE if the link is a timekeeping link, FALSE otherwise.	
macPriorityType	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Set to TRUE if the link is to be used for high priority traffic, as described in 6.2.5.2, otherwise set to FALSE.	—
macLinkType	Enumeration	NORMAL, ADVERTISING	Type of link.	NORMAL
macSlotframeHandle	Integer	0x00–0xff	Identifier of Slotframe to which this link belongs.	—
macNodeAddressMode	Enumeration	SHORT, EXTENDED	Addressing mode of the neighbor device connected to the link.	—
macNodeAddress	Short address or extended address	As specified by *macNodeAddress Mode*	Address of the neighbor device connected to this link or the broadcast address.	—
macTimeslot	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Timeslot for this link.	—
macChannelOffset	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Channel offset for this link.	—

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8.4.2.2.3 TSCH MAC PIB attributes for *macTimeslotTemplate*

The attributes contained in the MAC PIB for *macTimeslotTemplate* are presented in Table 8-86.

Table 8-86—TSCH MAC PIB attributes for *macTimeslotTemplate*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Band defaults	
				2450 MHz	915 MHz
macTimeslotTemplateId	Integer	0x0–0xf0	Identifier of Timeslot Template.	0x00	0x00
macTsCcaOffset	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The time between the beginning of timeslot and start of CCA operation, in µs.	1800	1800
macTsCca	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Duration of CCA, in µs.	128	128
macTsTxOffset	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The time between the beginning of the timeslot and the start of frame transmission, in µs.	2120	2800
macTsRxOffset	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Beginning of the timeslot to when the receiver shall be listening, in µs.	1020	1800
macTsRxAckDelay	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	End of frame to when the transmitter shall listen for acknowledgment, in µs.	800	800
macTsTxAckDelay	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	End of frame to start of acknowledgment, in µs.	1000	1000
macTsRxWait	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The time to wait for start of frame, in µs.	2200	6000
macTsRxTx	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Transmit to Receive turnaround, in µs.	192	1000
macTsMaxAck	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Transmission time to send an acknowledgment, in µs.	2400	6000
macTsMaxTx	Integer	0x00000–0xfffff	Transmission time to send the maximum length frame, in µs.	4256	103040
macTsTimeslotLength	Integer	0x00000–0xfffff	The total length of the timeslot including any unused time after frame transmission and acknowledgment, in µs.	10000	120000
macTsAckWait	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The minimum time to wait for the start of an acknowledgment in µs.	400	

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8.4.2.3 MAC PIB attributes for hopping sequence

The attributes contained in the MAC PIB for hopping sequence are presented in Table 8-87.

Table 8-87—MAC PIB attributes for hopping sequence

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macHoppingSequenceId	Integer	0x00–0x0f	The unique ID of the hopping sequence.	0
macChannelPage	Integer	0x00–0x1f	The channel page for the hopping sequence. Note this may not correspond to the current channelPage.	—
macNumberOfChannels	Integer	0x0000–0x01ff	Number of channels supported by the PHY on this channelPage.	—
macPhyConfiguration	Integer	0x00000000–0x7fffffff	For channel pages other than 9 and 10, the 27 LSBs (b0, b1, …, b26) indicate the status (1 = to be used, 0 = not to be used) for each of the up to 27 channels available to the PHY. For pages 9 and 10, the 27 LSBs indicate the configuration of the PHY, and the channel list is contained in the Extended Bitmap field.	—
macExtendedBitmap	Bitmap	varies	For channel pages 9 and 10, a bitmap of *macNumberOfChannels* bits, where b_k shall indicate the status of channel *k* for each of the up to *macNumberOfChannels* valid channels supported by that channel page and phyConfiguration. Otherwise it is a null string.	—
macHoppingSequenceLength	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The number of channels in the Hopping Sequence. Does not necessarily equal *macNumberOfChannels*.	—
macHoppingSequenceList	Set of Integers	0x0000–0x01ff for each channel	A *macHoppingSequenceLength*-element set of channels to be hopped over.	—
macHopDwellTime	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	For unslotted channel hopping modes, this field is the channel dwell time, in units of 10 μs. For other modes, the field is empty.	—

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8.4.2.4 DSME specific MAC PIB attributes

DSME specific attributes are described in Table 8-88 and Table 8-89.

Table 8-88—DSME-specific MAC PIB attributes

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macChannelIndex	Integer	0–31	Specifies the channel index of the channel's DSME link reported by the source device.	—
macAvgLqi	Integer	0x00–0xff	A characterization of the link quality between a source device and a destination device on the channel defined by Channel Index, the measurement shall be performed for each received packet during a period of *LinkStatusStatisticPeriod*.	—
macAvgRssi	Integer	0–255	Average RSSI.	—
macLinkStatusStatisticPeriod	Integer	0x000000–0xffffff	The time interval between two times of link status statistics, which is defined as LinkStatusStatisticPeriod = *aBaseSuperframeDuration* $\times 2^{MO}$ symbols. If the parameter equals to 0x000000, link status statistic is not allowed.	—
macCapReduction	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indication of whether the CAP reduction is enabled. A value of TRUE indicates that the CAP reduction is enabled.	FALSE
macChannelDiversityMode	Enumeration	ADAPTATION, HOPPING	Indicates the method of channel diversity in a beacon-enabled PAN, either channel adaptation or channel hopping.	ADAPTATION
macMultisuperframeOrder	Integer	0–22	The length of a multi-superframe, which is a cycle of the repeated superframes.	15
macConnecDev	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indication of whether the device is a Connection Device or not. If this attribute is TRUE, the device is a Connection Device. This attribute shall be set to FALSE if the device is not a Connection Device.	FALSE
macDsmeSab	Bitmap	As defined in 7.5.18	The slot allocation bitmap of the DSME-GTS schedule.	0
macDsmeAct	List of Allocation Counter Tables, as defined in Table 8-90	—	A list of allocation counter tables of the DSME GTSs allocated to the device.	0
macSdIndex	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Specifies the allocating SD index number for beacon frame.	0x0000

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-88—DSME-specific MAC PIB attributes *(continued)*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macSdBitmap	Bitmap	As defined in 7.4.2.5	Indicates the beacon frame allocation information of neighbor nodes. This field is expressed in bitmap format that orderly represents the schedule of beacons, with corresponding bit shall be set to one if a beacon is allocated in that SD.	—
macChannelOffset	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	ChannelOffset is the offset value of Hopping Sequence.	0
macDeferredBeaconUsed	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indication of whether the device uses CCA before transmitting beacon frame. A value of TRUE indicates that the device uses CCA before transmitting beacon frame.	FALSE
macSyncParentExtendedAddress	IEEE address	—	The extended address of the coordinator through which the device is synchronized.	—
macSyncParentShortAddress	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The short address assigned to the coordinator through which the device is synchronized. A value of 0xfffe indicates that the coordinator is only using its extended address. A value of 0xffff indicates that this value is unknown.	0xffff
macSyncParentSdIndex	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Indication of SD index the synchronized parent used.	0
macChannelStatus	List of Link-Report entries as described in Table 8-58	Refer to Table 8-58	Link report for each used channel.	—
macBeaconSlotLength	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The number of symbols forming a beacon slot.	60
macDsmeGtsExpirationTime	Integer	0x00–0xff	The number of idle incidents before expiring a DSME GTS.	7
macChannelOffsetBitmapLength	Integer	0x00–0xff	Specifies the length of ChannelOffsetBitmap in octets.	—
macChannelOffsetBitmap	Set of octets	—	A bitmap that represents whether the corresponding channel offset is used. If the corresponding channel offset is used, the bit value shall be set to one. Otherwise, it shall be set to zero. For instance, if the 1st, 2nd, 4th channels offset are used with ChannelOffsetBitmapLength of 16, ChannelOffsetBitmap shall be 0b0110100000000000.	—
macPanCoordinatorBsn	Integer	0x00–0xff	The sequence number added to the transmitted beacon frame of a PAN coordinator.	—

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-88—DSME-specific MAC PIB attributes *(continued)*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macNeighborInformationTable	List of Neighbor Information entries as described in Table 8-89	—	A table of the neighbor device's information entries.	Null
macAllocationOrder	Integer	0–8	As defined in 7.5.13. If MO < BO, the value shall be set to zero.	0
macBiIndex	Integer	0–255	As defined in 7.5.13.	0
macDsmeAssociation	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indicates whether DSME GTSs are allocated during the association procedure. This attribute is set to TRUE if a device requests assignment of a DSME GTS during association.	TRUE

Table 8-89—Elements of Neighbor Information

Attribute	Type	Range	Description
ShortAddress	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The short address of the neighbor device.
ExtendedAddress	IEEE address	An extended address	The extended address of the neighbor device.
SdIndex	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The allocating SD index number for beacon frame.
ChannelOffset	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The offset value of ChannelHoppingSequence.
TrackBeacon	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	TRUE if the MLME is to track all future beacons of the neighbor device. FALSE if the MLME is not to track beacon of the neighbor device.
BeaconLostCount	Integer	0x00–0xff	The number of consecutive lost beacons.
AllocationOrder	Integer	0–8	As defined in 7.5.13.
AssociationType	Integer	0–1	Indicates whether DSME GTSs are allocated during the association procedure. This element shall be set to one if DSME GTSs are allocated during association. Otherwise, it shall be set to zero.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Allocation Counter Table format is defined in Table 8-90.

Table 8-90—Elements of allocation counter table

Field	Type	Valid range	Description
Superframe ID	Integer	0x0000–0xfffd	The superframe ID of the DSME GTS in a multi-superframe.
Slot ID	Integer	0–14	The slot ID of the DSME GTS in the superframe.
Channel ID	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	In channel adaptation, this field shall contain the Channel number of the DSME GTS. In channel hopping, this field shall contain the Channel Offset.
Direction	Enumeration	TX, RX	The direction of the allocated DSME-GTS.
Prioritized Channel Access	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If set to TRUE, the DSME GTS is high priority, otherwise FALSE and the DSME GTS is low priority.
Source/ Destination Address	Short address	0x0000–0xfffd	The short address of the device that is the source (if RX) or the destination of the allocated DSME-GTS.
Counter	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	An idle counter, in other word, the number of idle multi-superframes since the allocated DSME-GTS was used.
LinkQuality	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The link quality of the allocated DSME-GTS.
Allocation Order	Integer	0x00–0x08	As defined in 5.3.11.3.6. If MO $\leq$ BO, the value of *macAllocationOrder* shall be set to zero.
BI Index	Integer	0x00–0xff	As defined in 5.3.11.3.7.

8.4.2.5 LE specific MAC PIB attributes

LE specific attributes are described in Table 8-91.

Table 8-91—LE-specific MAC PIB attributes

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macCslPeriod	Integer	0–0xffff	CSL sampled listening period in units of 10 symbols. Zero means always listening, i.e., CSL off.	0
macCslMaxPeriod	Integer	0–0xffff	Maximum CSL sampled listening period in units of 10 symbols in the entire PAN. This determines the length of the wake-up sequence when communicating to a device whose CSL listen period is unknown. It is set to zero to stop sending wake-up sequences.	macCslPeriod

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-91—LE-specific MAC PIB attributes *(continued)*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macCslChannelMask	Bitmap	—	32-bit bitmap relative to phyCurrentPage of channels. It represents the list of channels CSL operates on. Zero means CSL operates on phyCurrentChannel of phyCurrentPage.	0x00000000
macCslFramePending Wait	Integer	*macLifsPeriod* + max number of symbols per PPDU–0xffff	Number of symbols to keep the receiver on after receiving a payload frame with Frame Control field frame pending bit set to one.	—
macRitPeriod	Integer	0x000000–0xffffff	The interval (in unit periods) for periodic transmission of RIT Data Request command in RIT mode. The unit period is *aBaseSuperframeDuration*. A value of zero indicates that RIT is off.	0
macRitDataWaitDurati on	Integer	0x00–0xff	The maximum time (in unit period) to wait for Data frame after transmission of RIT Data Request command in RIT mode. The unit period is *aBaseSuperframeDuration*.	0
macRitTxWaitDuration	Integer	*Period*–0xffffff	The maximum time (in unit periods) that a transaction is stored by a device in RIT mode. The unit period is *aBaseSuperframeDuration*.	0
macRitRequestPayload	Set of octets	—	The payload to include an an RIT Data Request command.	
macLowEnergySuperfra meSupported	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indication of whether the low-energy superframe is operational or not. If this attribute is TRUE, the coordinator shall not transmit beacon frames regardless of BO value. This attribute shall be set to FALSE if the device is aware of the existence of allocated GTS.	—
macLowEnergySuperfra meSyncInterval	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	Indication of beacon transmission interval when *macLowEnergySuperframeSupported* is TRUE. The beacon transmission interval shall be indicated by *macLowEnergySuperframeSyncInterv al* times the beacon interval in the case this attribute is not zero. The beacon shall be transmitted only when requested in the case this attribute is zero.	—
macCslInterval	Integer	0–0xffff	Specifies the interval between two successive CSL wake-up frames in the wake-up sequence, in units of 10 symbols.	—

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-91—LE-specific MAC PIB attributes *(continued)*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macIRitOffsetInterval	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	A value of zero indicates that I-RIT is disabled. A nonzero value specifies the interval, in symbol periods, from the end of the transmitted frame to the beginning of the I-RIT listening period.	0x00
macIRitListenDuration	Integer	0x00–0xff	The duration of listening time, in symbol periods, for which the receiver is listening for the beginning of a frame to receive.	0x64
macIRitEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If TRUE, the I-RIT mode of operation is enabled, as described in 6.12.4. If FALSE, the I-RIT mode of operation is disabled.	FALSE

8.4.2.6 MAC performance metrics specific MAC PIB attributes

If *macMetricsEnabled* is TRUE, the MAC shall collect the metrics listed in Table 8-92.

The counters listed in Table 8-92 shall wrap to 0 when incremented beyond their maximum value. *macCounterOctets* is read only, other MAC PIB attributes in Table 8-92 are read/write and may be reset by higher layers by writing a 0 value.

The attributes *macRetryCount*, *macMultipleRetryCount*, *macTxFailCount*, and *macTxSuccessCount* relate to Data frame transmission. Each MSDU transferred into the MAC layer through the MCPS-DATA.request primitive shall increment exactly one of these four attribute counters depending on the final disposition of the frame as described in 6.7.2.

The attributes *macFcsErrorCount*, *macSecurityFailure*, *macDuplicateFrameCount*, and *macRxSuccessCount* relate to Data frame reception. Each frame received by the MAC layer shall increment at least one of these four attribute counters based on the status of the frame.

Table 8-92—Metrics-specific MAC PIB attributes

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macCounterOctets	Integer	1–4	The size of the MAC metrics counters in octets.	—
macRetryCount	Integer	$0–2^{8 \times macCounterOctets}–1$	The number of transmitted frames that required exactly one retry before acknowledgment.	0
macMultipleRetryCount	Integer	$0–2^{8 \times macCounterOctets}–1$	The number of transmitted frames that required more than one retry before acknowledgment.	0
macTxFailCount	Integer	$0–2^{8 \times macCounterOctets}–1$	The number of transmitted frames that did not result in an acknowledgment after *macMaxFrameRetries*.	0

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 8-92—Metrics-specific MAC PIB attributes *(continued)*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macTxSuccessCount	Integer	$0–2^{8\times macCounterOctets}–1$	The number of transmitted frames that were acknowledged successfully after the initial Data frame transmission.	0
macFcsErrorCount	Integer	$0–2^{8\times macCounterOctets}–1$	The number of frames that were discarded due to an incorrect FCS.	0
macSecurityFailure	Integer	$0–2^{8\times macCounterOctets}–1$	The number of frames that were returned from the procedure described in 9.2.3 with any Status other than SUCCESS.	0
macDuplicateFrameCount	Integer	$0–2^{8\times macCounterOctets}–1$	The number of frames that contained the same sequence number as a frame previously received.	0
macRxSuccessCount	Integer	$0–2^{8\times macCounterOctets}–1$	The number of frames that were received correctly.	0
macNackCount	Integer	$0–2^{8\times macCounterOctets}–1$	The number of transmitted frames that were acknowledged with a Time Correction IE indicating a negative acknowledgment.	0

8.4.2.7 Enhanced Beacon Request command specific MAC PIB attributes

Enhanced Beacon Request command specific attributes are described in Table 8-93.

Table 8-93—Enhanced Beacon Request command specific MAC PIB attributes

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macEbrPermitJoining	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	When TRUE, the Permit Joining request will be included in the Enhanced Beacon Request command.	—
macEbrFilters	List of Booleans		Contains which Enhanced Beacon Request command filter field bits should be set.	—
macEbrLinkQuality	Integer	0x00–0xff	Link quality level to be transmitted in the Enhanced Beacon Request command.	—
macEbrPercentFilter	Integer	0–100	Percent filter threshold value to be transmitted in the Enhanced Beacon Request command.	—
macEbrAttributeList	List of attribute identifiers	0x00–0xff	Contains attribute identifiers, as defined in Table 6-3.	—
macBeaconAutoRespond	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	When TRUE, device responds to beacon requests and enhanced beacon requests automatically. When FALSE, device passes beacon/enhanced beacon payload up to higher layer using MLME-BEACONREQUEST.indication.	TRUE

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

8.4.2.8 Enhanced Beacon frame specific MAC PIB attributes

Enhanced Beacon frame specific attributes are described in Table 8-94.

Table 8-94—Enhanced Beacon frame specific MAC PIB attributes

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macUseEnhancedBeacon	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	When TRUE, in a beacon-enabled PAN the device should use Enhanced Beacons rather than standard beacons.	—
macEbHeaderIeList	List of Header IEs	As defined in 7.4	A list of Header IEs to include in the enhanced beacon.	—
macEbPayloadIeList	List of Payload IEs	As defined in 7.4	A list of Payload IEs to include in the enhanced beacon.	—
macEbFilteringEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indicates if devices should perform filtering in response to Enhanced Beacon Request command.	—
macEbsn	Integer	0x00–0xff	BSN used for Enhanced Beacon frames.	—
macEbAutoSa	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, FULL	Indicates if Enhanced Beacon frames generated by the MAC in response to Enhanced Beacon frame include Source Address field.	FULL

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

9. Security

9.1 Overview

The MAC sublayer is responsible for providing security services on specified incoming and outgoing frames when requested to do so by the higher layers. This standard supports the following security services:

- Data confidentiality
- Data authenticity
- Replay protection (when not using TSCH mode)

When TSCH mode is enabled, the nonce is generated again for each retransmission, thus the receiving device has no way of distinguishing whether the frame is a retransmission or not from the ASN. Thus full replay protection in TSCH mode is not provided.

9.2 Functional description

A device may optionally implement security. A device that does not implement security shall not provide a mechanism for the MAC sublayer to perform any cryptographic transformation on incoming and outgoing frames nor require any PIB attributes associated with security. A device that implements security shall provide a mechanism for the MAC sublayer to provide cryptographic transformations on incoming and outgoing frames using information in the PIB attributes associated with security only if the *macSecurityEnabled* attribute is set to TRUE.

Security specific MAC PIB values are italicized and have a prefix of *sec*, i.e., *secKeyFrameCounter*.

Informative diagrams of the various security state machines can be found in Kivinen [B14].

9.2.1 Outgoing frame security procedure

The inputs to this procedure are the frame to be secured and the SecurityLevel, KeyIdMode, KeySource, and KeyIndex parameters. If the frame was generated in response to an MLME or MCPS primitive, then the value of SecurityLevel, KeyIdMode, KeySource and KeyIndex are set to the corresponding values of the primitive parameters. Otherwise, the inputs are as follows:

- SecurityLevel shall be set to *secAutoRequestSecurityLevel*
- KeyIdMode shall be set to *secAutoRequestKeyIdMode*
- KeySource shall be set to *secAutoRequestKeySource*
- KeyIndex shall be set to *secAutoRequestKeyIndex*

The outputs from this procedure are the Status of the procedure and, if this Status is SUCCESS, the secured frame.

This procedure involves the following steps:

a) **Is security needed?** If the SecurityLevel parameter is zero, the procedure shall set the secured frame to be the frame to be secured and return with a Status of SUCCESS.
b) **Is security enabled?** If *macSecurityEnabled* is set to FALSE, the procedure shall return with a Status of UNSUPPORTED_SECURITY.
c) **Obtain KeyDescriptor.** The procedure shall obtain the KeyDescriptor using the KeyDescriptor lookup procedure as described in 9.2.2 using the KeyIdMode, KeyIndex, and KeySource with the

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

DeviceAddressingMode set to Destination Addressing Mode field, DevicePanId set to the Destination PAN ID field, and DeviceAddress set to the Destination Address field. If that procedure fails, the procedure shall return with a Status of UNAVAILABLE_KEY.

d) **Check frame counter value.**
   1) If TSCH mode is not being used and the *secFrameCounterPerKey* in the KeyDescriptor is set to FALSE and *secFrameCounter* has the value 0xffffffff, the procedure shall return with a Status of COUNTER_ERROR.
   2) If TSCH mode is not being used and the *secFrameCounterPerKey* in the KeyDescriptor is set to TRUE and *secKeyFrameCounter* element of the KeyDescriptor has the value 0xffffffff, the procedure shall return with a Status of COUNTER_ERROR.

e) **Insert Auxiliary Security Header field.** The procedure shall insert the Auxiliary Security Header field in the frame to be secured, with the fields set as follows:
   1) The Security Level field of the Security Control field shall be set to the SecurityLevel parameter.
   2) The Key Identifier Mode field of the Security Control field shall be set to the KeyIdMode parameter.
   3) If TSCH mode is being used, the Frame Counter Suppression field in the Security Control field shall be set to one. Otherwise, the Frame Counter Suppression field in the Security Control field shall be set to zero.
   4) The Frame Counter field shall be set as follows:
      i) If TSCH mode is being used, the Frame Counter field shall be omitted.
      ii) If the *secFrameCounterPerKey* in the KeyDescriptor is set to TRUE, the Frame Counter field shall be set to *secKeyFrameCounter*.
      iii) Otherwise, the Frame Counter field shall be set to *secFrameCounter*.
   5) If the KeyIdMode parameter is set to a value not equal to zero, the Key Source and Key Index fields of the Key Identifier field shall be set to the KeySource and KeyIndex parameters, respectively.

f) **Secure the frame.** For the frames specified in Table 9-1, the Private Payload field and Open Payload field shall be set as indicated in the table. For frames not specified in Table 9-1, the Private Payload shall be set to the MAC Payload field and Open Payload field shall be empty. The procedure shall then use the Private Payload field, the Open Payload field, the *macExtendedAddress*, the Frame Counter field (if TSCH is not being used), the ASN (if TSCH is being used), the SecurityLevel parameter, and the *secKey* element of the KeyDescriptor to produce the secured frame according to the CCM* transformation process defined in 9.3.4.

Table 9-1—Exceptions to Private Payload field and Open Payload field definitions

Frame type	Private Payload field	Open Payload field
Beacon (Frame Version < 2)	Beacon Payload field	All other fields in the MAC Payload field
MAC Command (Frame Version < 2)	Content field	Command ID field

g) **Store frame counter.**
   1) If not using TSCH mode and *secFrameCounterPerKey* in the KeyDescriptor is set to TRUE, the procedure shall increment *secKeyFrameCounter* element of the *secKeyDescriptor* by one.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

2) If not using TSCH mode and *secFrameCounterPerKey* in the KeyDescriptor is set to FALSE, the procedure shall increment *secFrameCounter* by one.

h) **Finish procedure.** The procedure shall return with a Status of SUCCESS.

9.2.2 KeyDescriptor lookup procedure

The inputs to this procedure are the KeyIdMode, KeySource, KeyIndex, DeviceAddressingMode, DevicePanId, and DeviceAddress. The outputs from this procedure are a Status and, if Status is set to SUCCESS, a KeyDescriptor.

This procedure involves the following steps:

a) If the KeyIdMode parameter is set to 0x00, then for each *secKeyIdLookupDescriptor* with *secKeyIdMode* set to 0x00 in the *secKeyIdLookupList*:
   1) If the DeviceAddressingMode is set to NONE or if the DevicePanId is not set, then the DevicePanId shall be set to *macPanId*.
   2) If the DeviceAddressingMode is set to NONE and the frame type is beacon, then the DeviceAddress shall be *macCoordExtendedAddress*.
   3) If the DeviceAddressingMode is set to NONE and the frame type is not beacon, then:
      i) If the *macCoordShortAddress* attribute is set to 0xfffe, then the DeviceAddress shall be set to the *macCoordExtendedAddress*.
      ii) If the *macCoordShortAddress* attribute is set to a value of 0x0000–0xfffd, then the DeviceAddress shall be set to the *macCoordShortAddress*.
      iii) If the *macCoordShortAddress* attribute is set to 0xffff, the procedure shall return with Status set to FAILED.
   4) If the DeviceAddressingMode, DevicePanId, and DeviceAddress match the *secKeyDeviceAddrMode*, *secKeyDevicePanId*, and *secKeyDeviceAddress* of a *secKeyIdLookupDescriptor*, then the procedure returns with the corresponding *secKeyDescriptor* and Status set to SUCCESS.

b) If the KeyIdMode parameter is set to 0x01 and KeyIndex matches the *secKeyIndex* of a *secKeyIdLookupDescriptor* that has *secKeyIdMode* set to 0x01, then the procedure returns with the KeyDescriptor set to the corresponding *secKeyDescriptor* and Status set to SUCCESS.

c) If the KeyIdMode parameter is set to 0x02 or 0x03 and KeySource, KeyIdMode and KeyIndex match *secKeySource*, *secKeyIdMode*, and *secKeyIndex*, respectively, of a *secKeyIdLookupDescriptor*, then the procedure returns with the KeyDescriptor set to the corresponding *secKeyDescriptor* and Status set to SUCCESS.

d) The procedure shall return with Status set to FAILED.

NOTE—For broadcast frames, the KeyDescriptor lookup procedure will result in Status set to FAILED if implicit key identification is used. Hence, explicit key identification should be used for broadcast frames.

9.2.3 Incoming frame security procedure, Security Enabled field is set to one

This procedure shall only used for incoming frames in which the Security Enabled field is set to one. For frames in which the Security Enabled field is set to zero, the procedure in 9.2.4 is used instead.

The input to this procedure is the frame to be unsecured. The outputs from this procedure are the Status of the procedure, the unsecured frame (including all IEs), SecurityLevel, KeyIdentifierMode, KeySource, KeyIndex and IeStatusList. The status for an IE in the IeStatusList is set to PASSED if the IE conforms to the security policy for that IE and is set to FAILED otherwise.

All outputs of this procedure are assumed to be invalid unless and until explicitly set in this procedure.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

This procedure involves the following steps:

a) **Legacy security**. If the Frame Version field of the frame to be unsecured is set to zero, the procedure shall return with a Status of UNSUPPORTED_LEGACY.

b) **Check for *macSecurityEnabled*.** If *macSecurityEnabled* is set to FALSE, the procedure shall return with a Status of UNSUPPORTED_SECURITY.

c) **Parse Auxiliary Security Header field.** the procedure shall set SecurityLevel and KeyIdentifierMode to the Security Level field and Key Identifier Mode field, respectively, of the frame to be unsecured. If required by the KeyIdentifierMode, the KeySource and KeyIndex shall be set to the Key Source field and Key Index field, respectively, of the Key Identifier field of the frame to be unsecured. If the resulting SecurityLevel is zero, the procedure shall return with a Status of UNSUPPORTED_SECURITY.

d) **Obtain source address.** DevicePanId shall be set to the Source PAN ID field, if it is present. Otherwise, DevicePanId shall be set to the Destination PAN ID field, if present. If neither PAN ID field is present, then DevicePanId shall be set to *macPanId*. The DeviceAddressingMode shall be set based on the Source Addressing Mode field using the mapping in Table 9-2. The DeviceAddress shall be set to the Source Address field, if present.

Table 9-2—Mapping of Source Addressing Mode field to DeviceAddressingMode

Source Addressing Mode field	DeviceAddressingMode
0x00	NONE
0x02	SHORT
0x03	EXTENDED

e) **Obtain KeyDescriptor.** The procedure shall obtain the KeyDescriptor using the KeyDescriptor lookup procedure as described in 9.2.2 with using the KeyIdMode, KeyIndex, KeySource, DeviceAddressingMode, DevicePanId, and DeviceAddress. If KeyDescriptor lookup procedure fails, the procedure shall return with a Status of UNAVAILABLE_KEY.

f) **Obtain DeviceDescriptor.** The procedure shall obtain the DeviceDescriptor using the DeviceDescriptor lookup procedure described in 9.2.5 using the DeviceAddressingMode, DevicePanId and DeviceAddress. If that procedure fails, then the procedure shall return with a Status of UNAVAILABLE_DEVICE.

g) **Obtain frame counter.** If TSCH mode is being used, then this step is skipped.
   1) If *secFrameCounterPerKey* of the KeyDescriptor is FALSE, the FrameCounterCheck value shall be set to be the *secDeviceMinFrameCounter* element of the DeviceDescriptor.
   2) If *secFrameCounterPerKey* of the KeyDescriptor is TRUE and there is a *secKeyDeviceFrameCounter* in the *secKeyDeviceFrameCounterList* in which *secDeviceExtAddress* matches *secExtAddress* of the DeviceDescriptor, then the procedure shall set the FrameCounterCheck value to the *secDeviceFrameCounter* of that *secKeyDeviceFrameCounter*.
   3) Otherwise, the procedure shall return with a Status of UNAVAILABLE_DEVICE.

h) **Check frame counter.** If TSCH mode is being used, then this step is skipped. If the Frame Counter field of the frame to be unsecured has the value 0xffffffff or the Frame Counter field of the frame to be unsecured is less than the FrameCounterCheck value, the procedure shall return with a Status of COUNTER_ERROR.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

i) **Unsecure frame.** For frames specified in Table 9-1, the Private Payload field and Open Payload field shall be set as indicated in the table. Otherwise, the Private Payload field shall be set to the MAC payload field and the Open Payload field shall be empty. The procedure shall then use the Private Payload field, the Open Payload field, *secExtAddress* of the DeviceDescriptor, the Frame Counter field of the frame to be unsecured (if TSCH is not being used), the ASN (if TSCH is being used), SecurityLevel, and *secKey* of the KeyDescriptor to produce the unsecured frame, according to the CCM* inverse transformation process described in the security operations, as described in 9.3.5. If the CCM* inverse transformation process fails, the procedure shall return with a Status of SECURITY_ERROR.

j) **Store frame counter.** If not using TSCH mode and *secFrameCounterPerKey* of the KeyDescriptor is FALSE, then *secDeviceMinFrameCounter* of the *secDeviceDescriptor* shall be set to the value of the Frame Counter plus one. If not using TSCH mode and *secFrameCounterPerKey* of the KeyDescriptor is TRUE, then *secDeviceFrameCounter* of the *secKeyDeviceFrameCounter* corresponding to *secExtAddress* shall be set to the value Frame Counter plus one.

k) **Obtain SecurityLevelDescriptor.** The procedure shall obtain the SecurityLevelDescriptor by passing the Frame Type field and, if the frame is a MAC command, the Command ID field, of the frame to be unsecured to the SecurityLevelDescriptor lookup procedure described in 9.2.6. If that procedure fails, the procedure shall return with a Status of UNAVAILABLE_SECURITY_LEVEL.

l) **Check IE security.** If the IE present field of the frame to be unsecured is set to one, the procedure shall determine whether the IEs in the frame to be unsecured conforms to the security level policy by passing the IEs from the frame, DeviceDescriptor, SecurityLevelDescriptor and the SecurityLevel to the incoming IE security level checking procedure, as described in 9.2.7.

m) **Check IE Key Usage Policy.** If the IE present field of the frame to be unsecured is set to one, the procedure shall determine whether the frame to be unsecured conforms to the key usage policy by passing the IeStatusList, KeyDescriptor, the IEs from the frame, the Frame Type field, and, if the frame is a MAC command, the Command ID field, to the incoming IE key usage policy checking procedure, as described in 9.2.8.

n) **Check security level.** The procedure shall determine whether the frame to be unsecured conforms to the security level policy by passing the SecurityLevelDescriptor and the SecurityLevel to the incoming security level checking procedure, as described in 9.2.9. If that procedure returns with a Status of FAILED, the procedure shall return with the IEs from the unsecured frame, the IeStatusList and a Status of IMPROPER_SECURITY_LEVEL.

o) **Check key usage policy.** The procedure shall determine whether the frame to be unsecured conforms to the key usage policy by passing the KeyDescriptor, the Frame Type field, and, if the frame is a MAC command, the Command ID field, to the incoming key usage policy checking procedure, as described in 9.2.10. If that procedure fails, the procedure shall return with the IEs from the unsecured frame, the IeStatusList and a Status of IMPROPER_KEY_TYPE.

p) **Return unsecured frame.** The procedure shall return with the unsecured frame, SecurityLevel, KeyIdentifierMode, KeySource, KeyIndex, IeStatusList, and a Status of SUCCESS.

9.2.4 Incoming frame security procedure, Security Enabled field is set to zero

This procedure shall only used for incoming frames in which the Security Enabled field set to zero. For frames in which the Security Level field is set to one, the procedure in 9.2.3 is used instead.

The input to this procedure is the frame to be validated. The outputs from this procedure are the Status of the procedure, the validated frame (including all IEs) and IeStatusList. The status for an IE in the IeStatusList is set to PASSED if the IE conforms to the security policy for that IE and is set to FAILED otherwise.

All outputs of this procedure are assumed to be invalid unless and until explicitly set in this procedure.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

This procedure involves the following steps:

a) **Check for *macSecurityEnabled***. If *macSecurityEnabled* is set to FALSE, the procedure shall set the validated frame to be the frame to be validated and return with a Status of SUCCESS.
b) **Obtain source address.** DevicePanId shall be set to the Source PAN ID field, if it is present. Otherwise, DevicePanId shall be set to the Destination PAN ID field, if present. If neither PAN ID field is present, then DevicePanId shall be set to *macPanId*. DeviceAddressingMode shall be set to the Source Addressing Mode field. The DeviceAddress shall be set to the Source Address, if present.
c) **Obtain DeviceDescriptor.** The procedure shall obtain the DeviceDescriptor using the DeviceDescriptor lookup procedure described in 9.2.5 using DeviceAddressingMode, DevicePanId and DeviceAddress with the SecurityLevel set to zero. If that procedure fails, then the procedure shall return with a Status of UNAVAILABLE_DEVICE.
d) **Obtain SecurityLevelDescriptor.** The procedure shall obtain the SecurityLevelDescriptor by passing the Frame Type field and, if the frame is a MAC command, the Command ID field, of the frame to be validated to the SecurityLevelDescriptor lookup procedure described in 9.2.6. If that procedure fails, the procedure shall return with a Status of UNAVAILABLE_SECURITY_LEVEL.
e) **Check IE security.** If the IE present field of the frame to be validated is set to one, the procedure shall determine whether the IEs in the frame to be validated conforms to the security level policy by passing the DeviceDescriptor, the SecurityLevelDescriptor, the SecurityLevel set to zero and the IEs from the frame to the incoming IE security level checking procedure, as described in 9.2.7. That procedure will return the IeStatusList.
f) **Check security level.** The procedure shall determine whether the frame to be validated conforms to the security level policy by passing the SecurityLevelDescriptor and the SecurityLevel set to zero to the incoming security level checking procedure, as described in 9.2.9. If incoming security level checking procedure procedure returns with a Status of FAILED, the procedure shall return with a Status of IMPROPER_SECURITY_LEVEL. If the incoming security level checking procedure returned with a Status of CONDITIONALLY_PASSED and the *secExempt* element of the DeviceDescriptor is set to FALSE, the procedure shall return with a status of IMPROPER_SECURITY_LEVEL.
g) **Return frame.** The procedure shall set the validated frame to be the frame to be validated and return with the frame to be validated, IeStatusList, and a status of SUCCESS.

9.2.5 DeviceDescriptor lookup procedure

The inputs to this procedure are DeviceAddressingMode, the DevicePanId, and the DeviceAddress. The output from this procedure is a Status of either PASSED or FAILED, and, if PASSED, a DeviceDescriptor.

This procedure involves the following steps:

a) If the DeviceAddressingMode is set to NONE, then the DevicePanId shall be set to *macPanId*.
b) If the DeviceAddressingMode is set to NONE, then:
    1) If the *macCoordShortAddress* attribute is set to 0xfffe, then the DeviceAddress shall be set to the *macCoordExtendedAddress*.
    2) If the *macCoordShortAddress* attribute is set to a value of 0x0000–0xfffd, then the DeviceAddress shall be set to the *macCoordShortAddress*.
    3) If the *macCoordShortAddress* attribute is set to 0xffff, the procedure shall return with a Status set to FAILED.
c) For each DeviceDescriptor, if DevicePanId matches the *secPanId* and DeviceAddress matches *secShortAddress*, if the DeviceAddressingMode is set to SHORT, or the *secExtAddress*, if the DeviceAddressingMode is set to EXTENDED, then the procedure shall return with the corresponding DevicesDescriptor and Status set to PASSED.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

d) The procedure shall return with a Status set to FAILED.

9.2.6 SecurityLevelDescriptor lookup procedure

The inputs to this procedure are the Frame Type field and, if the frame is a MAC command, the Command ID field. The output from this procedure are a Status of either PASSED or FAILED, and, if PASSED, a SecurityLevelDescriptor.

This procedure involves the following steps:

a) For each SecurityLevelDescriptor in the *secSecurityLevelTable* attribute:
   1) If the frame type indicates that the frame is not a MAC command and the Frame Type field is equal to the *secFrameType* element of the *secSecurityLevelDescriptor*, the procedure shall return with the *secSecurityLevelDescriptor* and Status set to PASSED.
   2) If the Frame Type field indicates that the frame is a MAC command and the Frame Type is equal to the *secFrameType* element of the *secSecurityLevelDescriptor* and the Command ID field is equal to the *secCommandId* element of the *secSecurityLevelDescriptor*, the procedure shall return with the *secSecurityLevelDescriptor* and Status set to PASSED.
b) The procedure shall return with Status set to FAILED.

9.2.7 Incoming IE security level checking procedure

The inputs to this procedure are DeviceDescriptor, SecurityLevelDescriptor, SecurityLevel, and the IEs in the frame. The output from this procedure is an IeStatusList, in which each element in the list is set to either PASSED or FAILED for each IE.

A match is found if the *secIeType* of the *secIeSecurityLevelDescriptor* matches the type of the IE and the *secIeId* of the *secIeSecurityLevelDescriptor* entry matches the ID of the IE.

This procedure involves the following steps:

a) If *secIeSecurityLevelDescriptorList* of the SecurityLevelDescriptor is empty, then set the IeStatus in the IeStatusList to PASSED for each IE in the frame, and return IeStatusList.
b) Set the IeStatus in the IeStatusList to FAILED for each IE in the frame.
c) For each IE in the frame and for each *secIeSecurityLevelDescriptor* in *secIeSecurityLevelDescriptorList*, if the IE matches the *secIeSecurityLevelDescriptor* entry, then
   1) If *secIeAllowedSecurityLevels* of the *secIeSecurityLevelDescriptor* is empty, then the procedure shall compare the SecurityLevel (as SEC1) with the *secIeSecurityMinimum* of the *secIeSecurityLevelDescriptor* (as SEC2) according to the algorithm described in 9.4.1.1. If this comparison evaluates to TRUE, the procedure shall set the IeStatus in the IeStatusList for this IE to PASSED.
   2) If *secIeAllowedSecurityLevels* of the *secIeSecurityLevelDescriptor* is not empty, the procedure shall check whether the SecurityLevel is equal to any of the elements of the *secIeAllowedSecurityLevels* of the *secIeSecurityLevelDescriptor*. If this check is successful, the procedure shall set the IeStatus in the IeStatusList for this IE to PASSED.
   3) If the SecurityLevel is equal to 0x00 and *seIecDeviceOverrideSecurityMinimum* of the *secIeSecurityLevelDescriptor* is set to TRUE, and the *secExempt* of the DeviceDescriptor is set to TRUE, the procedure shall set the IeStatus in the IeStatusList for this IE to PASSED.
d) Return IeStatusList.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

9.2.8 Incoming IE key usage policy checking procedure

The inputs to this procedure are KeyDescriptor, IeStatusList, Frame Type field, the IEs in the frame, and, if the frame is a MAC command, the Command ID field. The output from this procedure is an IeStatusList, in which each element in the list is set to either PASSED or FAILED for each IE.

A match is found for an IE if the *secIeType* of the *secKeyIeUsageDescriptor* matches the type of the IE and the *secIeId* of the *secKeyIeUsageDescriptor* entry matches the ID of the IE.

This procedure involves the following steps:

a) Find the *secKeyUsageDescriptor* entry for which the Frame Type field matches *secKeyUsageFrameType* and, if the frame is a MAC command, the Command ID field matches *secKeyUsageCommandId*. If a matching *secKeyUsageDescriptor* entry was not found, or if the *secKeyIeUsageList* is empty in the *secKeyUsageDescriptor* that was found, then return IeStatusList.
b) For each IE in the frame, if the IE does not match any of the *secKeyIeUsageDescriptor* entries, then set the IeStatus in the IeStatusList for this IE to FAILED.
c) Return IeStatusList.

9.2.9 Incoming security level checking procedure

The inputs to this procedure are SecurityLevelDescriptor and SecurityLevel. The output from this procedure is Status set to one of PASSED, FAILED, or CONDITIONALLY_PASSED.

The incoming security level checking procedure involves the following steps:

a) If *secAllowedSecurityLevels* in SecurityLevelDescriptor is empty, then the procedure shall compare the SecurityLevel (as SEC1) with the *secSecurityMinimum* element of the SecurityLevelDescriptor (as SEC2) according to the algorithm described in 9.4.1.1. If this comparison evaluates to TRUE, the procedure shall return with Status set to PASSED.
b) If *secAllowedSecurityLevels* in SecurityLevelDescriptor is not empty, the procedure shall check whether the SecurityLevel is equal to any of the elements of the *secAllowedSecurityLevels* of the SecurityLevelDescriptor. If this check is successful, the procedure shall return with Status set to PASSED.
c) If SecurityLevel is equal to 0x00 and the *secDeviceOverrideSecurityMinimum* element of the SecurityLevelDescriptor is set to TRUE, the procedure shall return with Status set to CONDITIONALLY_PASSED.
d) The procedure shall return with Status set to FAILED.

9.2.10 Incoming key usage policy checking procedure

The inputs to this procedure are the KeyDescriptor, the Frame Type field, and the Command ID field. The output from this procedure is Status set to PASSED or FAILED.

The incoming key usage policy checking procedure involves the following steps:

a) For each *secKeyUsageDescriptor* in the *secKeyUsageList* of the KeyDescriptor:
    1) If the Frame Type field indicates that the frame is not a MAC command and the Frame Type field is equal to the *secKeyUsageFrameType* element of the *secKeyUsageDescriptor*, the procedure shall return with Status set to PASSED.
    2) If the Frame Type field indicates that the frame is a MAC command, the Frame Type is equal to the *secFrameType* element of the *secKeyUsageDescriptor*, and the Command ID field is equal

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

to the *secKeyUsageCommandId* element of the *secKeyUsageDescriptor*, the procedure shall return with Status set to PASSED.

b) The procedure shall return with Status set to FAILED.

9.3 Security operations

This subclause describes the parameters for the CCM* security operations, as specified in B.3.2.

9.3.1 Integer and octet representation

The integer and octet representation conventions specified in B.2 are used throughout this subclause.

9.3.2 CCM* nonce

9.3.2.1 CCM* nonce for non-TSCH mode

The CCM* nonce for non-TSCH mode shall be formatted as shown in Figure 9-1, with the leftmost field in the figure defining the first octets and the rightmost field defining the last octet of the nonce.

Octets: 8	**4**	**1**
Source Address	Frame Counter	Nonce Security Level

Figure 9-1—CCM* nonce for non-TSCH mode

The Source Address field shall be set to the extended address of the device originating the frame.

The Frame Counter field shall be set to the value of the respective field in the Auxiliary Security Header field, as defined in 9.4.

The Nonce Security Level field is an unsigned integer that shall be set to the value of the Security Level field of the Security Control field, as defined in 9.4.1.

The Source Address field, Frame Counter field, and Security Level field shall be represented as specified in 9.3.1.

9.3.2.2 CCM* nonce for TSCH mode

When TSCH mode is enabled, the nonce shall be formatted as shown in Figure 9-2.

Octets: 8	**5**
Source Address	ASN

Figure 9-2—CCM* nonce in TSCH mode

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Source Address shall either be set to the extended address of the device originating the frame or shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 9-3.

Octets: 3	1	2	2
IEEE 802.15 CID	0x00	PAN ID	Short address

Figure 9-3—Source Address field for TSCH mode with short addressing

The IEEE 802.15 CID field contains the CID for IEEE 802.15.

The PAN ID field contains the PAN ID.

The Short Address field contains the short address of the device originating the frame.

NOTE—When using short addresses in the nonce, it is important that the coordinator assign unique short addresses.

The ASN shall be set to the ASN of the timeslot during which the frame is sent.

9.3.2.3 CCM* nonce for Fragment frames

The CCM* nonce for Fragment frames shall be formatted as shown in Figure 9-4, with the leftmost field in the figure defining the first octets and the rightmost field defining the last octet of the nonce.

Octets: 8	Bits: 0–25	26–31	32–35	36	37–39
Source Address	PSDU Counter	Fragment Number	Reserved	Fragment Indicator	Security level

Figure 9-4—CCM* nonce for Fragment frames

The Source Address field is defined in 9.3.2.1.

The Security Level field is defined in 9.3.2.1.

The PSDU Counter field shall be set to the value of the PSDU Counter field of the FSCD IE that was used to set up this fragment transaction.

The Fragment Number field shall be set to the value of the Fragment Number field of the Fragment packet, as defined in 23.3.3.

The Fragment Indicator field shall be set to one.

9.3.3 CCM* prerequisites

Securing a frame involves the use of the CCM* mode encryption and authentication transformation, as described in B.4.1. Unsecuring a frame involves the use of the CCM* decryption and authentication checking transformation, as described in B.4.2.

The length *M* of the Authentication field for the CCM* forward transformation and the CCM* inverse transformation is determined from Table 9-6, using the Security Level field of the Security Control field of the auxiliary security header of the frame.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

9.3.4 CCM* transformation data representation

This subclause describes how the inputs and outputs of the CCM* forward transformation, as described in B.4.1, are formed.

The inputs are as follows:

- Key
- Nonce
- *a* data
- *m* data

The output is *c* data.

9.3.4.1 Key and nonce data inputs

The Key data for the CCM* forward transformation is passed by the outgoing frame security procedure described in 9.2.1. The Nonce data for the CCM* transformation is constructed as described in 9.3.2.

9.3.4.2 *a* data and *m* data

In the CCM* transformation process, the data fields shall be applied as in Table 9-3.

Table 9-3—*a* data and *m* data for all security levels

Security level	*a* data	*m* data
0	None	None
1	MHR || Open Payload field || Unsecured Private Payload field	None
2	MHR || Open Payload field || Unsecured Private Payload field	None
3	MHR || Open Payload field || Unsecured Private Payload field	None
4	—	
5	MHR || Open Payload field	Unsecured Private Payload field
6	MHR || Open Payload field	Unsecured Private Payload field
7	MHR || Open Payload field	Unsecured Private Payload field

NOTE—The MHR contains the Auxiliary Security Header field, as defined in 7.2.

9.3.4.3 *c* data output

In the CCM* transformation process, the data fields that are applied, or right-concatenated and applied, represent octet strings.

The Private Payload field of the original unsecured frame shall be replaced by the right-concatenation of that field and the *c* field if data confidentiality is not provided and shall be replaced by the *c* field otherwise. The contents of the *c* data for each of the security levels is defined in Table 9-4.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 9-4—*c* data for all security levels

Security level	*c* data
0	None
1	MIC-32
2	MIC-64
3	MIC-128
4	—
5	Encrypted Private Payload field || MIC-32
6	Encrypted Private Payload field || MIC-64
7	Encrypted Private Payload field || MIC-128

9.3.5 CCM* inverse transformation data representation

This subclause describes how the inputs and outputs of the CCM* inverse transformation, as described in B.4.2, are formed.

The inputs are as follows:

— Key
— Nonce
— *c* data
— *a* data

The output is *m* data.

9.3.5.1 Key and nonce data inputs

The Key data for the CCM* inverse transformation is passed by the incoming frame security procedure described in 9.2.3. The Nonce data for the CCM* transformation is constructed as described in 9.3.2.

9.3.5.2 *c* data and *a* data

In the CCM* inverse transformation process, the data fields shall be applied as in Table 9-5.

Table 9-5—*c* data and *a* data for all security levels

Security level	*c* data	*a* data
0	None	None
1	MIC-32	MHR || Open Payload field || Private Payload field
2	MIC-64	MHR || Open Payload field || Private Payload field
3	MIC-128	MHR || Open Payload field || Private Payload field
4	—	—

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 9-5—*c* data and *a* data for all security levels *(continued)*

Security level	*c* data	*a* data
5	Encrypted Private Payload field || MIC-32	MHR || Open Payload field
6	Encrypted Private Payload field || MIC-64	MHR || Open Payload field
7	Encrypted Private Payload field || MIC-128	MHR || Open Payload field

NOTE—The MHR contains the Auxiliary Security Header field, as defined in 7.2.

9.3.5.3 *m* data output

The Private Payload field of the MAC Payload shall be set to the *m* data if frame security includes providing confidentiality and shall be set to the Private Payload field of the MAC Payload, with the rightmost substring, *c*, deleted, otherwise.

9.4 Auxiliary security header

The Auxiliary Security Header field has a variable length and contains information required for security processing, including a Security Control field, a Frame Counter field, and a Key Identifier field. The Auxiliary Security Header field shall be present only if the Security Enabled field is set to one. The Auxiliary Security Header field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 9-5.

Octets: 1	0/4	0/1/5/9
Security Control	Frame Counter	Key Identifier

Figure 9-5—Format of the auxiliary security header

The auxiliary security header uses the representation conventions specified in 7.1.

9.4.1 Security Control field

The Security Control field is used to provide information about what protection is applied to the frame. The Security Control field shall be formatted as shown in Figure 9-6.

Bit: 0–2	3–4	5	6	6–7
Security Level	Key Identifier Mode	Frame Counter Suppression	ASN in Nonce	Reserved

Figure 9-6—Security Control field format

9.4.1.1 Security Level field

The Security Level field indicates the actual frame protection that is provided. This value can be adapted on a frame-by-frame basis and allows for varying levels of data authenticity (to allow minimization of security overhead in transmitted frames where required) and for optional data confidentiality. The cryptographic protection offered by the various security levels is shown in Table 9-6.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 9-6—Security levels available to the MAC sublayer

Security level	Security level field b2 b1 b0	Security attributes	Data confidentiality	Data authenticity	MIC length (octets)
0	000	None	OFF	NO	0
1	001	MIC-32	OFF	YES	4
2	010	MIC-64	OFF	YES	8
3	011	MIC-128	OFF	YES	16
4	100	Reserved			
5	101	ENC-MIC-32	ON	YES	4
6	110	ENC-MIC-64	ON	YES	8
7	111	ENC-MIC-128	ON	YES	16

In previous version of the standard, security level 4 was a level which provided only data confidentiality but without data authenticity. This security level is deprecated and shall not be used in implementation compliant with this standard. Devices that receive frames with security level 4 shall discard them, as described in 9.2.3. The CCM used allows trivial changes to the underlaying encrypted data unless data authenticity is provided, thus using data confidentiality only is not useful. In the case of TSCH mode, security level 4 allows higher security level frames to be downgraded to security level 4 frames.

Security levels can be ordered according to the corresponding cryptographic protection offered. Here, a first security level SEC1 is greater than or equal to a second security level SEC2 if and only if SEC1 offers at least the protection offered by SEC2, both with respect to data confidentiality and with respect to data authenticity. The statement “SEC1 is greater than or equal to SEC2” shall be evaluated as TRUE if both of the following conditions apply:

a) Bit position b2 in SEC1 is greater than or equal to bit position b2 in SEC2 (where Encryption OFF < Encryption ON).
b) The integer value of bit positions b1 b0 in SEC1 is greater than or equal to the integer value of bit positions b1 b0 in SEC2 (where increasing integer values indicate increasing levels of data authenticity provided, i.e., message integrity code MIC-0 < MIC-32 < MIC-64 < MIC-128).

Otherwise, the statement shall be evaluated as FALSE.

For example, ENC-MIC-64 ≥ MIC-64 is TRUE because ENC-MIC-64 offers the same data authenticity protection as MIC-64, plus confidentiality. On the other hand, MIC-128 ≥ ENC-MIC-64 is FALSE because even though MIC-128 offers stronger data authenticity than ENC-MIC-64, it offers no confidentiality.

9.4.1.2 Key Identifier Mode field

The Key Identifier Mode field is an unsigned integer that indicates whether the key that is used to protect the frame can be derived implicitly or explicitly; furthermore, it is used to indicate the particular representations of the Key Identifier field, as defined in 9.4.3, if derived explicitly. The Key Identifier Mode field shall be set to one of the values listed in Table 9-7. The Key Identifier field of the auxiliary security header, as defined in 9.4.3, shall be present only if this field has a value that is not equal to 0x00.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 9-7—Values of the Key Identifier Mode field

Key identifier mode	Key Identifier Mode field b1 b0	Description	Key Identifier field length (octets)
0x00	00	Key is determined implicitly from the originator and recipient(s) of the frame, as indicated in the frame header.	0
0x01	01	Key is determined from the Key Index field.	1
0x02	10	Key is determined explicitly from the 4-octet Key Source field and the Key Index field.	5
0x03	11	Key is determined explicitly from the 8-octet Key Source field and the Key Index field.	9

9.4.1.3 Frame Counter Suppression field

The Frame Counter Suppression field is set to zero when the frame counter is carried in the frame. When set to one, the frame counter is not carried in the frame, and the frame counter used to construct the nonce defined in 9.3.2 is an incrementing shared global frame counter such as ASN.

9.4.1.4 ASN in Nonce

The ASN in Nonce field is set to zero when the frame counter is used to generate the nonce, as described in 9.3.2.1. When set to one, the ASN is used to generate the nonce, as described in 9.3.2.2.

9.4.2 Frame Counter field

The Frame Counter field is an unsigned integer value used in CCM* nonce generation as defined in 9.3.2.1 and to provide replay protection.

The Frame Counter field may be included in each secured frame and is one of the elements required for the unsecuring operation at the recipient(s). The value of the Frame Counter field is determined by the outgoing frame security procedure, 9.2.1.

Previous versions of this standard used a single frame counter for outgoing frames for each device. In the current revision of the standard allows multiple outgoing frame counters, each of which is associated with a key. If the next higher layer has been informed that the target device supports per key frame counters, then *secFrameCounterPerKey* of the *secKeyDescriptor* may be set to TRUE. If the next higher layer of the device does not know that the target device supports per key frame counters, then *secFrameCounterPerKey* of the *secKeyDescriptor* shall be set to FALSE.

When a frame counter, either per device or per key, reaches its maximum value, the associated keying material shall no longer be used, thus requiring this key to be updated by changing to use a new key. This provides a mechanism for ensuring that the keying material for every frame is unique and, thereby, provides for sequential freshness.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

9.4.3 Key Identifier field

The Key Identifier field has a variable length and identifies the key that is used for cryptographic protection of outgoing frames, either explicitly or in conjunction with implicitly defined side information. The Key Identifier field shall be present only if the Key Identifier Mode field, as defined in 9.4.1.2, is set to a value different from 0x00. The Key Identifier field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 9-7.

Octets: 0/4/8	**1**
Key Source	Key Index

Figure 9-7—Format for the Key Identifier field, if present

9.4.3.1 Key Source field

The KeySource field, when present, indicates the originator of a group key. If the Key Identifier Mode field indicates a 4 octet Key Source field, then the Key Source field shall be the *macPanId* of the originator of the group key right concatenated with the *macShortAddress* of the originator of the group key. If the Key Identifier Mode field indicates an 8 octet Key Source field, then the Key Source field shall be set to the *macExtendedAddress* of the originator of the group key.

9.4.3.2 Key Index field

The Key Index field allows unique identification of different keys with the same originator.

It is the responsibility of each key originator to make sure that the actively used keys that it issues have distinct key indices and that the key indices are all different from 0x00.

9.5 Security-related MAC PIB attributes

The PIB security-related attributes are defined in Table 9-8. The model for updates to the PIB described in this standard allow the MAC to update the PIB values asynchronously to write and read requests from the next higher layer. Thus, to maintain security, implementations should use a method to update the security-related PIB attributes in a way to ensure synchronization between the next higher layer and the MAC.

Table 9-8—Security-related MAC PIB attributes

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
secKeyIdLookupList	List of *secKeyIdLookupDescriptors*, as defined Table 9-9	—	A list of *secKeyIdLookupDescriptors* containing keys and security policy information.	(empty)
secDeviceList	List of *secDeviceDescriptors*, as defined in Table 9-14	—	List of device information for each remote device with which this device securely communicates.	(empty)
secSecurityLevelList	List of *secSecurityLevelDescriptors*, as defined in Table 9-15	—	Provides information about the security level required for each MAC frame type and subtype.	(empty)

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 9-8—Security-related MAC PIB attributes *(continued)*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
secFrameCounter	Integer	0x00000000–0xffffffff	The outgoing frame counter for this device to be used for keys which do not have *secFrameCounterPerKey* set to TRUE.	0x00000000
secAutoRequestSecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 9-6	The security level used for automatic data requests.	0x06
secAutoRequestKeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 9-10	The key identifier mode used for automatic data requests. This attribute is invalid if the *secAutoRequestSecurityLevel* attribute is set to 0x00.	0x00
secAutoRequestKeySource	As specified by the *secAutoRequesKeyIdMode* parameter	—	The originator of the key used for automatic data requests. This attribute is invalid if the *secAutoRequestKeyIdMode* element is invalid or set to 0x00 or 0x01.	—
secAutoRequestKeyIndex	Integer	0x01–0xff	The index of the key used for automatic data requests. This attribute is invalid if the *secAutoRequestKeyIdMode* attribute is invalid or set to 0x00.	—

Table 9-9 defines the elements of a *secKeyIdLookupDescriptor*, which is used to find the *secKeyDescriptor* based on key identifiers.

Table 9-9—Elements of *secKeyIdLookupDescriptor*

Name	Type	Range	Description
secKeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 9-7	The mode used to for this descriptor.
secKeySource	4 or 8 octets	As defined in 9.4.3.1	Information to identify the key. Present only if *secKeyIdMode* is equal to 0x02 or 0x03
secKeyIndex	Integer	As defined in 9.4.3.1	Information used to identify the key. Present only if *secKeyIdMode* is not equal to 0x00.
secKeyDeviceAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, EXTENDED	The addressing mode for this descriptor. Present only if *secKeyIdMode* is equal to 0x00.
secKeyDevicePanId	Integer	0x0000–0xffff	The PAN ID for this descriptor. Present only if *secKeyIdMode* is equal to 0x00.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 9-9—Elements of *secKeyIdLookupDescriptor* (continued)

Name	Type	Range	Description
secKeyDeviceAddress	—	As specified by the *secKeyDeviceAddrMode*	The address for this descriptor. Present only if *secKeyIdMode* is equal to 0x00.
secKeyDescriptor	An *secKeyDescriptor,* as defined in Table 9-10	As defined in Table 9-10	An *secKeyDescriptor* associated with the parameters in this *secKeyIdLookupDescriptor.*

Table 9-10 defines the elements of a *secKeyDescriptor*. The *secKeyDescriptor* contains one entry for each key in use by the device. More than one *secKeyIdLookupDescriptor* can point to a single *secKeyDescriptor*.

Table 9-10—Elements of *secKeyDescriptor*

Name	Type	Range	Description
secKeyUsageList	List of *secKeyUsageDescriptor* entries, as defined in Table 9-12	—	A list of *secKeyUsageDescriptor* entries indicating the frame types with which this key may be used.
secKey	16 octets	—	The value of the key.
secKeyFrameCounter	Integer	0x00000000–0xffffffff	The outgoing frame counter for this key. This not used if *secFrameCounterPerKey* is FALSE.
secFrameCounterPerKey	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If this value is TRUE, this key will use per key frame counters stored in *secKeyDescriptor* and *secKeyDeviceFrameCounter* entries. If this value is FALSE, then per device frame counters are used for this key.
secKeyDeviceFrameCounterList	List of *secKeyDeviceFrameCounter* entries, as defined in Table 9-11	—	A list of *secKeyDeviceFrameCounter* entries containing the per key frame counters used for this *secKeyDescriptor.*

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 9-11 defines the elements of a *secKeyDeviceFrameCounter*, which contains the incoming frame counter for a device specified by the associated extended address.

Table 9-11—Elements of *secKeyDeviceFrameCounter*

Name	Type	Range	Description
secDeviceExtAddress	IEEE address	An extended IEEE address	The extended address of the device associated with the *secKeyDeviceFrameCounter.*
secDeviceFrameCounter	Integer	0x00000000–0xffffffff	The incoming frame counter for the device indicated by *secDeviceExtAddress*.

Table 9-12, defines the elements of a *secKeyUsageDescriptor*. Each entry of a *secKeyUsageDescriptor* corresponds to a key and is used to define the frame types, MAC commands and IEs that are allowed to be used with that key.

Table 9-12—Elements of *secKeyUsageDescriptor*

Name	Type	Range	Description
secKeyUsageFrameType	Integer	As defined in 7.2.1.1	As defined in 7.2.1.1.
secKeyUsageCommandId	Integer	As defined in Table 7-49	As defined in Table 7-49.
secKeyIeUsageDescriptorList	List of *secKeyIeUsageDescriptor* entries, as defined in Table 9-13.	—	List of *secKeyIeUsageDescriptor* entries. If this is empty, then there are no restrictions on the IE usage associated with the key.

Table 9-13 defines the elements of a *secKeyIeUsageDescriptor*. The *secKeyIeUsageDescriptor* is a list of IEs that are allowed to be used with a key.

Table 9-13—Elements of *secKeyIeUsageDescriptor*

Name	Type	Range	Description
secKeyIeType	Enumeration	HEADER, PAYLOAD, NESTED_SHORT, NESTED_LONG	The type of IE, header, payload, nested long format or nested short format, as defined in 7.4.
secKeyIeId	Integer	As defined in Table 7-7, Table 7-15, Table 7-16, or Table 7-17	The IE ID for the IE type indicated by *secKeyIeType.*

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 9-14 defines the elements of a *secDeviceDescriptor*. Each entry in *secDeviceDescriptor* contains information about a device in the PAN with which this device has communicated.

Table 9-14—Elements of *secDeviceDescriptor*

Name	Type	Range	Description
secPanId	Device PAN ID	0x0000–0xffff	The PAN ID of the device in this DeviceDescriptor.
secShortAddress	Device short address	0x0000–0xffff	The short address of the device in this DeviceDescriptor. A value of 0xfffe indicates that this device is using only its extended address. A value of 0xffff indicates that this value is unknown.
secExtAddress	IEEE address	Any valid extended IEEE address	The extended IEEE address of the device.
secExempt	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indication of whether the device may override the minimum security level settings defined in Table 9-15.
secDeviceMinFrameCounter	Integer	0x00000000–0xffffffff	The smallest frame counter allowed to be sent by the other device for this key. If incoming frame counter is smaller than this then the frame is replay.

The security policies for frames and IEs are contained in the *secSecurityLevelDescriptor*. The elements of *secSecurityLevelDescriptor* are defined in Table 9-15.

Table 9-15—Elements of *secSecurityLevelDescriptor*

Name	Type	Range	Description
secFrameType	Integer	As defined in 7.2.1.1	As defined in 7.2.1.1.
secCommandId	Integer	As defined in Table 7-49	As defined in Table 7-49.
secSecurityMinimum	Integer	As defined in Table 9-6	The minimal required/expected security level, as defined in Table 9-6, for incoming MAC frames with the indicated frame type and, if present, Command ID. This is only used if *secAllowedSecurityLevels* is empty.
secDeviceOverrideSecurityMinimum	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indication of whether originating devices for which the secExempt is set may override the security level indicated by the AllowedSecurityLevels or SecurityMinimum. If TRUE, this indicates that for originating devices with Exempt status, the incoming security level zero is acceptable, in addition to the incoming security levels meeting the minimum expected security level indicated by the SecurityMinimum element.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 9-15—Elements of *secSecurityLevelDescriptor* (continued)

Name	Type	Range	Description
secAllowedSecurityLevels	Set of integers	—	A set of allowed security levels, as defined in Table 9-6, for incoming MAC frames with the indicated frame type, and, if present, Command ID field. If the set is empty, then the SecurityMinimum parameter applies instead.
secIeSecurityLevelDescriptorList	List of *secIeSecurityLevelDescriptor* entries, as defined in Table 9-16.	—	The allowed security levels for IEs. If this is empty, then there are no restrictions on security levels for IEs.

The *secIeSecurityLevelDescriptor* contains the security policies for IEs. The elements of the *secIeSecurityLevelDescriptor* are defined in Table 9-16.

Table 9-16—Elements of *secIeSecurityLevelDescriptor*

Name	Type	Range	Description
secIeType	Enumeration	HEADER, PAYLOAD, NESTED_SHORT, NESTED_LONG	The type of IE, header, payload, nested long format or nested short format, as defined in 7.4.
secIeId	Integer	As defined in Table 7-7, Table 7-15, Table 7-16, or Table 7-17	The IE ID for the IE type indicated by *secIeType*.
secIeSecurityMinimum	As defined in Table 9-15.	As defined in Table 9-15	As defined in Table 9-15.
secIeDeviceOverrideSecurityMinimum	As defined in Table 9-15.	As defined in Table 9-15	As defined in Table 9-15.
secIeAllowedSecurityLevels	As defined in Table 9-15.	As defined in Table 9-15	As defined in Table 9-15.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

10. General PHY requirements

10.1 General requirements and definitions

Unless otherwise specified, all PHYs use a 2-octet FCS.

The PHY is responsible for the following tasks:

— Activation and deactivation of the radio transceiver
— Energy detection (ED) within the current channel
— Link quality indicator (LQI) for received packets
— Clear channel assessment (CCA) for carrier sense multiple access with collision avoidance (CSMA-CA)
— Channel frequency selection
— Data transmission and reception
— Precision ranging for ultra-wide band (UWB) PHYs

The PHYs defined in this standard are as follows:

— **O-QPSK PHY**: direct sequence spread spectrum (DSSS) PHY employing offset quadrature phase-shift keying (O-QPSK) modulation, operating in the 780 MHz band, 868 MHz band, 915 MHz band, 2380 MHz band, and 2450 MHz band, as defined in Clause 12.
— **BPSK PHY**: DSSS PHY employing binary phase-shift keying (BPSK) modulation, operating in the 868 MHz band, and 915 MHz band, as defined in Clause 13.
— **ASK PHY**: parallel sequence spread spectrum (PSSS) PHY employing amplitude shift keying (ASK) and BPSK modulation, operating in the 868 MHz band and 915 MHz band, as defined in Clause 14.
— **CSS PHY**: chirp spread spectrum (CSS) employing differential quadrature phase-shift keying (DQPSK) modulation, operating in the 2450 MHz band, as defined in Clause 15.
— **HRP UWB PHY**: combined burst position modulation (BPM) and BPSK modulation, operating in the sub-gigahertz and 3–10 GHz bands, as defined in Clause 16.
— **MPSK PHY**: M-ary phase-shift keying (MPSK) modulation, operating in the 780 MHz band, as defined in Annex E.
— **GFSK PHY**: Gaussian frequency-shift keying (GFSK), operating in the 920 MHz band, as defined in Clause 17.
— **MSK PHY:** minimum shift keying (MSK) PHY as defined in Clause 18.
— **LRP UWB PHY:** low rate pulse UWB PHY as defined in Clause 19.
— **SUN FSK PHY:** SUN FSK PHY operating in multiple over-the-air data rates in support of SUN applications, as defined in Clause 20.
— **SUN OFDM PHY:** SUN OFDM PHY operating in multiple over-the-air data rates in support of SUN applications, as defined in Clause 21.
— **SUN O-QPSK PHY:** SUN O-QPSK PHY operating in multiple over-the-air data rates in support of SUN applications, as defined in Clause 22.
— **LECIM DSSS PHY:** DSSS PHY operating with characteristics that enable support of LECIM applications, as defined in Clause 23.
— **LECIM FSK PHY:** FSK PHY operating with characteristics that enable support of LECIM applications, as defined in Clause 24.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

— **TVWS-FSK PHY:** FSK PHY operating in multiple over-the-air data rates in support of various applications in TVWS, as defined in Clause 25.
— **TVWS-OFDM PHY:** OFDM PHY operating in multiple over-the-air data rates in support of various applications in TVWS, as defined in Clause 26.
— **TVWS-NB-OFDM PHY:** narrow band OFDM (NB-OFDM) PHY operating in multiple over-the-air data rates in support of various applications in TVWS, as defined in Clause 27.
— **RCC LMR PHY:** land mobile radio (LMR) for use in rail communications and control (RCC) applications using one of Gaussian minimum shift keying (GMSK), 4FSK, QPSK, $\pi/4$ differential quadrature phase-shift keying (DQPSK), or DSSS employing DPSK, as defined in Clause 28.
— **RCC DSSS BPSK PHY:** a DSSS BPSK PHY for use in RCC applications, as defined in Clause 29.

10.1.1 Operating frequency range

A compliant device shall operate in one or several frequency bands summarized in this subclause.

For devices other than LECIM, TVWS, and RCC PHYs, the frequency bands are listed in Table 10-1.

Table 10-1—Frequency band designations

Band designation	Frequency band (MHz)
169 MHz	169.400–169.475
433 MHz	433.05–434.79
450 MHz	450–470
470 MHz	470–510
780 MHz	779–787
863 MHz	863–870
868 MHz	868–868.6
896 MHz	896–901
901 MHz	901–902
915 MHz	902–928
917 MHz	917–923.5
920 MHz	920–928
928 MHz	928–960[a]
1427 MHz	1427–1518[a]
2380 MHz	2360–2400
2450 MHz	2400–2483.5
HRP UWB sub-gigahertz	250–750
HRP UWB low band	3244–4742
HRP UWB high band	5944–10 234
LRP UWB	6289.6–9185.6

[a]Noncontiguous.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The frequency bands for devices supporting the LECIM DSSS PHY are shown in Table 10-2.

Table 10-2—LECIM DSSS PHY operating frequency ranges

Band designation	Bandwidth (kHz)	Modulation	Chip rate (kchips/s)
470 MHz	100	BPSK	100
		O-QPSK	200
780 MHz	1000	BPSK	1000
		O-QPSK	2000
863 MHz	100	BPSK	100
		O-QPSK	200
915 MHz	200	BPSK	200
		O-QPSK	400
	400	BPSK	400
		O-QPSK	800
	600	BPSK	600
		O-QPSK	1200
	800	BPSK	800
		O-QPSK	1600
	1000	BPSK	1000
		O-QPSK	2000
922 MHz	200	BPSK	200
		O-QPSK	400
	400	BPSK	400
		O-QPSK	800
	600	BPSK	600
		O-QPSK	1200
	800	BPSK	800
		O-QPSK	1600
	1000	BPSK	1000
		O-QPSK	2000

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 10-2—LECIM DSSS PHY operating frequency ranges *(continued)*

Band designation	Bandwidth (kHz)	Modulation	Chip rate (kchips/s)
917 MHz	200	BPSK	200
		O-QPSK	400
	400	BPSK	400
		O-QPSK	800
	600	BPSK	600
		O-QPSK	1200
	800	BPSK	800
		O-QPSK	1600
	1000	BPSK	1000
		O-QPSK	2000
920 MHz	200	BPSK	200
		O-QPSK	400
	400	BPSK	400
		O-QPSK	800
	600	BPSK	600
		O-QPSK	1200
	800	BPSK	800
		O-QPSK	1600
	1000	BPSK	1000
		O-QPSK	2000
921 MHz	200	BPSK	200
		O-QPSK	400
	400	BPSK	400
		O-QPSK	800
	600	BPSK	600
		O-QPSK	1200
	800	BPSK	800
		O-QPSK	1600
	1000	BPSK	1000
		O-QPSK	2000
2450 MHz	1000	BPSK	1000
		O-QPSK	2000

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The frequency bands for devices supporting the LECIM FSK PHY are show in Table 10-3.

Table 10-3—LECIM FSK PHY operating frequency ranges

Band designation	Bandwidth (kHz)	Modulation	Bit rate (kb/s)
169 MHz	25	FSK/ P-FSK	25
	12.5		12.5
433 MHz	37.5	FSK/ P-FSK	37.5
	25		25
	12.5		12.5
470 MHz	37.5	FSK/ P-FSK	37.5
	25		25
	12.5		12.5
780 MHz	37.5	FSK/ P-FSK	37.5
	25		25
	12.5		12.5
863 MHz	37.5	FSK/ P-FSK	37.5
	25		25
	12.5		12.5
915 MHz	37.5	FSK/ P-FSK	37.5
	25		25
	12.5		12.5
922 MHz	37.5	FSK/ P-FSK	37.5
	25		25
	12.5		12.5
917 MHz	37.5	FSK/ P-FSK	37.5
	25		25
	12.5		12.5
920 MHz	37.5	FSK/ P-FSK	37.5
	25		25
	12.5		12.5
921 MHz	37.5	FSK/ P-FSK	37.5
	25		25
	12.5		12.5

The frequency bands for devices supporting the TVWS PHYs are shown in Table 7-39.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The frequency bands for devices supporting the RCC PHYs are shown in Table 10-4.

Table 10-4—RCC PHY frequency bands and data rates

Band designation	Frequency range (MHz)	Modulation and bit rate
161 MHz	160.170–161.580	LMR GMSK: 9.6/19.2 kb/s LMR 4-FS 9.6/19.2/38.4 kb/s LMR QPSK: 16/32 kb/s LMR π/4 DQPSK: 16/32/36 kb/s
216 MHz	216–217	
217 MHz	217–220	
220 MHz	220–222	
450 MHz	450–470	LMR GMSK: 9.6/19.2 kb/s LMR 4-FSK: 9.6/19.2/38.4 kb/s LMR QPSK: 16/32 kb/s LMR π/4 DQPSK: 16/32/36 kb/s
770 MHz	769–775	LMR GMSK: 9.6/19.2 kb/s LMR 4-FSK: 9.6/19.2/38.4 kb/s LMR QPSK: 16/32 kb/s LMR π/4 DQPSK: 16/32/36 kb/s
800 MHz	799–805	
806 MHz	806–821 851–866	
896 MHz	896–901 935–940	LMR GMSK: 9.6/19.2 kb/s LMR 4-FSK: 9.6/19.2/38.4 kb/s LMR QPSK: 16/32 kb/s LMR π/4 DQPSK: 16/32/36 kb/s
915 MHz	902–928	LMR GMSK: 9.6/19.2 kb/s LMR 4-FSK: 9.6/19.2/38.4 kb/s LMR QPSK: 16/32 kb/s LMR π/4 DQPSK: 16/32/36 kb/s LMR DSSS DPSK LMR DSSS BPSK
928 MHz	928–960	LMR GMSK: 9.6/19.2 kb/s LMR 4-FSK: 9.6/19.2/38.4 kb/s LMR QPSK: 16/32 kb/s LMR π/4 DQPSK: 16/32/36 kb/s
2450 MHz	2400–2483.5	LMR DSSS BPSK
4965 MHz	4940–4990	LMR DSSS DPSK LMR DSSS BPSK
5800 MHz	5725–5850	LMR DSSS DPSK LMR DSSS BPSK

Devices shall start in the PHY mode in which they are instructed to start. If the device is capable of operating in the 868 MHz or 915 MHz bands using one of the optional PHYs described in Clause 12 and Clause 14, it shall be able to switch dynamically between the optional PHY and the mandatory BPSK PHY in that band when instructed to do so.

Operation of the MPSK PHY in the 780 MHz band is described in Annex E. The NITS/CWPAN Part 15.4 specification [B11] also defines operation in the 314–316 MHz and 430–434 MHz bands, which is not described in this standard.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

10.1.2 Channel assignments

Channel assignments are defined through a combination of channel numbers and channel pages.

The PHY PIB attributes are described in 11.3.

If the requested PHY PIB attribute is the *phyCurrentPage*, the attribute was successfully set to a different value from the current value, and the channel is no longer valid, then the PHY shall also set the *phyCurrentChannel* to the lowest valid channel for the requested page.

For each PHY supported, a compliant device shall support all channels allowed by regulations for the region in which the device operates. An exception to this is the HRP UWB PHY where specific mandatory and optional behaviors are as defined in 16.4.1. An additional exception to this is the LRP UWB PHY, in which a transmitter device shall not be required to transmit on more than one channel.

10.1.2.1 Channel numbering for 780 MHz band

This subclause does not apply to the SUN PHY, RCC PHY or LECIM PHY specifications. For channel page five, channels numbered zero to seven are available across the 780 MHz band. The center frequency of these channels is defined as follows:

$F_c = 780 + 2\,k$ in megahertz, for $k = 0, \ldots, 3$

$F_c = 780 + 2\,(k - 4)$ in megahertz, for $k = 4, \ldots, 7$

where k is the channel number.

10.1.2.2 Channel numbering for 868 MHz, 915 MHz, and 2450 MHz bands

This subclause does not apply to the SUN PHY or LECIM PHY specifications. For explanations of channel numbering for the SUN PHYs and LECIM PHYs, see 10.1.2.8 and 10.1.2.10, respectively.

For channel page zero, 16 channels are available in the 2450 MHz band, 10 in the 915 MHz band, and 1 in the 868 MHz band. This channel page supports the channels defined in the 2003 edition of this standard. The center frequency of these channels is defined as follows:

$F_c = 868.3$ in megahertz, for $k = 0$

$F_c = 906 + 2\,(k - 1)$ in megahertz, for $k = 1, 2, \ldots, 10$

$F_c = 2405 + 5\,(k - 11)$ in megahertz, for $k = 11, 12, \ldots, 26$

where k is the channel number.

For channel pages one and two, 11 channels numbered zero to ten are available across the two frequency bands to support the ASK and O-QPSK PHYs, respectively. Ten channels are available in the 915 MHz band and one in the 868 MHz band. The center frequency of these channels is defined as follows:

$F_c = 868.3$ in megahertz, for $k = 0$

$F_c = 906 + 2\,(k - 1)$ in megahertz, for $k = 1, 2, \ldots, 10$

where k is the channel number.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

10.1.2.3 Channel numbering for CSS PHY

The CSS PHY uses channel page three with the channel numbers defined in Table 10-5. Different subsets of these frequency channels are available in different regions of the world. In North America and Europe, three frequency channels can be selected so that the nonoverlapping frequency channels are used.

Table 10-5—Center frequencies of CSS

Channel number	Frequency (MHz)
0	2412
1	2417
2	2422
3	2427
4	2432
5	2437
6	2442
7	2447
8	2452
9	2457
10	2462
11	2467
12	2472
13	2484

10.1.2.4 Channel numbering for HRP UWB PHY

The HRP UWB PHY uses channel page four with the channel numbers defined in Table 10-6. A compliant HRP UWB device shall be capable of transmitting in at least one of three specified bands, sub-gigahertz, low, or high. An HRP UWB device that implements the sub-gigahertz band shall implement channel 0. An HRP UWB device that implements the low band shall support channel 3. The remaining low-band channels are optional. An HRP UWB device that implements the high band shall support channel 9. The remaining high-band channels are optional.

Table 10-6—HRP UWB PHY channel frequencies

Channel number	Center frequency (MHz)	HRP UWB band/mandatory
0	499.2	Sub-gigahertz
1	3494.4	Low band
2	3993.6	
3	4492.8	
4	3993.6	

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 10-6—HRP UWB PHY channel frequencies *(continued)*

Channel number	Center frequency (MHz)	HRP UWB band/mandatory
5	6489.6	High band
6	6988.8	
7	6489.6	
8	7488.0	
9	7987.2	
10	8486.4	
11	7987.2	
12	8985.6	
13	9484.8	
14	9984.0	
15	9484.8	

10.1.2.5 Channel numbering for MSK PHY 433 MHz band

The MSK PHY 433 MHz band uses channel page 7 with the channel numbers defined in Table 10-7. A total of 15 frequency channels are available in the band from 433.05 MHz to 434.79 MHz. Different subsets of these frequency channels are available in different regions of the world. Compliant receivers shall implement all 15 channels in Table 10-7, defaulting to channel 7 unless modified by higher layers.

Table 10-7—MSK PHY 433 MHz band channel frequencies

Channel number	Center frequency (MHz)
0	433.164
1	433.272
2	433.380
3	433.488
4	433.596
5	433.704
6	433.812
7	433.920
8	434.028
9	434.136
10	434.244
11	434.352

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 10-7—MSK PHY 433 MHz band channel frequencies *(continued)*

Channel number	Center frequency (MHz)
12	434.460
13	434.568
14	434.676

The multiple narrowband channels for the MSK PHY 433 MHz band are specified in order to improve coexistence with other potential 433 MHz services and to comply with applicable regulations. The selection of specific channels is out of the scope of this standard, being performed by higher layers. Channel selection methodologies might include the following:

— Selecting permanent channels based on an RF survey at the time of system installation
— Performing regular CCAs during operation to dynamically select optimal channels
— Monitoring other link quality metrics to select optimal channels

10.1.2.6 Channel numbering for MSK PHY 2450 MHz band

The MSK PHY 2450 MHz band uses channel page 7 with the channel numbers defined in Table 10-8. A total of 42 frequency channels numbered 15 to 56 on channel page 7 are available in the band from 2400 MHz to 2483.5 MHz. Different subsets of these frequency channels are available in different regions of the world. Compliant receivers shall implement all channels in Table 10-8, defaulting to channel 47 unless modified by higher layers. The multiple narrow channels for the narrowband MSK 2450 MHz PHY are specified in order to improve coexistence with other 2450 MHz services. The selection of specific channels is out of the scope of this standard, being performed by higher layers.

Table 10-8—MSK 2450 MHz mandatory PHY channel frequencies

Channel number	Center frequency (MHz)
15	2401.75
16	2403.75
17	2405.75
18	2407.75
19	2409.75
20	2411.75
21	2413.75
22	2415.75
23	2417.75
24	2419.75
25	2421.75
26	2422.5

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 10-8—MSK 2450 MHz mandatory PHY channel frequencies *(continued)*

Channel number	Center frequency (MHz)
27	2423.25
28	2425.75
29	2427.75
30	2429.75
31	2431.75
32	2433.75
33	2435.75
34	2437.75
35	2439.75
36	2442
37	2443.75
38	2445.75
39	2447.75
40	2449.75
41	2451.75
42	2453.75
43	2455.75
44	2457.75
45	2459.75
46	2462
47	2463.75
48	2465.75
49	2467.75
50	2469.75
51	2471.75
52	2473.75
53	2475.75
54	2477.75
55	2479.75
56	2481.75

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

10.1.2.7 Channel numbering for LRP UWB PHY

The LRP UWB PHY uses channel page 8 with the channel numbers defined in Table 10-9. A total of three frequency channels, numbered 0 to 2, are available in the 6289.6 MHz to 9185.6 MHz frequency bands. Different subsets of these frequency channels are available in different regions of the world. In North America and Europe, a shared channel may be used.

Table 10-9—LRP UWB PHY channel frequencies

Channel number	Center frequency (MHz)
0	6489.6
1	6988.8
2	7987.2

10.1.2.8 Channel numbering for SUN and TVWS PHYs

The channel center frequency *ChanCenterFreq* for all SUN and TVWS PHYs, except the SUN O-QPSK PHY operating in the 868–870 MHz band, shall be derived as follows:

$$ChanCenterFreq = ChanCenterFreq_0 + NumChan \times ChanSpacing$$

where

$ChanCenterFreq_0$	is the first channel center frequency
ChanSpacing	is the separation between adjacent channels
NumChan	is the channel number from 0 to *TotalNumChan*–1
TotalNumChan	is the total number of channels for the available frequency band

The parameters *ChanSpacing*, *TotalNumChan,* and $ChanCenterFreq_0$ for different frequency bands and modulation schemes are specified in Table 10-10.

Table 10-10—Channel numbering for SUN PHYs

Frequency band (MHz)	Modulation	*ChanSpacing* (MHz)	TotalNumChan	$ChanCenterFreq_0$ (MHz)
169.400–169.475	SUN FSK operating mode #1 & #2 & #3	0.0125	6	169.40625
450–470	SUN FSK operating mode #1 & #2	0.0125	1599	450.00625
470–510	SUN FSK operating mode #1	0.2	199	470.2
	SUN FSK operating mode #2 & #3	0.4	99	470.4
	OFDM Option4	0.2	199	470.2
	O-QPSK	0.4	99	470.4

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 10-10—Channel numbering for SUN PHYs *(continued)*

Frequency band (MHz)	Modulation	*ChanSpacing* (MHz)	TotalNumChan	*ChanCenterFreq$_0$* (MHz)
779–787	SUN FSK operating mode #1	0.2	39	779.2
	SUN FSK operating mode #2 & #3	0.4	19	779.4
	OFDM Option4	0.2	39	779.2
	OFDM Option3	0.4	19	779.4
	OFDM Option2	0.8	9	779.8
	OFDM Option1	1.2	6	780.2
	O-QPSK	2	4	780
863–870	SUN FSK operating mode #1	0.2	34	863.125
	SUN FSK operating mode #2 & #3	0.4	17	863.225
	OFDM Option4	0.2	34	863.125
	OFDM Option3	0.4	17	863.225
	OFDM Option2	0.8	8	863.425
	OFDM Option1	1.2	5	863.625
868–870	O-QPSK	As defined in Table 10-11		
896–901	SUN FSK operating mode #1[a]	0.0125	399	896.0125
	SUN FSK operating mode #2[b]	0.0125	397	896.025
	SUN FSK operating mode #3[c]	0.0125	393	896.05
901–902	SUN FSK operating mode #1[a]	0.0125	79	901.0125
	SUN FSK operating mode #2[b]	0.0125	77	901.025
	SUN FSK operating mode #3[c]	0.0125	73	901.05
902–928	SUN FSK operating mode #1	0.2	129	902.2
	SUN FSK operating mode #2 & #3	0.4	64	902.4
	OFDM Option4	0.2	129	902.2
	OFDM Option3	0.4	64	902.4
	OFDM Option2	0.8	31	902.8
	OFDM Option1	1.2	20	903.2
	O-QPSK	2	12	904

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 10-10—Channel numbering for SUN PHYs *(continued)*

Frequency band (MHz)	Modulation	*ChanSpacing* (MHz)	TotalNumChan	*ChanCenterFreq$_0$* (MHz)
917–923.5	OFDM Option4	0.2	32	917.1
	OFDM Option3	0.4	16	917.3
	OFDM Option2	0.8	8	917.5
	OFDM Option1	1.2	5	917.9
	SUN FSK operating mode #1	0.2	32	917.1
	SUN FSK operating mode #2 & #3	0.4	16	917.3
	O-QPSK	2	3	918.1
920–928	SUN FSK operating mode #1	0.2	38	920.6
	SUN FSK operating mode #2	0.4	18	920.9
	SUN FSK operating mode #3 & #4	0.6	12	920.8
	OFDM Option4	0.2	39	920.2
	OFDM Option3	0.4	19	920.4
	OFDM Option2	0.8	9	920.8
	OFDM Option1	1.2	6	921.2
	O-QPSK	0.2	38	920.6
928–960	SUN FSK operating mode #1[a]	0.0125	2559	928.0125
	SUN FSK operating mode #2[b]	0.0125	2557	928.025
	SUN FSK operating mode #3[c]	0.0125	2553	928.05
1427–1518	SUN FSK operating mode #1[a]	0.0125	7279	1427.0125
	SUN FSK operating mode #2[b]	0.0125	7277	1427.025
	SUN FSK operating mode #3[c]	0.0125	7273	1427.05
2400–2483.5	SUN FSK operating mode #1	0.2	416	2400.2
	SUN FSK operating mode #2 & #3	0.4	207	2400.4
	OFDM Option4	0.2	416	2400.2
	OFDM Option3	0.4	207	2400.4
	OFDM Option2	0.8	97	2400.8
	OFDM Option1	1.2	64	2401.2
	O-QPSK	5	16	2405

[a]Two adjacent *ChanSpacing*(s) are aggregated to form an overlapping channel with bandwidth of 25 kHz.
[b]Four adjacent *ChanSpacing*(s) are aggregated to form an overlapping channel with bandwidth of 50 kHz.
[c]Eight adjacent *ChanSpacing*(s) are aggregated to form an overlapping channel with bandwidth of 100 kHz.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Three channels are available for the SUN O-QPSK PHY operating in the 868–870 MHz band. The channel center frequency for each of these channels is shown in Table 10-11.

Table 10-11—Center frequencies for the SUN O-QPSK PHY operating in the 868–870 MHz band

NumChan	*ChanCenterFreq* (MHz)
0	868.300
1	868.950
2	869.525

In the case of TVWS PHYs, $ChanCenterFreq_0$ is derived as follows:

$$ChanCenterFreq_0 = macStartBandEdge + ChanSpacing$$

TotalNumChan is derived as follows:

$$TotalNumChan = \text{floor}((macEndBandEdge - macStartBandEdge)/ChanSpacing - 1)$$

macStartBandEdge and *macEndBandEdge* are set by the higher layers, appropriate for the band of operation at a particular time.

Channel page nine is used to specify the standard-defined PHY operating modes, and channel page ten is used to indicate a SUN FSK Generic PHY mode.

10.1.2.9 Channel numbering for 2380 MHz band

For channel page eleven, 15 channels numbered zero to fourteen are available across the 2380 MHz band. The center frequencies of these channels are defined as follows:

$F_c = 2363 + 5\,k$ in megahertz, for $k = 0, 1, \ldots, 6$

$F_c = 2367 + 5\,(k - 7)$ in megahertz, for $k = 7, 8, \ldots, 13$

$F_c = 2395$ in megahertz, for $k = 14$

where k is the channel number.

10.1.2.10 Channel numbering for LECIM PHYs

A channel page value of 12 indicates a LECIM PHY.

For the 2.4 GHz band, a device shall support all the channels from the lowest to the highest channels (inclusive) indicated in the LECIM Capabilities IE, as described in 7.4.2.12.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

10.1.2.10.1 Channel numbering for LECIM DSSS PHY

When *phyCurrentLECIMPHYType* is set to DSSS, the channel plan is described as follows. The channel center frequency, *ChanCenterFreq*, for all LECIM DSSS PHY frequency bands shall be derived as follows:

$$ChanCenterFreq = FreqBandEdge + FreqOffset + (phyCurrentChannel - 1) \times ChanSpacing$$

where

ChanCenterFreq	is the channel center frequency
FreqBandEdge	is the band edge for the frequency band in use (*phyLecimCurrentBand*)
FreqOffset	is the frequency offset for each band
phyCurrentChannel	is the designated channel identifier number from 1 to *N*
ChanSpacing	is the separation between adjacent channels (*phyChannelSpacing*)

The parameters *FreqBandEdge*, *FreqOffset*, *ChanSpacing,* and the range of valid *phyCurrentChannel* channel numbers for each frequency band are listed in Table 10-12.

Table 10-12—Frequency band, frequency band offset, and channel spacing for LECIM DSSS PHY

Band designation	*FreqBandEdge* (MHz)	*FreqOffset* (MHz)	*ChanSpacing* (MHz)	*phyCurrentChannel* range
433 MHz	433	0.17	0.1	1–16
	433	0.22	0.2	1–8
470 MHz	470	0.2	0.2	1–199
780 MHz	779	0.2	0.2	1–39
863 MHz	863	0.075	0.1	1–69
	863	0.125	0.2	1–34
915 MHz	902	0.2	0.2	1–129
917 MHz	917	0.1	0.2	1–32
920 MHz	920	0.6	0.2	1–36
921 MHz	921	0.2	0.2	1–34
922 MHz	915	0.2	0.2	1–64
2450 MHz	2400	0.2	0.2	1–416

10.1.2.10.2 Channel numbering for LECIM FSK PHY

When *phyCurrentLECIMPHYType* is set to FSK, the channel center frequency *ChanCenterFreq* for the LECIM FSK PHY shall be derived as follows:

$$ChanCenterFreq = ChanSpacing \times phyCurrentChannel + ChanCenterFreq_0$$

where

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

ChanSpacing	is the separation between adjacent channels (*phyChannelSpacing*)
phyCurrentChannel	is the current channel number occurring in the range of 0 to *TotalNumChan*–1
TotalNumChan	is the total number of channels for the available frequency band
$ChanCenterFreq_0$	is the first channel center frequency of the band in use (*phyLecimCurrentBand*)

Parameters *TotalNumChan* and $ChanCenterFreq_0$ are specified in Table 10-13 and Table 10-14 for different frequency bands and channel spacings.

For band designation 169 MHz, $ChanCenterFreq_0$ shall be 169.4375 MHz and *TotalNumChan* shall be one.

Table 10-13—*TotalNumChan* and $ChanCenterFreq_0$ when *ChanSpacing* = 200 kHz

Band designation	*TotalNumChan*	$ChanCenterFreq_0$ (MHz)
433 MHz	8	433.22
470 MHz	199	470.2
780 MHz	39	779.2
863 MHz	34	863.125
915 MHz	129	902.2
917 MHz	32	917.1
920 MHz	36	920.6
921 MHz	34	921.2
922 MHz	64	915.2

Table 10-14—*TotalNumChan* and $ChanCenterFreq_0$ when ChanSpacing = 100 kHz

Band designation	*TotalNumChan*	$ChanCenterFreq_0$ (MHz)
433 MHz	16	433.170
470 MHz	399	470.1
780 MHz	79	779.1
863 MHz	69	863.075
915 MHz	259	902.1
921 MHz	69	921.1
922 MHz	129	915.1

10.1.2.11 Channel numbering for RCC PHYs

A channel page value of 13 indicates an RCC PHY.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Applicable regulations shall be used to define channel numbering where indicated in Table 10-15. For all other bands, the channel center frequency, *ChanCenterFreq*, for an RCC PHY shall be derived as follows:

$$ChanCenterFreq = ChanCenterFreq_0 + NumChan \times ChanSpacing$$

where

$ChanCenterFreq_0$	is the first channel center frequency
ChanSpacing	is the separation between adjacent channels
NumChan	is the channel number from 0 to *TotalNumChan*–1
TotalNumChan	is the total number of channels for the available frequency band

The parameters *ChanSpacing*, *TotalNumChan*, and $ChanCenterFreq_0$ for each frequency band is specified in Table 10-15. The information in Table 10-15 the applies to all RCC modulation schemes.

Table 10-15—RCC PHY channel numbering information

Band designation	*ChanSpacing* (MHz)	*TotalNumChan*	$ChanCenterFreq_0$ (MHz)
161 MHz	0.0075	187	160.1775
216 MHz	0.00625	159	216.00625
217 MHz	0.00625	479	217.00625
220 MHz	0.005	400	220.0025
450 MHz	0.00625	3199	450.00625
770 MHz	0.00625	960	769.003125
800 MHz	0.00625	960	799.003125
806 MHz	As defined in 47 CFR, Part 90, Subpart S, Section 90.613		
896 MHz	As defined in 47 CFR, Part 90, Subpart S, Section 90.613		
915 MHz	0.500	51	902.500
928 MHz	0.00625	5119	928.0125
2450 MHz	0.2	416	2400.2
4965 MHz	As defined in 47 CFR, Part 90, Subpart Y, Section 90.1213		
5800 MHz	0.5	249	5725.5

10.1.3 Minimum LIFS and SIFS periods

For all PHYs other than the HRP UWB PHY and RCC PHY, the minimum LIFS period and SIFS period are as follows:[14]

— *macLifsPeriod* – 40 symbols
— *macSifsPeriod* – 12 symbols

[14]For the SUN OFDM PHY, the MAC symbol period is defined in 6.1.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

For the HRP UWB PHY, the minimum LIFS period and SIFS period are as follows:

— *macLifsPeriod* – 40 preamble symbols
— *macSifsPeriod* – 12 preamble symbols

For the HRP UWB PHY, the actual time for *macLifsPeriod* and *macSifsPeriod* depends on the PRF and channel in use, as described in Table 16-5.

For the RCC PHY, the minimum LIFS period and SIFS period are as follows:

— *macLifsPeriod* – 5 symbols
— *macSifsPeriod* – 5 symbols

10.1.4 RF power measurement

Unless otherwise stated, all RF power measurements, either transmit or receive, shall be made at the appropriate transceiver to antenna connector. The measurements shall be made with equipment that is either matched to the impedance of the antenna connector or corrected for any mismatch. For devices without an antenna connector, the measurements shall be interpreted as effective isotropic radiated power (EIRP) and any radiated measurements shall be corrected to compensate for the antenna gain in the implementation.

10.1.5 Transmit power

A compliant device shall have its nominal transmit power level indicated by its PHY parameter, *phyTxPower*, as defined in 11.3.

For HRP UWB PHYs, the parameter *phyTxPower* refers to the total power transmitted across the entire occupied bandwidth.

10.1.6 Out-of-band spurious emission

The out-of-band spurious emissions shall conform with applicable regulations.

10.1.7 Receiver sensitivity definitions

The general conditions for measuring receiver sensitivity are defined in Table 10-16.

Table 10-16—Receiver sensitivity conditions

Term	Definition of term	Conditions
Packet error rate (PER)	Average fraction of transmitted packets that are not correctly received.	Average measured over random PSDU data.
Receiver sensitivity	Lowest input power for which the PER conditions are met.	PSDU length = 250 octets for SUN PHYs with data rates 50 kb/s and greater, 20 octets for all other PHYs. PER < 10% for SUN PHYs. PER < 1% for all other PHYs. Power measured at antenna terminals with interference not present.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

10.1.8 Common signaling mode (CSM) for SUN PHY

The CSM is a common PHY mode specified to facilitate the multi-PHY management (MPM) scheme described in 6.14. A SUN device acting as a coordinator and with a duty cycle greater than 1% shall support CSM. The specification of CSM is given in Table 10-17. The modulation and channel specification of CSM are given in 20.3.

Table 10-17—PHY specification of the CSM for MPM scheme

Band designation	Modulation	Modulation index	Channel spacing	Data rate
470 MHz 780 MHz 863 MHz 915 MHz 917 MHz 920 MHz 2450 MHz	2-FSK	1	200 kHz	50 kB/s

The value of the SFD field, as described in 20.2.1.2, for CSM shall be that associated with a value of zero for the PIB attribute *phySunFskSfd*, as defined in 11.3.

10.2 General radio specifications

For the SUN FSK PHY, SUN OFDM PHY and SUN O-QPSK PHY, the meaning of a symbol period for timing parameters is described in 6.1.

10.2.1 TX-to-RX turnaround time

The TX-to-RX turnaround time shall be less than or equal to *aTurnaroundTime*, as defined in Table 11-1.

The TX-to-RX turnaround time is defined as the time at the air interface from the trailing edge of the last part/chip (of the last symbol) of a transmitted PPDU to the time that the PHY is ready to receive the leading edge of the first part/chip (of the first symbol) of the next received PPDU.

10.2.2 RX-to-TX turnaround time

The RX-to-TX turnaround time shall be less than or equal to *aTurnaroundTime*, as defined in Table 11-1.

The RX-to-TX turnaround time is defined as the time at the air interface from the trailing edge of the last chip (of the last symbol) of a received PPDU to the time that the PHY is ready to transmit the leading edge of the first chip (of the first symbol) of the next transmitted PPDU.

10.2.3 Error-vector magnitude (EVM) definition

The modulation accuracy of the transmitter is determined with an EVM measurement. In order to calculate the EVM, a time record of N received complex chip values $(\tilde{I}_j, \tilde{Q}_j)$ is captured. For each received complex chip, a decision is made about which complex chip value was transmitted. The ideal position of the chosen complex chip (the center of the decision box) is represented by the vector (I_j, Q_j). The error vector $(\delta I_j, \delta Q_j)$ is defined as the distance from this ideal position to the actual position of the received point, as illustrated in Figure 10-1.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

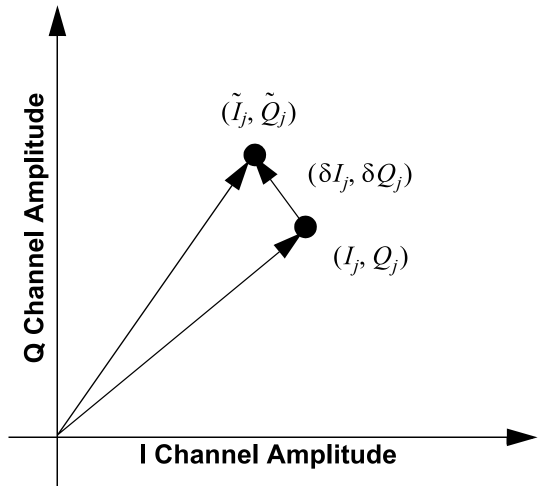


Figure 10-1—Error-vector calculation

Thus, the received vector is the sum of the ideal vector and the error vector as follows:

$$(\tilde{I}_j, \tilde{Q}_j) = (I_j, Q_j) + (\delta I_j, \delta Q_j)$$

The EVM is defined as follows:

$$\mathrm{EVM} \equiv \sqrt{\frac{\frac{1}{N}\sum_{j=1}^{N}(\delta I_j^{\,2} + \delta Q_j^{\,2})}{S^2}} \times 100\%$$

where

S	is the magnitude of the vector to the ideal constellation point (for PSSS in 915/868 MHz, S is the ASK step size, and the PHR and PHY payload should be set to 0 for testing)
$(\delta I_j, \delta Q_j)$	is the error vector

The error-vector measurement shall be made on baseband I and Q chips after recovery through a reference receiver system. The reference receiver shall perform carrier lock, symbol timing recovery, and amplitude adjustment while making the measurements.

10.2.4 Receiver maximum input level of desired signal

The receiver maximum input level is the maximum power level of the desired signal present at the input of the receiver for which the error rate criterion in 10.1.7 is met.

10.2.5 Receiver ED

The receiver ED measurement is intended for use by a network layer as part of a channel selection algorithm. It is an estimate of the received signal power within the bandwidth of the channel. No attempt is made to identify or decode signals on the channel. The ED measurement time, to average over, shall be equal to 8 symbol periods.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The ED result shall be reported to the next higher layer using MLME-SCAN.confirm. The minimum ED value (zero) shall indicate received power less than 10 dB above the lowest specified receiver sensitivity, in dBm, for the PHY. The range of received power spanned by the ED values shall be at least 40 dB. Within this range, the mapping from the received power in decibels to ED value shall be linear with an accuracy of ± 6 dB.

10.2.6 Link quality indicator (LQI)

The LQI measurement is a characterization of the strength and/or quality of a received packet. The measurement may be implemented using receiver ED, a signal-to-noise ratio estimation, or a combination of these methods. The use of the LQI result by the network or application layers is not specified in this standard.

The LQI measurement shall be performed for each received packet. The minimum and maximum LQI values (0x00 and 0xff) should be associated with the lowest and highest quality compliant signals detectable by the receiver, and LQI values in between should be uniformly distributed between these two limits. At least eight unique values of LQI shall be used.

10.2.7 Clear channel assessment (CCA)

With the exception of the HRP UWB PHY, a compliant PHY shall provide the capability to perform CCA according to at least one of the following methods:

- *CCA Mode 1: Energy above threshold.* CCA shall report a busy medium upon detecting any energy above the ED threshold.
- *CCA Mode 2: Carrier sense only.* CCA shall report a busy medium only upon the detection of a signal compliant with this standard with the same modulation and spreading characteristics of the PHY that is currently in use by the device.
- *CCA Mode 3: Carrier sense with energy above threshold.* CCA shall report a busy medium using a logical combination of:
  - Detection of a signal with the modulation and spreading characteristics of this standard
  - Energy above the ED threshold, where the logical operator may be AND or OR
- *CCA Mode 4: ALOHA.* CCA shall always report an idle medium.

An HRP UWB PHY shall implement one CCA Mode 1 through CCA Mode 4 or one of the following methods:

- *CCA Mode 5: HRP UWB preamble sense based on the SHR of a frame.* CCA shall report a busy medium upon detection of a preamble symbol as specified in 16.2.5. An idle channel shall be reported if no preamble symbol is detected up to a period not shorter than the maximum packet duration plus the maximum period for acknowledgment.
- *CCA Mode 6: HRP UWB preamble sense based on the packet with the multiplexed preamble as specified in 16.6.* CCA shall report a busy medium upon detection of a preamble symbol as specified in 16.2.5.

CCA mode 4 would typically be used in low duty cycle applications.

For any of the CCA modes, if a request to perform CCA is received by the PHY during reception of a PPDU, CCA shall report a busy medium. PPDU reception is considered to be in progress following detection of the SFD, and it remains in progress until the number of octets specified by the decoded PHR has been received.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

NOTE—These modes are used to provide cooperative utilization of the medium in an IEEE 802.15.4 network. They are not designed to provide regulatory compliance, and in some cases only a subset of these modes may meet regulatory requirements.

As an example, EN 300 328 v 1.8.1 requires energy detect for a minimum of 20 μs. In this case an implementer could choose to use CCA mode 2 within the CSMA-CA algorithm, followed by a 20 μs ED in accordance to the requirements of that standard in order to achieve regulatory compliance. Implementing a design in this manner would provide an optimized network that would not be disadvantaged in a mixed protocol environment with networks other than IEEE 802.15.4.

The PHY PIB attribute *phyCCAMode*, as described in 11.3, shall indicate the appropriate operation mode. The CCA parameters are subject to the following criteria:

a) Except for the SUN O-QPSK PHY, the ED threshold shall correspond to a received signal power of at most 10 dB greater than the specified receiver sensitivity for that PHY, or in accordance with local regulations. For the SUN O-QPSK PHY, the ED threshold shall comply with the specification in 22.5.13.
b) Except for the 920 MHz band PHYs and the RCC PHYs, the CCA detection time shall be equal to *aCcaTime*, as defined in Table 11-1. For the 920 MHz band, and the RCC PHYs, *phyCCADuration* symbol periods shall be used.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

11. PHY services

11.1 Overview

The PHY provides an interface between the MAC sublayer and the physical radio channel, via the RF firmware and the RF hardware. The PHY conceptually includes a management entity called the PLME. This entity provides the layer management service interfaces through which layer management functions may be invoked. The PLME is also responsible for maintaining a database of managed objects pertaining to the PHY. This database is referred to as the PHY PAN information base (PIB).

Figure 11-1 depicts the components and interfaces of the PHY.

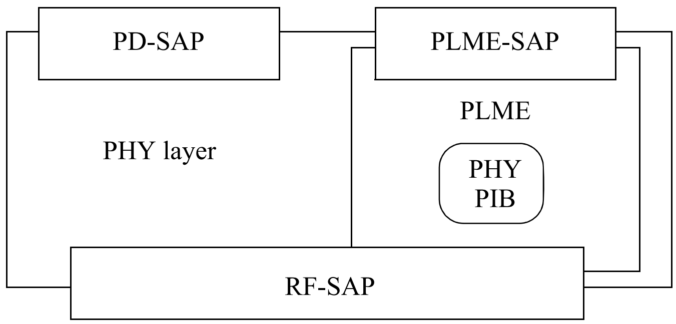


Figure 11-1—PHY reference model

The PHY provides two services, accessed through two SAPs: the PHY data service, accessed through the PHY data SAP (PD-SAP), and the PHY management service, accessed through the PLME-SAP. The PD-SAP and PLME-SAP are not defined in this standard as they are not expected to be exposed in a typical implementation. The PHY PIB attributes are accessed through the MLME-SAP with the MLME-GET and MLME-SET primitives.

Constants and attributes that are specified and maintained by the PHY are written in italics. Constants have a general prefix of "a", e.g., *aMaxPhyPacketSize*, and are listed in Table 11-1. Attributes have a general prefix of "phy", e.g., *phyCurrentChannel*, and are listed in Table 11-2.

Attributes that have a prefix of "phyHrpUwb", e.g., *phyHrpUwbDataRatesSupported*, apply only to the HRP UWB PHY and are not used for other PHYs.

11.2 PHY constants

The constants that define the characteristics of the PHY are presented in Table 11-1. These constants are hardware dependent and cannot be changed during operation.

11.3 PHY PIB attributes

The PHY PIB comprises the attributes required to manage the PHY of a device. The attributes contained in the PHY PIB are presented in Table 11-2. Attributes marked with a dagger (†) are read-only attributes (i.e., attribute can only be set by the PHY), which can be read by the next higher layer using the MLME-GET.request primitive. All other attributes can be read or written by the next higher layer using the MLME-GET.request or MLME-SET.request primitives, respectively.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 11-1—PHY constants

Constant	Description	Value
aMaxPhyPacketSize	The maximum PSDU size (in octets) the PHY shall be able to receive.	2047 for SUN, TVWS, RCC, and LECIM FSK PHYs. For LECIM DSSS PHY, this is not a constant; refer to *phyLecimDsssPsduSize*. 127 for all other PHYs
aTurnaroundTime	RX-to-TX or TX-to-RX turnaround time (in symbol periods), as defined in 10.2.1 and 10.2.2	For the SUN, TVWS, and LECIM FSK PHYs, the value is 1 ms expressed in symbol periods, rounded up to the next integer number of symbol periods using the ceiling() function.[a] For the LECIM DSSS PHY, the value is 1 ms expressed in modulation symbol periods, rounded up to the next integer number of symbol periods using the ceiling() function. The value is 12 for all other PHYs.
aLeipDelayTime	The delay between the start of the SFD and the LEIP, as described in 19.6.	0.815 ms
aCcaTime	The time required to perform CCA detection.	For the SUN PHYs other than SUN O-QPSK, the duration of 8 symbol periods, as defined in 6.1. For the SUN O-QPSK PHY, this value is defined in Table 22-24. For all other PHYs, the duration of 8 symbol periods.

[a]The function ceiling() returns the smallest integer value greater than or equal to its argument value.

Table 11-2—PHY PIB attributes

Attribute	Type	Range	Description
phyCurrentChannel	Integer	As defined in 10.1.2	The RF channel to use for all following transmissions and receptions, 10.1.2.
phyTxPower	Signed integer	—	The transmit power of the device in dBm.
phyCurrentPage	Integer	Any valid channel page	This is the current PHY channel page. This is used in conjunction with *phyCurrentChannel* to uniquely identify the channel currently being used.
phyFskFecEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	A value of TRUE indicates that FEC is turned on. A value of FALSE indicates that FEC is turned off. This attribute is only valid for the SUN FSK and TVWS FSK PHY.
phyFskFec InterleavingRsc	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	A value of TRUE indicates that interleaving is enabled for RSC. A value of FALSE indicates that interleaving is disabled for RSC. This attribute is only valid for the SUN FSK and TVWS FSK PHY.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 11-2—PHY PIB attributes *(continued)*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description
phyFskFecScheme	Integer	0, 1	A value of zero indicates that a non-recursive and non-systematic code (NRNSC) is employed. A value of one indicates that a recursive and systematic code (RSC) is employed. See 20.3.4 for more information on FEC. This attribute is only valid for the SUN FSK PHY.
phyModeSwitch ParameterEntries	Array	As defined in Table 11-3	An array of up to four rows, where each row consists of a set of ModeSwitchDescriptor entries. This attribute is only valid for the SUN FSK PHY.
phyFskPreambleLength	Integer	4–64	The number of repetitions of the preamble pattern, as described in 20.2.1.1 and 25.1.1.1, in the preamble. This attribute is only valid for the SUN FSK and TVWS FSK PHY.
phySunFskSfd	Integer	0, 1	Determines which group of SFDs is used, as described in Table 20-2. This attribute is only valid for the SUN FSK PHY.
phyFskScramblePsdu	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	A value of FALSE indicates that data whitening of the PSDU is disabled. A value of TRUE indicates that data whitening of the PSDU is enabled. This attribute is only valid for the SUN FSK PHY.
phyOfdmInterleaving	Integer	0, 1	A value of zero indicates an interleaving depth of one symbol. A value of one indicates an interleaving depth of the number of symbols equal to the frequency domain spreading factor. This attribute is only valid for the SUN OFDM PHY.
phyHrpUwbDataRates Supported†	List of integers	—	A list of the data rates available in the operating channel as defined in Table 16-8.
phyHrpUwbCurrentPuls eShape	Enumeration	MANDATORY, COU, CS, LCP	Indicates the current pulse shape setting of the HRP UWB PHY. The mandatory pulse is described in 16.4.5. Optional pulse shapes include CoU, as defined in 16.5.1, CS, as defined in 16.5.2, and LCP, as defined in 16.5.3.
phyHrpUwbLcpWeight1	Signed integer	0x00–0xff	The weights are represented in twos-complement form. A value of 0x80 represents –1 while a value of 0x7f represents 1.
phyHrpUwbLcpWeight2	Signed integer	0x00–0xff	The weights are represented in twos-complement form. A value of 0x80 represents –1 while a value of 0x7f represents 1.
phyHrpUwbLcpWeight3	Signed integer	0x00–0xff	The weights are represented in twos-complement form. A value of 0x80 represents –1 while a value of 0x7f represents 1.
phyHrpUwbLcpWeight4	Signed integer	0x00–0xff	The weights are represented in twos-complement form. A value of 0x80 represents –1 while a value of 0x7f represents 1.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 11-2—PHY PIB attributes *(continued)*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description
phyHrpUwbLcpDelay2	Integer	0x00–0xff	The range is from 0 to 4 ns with a resolution is 15.625 ps. For example, a value of 0x00 represents 0 while 0x02 represents 31.25 ps, as defined in 16.5.3.
phyHrpUwbLcpDelay3	Integer	0x00–0xff	The range is from 0 to 4 ns with a resolution is 15.625 ps. For example, a value of 0x00 represents 0 while 0x02 represents 31.25 ps, as defined in 16.5.3.
phyHrpUwbLcpDelay4	Integer	0x00–0xff	The range is from 0 to 4 ns with a resolution is 15.625 ps. For example, a value of 0x00 represents 0 while 0x02 represents 31.25 ps, as defined in 16.5.3.
phyRanging†	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	TRUE if ranging is supported, FALSE otherwise.
phyCurrentCode	Integer	0–24	This value is zero for PHYs other than HRP UWB or CSS. For HRP UWB PHYs, this represents the current preamble code index in use by the transmitter, as defined in Table 16-6 and Table 16-7. For the CSS PHY, the value indicates the subchirp, as defined in 15.3.
phyHrpUwbScanBins PerChannel	Integer	0–255	Number of frequency intervals used to scan each HRP UWB channel (scan resolution). Set to zero for non-HRP UWB PHYs.
phyHrpUwbInserted PreambleInterval	Enumeration	0, 4	The time interval between two neighboring inserted preamble symbols in the data portion, as defined in 16.6, for HRP UWB PHYs operating with CCA mode 6. The resolution is a data symbol period at a data rate of 850 kb/s for all channels. Set to four for HRP UWB PHY in CCA mode 6; otherwise, set to zero.
phyCcaDuration	Integer	0–1000	The duration for CCA, specified in symbols for PHYs operating in the 920 MHz band.
phyLecimDsssPpduMod ulationRate	Enumeration	100, 200, 400, 600, 800, 1000, 2000	The modulation rate measured in modulation kilo symbols per second. This attribute is only valid for the LECIM DSSS PHY.
phyLecimDsssPpduTxAt	Integer	0–[2^{32}–1]	The time, in modulation symbols, relative to the start of the beacon. This attribute is only valid for the LECIM DSSS PHY.
phyLecimDsssPsduSize	Enumeration	16, 24, 32	The size, in octets, of the PSDU. This attribute is only valid for the LECIM DSSS PHY.
phyLecimDsssPreamble Size	Enumeration	0, 16, 32	The length of the preamble, as illustrated in Table 23-1. This attribute is only valid for the LECIM DSSS PHY.
phyLecimDsssSfdPresen t	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	A value of TRUE indicates that the SFD is present. A value of FALSE indicates that the SFD is not present. This attribute is only valid for the LECIM DSSS PHY.
phyLecimDsssPsduSpre adingFactor	Integer	4–15	2^x chips per symbol where x is in the range 4 to 15, inclusive. This attribute is only valid for the LECIM DSSS PHY.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 11-2—PHY PIB attributes *(continued)*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description
phyLecimFecTailBitingEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	A value of TRUE indicates that tail biting is enabled. A value of FALSE indicates that it is disabled. This attribute is only valid for the LECIM DSSS PHY.
phyLecimDsssPsduOvsfSpreadingFactor	Integer	1–256	The length of the generated code in power of 2. A value of one indicates that OVSF is not enabled. This attribute is only valid for the LECIM DSSS PHY.
phyLecimDsssPsduOvsfCodeIndex	Integer	0, 1, ..., N–1	Specifies the desired code from the available set of codes. The value of N is given by *phyLecimDsssPSDUOVSFSpreadingFactor*. This attribute is only valid for the LECIM DSSS PHY.
phyLecimFskPreambleLength	Integer	4–64	The number of times the preamble contains the pattern defined in 24.2.1.1. This attribute is only valid for the LECIM FSK PHY.
phyLecimFskPsduPositionMod	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	Indicates whether position-based modulation is enabled. A value of TRUE indicates that position-based modulation is enabled. A value of FALSE indicates that it is not enabled. This attribute is only valid for the LECIM FSK PHY.
phyLecimFskSpreading	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	A value of TRUE indicates that spreading is enabled. A value of FALSE indicates that spreading is disabled. This attribute is only valid for the LECIM FSK PHY.
phyLecimFskSpreadingFactor	Enumeration	1, 2, 4, 8, 16	The spreading factor to be used when *phyLecimFskSpreading* or *phyTvwsFskSpreadingEnabled* is TRUE. This attribute is only valid for the LECIM FSK and TVWS FSK PHY.
phyLecimFskSpreadingPattern	Enumeration	ALTERNATING_1/0, NON_ALTERNATING	Specifies the type of pattern used for spreading when spreading is enabled. This attribute is only valid for the LECIM FSK and TVWS FSK PHY.
phyLecimFecEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	A value of TRUE indicates that FEC is turned on. A value of FALSE indicates that FEC is turned off. This attribute is only valid for the LECIM FSK PHY.
phyLecimFskInterleavingEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	A value of TRUE indicates that interleaving is turned on. A value of FALSE indicates that interleaving is turned off. This attribute is only valid for the LECIM FSK PHY.
phyLecimCurrentBand	Enumeration	169, 433, 470, 780, 863, 915, 917, 920, 921, 922, 2450	The operating frequency band currently selected.
phyLecimFskSymbolRate	Float	As defined in Table 10-3	The currently selected symbol rate in k-symbols per second. The valid symbol rates per band are given in Table 10-3.
phyCurrentLecimPhyType	Enumeration	DSSS, FSK	Specifies the LECIM PHY type in use.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 11-2—PHY PIB attributes *(continued)*

Attribute	Type	Range	Description
phyChannelSpacing	Enumeration	100, 200	The channel spacing, measured in kilohertz, that is used with *phyCurrentBand* and *phyCurrentChannel* to specify the frequency channel being used.
phyTvwsFskSpreadingEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	A value of TRUE indicates that spreading is turned on. A value of FALSE indicates that spreading is turned off. This attribute is only valid for the TVWS-FSK PHY.
phyTvwsFskWhiteningEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	A value of TRUE indicates that whitening is turned on. A value of FALSE indicates that whitening is turned off. This attribute is only valid for the TVWS-FSK PHY.
phyTvwsSfdLength	Integer	16 or 24	Length of the TVWS SFD field in bits.This attribute is only valid for the TVWS-FSK PHY.
phyTvwsFskFecScheme	Integer	0–2	A value of zero indicates that the first FEC scheme as defined in 25.2.2 is employed. A value of one indicates that the second FEC scheme as defined in 25.2.2 is employed. A value of two indicates that the third FEC scheme as defined in 25.2.2 is employed. The attribute is only valid for the TVWS-FSK PHY
phyTvwsChannelAggregation	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	A value of TRUE indicates that channel aggregation is enabled. A value of FALSE indicates that channel aggregation is disabled. This attribute is only valid for the TVWS-NB-OFDM PHY.
phyLmrCodingRate	Float	1/2, 2/3, 3/4, 7/8, 1	Controls which puncturing pattern is used for the PSDU, as described in 28.3. If the attribute value is one, then FEC shall not be applied.
phyFragmentSize	Integer	PHY dependent	The number of octets in each fragment.
phyPsduFragSecure	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	When set to TRUE, a MIC shall be used as the FICS, as described in 7.4.2.9. When set to FALSE, the FICS shall be calculated as in 7.2.10.
phyFragmentFrameCounter	Integer	0x00 0000–0x3ff ffff	The outgoing PSDU counter to use when *phyPSDUFragSecure* is TRUE. The counter is not used when *phyPSDUFragSecure* is FALSE.
phyFrakProgressTimeout	Integer	—	The duration, in modulated symbols, at which to generate a Frak frame when Frak policy 1 is in use.
phyPsduFragPadValue	Integer	0–255	The value used to pad out the last fragment when MPDU fragmentation is enabled.
phyPsduFragmentationEnabled	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	When TRUE, PSDU fragmentation is enabled. See 5.4. When FALSE, PSDU fragmentation is disabled.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 11-3—Elements of ModeSwitchDescriptor

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
SettlingDelay	Integer	0–510	The settling delay, in μs, between the end of the final symbol of the PPDU initiating the mode switch and the start of the PPDU transmitted using the new PHY mode.
SecondaryFskPreambleLength	Integer	0–16	The number of 1-octet patterns, as described in 20.2.1.1, in the secondary preamble if the new mode is SUN FSK. This parameter does not apply if the new mode is SUN OFDM or SUN O-QPSK.
SecondaryFskSfd	Boolean	TRUE, FALSE	If the new mode is SUN FSK, a value of TRUE indicates that a secondary SFD is transmitted. A value of FALSE indicates that a secondary SFD is not transmitted. This parameter does not apply if the new mode is SUN OFDM or SUN O-QPSK.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

12. O-QPSK PHY

12.1 PPDU format

The PPDU shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 12-1.

SHR	PHR	PHY payload

Figure 12-1—Format of the PPDU

12.1.1 SHR field format

The SHR field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 12-2.

Preamble	SFD

Figure 12-2—Format of the SHR

12.1.1.1 Preamble field

The length of the Preamble field for the O-QPSK PHYs shall be 8 symbols (i.e., 4 octets), and the bits in the Preamble field shall be binary zeros.

12.1.1.2 SFD field

The SFD is a field indicating the end of the SHR and the start of the packet data. The SFD shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 12-3.

Bits: 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
1	1	1	0	0	1	0	1

Figure 12-3—Format of the SFD field

12.1.2 PHR field format

The PHR field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 12-4.

Bits: 0–6	7
Frame Length	Reserved

Figure 12-4—Format of the PHR

12.1.2.1 Frame Length field

The Frame Length field specifies the total number of octets contained in the PSDU (i.e., PHY payload).

12.1.2.2 PHY Payload field

The PHY Payload field carries the PSDU.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

12.2 Modulation and spreading

The O-QPSK PHY employs a 16-ary quasi-orthogonal modulation technique. During each data symbol period, four information bits are used to select 1 of 16 nearly orthogonal pseudo-random noise (PN) sequences to be transmitted. The PN sequences for successive data symbols are concatenated, and the aggregate chip sequence is modulated onto the carrier using offset quadrature phase-shift keying (O-QPSK).

12.2.1 Data rate

The data rate of the O-QPSK PHY shall be 250 kb/s when operating in the 2450 MHz, 915 MHz, 780 MHz or 2380 MHz bands and shall be 100 kb/s when operating in the 868 MHz band.

Support for the 2450 MHz O-QPSK PHY is mandatory when operating in the 2450 MHz band.

Support for the 2380 MHz O-QPSK PHY is mandatory when operating in the 2380 MHz band.

The O-QPSK PHY is not mandatory in the 868 MHz or 915 MHz band. If the O-QPSK PHY is used in the 868 MHz or 915 MHz band, then the same device shall be capable of signaling using the BPSK PHY as well.

12.2.2 Reference modulator diagram

The functional block diagram in Figure 12-5 is provided as a reference for specifying the O-QPSK PHY modulation and spreading functions.

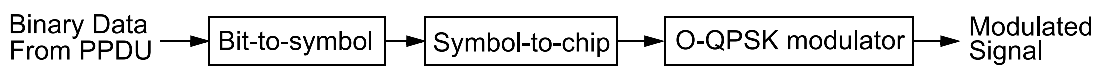


Figure 12-5—Modulation and spreading functions for the O-QPSK PHYs

12.2.3 Bit-to-symbol mapping

All binary data contained in the PPDU shall be encoded using the modulation and spreading functions shown in Figure 12-5. This subclause describes how binary information is mapped into data symbols.

The 4 LSBs (b0, b1, b2, b3) of each octet shall map into one data symbol, and the 4 MSBs (b4, b5, b6, b7) of each octet shall map into the next data symbol. Each octet of the PPDU is processed through the modulation and spreading functions, as illustrated in Figure 12-5, sequentially, beginning with the Preamble field and ending with the last octet of the PSDU. Within each octet, the least significant symbol (b0, b1, b2, b3) is processed first and the most significant symbol (b4, b5, b6, b7) is processed second.

12.2.4 Symbol-to-chip mapping

In the 2450 MHz and 2380 MHz bands, each data symbol shall be mapped into a 32-chip PN sequence as specified in Table 12-1. The PN sequences are related to each other through cyclic shifts and/or conjugation (i.e., inversion of odd-indexed chip values).

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 12-1—Symbol-to-chip mapping for the 2450 MHz and 2380 MHz bands

Data symbol	Chip values (c_0 c_1 … c_{30} c_{31})
0	1 1 0 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 1 0
1	1 1 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 0
2	0 0 1 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 0
3	0 0 1 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 1
4	0 1 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 1 1
5	0 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 0 0
6	1 1 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 0 0 1
7	1 0 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 0 1
8	1 0 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1
9	1 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 1
10	0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1
11	0 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0 0
12	0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 1 1 0
13	0 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1 1 0 0 1 0 0 1
14	1 0 0 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 1 1 0 0
15	1 1 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 0 0 0

In the 915 MHz, 868 MHz, and 780 MHz bands, each data symbol shall be mapped into a 16-chip PN sequence as specified in Table 12-2.

Table 12-2—Symbol-to-chip mapping for the 915 MHz, 868 MHz, and 780 MHz bands

Data symbol	Chip values (c_0 c_1 … c_{14} c_{15})
0	0 0 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 1
1	0 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 0 1 0 0 1
2	0 1 0 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 0 1 0
3	1 0 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 0 0 0
4	0 0 1 0 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 1 1 1 1 0
5	1 0 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 1 1 1
6	1 1 1 0 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 1
7	1 1 1 1 1 0 0 0 1 0 0 1 0 1 0 0
8	0 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 0
9	0 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 1 0 0

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 12-2—Symbol-to-chip mapping for the 915 MHz, 868 MHz, and 780 MHz bands *(continued)*

Data symbol	Chip values (c_0 c_1 … c_{14} c_{15})
10	0 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 1
11	1 1 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 0 1
12	0 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 1
13	1 1 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 0 1 0
14	1 0 1 1 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 1 1 0
15	1 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 1

12.2.5 O-QPSK modulation

The chip sequences representing each data symbol are modulated onto the carrier using O-QPSK with half-sine pulse shaping. Even-indexed chips are modulated onto the in-phase (I) carrier, and odd-indexed chips are modulated onto the quadrature-phase (Q) carrier. In the 2450 MHz and 2380 MHz bands, each data symbol is represented by a 32-chip sequence, and so the chip rate is 32 times the symbol rate. In the 915 MHz, 868 MHz, and 780 MHz bands, each data symbol is represented by a 16-chip sequence, and so the chip rate is 16 times the symbol rate. To form the offset between I-phase and Q-phase chip modulation, the Q-phase chips shall be delayed by T_c with respect to the I-phase chips, as illustrated in Figure 12-6, where T_c is the inverse of the chip rate.

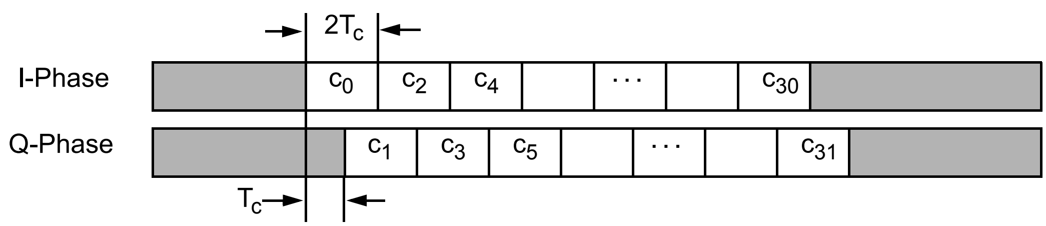


Figure 12-6—O-QPSK chip offsets

12.2.6 Pulse shape

In the 2450 MHz, 915 MHz, 868 MHz, and 2380 MHz bands, the half-sine pulse shape is used to represent each baseband chip and is as follows:

$$p(t) = \begin{cases} \sin\left(\pi \dfrac{t}{2T_c}\right), & 0 \le t \le 2T_c \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Figure 12-7 shows a sample baseband chip sequence (the zero sequence) with half-sine pulse shaping.

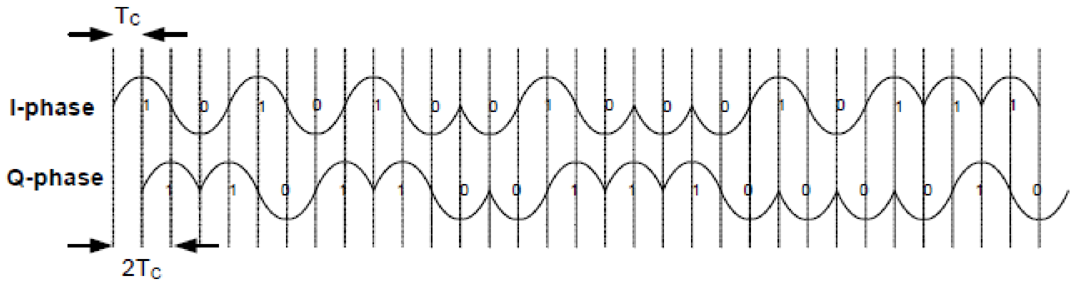


Figure 12-7—Sample baseband chip sequences with pulse shaping

In the 780 MHz band, a raised cosine pulse shape with roll-off factor of $r = 0.8$ is used to represent each baseband chip and is described as follows:

$$p(t) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{\sin(\pi t/T_c)}{\pi t/T_c} \times \dfrac{\cos(r\pi t/T_c)}{1 - 4r^2t^2/T_c^2}, & t \neq 0 \\ 1, & t = 0 \end{cases}$$

Given the discrete-time sequence of consecutive complex-valued chip samples, c_k, the continuous-time pulse shaped complex baseband signal is as follows:

$$y(t) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} c_{2k}p(t - 2kT_c) + jc_{2k+1}p(t - 2kT_c - T_c)$$

12.2.7 Chip transmission order

During each symbol period, the least significant chip, c_0, is transmitted first and the most significant chip, either c_{31}, for the 2450 MHz and 2380 MHz bands, or c_{15}, for the 915 MHz, 868 MHz, and 780 MHz bands, is transmitted last.

12.3 O-QPSK PHY RF requirements

12.3.1 Operating frequency range

The O-QPSK PHY operates in the following bands:

— 779–787 MHz
— 868.0–868.6 MHz
— 902–928 MHz
— 2360–2400 MHz
— 2400.0–2483.5 MHz

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

12.3.2 Transmit power spectral density (PSD) mask

When operating in the 868 MHz band, the signal shall be filtered before transmission to regulate the transmit PSD. The filter shall approximate an ideal raised cosine filter with a roll-off factor $r = 0.2$, as follows:

$$p(t) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{\sin \pi t / T_c}{\pi t / T_c} \dfrac{\cos r \pi t / T_c}{1 - 4r^2 t^2 / T_c^2}, & t \neq 0 \\ 1, & t = 0 \end{cases}$$

When operating in the 915 MHz or 780 MHz band, the transmitted spectral products shall be less than the limits specified in Table 12-3. For both relative and absolute limits, average spectral power shall be measured using a 100 kHz resolution bandwidth. For the relative limit, the reference level shall be the highest average spectral power measured within ± 600 kHz of the carrier frequency f_c.

Table 12-3—O-QPSK PHY transmit PSD limits for the 915 MHz and 780 MHz bands

Frequency	Relative limit	Absolute limit
$\lvert f - f_c \rvert$ > 1.2 MHz	–20 dB	–20 dBm

When operating in the 2380 MHz or 2450 MHz band, the transmitted spectral products shall be less than the limits specified in Table 12-4. For both relative and absolute limits, average spectral power shall be measured using a 100 kHz resolution bandwidth. For the relative limit, the reference level shall be the highest average spectral power measured within ± 1 MHz of the carrier frequency.

Table 12-4—O-QPSK transmit PSD limits for the 2380 MHz and 2450 MHz bands

Frequency	Relative limit	Absolute limit
$\lvert f - f_c \rvert$ > 3.5 MHz	–20 dB	–30 dBm

12.3.3 Symbol rate

The O-QPSK PHY symbol rate shall be 25 ksymbol/s when operating in the 868 MHz band and 62.5 ksymbol/s when operating in the 780 MHz, 915 MHz, 2380 MHz, or 2450 MHz band with an accuracy of $\pm 40 \times 10^{-6}$.

12.3.4 Receiver sensitivity

Under the conditions specified in 10.1.7, a compliant device shall be capable of achieving a receiver sensitivity of –85 dBm or better.

12.3.5 Receiver interference rejection

This subclause applies only to the 780 MHz, 915 MHz, 2380 MHz, and 2450 MHz bands as there is only one channel available in the 868 MHz band.

The minimum receiver interference rejection levels are given in Table 12-5. The adjacent channel is one on either side of the desired channel that is closest in frequency to the desired channel, and the alternate channel

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

is one more removed from the adjacent channel. For example, when channel 5 is the desired channel, channel 4 and channel 6 are the adjacent channels, and channel 3 and channel 7 are the alternate channels.

Table 12-5—Minimum receiver interference rejection requirements for the 780 MHz, 915 MHz, 2380 MHz, and 2450 MHz bands

Adjacent channel rejection	Alternate channel rejection
0 dB	30 dB

The adjacent channel rejection shall be measured as follows: the desired signal shall be a compliant O-QPSK PHY signal, as defined by 12.2, of pseudo-random data. The desired signal is input to the receiver at a level 3 dB greater than the maximum allowed receiver sensitivity given in 12.3.4.

In either the adjacent or the alternate channel, a compliant O-QPSK PHY signal, as defined by 12.2, is input at the level specified in Table 12-5 relative to the desired signal. The test shall be performed for only one interfering signal at a time. The receiver shall meet the error rate criteria defined in 10.1.7 under these conditions.

12.3.6 TX-to-RX turnaround time

The O-QPSK PHY shall have a TX-to-RX turnaround time as defined in 10.2.1.

12.3.7 RX-to-TX turnaround time

The O-QPSK PHY shall have an RX-to-TX turnaround time as defined in 10.2.2.

12.3.8 EVM

The O-QPSK PHY shall have EVM values of less than 35% when measured for 1000 chips using the measurement process defined in 10.2.3.

12.3.9 Transmit center frequency tolerance

The O-QPSK PHY transmit center frequency tolerance shall be $\pm 40 \times 10^{-6}$ maximum.

12.3.10 Transmit power

The O-QPSK PHY shall be capable of transmitting at a power level of at least –3 dBm.

12.3.11 Receiver maximum input level of desired signal

The O-QPSK PHY shall have a receiver maximum input level greater than or equal to –20 dBm using the measurement defined in 10.2.4.

12.3.12 Receiver ED

The O-QPSK PHY shall provide the receiver ED measurement as described in 10.2.5.

12.3.13 LQI

The O-QPSK PHY shall provide the LQI measurement as described in 10.2.6.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

13. Binary phase-shift keying (BPSK) PHY

13.1 PPDU format

The BPSK PHY shall use the PPDU format described in 12.1, except that the Preamble field is 32 symbols (4 octets).

13.2 Modulation and spreading

The BPSK PHY shall employ direct sequence spread spectrum (DSSS) with BPSK used for chip modulation and differential encoding used for data symbol encoding.

13.2.1 BPSK PHY data rates

The data rate of the BPSK PHY shall be 20 kb/s when operating in the 868 MHz band and 40 kb/s when operating in the 915 MHz band.

13.2.2 Reference modulator

The functional block diagram of the reference modulator in Figure 13-1 is provided as a reference for specifying the BPSK PHY modulation and spreading functions. Each bit in the PPDU shall be processed through the differential encoding, bit-to-chip mapping, and modulation functions in octet-wise order, beginning with the Preamble field and ending with the last octet of the PHY Payload field.

Figure 13-1—BPSK reference modulator block diagram

13.2.3 Differential encoding

Differential encoding is the modulo-2 addition (exclusive or) of a raw data bit with the previous encoded bit. This is performed by the transmitter and can be described as follows:

$$E_n = R_n \oplus E_{n-1}$$

where

R_n is the raw data bit being encoded
E_n is the corresponding differentially encoded bit
E_{n-1} is the previous differentially encoded bit

For each packet transmitted, R_1 is the first raw data bit to be encoded and E_0 is assumed to be zero.

Conversely, the decoding process, as performed at the receiver, can be described as follows:

$$R_n = E_n \oplus E_{n-1}$$

For each packet received, E_1 is the first bit to be decoded, and E_0 is assumed to be zero.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

13.2.4 Bit-to-chip mapping

Each input bit shall be mapped into a 15-chip PN sequence as specified in Table 13-1.

Table 13-1—Symbol-to-chip mapping

Input bits	Chip values (c_0 c_1 … c_{14})
0	1 1 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 0 0 1 0 0 0
1	0 0 0 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 1 0 1 1 1

13.2.5 BPSK modulation

The chip sequences are modulated onto the carrier using BPSK with raised cosine pulse shaping (roll-off factor = 1) where a chip value of one corresponds to a positive pulse and a chip value of zero corresponds to a negative pulse. The chip rate is 300 kchip/s for the 868 MHz band and 600 kchip/s in the 915 MHz band.

13.2.5.1 Pulse shape

The raised cosine pulse shape (roll-off factor = 1) used to represent each baseband chip is described as follows:

$$p(t) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{\sin \pi t/T_c}{\pi t/T_c} \dfrac{\cos \pi t/T_c}{1 - 4t^2/T_c^2}, & t \neq 0 \\ 1, & t = 0 \end{cases}$$

13.2.5.2 Chip transmission order

During each symbol period, the least significant chip, c_0, is transmitted first, and the most significant chip, c_{15}, is transmitted last.

13.3 BPSK PHY RF requirements

13.3.1 Operating frequency range

The BPSK PHY operates in the following frequency bands:

— 868.0–868.6 MHz
— 902–928 MHz

13.3.2 915 MHz band transmit PSD mask

The transmitted spectral products shall be less than the limits specified in Table 13-2. For the 915 MHz band, both relative and absolute limits, average spectral power shall be measured using a 100 kHz resolution bandwidth. For the relative limit, the reference level shall be the highest average spectral power measured within ± 600 kHz of the carrier frequency.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 13-2—915 MHz band transmit PSD limits

Frequency band	Frequency	Relative limit	Absolute limit
915 MHz	$\|f - f_c\| > 1.2$ MHz	–20 dB	–20 dBm

13.3.3 Symbol rate

The symbol rate of a BPSK PHY conforming to this standard shall be 20 ksymbol/s when operating in the 868 MHz band and 40 ksymbol/s when operating in the 915 MHz band with an accuracy of $\pm 40 \times 10^{-6}$.

13.3.4 Receiver sensitivity

Under the conditions specified in 10.1.7, a compliant device shall be capable of achieving a receiver sensitivity of –92 dBm or better.

13.3.5 Receiver interference rejection

This subclause applies only to the 915 MHz band as there is only one channel available in the 868 MHz band.

The minimum receiver interference rejection levels are given in Table 13-3.

Table 13-3—Minimum receiver interference rejection requirements for the 915 MHz BPSK PHYs

Frequency band	Adjacent channel rejection	Alternate channel rejection
915 MHz band	0 dB	30 dB

For the 915 MHz band, the adjacent channel is one on either side of the desired channel that is closest in frequency to the desired channel, and the alternate channel is one more removed from the adjacent channel. For example, when channel 5 is the desired channel, channel 4 and channel 6 are the adjacent channels, and channel 3 and channel 7 are the alternate channels.

The adjacent channel rejection shall be measured as follows: the desired signal shall be a compliant 915 MHz BPSK PHY signal, as defined by 13.2, of pseudo-random data. The desired signal is input to the receiver at a level 3 dB greater than the maximum allowed receiver sensitivity given in 13.3.4.

In either the adjacent or the alternate channel, a compliant 915 MHz BPSK PHY signal, as defined by 13.2, is input at the relative level specified in Table 13-3. The test shall be performed for only one interfering signal at a time. The receiver shall meet the error rate criteria defined in 10.1.7 under these conditions.

13.3.6 TX-to-RX turnaround time

The BPSK PHY shall have a TX-to-RX turnaround time as defined in 10.2.1.

13.3.7 RX-to-TX turnaround time

The BPSK PHY shall have an RX-to-TX turnaround time as defined in 10.2.2.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

13.3.8 EVM

The BPSK PHY shall have EVM values of less than 35% when measured for 1000 chips using the measurement process defined in 10.2.3.

13.3.9 Transmit center frequency tolerance

The BPSK PHY transmit center frequency tolerance shall be $\pm 40 \times 10^{-6}$ maximum.

13.3.10 Transmit power

The BPSK PHY shall be capable of transmitting at a power level of at least –3 dBm.

13.3.11 Receiver maximum input level of desired signal

The BPSK PHY shall have a receiver maximum input level greater than or equal to –20 dBm using the measurement defined in 10.2.4.

13.3.12 Receiver ED

The BPSK PHY shall provide the receiver ED measurement as described in 10.2.5.

13.3.13 LQI

The BPSK PHY shall provide the LQI measurement as described in 10.2.6.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

14. Amplitude shift keying (ASK) PHY

14.1 Status of ASK PHY

The use of mechanisms described in this clause is deprecated. Consequently, this clause may be removed in a later revision of the standard.

14.2 PPDU format

The ASK PHY shall use the PPDU format described in 12.1, except that the SHR field is defined differently.

The SHR field uses a subset of the PSSS coding used for the PHR field and PHY Payload field. The chips in the SHR field shall be transmitted with BPSK modulation using the same chip rates, as described in 14.3.5, and pulse shaping, as described in 14.3.6, that are used for the PHR field and PHY Payload field. However, the symbol-to-chip mapping for the SHR field is different, as described in 14.2.1 and 14.2.2.

14.2.1 Preamble field for ASK PHY

The Preamble field is generated by repeating 2 times for 868 MHz and repeating 6 times for 915 MHz sequence number 0 from Table 14-1 and Table 14-2, respectively. The resulting preamble duration is 160 µs for 868 MHz and 120 µs for 915 MHz. The leftmost chip number "0" in the diagram, with a value of "–1", is transmitted first. The preamble will be BPSK modulated as shown in Figure 14-1. The pulse shaping is the same as for the PHY Payload field as defined in 14.3.6.

14.2.2 SFD for ASK PHY

The SFD for 868 MHz and 915 MHz is the inverted sequence 0 from Table 14-1 and Table 14-2, respectively. The SFD will be BPSK modulated as shown in Figure 14-1. The pulse shaping is the same as for the PHY Payload field as defined in 14.3.6.

The preamble length for the ASK PHY shall be 2 symbols (5 octets). The SFD for the ASK PHY shall be 0.625 octets (1 symbol).

The preamble length and SFD for the ASK PHY is expressed in equivalent octet times as the ASK is defined using a special symbol.

14.3 Modulation and spreading

The ASK PHY employs a multi-code modulation technique named parallel sequence spread spectrum (PSSS). During each data symbol period, 20 information bits for 868 MHz and 5 information bits for 915 MHz are separately modulated onto 20 and 5 nearly orthogonal PN sequences, respectively. The 20 for 868 MHz and 5 for 915 MHz PN sequences are linearly summed to create a multi-level 32-chip symbol, equal to a 64-half-chip symbol for 868 MHz and a multi-level 32-chip symbol for 915 MHz. A simple precoding is then executed per symbol, and the resulting multi-level 64-half-chip sequence for 868 MHz and multi-level 32-chip sequence for 915 MHz are modulated onto the carrier using ASK.

14.3.1 ASK PHY data rates

The data rate of the ASK PHY shall be 250 kb/s when operating in the 868 MHz band and in the 915 MHz band. The ASK PHY is not mandatory in the 868 MHz or 915 MHz band. If the ASK PHY is used in the 868 MHz or 915 MHz band, then the same device shall be capable of signaling using the BPSK PHY as well.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

14.3.2 Reference modulator

The functional block diagram of the reference modulator in Figure 14-1 is provided as a reference for specifying the PSSS modulation and spreading functions.

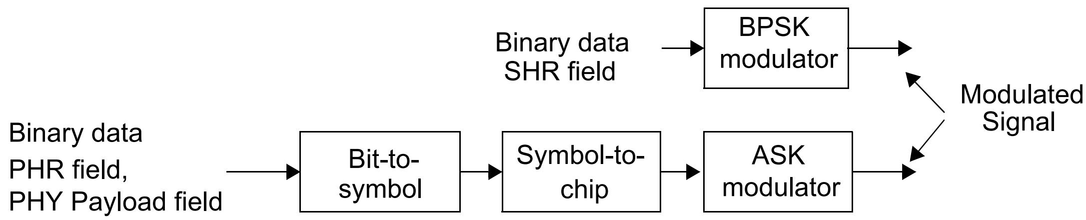


Figure 14-1—ASK reference modulator block diagram

Each octet of the PPDU is sequentially processed through the spreading and modulation functions. The SHR field shall be encoded using the BPSK modulator, and the PHR field and PHY Payload field shall be processed using the bit-to-symbol mapping, and symbol-to-chip spreading and the ASK modulator as shown in Figure 14-1.

14.3.3 Bit-to-symbol mapping

The first 20 bits for 868 MHz and the first 5 bits for 915 MHz, starting with the LSB (b0) of the first octet of the PHR field and continuing with the subsequent octet of the PHR field, shall be mapped into the first data symbol. Further 20 bits for 868 MHz and further 5 bits for 915 MHz continuing until the end of the PPDU shall be mapped sequentially to each subsequent data symbol until all octets of the PHR field and PHY Payload field have been mapped into symbols, always mapping the LSBs of any octet first. For each symbol, the least significant chip shall be the first chip transmitted over the air. The last input bits shall be followed by padding, with "0" bits, of its high order bits to fill out the symbol. These zero pad bits will also be spread via the PSSS encoding to keep the over the air signaling as random as possible.

14.3.4 Symbol-to-chip mapping

Each data symbol shall be mapped into a multi-level 64-half-chip symbol for 868 MHz and a multi-level 32-chip symbol for 915 MHz as described in this subclause. Figure 14-2 provides an overview of the symbol-to-chip mapping.

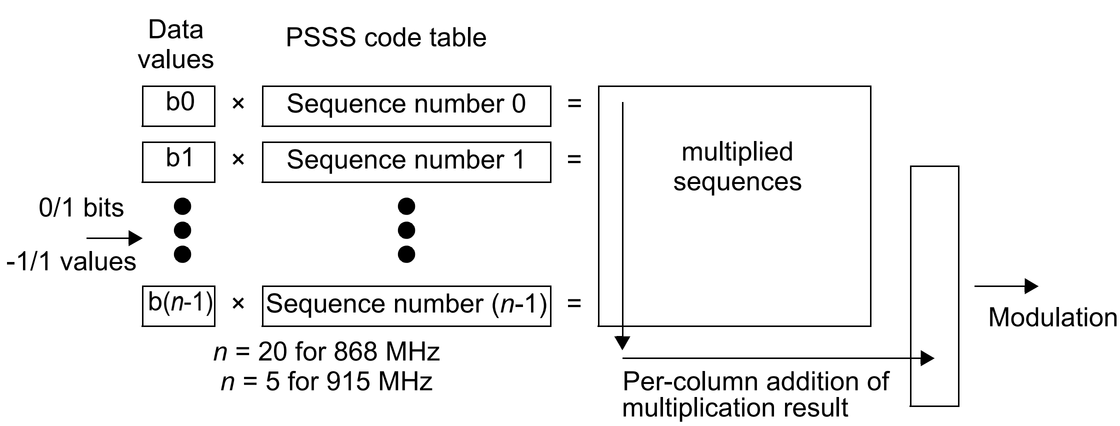


Figure 14-2—Symbol-to-chip mapping for PHR field and PHY Payload field

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Each bit of the data stream is multiplied with its corresponding sequence of the code table defined in Table 14-1 for 868 MHz and Table 14-2 for 915 MHz. The PSSS code tables were generated by selecting 20 for 868 MHz and 5 for 915 MHz cyclically shifted sequences of a 31-chip base sequence and then adding a 1-bit cyclic extension to each sequence. For 868 MHz PSSS, the 31-chip base sequence is cyclically shifted by 1.5 chips to generate the next sequence in the table. For 915 MHz PSSS, the 31-chip base sequence is cyclically shifted by 6 chips to generate the next sequence in the table.

The vector of bits comprising the data symbol is multiplied with the PSSS code table. In other words, bit b0 of the data symbol is multiplied with sequence number “0”, bit b1 is multiplied with sequence number “1”, etc. Prior to multiplication, the data bits are converted to bipolar levels: data bit “1” becomes +1 and data bit “0” becomes –1. The result of multiplication is a modulated code table, which is similar to Table 14-1 or Table 14-2, but with each row either inverted or not according to the data bits.

Subsequently, all rows of the modulated code table are linearly summed to create a multi-level 64-half-chip symbol for 868 MHz and multi-level 32-chip symbol for 915 MHz. For example, chip 0 of the multi-level sequence is produced by linearly summing chip 0 from each of the modulated sequences. The per-column results are 32 chips $c_0 \ldots c_{31}$ for 915 MHz and 64 half-chips $c_0 \ldots c_{63}$ for 868 MHz.

Next, a precoding operation is applied to the multi-level 32-chip symbol for 915 MHz and the multi-level 64-half-chip symbol for 868 MHz. The precoding is independent from one symbol to the next and is performed in two steps. In the first step, a constant value is added to each of the 32 chips for 915 MHz and 64 half-chips for 868 MHz. The constant is selected so that the minimum and maximum values of the resulting sequence are symmetric about zero. Representing the original multi-level 32-chip symbol sequence by $p(m)$, then the modified sequence $p'(m)$ after step one of precoding is as follows:

$$p'(m) = p(m) - \frac{(\mathrm{Max} + \mathrm{Min})}{2}$$

In the second step, a scaling constant is multiplied by each chip for 915 MHz and half-chip for 868 MHz in $p'(m)$. The scaling constant is selected such that the resulting sequence has a maximum amplitude of one. Let $p''(m)$ be the output of the second precoding step:

$$p''(m) = \frac{p'(m)}{\mathrm{Max}'}$$

where Max' is the maximum within $p'(m)$. An example is given in 14.4.14.

The precoded sequence of 32 multi-level chips for 915 MHz and 64 multi-value half-chips for 868 MHz is modulated onto the carrier as described in 14.3.5.

14.3.5 ASK modulation

The chip sequences representing each data symbol are modulated onto the carrier using ASK with square root raised cosine pulse shaping. The chip rate is 400 kchip/s, equal to 800 kHalf-chip/s for 868 MHz. The chip rate is 1600 kchip/s for 915 MHz.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 14-1—PSSS code table used in symbol-to-chip mapping for 868 MHz

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Sequence number</th><th colspan="64">Chip number</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2">0</th><th colspan="2">1</th><th colspan="2">2</th><th colspan="2">3</th><th colspan="2">4</th><th colspan="2">5</th><th colspan="2">6</th><th colspan="2">7</th><th colspan="2">8</th><th colspan="2">9</th><th colspan="2">10</th><th colspan="2">11</th><th colspan="2">12</th><th colspan="2">13</th><th colspan="2">14</th><th colspan="2">15</th><th colspan="2">16</th><th colspan="2">17</th><th colspan="2">18</th><th colspan="2">19</th><th colspan="2">20</th><th colspan="2">21</th><th colspan="2">22</th><th colspan="2">23</th><th colspan="2">24</th><th colspan="2">25</th><th colspan="2">26</th><th colspan="2">27</th><th colspan="2">28</th><th colspan="2">29</th><th colspan="2">30</th><th colspan="2">31</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td>-1</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td>1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td>-1</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td>1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>12</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td>-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td>-1</td></tr>
<tr><td>14</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td></tr>
<tr><td>15</td><td>-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>16</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td></tr>
<tr><td>17</td><td>-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td>-1</td></tr>
<tr><td>18</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td></tr>
<tr><td>19</td><td>-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td colspan="2">-1</td><td>-1</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td>4</td><td>5</td><td>6</td><td>7</td><td>8</td><td>9</td><td>10</td><td>11</td><td>12</td><td>13</td><td>14</td><td>15</td><td>16</td><td>17</td><td>18</td><td>19</td><td>20</td><td>21</td><td>22</td><td>23</td><td>24</td><td>25</td><td>26</td><td>27</td><td>28</td><td>29</td><td>30</td><td>31</td><td>32</td><td>33</td><td>34</td><td>35</td><td>36</td><td>37</td><td>38</td><td>39</td><td>40</td><td>41</td><td>42</td><td>43</td><td>44</td><td>45</td><td>46</td><td>47</td><td>48</td><td>49</td><td>50</td><td>51</td><td>52</td><td>53</td><td>54</td><td>55</td><td>56</td><td>57</td><td>58</td><td>59</td><td>60</td><td>61</td><td>62</td><td>63</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="64">half-chip number</td></tr>
</table>

Table 14-2—PSSS code table used in symbol-to-chip mapping for 915 MHz

Sequence number	Chip number 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31
0	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1
1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1
2	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1
3	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1
4	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

14.3.6 Pulse shape

The root-raised-cosine pulse shape used to represent each baseband chip is described as follows:

$$h(t)=\begin{cases}\dfrac{\left\{\pi(r+1)\times\sin\left(\dfrac{\pi}{4}\dfrac{(r+1)}{r}\right)+\pi(r-1)\times\cos\left(\dfrac{\pi}{4}\dfrac{(r-1)}{r}\right)-4r\times\sin\left(\dfrac{\pi}{4}\dfrac{(r-1)}{r}\right)\right\}}{2\pi\sqrt{T_c}}, & t=(\pm T_c/(4r))\\ \dfrac{4r}{\pi\sqrt{T_c}}-\dfrac{(r-1)}{\sqrt{T_c}}, & t=0\\ 4r\dfrac{\cos((1+r)\pi t/T_c)+\sin((1-r)\pi t/T_c)/(4rt/T_c)}{\pi\sqrt{T_c}(1-(4rt/T_c)^2)}, & t\neq 0 \text{ and } t\neq(\pm T_c/(4r))\end{cases}$$

with a roll-off factor r = 0.2 for 868 MHz and 915 MHz. The pulse for stimulating the pulse shaping filter will be generated at chip rate/half-chip rate for 915/868 MHz. T_c is the chip duration (not half-chip) for 868 MHz and 915 MHz.

14.3.7 Chip transmission order

During each symbol period, the least significant chip/half-chip, c_0/hc_0, is transmitted first and the most significant chip, c_{31}/hc_{63}, is transmitted last.

14.4 ASK PHY RF requirements

14.4.1 Operating frequency range

The ASK PHY operates in the 868.0–868.6 MHz frequency band and in the 902–928 MHz frequency band.

14.4.2 915 MHz band transmit PSD mask

The transmitted spectral products shall be less than the limits specified in Table 14-3. For both relative and absolute limits, average spectral power shall be measured using a 100 kHz resolution bandwidth. For the relative limit, the reference level shall be the highest average spectral power measured within ± 600 kHz of the carrier frequency.

Table 14-3—915 MHz band ASK PHY transmit PSD limits

Frequency	Relative limit	Absolute limit
$\|f - f_c\|$ > 1.2 MHz	–20 dB	–20 dBm

14.4.3 Symbol rate

The ASK PHY symbol rate shall be 12.5 ksymbol/s ± 40 × 10^{-6} for 868 MHz and 50 ksymbol/s ± 40 × 10^{-6} for 915 MHz.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

14.4.4 Receiver sensitivity

Under the conditions specified in 10.1.7, a compliant device shall be capable of achieving a receiver sensitivity of –85 dBm or better.

14.4.5 Receiver interference rejection

This subclause applies only to the 902–928 MHz band as there is only one channel available in the 868.0–868.6 MHz band.

The minimum receiver interference rejection levels are given in Table 14-4. The adjacent channel is one on either side of the desired channel that is closest in frequency to the desired channel, and the alternate channel is one more removed from the adjacent channel. For example, when channel 5 is the desired channel, channel 4 and channel 6 are the adjacent channels, and channel 3 and channel 7 are the alternate channels.

Table 14-4—Minimum receiver interference rejection requirements for 915 MHz ASK PHY

Adjacent channel rejection	Alternate channel rejection
0 dB	30 dB

The adjacent channel rejection shall be measured as follows: the desired signal shall be a compliant ASK PHY signal, as defined by 14.3, of pseudo-random data. The desired signal is input to the receiver at a level 3 dB greater than the maximum allowed receiver sensitivity given in 14.4.4.

In either the adjacent or the alternate channel, a compliant ASK PHY signal, as defined by 14.3, is input at the relative level specified in Table 14-4. The test shall be performed for only one interfering signal at a time. The receiver shall meet the error rate criteria defined in 10.1.7 under these conditions.

14.4.6 TX-to-RX turnaround time

The ASK PHY shall have a TX-to-RX turnaround time as defined in 10.2.1.

14.4.7 RX-to-TX turnaround time

The ASK PHY shall have an RX-to-TX turnaround time as defined in 10.2.2.

14.4.8 EVM

The ASK PHY shall have EVM values of less than 35% when measured for 1000 chips using the measurement process defined in 10.2.3.

14.4.9 Transmit center frequency tolerance

The ASK PHY transmit center frequency tolerance shall be $\pm 40 \times 10^{-6}$ maximum.

14.4.10 Transmit power

The ASK PHY shall be capable of transmitting at a power level of at least –3 dBm.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

14.4.11 Receiver maximum input level of desired signal

The ASK PHY shall have a receiver maximum input level greater than or equal to –20 dBm using the measurement defined in 10.2.4.

14.4.12 Receiver ED

The ASK PHY shall provide the receiver ED measurement as described in 10.2.5.

14.4.13 LQI

The ASK PHY shall provide the LQI measurement as described in 10.2.6.

14.4.14 Example of PSSS encoding

Table 14-5 shows the example 5-bit symbol that will be encoded using Table 14-2, the code table for 915 MHz.

Table 14-5—Example 5 bit symbol

Data bits	
Bit	**Bit value**
b0	1
b1	–1
b2	1
b3	–1
b4	–1

By weighting sequence 0 with b0, sequence 1 with b1, …, sequence 4 with b4, the weighted sequences in Table 14-6 are calculated. The PSSS symbol $p(m)$ is calculated by adding the columns of weighted sequences. For 868 MHz, the half-chips are added column-wise.

For the example $p(m)$ in Table 14-6, the $\mathrm{Max}\{p(m) = 5$ and the $\mathrm{Min}\{p(m) = –5$. The precoding of one symbol is executed independently of the precoding of any other symbol with the two steps described in 14.3.4. The resulting $p'(m)$ and $p''(m)$ are shown in Table 14-7.

A graph illustrating the example $p''(m)$ chip weights that will be applied to the pulse shaping filter in 14.3.6 is shown in Figure 14-3.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 14-6—Weighted sequences

Weighted sequence	Chip number 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
0	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1
1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1	1	-1	1	-1
2	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1
3	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1
4	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	-1	-1
p(m)	-5	-3	-1	-3	1	1	1	3	-3	1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	-3

Weighted sequence	Chip number 16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31
0	1	1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-1	1	1	1	-1	1	-1	1	-1
1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	-1	-1
2	1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1
3	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1	1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	1	-1
4	1	-1	-1	-1	1	-1	1	-1	1	1	1	1	-1	1	1	-1
p(m)	3	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-3	3	3	5	-1	-1	3	1	-5

Table 14-7—*p*'(*m*), aligned symmetric to zero PSSS symbol, and *p*''(*m*), precoded PSSS symbol

p'(m)	-5	-3	-1	-3	1	1	1	3	-3	1	-1	1	-1	-1	1	-3
p''(m)	-1.0	-0.6	-0.2	-0.6	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.6	-0.6	0.2	-0.2	0.2	-0.2	-0.2	0.2	-0.6

p'(m)	3	-1	-1	-1	-1	1	1	-3	3	3	5	-1	-1	3	1	-5
p''(m)	0.6	-0.2	-0.2	-0.2	-0.2	0.2	0.2	-0.6	0.6	0.6	1.0	-0.2	-0.2	0.6	0.2	-1.0

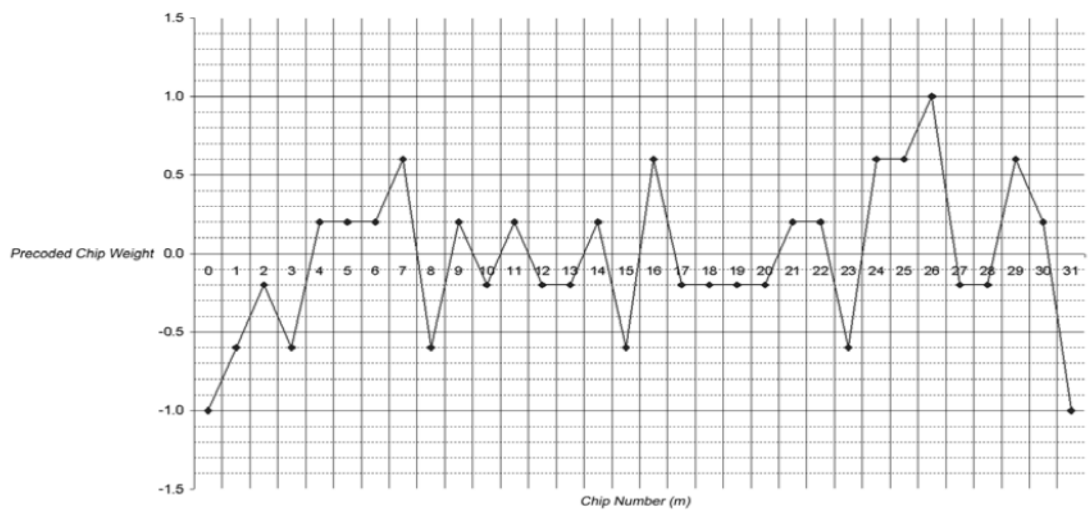


Figure 14-3—Precoded PSSS symbol *p*''(*m*)

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

15. Chirp spread spectrum (CSS) PHY

15.1 CSS PPDU format

The CSS PPDU shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 15-1.

SHR	PHR	PHY Payload

Figure 15-1—Format of the CSS PPDU

The SHR field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 15-2.

Preamble	SFD

Figure 15-2—Format of the SHR

15.1.1 Preamble field

The Preamble field for 1 Mb/s consists of 8 chirp symbols, and the Preamble field for optional 250 kb/s consists of 20 chirp symbols as specified in Table 15-1. The preamble sequence from Table 15-1 should be applied directly to both the I input and the Q input of QPSK.

Table 15-1—Preamble sequence

Data rate	Preamble sequence
1 Mb/s	ones (0:31)
250 kb/s	ones (0:79)

where ones(0:*N*) for integer number *N* is defined an 1-by-*N* matrix of ones.

15.1.2 SFD field

SFD field bit sequences for the CSS PHY type are defined in Table 15-2. Different SFD sequences are defined for the two different data rates. An SFD sequence from Table 15-2 shall be applied directly to both inputs (I and Q) of the QPSK mapper. An SFD sequence starts with bit 0.

Table 15-2—CSS SFD field bit sequence

Data rate	Bit (0:15)
1 Mb/s	-1 1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 1 1 -1 -1
250 kb/s	-1 1 1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 -1 1 -1 -1 -1 1 1

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

15.1.3 PHR field

The CSS PHR field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 15-3.

Bits: 0–6	7–11
Length	Reserved

Figure 15-3—Format of the CSS PHR

The Length field is an unsigned integer and shall be set to the length of the PHY Payload field, in octets. The Length field shall be transmitted LSB first.

15.1.4 PHY Payload field

The PHY Payload field carries the PSDU.

15.2 Modulation and spreading

The CSS PHY uses CSS techniques in combination with differential quadrature phase-shift keying (DQPSK) and 8-ary or 64-ary bi-orthogonal coding for 1 Mb/s data rate or 250 kb/s data rate, respectively. By using alternating time gaps in conjunction with sequences of chirp signals (subchirps) in different frequency subbands with different chirp directions, this CSS PHY provides subchirp sequence division as well as frequency division.

15.2.1 Data rates

The data rate of the CSS (2450 MHz) PHY shall be 1 Mb/s. An additional data rate of 250 kb/s shall be optional.

15.2.2 Reference modulator

The functional block diagram of the reference modulator in Figure 15-4 is provided as a reference for specifying the 2450 MHz CSS PHY modulation for both 1 Mb/s and optional 250 kb/s. All binary data contained in the PHR field and PHY Payload field shall be encoded using the modulation shown in Figure 15-4.

15.2.3 De-multiplexer (DEMUX)

For each packet, the initial position of the DEMUX shown in Figure 15-4 shall be set to serve the I path (upper path). Thus, the first bit of the incoming stream of information bits of a packet shall be switched to the I path, and the second bit shall be switched to the Q path.

15.2.4 Serial-to-parallel mapping

By using two serial-to-parallel converters, the substreams are independently partitioned into sets of bits to form data symbols. For the mandatory data rate of 1 Mb/s, a data symbol shall consist of three bits. Within the binary data symbol (b0,b1,b2), the first input data bit for each of I and Q is assigned b0, and the third input data bit is assigned b2. For the optional data rate of 250 kb/s, a data symbol shall consist of 6 bits. Within the binary data symbol (b0,b1,b2,b3,b4,b5), the first input data bit for each of I and Q is assigned b0, and the sixth input data bit is assigned b5.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

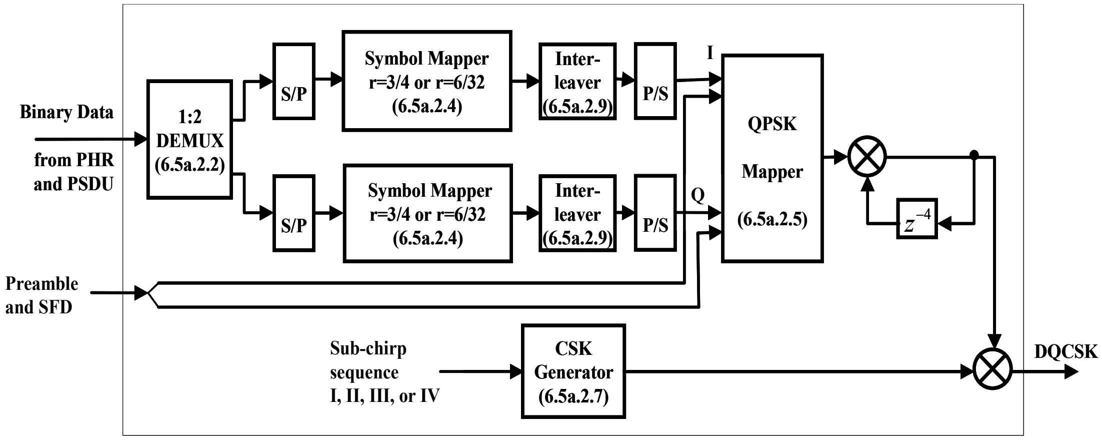


Figure 15-4—Differential bi-orthogonal quaternary-chirp-shift-keying modulator and spreading (r = 3/4 for 8-ary 1 Mb/s, r = 3/16 for 64-ary 250 kb/s)

15.2.5 Data-symbol-to-bi-orthogonal-codeword mapping

Each 3-bit data symbol shall be mapped onto a 4-chip bi-orthogonal codeword (c0, c1, c2, c3) for the 1 Mb/s data rate as specified in Table 15-3. Each 6-bit data symbol shall be mapped onto a 32-chip bi-orthogonal codeword (c0, c1, c2, …, c31) for the optional 250 kb/s data rate as specified in Table 15-4.

Table 15-3—8-ary bi-orthogonal mapping (r = 3/4, 1 Mb/s)

Data symbol	Codeword (c0 c1 c2 c3)
0	1 1 1 1
1	1 -1 1 -1
2	1 1 -1 -1
3	1 -1 -1 1
4	-1 -1 -1 -1
5	-1 1 -1 1
6	-1 -1 1 1
7	-1 1 1 -1

Table 15-4—64-ary bi-orthogonal mapping (r = 3/16, 250 kb/s)

Data symbol	Codeword (c0 c1 c2 … c31)
0	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
1	1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1
2	1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 15-4—64-ary bi-orthogonal mapping (r = 3/16, 250 kb/s) *(continued)*

Data symbol	Codeword (c0 c1 c2 … c31)
3	1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1
4	1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1
5	1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1
6	1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1
7	1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1
8	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1
9	1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1
10	1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1
11	1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1
12	1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1
13	1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1
14	1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1
15	1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1
16	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1
17	1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1
18	1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1
19	1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1
20	1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1
21	1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1
22	1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1
23	1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 15-4—64-ary bi-orthogonal mapping (r = 3/16, 250 kb/s) *(continued)*

Data symbol	Codeword (c0 c1 c2 … c31)
24	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
25	1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1
26	1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1
27	1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1
28	1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1
29	1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1
30	1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1
31	1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1
32	-1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1
33	-1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1
34	-1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1
35	-1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1
36	-1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1
37	-1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1
38	-1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1
39	-1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1
40	-1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
41	-1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1
42	-1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1
43	-1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1
44	-1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 15-4—64-ary bi-orthogonal mapping (r = 3/16, 250 kb/s) ***(continued)***

Data symbol	Codeword (c0 c1 c2 … c31)
45	-1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1
46	-1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1
47	-1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1
48	-1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
49	-1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1
50	-1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1
51	-1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1
52	-1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1
53	-1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1
54	-1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1
55	-1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1
56	-1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1
57	-1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1
58	-1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1
59	-1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1
60	-1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1
61	-1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1
62	-1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 1 1 -1 -1
63	-1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1 -1 1 1 -1 -1 1 1 -1 1 -1 -1 1

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

15.2.6 Parallel-to-serial converter and QPSK symbol mapping

Each bi-orthogonal codeword shall be converted to a serial chip sequence. Within each 4-chip codeword (c0, c1, c2, c3) for the 1 Mb/s data rate, the least significant chip c0 is processed first, and the most significant chip c3 is processed last for I and Q, respectively. Within each 32-chip codeword (c0, c1, c2, …, c31) for the 250 kb/s data rate, the least significant chip c0 is processed first, and the most significant chip c31 is processed last for I and Q, respectively. Each pair of I and Q chips shall be mapped onto a QPSK symbol as specified in Table 15-5.

Table 15-5—QPSK symbol mapping

Input chips ($I_{n,k}$ $Q_{n,k}$)	Magnitude	Output phase (rad)
1, 1	1	0
-1, 1	1	$\pi/2$
1 -1	1	$-\pi/2$
-1, -1	1	π

15.2.7 DQPSK coding

The stream of QPSK symbols shall be differentially encoded by using a differential encoder with a QPSK symbol feedback memory of length 4. (In other words, the phase differences between QPSK symbol 1 and 5, 2 and 6, 3 and 7, 4 and 8, and so on are computed.) For a detailed explanation of the index variables *n* and *k*, as described in 15.3.3.

DQPSK output:

$$e^{j\theta_{n,k}} = e^{j\theta_{n-1,k}} \times e^{j\varphi_{n,k}}$$

where

$e^{j\varphi_{n,k}}$ is DQPSK input

$e^{j\theta_{n-1,k}}$ is stored in feedback memory

For every packet, the initial values of all four feedback memory stages of the differential encoder shall be set as follows:

$$e^{j\pi/4}$$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

15.2.8 DQPSK-to-DQCSK modulation

The stream of DQPSK symbols shall be modulated onto the stream of subchirps that is generated by the chirp-shift keying (CSK) generator. The effect of the differential quadrature chirp-shift keying (DQCSK) modulation shall be that each subchirp is multiplied with a DQPSK value that has unit magnitude and has constant phase for the duration of the subchirp. An example of this operation can be found in 15.3.6.

15.2.9 CSK generator

The CSK generator shall periodically generate one of the four defined subchirp sequences (chirp symbols) as specified in 15.3.3. Since each chirp symbol consists of four subchirps, the subchirp rate is four times higher than the chirp symbol rate.

15.2.10 Bit interleaver

The bit interleaver is applied only for the optional data rate of 250 kb/s. The 32 chip bi-orthogonal codewords for the optional 250 kb/s data rate are interleaved prior to the parallel to serial converter. Bit interleaving provides robustness against double intra-symbol errors caused by the differential detector. The interleaver permutes the chips across two consecutive codewords for each of I and Q, independently.

The memory of the interleaver shall be initialized with zeros before the reception of a packet.

The data stream going into the interleaver shall be padded with zeros if the number of octets to be transmitted does not align with the bounds of the interleaver blocks.

The input-output relationship of this interleaver shall be given as follows:

Input:

even-symbol (c0, c1, c2, c3, c4, c5, c6, c7, c8, c9, c10, c11, c12, c13, c14, c15,
c16, c17, c18, c19, c20, c21,c22,c23, c24, c25, c26, c27, c28, c29, c30, c31)
odd-symbol (d0, d1, d2, d3, d4, d5, d6, d7, d8, d9, d10, d11, d12, d13, d14, d15,
d16, d17, d18, d19, d20, d21, d22, d23, d24, d25, d26, d27, d28, d29, d30, d31)

Output:

even-symbol (c0, c1, c2, c3, d20, d21, d22, d23, c8, c9, c10, c11, d28, d29, d30, d31,
c16, c17, c18, c19, d4, d5, d6, d7, c24, c25, c26, c27, d12, d13, d14, d15)
odd-symbol (d0, d1, d2, d3, c20, c21, c22, c23, d8, d9, d10, d11, c28, c29, c30, c31,
d16, d17, d18, d19, c4, c5, c6, c7, d24, d25, d26, d27, c12, c13, c14, c15)

NOTE—As shown in Figure 15-4, coding is applied to every bit following the SFD. The first codeword generated shall be counted as zero and thus is even.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

15.3 Waveform and subchirp sequences

Four individual chirp signals, here called subchirps, shall be concatenated to form a full chirp symbol (subchirp sequence), which occupies two adjacent frequency subbands. Four different subchirp sequences are defined. Each subchirp is weighted with a raised cosine window in the time domain.

15.3.1 Graphical presentation of chirp symbols (subchirp sequences)

Four different sequences of subchirp signals are available for use. Figure 15-5 shows the four different chirp symbols (subchirp sequences) as time frequency diagrams. It can be seen that four subchirps, which have either a linear down-chirp characteristic or a linear up-chirp characteristic, and a center frequency, which has either a positive or a negative frequency offset, are concatenated. The frequency discontinuities between subsequent chirps will not affect the spectrum because the signal amplitude will be zero at these points.

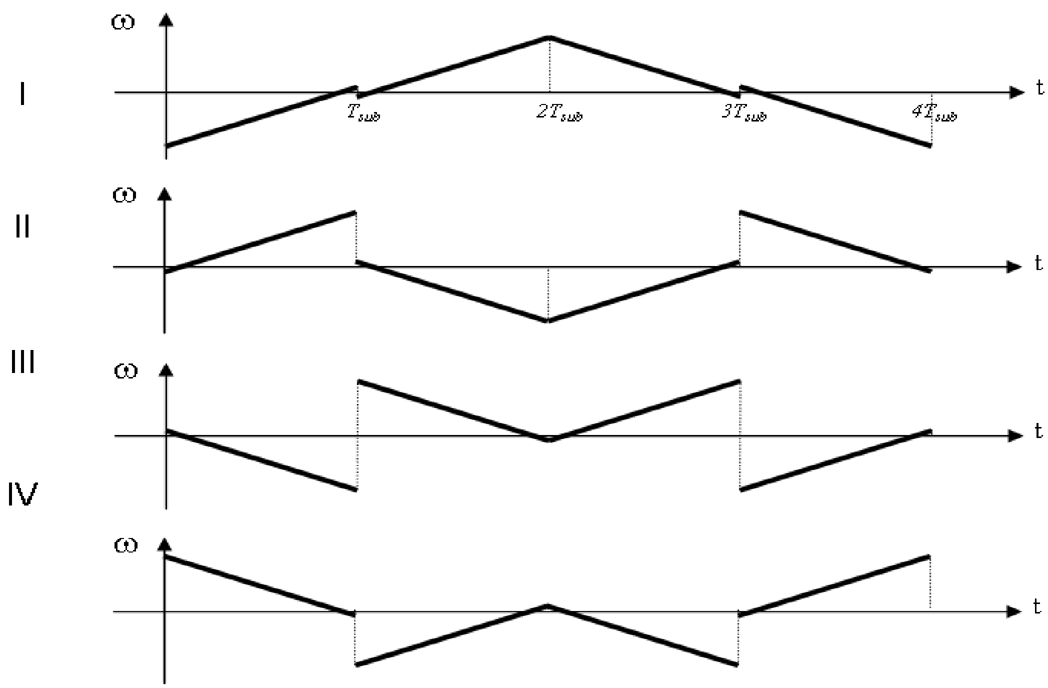


Figure 15-5—Four different combinations of subchirps

15.3.2 Active usage of time gaps

In conjunction with the subchirp sequence, different pairs of time gaps are defined. The time gaps are chosen to make the four sequences even closer to being orthogonal. The time gaps shall be applied alternatively between subsequent chirp symbols as shown in Figure 15-6. The values of the time gaps are calculated from the timing parameters specified in Table 15-8.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

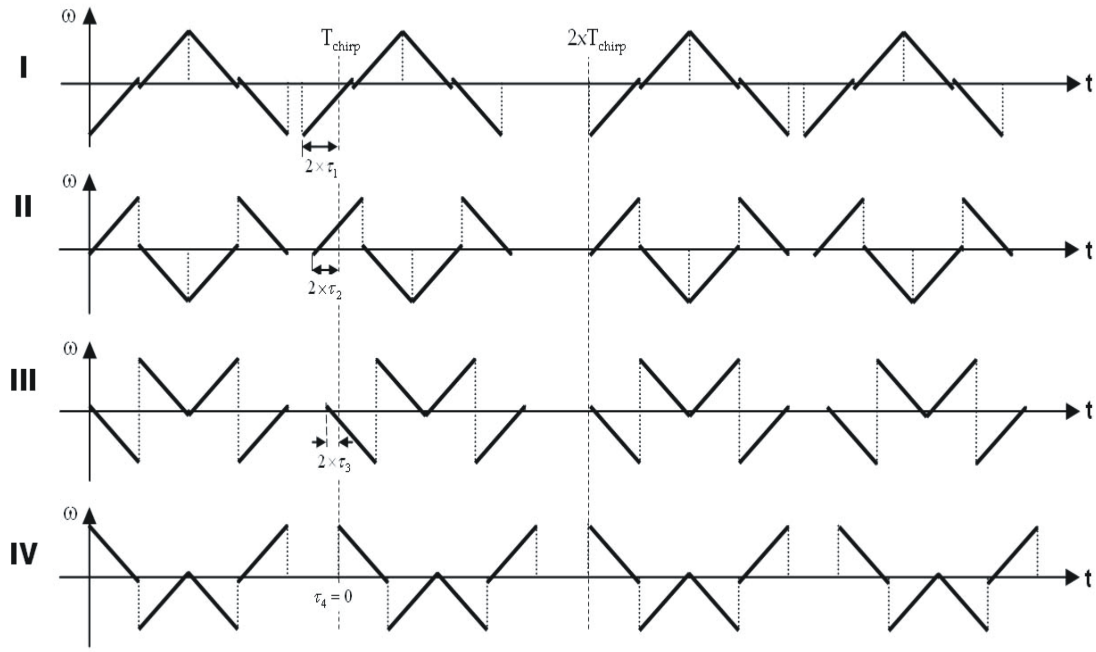


Figure 15-6—Four different time-gap pairs for the four different subchirp sequences

15.3.3 Mathematical representation of the continuous time CSS base-band signal

The mathematical representation of the continuous time-domain base-band signal $\tilde{s}^m(t)$ built of chirp symbols (subchirp sequences) as shown in Figure 15-5 with alternating time gaps as shown in Figure 15-6. The subchirp sequence with its associated time gap is defined to be a chirp symbol as follows:

$$\tilde{s}^m(t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \tilde{s}^m(t, n)$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sum_{k=1}^{4} \tilde{c}_{n,k} \exp\left[j\left(\hat{\omega}_{k,m} + \frac{\mu}{2}\xi_{k,m}(t - T_{n,k,m})\right)(t - T_{n,k,m})\right] \times P_{RC}(t - T_{n,k,m})$$

where m = 1, 2, 3, 4 (I, II, III, and IV in Figure 15-5) defines which of the four different possible chirp symbols (subchirp sequences) is used, and n = 0, 1, 2 …, is the sequence number of the chirp symbols.

The $\tilde{c}_{n,k}$ is the sequence of the complex data that consists of in-phase data $a_{n,k}$ and quadrature-phase data $b_{n,k}$ as the output of DQPSK coding.

The possible value of $a_{n,k}$ and $b_{n,k}$ are +1 or –1.

$$\tilde{c}_{n,k} = a_{n,k} + jb_{n,k}$$

where

n	is the sequence number of chirp symbols
k = 0,1,2, and 3	is the subchirp index
j	is $\sqrt{-1}$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

$\hat{\omega}_{k,\,m} = 2\pi \times f_{k,\,n}$ are the center frequencies of the subchirp signals. This value depends on m and $k = 1, 2, 3, 4$, which defines the subchirp number in the subchirp sequence.

$T_{n,\,k,\,m}$ defines the starting time of the actual subchirp signal to be generated. It is determined by T_{chirp}, which is the average duration of a chirp symbol, and by T_{sub}, which is the duration of a subchirp signal.

$$T_{n,\,k,\,m} = \left(k + \frac{1}{2}\right) T_{sub} + n T_{chirp} - (1 - (-1)^n)\tau_m$$

The constant μ defines the characteristics of the subchirp signal. A value of $\mu = 2\pi \times 7.3158 \times 10^{12}$ [rad/s^2] shall be used.

The function P_{RC}, which is defined in 15.3.4, is a windowing function that is equal to zero at the edges and outside of the subchirp centered at time zero.

The constant τ_m is either not added or added twice and thus determines (but is not identical to) the time gap that was applied between two subsequent subchirp sequences as shown in Figure 15-6.

Table 15-6 shows the values for the subband center frequencies, Table 15-7 the subchirp directions, and Table 15-8 the timing parameters. These time and frequency parameters are assumed to be derived from a reference crystal in a locked manner. In other words, any relative errors in chirp subband center frequencies, chirp rate, and time gaps are equal.

Table 15-6—Subband center frequencies, $f_{k,m}$ (MHz, numerical parameters)

*m**k*	1	2	3	4
1	$f_c - 3.15$	$f_c + 3.15$	$f_c + 3.15$	$f_c - 3.15$
2	$f_c + 3.15$	$f_c - 3.15$	$f_c - 3.15$	$f_c + 3.15$
3	$f_c - 3.15$	$f_c + 3.15$	$f_c + 3.15$	$f_c - 3.15$
4	$f_c + 3.15$	$f_c - 3.15$	$f_c - 3.15$	$f_c + 3.15$

Table 15-7—Subchirp directions, $\zeta_{k,\,m}$, numerical parameters

*m**k*	1	2	3	4
1	+1	+1	–1	–1
2	+1	–1	+1	–1
3	–1	–1	+1	+1
4	–1	+1	–1	+1

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 15-8—Timing parameters for baseband signal

Symbol	Value	Multiple of 1/32MHz
T_{chirp}	6 µs	192
T_{sub}	1.1875 µs	38
τ_1	468.75 µs	15
τ_2	312.5 ns	10
τ_3	156.25 ns	5
τ_4	0 ns	0

15.3.4 Raised cosine window for chirp pulse shaping

The raised-cosine time-window described here shall be used to shape the subchirp. The raised cosine window $P_{RC}(t)$ is applied to every subchirp signal in the time domain, as illustrated in Figure 15-7.

$$P_{RC}(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & |t| \le \dfrac{(1-\alpha)}{(1+\alpha)}\dfrac{T_{sub}}{2} \\ \dfrac{1}{2}\left[1 + \cos\left(\dfrac{(1+\alpha)\pi}{\alpha T_{sub}}\left(|t| - \dfrac{(1-\alpha)}{(1+\alpha)}\dfrac{T_{sub}}{2}\right)\right)\right] & \dfrac{(1-\alpha)}{(1+\alpha)}\dfrac{T_{sub}}{2} < |t| \le \dfrac{T_{sub}}{2} \\ 0 & |t| > \dfrac{T_{sub}}{2} \end{cases}$$

where $\alpha = 0.25$.

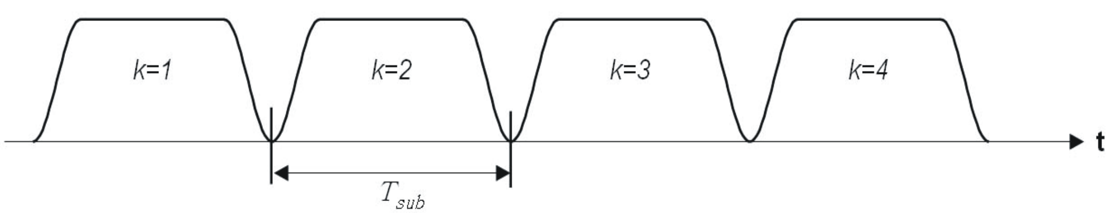


Figure 15-7—Subchirp time-domain pulse shaping

15.3.5 Subchirp transmission order

During each chirp symbol period, subchirp 1 (k = 1) is transmitted first, and subchirp 4 (k = 4) is transmitted last.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

15.3.6 Example of CSK signal generation

An example for the modulation of one chirp symbol is provided in this subclause to illustrate each step from DEMUX to the output of the reference modulator as shown in Figure 15-4. The scenario parameters are as follows:

— The initial values of all four feedback memory stages of the differential encoder is set $e^{(j\pi)/4}$.
— The data bit rate is 1 Mb/s.

Input binary data:

0 1 0 1 1 0

Demux:

I-path: 0 0 1

Q-path: 1 1 0

Serial-to-parallel mapping:

I-path: {1 0 0}

Q-path: {1 1 0}

Bi-orthogonal mapping (r = 3/4):

I-path: 1 –1 1 –1

Q-path: –1 –1 1 1

Parallel-to-serial and QPSK symbol mapping:

Mapper input: (1 – j), (–1 – j), (1 + j), (–1 + j)

QPSK output phase: –π/2, π, 0, π/2

D-QPSK coding:

Initial phase of four feedback memory for D-QPSK: all π/4

D-QPSK coder output phase: –π/4, –3π/4, π/4, 3π/4

D-QPSK–to–D-QCSK modulation output and subchirp sequence of D-QCSK output:

[exp(–jπ/4) × subchirp(k = 1), exp(–j3π/4) × subchirp(k = 2), exp(jπ/4) × subchirp(k = 3), exp(j3π/4) × subchirp(k = 4)]

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

15.4 CSS RF requirements

In addition to meeting regional regulatory requirements, CSS devices operating in the 2450 MHz band shall also meet the requirements in this subclause.

15.4.1 Transmit power spectral density (PSD) mask and signal tolerance

The transmitted spectral power density of a CSS signal $s(t)$ shall be within the relative limits specified in the template shown in Figure 15-8. The average spectral power shall be made using 100 kHz resolution bandwidth and a 1 kHz video bandwidth. For the relative limit, the reference level shall be the highest average spectral power measured within ± 11 MHz of the carrier frequency. Specifically, the normalized frequency spectrum to the peak value in the signal bandwidth $|f - f_c| \leq 7$ MHz shall be less than or equal to –30 dB in the stop band 11 MHz $\leq |f - f_c| \leq$ 22 MHz and shall be less than or equal to –50 dB in the stop band $|f - f_c| > 22$ MHz. For testing the transmitted spectral power density, a $2^{15} - 1$ pseudo-random binary sequence (PRBS) shall be used as input data.

As additional criteria for the compliance of a CSS signal, the mean square error shall be used. Let $s(t)$ be the baseband CSS signal that is given in 15.3.3. Then the implemented signal, $s_{impl}(t)$, shall satisfy the following equation:

$$\text{mmse} = \min_{A,\, \tau_d,\, \varphi} \left(\frac{\int_0^T \left| s^m(t) - A \times s^m_{impl}(t - \tau_d) e^{j\varphi} \right|^2 dt}{\int_0^T \left| s^m(t) \right|^2 dt} \right) \leq 0.005$$

where the constants A, τ_d, and φ ϕ are used to minimize the mean squared error. The constant T_{chirp} is the period of the CSS symbol. The $c_{n,k}$ of $s(t)$ is the constant data $(1 + j)$ for the measurement for all n and k.

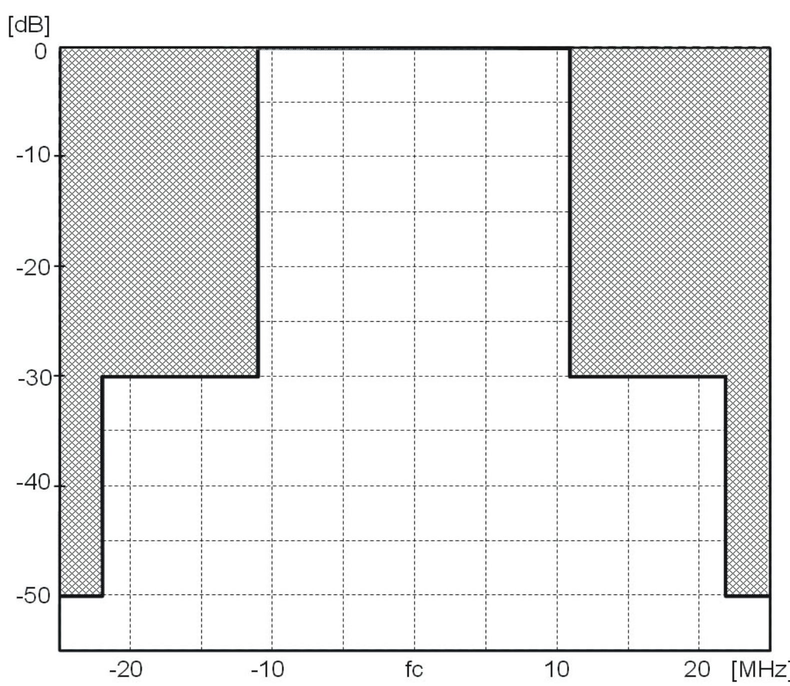


Figure 15-8—Transmit PSD mask

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

15.4.2 Symbol rate

The 2450 MHz PHY DQCSK symbol rate shall be 166.667 ksymbol/s (1/6 Msymbol/s) $\pm 40 \times 10^{-6}$.

15.4.3 Receiver sensitivity

Under the conditions specified in 6.1.6, a compliant device shall be capable of achieving a receiver sensitivity of –85 dBm or better for 1 Mb/s and –91 dBm or better for 250 kb/s.

15.4.4 Receiver interference rejection

Table 15-9 gives minimum receiver interference rejection levels. A nonoverlapping adjacent channel is defined to have a center frequency offset of 25 MHz. A nonoverlapping alternate channel is defined to have a center frequency offset of 50 MHz. The adjacent channel rejection shall be measured as follows: The desired signal shall be a compliant 2450 MHz CSS signal of pseudo-random data. The desired signal is input to the receiver at a level 3 dB above the maximum allowed receiver sensitivity given in 15.4.3. In the adjacent or the alternate channel, a CSS signal of the same or a different subchirp sequence as the victim device is input at the relative level specified in Table 15-9. The test shall be performed for only one interfering signal at a time. The receiver shall meet the error rate criteria defined in 6.1.6 under these conditions.

Table 15-9—Minimum receiver interference rejection levels for 2450 MHz CSS PHY

Data rate	Nonoverlapping adjacent channel rejection (25 MHz offset) (dB)	Nonoverlapping alternate channel rejection (50 MHz offset) (dB)
1 Mb/s	34	48
250 kb/s (optional)	38	52

15.4.5 TX-to-RX turnaround time

The TX-to-RX turnaround time shall be less than or equal to *aTurnaroundTime*, as defined in 11.2.

The TX-to-RX turnaround time is defined as the shortest time possible at the air interface from the trailing edge of the last chirp (of the last symbol) of a transmitted PPDU to the leading edge of the first chirp (of the first symbol) of the next received PPDU.

The TX-to-RX turnaround time shall be less than or equal to the RX-to-TX turnaround time.

15.4.6 RX-to-TX turnaround time

The RX-to-TX turnaround time shall be less than or equal to *aTurnaroundTime*, as defined in 11.2.

The RX-to-TX turnaround time is defined as the shortest time possible at the air interface from the trailing edge of the last chirp (of the last symbol) of a received PPDU to the leading edge of the first chirp (of the first symbol) of the next transmitted PPDU.

15.4.7 Transmit center frequency tolerance

The CSS PHY transmit center frequency tolerance shall be $\pm 40 \times 10^{-6}$ maximum.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

15.4.8 Transmit power

The CSS PHY shall be capable of transmitting at a power level of at least –3 dBm.

15.4.9 Receiver maximum input level of desired signal

The CSS PHY shall have a receiver maximum input level greater than or equal to –20 dBm using the measurement defined in 10.2.4.

15.4.10 Receiver ED

The CSS PHY shall provide the receiver ED measurement as described in 10.2.5.

15.4.11 LQI

The CSS PHY shall provide the LQI measurement as described in 10.2.6.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

16. HRP UWB PHY

16.1 General

The HRP UWB PHY waveform is based upon an impulse radio signaling scheme using band-limited pulses. The HRP UWB PHY supports three independent bands of operation:

— The sub-gigahertz band, which consists of a single channel and occupies the spectrum from 249.6 MHz to 749.6 MHz
— The low band, which consists of four channels and occupies the spectrum from 3.1 GHz to 4.8 GHz
— The high band, which consists of 11 channels and occupies the spectrum from 6.0 GHz to 10.6 GHz

Within each channel, there is support for at least two complex channels that have unique length 31 preamble codes. The combination of a channel and a preamble code is termed a *complex channel*. A compliant device shall implement support for at least one of the channels (0, 3, or 9) in Table 16-11. In addition, each device shall support the two unique length 31 preamble codes for the implemented channels as defined in Table 16-6. Support for the other channels listed in Table 16-11 is optional.

A combination of burst position modulation (BPM) and binary phase-shift keying (BPSK) is used to support both coherent and noncoherent receivers using a common signaling scheme. The combined BPM-BPSK is used to modulate the symbols, with each symbol being composed of an active burst of UWB pulses. The various data rates are supported through the use of variable-length bursts. Figure 16-1 shows the sequence of processing steps used to create and modulate an HRP UWB PPDU. The sequence of steps indicated here for the transmitter is used as a basis for explaining the creation of the HRP UWB PHY waveform specified in the PHY of this standard. Note that the receiver portion of Figure 16-1 is informative and meant only as a guide to the essential steps that any compliant HRP UWB receiver needs to implement in order to successfully decode the transmitted signal.

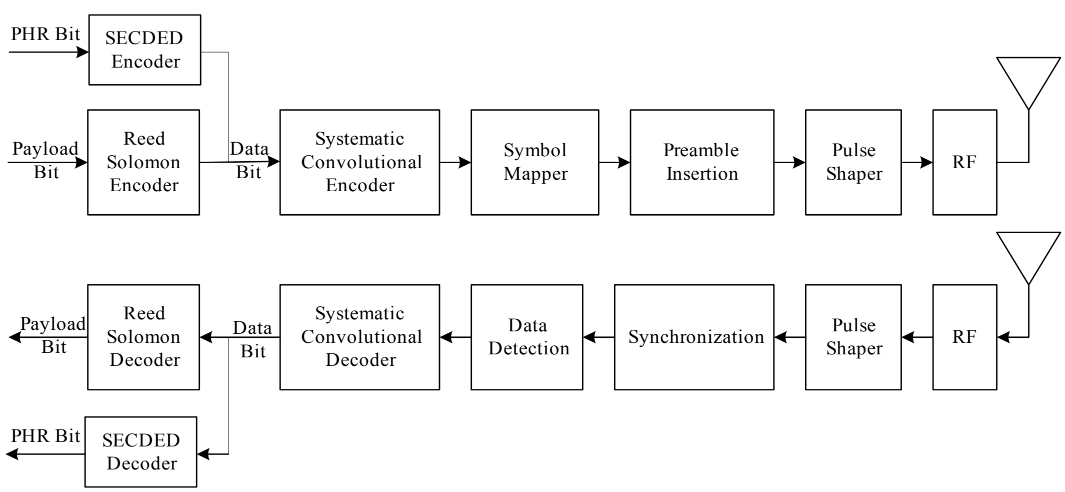


Figure 16-1—HRP UWB PHY signal flow

16.2 HRP UWB PPDU format

Figure 16-2 shows the format for the HRP UWB PPDU.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

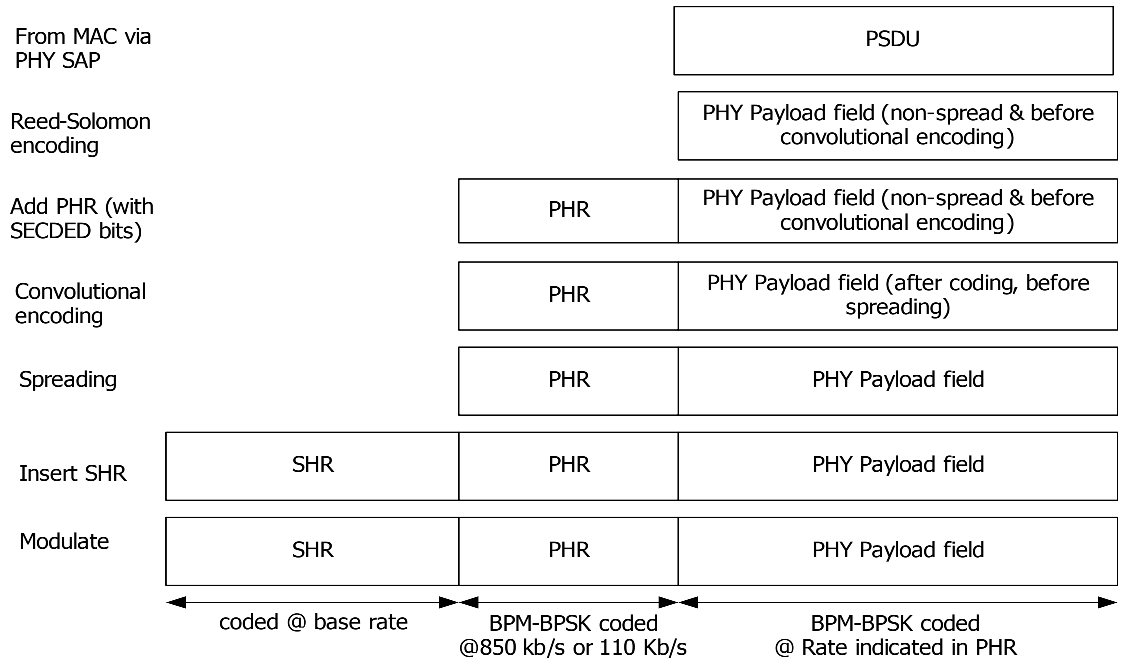


Figure 16-2—HRP UWB PPDU encoding process

Note that each HRP UWB-compliant device shall support the length 31 preamble codes specified in Table 16-6 and that two base rates corresponding to the two mandatory PRFs result for this code length. The mandatory SHR base rates are, therefore, 1.01 Msymbol/s and 0.25 Msymbol/s as indicated in Table 16-4.

The PHR is sent at 850 kb/s for all data rates greater than or equal to 850 kb/s and at 110 kb/s for the data rate of 110 kb/s. The PSDU is sent at the desired information data rate as defined in Table 16-3.

16.2.1 PPDU encoding process

The encoding process is composed of many steps, as illustrated in Figure 16-2. The details of these steps are fully described in later subclauses, as noted in the following list:

a) Perform Reed-Solomon encoding on the PSDU as described in 16.3.3.1.
b) Produce the PHR as described in 16.2.6, including the single error correct, double error detect (SEC-DED) field to and prepend to the PSDU.
c) Perform further convolutional coding as described in 16.3.3.2. Note that in some instances at the 27 Mb/s data rate, the convolutional encoding of the PHY Payload field is effectively bypassed and two data bits are encoded per BPM-BPSK symbol.
d) Modulate and spread PSDU according to the method described in 16.3.1 and 16.3.2 The PHR is modulated using BPM-BPSK at either 850 kb/s or 110 kb/s and the PHY Payload field is modulated at the rate specified in the PHR.
e) Produce the SHR field from the SYNC field, as described in 16.2.5.1, and the SFD field, as described in 16.2.5.2.

Table 16-1 and Table 16-2 show how the SHR field, H_0-H_{18}, PHY Payload field, D_0-D_{N-1}, and Tail field, T_0-T_1, are mapped onto the symbols. In these tables, the polarity bit column operation is an XOR. The tables also show when the transition from the header bit rate to the data bit rate takes place. Note that the delay line of the convolutional code is initialized to zero. For this reason, the position bit of Symbol 0 shall always be zero. This means that Symbol 0 is always transmitted in the first half of the first header symbol.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 16-1—Mapping of SHR field bits, PHY Payload field bits, and Tail field bits onto symbols with Viterbi rate 0.5

Symbol #	Input data	Position bit	Polarity bit	
0	H_0	0	H_0	21 symbols of header at 850 kb/s or 110 kb/s
1	H_1	H_0	H_1	
2	H_2	H_1	$H_0 \oplus H_2$	
3	H_3	H_2	$H_1 \oplus H_3$	
…	…	…	…	
16	H_{16}	H_{15}	$H_{14} \oplus H_{16}$	
17	H_{17}	H_{16}	$H_{15} \oplus H_{17}$	
18	H_{18}	H_{17}	$H_{16} \oplus H_{18}$	
19	D_0	H_{18}	$H_{17} \oplus D_0$	
20	D_1	D_0	$H_{18} \oplus D_1$	
21	D_2	D_1	$D_0 \oplus D_2$	N symbols of data at data rate, e.g., 6.8 Mb/s
…	…	…	…	
N+17	D_{N-2}	D_{N-3}	$D_{N-4} \oplus D_{N-2}$	
N+18	D_{N-1}	D_{N-2}	$D_{N-3} \oplus D_{N-1}$	
N+19	T_0	D_{N-1}	$D_{N-2} \oplus T_0$	
N+20	T_1	T_0	$D_{N-1} \oplus T_1$	

Table 16-2—Mapping of SHR field bits, PHY Payload field bits and Tail field bits onto symbols with Viterbi rate 1

Symbol #	Input data	Position bit	Polarity bit	
0	H_0	0	H_0	21 symbols of header at 850 kb/s
1	H_1	H_0	H_1	
2	H_2	H_1	$H_0 \oplus H_2$	
3	H_3	H_2	$H_1 \oplus H_3$	
…	…	…	…	
16	H_{16}	H_{15}	$H_{14} \oplus H_{16}$	
17	H_{17}	H_{16}	$H_{15} \oplus H_{17}$	
18	H_{18}	H_{17}	$H_{16} \oplus H_{18}$	
19	T_0	H_{18}	$H_{17} \oplus T_0$	
20	T_1	T_0	$H_{18} \oplus T_1$	

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 16-2—Mapping of SHR field bits, PHY Payload field bits and Tail field bits onto symbols with Viterbi rate 1 *(continued)*

Symbol #	Input data	Position bit	Polarity bit	
21	D_0, D_1	D_0	D_1	1/2 N symbols of data at data rate, e.g., 6.8 Mb/s
…	D_2, D_3	D_2	D_3	
…	…	…	…	
1/2 N+19	D_{N-6}, D_{N-5}	D_{N-6}	D_{N-5}	
1/2 N+20	D_{N-4}, D_{N-3}	D_{N-4}	D_{N-3}	
1/2 N+21	D_{N-2}, D_{N-1}	D_{N-2}	D_{N-1}	

16.2.2 Symbol structure

In the BPM-BPSK modulation scheme, each symbol is capable of carrying two bits of information: one bit is used to determine the position of a burst of pulses, while an additional bit is used to modulate the phase (polarity) of this same burst.

The structure and timing of a symbol is illustrated in Figure 16-3. Each symbol shall consist of an integer number of possible chip positions, N_c, each with duration T_c. The overall symbol period denoted by T_{dsym} is given by $T_{dsym} = N_c T_c$. Furthermore, each symbol is divided into two BPM intervals each with duration $T_{BPM} = T_{dsym}/2$, which enables binary position modulation.

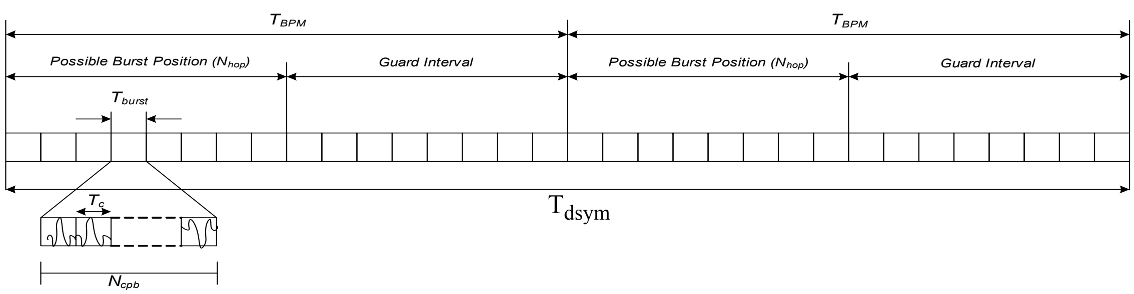


Figure 16-3—HRP UWB PHY symbol structure

A burst is formed by grouping N_{cpb} consecutive chips and has duration $T_{burst} = N_{cpb} T_c$. The location of the burst in either the first half or the second half of the symbol indicates one bit of information. Additionally, the phase of the burst (either –1 or +1) is used to indicate a second bit of information.

In each symbol interval, a single burst event shall be transmitted. The fact that burst duration is typically much shorter than the BPM duration, i.e., $T_{burst} << T_{BPM}$, provides for some multi-user access interference rejection in the form of time hopping. The total number of burst durations per symbol, N_{burst}, is given by $N_{burst} = T_{dsym}/T_{burst}$. In order to limit the amount of inter-symbol interference caused by multipath, only the first half of each T_{BPM} period shall contain a burst. Therefore, only the first $N_{hop} = N_{burst}/4$ possible burst positions are candidate hopping burst positions within each BPM interval. Each burst position can be varied on a symbol-to-symbol basis according to a time hopping code as described in 16.3.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

16.2.3 PSDU timing parameters

The PSDU rate-dependent parameters and timing-related parameters are summarized in Table 16-3. Within each HRP UWB channel {0:15}, the peak PRF shall be 499.2 MHz. This rate corresponds to the highest frequency at which a compliant transmitter shall emit pulses. Additionally, the mean PRF is defined as the total number of pulses emitted during a symbol period divided by the length of the symbol period.

There are two possible preamble code lengths (31 or 127) and three possible mean PRFs (15.6 MHz, 3.90 MHz, and 62.4 MHz). A compliant device shall implement support for the preamble code length of 31 and shall also support both the 15.6 MHz and 3.90 MHz mean PRFs for the PSDU as depicted in Table 16-3. The use of the length 127 code is optional; when implemented, the mean PRF of the PSDU shall be 62.4 MHz.

Channels {4, 7, 11, 15} are all optional channels and are differentiated from other channels by the larger bandwidth (>500 MHz) of the transmitted signals. These channels overlap the existing lower bandwidth channels. The larger bandwidth enables devices operating in these channels to transmit at a higher power (for fixed PSD constraints), and thus they may achieve a longer communication range. The larger bandwidth pulses offer enhanced multipath resistance. Additionally, larger bandwidth leads to more accurate range estimates. The admissible data rates, preamble code lengths, PRFs, and modulation timing parameters are listed in Table 16-3.

Each channel allows for several data rates that are obtained by modifying the number of chips within a burst, while the total number of possible burst positions remains constant. Therefore, the symbol period, T_{dsym}, changes to obtain the stated symbol rate and bit rates.

Each row in Table 16-3 completely describes all timing parameters shown in Figure 16-3 for each permitted combination of channel number, preamble code length, and PRF.

The channel number parameter column identifies the HRP UWB PHY channel numbers where the remaining PSDU timing parameters in the current row are valid. Association between channel number and center frequency is given in Table 16-11.

The peak PRF states the highest frequency in megahertz at which a compliant transmitter shall emit pulses. The peak PRF is also used to derive the chip duration T_c by the formula $T_c = 1/(peakPRF)$. The value of T_c is approximately 2 ns.

The bandwidth denotes the 3 dB bandwidth of the HRP UWB pulses. Note that the bandwidth is not necessarily the inverse of the chip duration T_c. Pulse shape and bandwidth are further defined in 16.4.5.

The preamble code length parameter denotes the length of the preamble code length to be used during the SHR portion of a PPDU. The code length together with the channel number defines a complex channel. Individual codes to be used on each channel are given in Table 16-6 (length 31) and Table 16-7 (length 127).

This Viterbi rate parameter determines the rate of the convolutional code applied to the PHY Payload bits. A value of 1 indicates that no convolutional coding is applied, while a value of 0.5 indicates that a rate 1/2 code as described in 16.3.3.2 is applied.

The RS rate parameters indicates the (63,55) Reed-Solomon code rate, which is approximately 0.87. The Reed-Solomon code is applied to the entire PSDU. Reed-Solomon encoding is further described in 16.3.3.1.

The overall FEC rate is determined by the product of the Viterbi rate and the Reed-Solomon rate and has either a value of 0.44 or 0.87.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 16-3—HRP UWB PHY rate-dependent and timing-related parameters

Channel Number	Peak PRF MHz	Bandwidth MHz	Preamble Code Length	Modulation & Coding: Viterbi Rate	Modulation & Coding: RS Rate	Modulation & Coding: Overall FEC Rate	Data Symbol Structure: #Burst Positions per Symbol N_{burst}	Data Symbol Structure: # Hop Bursts N_{hop}	Data Symbol Structure: # Chips Per Burst N_{cpb}	Data Symbol Structure: #Chips Per Symbol	Data Symbol Structure: Burst Duration T_{burst} (ns)	Data Symbol Structure: Symbol Duration T_{dsym} (ns)	Data: Symbol Rate (MHz)	Data: Bit Rate Mb/s	Data: Mean PRF (MHz)
{0:3, 5:6, 8:10, 12:14}	499.2	499.2	31	0.5	0.87	0.44	32	8	128	4096	256.41	8205.13	0.12	0.11	15.60
	499.2	499.2	31	0.5	0.87	0.44	32	8	16	512	32.05	1025.64	0.98	0.85	15.60
	499.2	499.2	31	0.5	0.87	0.44	32	8	2	64	4.01	128.21	7.80	6.81	15.60
	499.2	499.2	31	1	0.87	0.87	32	8	1	32	2.00	64.10	15.60	27.24	15.60
{0:3, 5:6, 8:10, 12:14}	499.2	499.2	31	0.5	0.87	0.44	128	32	32	4096	64.10	8205.13	0.12	0.11	3.90
	499.2	499.2	31	0.5	0.87	0.44	128	32	4	512	8.01	1025.64	0.98	0.85	3.90
	499.2	499.2	31	0.5	0.87	0.44	128	32	2	256	4.01	512.82	1.95	1.70	3.90
	499.2	499.2	31	1	0.87	0.87	128	32	1	128	2.00	256.41	3.90	6.81	3.90
{0:3, 5:6, 8:10, 12:14}	499.2	499.2	127	0.5	0.87	0.44	8	2	512	4096	1025.64	8205.13	0.12	0.11	62.40
	499.2	499.2	127	0.5	0.87	0.44	8	2	64	512	128.21	1025.64	0.98	0.85	62.40
	499.2	499.2	127	0.5	0.87	0.44	8	2	8	64	16.03	128.21	7.80	6.81	62.40
	499.2	499.2	127	0.5	0.87	0.44	8	2	2	16	4.01	32.05	31.20	27.24	62.40
{4, 11}	499.2	1331.2	31	0.5	0.87	0.44	32	8	128	4096	256.41	8205.13	0.12	0.11	15.60
	499.2	1331.2	31	0.5	0.87	0.44	32	8	16	512	32.05	1025.64	0.98	0.85	15.60
	499.2	1331.2	31	0.5	0.87	0.44	32	8	2	64	4.01	128.21	7.80	6.81	15.60
	499.2	1331.2	31	1	0.87	0.87	32	8	1	32	2.00	64.10	15.60	27.24	15.60
{4, 11}	499.2	1331.2	127	0.5	0.87	0.44	8	2	512	4096	1025.64	8205.13	0.12	0.11	62.40
	499.2	1331.2	127	0.5	0.87	0.44	8	2	64	512	128.21	1025.64	0.98	0.85	62.40
	499.2	1331.2	127	0.5	0.87	0.44	8	2	8	64	16.03	128.21	7.80	6.81	62.40
	499.2	1331.2	127	0.5	0.87	0.44	8	2	2	16	4.01	32.05	31.20	27.24	62.40
7	499.2	1081.6	31	0.5	0.87	0.44	32	8	128	4096	256.41	8205.13	0.12	0.11	15.60
	499.2	1081.6	31	0.5	0.87	0.44	32	8	16	512	32.05	1025.64	0.98	0.85	15.60
	499.2	1081.6	31	0.5	0.87	0.44	32	8	2	64	4.01	128.21	7.80	6.81	15.60
	499.2	1081.6	31	1	0.87	0.87	32	8	1	32	2.00	64.10	15.60	27.24	15.60
7	499.2	1081.6	127	0.5	0.87	0.44	8	2	512	4096	1025.64	8205.13	0.12	0.11	62.40
	499.2	1081.6	127	0.5	0.87	0.44	8	2	64	512	128.21	1025.64	0.98	0.85	62.40
	499.2	1081.6	127	0.5	0.87	0.44	8	2	8	64	16.03	128.21	7.80	6.81	62.40
	499.2	1081.6	127	0.5	0.87	0.44	8	2	2	16	4.01	32.05	31.20	27.24	62.40
15	499.2	1354.97	31	0.5	0.87	0.44	32	8	128	4096	256.41	8205.13	0.12	0.11	15.60
	499.2	1354.97	31	0.5	0.87	0.44	32	8	16	512	32.05	1025.64	0.98	0.85	15.60
	499.2	1354.97	31	0.5	0.87	0.44	32	8	2	64	4.01	128.21	7.80	6.81	15.60
	499.2	1354.97	31	1	0.87	0.87	32	8	1	32	2.00	64.10	15.60	27.24	15.60
15	499.2	1354.97	127	0.5	0.87	0.44	8	2	512	4096	1025.64	8205.13	0.12	0.11	62.40
	499.2	1354.97	127	0.5	0.87	0.44	8	2	64	512	128.21	1025.64	0.98	0.85	62.40
	499.2	1354.97	127	0.5	0.87	0.44	8	2	8	64	16.03	128.21	7.80	6.81	62.40
	499.2	1354.97	127	0.5	0.87	0.44	8	2	2	16	4.01	32.05	31.20	27.24	62.40

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The burst positions per symbol parameter is the total number of possible burst positions in a data symbol period. N_{burst} has been chosen so that for each mean PRF a data symbol consists of a fixed number of burst durations.

The hop bursts parameter is the number of burst positions that may contain an active burst, that is, a burst containing HRP UWB pulses. The value is computed as $N_{hop} = N_{burst}/4$.

The chips per burst parameter is the number of chip T_c durations within each burst period T_{burst}. Each burst consists of a multiple number of consecutive chips, as illustrated in Figure 16-3. Depending on the data rate to be used in the transmission of the PSDU, the number of chips in a burst varies, e.g., for low data rates, the burst consists of more chip periods than for high data rates. Particular, values of N_{cpb} have been selected so that the following is a valid data rate: (2 × Overall FEC Rate)/($N_{cpb} \times N_{burst} \times T_c$).

The burst duration parameter is simply the duration of a burst and is computed as $T_{burst} = N_{cpb} \times T_c$.

The symbol period parameter is a the duration of a modulated and coded PSDU symbol on the air and is computed as follows: $T_{dsym} = N_{burst} \times T_{burst}$.

The symbol rate parameter is the inverse of the PSDU symbol period $1/T_{dsym}$.

The bit rate parameter is the user information rate considering FEC and is computed as follows:

Bit Rate = 2 × (Overall FEC Rate)/T_{dsym}

The mean PRF parameter is the average PRF during the PSDU portion of a PHY frame and is computed as follows:

Mean PRF = N_{cpb}/T_{dsym}

16.2.4 Preamble timing parameters

Due to the variability in the preamble code length and the PRF, there are several admissible values for the timing parameters of a preamble symbol. These values are summarized in Table 16-4. In this subclause, a preamble symbol is defined as the waveform consisting of one whole repetition of the modulated preamble code (either length 31 or 127). Details on the construction of the preamble symbol for various code lengths and PRFs are given in 16.2.5. For each target PRF, the preamble is constructed from a preamble code, C_i, by inserting a number of chip durations between code symbols. The number of chip durations to insert is denoted by δ_L, values for each code length and PRF are given in Table 16-4, and the chip insertion is detailed in 16.2.5.1.

Table 16-4—Preamble parameters

Channel Number	C_i Code Length	Peak PRF (MHz)	Mean PRF (MHz)	Delta Length δ_L	#Chips Per Symbol	Symbol Duration T_{psym} (ns)	Base Rate Msymbol/s
{0:15}	31	31.20	16.10	16	496	993.59	1.01
{0:3, 5:6, 8:10, 12:14}	31	7.80	4.03	64	1984	3974.36	0.25
{0:15}	127	124.80	62.89	4	508	1017.63	0.98

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 16-4 presents the timing parameters during the SHR field portion of an HRP UWB PPDU, while Table 16-3 presents the timing parameters for the PSDU portion of the frame. First, note that the preamble is sent at a slightly higher mean PRF than the data, as defined in Table 16-3. This is due to the fact that length 31 or 127 ternary codes are being used within the SHR, and the number of chips within the SHR is no longer a power of 2. For example, for the two mandatory PRFs in channels {0:3, 5:6, 8:10, 12:14), the peak PRFs during the preamble are 31.2 MHz and 7.8 MHz, respectively, and the corresponding mean PRFs during the preamble are 16.10 MHz and 4.03 MHz, respectively. The corresponding mean PRFs during the PSDU are 15.60 MHz and 3.90 MHz, respectively. The remaining peak and mean PRF values for other optional HRP UWB channels and the optional length 127 code are listed in Table 16-4.

The base symbol rate is defined as the rate at which the preamble symbols are sent. The base rates corresponding to the two mandatory mean PRFs of 16.10 MHz and 4.03 MHz are 1 Msymbol/s and 0.25 Msymbol/s, respectively, and are listed in the column with the heading "Base Rate" in Table 16-4. These symbol rates correspond to a preamble symbol period of 993.59 ns and 3974.36 ns for the two mandatory PRFs.

Finally, for each HRP UWB PPDU, there are four possible durations of the SHR. This is due to the four possible lengths of SYNC field in the SHR, as described in 16.2.5. The SYNC field consists of repetitions of the preamble symbol. The number of preamble symbol repetitions are 16, 64, 1024, and 4096. These different SYNC field lengths yield different time durations of the PPDU. The relationship between SYNC field length and frame duration is shown in Table 16-5. For each channel, the number of chips in an individual preamble symbol is shown in the row titled "N_c." N_c is a function of the PRF used within the channel and, therefore, has either two or three values. For each value of N_c, the admissible preamble symbol periods are defined, and the duration of the SYNC portion of the SHR for each length (16, 64, 1024, or 4096) is denoted as T_{sync}. The values of the frame duration parameters are shown in Table 16-5 for each of the channels.

Table 16-5—HRP UWB PHY frame-dependent parameters

Parameter	Description		Value		
Channel	HRP UWB PHY channel number		{0:15}		{0:3, 5:6, 8:10, 12:14}
PRF_{mean}	Mean PRF (MHz)		16.10	62.89	4.03
N_c	Number of chips per preamble symbol		496	508	1984
T_{psym}	Preamble symbol period (ns)		993.6	1017.6	3974.4
N_{sync}	Number of symbols in the packet sync sequence	Short	16		
		Default	64		
		Medium	1024		
		Long	4096		
T_{sync}	Duration of the packet sync sequence (μs)	Short	15.9	16.3	63.6
		Default	63.6	65.1	254.4
		Medium	1017.4	1042.1	4069.7
		Long	4069.7	4168.2	N/A[a]
N_{sfd}	Number of symbols in the SFD		8 or 64		
T_{sfd}	Duration of the SFD (μs)		7.9 or 63.6	8.1 or 65.1	31.8 or 254.4

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 16-5—HRP UWB PHY frame-dependent parameters *(continued)*

Parameter	Description		Value		
N_{pre}	Number of symbols in the SHR	Short	24 or 80		
		Default	72 or 128		
		Medium	1032 or 1088		
		Long	4104 or 4160		
T_{pre}	Duration of the SHR preamble (µs)	Short	23.8 or 79.5	24.4 or 270.6	95.4 or 128.7
		Default	71.5 or 127.2	73.3 or 319.5	286.2 or 319.5
		Medium	1025.4 or 081.0	1050.2 or 1296.4	4101.5 or 4134.9
		Long	4077.7 or 4133.3	4176.3 or 4422.6	N/A[a]
N_{CCA_PHR}	Number of multiplexed preamble symbols in PHR		4 or 32		
N_{CCA_data}	Number of multiplexed preamble symbols in the PHY Payload field		$T_{pre}/(4 \times T_{dsym/M})$		

[a]The use of the long SYNC sequence is not allowed when operating at a mean PRF of 4.03 MHz.

16.2.5 SHR field

Four mandatory preambles are defined: a default preamble, a short preamble, a medium preamble, and a long preamble. The preamble to be used in the transmission of the current frame is determined by the value of the HrpUwbPreambleSymbolsRepetitions parameter in the MCPS-DATA.request primitive.

The SHR field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 16-4.

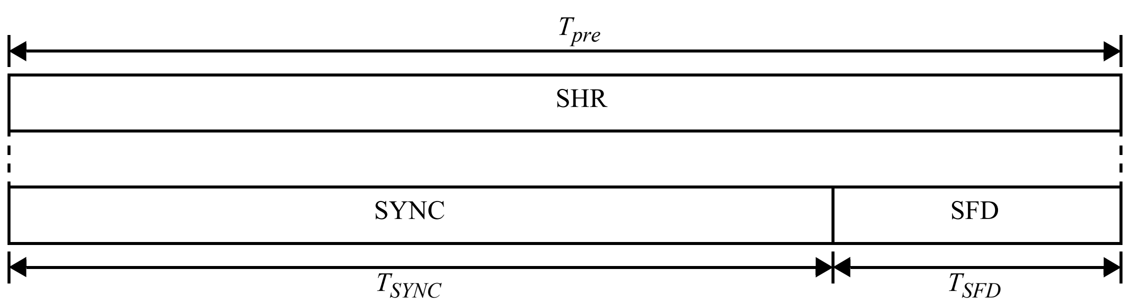


Figure 16-4—SHR field structure

16.2.5.1 SYNC field

Each PAN operating on one of the HRP UWB PHY channels is also identified by a preamble code. The preamble code is used to construct symbols that constitute the SYNC field as shown in Figure 16-4. The HRP UWB PHY supports two lengths of preamble code: a length 31 code and an optional length 127 code. Each preamble code is a sequence of code symbols drawn from a ternary alphabet {–1,0,1} and selected for use in the HRP UWB PHY because of their periodic autocorrelation properties. The length 31 code sequences are shown in Table 16-6, while the length 127 code sequences are shown in Table 16-7. The codes that may be used in each of the HRP UWB PHY channels is restricted, and the particular code

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

assignments are made in Table 16-6 and Table 16-7. Specifically, the last column in each table indicates the set of HRP UWB channel numbers that permit use of the code. This restriction of codes is to ensure that codes with the lowest cross-correlation are used in the same HRP UWB PHY channel. Additionally, 8 of the length 127 codes are reserved for use with the private ranging protocol only and are not used during normal WPAN operation. This restriction is indicated in the third column of Table 16-7 as well.

Table 16-6—Length 31 ternary codes

Code index	Code sequence	Channel number[a]
1	-0000+0-0+++0+-000+-+++00-+0-00	0, 1, 8, 12
2	0+0+-0+0+000-++0-+---00+00++000	0, 1, 8, 12
3	-+0++000-+-++00++0+00-0000-0+0-	2, 5, 9, 13
4	0000+-00-00-++++0+-+000+0-0++0-	2, 5, 9, 13
5	-0+-00+++-+000-+0+++0-0+0000-00	3, 6, 10, 14
6	++00+00---+-0++-000+0+0-+0+0000	3, 6, 10, 14
7	+0000+-0+0+00+000+0++---0-+00-+	4, 7, 11, 15
8	0+00-0-0++0000--+00-+0++-++0+00	4, 7, 11, 15

[a] Note that codes indexed 1 through 6 may also be used for HRP UWB channels 4, 7, 11, and 15 (i.e., channels whose bandwidth is wider that 500 MHz) if interchannel communication is desired.

Table 16-7—Optional length 127 ternary codes

Code index	Code sequence	Channel number[a]
9	+00+000-0--00--+0+0+00-+-++0+0000++-000+00-00--0-+0+0--0-+++0++000+-0+00- 0++-0+++00-+00+0+0-0++-+--+000000+00000-+0000-0-000--+	0–3, 5, 6, 8–10, 12–14
10	++00+0-+00+00+000000-000-00--000-0+-+0-0+-0-+00000+-00++0-0+00--+00++- +0+-0+0000-0-0-0-++-+0+00+0+000-+0+++000----+++0000+++0--	0–3, 5, 6, 8–10, 12–14
11	-+-0000+00--00000-0+0+0+-0+00+00+0-00-+++00+000-+0+0-0000+++++-+0+--0+- 0++--0-000+0-+00+0+----000-000000-+00+-0++000++-00++-0-0	0–3, 5, 6, 8–10, 12–14
12	-+0++000000-0+0-+0---+-++00-+0++0+0+0+000-00-00-+00+-++000-+-0-++0- 0++++0-00-0++00+0+00++-00+000+-000-0--+0000-0000--0+00000+--	0–3, 5, 6, 8–10, 12–14
13	+000--0000--++0-++++0-0++0+0-00-+0++00++-0++0+-+0-00+00-0--000-+-00+0000- 0++-00000+-0-000000-00-+-++-+000-0+0+0+++-00--00+0+000	0–15; DPS only
14	+000++0-0+0-00+-0-+0-00+0+0000+0+-0000++00+0+++++-+0-0+-0--+0++--000--- 0+000+0+0-+-000000+-+-0--00++000-00+00++-00--++-00-00000	0–15; DPS only
15	0+-00+0-000-++0000---++000+0+-0-+00-+000--0-00--0--+++-+0-++00+- ++0+00000+0-0+++-00+00+000-0000+00--+0++0+0+0-00-0-+-0+0++00000	0–15; DPS only
16	++0000+000+00+--0+-++0-000--00+-0+00++000+++00+0+0-0-+-0-0+00+00+0++---- +00++--+0+-0--+000000-0-0000-+0--00+00000+-++000-0-+0+0	0–15; DPS only

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 16-7—Optional length 127 ternary codes *(continued)*

Code index	Code sequence	Channel number[a]
17	+--000-0-0000+-00000+000000+--+-++0-0+0+00+-00+++0-++0-00+0-+000++0+++-0--0+0+-0--00-00+000-++0000+0++-+-00+0+0+--00--0-000+00+	4, 7, 11, 15
18	--0+++0000+++----000+++0+-000+0+00+0+-++-0-0-0-0000+0-+0+-++00+--00+0-0++00-+00000+-0-+0-0+-+0-000--00-000-000000+00+00+-0+00++	4, 7, 11, 15
19	-0-++00-++000++0-+00+-000000-000----+0+00+-0+000-0--++0-+0--+0+-+++++0000-0+0+-000+00+++-00-0+00+00+0-+0+0+0-00000--00+0000-+-0	4, 7, 11, 15
20	--+00000+0--0000-0000+--0-000-+000+00-++00+0+00++0-00-0++++0-0++-0-+-000++-+00+-00-00-000+0+0+0++0+-00++-+---0+-0+0-000000++0+-	4, 7, 11, 15
21	+0+00--00-+++0+0+0-000+-++-+-00-000000-0-+00000-++0-0000+00-+-000--0-00+00-0+-+0++0-++00++0+-00-0+0++0-0++++-0++--0000--000+000	0–15; DPS only
22	0-00-++--00-++00+00-000++00--0-+-+000000-+-0+0+000+0---000--++0+--0-+0-0+-+++++0+00++0000-+0+0000+0+00-0+-0-+00-0+0-0++000+0000	0–15; DPS only
23	000++0+0-+-0-00-0+0+0++0+--00+0000-000+00+00-+++0-0+00000+0++-+00++-0+-+++--0--00-0--000+-00+-0-+0+000++---0000++-000-0+00-+000	0–15; DPS only
24	+0+-0-000++-+00000+00--0+-0000-0-000000+--0-+0+--++00+----++0+00+00+0-0-+-0-0+0+00+++000++00+0-+00--000-0++-+0--+00+000+0000++0	0–15; DPS only

[a] Note that codes indexed 9 through 13 may also be used for HRP UWB channels 4, 7, 11, and 15 (i.e., channels whose bandwidth is wider than 500 MHz) if interchannel communication is desired.

Note that the assignment of preamble codes to channels has been done to enable interchannel communication. In other words, it is possible that a device operating on a wideband channel {4,7,11,15} may communicate with a device on a channel with which it overlaps.

For a WPAN using the ternary code indexed by i, the SYNC field shall consist of N_{sync} repetitions of the symbol $\boldsymbol{S_i}$, where $\boldsymbol{S_i}$ is the code $\boldsymbol{C_i}$ spread by the delta function δ_L of length L as shown in Table 16-4. The spreading operation, where code $\boldsymbol{C_i}$ is extended to the preamble symbol period indicated in Table 16-4, is described mathematically as follows:

$$\boldsymbol{S}_i = \boldsymbol{C}_i \otimes \delta_L(n)$$

$$\delta_L(n) = \begin{cases} 1 & n = 0 \\ 0 & n = 1, 2\ldots, L-1 \end{cases}$$

where the operator $\otimes$ indicates a Kronecker product. After the Kronecker operation, a preamble symbol is formed as depicted in Figure 16-5, where $L - 1$ zeros have been inserted between each ternary element of $\boldsymbol{C_i}$.

The spreading factor L, number of chips per symbol, preamble symbol period T_{psym}, and base symbol rate for different channels are given in Table 16-4.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

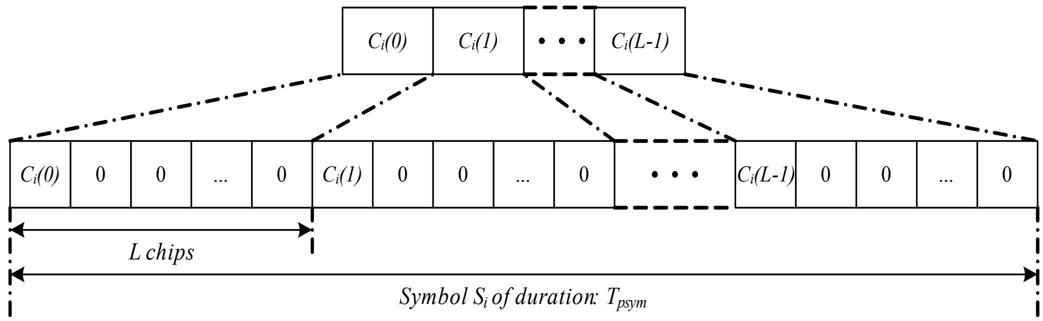


Figure 16-5—Construction of symbol S_i from code C_i

16.2.5.2 SFD field

The short SFD is used for the default and medium data rates while the long SFD is used for the optional low data rate of 110 kb/s, as shown in Figure 16-4. The short SFD shall be [0 +1 0 –1 +1 0 0 –1] spread by the preamble symbol S_i, where the leftmost bit shall be transmitted first in time. The long SFD shall be obtained by spreading the sequence [0 +1 0 –1 +1 0 0 –1 0 +1 0 –1 +1 0 0 –1 –1 0 0 +1 0 –1 0 +1 0 +1 0 0 0 –1 0 –1 0 –1 0 0 +1 0 –1 –1 0 –1 +1 0 0 0 0 +1 +1 0 0 –1 –1 –1 +1 –1 +1 +1 0 0 0 0 +1 +1] by the preamble symbol S_i. The structure of the SHR and the two possible SFDs are shown in Figure 16-4.

16.2.6 PHR field

A PHR field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 16-6.

Bits: 0–1	2–8	9	10	11–12	13–18
Data Rate	Frame Length	Ranging	Reserved	Preamble Duration	SECDED

Figure 16-6—PHR field format

The Data Rate field indicates the data rate of the received PHY Payload field. The bits shall be set, depending on the mean PRF, according to Table 16-8. Support for the 850 kB/s data rate is mandatory, all others are optional.

Table 16-8—Nominal data rates

b0 b1	Mean PRF 15.60 or 62.40 MHz	Mean PRF 3.90 MHz
00	0.11	0.11
01	0.85	0.85
10	6.81	1.70
11	27.24	6.81

The Frame Length field shall be an unsigned integer number that indicates the number of octets in the PSDU field. The Frame Length field shall be passed to the reference modulator most significant bit first.

The Ranging field shall be set to one if the current frame is an RFRAME and shall be set to zero otherwise.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Preamble Duration field represents the length (in preamble symbols) of the SYNC portion of the SHR field. The Preamble Duration field shall be set according to Table 16-9.

Table 16-9—Preamble Duration field values

Field value, b11 b12	SYNC length (symbols)
00	16
01	64
10	1024
11	4096

The Preamble Duration field is intended for use during ranging operations and is used by a receiver of the PPDU to help determine at which preamble symbol the PHY acquired and began tracking the preamble. A receiver may use the Preamble Duration field to set the value of its own preamble duration based upon the received value when communicating a ranging Ack frame.

The SECDED (single error correct, double error detect) field is a simple Hamming block code that enables the correction of a single error and the detection of two errors at the receiver. The SECDED bit values, b13, …, b18 depend on PHR bits, b0, …, b12 and are computed as follows:

b18 = XOR(b1, b0, b8, b6, b4, b3, b10, b11)

b17 = XOR(b0, b6, b5, b3, b2, b9, b10, b12)

b16 = XOR(b1, b8, b7, b3, b2, b9, b10)

b15 = XOR(b8, b7, b6, b5, b4, b9, b10)

b14 = XOR(b12, b11)

b13 = XOR(b0, b1, b2, b3, b4, b5, b6, b7, b8, b9, b10, b11, b12, b14, b15, b16, b17, b18)

16.2.7 PHY Payload field

The PHY Payload field is encoded as shown in Figure 16-7.

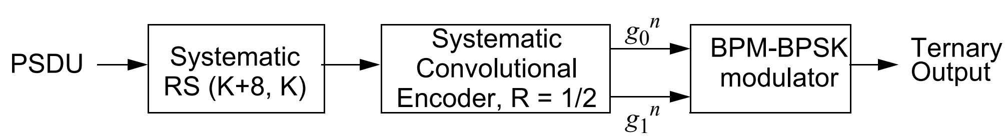


Figure 16-7—PHY Payload field encoding process

The PHY Payload field shall be formed as follows:

— Encode the PSDU using systematic Reed-Solomon block code, which adds 48 parity bits as described in 16.3.3.1.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

— Encode the output of the Reed-Solomon block code using a systematic convolutional encoder as described in 16.3.3.210.2, except in the cases where the Viterbi rate for the modulation is one, as defined in Table 16-3. In these cases, the convolutional encoder is bypassed.
— Spread and modulate the encoded block using BPM-BPSK modulation as described in 16.3.

16.3 Modulation

16.3.1 Modulation mathematical framework

The transmit waveform during the *k*th symbol interval may be expressed as follows:

$$x^{(k)}(t) = [1-2g_1^{(k)}]\sum_{n=1}^{N_{cpb}}[1-2s_{n+kN_{cpb}}]\times p(t-g_0^{(k)}T_{BPM}-h^{(k)}T_{burst}-nT_c)$$

This equation describes the time hopping with polarity scrambling, which improves the interference rejection capabilities of the HRP UWB PHY. The *k*th symbol interval carries two information bits $g_0^{(k)}$ and $g_1^{(k)} \in \{0, 1\}$. Bit $g_0^{(k)}$ is encoded into the burst position, whereas bit $g_1^{(k)}$ is encoded into the burst polarity. The sequence $s_{n+kN_{cpb}} \in \{0, 1\}, n = 0, 1, \ldots, N_{cpb}-1$ is the scrambling code used during the *k*th symbol interval, $h^{(k)} \in \{0, 1-N_{hop}-1\}$ is the *k*th burst hopping position, and $p(t)$ is the transmitted pulse shape at the antenna input. The burst hopping sequence $h^{(k)}$ provides for multiuser interference rejection. The chip scrambling sequence $s_{n+kN_{cpb}}$ provides additional interference suppression among coherent receivers as well as spectral smoothing of the transmitted waveform. Note that the equation defines the transmitted signal during the valid burst interval; at all other possible burst positions, no signal shall be transmitted. A reference modulator illustrating the BPM-BPSK modulation is shown in Figure 16-8.

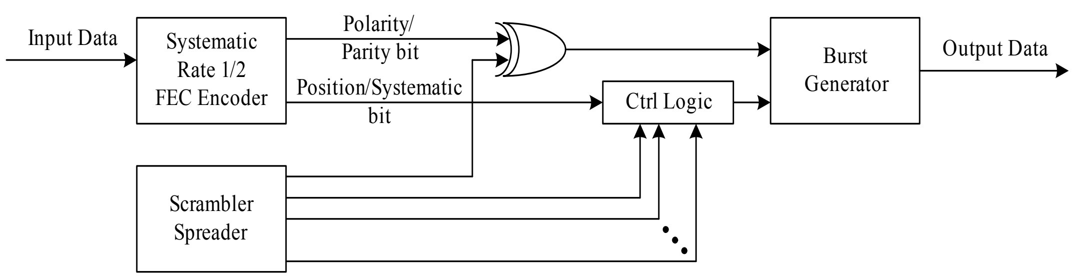


Figure 16-8—Reference modulator

Note here that the FEC encoder is not included if the modulation Viterbi rate is one, as described in 16.2.7. In this case, the FEC encoder is replaced by a multiplexer that shall apply even bits to the position input and odd bits to the polarity input.

16.3.2 Spreading

The time-varying spreader sequence $s_{n+kN_{cpb}}$ and the time-varying burst hopping sequence $h^{(k)}$ shall be generated from a common PRBS scrambler.

The polynomial for the scrambler generator shall be $g(D) = 1 + D^{14} + D^{15}$.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

where D is a single chip delay, T_c, element. This polynomial forms not only a maximal length sequence, but also it is a primitive polynomial. By the given generator polynomial, the corresponding scrambler output is generated as follows:

$$s_n = s_{n-14} \oplus s_{n-15} \qquad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$$

where ⊗ denotes modulo-2 addition.

A linear feedback shift register (LFSR) realization of the scrambler is shown in Figure 16-9. The LFSR shall be initialized upon the transmission of bit 0 of the PHR. Note that N_{cpb} may change depending on the data rate and PRF in use during the PSDU. The LFSR shall not be reset after transmission of the PHR.

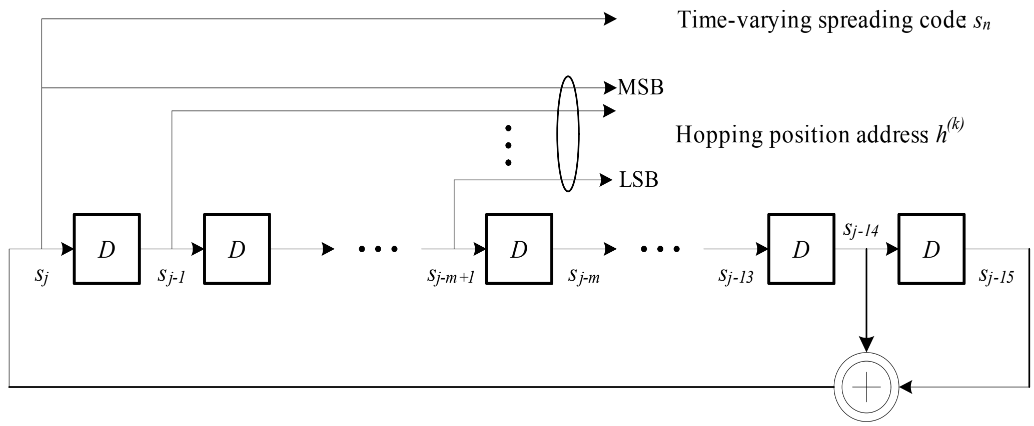


Figure 16-9—LFSR implementation of the scrambler

The initial state of the LFSR shall be determined from the preamble code by first removing all the zeros in the ternary code and then replacing all the negative ones with a zero. The first 15 bits of the resulting binary state shall be loaded into the LFSR. Table 16-10 shows an example of this procedure for preamble code, C_6 (length 31, preamble code index 6, as defined in Table 16-6). The table shows the initial state as well as the first 16 output bits from the scrambler.

Table 16-10—Example LFSR initial state for preamble code 6

Initial state ($s_{-15}, s_{-14}, \ldots, s_{-1}$)	**LFSR output: First 16 bits** $s_0, s_1, \ldots, s_{15}$ **(s_0 first in time)**
111000101101101	0010011101101110

Note that even though each device within a PAN uses the same initial LFSR setting, the communication in WPAN is asynchronous so that the hopping and scrambling provides interference rejection.

The LFSR shall be clocked at the peak PRF of 499.2 MHz as specified in Table 16-3. During the kth symbol interval, the LFSR shall be clocked N_{cpb} times, and the scrambler output shall be the kth scrambling code $s_{n+kN_{cpb}}$, $n = 0, 1, \ldots, N_{cpb} - 1$. Furthermore, the kth burst hopping position shall be computed as follows:

$$h^{(k)} = 2^0 s_{kN_{cpb}} + 2^1 s_{1+kN_{cpb}} + \cdots + 2^{m-1} s_{m-1+kN_{cpb}}$$

where $m = \log_2(N_{hop})$.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

As shown in Table 16-3, the number of hopping burst N_{hop} is always a power of two, and consequently, m is always an integer. Note that for $N_{cpb} < m$, the LFSR is clocked N_{cpb} times, not m times.

For the mandatory modes with mean data PRFs of 15.60 MHz and 3.90 MHz, the numbers of hopping bursts are 8 and 32, respectively, as indicated in Table 16-3, and consequently, m takes on the values 3 and 5, respectively. The corresponding hopping sequences are as follows:

$$h^{(k)} = s_{kN_{cpb}} + 2s_{1+kN_{cpb}} + 4s_{2+kN_{cpb}} \qquad \text{Mean PRF = 15.60 MHz}$$

$$h^{(k)} = s_{kN_{cpb}} + 2s_{1+kN_{cpb}} + 4s_{2+kN_{cpb}} + 8s_{3+kN_{cpb}} + 16s_{4+kN_{cpb}} \qquad \text{Mean PRF = 3.90 MHz}$$

16.3.3 FEC

The FEC used by the HRP UWB PHY is a concatenated code consisting of an outer Reed-Solomon systematic block code and an inner half-rate systematic convolutional code. The inner convolutional code is not necessarily enabled at all data rates; the rows of Table 16-3 that have a Viterbi rate of 1 indicate that the inner convolutional code is disabled for the PSDU part of the PHY frame.

The FEC encoding of a block of M PSDU bits, b0, b1, …, b(M–1), is shown in Figure 16-10. The Reed-Solomon encoder shall append 48 parity bits, p0, p1, …, p47, to the original block. This results in a Reed-Solomon encoded block of length M + 48. When the Viterbi rate is 0.5, a half-rate systematic convolutional encoder shall encode the Reed-Solomon encoded block into a systematic coded block of length 2M + 96 bits. The convolutional systematic bits shall be used to encode the position of the burst, whereas the convolutional parity bits shall be used to encode the polarity of the pulses within a burst. When the Viterbi rate is one, even outputs of the Reed-Solomon encoder (b0, b2, …, b(M–2), p0, p2, …, p46) shall be used to encode the position of the burst, and odd outputs (b1, b3, …, b(M–1), p1, p3, …, p47) shall be used to encode the polarity of the pulses. Note here that M is always an even number.

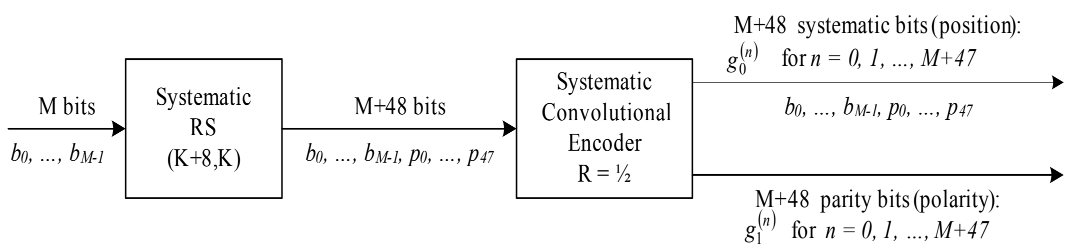


Figure 16-10—FEC encoding process

A noncoherent receiver cannot see the convolutional parity bits (parity bits), and consequently, a noncoherent receiver may use only a Reed-Solomon decoder to improve its performance. A coherent receiver may use either or both Reed-Solomon and convolutional decoding algorithms. Note here that since both the Reed-Solomon and the convolutional codes are both systematic, a receiver (either coherent or noncoherent) may be implemented without an FEC decoder. In this case, the information bits are simply recovered by demodulating the position of the burst. There will be additional parity check bits as a result of the Reed-Solomon encoding, but these may be simply ignored.

16.3.3.1 Reed-Solomon encoding

The systematic Reed-Solomon code is over the Galois field, GF(2^6), which is built as an extension of GF(2). The systematic Reed-Solomon code shall use the following generator polynomial:

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

$$g(x) = \prod_{k=1}^{8}(x+\alpha^{k}) = x^{8}+55x^{7}+61x^{6}+37x^{5}+48x^{4}+47x^{3}+20x^{2}+6x^{1}+22$$

where $\alpha = 010000$ is a root of the binary primitive polynomial $1 + x + x^6$ in GF(2^6).

In Reed-Solomon encoding $RS_6(K + 8, K)$, a block of I bits (with $K = \lceil I/6 \rceil$) is encoded into a codeword of $I + 48$ bits. The Reed-Solomon encoding procedure is performed in the following steps:

a) *Addition of dummy bits*. The block of I information bits is expanded by adding $330 - I$ dummy (zero) bits to the beginning of the block. The expanded block is denoted as $\{d_0, d_1, \ldots, d_{329}\}$ where d_0 is the first in time.

b) *Bit-to-symbol conversion*. The 330 bits $\{d_0, d_1, \ldots, d_{329}\}$ are converted into 55 Reed-Solomon symbols $\{D_0, D_1, \ldots, D_{54}\}$ having the following polynomial representation:

$$D_k = \alpha^5 d_{6k+5} + \alpha^4 d_{6k+4} + \alpha^3 d_{6k+3} + \alpha^2 d_{6k+2} + \alpha d_{6k+1} + d_{6k}, \text{ where } k = 0\text{: } 54$$

Resulting 6-bit symbols are presented as $D_k = \{d_{6k+5}, d_{6k+4}, d_{6k+3}, d_{6k+2}, d_{6k+1}, d_{6k}\}$, where d_{6k+5} is the MSB and d_{6k} is the LSB.

c) *Encoding*. The information symbols $\{D_0, D_1, \ldots, D_{54}\}$ are encoded by systematic $RS_6(63,55)$ code with output symbols $\{U_0, U_1, \ldots, U_{62}\}$ordered as follows:

$$U_k = \begin{cases} D_k & (k = 0, 1, \ldots, 54) \\ P_k & (k = 55, 56, \ldots, 62) \end{cases}$$

where P_k are parity check symbols added by $RS_6(63,55)$ encoder.

The information polynomial associated with the information symbols $\{D_0, D_1, \ldots, D_{54}\}$ is denoted as $D(x) = x^{54}D_0 + x^{53}D_1 + \ldots + xD_{53} + 54$. The parity check polynomial associated with the parity check symbols is denoted as $P(x) = x^7P_{55} + x^6P_{56} + \ldots + xP_{61} + P_{62}$. The parity check symbols are calculated as follows:

$$P(x) = \text{remainder}[x^8\, D(x) / g(x)]$$

$$U(x) = x^8\, D(x) + P(x)$$

d) *Symbol-to-bit conversion*. The output symbols $\{U_0, U_1, \ldots, U_{62}\}$ are converted into binary form with LSB coming out first, resulting in a block of 378 bits $\{u_0, u_1, \ldots, u_{377}\}$.

e) *Removal of dummy bits*. The $330 - I$ dummy bits added in the first step are removed. Only the last $I + 48$ bits are transmitted, i.e., $\{u_{330-I}, u_{331-I}, \ldots, u_{377}\}$ with u_{330-I} being first in time.

16.3.3.2 Systematic convolutional encoding

The inner convolutional encoder shall use the rate $R = ½$ code with generator polynomials $g_0 = [010]_2$ and $g_1 = [101]_2$ as shown in Figure 16-11. Upon transmission of each PPDU, the encoder shall be initialized to the all zero state. Additionally, the encoder shall be returned to the all zero state by appending two zero bits to the PPDU. Note that since the generator polynomials are systematic, they are also noncatastrophic.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

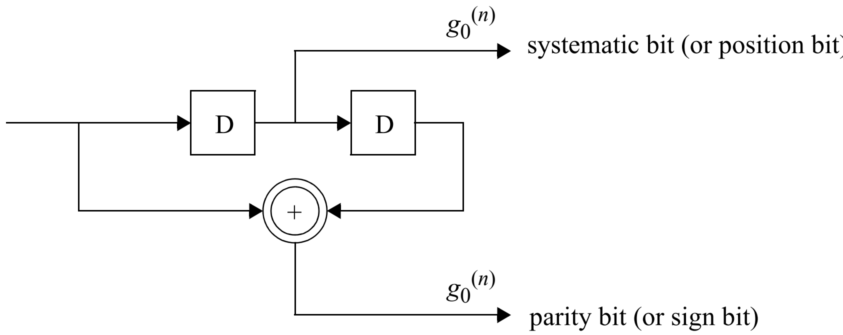


Figure 16-11—Systematic convolutional encoder

16.4 RF requirements

16.4.1 Operating frequency bands

The set of operating frequency bands is defined in Table 16-11. For the sub-gigahertz operation, channel 0 is defined as the mandatory channel; for the low-band operation, channel 3 is the mandatory channel; and for the high-band operation, channel 9 is the mandatory channel.

Table 16-11—HRP UWB PHY band allocation

Band group[a] (decimal)	Channel number (decimal)	Center frequency, f_c (MHz)	Band width (MHz)	Mandatory/Optional
0	0	499.2	499.2	Mandatory below 1 GHz
1	1	3494.4	499.2	Optional
	2	3993.6	499.2	Optional
	3	4492.8	499.2	Mandatory in low band
	4	3993.6	1331.2	Optional
2	5	6489.6	499.2	Optional
	6	6988.8	499.2	Optional
	7	6489.6	1081.6	Optional
	8	7488.0	499.2	Optional
	9	7987.2	499.2	Mandatory in high band
	10	8486.4	499.2	Optional
	11	7987.2	1331.2	Optional
	12	8985.6	499.2	Optional
	13	9484.8	499.2	Optional
	14	9984.0	499.2	Optional
	15	9484.8	1354.97	Optional

[a] Note that bands indicate a sequence of adjacent HRP UWB center frequencies: band 0 is the sub-gigahertz channel, band 1 has the low-band HRP UWB channels, and band 2 has the high-band channels.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Figure 16-12 is a graphical representation of the data presented in Table 16-11. Each HRP UWB PHY channel is shown as a heavy black line centered on the channel's center frequency. The length of the lines depicts the channel bandwidth.

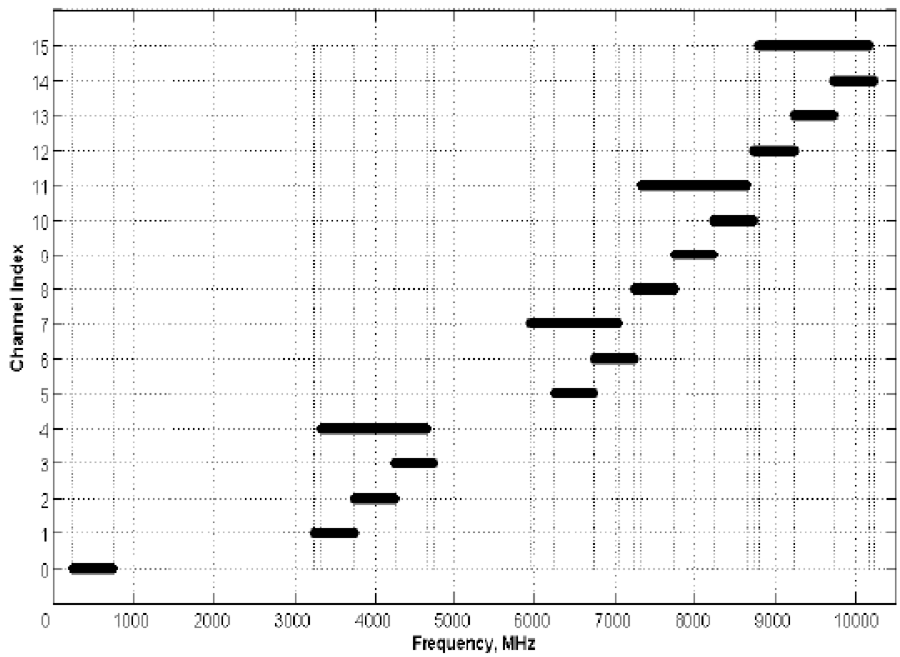


Figure 16-12—HRP UWB PHY band plan

16.4.2 Channel assignments

A total of 32 complex channels are assigned for operation, two channels in each of the 16 defined operating frequency bands. A compliant implementation shall support at least the two channels for one of the mandatory bands.

16.4.3 Regulatory compliance

The maximum allowable output PSD shall be in accordance with practices specified by the appropriate regulatory bodies.

16.4.4 Operating temperature range

A conformant implementation shall meet all of the specifications in this standard for ambient temperatures from 0 °C to 40 °C.

16.4.5 Baseband impulse response

The transmitted pulse shape $p(t)$ shall be constrained by the shape of its cross-correlation function with a standard reference pulse, $r(t)$. The normalized cross-correlation between two waveforms is defined as follows:

$$\phi(\tau) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{E_r E_p}} \mathrm{Re} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} r(t) p^*(t+\tau) dt$$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

where E_r and E_p are the energies of $r(t)$ and $p(t)$, respectively. The reference $r(t)$ pulse used in the calculation of $|\phi(\tau)|$ is a root raised cosine pulse with a roll-off factor of $\beta = 0.5$. Mathematically this is as follows:

$$r(t) = \frac{4\beta}{\pi\sqrt{T_p}} \frac{\cos[(1+\beta)\pi t/T_p] + \dfrac{\sin[(1-\beta)\pi t/T_p]}{4\beta(t/T_p)}}{1-(4\beta t/T_p)^2}$$

where T_p is the inverse of the chip frequency. Table 16-12 shows the required pulse duration for each channel.

Table 16-12—Required reference pulse durations in each channel

Channel number	Pulse duration, T_p (ns)	Main lobe width, T_w (ns)
{0:3, 5:6, 8:10, 12:14}	2.00	0.5
7	0.92	0.2
{4, 11}	0.75	0.2
15	0.74	0.2

In order for an HRP UWB PHY transmitter to be compliant with this standard, the transmitted pulse $p(t)$ shall have a magnitude of the cross-correlation function $|\phi(\tau)|$ whose main lobe is greater than or equal to 0.8 for a duration of at least T_w, as defined in Table 16-12, and any sidelobe shall be no greater than 0.3. For the purposes of testing a pulse for compliance, the following are defined: Let $|\phi(\tau)|$ be the magnitude of the cross-correlation of $p(t)$ and $r(t)$, and let τ_i, for $i = 1,2,...$, be a set of critical points as follows:

$$\frac{d}{d\tau}|\phi(\tau)|\Big|_{\tau=\tau_i} = 0$$

The maximum of the function occurs at one of these critical points, τ_{max}, where $|\phi(\tau_{max})| \geq |\phi(\tau)|$ for all values of τ. The requirement thus states that for some continuous set of values that contain the point τ_{max}, the function $|\phi(\tau)|$ is greater than 0.8. In addition, the second constraint on the value of sidelobes may be stated mathematically as $|\phi(\tau_i)| \leq 0.3$ for all τ_i.

Figure 16-13 shows an example HRP UWB-compliant pulse, $p(t)$ (left plot), along with the root raised cosine reference pulse $r(t)$ (middle plot) with T_p = 2.0 ns and the magnitude of the cross-correlation $|\phi(\tau)|$ (right plot). The pulse $p(t)$ is an 8 order butterworth pulse with a 3 dB bandwidth of 500 MHz. Figure 16-13 is intended to show that this example pulse meets the requirements for compliance. Specifically, the main lobe is above 0.8 for nearly 1 ns, and no sidelobe is greater than 0.3 (in this case, the largest sidelobe peak is 0.2). The pulse $p(t)$ is a compliant pulse for channels {0:3, 5:6, 8:10, 12:14}.

Note that it is not the intention of this standard to imply that pulse shaping only occurs at baseband, but rather that the measurements described here occur on the pulse envelope if shaping is done at passband.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

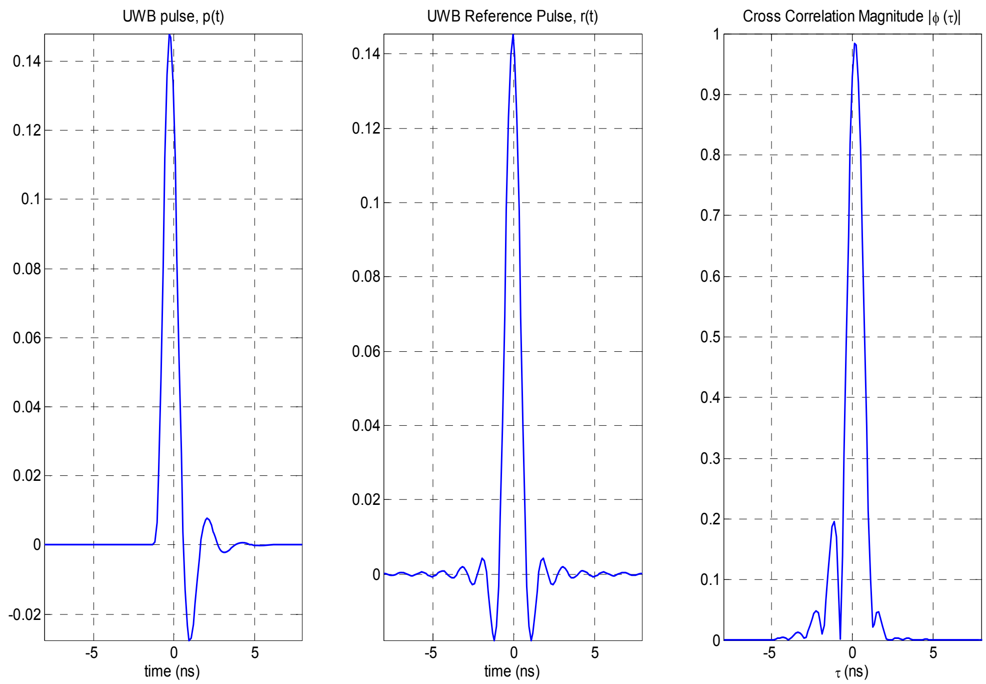


Figure 16-13—Compliant pulse example

16.4.6 Transmit PSD mask

The transmitted spectrum shall be less than –10 dB relative to the maximum spectral density of the signal for $0.65/T_p < |f - f_c| < 0.8/T_p$ and –18 dB for $|f - f_c| > 0.8/T_p$. For example, the transmit spectrum mask for channel 4 is shown in Figure 16-14. The measurements shall be made using a 1 MHz resolution bandwidth and a 1 kHz video bandwidth.

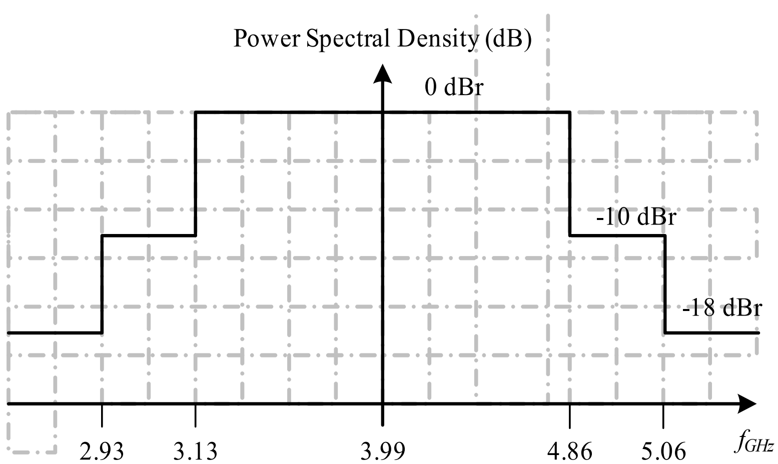


Figure 16-14—Transmit spectrum mask for band 4

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

16.4.7 Chip rate clock and chip carrier alignment

An HRP UWB transmitter shall be capable of chipping at the peak PRF given in Table 16-3 with an accuracy of $\pm 20 \times 10^{-6}$. In addition, for each HRP UWB PHY channel, the center of transmitted energy shall be within the values listed in Table 16-11 also with an accuracy of $\pm 20 \times 10^{-6}$. The measurements shall be made using a 1 MHz resolution bandwidth and a 1 kHz video bandwidth.

16.4.8 TX-to-RX turnaround time

The HRP UWB PHY shall have a TX-to-RX turnaround time as defined in 10.2.1.

16.4.9 RX-to-TX turnaround time

The HRP UWB PHY shall have a TX-to-RX turnaround time as defined in 10.2.2.

16.4.10 Transmit center frequency tolerance

The HRP UWB PHY transmit center frequency tolerance shall be $\pm 20 \times 10^{-6}$. The tolerance on the chipping clock given in 16.4.7 takes precedence over this requirement.

16.4.11 Receiver maximum input level of desired signal

The HRP UWB PHY shall have a receiver maximum input level greater than or equal to -45 dBm/MHz, using the measurement defined in 10.2.4.

16.4.12 Receiver ED

The HRP UWB PHY shall provide the receiver ED measurement as described in 10.2.5. The averaging period for the receiver ED measurement is implementation specific.

The ED measurement for each channel may be performed as a series of measurements, each made at a fraction of the total channel bandwidth, in which case *phyHrpUwbScanBinsPerChannel* specifies the number of frequency increments used. When this value is greater than one, the ED result reported using the MLME-SCAN.confirm primitive shall be a list of ED measurements, one for each frequency increment measurement. An implementation may provide multiple ED measurements, for example, to provide information to a higher layer that detects non-HRP UWB services for the purpose of active detect and avoid (DAA) procedures as may be required in some environments.

16.4.13 LQI

The HRP UWB PHY shall provide the LQI measurement as described in 10.2.6.

16.4.14 CCA

For CCA mode 6, the CCA detection time for the HRP UWB PHY shall be equal to 40 mandatory symbol periods, which includes at least 8 (multiplexed) preamble symbols, as described in 16.6.

16.5 HRP UWB PHY optional pulse shapes

The HRP UWB PHY offers the capability to transmit several optional pulse types. The use of these options is controlled by the PAN coordinator and shall be limited to the nonbeacon frames. In other words, beacon frames shall be transmitted using the mandatory pulse shape as defined in 16.4.5, but all other frames may be transmitted using the optional pulse shapes if all devices in the PAN are capable of supporting the

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

optional pulse shapes. PANs that use the optional pulse shapes shall indicate the use of a specific option via the *phyHrpUwbCurrentPulseShape* PIB attribute. Devices choosing to join a PAN using one of the optional pulse shapes should make their decision based on the value of *phyHrpUwbCurrentPulseShape* that is reported during the scan procedure.

16.5.1 HRP UWB PHY optional chirp on UWB (CoU) pulses

The purpose of CoU pulses is to provide an additional dimension (besides frequency and DS codes) to support simultaneously operating piconets. Because CoU is an optional mode of pulse shapes in addition to the mandatory pulse shape, all modulation specifications shall be the same as they are for the mandatory pulse shape except those defined for the CoU pulses when a device implements the CoU option.

A mathematical representation of a CoU pulse at baseband is as shown below:

$$p_{CoU}(t) = \begin{cases} p(t)\exp\left(-j\dfrac{\pi\beta t^2}{2}\right) & -\dfrac{T}{2} \le t \le \dfrac{T}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

where

$p(t)$	denotes a mandatory pulse shape that satisfies constraints in 16.4.5
$\beta = B/T$	is the chirping rate (chirping slope). Moreover, B and T are the bandwidth and time duration of the CoU pulse, respectively.

A graphical example of CoU pulse is shown in Figure 16-15.

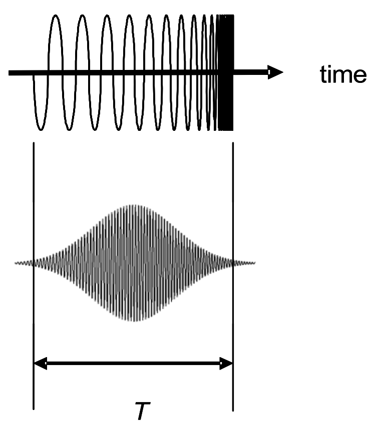


Figure 16-15—Graphical view of a CoU pulse

The CoU is an operation added to the mandatory pulse. When a CoU pulse is transmitted, the receiver needs to perform a matched de-chirp operation to demodulate the signal.

The optional CoU pulses are admitted with two slopes per each DS code per each 500 MHz bandwidth. The chirp slopes are denoted as CCh.1 and CCh.2. Within channels 4, 7, 11, and 15, there are chirp slopes admitted per each DS code. These are denoted as CCh.3 through CCh.6. The values for each chirp slope are listed in Table 16-13.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 16-13—CoU channel slopes

CoU number	β (slopes)
CCh.1	500 MHz/2.5 ns
CCh.2	–500 MHz/2.5 ns
CCh.3	1 GHz/5 ns
CCh.4	–1 GHz/5 ns
CCh.5	1 GHz/10 ns
CCh.6	–1 GHz/10 ns

16.5.2 HRP UWB PHY optional continuous spectrum (CS) pulses

This subclause specifies optional CS pulses. A CS pulse is obtained by passing the mandatory pulse through an all-passing CS filter. The CS filter introduces controlled group delays to the input pulse. The purpose of the optional CS pulses is to reduce the interference level between different PANs.

Since CS is an optional mode of pulse shapes in addition to the mandatory pulse shape, all modulation specifications shall be the same as they are for the mandatory pulse shape except those defined for the CS pulses when a device implements the CS option.

An optional CS pulse $p_{CS}(t)$ is defined as shown below:

$$p_{CS}(t) = \int P(f) \exp[-j2\pi f(t - (\tau \times f))]df$$

where

τ represents the group delay (s/Hz)
$P(f)$ represents the Fourier transform of $p(t)$, where $p(t)$ is any pulse shape that meets the requirements defined in 16.4.5

The Fourier transform is defined as shown below:

$$P(f) = \int p(t) \exp[-j2\pi ft]dt$$

The CS filtering is an operation added to the mandatory pulse. When a CS pulse is transmitted, the receiver needs to perform an inverse CS filtering operation to demodulate the signal.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Some examples of CS pulses are shown in Figure 16-16.

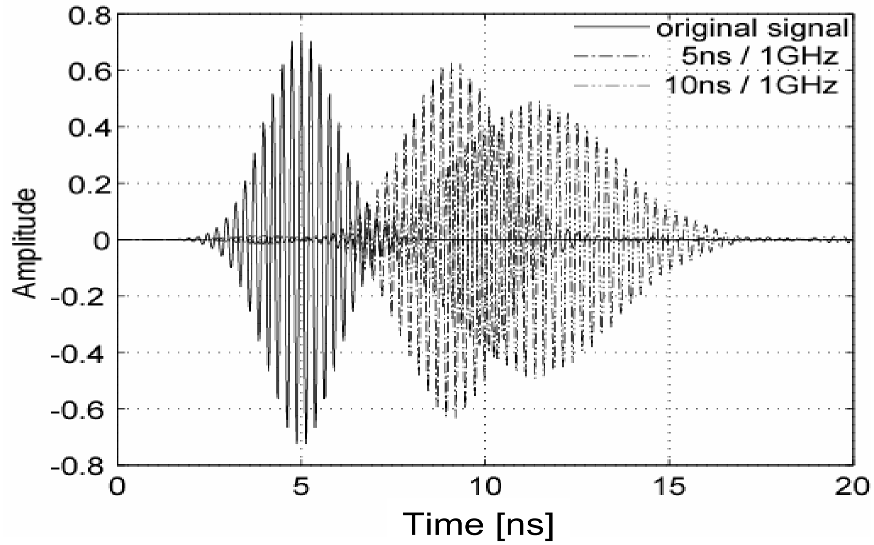


Figure 16-16—Examples of CS pulses

Each 500 MHz band shall use No.1 or No.2 pulses, while each 1.5 GHz band shall use one of No.3 through No.6 pulses, as defined in Table 16-14.

Table 16-14—CS group delays

CS pulse number	τ (Group delay)
No.1	2 ns/500 MHz
No.2	–2 ns/500 MHz
No.3	5 ns/1 GHz
No.4	–5 ns/1 GHz
No.5	10 ns/1 GHz
No.6	–10 ns/1 GHz

16.5.3 HRP UWB PHY linear combination of pulses (LCP)

LCP is an optional pulse shape that can be used in regulatory regions where DAA schemes are required by regulators. Using LCP pulses enables a PAN to limit interference to incumbent wireless systems. The pulse shape for LCP is denoted $p_{LCP}(t)$ and is the sum of N weighted and delayed pulses $p(t)$ as follows:

$$p_{LCP}(t) = \sum_{i=1}^{N} a_i p(t - \tau_i)$$

where $p(t)$ is any pulse that satisfies the cross-correlation constraints outlined in 16.4.5.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The number of pulses N that can be combined is set to four (although smaller number of pulses can be realized by setting the amplitudes of some of the pulses to zero). The values of the pulse delays shall be limited to $0 \leq \tau_i \leq 4$ ns. The value of τ_1 is assumed to be zero, and thus, the remaining delays are considered as relative delay time with respect to the nominal pulse location. The values for these delays are stored as the PIB values *phyHrpUwbLcpDelay2*, *phyHrpUwbLcpDelay3*, and *phyHrpUwbLcpDelay4*. The values for the amplitudes a_i are stored as the PIB values *phyHrpUwbLcpweight1* through *phyHrpUwbLcpDelay4*, as defined in Table 11-2. The amplitudes, a_i, shall be selected so that the energy in the combined pulse is the same as the energy in the mandatory pulse. The numerical values of the delays and amplitudes of the pulses shall be transmitted following the general framework of optional pulse shapes, as defined in 16.5. The method to compute the weights and delay values is outside the scope of this standard.

16.6 Extended preamble for optional CCA mode 6

The PHY may provide the capability to perform the optional CCA mode 6, as defined in 10.2.7. This CCA mode shall be supported by the modified frame structure where preamble symbols are multiplexed with the data symbols in the PHR field and the PHY Payload field of a frame.

Figure 16-17 shows the modified frame structure with multiplexed preamble symbols. One preamble symbol is inserted after each PHR and PHY Payload segment. The inserted preamble symbol shall be the same as the symbol used in the SHR, as described in 16.2.5.1, of the same frame. The time interval between two neighboring inserted preamble symbols, which is also the time duration of each PHR or PHY Payload segment, is independent of the current data rate. The PIB attribute *phyHrpUwbInsertedPreambleInterval* defines a constant time interval based on the data rate of 850 kb/s for all operation bands. The data rate of 850 kb/s is listed in Table 16-8 with the data rate field index of 01. The value of the PIB attribute *phyHrpUwbInsertedPreambleInterval* is fixed to four. Distinguished from the CCA in narrowband systems, which is used to detect the energy of carrier waveforms, CCA mode 6 is based on the frame with multiplexed preamble is used to detect the presence of preamble symbols. The processing gain can be enhanced by exploiting the spreading characteristics and repetition of the preamble symbols.

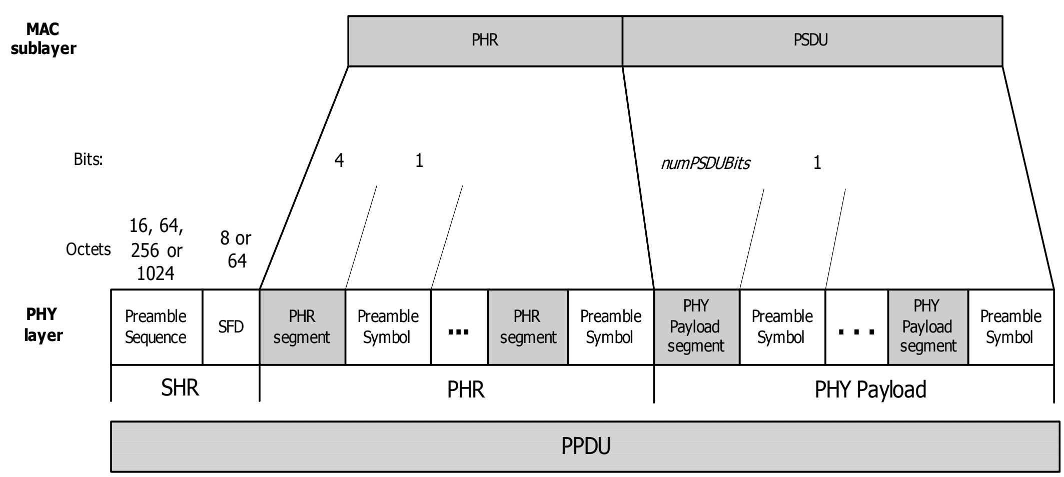


Figure 16-17—Illustration of the modified frame structure with multiplexed preamble

The PAN coordinator of a PAN shall coordinate all nodes in the PAN before the CCA mode 6 is enabled. The modified frame structure with multiplexed preamble shall be applied to a Data frame or a MAC Command frame in the CAP only when the CCA mode 6 is enabled.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The CCA detection time shall be equivalent to 40 data symbol periods, T_{dsym}, for a nominal 850 kb/s, or equivalently, at least 8 (multiplexed) preamble symbols should be captured in the CCA detection time.

In addition to enabling the CCA mode 6, the multiplexed preamble symbols can help to improve ranging accuracy or assist data demodulation. This function is similar to that of the pilot tone in narrowband systems.

16.7 Ranging

Support for ranging is optional. A PHY that supports ranging is called a ranging-capable device (RDEV), and it has optional and mandatory capabilities. An RDEV shall support the ranging counter described in 16.7.1 and the FoM described in 16.7.3. An RDEV may support optional crystal characterization described in 16.7.2 and the optional DPS, as describe in “Applications of IEEE Std 802.15.4” [B3].

RDEVs produce results, called timestamp reports, that are used by higher layers to compute the ranges between devices. An RDEV timestamp report shall consist of a 4-octet ranging counter start value, 4-octet ranging counter stop value, 4-octet ranging tracking interval, 3-octet ranging tracking offset, and 1-octet ranging FoM. These numbers are always reported together in the same primitive and remain together for their entire processing lifetime. It is not acceptable to have any pipelining of the individual results where (for example) in a timestamp report the ranging tracking offset and ranging tracking interval might be associated with the ranging counter value of the previous timestamp report and the ranging FoM might be associated with the ranging counter value of the timestamp report before that.

16.7.1 Ranging counter

The ranging counter supported by an RDEV is a set of behavioral properties and capabilities of the RDEV that produce ranging counter values. A ranging counter value is a 32-bit unsigned integer. The LSB of the counter value shall represent 1/128 of a chip time at the mandatory chipping rate of 499.2 MHz.

16.7.2 Crystal characterization

An RDEV that implements optional crystal characterization shall produce a tracking offset value and a tracking interval value for every timestamp report that is produced. The tracking offset and the tracking interval are computed from measurements taken during an interval that includes the interval bounded by the ranging counter start value and the ranging counter stop value. Note that crystal characterization is relevant only if it is characterizing the crystal that affects the ranging counter.

16.7.2.1 Ranging tracking offset

The HRP UWB ranging tracking offset is a signed magnitude integer. The integer magnitude part of the number shall be 19 bits. The LSB of the integer represents a “part.” The sign bit of the signed magnitude integer shall be equal to zero when the oscillator at the transmitter is a higher frequency than the oscillator at the receiver, and the sign bit shall be 1 when the oscillator at the receiver is a higher frequency than the transmitter. The value of the integer shall be a number that represents the difference in frequency between the receiver’s oscillator and the transmitter’s oscillator after the tracking offset integer is divided by the ranging tracking interval integer of 16.7.2.2. For example, if the difference between the oscillators is 10×10^{-6}, then an acceptable value of the ranging tracking offset would be 10 when the ranging tracking interval is 1 million. Another acceptable value for the ranging tracking offset is 15 when the ranging tracking interval is 1.5 million.

16.7.2.2 Ranging tracking interval

The HRP UWB ranging tracking interval shall be a 32-bit unsigned integer. The LSB of the ranging tracking interval represents a “part” that shall be exactly equal to the “part” in the LSB of the ranging tracking offset

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

of 16.7.2.1. The size of the "part" is a time period that shall be smaller than or equal to a chip time at the mandatory chipping rate of 499.2 MHz. Use of smaller "parts" for the LSB is encouraged, as described in "Applications of IEEE Std 802.15.4" [B3].

16.7.3 Ranging FoM

An RDEV shall produce a ranging FoM for every ranging counter value that is produced. The HRP UWB ranging FoM shall be formatted as shown in Figure 16-18. The FoM Confidence Level field is defined in Table 16-15. The confidence level is the probability that the leading edge of the pulse will arrive during the confidence interval. The FoM Confidence Interval field is defined in Table 16-16. The confidence interval width in Table 16-16 is the entire interval width, not a plus or minus number. The FoM Confidence Interval Scaling Factor field is defined in Table 16-17. Thus, the overall confidence interval is obtained according to the formula *overall confidence interval* = *confidence interval* × *confidence interval scaling field*. The MSB of the FoM octet is the extension bit. When the extension bit is set to zero, the fields have the normal meanings given in Table 16-15, Table 16-16, and Table 16-17. When the extension bit is 1, the FoM has the meaning given in Table 16-18.

Bit 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Extension	Confidence Interval Scaling Factor field		Confidence Interval field		Confidence Level field		

Figure 16-18—Ranging FoM

Table 16-15—Confidence Level field

Confidence level	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0
No FoM	0	0	0
20%	0	0	1
55%	0	1	0
75%	0	1	1
85%	1	0	0
92%	1	0	1
97%	1	1	0
99%	1	1	1

Table 16-16—Confidence Interval field

Confidence interval	Bit 4	Bit 3
100 ps	0	0
300 ps	0	1
1 ns	1	0
3 ns	1	1

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 16-17—Confidence Interval Scaling Factor field

Confidence interval scaling factor	Bit 6	Bit 5
Confidence interval × 1/2	0	0
Confidence interval × 1	0	1
Confidence interval × 2	1	0
Confidence interval × 4	1	1

Table 16-18—FoM values with the extension bit set

	Bit 7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
The timestamp report is uncorrected	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Reserved	1	Any nonzero value						

The FoM characterizes the accuracy of the PHY estimate of the arrival time of the RMARKER at the antenna. The FoM within a timestamp report shall characterize the accuracy of the timer counter value in the same timestamp report.

The FoM value of 0x80 is specifically used to signal the higher layer that the RangingCounterStart value is not correct and the higher layer should use the sounding primitives. The FoM value of 0x00 is special and means “no FoM.” No FoM means that there simply is no information about the quality of a ranging measurement. That is different from reporting a very low quality measurement, but it is known that the measurement cannot be trusted. The FoM value 0x00 is not used to report untrustworthy measurements. The most untrustworthy measurement reportable is 0x79.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

17. GFSK PHY

17.1 PPDU formats

The GFSK PHY shall use the PPDU format described in 12.1, except that the Preamble field is 32 symbols (4 octets) and the bits in each octet shall be “01010101”.

17.2 Modulation

17.2.1 GFSK PHY data rates

The data rate of the GFSK PHY shall be 100 kb/s.

17.2.2 Reference modulator diagram

The functional block diagram in Figure 17-1 is provided as a reference for specifying the GFSK PHY modulation and spreading functions. Each bit in the PPDU shall be processed through the data whitening and modulation functions in octet-wise order, beginning with the Preamble field and ending with the last octet of the PSDU. Within each octet, the LSB, b0, is processed first and the MSB, b7, is processed last.

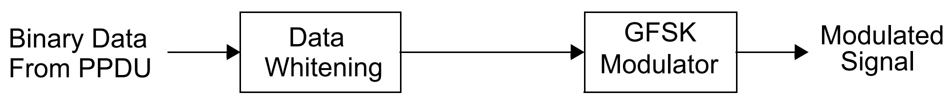


Figure 17-1—GFSK modulation and data whitening functions

17.2.3 Data whitening

Data whitening shall be the exclusive OR of the PHY Payload field with the PN9 sequence. This shall be performed by the transmitter and is as follows:

$$E_n = R_n \oplus \mathrm{PN9}_n$$

where

R_n is the data bit being whitened
E_n is the whitened bit
$\mathrm{PN9}_n$ is the PN9 sequence bit

For each packet transmitted with data whitening, R_0 is the first bit of the PSDU and index n increments for subsequent bits of the PSDU. The receiver decodes the scrambled data in the following way:

$$R_n = RE_n \oplus \mathrm{PN9}_n$$

where

R_n is the PSDU bit after de-whitening
RE_n is the PSDU bit at the output of the demodulator

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The PN generator is defined by the schematic in Figure 17-2.

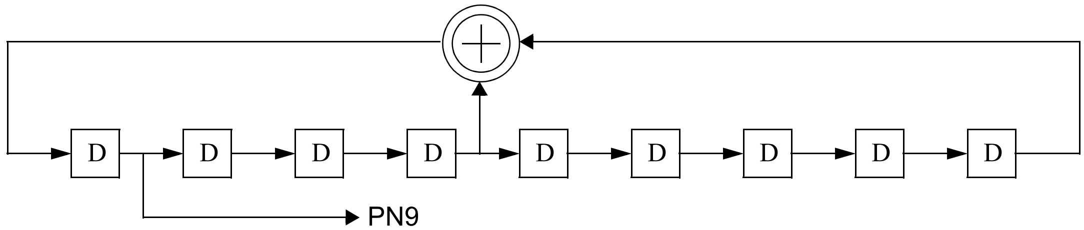


Figure 17-2—Schematic of the PN generator

The seed in the PN9 shall be all ones: “1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1”. The PN9 shall be reinitialized to the seed after each packet (either transmit or receive).

The PN9 generator is clocked using the seed as the starting point and enabled after the first clock cycle. For example, the first 30 bits out of the PN9, once it is enabled, would be as follows:

$$PN9_n = 0_0\ 0_1\ 0_2\ 0_3\ 1_4\ 1_5\ 1_6\ 1_7\ 0_8\ 1_9\ 1_{10}\ 1_{11}\ 0_{12}\ 0_{13}\ 0_{14}\ 0_{15}\ 1_{16}\ 0_{17}\ 1_{18}\ 1_{19}\ 0_{20}\ 0_{21}\ 1_{22}\ 1_{23}\ 0_{24}$$

$$1_{25}\ 1_{26}\ 0_{27}\ 1_{28}\ 1_{29}$$

17.2.4 GFSK modulation

The bit sequences are modulated onto the carrier using GFSK with a modulation index of one where the Gaussian filter BT is 0.5, where a bit value of one is transmitted by shifting the frequency higher than the channel center frequency and a bit value of zero is transmitted by shifting the frequency lower than the current channel center frequency.

The nominal frequency deviation shall be 50 kHz. The deviation shall be between 70% and 130% of the nominal deviation. For the sequence 0101, the deviation shall be between 70% and 110% of the nominal deviation. for the sequence 00001111, the deviation shall be between 80% and 130% of the nominal deviation.

17.3 GFSK PHY RF requirements

17.3.1 Operating frequency range

The GFSK PHY operates in the 920.8–928 MHz frequency band.

17.3.2 Transmit PSD mask

The PSD mask for the GFSK PHY is specified as follows:

— The average power measured within ± 100 kHz of the frequency 300 kHz apart from the center frequency shall be –26 dBm or less for a 1 mW device or –18 dBm or less for a 10 mW device.

— The average power measured with a 100 kHz resolution bandwidth in the frequency band from 920 MHz to 928 MHz except for the frequency band within ± 300 kHz of the carrier frequency, f_c, shall be less than –39 dBm

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

17.3.3 Symbol rate

The GFSK PHY symbol rate shall be 100 ksymbol/s with an accuracy of $\pm 40 \times 10^{-6}$.

17.3.4 Receiver sensitivity

Under the conditions specified in 10.1.7, a compliant GFSK PHY device shall be capable of achieving a sensitivity of –85 dBm or better.

17.3.5 Receiver interference rejection

The minimum receiver interference rejection levels are given in Table 17-1. The adjacent channel is one on either side of the desired channel that is closest in frequency to the desired channel, and the alternate channel is one more removed from the adjacent channel. For example, when channel 15 is the desired channel, channel 14 and channel 6 are the adjacent channels, and channel 13 and channel 17 are the alternate channels.

Table 17-1—Minimum receiver interference rejection requirements for GFSK PHY

Adjacent channel rejection	Alternate channel rejection
0 dB	24 dB

The adjacent channel rejection shall be measured as follows: the desired signal shall be a compliant GFSK PHY signal, as defined by 17.2, of pseudo-random data. The desired signal is input to the receiver at a level 3 dB greater than the maximum allowed receiver sensitivity given in 17.3.4.

In either the adjacent or the alternate channel, a compliant signal, as defined by 17.2, is input at the level specified in Table 17-1 relative to the desired signal. The test shall be performed for only one interfering signal at a time. The receiver shall meet the error rate criteria defined in 10.1.7 under these conditions.

17.3.6 TX-to-RX turnaround time

The GFSK PHY shall have a TX-to-RX turnaround time as defined in 10.2.1.

17.3.7 RX-to-TX turnaround time

The GFSK PHY shall have an RX-to-TX turnaround time as defined in 10.2.2.

17.3.8 Transmit center frequency tolerance

The GFSK PHY transmit center frequency tolerance shall be $\pm 40 \times 10^{-6}$ maximum.

17.3.9 Transmit power

The GFSK PHY shall be capable of transmitting at a power level of at least –3 dBm.

17.3.10 Receiver maximum input level of desired signal

The GFSK PHY shall have a receiver maximum input level greater than or equal to –20 dBm using the measurement defined in 10.2.4.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

17.3.11 Receiver ED

The GFSK PHY shall provide the receiver ED measurement as described in 10.2.5.

17.3.12 LQI

The GFSK PHY shall provide the LQI measurement as described in 10.2.6.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

18. MSK PHY

18.1 PPDU formats

The MSK PHY shall use the PPDU formats described in 12.1, except that the Preamble field is 32 symbols (4 octets) and the bits in each octet shall be "10101010."

18.2 Data rate

The default data rate of the MSK PHY shall be 250 kb/s. Additional optional data rates for the 433 MHz band are shown in Table 18-1.

Table 18-1—Data rates for MSK PHY

DataRate as used in MCPS-DATA primitives	Data rate (kb/s)
1	31.25
2	100
3	250

The optional data rates for the 433 MHz band are not available on all channels. Table 18-2 shows the allowed data rates for the 433 MHz channels and their associated channel numbers.

Table 18-2—Data rate channel map

Data rate (kb/s)	Channel
31.25	0 to 14
100	1, 4, 7, 10, 13
250	2, 7, 12

18.3 SFD for the MSK PHY

The SFD for the MSK PHY shall be contain the value given in Table 18-3. The SFD is transmitted starting from the leftmost bit (b0).

Table 18-3—Value of the SFD field for the MSK PHY

SFD (b0–b15)
1110 0110 1101 0000

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

18.4 MSK modulation

18.4.1 Reference modulator diagram

The functional block diagram in Figure 18-1 is provided as a reference for specifying the MSK PHY modulation. It should be noted the preamble is not included in the whitening scheme.

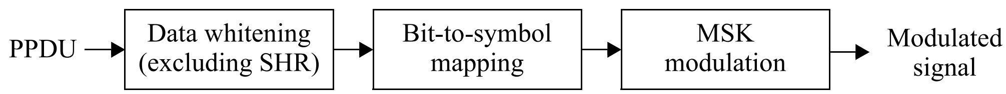


Figure 18-1—MSK functional block diagram

18.4.2 Data whitening

Data whitening for the MSK PHY shall use the procedure described in 17.2.3.

18.4.3 Bit-to-symbol mapping

The bit rate and symbol rate are equal. The mapping of bits to frequency shall be as described in Table 18-4.

Table 18-4—Bit to frequency mapping

Bit	Frequency
0	$f_c - \Delta f$
1	$f_c + \Delta f$

In Table 18-4, f_c is the channel center frequency as defined in Table 10-7 and Table 10-8 and Δf is as follows:

$$\Delta f = \frac{1}{4 \times Ts}$$

where Ts is the symbol rate.

18.4.4 Signal modulation

The MSK modulation shall be FSK with modulation index h = 0.5. This modulation index corresponds to minimum frequency spacing that allows two FSK signals to be coherently orthogonal.

As shown in Figure 18-2, MSK modulation has two possible frequencies over any symbol interval, which differs in frequency by half the bit rate as follows:

$$f_2 - f_1 = ½\ Tb$$

This is the smallest frequency difference that allows two signals to be orthogonal.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

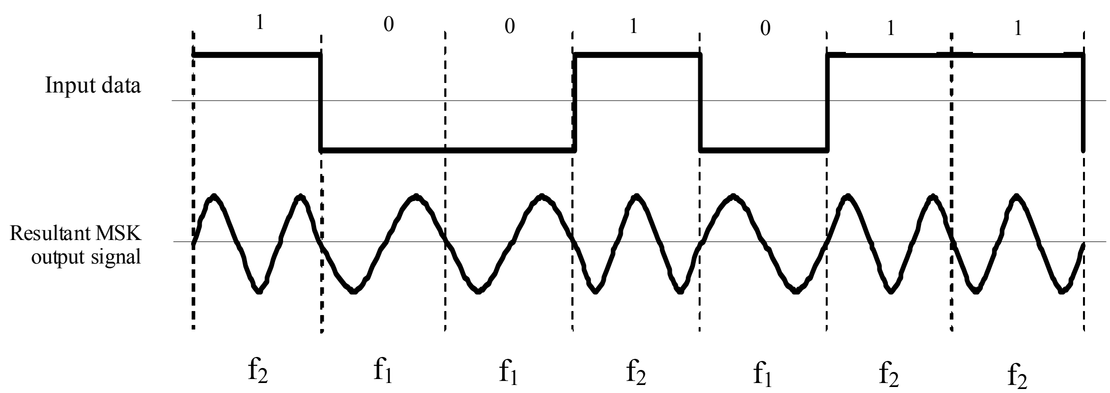


Figure 18-2—Example signal using MSK modulation in the time domain

18.5 MSK PHY requirements

18.5.1 Operating frequency range

The MSK PHY specifies the following two optional frequency bands:

— 433.05 MHz to 434.79 MHz
— 2400 MHz to 2483 MHz

18.5.2 Transmit PSD mask

The PSD mask for the MSK PHY is shown in Table 18-5.

The transmitted spectral products shall be less than the limits specified in Table 18-5. For both relative and absolute limits, average spectral power shall be measured using a 100 kHz resolution bandwidth. For the relative limit, the reference level shall be the highest average spectral power measured within ± 600 kHz, ± 300 kHz, or ± 100 kHz of the carrier frequency (respective to data rate).

Table 18-5—MSK PHY transmit PSD limit

Frequency band	Data rate	Frequency	Relative limit	Absolute limit
433 MHz	31.25 ksymbol/s	$\lvert f-f_c \rvert$ > 200 kHz	–20 dB	–20 dBm
	100 ksymbol/s	$\lvert f-f_c \rvert$ > 600 kHz	–20 dB	–20 dBm
	250 ksymbol/s	$\lvert f-f_c \rvert$ > 1.2 MHz	–20 dB	–20 dBm
2450 MHz	250 ksymbol/s	$\lvert f-f_c \rvert$ > 1.2 MHz	–20 dB	–20 dBm

18.5.3 Symbol rate

Transmission of the symbol rate for 433 MHz band shall be 31.25 ksymbol/s, 100 ksymbol/s, or 250 ksymbol/s with an accuracy of $\pm 300 \times 10^{-6}$.

The transmitted symbol rate for 2450 MHz band shall be 250 ksymbol/s with an accuracy of $\pm 300 \times 10^{-6}$.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

18.5.4 Transmit center frequency tolerance

The MSK PHY shall have a transmit center frequency tolerance of $\pm 40 \times 10^{-6}$.

18.5.5 Transmit power

The MSK PHY in the 433 MHz band shall be capable of transmitting at a power level of at least –3 dBm.

The MSK PHY in the 2450 MHz band shall be capable of transmitting at a power level of at least –13 dBm.

18.5.6 Receiver maximum input level of desired signal

The MSK PHY shall have a receiver maximum input level greater than or equal to –20 dBm using the measurement as described in 10.1.7.

18.5.7 Modulation frequency deviation tolerance

Modulation frequency tolerance is measured as a percentage of maximum frequency deviation Δf.

Modulation frequency deviation shall be constrained within ± 30% of maximum frequency deviation Δf as defined in 18.4.3.

18.5.8 Zero crossing tolerance

All zero crossing shall be constrained within ± 12.5% of symbol time.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

19. LRP UWB PHY specification

19.1 Overview

The LRP UWB PHY waveform is based upon an impulse radio signaling scheme using band-limited data pulses. It consists of three frequency channels and occupies the spectrum from 6.2896 GHz to 9.1856 GHz. A combination of on-off keying (OOK) modulation or pulse position modulation (PPM) is used to support both coherent and noncoherent receivers using a common signaling scheme. Either OOK or PPM are used to modulate the symbols, as defined by the mode. Symbols are composed of one or more active bursts of UWB pulses. The various data rates are supported through the use of variable-length bursts.

The LRP UWB PHY supports the following three transmission modes:

— Base mode, for highest data rate
— Extended mode, for moderate data rate but improved sensitivity
— Long-range mode, for best sensitivity

All transmit modes are optional, but all modes shall be implemented in the receiver and operational concurrently. Active RFID systems are often simplex systems so mandatory modes are not defined for the PHY but separately for the transmitter (RFD-TX) and receiver (RFD-RX).

The PHY has different characteristics depending on the transmission mode. These characteristics are defined for each mode separately as shown in Table 19-1. Otherwise, the characteristics of the PHY are independent of transmission mode.

Table 19-1—Signaling modes and data rates for LRP UWB PHY

Mode	PRF (MHz)	DataRate as used in MCPS-DATA primitives	Data rate	Modulation
Long-range mode	2.0	1	31.25 kb/s	PPM
Extended mode	1.0	2	250 kb/s	OOK
Base mode	1.0	3	1 Mb/s	OOK

19.2 LRP UWB PHY symbol structure

In base mode, the LRP UWB PHY symbol consists of presence/absence of pulses in 1 MHz PRF sequence.

In extended mode, the LRP UWB PHY symbol consists of presence/absence of pulses in 1 MHz PRF sequence generated by convolution code with octal generators (5,7,7,7).

In long-range mode, the LRP UWB PHY symbol consists of Manchester-encoded groups of 64 pulses (32 on, 32 off) in 2 MHz PRF sequence.

19.2.1 Base mode LRP UWB PHY symbol structure

In the base mode of LRP UWB modulation scheme, each symbol carries one bit of information. The base mode operates at 1 chip per symbol and with a PRF of 1 MHz, so the symbol time T_{DSYM} is 1 µs and the chip time T_{CHIP} is also 1 µs. Binary data values 0 and 1 are encoded as per Table 19-2. The data rate is thus

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

1 Mb/s. The pulse duration T_{PULSE} is much shorter than the symbol time. The pulse is nominally sent in the center of the chip and symbol period T_{DSYM} as shown in Figure 19-1.

Table 19-2—Base mode LRP UWB symbol encoding

Binary value being encoded	Transmitted signal
0	No energy is transmitted during the 1 µs symbol time
1	A single pulse is transmitted during the 1 µs symbol time

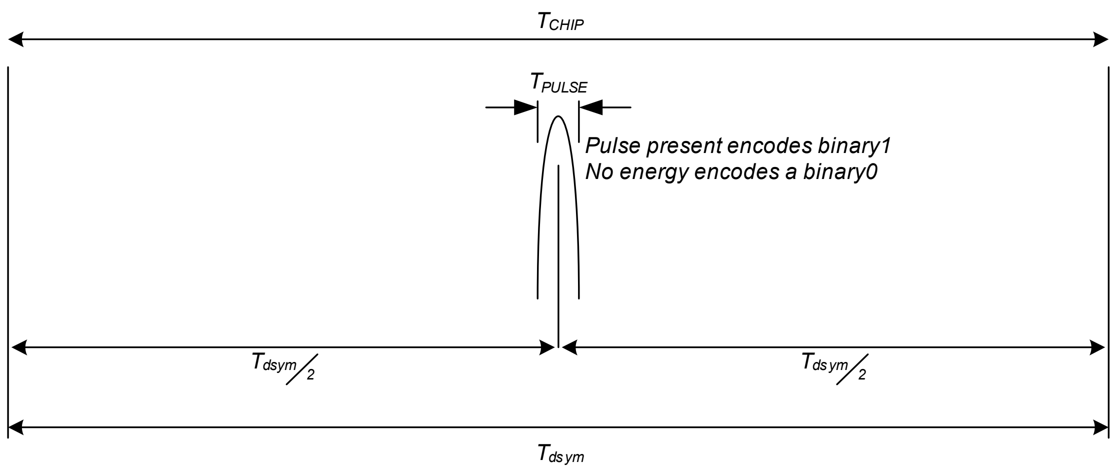


Figure 19-1—Base mode LRP UWB PHY symbol structure

19.2.1.1 Base mode LRP UWB PHY PSDU synchronization signal

During the base mode PSDU transmission, after every 128 symbols of user data, the PHY inserts four chips of binary 1. This ensures that the receiver has enough information to retain synchronization when the user data is all zeros. These four chips/symbols are removed in the PHY and not decoded as user data.

19.2.2 Extended mode LRP UWB PHY symbol structure

In the extended mode of LRP UWB modulation scheme, each symbol consists of four chips generated by a rate 1/4 convolutional code using octal generators 5,7,7,7 for $k = 3$, as shown in Figure 19-2.

The extended mode receiver may employ a relatively simple Viterbi decoder with hard or soft decisions to make use of the coding gain afforded by the transmitter convolution code.

Extended mode employs a PRF of 1 MHz with a rate 1/4 code giving a symbol time of 4 µs. The data rate is thus 250 kb/s. The pulses are nominally centered within the chip periods as shown in Figure 19-3. These four pulses are transmitted in order with pulse 1 transmitted first. The individual pulses shown are present depending on whether the pulse out value is binary 1 or binary 0 as indicated in Table 19-3.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

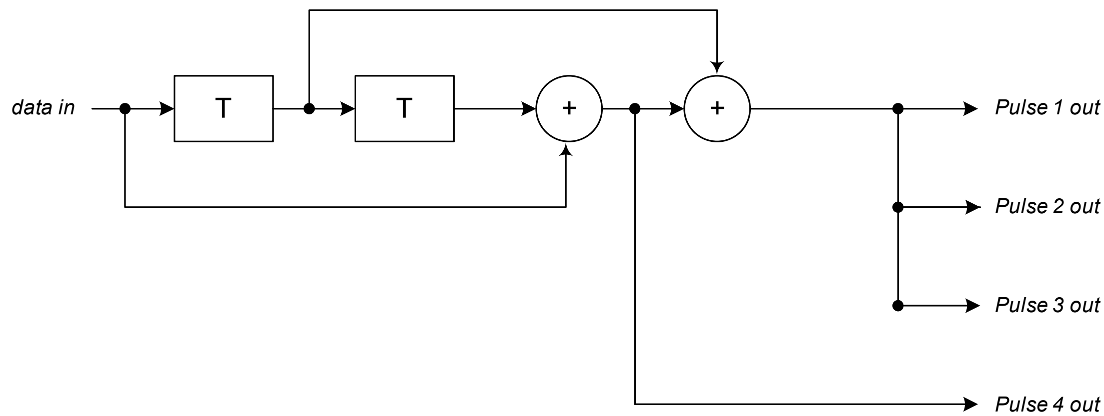


Figure 19-2—Extended mode LRP UWB PHY transmitter convolution code

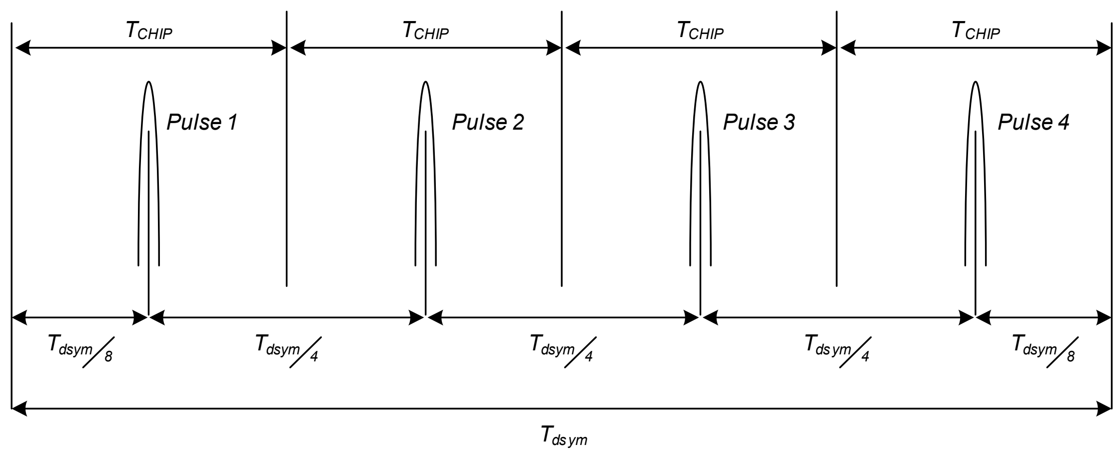


Figure 19-3—Extended mode LRP UWB PHY symbol structure

Table 19-3—Extended mode LRP UWB pulse to chip encoding

Pulse out value	Transmitted chip
0	No energy is transmitted during this chip time
1	A pulse is transmitted during this chip time

19.2.2.1 Extended mode LRP UWB PHY PSDU synchronization signal

During the extended mode PSDU transmission, after every 32 symbols of user data, which is (128 chips), the PHY inserts four chips of “1” pulse. This ensures that the receiver has enough information to retain synchronization when the encoded output pulses are “0” pulses (i.e., no transmitted energy). These four chips (1 symbol of pulses) are removed in the PHY before the received pulse (Viterbi) decoding.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

19.2.3 Long-range mode LRP UWB PHY symbol structure

In the long-range mode of the LRP UWB modulation scheme, each symbol encodes one bit using 64 chips at a chipping rate of 2 MHz PRF, with Manchester encoding as given in per Table 19-4. The data rate is thus 31.25 kb/s. Figure 19-4 shows this diagrammatically. When a pulse is present, it is nominally centered within the chip period.

Table 19-4—Long-range mode LRP UWB symbol encoding

Binary value being encoded	Transmitted signal
0	The symbol period is 32 µs. No energy is transmitted during first 16 µs, and then in the second 16 µs, 32 pulses are transmitted.
1	The symbol period is 32 µs. In the first 16 µs, 32 pulses are transmitted, and then no energy is transmitted during second 16 µs.

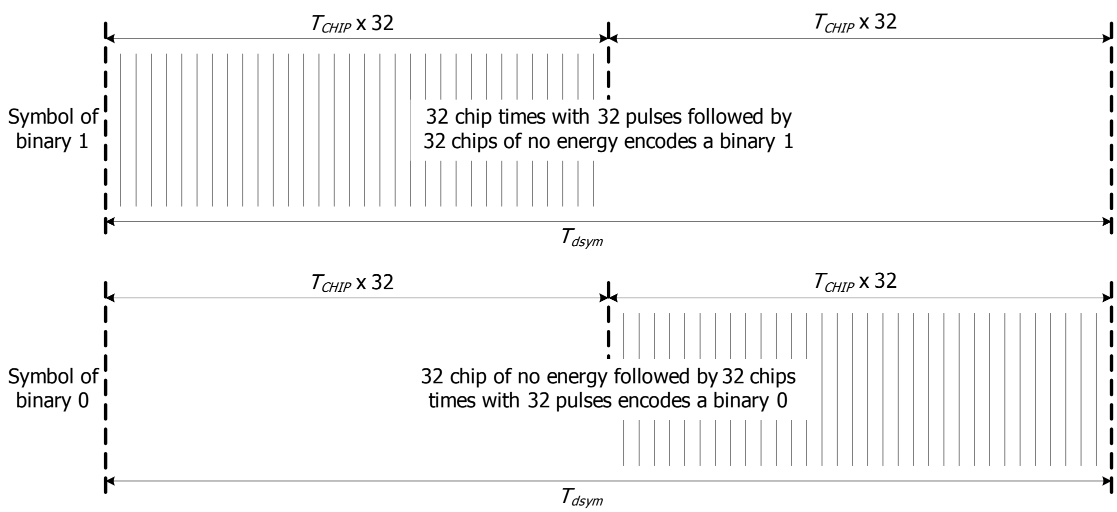


Figure 19-4—Long-range mode LRP UWB PHY symbol structure

19.2.3.1 Long-range mode LRP UWB PHY PSDU synchronization signal

No additional synchronization measures are needed in long-range mode since its Manchester encoding scheme ensures that sufficient pulses are transmitted.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

19.3 LRP UWB SHR

The SHR consists of two components: the LRP UWB SHR preamble and SFD.

19.3.1 LRP UWB SHR preamble

19.3.1.1 LRP UWB base mode SHR preamble

The LRP UWB base mode SHR preamble consists of a continuous stream of pulses at the base mode PRF of 1 MHz, with a length between 16 and 128.

19.3.1.2 RP UWB extended mode SHR preamble

The LRP UWB extended mode SHR preamble consists of a continuous stream of pulses at the extended mode PRF of 1 MHz, with a length between 16 and 256.

19.3.1.3 LRP UWB long-range mode SHR preamble

The LRP UWB long-range mode SHR preamble consists of three segments, which are transmitted in turn, as follows:

a) A continuous stream of pulses at the long-range mode PRF of 2 MHz, with a length between 1024 and 8192 pulses.
b) The following pulse/no-pulse sequence, transmitted at a PRF of 2 MHz where "-" represents "no pulse," and "P" represents a pulse:
   - - - P - P - - P - - P P P - P
c) A series of between 16 and 64 "1" symbols, transmitted as per the long-range mode PHY symbol structure defined in 19.2.3.

19.3.2 LRP UWB SHR SFD

The SFD for the LRP UWB PHY is common to all modes and shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 19-5. The modulation encoding for the SFD shall be 1 pulse per bit for both the base and extended modes. The modulation encoding for the long-range mode shall be Manchester encoded with 64 chips per bit as specified for long-range mode.

SFD (b0–b15)
0001 0100 1001 1101

Figure 19-5—Value of the SFD field for LRP UWB PHY

The SFD is transmitted starting from the leftmost bit (b0).

19.4 LRP UWB PHR

This is defined in symbols and is therefore common to base, extended, and long-range modes, with the exception of the encoding type (bits 0–2). The encoding type is defined in symbols for long-range mode and as pulses for basic and extended mode.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The PHY Header field of the LRP UWB modulation shall be formated as illustrated in Figure 19-6.

Bits: 0–2	3	4–9	10–16	17	18–20	21
Encoding Type	Header Extension	SECDED	Frame Length	Reserved	LEIP length	LEIP Position

Figure 19-6—PHR format for LRP UWB PHY

19.4.1 Encoding Type field

Long-range mode is specified (and detected) by its own unique symbol mapping, defined in 19.2.3, and the use of a 2 MHz PRF. In long-range mode the Encoding Type field of the PHR is given by Table 19-5.

Table 19-5—PHR Encoding Type field in long-range mode

Encoding Type value b0–b2	Meaning
000	Each symbol encodes 1 bit. Each symbol consists of 64 chips and uses Manchester encoding. This encoding is defined in 19.2.3
001 to 111	Reserved

In base mode and extended mode where the PHR is sent with a chip rate of 1 MHz, the Encoding Type field of the PHR is given by Table 19-6. These three bits are encoded as per 19.2.1. Only two values are legal, 000 and 111. This allows a receiver to use all three bits in a voting scheme to determine whether it should switch to using extended mode decoding for the remainder of the PHR and the PSDU or should continue decoding the PHR and PSDU in base mode.

Table 19-6—PHR Encoding Type field base mode and extended mode

Encoding Type value b0–b2	Meaning
000	This value indicates the operating mode is base mode. All remaining bits in the frame continue to be encoded as per 19.2.1.
111	This value indicates the operating mode is extended mode. All bits in the remaining fields of the PHR and PSDU are encoded as per 19.2.2.
001 to 110	ILLEGAL—These values can never be legally used. The receiver may use all three bits of the two legal values 000 and 111 in a voting scheme to decide which is actually present.

19.4.2 Header Extension field

The PHR Header Extension bit shall be set to zero upon transmission. If a PPDU is received with the PHR Header Extension bit set, the device shall discard the PPDU.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

19.4.3 SECDED field

The SECDED field is a simple Hamming block code that enables the correction of a single error and the detection of two errors at the receiver. The SECDED field is computed as follows:

b9 = XOR (b21, b18, b19, b20, b17)

b8 = XOR (b10, b11, b12, b13, b14, b15, b16)

b7 = XOR (b1, b2, b3, b13, b14, b15, b16, b20, b17)

b6 = XOR (b0, b2, b3, b11, b12, b15, b16, b18, b19)

b5 = XOR (b0, b1, b3, b10, b12, b14, b16, b21, b19, b17)

b4 = XOR (b0, …, b3, b5, …, b21)

19.4.4 Frame Length field

The Frame Length field is an unsigned integer that shall be set to the length of the PSDU in octets. The Frame Length field shall be transmitted MSB first.

19.4.5 LEIP Length field

This gives the length of the LEIP in pulses. The meaning of this field is defined in Table 19-7.

Table 19-7—PHR LEIP Length field meaning

LEIP Length field value (b18 b19 b20)	LEIP sequence length
000	Not present.
001	16 pulses
010	64 pulses
011	128 pulses
100	192 pulses
101	256 pulses
110	512 pulses
111	1024 pulses

19.4.6 LEIP Position field

The LEIP Position field specifies the position of the optional LEIP sequence. The LEIP Position field only applies if the LEIP Length field indicates that the LEIP sequence length is non-zero, in which case the meaning of this bit is then as defined in Table 19-8. When the LEIP Length field indicates that the LEIP sequence is not present, then the LEIP Position field is reserved.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 19-8—PHR LEIP position bit meaning

LEIP Position field value	Meaning
0	The LEIP is delayed
1	The LEIP is not delayed

When the LEIP sequence is delayed, it is delayed by *aLeipDelayTime* from start of SFD. The LEIP then starts on the first chipping interval after the delay. Where the PSDU is of sufficient length that it has not ended by this time, then the LEIP is deferred to start in the chipping interval immediately following the final chipping interval being used for the PSDU.

When the LEIP is not delayed, the LEIP starts in the chipping interval immediately following the final chipping interval being used for the PSDU.

19.5 LRP UWB PSDU

In base mode the PSDU is encoded as per 19.2.1; in extended mode the PSDU is encoded as per 19.2.2; and in long-range mode the PSDU is encoded as per 19.2.3.

19.6 LRP UWB location enhancing information postamble

The LEIP consists of a sequence of UWB pulses. The PRF of the LEIP pulse sequence is as follows:

— 1 MHz in the LRP UWB base and extended modes
— 2 MHz in the long-range mode

Information in the PHY header, as defined in 19.4, indicates whether or not the LEIP is appended to a transmitted packet.

If the information in the PHY header indicates that the LEIP is appended to the transmitted packet, further information in the PHY header indicates when the first LEIP pulse occurs immediately. It occurs either

— Immediately after the end of the PSDU, or
— *LeipDelayTime* after the start of the SHR SFD.

The length of the LEIP (in pulses, at the appropriate rate) is defined in Table 19-7 by the PHR LEIP length field.

19.7 LRP UWB transmitter specification

19.7.1 Pulse shape

The LRP UWB PHY shall employ an impulse transmitter that instantaneously produces an ultra wideband frequency response. There are no constraints on the specific pulse shape providing that the pulse shall comply with the Transmit PSD Mask defined in 19.7.3.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

19.7.2 Pulse timing

The transmission time of any individual pulse shall not drift more than 11 ns from its nominal transmission time during a 128 symbol period over the specified operating temperature range of the device.

In order to avoid long sequences of zeros driving the need for high-quality clocks, the symbol structure in the base and extended modes includes a periodic sync marker as described in 19.2.1.1 and 19.2.2.1. No additional sync marker is required in the long-range mode.

19.7.3 Transmit PSD mask

The transmitter shall operate with a power spectral density contained by one of three PSD masks defined in Table 19-9 and shown in Figure 19-7. The permitted spectral density is defined in dBr relative to the maximum spectral density of the signal, and shall be made using a 1 MHz resolution bandwidth and a 1 MHz video bandwidth. Additionally, the upper −10 dBr point of the transmitter PSD shall be at least 200 MHz above a nominal frequency, f_n, and the lower −10 dBr point shall be at most 200 MHz below the same nominal frequency.

Table 19-9—LRP UWB PHY PSD mask

Band number	f_n (MHz)	Frequency (MHz)	PSD limit (dBr)
0	6489.6	< 5624.32	−18
		5624.32 to 5786.56	−10
		5786.56 to 7192.64	0
		7192.64 to 7354.88	−10
		> 7354.88	−18
1	6988.8	< 6090.24	−18
		6090.24 to 6165.12	−10
		6165.12 to 8311.68	0
		8311.68 to 8386.56	−10
		> 8386.56	−18
2	7987.2	< 6922.24	−18
		6922.24 to 7121.92	−10
		7121.92 to 8852.48	0
		8852.48 to 9052.16	−10
		> 9052.16	−18

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

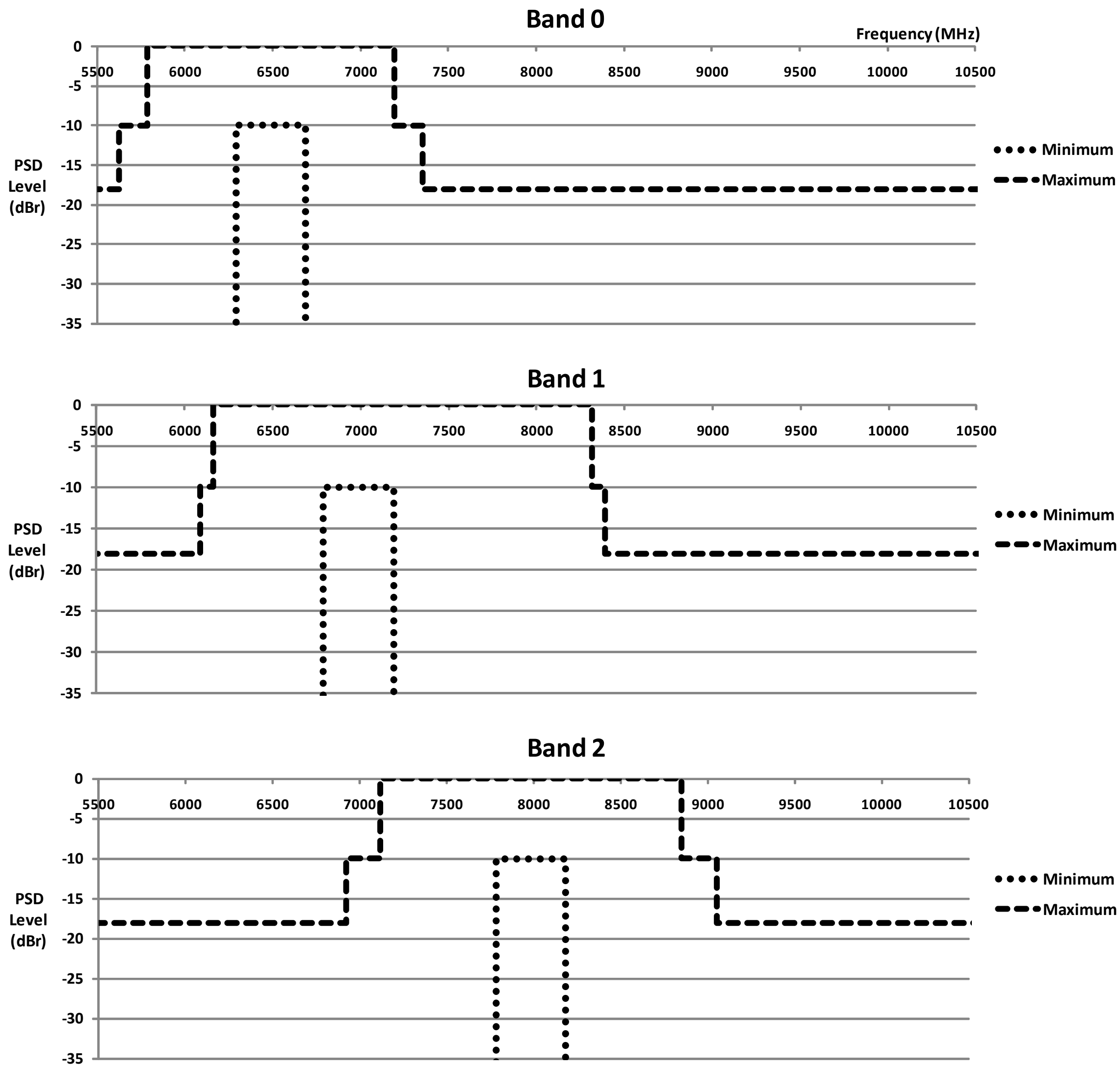


Figure 19-7—Low rate PRF PHY PSD mask

19.8 LRP UWB receiver specification

The receiver shall support each mode of operation: base mode, extended mode and long-range mode.

Receiving devices shall be capable of receiving at least one channel allowed by regulations for the region(s) in which the device operates.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

20. SUN FSK PHY

20.1 Introduction

A SUN device shall support the SUN FSK PHY, allowing MPM signaling utilizing the CSM.

For the SUN FSK PHY, the symbol period used for MAC and PHY timing parameters, shown in Table 20-1, shall be the symbol period of operating mode #1 specified in Table 20-6 and Table 20-7.

Table 20-1—SUN FSK symbol period used for MAC and PHY timing parameters

Frequency band (MHz)	symbol period used for MAC and PHY timing parameters (µs)
169.400–169.475	208+1/3
450–470	104+1/6
470–510	20
779–787	20
863–870	20
896–901	100
901–902	100
902–928	20
917–923.5	20
928–960	100
920–928	20
1427–1518	100
2400–2483.5	20

For the purposes of calculating the Ack frame timing required in 6.7.5, the default length of the Preamble field shall be 8 octets and mode switch shall not be used for Ack frames.

20.2 PPDU format for SUN FSK

The SUN FSK PPDU shall support the format shown in Figure 20-1 and may support the format shown in Figure 20-2 if mode switch is enabled.

SHR	PHR	PHY payload

Figure 20-1—Format of the SUN FSK PPDU (without mode switch)

SHR	Mode Switch PHR

Figure 20-2—Format of the SUN FSK mode switch PPDU

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

20.2.1 SHR field format

The SHR field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 20-3.

Preamble	SFD

Figure 20-3—Format of the SHR

20.2.1.1 Preamble field

The Preamble field shall contain *phyFskPreambleLength* (as defined in 11.3) multiples of the 8-bit sequence “01010101” for 2-FSK. The Preamble field shall contain *phyFskPreambleLength* multiples of the 16-bit sequence “0111 0111 0111 0111” for 4-FSK.

20.2.1.2 SFD

The SFD for 2-FSK shall be a 2-octet sequence selected from the values shown in Table 20-2. The SFD for 4-FSK shall be a 4-octet sequence selected from the values shown in Table 20-3. Devices that do not support FEC shall support the SFD associated with uncoded format and a value of zero for the PIB attribute *phySunFskSfd*, as defined in 11.3; these devices may also support the SFD associated with uncoded format and a value of one for the PIB attribute *phySunFskSfd*. Devices that support FEC shall support both SFDs associated with a value of zero for the PIB attribute *phySunFskSfd*; these devices may additionally support both SFDs associated with a value of one for the PIB attribute *phySunFskSfd*.

The SFD is transmitted starting from the leftmost bit (i.e., starting with b0).

Table 20-2—SUN FSK PHY SFD values for 2-FSK

	SFD value for coded format (b0–b15)	SFD value for uncoded format (b0–b15)
***phySunFskSfd* = 0**	0110 1111 0100 1110	1001 0000 0100 1110
***phySunFskSfd* = 1**	0110 0011 0010 1101	0111 1010 0000 1110

Table 20-3—SUN FSK PHY SFD values for 4-FSK

	SFD value for coded format (b0–b31)	SFD value for uncoded format (b0–b31)
***phySunFskSfd* = 0**	0111 1101 1111 1111 0111 0101 1111 1101	1101 0111 0101 0101 0111 0101 1111 1101
***phySunFskSfd* = 1**	0111 1101 0101 1111 0101 1101 1111 0111	0111 1111 1101 1101 0101 0101 1111 1101

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

20.2.2 PHR field format

The format of the PHR is shown in Figure 20-4.

Bits: 0	1–2	3	4	5–15
Mode Switch	Reserved	FCS Type	Data Whitening	Frame Length

Figure 20-4—Format of the PHR for SUN FSK

The Mode Switch field shall be set to zero, indicating that the entire packet shall be transmitted at a single data rate and using a single modulation scheme.

The FCS Type field indicates the length of the FCS field described in 7.2.10 that is included in the MPDU. The FCS Type field shall be set to zero for a 4-octet FCS and shall be set to 1 for a 2-octet FCS.

The Data Whitening field indicates whether data whitening of the PSDU is used upon transmission. The Data Whitening field shall be set to one when data whitening is used and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Frame Length field is an unsigned integer that shall be set to the total number of octets contained in the PSDU (prior to FEC encoding, if enabled). The Frame Length field shall be transmitted MSB first.

20.2.3 Mode Switch PHR

The use of the Mode Switch mechanisms described in this subclause is deprecated. Consequently, this clause may be removed in a later revision of the standard.

The format of the Mode Switch PHR is shown in Figure 20-5.

Bits: 0	1–2	3	4–10	11–14	15
Mode Switch	Mode Switch Parameter	New Mode FEC	New Mode	Checksum	Parity Check

Figure 20-5—Format of the Mode Switch PHR for SUN FSK

The Mode Switch field shall be set to one, indicating that a mode switch shall occur. The mode of the next PPDU transmitted (i.e., the new mode PPDU) shall be as described by the remaining fields contained in the PHR in Figure 20-5. If the new mode is SUN FSK, the new mode PPDU is the same as Figure 20-1 except that the preamble and SFD are optional. For SUN OFDM, the new mode PPDU has the same format as Figure 21-1. If the new mode is SUN O-QPSK, the new mode PPDU is the same as Figure 22-1.

The Mode Switch Parameter field is the index of the entry in the *phyModeSwitchParameterEntries* array, as described in Table 11-2, that defines the mode switch parameters to be used, as described in Table 11-3. If the Mode Switch Parameter field indicates an unsupported entry in the *phyModeSwitchParameterEntries* array of the receiver, the receiver shall discard the packet and remain in the present PHY mode.

The New Mode FEC field specifies whether the packet following the mode switch PPDU is transmitted using FEC. A value of zero indicates that the new mode packet is transmitted without FEC, and a value of one indicates that it is transmitted with FEC. If the new mode packet has an SFD and, therefore, packet coding information, as described in 20.3.4, the SFD shall override the value of the New Mode FEC field.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The New Mode field is formatted as shown in Figure 20-6.

Bits: 0	1–2	3–6
Page	Modulation Scheme	Mode

Figure 20-6—Format of the New Mode field

The Page field shall be set to zero to indicate channel page nine or set to one to indicate channel page ten.

The Modulation Scheme field indicates the modulation scheme, as described in Table 20-4, when *phyCurrentChannel* (as defined in 11.3) equals seven; when *phyCurrentChannel* equals eight, the Modulation Scheme field shall be set to zero upon transmission and ignored upon reception.

Table 20-4—Modulation Scheme field values

Field value	Description
0	FSK
1	OFDM
2	O-QPSK
3	Reserved

The Mode field specifies the new mode of operation. When the Page field is zero (channel page nine), the interpretation of the Mode field is based on the modulation scheme:

— If the modulation scheme is FSK, the Mode field is a bitmap where a bit is set to one if the operating mode given in Table 20-5 is supported and is set to zero otherwise.

Table 20-5—Mode field values

Bit	Description
0	Operating mode #1
1	Operating mode #2
2	Operating mode #3
3	Operating mode #4

— If the modulation scheme is not FSK, the Mode field shall be set to zero upon transmission and ignored upon reception. The corresponding data rates are specified in the PHR of the new mode PPDU.

When the Page field is one (channel page ten), the new PHY mode is defined by the SUN FSK Generic PHY mechanism.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The generator polynomial for the Checksum field is a Bose Chaudhuri Hocquenghem (BCH) code. The checksum for the BCH(15,11) code is calculated as follows:

$$G(x) = 1 + x + x^4$$

The Parity Check field provides error detection for the mode switch PPDU. Its value is calculated using the first 11 bits from the PHR,(b0, b1, … b10), using the following equation:

Parity Check = b0 ⊕ b1 ⊕ b2 ⊕ b3 ⊕ b4 ⊕ b5 ⊕ b6 ⊕ b7 ⊕ b8 ⊕ b9 ⊕ b10

where ⊕ is modulo-2 addition (addition over GF(2)). The combination of the BCH(15,11) code and one parity bit allows for the achievement of single error correction and double error detection over the first 11 bits of the PHR.

If the receiving device receives a PHR with the Mode Switch field set to one, it first performs the BCH calculation over the first 11 bits of the PHR. If the resulting checksum is valid, and the Mode Switch field is still set to one after error correction, a parity check using the Parity Check field is performed. If the result of the parity check is valid, the receiving device processes the mode switch and decodes the subsequent PPDU. If the result of the parity check is invalid, or if the Mode Switch field is set to zero after the error correction, the receiver terminates the receive procedure.

20.2.4 PHY Payload field

The PHY Payload field carries the PSDU, encoded as described in 20.3.1.

20.3 Modulation and coding for SUN FSK

The modulation for the SUN FSK PHY is either a 2- or a 4-level FSK that meets the transmit spectral mask, as defined in 20.6.6.

Table 20-6 shows the modulation and channel parameters for the standard-defined PHY operating modes for the 169 MHz, 450 MHz, 470 MHz, 863 MHz, 896 MHz, 901 MHz, 915 MHz, 928 MHz, 1427 MHz, and 2450 MHz bands. A device shall support operating mode #1 and may additionally support operating modes #2 and #3.

Table 20-6—SUN FSK modulation and channel parameters[a]

Frequency band (MHz)	Parameter	Operating mode #1	Operating mode #2	Operating mode #3
169.400–169.475	Data rate (kb/s)	4.8	2.4	9.6
	Modulation	2-FSK	2-FSK	4-FSK
	Modulation index	0.5	2.0	0.33
	Channel spacing (kHz)	12.5	12.5	12.5
450–470	Data rate (kb/s)	9.6	4.8	—
	Modulation	4-FSK	2-FSK	—
	Modulation index	0.33	1.0	—
	Channel spacing (kHz)	12.5	12.5	—

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 20-6—SUN FSK modulation and channel parameters[a] *(continued)*

Frequency band (MHz)	Parameter	Operating mode #1	Operating mode #2	Operating mode #3
470–510	Data rate (kb/s)	50	100	200
	Modulation	2-FSK	2-FSK	4-FSK
	Modulation index	1.0	1.0	0.33
	Channel spacing (kHz)	200	400	400
779–787	Data rate (kb/s)	50	100	200
	Modulation	2-FSK	2-FSK	4-FSK
	Modulation index	1.0	1.0	0.33
	Channel spacing (kHz)	200	400	400
863–870	Data rate (kb/s)	50	100	200
	Modulation	2-FSK	2-FSK	4-FSK
	Modulation index	1.0	1.0	0.33
	Channel spacing (kHz)	200	400	400
896–901	Data rate (kb/s)	10	20	40
	Modulation	2-FSK	2-FSK	2-FSK
	Modulation index	0.5	0.5	0.5
	Channel spacing (kHz)	12.5	12.5	12.5
901–902	Data rate (kb/s)	10	20	40
	Modulation	2-FSK	2-FSK	2-FSK
	Modulation index	0.5	0.5	0.5
	Channel spacing (kHz)	12.5	12.5	12.5
902–928	Data rate (kb/s)	50	150	200
	Modulation	2-FSK	2-FSK	2-FSK
	Modulation index	1.0	0.5	0.5
	Channel spacing (kHz)	200	400	400
917–923.5	Data rate (kb/s)	50	150	200
	Modulation	2-FSK	2-FSK	2-FSK
	Modulation index	1.0	0.5	0.5
	Channel spacing (kHz)	200	400	400
928–960[b]	Data rate (kb/s)	10	20	40
	Modulation	2-FSK	2-FSK	2-FSK
	Modulation index	0.5	0.5	0.5
	Channel spacing (kHz)	25	25	25

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 20-6—SUN FSK modulation and channel parameters[a] *(continued)*

Frequency band (MHz)	Parameter	Operating mode #1	Operating mode #2	Operating mode #3
1427–1518[b]	Data rate (kb/s)	10	20	40
	Modulation	2-FSK	2-FSK	2-FSK
	Modulation index	0.5	0.5	0.5
	Channel spacing (kHz)	25	25	25
2400–2483.5	Data rate (kb/s)	50	150	200
	Modulation	2-FSK	2-FSK	2-FSK
	Modulation index	1.0	0.5	0.5
	Channel spacing (kHz)	200	400	400

[a]Data rates shown are over-the-air data rates (the data rate transmitted over the air regardless of whether the FEC is enabled).
[b]Noncontiguous.

Table 20-7 shows the modulation and channel parameters for the standard-defined PHY operating modes for the 920 MHz Japanese bands. For these bands, a device shall support both operating modes #1 and #2 and may additionally support operating modes #3 and #4.

Table 20-7—SUN FSK modulation and channel parameters for Japanese band[a]

Frequency band (MHz)	Parameter	Operating mode #1	Operating mode #2	Operating mode #3	Operating mode #4
920–928	Data rate (kb/s)	50	100	200	400
	Modulation	2-FSK	2-FSK	2-FSK	4-FSK
	Modulation index	1.0	1.0	1.0	0.33
	Channel spacing (kHz)[b]	200	400	600	600

[a]Data rates shown are over-the-air data rates (the data rate transmitted over the air regardless of whether the FEC is enabled).
[b]Channel separation of 200 kHz is used. Channel spacing shows bundling of 200 kHz channels.

In addition to the standard-defined PHY operating modes, the SUN FSK PHY may support an SUN FSK Generic PHY mechanism, which enables the use of a broader set of data rates and PHY parameters to describe a PHY mode. The set of PHY operating mode parameters is defined by the SUN FSK Generic PHY IE, as defined in 7.4.4.11.

20.3.1 Reference modulator

The functional block diagram of the reference modulator in Figure 20-7 is provided as a reference for specifying the SUN FSK PHY data flow processing functions. Each bit shall be processed using the bit order rules defined in 20.2.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

When FEC is enabled, the PHR and PSDU shall be processed for coding as a single block of data, as described in 20.3.4. When data whitening is enabled, the scrambling shall be only applied over the PSDU, as described in 20.4.

All fields in the PPDU shall use the same symbol rate and modulation order, unless otherwise specified elsewhere in this standard.

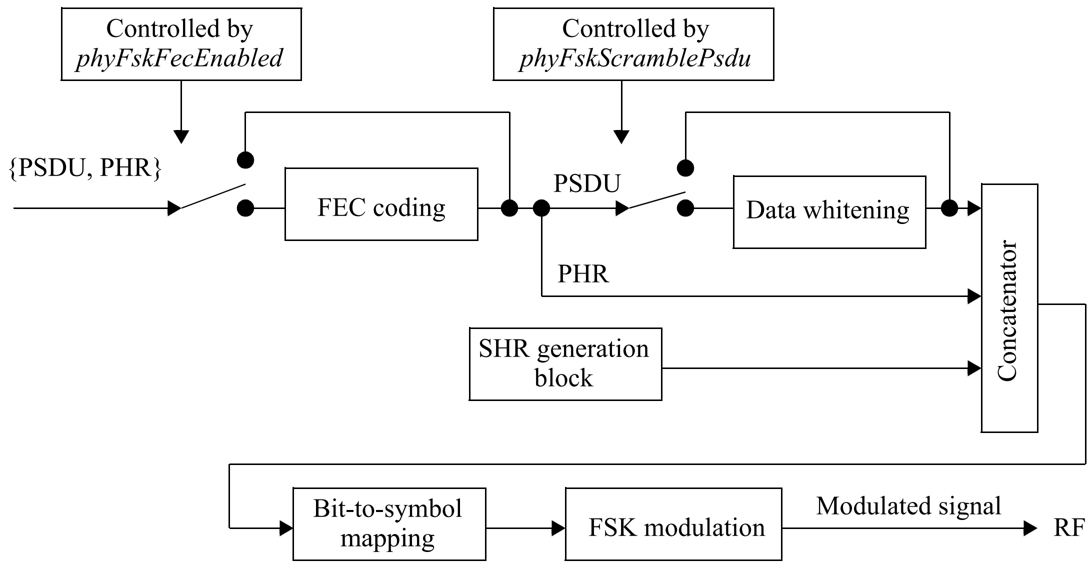


Figure 20-7—SUN FSK reference modulator

20.3.2 Bit-to-symbol mapping

The nominal frequency deviation, Δf, shall be as follows:

$$\left(\frac{\text{symbol rate} \times \text{modulation index}}{2}\right)$$

The symbol encoding for 2-FSK is shown in Table 20-8 and for 4-FSK in Table 20-9, where the frequency deviation, f_{dev}, is equal to Δf for 2-FSK and is equal to $3 \times \Delta f$ for 4-FSK. For 4-FSK modulation, two bits shall be mapped to four frequency deviation levels for the PHR and PHY Payload field. The SHR shall be encoded in the lowest ($-f_{dev}$) and the highest ($+f_{dev}$) frequency deviations. The symbol rate shall be the same for the entire PPDU.

Table 20-8—SUN 2-FSK symbol encoding

Symbol (binary)	Frequency deviation
0	$-f_{dev}$
1	$+f_{dev}$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 20-9—SUN 4-FSK symbol encoding

Symbol (binary)	Frequency deviation
01	$-f_{dev}$
00	$-f_{dev} / 3$
10	$+f_{dev} / 3$
11	$+f_{dev}$

20.3.3 Modulation quality

Modulation quality shall be measured by observing the frequency deviation tolerance and the zero crossing tolerance of the eye diagram caused by a PN9 sequence of length 511 bits.

20.3.3.1 Frequency deviation tolerance

Modulation frequency tolerance is measured as a percentage of the frequency deviation, f_{dev}, dictated by the modulation index. In the case of 2-FSK, the measured frequency deviation, f, at $T_{s(recovered)} / 2$ shall be constrained to the range $70\% f_{dev} < |f| < 130\% f_{dev}$, as shown in Figure 20-8, where $T_{s(recovered)}$ is the recovered symbol time, corrected for the symbol timing offset. In the case of 4-FSK, the measured frequency deviation, f, at $T_{s(recovered)} / 2$ shall be constrained to the range $8\% f_{dev} < |f| < 58\% f_{dev}$ for the inner levels and $75\% f_{dev} < |f| < 125\% f_{dev}$ for the outer levels, as shown in Figure 20-9.

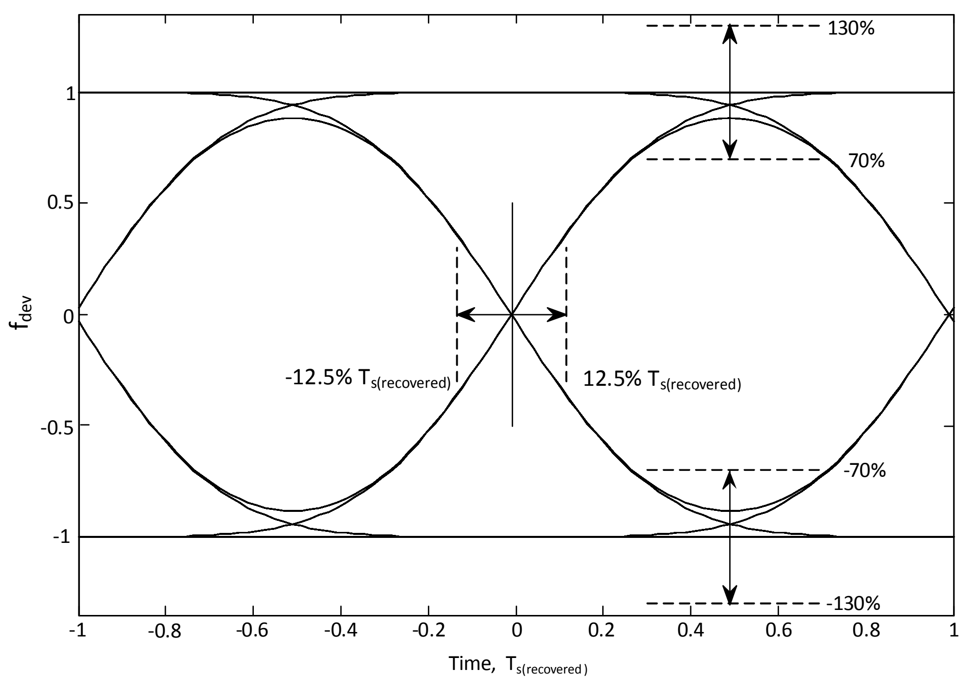


Figure 20-8—Eye diagram for 2-FSK

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

20.3.3.2 Zero crossing tolerance

In the case of 2-FSK, the excursions for the zero crossings for all trajectories of the eye diagram shall be constrained to within ± 12.5% rms of the symbol time T_s, as shown in Figure 20-8. In the case of 4-FSK, the excursions for the zero crossings for all trajectories of the eye diagram shall be constrained to within ± 30% of the symbol time T_s, as shown in Figure 20-9.

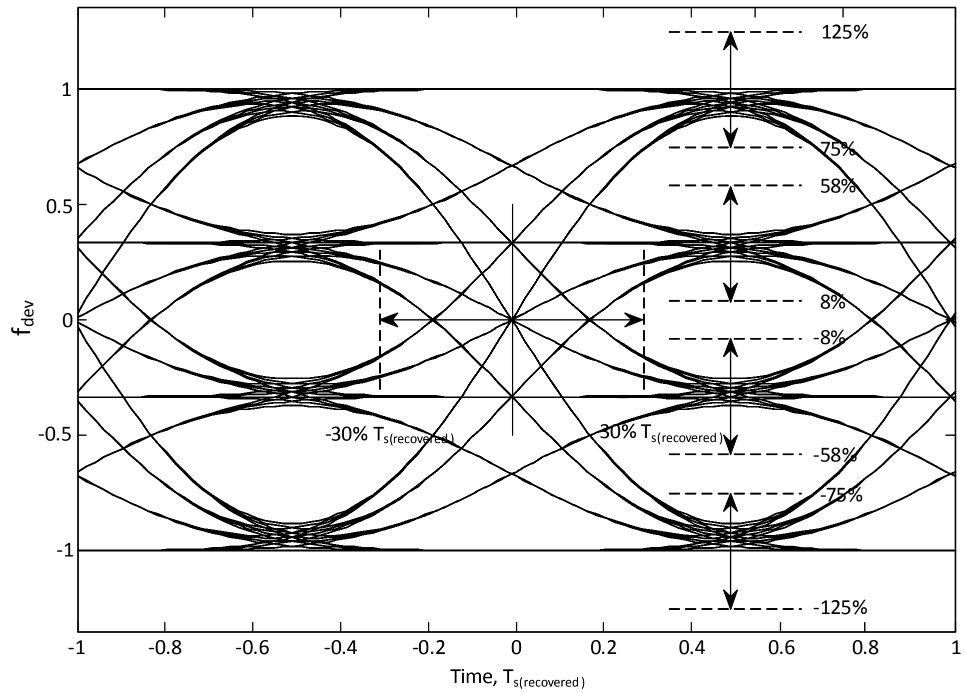


Figure 20-9—Eye diagram for 4-FSK

20.3.4 FEC

FEC is optional. If the SFD indicates that FEC is used, as described in Table 20-2, then the FEC is applied to the PHR and PSDU as a single block of data.

Two types of FEC may be applied: a recursive and systematic code (RSC) or a nonrecursive and nonsystematic code (NRNSC). The use of RSC or NRNSC coding shall be controlled by the PIB attribute *phyFskFecScheme*, as defined in 11.3.

When the SFD value indicates a coded packet, FEC shall be employed on the PHR and PSDU bits, applying either a 1/2-rate systematic or nonsystematic convolution coding with constraint length K = 4, and using the following two generator polynomials:

$$G_0(x) = 1 + x + x^2 + x^3$$

$$G_1(x) = 1 + x^2 + x^3$$

The total number of bits to be encoded, N, is obtained by summing up the size of the PHR (L_{PHR}), the length of the PSDU (L_{PSDU} is equal to the content of the Frame Length field in Figure 20-4), the number of tail bits (L_{TAIL}), and the number of padding bits (L_{PAD}). N shall be computed as follows:

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

$$N = L_{PHR} + L_{PSDU} + L_{TAIL} + L_{PAD}$$

NOTE—The value of L_{PSDU} is zero in the case of a mode switch packet.

Immediately after encoding the PHR and PSDU, a termination sequence with length L_{TAIL} = 3 bits shall be inserted into the encoder, as shown in Figure 20-10. The tail bits are required to return the encoder to the zero state.

PHR	PSDU	Tail bits

Figure 20-10—Data block extension with tail bits prior to coding

The value of the tail bits are dependent on the coding scheme and shall be set as shown in Table 20-10.

Table 20-10—Tail bit pattern for the RSC and NRNSC encoders

Memory state (M_0–M_2)	Tail bits	
	RSC (b0 b1 b2)	NRNSC (b0 b1 b2)
000	000	000
001	100	000
010	110	000
011	010	000
100	111	000
101	011	000
110	001	000
111	101	000

When interleaving is used in conjunction with convolutional coding, a padding sequence of L_{PAD} bits shall be further inserted into the encoder immediately after the tail bits. The padding bits are required to fill up the last interleaver buffer completely, as described in 20.3.5. L_{PAD} shall be computed as follows:

$$L_{PAD} = 5\text{, when } \frac{L_{PHR} + L_{PSDU}}{8} \text{ is odd}$$

$$L_{PAD} = 13\text{, when } \frac{L_{PHR} + L_{PSDU}}{8} \text{ is even}$$

Padding bit patterns should not contain a long series of ‘1’s or ‘0’s. Figure 20-11 and Figure 20-12 illustrate examples of such patterns.

PHR	PSDU	Tail bits	5-bit padding pattern: 01011

Figure 20-11—An example of extension with padding bits prior to encoding, when (L_{PHR} + L_{PSDU})/8 is odd

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

PHR	PSDU	Tail bits	13-bit padding pattern: 0 1011 0000 1011

Figure 20-12—An example of extension with padding bits prior to encoding, when $(L_{PHR} + L_{PSDU})/8$ is even

The RSC encoder is shown in Figure 20-13, and the NRNSC encoder is shown in Figure 20-14.

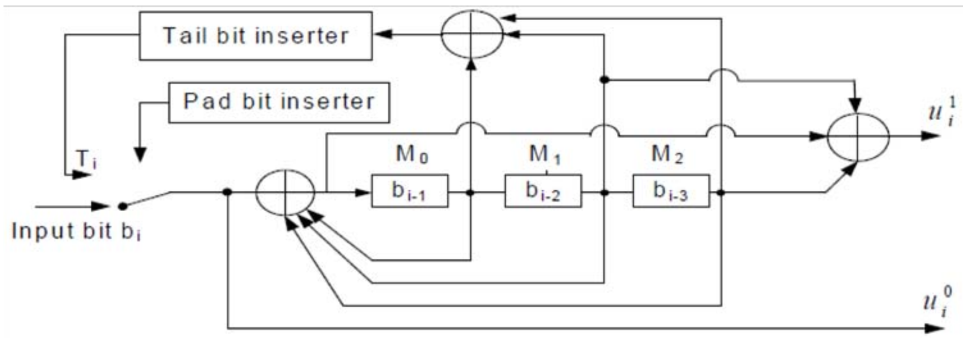


Figure 20-13—The recursive and systematic code (RSC) encoder

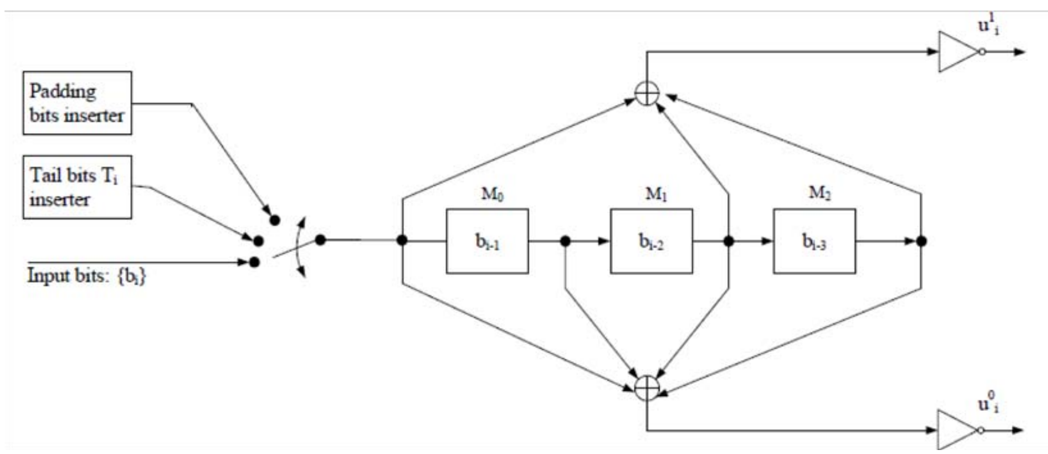


Figure 20-14—Non-recursive and non-systematic code (NRNSC) encoder

For an input sequence of bits with length N, $B = \{b_i, i \in [0, 1, 2, \ldots, N-1]\}$, the ith input bit shall be represented as b_i and be fed into memory state M_0, M_1, and M_2 in that order. The tail bits T_i and the pad bits shall be inserted once the encoding of PHR and PSDU is complete. The output sequence S also comprises N code-symbols.

$$S = \{s(0), s(1), s(2), \ldots, s(N-1)\} = \{u_0^{\,1}, u_0^{\,0}, \ldots, u_i^{\,1}, u_i^{\,0}, u_{i+1}^{\,1}, u_{i+1}^{\,0}, \ldots, u_{N-1}^{\,1}, u_{N-1}^{\,0}\}$$

Each code-symbol is denoted by $s(i) = \{u_i^{\,1}, u_i^{\,0}\}$, for all $i = 0, \ldots, N-1$, where $s(i)$ is the ith output code-symbol due to the ith input bit and $u_i^{\,1}$ and $u_i^{\,0}$ indicate the first and second output bits of the convolutional encoder, respectively. The code-symbol $s(i)$ shall precede the code-symbol $s(i + 1)$ and the code bit $u_i^{\,1}$ shall precede the code bit $u_i^{\,0}$.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

For the RSC encoder, the first and the second output bits of the encoder shall be generated in the following way:

$$u_i^1 = b_i \oplus (b_{i-1} \oplus b_{i-2} \oplus b_{i-3}) \oplus b_{i-2} \oplus b_{i-3}$$

$$u_i^0 = b_i$$

where $\oplus$ stands for modulo-2 addition.

For the NRNSC encoder, the first and the second output bits of the encoder shall be generated in the following way:

$$u_i^1 = \overline{b_i \oplus b_{i-2} \oplus b_{i-3}}$$

$$u_i^0 = \overline{b_i \oplus b_{i-1} \oplus b_{i-2} \oplus b_{i-3}}$$

where the “overline” indicates the complement of the modulo-2 addition.

20.3.5 Code-symbol interleaving

Interleaving of code-bits shall be employed in conjunction with NRNSC coding, in order to improve robustness against burst errors and to break correlation of consecutive bits. Interleaving may also be employed with RSC coding. In the case of RSC coding, the use of the interleaver is controlled by the PIB attribute *phyFskFecInterleavingRsc*, as defined in 11.3. No interleaving shall be employed if FEC is not enabled. The interleaver is defined by a permutation of code-symbols, where each permuted element contains exactly one code-symbol, i.e., a pair of two bits, as described in 20.3.4. The process of interleaving is illustrated in Figure 20-15.

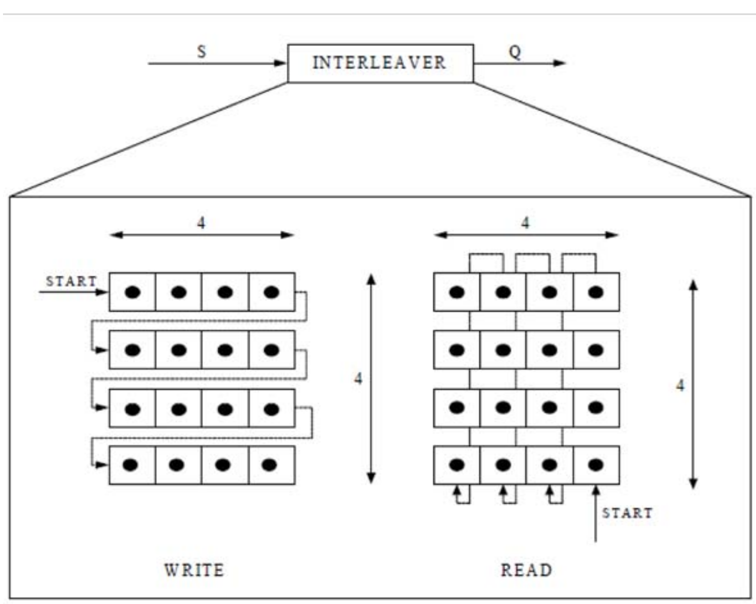


Figure 20-15—The interleaving block

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The complete sequence of code-symbols $S = \{s(i)\}$, $0 \le i \le N-1$, is passed to the interleaver as N_{BLOCK} consecutive subsequences $A^{(p)}$, where $0 \le p \le N_{BLOCK}-1$, $N_{BLOCK} = N/16$, and N is a nonzero integer multiple of 16, as described in 20.3.4. The subsequence $A^{(0)}$ shall be passed to the interleaver first in time, and the subsequence $A^{(N_{BLOCK}-1)}$ shall be passed to the interleaver last in time.

Each subsequence $A^{(p)} = \{a^{(p)}(j)\}$ contains exactly 16 code-symbols and shall be derived according to the following equation:

$$a^{(p)}(j) = s(p \times 16 + j)$$

where $0 \le j \le 15$.

For each subsequence $A^{(p)}$ passed to the interleaver, the corresponding subsequence $Q^{(p)} = \{q^{(p)}(k)\}$ exiting the interleaver shall be computed as follows:

$$q^{(p)}(k) = a^{(p)}(t)$$

where

$$0 \le k \le 15$$
$$t = 15 - 4 \times (k \bmod 4) - \left\lfloor \frac{k}{4} \right\rfloor$$

The function $\lfloor x \rfloor = floor(x)$ returns the largest integer value not greater than x.

The complete sequence of interleaved code-symbols is derived as $Q = \{Q^{(0)}, Q^{(1)}, \ldots, Q^{(N_{BLOCK}-1)}\}$.

20.4 Data whitening for SUN FSK

Support for data whitening is optional. Data whitening for the SUN FSK PHY shall use the procedure described in 17.2.3.

20.5 Mode switch mechanism for SUN FSK

The use of the Mode Switch mechanisms described in this subclause is deprecated. Consequently, this clause may be removed in a later revision of the standard.

The mode switch mechanism is optional.

The mode switch mechanism is enabled by setting the Mode Switch field to one. The SUN FSK mode switch PPDU is transmitted on *phyCurrentChannel*, as defined in 11.3, and the PPDU containing the PSDU is transmitted on the channel that corresponds to the same center frequency used for the SUN FSK mode switch PPDU. When an SUN FSK mode switch PPDU, as described in Figure 20-2, is received, a device that supports mode switching shall change its mode of operation to the new mode defined in the SUN FSK mode switch PPDU, in order to receive the following packet.

When changing from the current operating mode to the new mode, a settling delay may exist. If the modulation scheme of the new mode is FSK, the settling delay shall be in the range of zero to 100 μs. If the modulation scheme of the new mode is not FSK, the settling delay shall be in the range of 200 μs to 500 μs. The settling delay value is part of a ModeSwitchDescriptor, as described in Table 11-3. The value specified in the Mode Switch Parameter field of the PHR, as described in Figure 20-5, is the index of the PIB attribute

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

array *phyModeSwitchParameterEntries*, as defined in 11.3, which contains the elements of the ModeSwitchDescriptor. How the Mode Switch Parameter field maps to ModeSwitchDescriptor is exemplified in Table 20-11. For the mode switch operation of FSK->FSK, the symbol rate is changed. For the mode switch operation of FSK->4-FSK, the modulation order and/or the symbol rate is changed. The Mode Switch Parameter table may be defined by the next higher layer.

Table 20-11—An example of mapping between *phyModeSwitchParameterEntries*[] and ModeSwitchDescriptor

phyModeSwitchParameterEntries[ ]	Mode Switch Operation (Source mode -> Target mode)	ModeSwitchDescriptor		
		Settling Delay (μs)	SecondaryFSK Preamble Length	Secondary FSKSFD
0	FSK->FSK	20	0	FALSE
1	FSK->4-FSK	40	0	FALSE
2	FSK->OFDM	160	n/a	n/a
3	FSK->O-QPSK	80	n/a	n/a

Transmission of the new mode PPDU shall start SettlingDelay from the end of the mode switch PPDU. The SettlingDelay shall be the value indicated in the Mode Switch Parameter field in the mode switch PPDU. The reception and rejection of the following packet follows the same mechanism described in 5.1.6.2. When the new mode PPDU has been received, the receiver shall return to the mode specified by *phyCurrentPage*, as defined in 11.3, within a SIFS or LIFS period based on the symbol period of the new mode PPDU, depending on the received frame length, as described in 5.1.1.3. If the transmission of an Ack frame is requested by the transmitter, the Ack frame is transmitted using the PHY mode specified by *phyCurrentPage*.

The sequence of the SUN FSK mode switch PPDU, the optional settling delay, and the PPDU transmitted in the new PHY mode is shown in Figure 20-16.

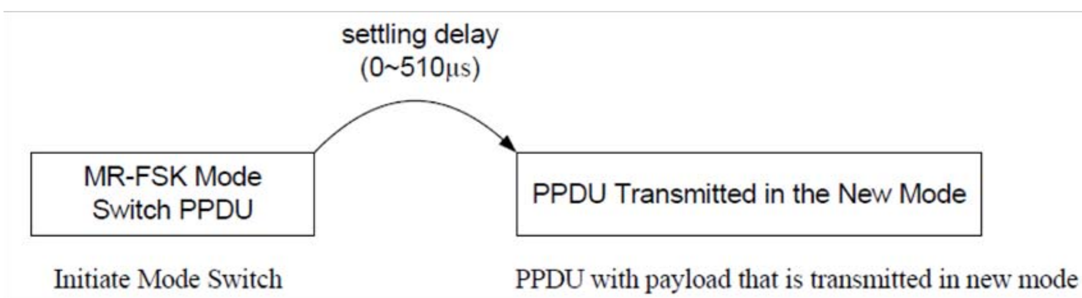


Figure 20-16—Transmitting sequence between SUN FSK mode switch PPDU and the new mode PPDU

Devices employing the mode switch mechanism shall meet the MAC timing requirements of 5.1.1.1.1 and 5.1.1.1.2, using the symbol period of the PHY mode prior to the mode switch.

The frequency band is not changed by the PHY mode switch mechanism. The center frequency of the channel is also not changed by a PHY mode switch, and channel center frequency alignment between the various modulation schemes support the mode switch mechanism. For example, the channel frequency alignment for the 915 MHz band is shown in Table 20-12.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 20-12—Channel alignment for 915 MHz band

FSK or OFDM (200 kHz channel spacing)	FSK or OFDM (400 kHz channel spacing)	OFDM (800 kHz channel spacing)	O-QPSK
902.2	—	—	—
902.4	902.4	—	—
902.6	—	—	—
902.8	902.8	902.8	—
903.0	—	—	—
903.2	903.2	—	—
903.4	—	—	—
903.6	903.6	903.6	—
903.8	—	—	—
904.0	904.0	—	904.0
904.2	—	—	—
904.4	904.4	904.4	—
904.6	—	—	—
904.8	904.8	—	—
905.0	—	—	—
905.2	905.2	905.2	—
905.4	—	—	—
905.6	905.6	—	—
905.8	—	—	—
906.0	906.0	906.0	906.0
906.2	—	—	—
906.4	906.4	—	—
906.6	—	—	—
906.8	906.8	906.8	—
907.0	—	—	—
907.2	907.2	—	—
907.4	—	—	—
907.6	907.6	907.6	—
907.8	—	—	—
908.0	908.0	—	908.0
908.2	—	—	—
908.4	908.4	908.4	—
908.6	—	—	—

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 20-12—Channel alignment for 915 MHz band *(continued)*

FSK or OFDM (200 kHz channel spacing)	FSK or OFDM (400 kHz channel spacing)	OFDM (800 kHz channel spacing)	O-QPSK
908.8	908.8	—	—
909.0	—	—	—
909.2	909.2	909.2	—
909.4	—	—	—
909.6	909.6	—	—
909.8	—	—	—
910.0	910.0	910.0	910.0
¦	¦	¦	¦
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

20.6 SUN FSK PHY RF requirements

20.6.1 Operating frequency range

The SUN FSK PHY operates in the bands given in Table 20-6 and Table 20-7.

20.6.2 Regulatory compliance

It is the responsibility of the implementer to verify and ensure that the device is in compliance with all regulatory requirements in the geographic region where the device is deployed or sold. Conformance with this standard does not guarantee compliance with the relevant regulatory requirements that may apply.

20.6.3 Radio frequency tolerance

The single-sided clock frequency tolerance T at the transmitter shall be as follows:

$$T \leq \min\left(\frac{T_0 \times R \times h \times F_0}{R_0 \times h_0 \times F}, 50 \times 10^{-6}\right)$$

for all combinations of R, h, and F and for each mode supported by the device, where

R is the symbol rate, in ksymbol/s
h is the modulation index
F is the carrier frequency, in megahertz
R_0 is 50 ksymbol/s
h_0 is 1
F_0 is 915 MHz
T_0 is 30×10^{-6} for modes in all bands, except at 2450 MHz for which the value of T_0 is 40×10^{-6}

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

20.6.4 Channel switch time

Channel switch time shall be less than or equal to 500 μs. The channel switch time is defined as the time elapsed when changing to a new channel, including any required settling time.

20.6.5 Transmitter symbol rate

The transmitter symbol rate tolerance shall be less than or equal to $\pm 300 \times 10^{-6}$. The peak transmitter symbol rate jitter shall be less than or equal to $\pm 40 \times 10^{-6}$. Transmitted packets shall have symbol rates within the specified symbol rate tolerance, and all symbols within the packet shall be within the symbol rate tolerance relative to the average symbol rate of all the symbols in the packet. The symbol rate jitter is measured as the standard deviation of symbol edges from the nominal symbol edge position for the symbol rate used by the transmitter.

20.6.6 Transmit spectral mask

The transmit spectral content is the ratio of the total transmitted out-of-channel power to the total transmitted in-channel power in a given integration bandwidth.

The integration bandwidth shall be equal to $1.5 \times R$, where R is the symbol rate, expressed in units of hertz.

Out-of-channel power shall be measured at two offset frequencies relative to the carrier frequency. The offset frequencies M_1 and M_2 are defined as follows:

$$M_1 = 1.5 \times R \times (1 + h)$$

$$M_2 = 3 \times R \times (1 + h)$$

where h is the modulation index for 2-level modulation and three times the modulation index for 4-level modulation.

The transmit spectral content at M_1 and M_2 shall be less than –25 dB and –35 dB, respectively.

The modulated signal shall use a PN data pattern of 511 bits or longer.

The spectrum analyzer settings for this measurement shall be as follows: the resolution bandwidth is 1 kHz, the video bandwidth is 1 kHz or greater, and the detector is RMS.

20.6.7 Receiver sensitivity

The SUN FSK receiver sensitivity shall be better than S, where S, for binary modulation, is defined as follows:

$$S = \left(S_0 + 10\log\left[\frac{R}{R_0}\right]\right) \text{ dBm}$$

where

S_0 is –91 without FEC and –97 with FEC
R_0 is 50 kb/s
R is the bit rate, in kb/s

See 10.1.7 for additional information on receiver sensitivity.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

20.6.8 Receiver interference rejection

The adjacent designated channels are those on either side of the desired designated channel that are closest in frequency to the desired designated channel. The alternate designated channel is more than one removed from the desired designated channel in the operational frequency band.

The adjacent channel rejection shall be measured as follows: the desired signal shall be a compliant SUN FSK PHY signal, as defined in 20.3, of pseudo-random data at the center frequency of the desired channel. The desired signal is input to the receiver at a level 3 dB above the receiver sensitivity given in 20.6.7.

In either the adjacent or the alternate channel, an unmodulated carrier in the center of that channel is input at the following level relative to the level of the desired signal:

— The adjacent channel rejection shall be greater than or equal to 10 dB.
— The alternate channel rejection shall be greater than or equal to 30 dB.

The test shall be performed for only one interfering signal at a time. The receiver shall meet the error rate criteria defined in 10.1.7 under these conditions.

20.6.9 TX-to-RX turnaround time

The SUN FSK PHY shall meet the requirements for TX-to-RX turnaround time as defined in 10.2.1.

20.6.10 RX-to-TX turnaround time

The SUN FSK PHY shall meet the requirements for RX-to-TX turnaround time as defined in 10.2.2.

20.6.11 Transmit power

A transmitter shall be capable of transmitting at a power level of at least –3 dBm. Devices should transmit lower power when possible in order to reduce interference to other devices and systems.

The maximum transmit power is limited by local regulatory bodies.

20.6.12 Receiver maximum input level of desired signal

The SUN FSK PHY shall have a receiver maximum input level greater than or equal to –20 dBm using the measurement defined in 10.2.4.

20.6.13 Receiver ED

The SUN FSK PHY shall provide the receiver ED measurement as described in 10.2.5.

20.6.14 LQI

The SUN FSK PHY shall provide the LQI measurement as described in 10.2.6.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

21. SUN OFDM PHY

21.1 Introduction

The SUN OFDM PHY supports data rates ranging from 50 kb/s to 800 kb/s. The subcarrier spacing is constant and is equal to 10416-2/3 Hz.

The symbol rate is 8-1/3 ksymbol/s, which corresponds 120 μs per symbol. This symbol period is to be used for *aTurnaroundTime*.

The symbol period used for MAC timing parameters (*macLifsPeriod* and *macSifsPeriod*) shall be the symbol period of SUN FSK operating mode #1 specified in Table 20-6 and Table 20-7.

This PHY includes four options, each one being characterized by the number of active tones during the PHR or PSDU. The total signal bandwidth for each option ranges from 1.2 MHz down to less than 200 kHz.

Two examples of encoding a packet for the SUN OFDM PHY are given in "Examples of IEEE Std 802.15.4 PHY encodings" [B6].

21.2 PPDU format for SUN OFDM

The SUN OFDM PPDU shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 21-1.

STF	LTF	PHR	PHY Payload

Figure 21-1—Format of the SUN OFDM PPDU

The PHY Payload field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 21-2.

PSDU	PPDU Tail	Pad

Figure 21-2—Format of the PHY Payload field

21.2.1 Short Training field (STF)

21.2.1.1 Frequency domain STF

Table 21-1 shows the frequency domain representation of the STF for Option 1. The scaling factor used in the Table 21-1 is sqrt(104/12).

Table 21-1—Frequency domain representation of Option 1 STF_freq(0)

Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value
–64	0	–32	–2.9439	0	0	32	2.9439
–63	0	–31	0	1	0	33	0
–62	0	–30	0	2	0	34	0
–61	0	–29	0	3	0	35	0
–60	0	–28	0	4	0	36	0

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 21-1—Frequency domain representation of Option 1 STF_freq(0) ***(continued)***

Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value
–59	0	–27	0	5	0	37	0
–58	0	–26	0	6	0	38	0
–57	0	–25	0	7	0	39	0
–56	0	–24	2.9439	8	2.9439	40	–2.9439
–55	0	–23	0	9	0	41	0
–54	0	–22	0	10	0	42	0
–53	0	–21	0	11	0	43	0
–52	0	–20	0	12	0	44	0
–51	0	–19	0	13	0	45	0
–50	0	–18	0	14	0	46	0
–49	0	–17	0	15	0	47	0
–48	–2.9439	–16	2.9439	16	–2.9439	48	2.9439
–47	0	–15	0	17	0	49	0
–46	0	–14	0	18	0	50	0
–45	0	–13	0	19	0	51	0
–44	0	–12	0	20	0	52	0
–43	0	–11	0	21	0	53	0
–42	0	–10	0	22	0	54	0
–41	0	–9	0	23	0	55	0
–40	–2.9439	–8	2.9439	24	2.9439	56	0
–39	0	–7	0	25	0	57	0
–38	0	–6	0	26	0	58	0
–37	0	–5	0	27	0	59	0
–36	0	–4	0	28	0	60	0
–35	0	–3	0	29	0	61	0
–34	0	–2	0	30	0	62	0
–33	0	–1	0	31	0	63	0

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 21-2 shows the frequency domain representation of the STF for Option 2. The scaling factor used in the table is sqrt(52/12).

Table 21-2—Frequency domain representation of Option 2 STF_freq(1)

Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value
–32	0	–16	–2.0817	0	0	16	2.0817
–31	0	–15	0	1	0	17	0
–30	0	–14	0	2	0	18	0
–29	0	–13	0	3	0	19	0
–28	0	–12	2.0817	4	2.0817	20	–2.0817
–27	0	–11	0	5	0	21	0
–26	0	–10	0	6	0	22	0
–25	0	–9	0	7	0	23	0
–24	–2.0817	–8	2.0817	8	–2.0817	24	2.0817
–23	0	–7	0	9	0	25	0
–22	0	–6	0	10	0	26	0
–21	0	–5	0	11	0	27	0
–20	–2.0817	–4	2.0817	12	2.0817	28	0
–19	0	–3	0	13	0	29	0
–18	0	–2	0	14	0	30	0
–17	0	–1	0	15	0	31	0

Table 21-3 shows the frequency domain representation of the STF for Option 3. The scaling factor used in the table is sqrt(26/6).

Table 21-3—Frequency domain representation of Option 3 STF_freq(2)

Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value
–16	0	–8	2.0817	0	0	8	2.0817
–15	0	–7	0	1	0	9	0
–14	0	–6	0	2	0	10	0
–13	0	–5	0	3	0	11	0
–12	2.0817	–4	2.0817	4	–2.0817	12	–2.0817
–11	0	–3	0	5	0	13	0
–10	0	–2	0	6	0	14	0
–9	0	–1	0	7	0	15	0

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 21-4 shows the frequency domain representation of the STF for Option 4. The scaling factor used in the table is sqrt(14/6).

Table 21-4—Frequency domain representation of Option 4 STF_freq(3)

Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value
–8	0	–4	1.5275	0	0	4	1.5275
–7	0	–3	0	1	0	5	0
–6	1.5275	–2	1.5275	2	–1.5275	6	–1.5275
–5	0	–1	0	3	0	7	0

21.2.1.2 Time domain STF generation

Given a sequence of N samples $f(n)$, indexed by $n = 0, ..., N - 1$, the DFT is defined as $F(k)$, where $k = 0, ..., N - 1$:

$$F(k) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} f(n) e^{-j2\pi kn/N}$$

The sequence $f(n)$ can be calculated from $F(k)$ using the inverse discrete Fourier transform (IDFT), where the k values numbered from 0 to $(N / 2) - 1$ correspond to tones numbered from 0 to $(N / 2) - 1$ and the k values numbered from $(N / 2)$ to $(N - 1)$ correspond to tones numbered from $-(N / 2)$ to -1, respectively:

$$f(n) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} F(k) e^{j2\pi nk/N}$$

The time domain STF for Option-n (n = 1, 2, 3, 4) is obtained as follows:

STF_time(Option-n) = IDFT(STF_freq(Option-n))

The CP is then prepended to the OFDM symbol.

21.2.1.3 Time domain STF repetition

There are four STF OFDM symbols, and the last 1/2 of the fourth OFDM symbol is negated in the time domain. For Options 2, 3, and 4, the CP is 1/4 of the OFDM symbol. Therefore, for Options 2 and 3, there are 18 repetitions of the 1/4 STF symbol followed by the last 1/2 of the fourth OFDM symbol, which is negated in the time domain. For Option 4, there are nine repetitions of the 1/2 STF symbol followed by the last 1/2 of the fourth OFDM symbol, which is negated in the time domain.

For Option 1, the CP is also 1/4 symbol, and the STF repetition is eight times per STF symbol. Therefore, there are 36 repetitions of 1/8 STF symbol in the four STF symbols followed by the last 1/2 of the fourth OFDM symbol, which is negated in the time domain.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Figure 21-3 shows the STF structure for all four options. Each "s" in Figure 21-3 represents one time-domain repetition of a subsequence of different length for SUN OFDM Option 1, Option 2 & 3, and Option 4.

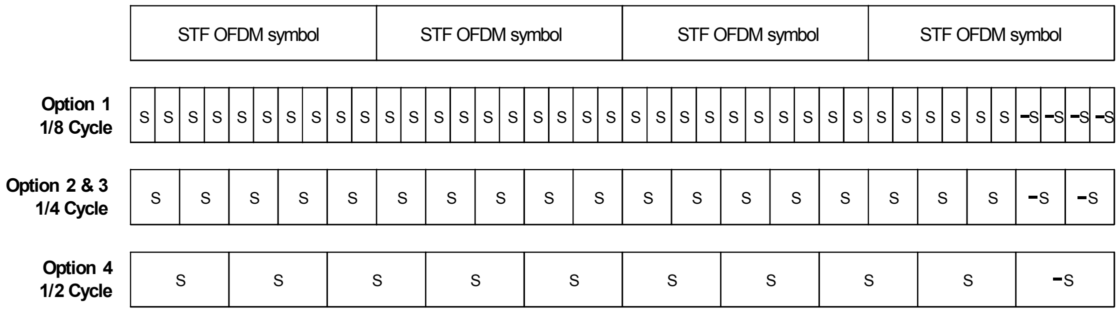


Figure 21-3—Structure of STF for SUN OFDM for Options 1, 2, 3, and 4

21.2.1.4 STF normalization

The STF uses a lesser number of tones than the PHY Payload field. Hence, normalization of the frequency domain STF is required to ensure that the STF power is the same as the rest of the packet. In order to have the same power as the PHY Payload field, the normalization value is as follows:

$$sqrt(N_{active}/N_{stf})$$

where

N_{active} is the number of used subcarriers in rest of the OFDM packet for the particular DFT option
N_{stf} is the number of subcarriers used in the STF

Power boosting shall be applied to the STF symbols in order to aid preamble detection. The boost should be a multiplication by 1.25, which is approximately 1.94 dB.

21.2.2 Long Training field (LTF)

21.2.2.1 Frequency domain LTF

Table 21-5 shows the frequency domain representation of the LTF for Option 1.

Table 21-5—Frequency domain representation of Option 1 LTF_freq(0)

Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value
–64	0	–32	–1	0	0	32	–1
–63	0	–31	–1	1	1	33	–1
–62	0	–30	–1	2	–1	34	–1
–61	0	–29	1	3	1	35	1
–60	0	–28	1	4	–1	36	1
–59	0	–27	–1	5	1	37	1

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 21-5—Frequency domain representation of Option 1 LTF_freq(0) *(continued)*

Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value
–58	0	–26	–1	6	1	38	1
–57	0	–25	–1	7	–1	39	1
–56	0	–24	–1	8	–1	40	1
–55	0	–23	–1	9	1	41	–1
–54	0	–22	1	10	–1	42	–1
–53	0	–21	1	11	1	43	–1
–52	–1	–20	–1	12	1	44	–1
–51	1	–19	1	13	1	45	–1
–50	1	–18	–1	14	1	46	–1
–49	–1	–17	–1	15	–1	47	1
–48	–1	–16	1	16	1	48	–1
–47	–1	–15	–1	17	1	49	1
–46	–1	–14	1	18	1	50	1
–45	1	–13	1	19	1	51	–1
–44	1	–12	1	20	1	52	1
–43	–1	–11	1	21	–1	53	0
–42	–1	–10	–1	22	1	54	0
–41	1	–9	–1	23	–1	55	0
–40	1	–8	1	24	1	56	0
–39	1	–7	1	25	–1	57	0
–38	–1	–6	–1	26	1	58	0
–37	–1	–5	1	27	–1	59	0
–36	1	–4	1	28	1	60	0
–35	1	–3	–1	29	1	61	0
–34	–1	–2	1	30	–1	62	0
–33	–1	–1	1	31	1	63	0

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 21-6 shows the frequency domain representation of the LTF for Option 2.

Table 21-6—Frequency domain representation of Option 2 LTF_freq(1)

Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value
–32	0	–16	1	0	0	16	1
–31	0	–15	–1	1	1	17	–1
–30	0	–14	1	2	–1	18	–1
–29	0	–13	1	3	1	19	–1
–28	0	–12	–1	4	1	20	–1
–27	0	–11	–1	5	–1	21	–1
–26	–1	–10	–1	6	1	22	1
–25	–1	–9	1	7	–1	23	–1
–24	–1	–8	1	8	–1	24	–1
–23	–1	–7	–1	9	1	25	–1
–22	1	–6	1	10	–1	26	1
–21	1	–5	1	11	1	27	0
–20	1	–4	1	12	1	28	0
–19	–1	–3	–1	13	–1	29	0
–18	1	–2	–1	14	–1	30	0
–17	–1	–1	–1	15	1	31	0

Table 21-7 shows the frequency domain representation of the LTF for Option 3.

Table 21-7—Frequency domain representation of Option 3 LTF_freq(2)

Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value
–16	0	–8	1	0	0	8	–1
–15	0	–7	1	1	–1	9	1
–14	0	–6	1	2	–1	10	1
–13	1	–5	1	3	1	11	–1
–12	–1	–4	1	4	–1	12	–1
–11	1	–3	1	5	1	13	1
–10	–1	–2	1	6	1	14	0
–9	1	–1	–1	7	–1	15	0

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 21-8 shows the frequency domain representation of the LTF for Option 4.

Table 21-8—Frequency domain representation of Option 4 LTF_freq(3)

Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value	Tone#	Value
–8	0	–4	1	0	0	4	1
–7	1	–3	–1	1	–1	5	–1
–6	–1	–2	1	2	1	6	–1
–5	1	–1	1	3	1	7	–1

21.2.2.2 Time domain LTF generation

The time domain LTF for Option-n (n = 1, 2, 3, 4) is obtained as follows:

LTF_time(Option-n) = IDFT(LTF_freq(Option-n)).

A 1/2 symbol CP is prepended to two consecutive copies of the base symbol as shown in Figure 21-4. For more details, see 21.4.8.

The time-domain LTF structure is shown in Figure 21-4, and T_{DFT} is the duration of the base symbol.

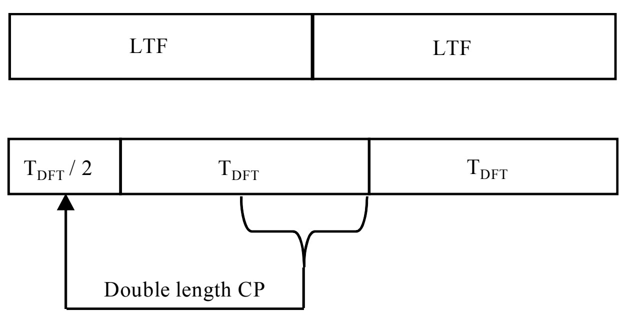


Figure 21-4—Structure of LTF for SUN OFDM

21.2.2.3 LTF normalization

Power boosting is not used by the LTF.

21.2.3 PHR

The PHR field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 21-5. All multi-bit fields are unsigned integers and shall be processed MSB first.

Bits: 0–4	5	6–16	17–18	19–20	21	22–29	30–35
Rate	Reserved	Frame Length	Reserved	Scrambler	Reserved	HCS	Tail

Figure 21-5—PHY header fields for SUN OFDM

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

When the PIB attribute *phyOfdmInterleaving*, as defined in 11.3, is zero (i.e., interleaving depth of one symbol), the PHR occupies three OFDM symbols for Option 1 and six OFDM symbols for Options 2, 3, and 4. When the PIB attribute *phyOfdmInterleaving* is one (i.e., interleaving depth of the number of symbols equal to the frequency domain spreading factor), the PHR occupies four OFDM symbols for Option 1, eight OFDM symbols for Option 2, and six OFDM symbols for Options 3 and 4. The PHR shall be transmitted using the lowest supported modulation and coding scheme (MCS) level, as described in Table 21-9, for the option being used. It is sent to the convolutional encoder starting from the leftmost bit in Figure 21-5 to the rightmost bit.

The Rate field is set to the numerical value of the MCS, as described in 21.4, transmitted MSB first. The data rates for each OFDM bandwidth option can be found in 21.3.

The Frame Length field is an unsigned integer that shall be set to the total number of octets contained in the PSDU (prior to FEC encoding). The Frame Length field shall be transmitted MSB first.

The Scrambler field specifies the scrambling seed, as described in 21.4.11.

The header check sequence (HCS) field is an 8-bit CRC taken over the PHR fields.

The HCS shall be computed using the first 22 bits of the PHR. The HCS shall be calculated using the polynomial $G_8(x) = x^8 + x^2 + x + 1$.

The HCS is the one's complement of the modulo 2 sum of the two remainders in a) and b):

a) The remainder resulting from $[x^k(x^7+x^6+\ldots+1)]$ divided (modulo 2) by $G_8(x)$, where the value k is the number of bits in the calculation field.
b) The remainder resulting from the calculation field contents, treated as a polynomial, multiplied by x^8 and then divided (modulo 2) by $G_8(x)$.

At the transmitter, the initial remainder of the division shall be preset to all ones and is then modified via division of the calculation field by the generator polynomial $G_8(x)$. The one's complement of this remainder is the HCS field. The HCS field is transmitted commencing with the coefficient of the highest order term. An example of HCS generation is given in "Examples of IEEE Std 802.15.4 PHY encodings" [B6].

The Tail field consists of all zeros, which is intended for Viterbi decoder flushing, as described in 21.4.9.

21.2.4 PSDU field

The PSDU field contains the encoded PSDU.

21.3 Data rates for SUN OFDM

There are four OFDM options, each with a different number of active tones. All devices supporting a particular option (1, 2, 3, or 4) shall support all BPSK and QPSK modulation and coding scheme (MCS) levels for that option. All 16 quadrature amplitude modulation (QAM) MCS levels are optional.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The various data rates are shown in Table 21-9. The nominal bandwidth is calculated by multiplying {the number of active tones + 1 for the DC tone} by {the subcarrier spacing}.

Table 21-9—Data Rates for SUN OFDM PHY

Parameter	OFDM Option 1	OFDM Option 2	OFDM Option 3	OFDM Option 4
Nominal bandwidth (kHz)	1094	552	281	156
Channel spacing (kHz)	1200	800	400	200
DFT size	128	64	32	16
Active tones	104	52	26	14
# Pilot tones	8	4	2	2
# Data tones	96	48	24	12
MCS0 (kb/s) (BPSK rate 1/2 with 4x frequency repetition)	100	50	—	—
MCS1 (kb/s) (BPSK rate 1/2 with 2x frequency repetition)	200	100	50	—
MCS2 (kb/s) (QPSK rate 1/2 and 2x frequency repetition)	400	200	100	50
MCS3 (kb/s) (QPSK rate 1/2)	800	400	200	100
MCS4 (kb/s) (QPSK rate 3/4)	—	600	300	150
MCS5 (kb/s) (16-QAM rate 1/2)	—	800	400	200
MCS6 (kb/s) (16-QAM rate 3/4)	—	—	600	300

21.4 Modulation and coding for SUN OFDM

21.4.1 Reference modulator diagram

The reference modulator diagram is shown in Figure 21-6.

21.4.2 Bit-to-symbol mapping

Figure 21-7 shows the bit-to-symbol mapping for BPSK, QPSK, and 16-QAM.

The output values, d, are formed by multiplying the resulting $(I + jQ)$ value by a normalization factor K_{MOD}:

$$d = (I + jQ) \times K_{MOD}$$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

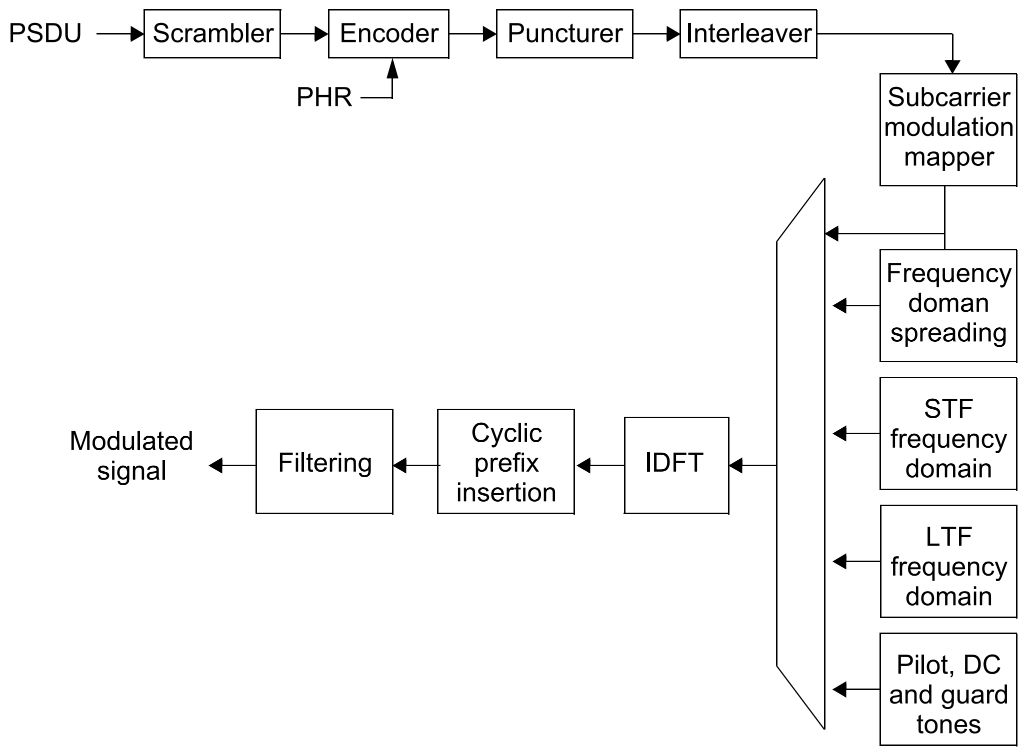


Figure 21-6—Reference modulator diagram for SUN OFDM

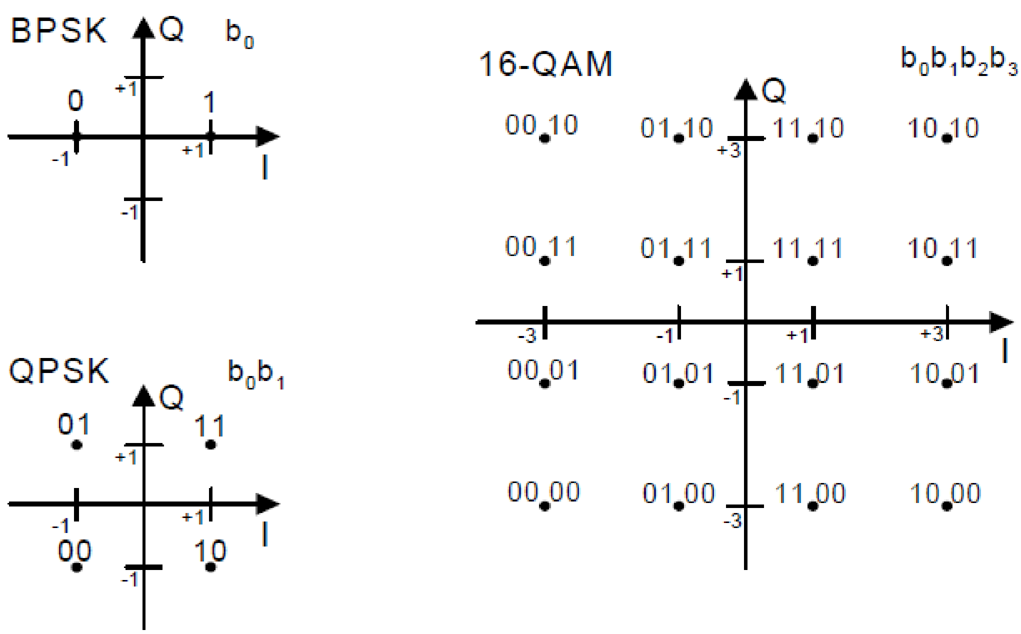


Figure 21-7—Bit-to-symbol mapping for SUN OFDM

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The normalization factor, K_{MOD}, depends on the base modulation mode, as described in Table 21-10. The purpose of the normalization factor is to achieve the same average power for all mappings.

Table 21-10—Modulation-dependent normalization factor K_{MOD}

Modulation	K_{MOD}
BPSK	1
QPSK	$1/(\sqrt{2})$
16-QAM	$1/(\sqrt{10})$

21.4.3 PIB attribute values for *phySymbolsPerOctet*[15]

The number of symbols per octet depends on both the MCS level and the OFDM option, as represented in Table 21-11.

Table 21-11—*phySymbolsPerOctet* values for SUN OFDM PHY

	OFDM Option			
MCS level	1	2	3	4
MCS0 (BPSK 1/2 rate coded and 4x frequency repetition)	2/3	4/3	—	—
MCS1 (BPSK 1/2 rate coded and 2x frequency repetition)	1/3	2/3	4/3	—
MCS2 (QPSK 1/2 rate coded and 2x frequency repetition)	1/6	1/3	2/3	4/3
MCS3 (QPSK 1/2 rate coded)	1/12	1/6	1/3	2/3
MCS4 (QPSK 3/4 rate coded)	—	1/9	2/9	4/9
MCS5 (16-QAM 1/2 rate coded)	—	1/12	1/6	1/3
MCS6 (16-QAM 3/4 rate coded)	—	—	1/9	2/9

21.4.4 FEC

The PHY Payload field shall be coded with a convolutional encoder of coding rate R = 1/2 or 3/4, corresponding to the desired data rate. The convolutional encoder shall use the generator polynomials expressed in octal representation, $g_0 = 133_8$ and $g_1 = 171_8$, of rate R = 1/2, as shown in Figure 21-8. The convolutional encoder shall be initialized to the all zeros state before encoding the PHR and then reset to the all zeros state before encoding the PSDU.

[15] PHY PIB attributes are defined in 11.3.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

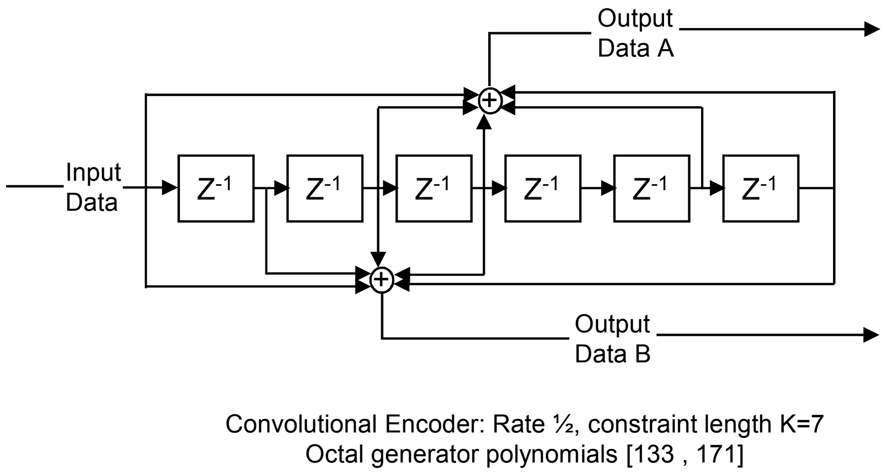


Figure 21-8—Rate 1/2 convolutional encoder

The device shall support also coding rates of R = 3/4, derived by puncturing, as shown in Figure 21-9.

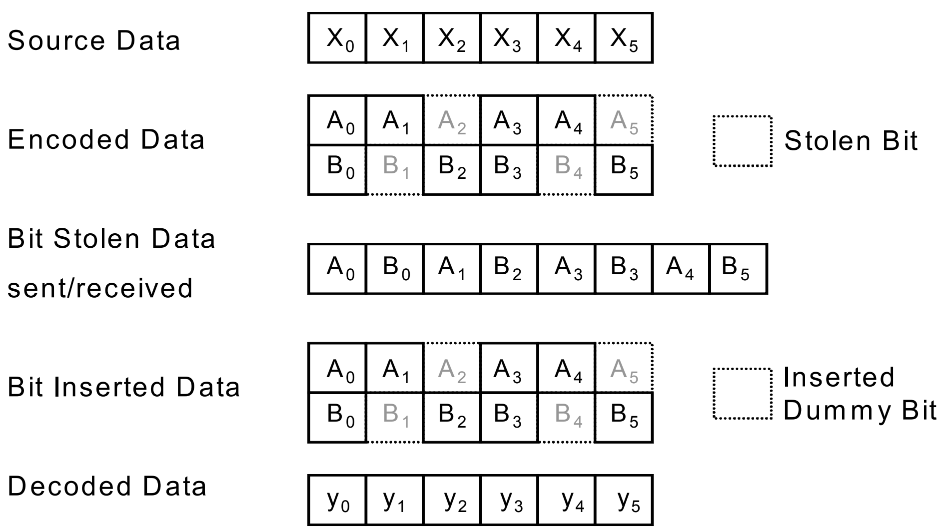


Figure 21-9—Puncturing for rate 3/4

21.4.5 Interleaver

The interleaving process consists of two permutations. The index of the coded bit before the first permutation shall be denoted as *k*; *i* shall be the index after the first and before the second permutation; and *j* shall be the index after the second permutation, just prior to modulation mapping. The coded bits are written at the index given by *j*, and read out sequentially. The index *i* is defined as follows:

$$i = \left(\frac{N_{cbps}}{N_{row}}\right) \times [k \bmod(N_{row})] + \mathrm{floor}\left(\frac{k}{N_{row}}\right)$$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

where

N_{cbps} is the number of coded bits per symbol before any frequency spreading
k is 0, 1, 2,..., (N_{cbps} - 1)
N_{row} is 12 when no frequency spreading is used or 12 / (spreading factor) when spreading is used

The index j is defined as follows:

$$j = s \times \text{floor}\left(\frac{i}{s}\right) + \left[i + N_{cbps} - \text{floor}\left(\frac{N_{row} \times i}{N_{cbps}}\right)\right] \text{mod}(s)$$

where

N_{cbps} is the number of coded bits per symbol before any frequency spreading
i is 0, 1, 2, …, N_{cbps}–1
N_{row} is 12 when no frequency spreading is used or 12 / (spreading factor) when spreading is used

and

$$s = \max\left(\frac{N_{bpsc}}{2}, 1\right)$$

where N_{bpsc} is the number of bits per subcarrier and has the values 1, 2, and 4 for BPSK, QPSK, and 16-QAM, respectively.

Devices shall support an interleaving depth of one symbol, which is associated with a value of zero for the PIB attribute *phyOfdmInterleaving*, as defined in 11.3. The values for N_{cbps} with *phyOfdmInterleaving* set to zero are shown in Table 21-12. In this case, N_{cbps} is defined as follows: 24, 48, 96, or 192 bits for Option 1; 12, 24, 48, 96, or 192 bits for Option 2; 12, 24, 48, or 96 bits for Option 3; 12, 24, or 48 bits for Option 4.

Table 21-12—N_{cbps} for SUN OFDM with *phyOfdmInterleaving* = 0

MCS level	OFDM Option 1	OFDM Option 2	OFDM Option 3	OFDM Option 4
MCS0	24	12	—	—
MCS1	48	24	12	—
MCS2	96	48	24	12
MCS3	192	96	48	24
MCS4	—	96	48	24
MCS5	—	192	96	48
MCS6	—	—	96	48

Devices may support an interleaving depth of the number of symbols equal to the frequency domain spreading factor, which is associated with a value of one for the PIB attribute *phyOfdmInterleaving*. The frequency domain spreading factor can be one, two, or four. In this case, N_{cbps} is defined as follows: 96 bits for BPSK or 192 bits for QPSK in Option 1; 48 bits for BPSK, 96 bits for QPSK, or 192 bits for 16-QAM in

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Option 2; 24 bits for BPSK, 48 bits for QPSK, or 96 bits for 16-QAM in Option 3; 24 bits for QPSK or 48 bits for 16-QAM in Option 4.

21.4.6 Frequency spreading

Frequency spreading is a method of replicating PSK symbols on different carriers.

The DFT index 0 is the center of the channel, as defined in 10.1.2.8. The positive DFT indicies are mapped to the higher frequencies:

center + N × tone spacing

where N is the DFT index.

The negative DFT indicies are mapped to the lower frequencies:

center – N × tone spacing

21.4.6.1 Frequency spreading by 2x

The device shall offer the possibility to create a 2x repetition through frequency spreading.

The spreading is performed by first separating out the data tones from the pilot tones. The data tones are renumbered from $-N_d$ / 2 to –1 and 1 to N_d / 2, where N_d is the number of data tones in an OFDM symbol. As an example with Option 3, there are two pilot tones and 24 data tones with indices from –13 to 13 excluding the DC tone. Therefore, the data tones are renumbered as d_{-12}, d_{-11}, d_{-10}, d_{-9}, d_{-8}, d_{-7}, d_{-6}, d_{-5}, d_{-4}, d_{-3}, d_{-2}, d_{-1}, and d_1,d_2, d_3, d_4, d_5, d_6, d_7, d_8, d_9, d_{10}, d_{11}, d_{12}. The DC tone is omitted since it is not used in any of the OFDM options.

The data tones to be transmitted in the OFDM symbol are placed into the positive data tones (numbered from 1 to N_d / 2). Phase rotations are applied after copying the data tones to the negative frequencies, in order to reduce the peak-to-average power ratio of the OFDM symbol with frequency spreading. The data tones are as follows:

$$d_{(k-[N_d/2]-1)} = d_k \mathrm{e}^{[j2\pi(2 \times k-1)/4]}$$

where k is 1, ..., N_d / 2.

21.4.6.2 Frequency spreading by 4x

The device shall offer the possibility to create a 4x repetition through frequency spreading.

As with frequency spreading by 2x, the data tones are separated from the pilot tones and renumbered. The data tones to be transmitted in the OFDM symbol are placed into the lower half of the positive data tones (numbered from 1 to N_d / 4). Phase rotations are applied after copying the data tones to the negative frequencies and upper half of the positive frequencies, in order to reduce the peak-to-average power ratio of the OFDM symbol with frequency spreading.

$$d_{(k+N_d/4)} = d_k \mathrm{e}^{[j2\pi(k-1)/4]}$$

where k is 1, ..., N_d / 4.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

$$d_{(k-[N_d/2]-1)} = d_k e^{[j2\pi(2\times k-1)/4]}$$

where k is 1, ..., N_d / 4.

$$d_{(k-[N_d/4]-1)} = d_k e^{[j2\pi(3\times k-1)/4]}$$

where k is 1, ..., N_d / 4.

21.4.6.3 No spreading

The device shall offer the possibility to map a symbol into tones without frequency spreading.

The data tones to be transmitted in the OFDM symbol are placed into the negative data tones (numbered from $-N_d$ / 2 to –1) followed by the positive data tones (numbered 1 to N_d / 2).

21.4.7 Pilot tones/null tones

The number of pilot and null tones for each OFDM option are defined as shown in Table 21-13.

Table 21-13—Number of pilot and null tones for SUN OFDM PHY

	OFDM Option 1	OFDM Option 2	OFDM Option 3	OFDM Option 4
Active tones	104	52	26	14
# Pilot tones	8	4	2	2
# Data tones	96	48	24	12
#DC null tones	1	1	1	1

The pilot tones shall be transmitted with different shifts in the frequency domain, in order to enable channel estimation when the channel is changing due to Doppler. Immediately after the second LTF, the pilot shifts change every OFDM symbol to the next set. For Options 1, 2, 3, and 4, there are 13, 7, 7, and 4 pilot sets, respectively. Figure 21-10 illustrates how the pilot sets cycle through the sets for Option 1. Figure 21-11 illustrates how the pilot sets cycle through the sets for Options 2 and 3. Figure 21-12 illustrates how the pilot sets cycle through the sets for Option 4. The pilot sets for each option are unique to that option. The long vertical lines show visually when each cycle through the pilots sets is complete.

The DC tone is numbered as 0.

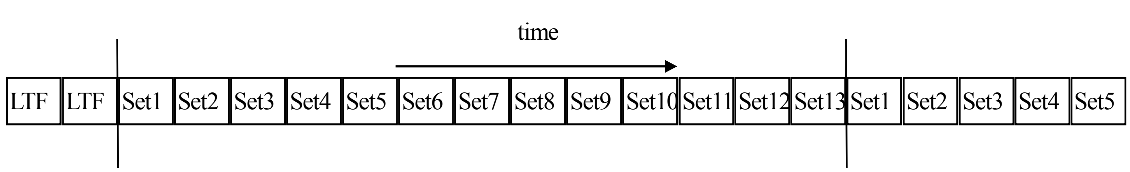


Figure 21-10—Pilot tone sets for Option 1

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

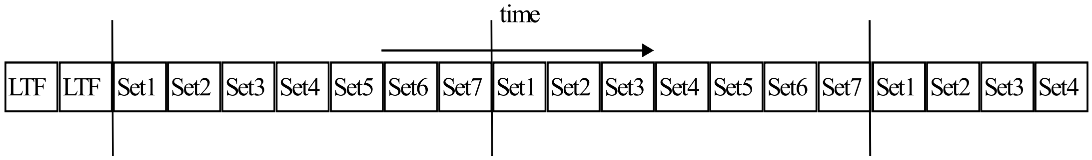


Figure 21-11—Pilot tone sets for Options 2 and 3

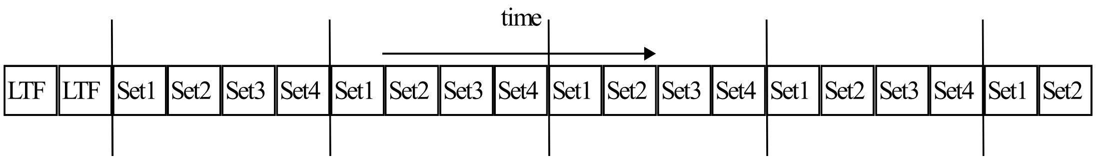


Figure 21-12—Pilot tone sets for Option 4

For Option 1, the device shall use the 13 sets of pilot tones consisting of the subcarriers shown in Table 21-14. The subcarriers for pilot and data are numbered as –52 to 52 with the DC tone unused.

Table 21-14—Pilot tones for Option 1

Pilot set 1	–38	–26	–14	–2	10	22	34	46
Pilot set 2	–46	–34	–22	–10	2	14	26	38
Pilot set 3	–42	–30	–18	–6	6	18	30	42
Pilot set 4	–50	–38	–26	–14	–2	10	22	50
Pilot set 5	–46	–34	–22	–10	2	14	34	46
Pilot set 6	–42	–30	–18	–6	6	18	26	38
Pilot set 7	–50	–38	–26	–14	–2	30	42	50
Pilot set 8	–46	–34	–22	–10	10	22	34	46
Pilot set 9	–42	–30	–18	–6	2	14	26	38
Pilot set 10	–50	–38	–26	6	18	30	42	50
Pilot set 11	–46	–34	–14	–2	10	22	34	46
Pilot set 12	–42	–30	–22	–10	2	14	26	38
Pilot set 13	–50	–18	–6	6	18	30	42	50

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

For Option 2, the device shall use the seven sets of pilot tones consisting of the subcarriers shown in Table 21-15. The subcarriers for pilot and data are numbered as –26 to 26 with the DC tone unused.

Table 21-15—Pilot tones for Option 2

Pilot set 1	–14	–2	10	22
Pilot set 2	–22	–10	2	14
Pilot set 3	–18	–6	6	18
Pilot set 4	–26	–14	–2	26
Pilot set 5	–22	–10	10	22
Pilot set 6	–18	–6	2	14
Pilot set 7	–26	6	18	26

For Option 3, the device shall use the seven sets of pilot tones consisting of the subcarriers shown in Table 21-16. The subcarriers for pilot and data are numbered as –13 to 13 with the DC tone unused.

Table 21-16—Pilot tones for Option 3

Pilot set 1	–7	7
Pilot set 2	–11	3
Pilot set 3	–3	11
Pilot set 4	–9	5
Pilot set 5	–5	9
Pilot set 6	–13	1
Pilot set 7	–1	13

For Option 4, the device shall use the four sets of pilot tones consisting of the subcarriers shown in Table 21-17. The subcarriers for pilot and data are numbered as –7 to 7 with the DC tone unused.

Table 21-17—Pilot tones for Option 4

Pilot set 1	–3	5
Pilot set 2	–7	1
Pilot set 3	–5	3
Pilot set 4	–1	7

The data carried on the pilot tones shall be determined by a pseudo-noise sequence PN9 with the seed “111111111”, as described in 20.4. The first output bit is assigned to the most negative index in Set 1. For example, for Option 3, the first output bit from the PN9 sequence is assigned to the pilot symbol with

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

index –7 and the second output bit is assigned to the pilot symbol with index 7. Table 21-18 shows the mapping from PN9 bits to the pilot BPSK symbols for all OFDM options and MCS levels. Index *n* starts after the LTF from zero and is increased by one every pilot subcarrier.

Table 21-18—Mapping from PN9 sequence to pilot BPSK symbols

Input bit ($PN9_n$)	BPSK symbol
0	$-1 + (0 \times j)$
1	$1 + (0 \times j)$

21.4.8 Cyclic prefix (CP)

For the STF, the CP is defined in 21.2.1.3. For the LTF, the CP is defined in 21.2.2.2. For the remaining OFDM symbols, a CP shall be prepended to each base symbol. The duration of the CP (24 μs) shall be 1/4 of the base symbol (96 μs). The CP is a replication of the last 24 μs of the base symbol. The CP is illustrated in Figure 21-13. In Figure 21-13, *N* is the number of samples in the base symbol, while *L* is the length of the CP that is added to the base symbol.

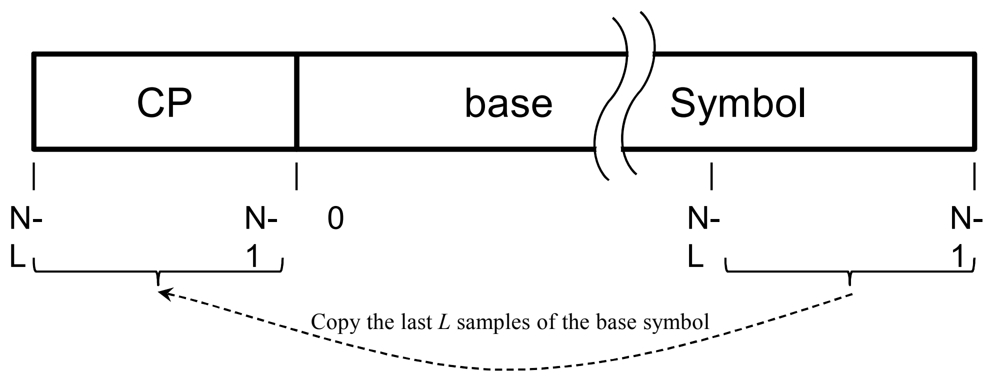


Figure 21-13—Cyclic prefix (CP)

21.4.9 PPDU Tail field

The PPDU Tail field shall be six bits of "0," which are required to return the convolutional encoder to the "zero state." This procedure reduces the error probability of the convolutional decoder, which relies on future bits when decoding and which may be not be available past the end of the message. The PPDU Tail field shall be produced by replacing six scrambled "zero" bits following the message end with six nonscrambled "zero" bits.

21.4.10 Pad field

The number of bits in the PHY Payload field shall be a multiple of N_{cbps}. To achieve that, the length of the message is extended so that it becomes a multiple of N_{dbps}, the number of data bits per OFDM symbol; this case is associated with a value of zero for the PIB attribute *phyOfdmInterleaving*, as defined in 11.3. At least six bits are appended to the message, in order to accommodate the PPDU Tail field, as described in 21.4.9. The number of OFDM symbols, N_{SYM}; the number of bits in the PHY Payload field, $N_{PHYPayload}$; and the number of bits in the Pad field, N_{Pad}, are computed from the length, in octets, of the PSDU (Length is equal to the content of the Frame Length field in Figure 21-5) as follows:

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

$$N_{SYM} = \text{ceiling}[(8 \times \text{Length} + 6)/N_{dbps}]$$

$$N_{Data} = N_{SYM} \times N_{dbps}$$

$$N_{Pad} = N_{Data} - (8 \times \text{Lenght} + 6)$$

The function ceiling() returns the smallest integer value greater than or equal to its argument value. The appended bits, the Pad field, are set to zeros and are subsequently scrambled with the rest of the bits in the PHY Payload field.

If a device supports an interleaving depth of the number of symbols equal to the frequency domain spreading factor (SF), which is associated with a value of one for the PIB attribute *phyOfdmInterleaving*, the length of the message is extended so that it becomes a multiple of N_{dbps}, the number of data bits per SF OFDM symbols, defined as $N_{dbps} = N_{cbps} \times$ coding rate (R), where N_{cbps} is the number of coded bits per SF OFDM symbols as in 21.4.5. The number of sets of SF OFDM symbols, N_{SYMSF}, and $N_{PHYPayload}$ are computed as follows:

$$N_{SYMSF} = SF \times \text{ceiling}[(8 \times \text{Length} + 6)/N_{dbps}]$$

where *SF* may be 1, 2, or 4.

$$N_{PHYPayload} = N_{SYMSF} \times N_{dbps}/SF$$

N_{Pad} is computed as before. In the case of the PHR, 36 should be set instead of 8 × Length + 6 as in 21.2.3.

21.4.11 Scrambler and scrambler seeds

The input to the scrambler is the data bits followed by the PPDU Tail field and then Pad field. The scrambler uses a PN9 sequence that is shown in Figure 17-2. The PN9 scrambler is initialized by one of four seeds. The seed to be used for the scrambler is indicated by two bits in the PHR, as shown in Table 21-19. The leftmost value of the scrambling seed in Table 21-19 is placed into the leftmost delay element in Figure 17-2.

Table 21-19—Initial seeds to be used for PN9 scrambler

MSB scrambler (bit 19 of PHR)[a]	LSB scrambler (bit 20 of PHR)[a]	Scrambling seed
0	0	0 0 0 0 1 0 1 1 1
1	0	0 0 0 0 1 1 1 0 0
0	1	1 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 1
1	1	1 0 1 1 1 1 1 0 0

[a]See 21.2.3.

The scrambled bits are found using an XOR operation of each of the input bits with the PN9 sequence:

$$\text{bit}_n = (\text{input bit}_n) \text{ XOR } (\text{PN9}_n)$$

After scrambling, the PPDU Tail field is set to all zeros.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

21.5 SUN OFDM PHY RF requirements

21.5.1 Operating frequency range

The SUN OFDM PHY operates in the following bands:

— 470–510 MHz
— 779–787 MHz
— 863–870 MHz
— 902–928 MHz
— 917–923.5 MHz
— 920–928 MHz
— 2400–2483.5 MHz

21.5.2 Transmit power spectral density (PSD) mask

The SUN OFDM transmit PSD mask shall conform with local regulations.

21.5.3 Receiver sensitivity

The sensitivity requirements, as described in 10.1.7, for every Option and MCS level are shown in Table 21-20.

Table 21-20—Sensitivity requirements for OFDM options and MCS levels

	Option 1	Option 2	Option 3	Option 4
MCS0 (BPSK ½ rate coded and 4x frequency repetition)	–103 dBm	–105 dBm	—	—
MCS1 (BPSK ½ rate coded and 2x frequency repetition)	–100 dBm	–103 dBm	–105 dBm	—
MCS2 (QPSK ½ rate coded and 2x frequency repetition)	–97 dBm	–100 dBm	–103 dBm	–105 dBm
MCS3 (QPSK ½ rate coded)	–94 dBm	–97 dBm	–100 dBm	–103 dBm
MCS4 (QPSK ¾ rate coded)	—	–94 dBm	–97 dBm	–100 dBm
MCS5 (16-QAM ½ rate coded)	—	–91 dBm	–94 dBm	–97 dBm
MCS6 (16-QAM ¾ rate coded)	—	—	–91 dBm	–94 dBm

21.5.4 Adjacent channel rejection

The definition of an adjacent channel can be found in 11.3.5.

The adjacent channel rejection shall be measured as follows. The desired signal shall be a compliant SUN OFDM PHY signal of pseudo-random data, and the adjacent channel interferer shall be a compliant SUN OFDM PHY signal of pseudo-random data using the same MCS as the desired signal at a power level stronger than the desired signal, as indicated in Table 21-21 for each MCS. The desired signal is input to the receiver at a level 3 dB above the maximum allowed receiver sensitivity given in 21.5.3, and the PER shall be as defined in 10.1.7.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 21-21—SUN OFDM adjacent and alternate channel rejection

MCS level	Adjacent channel rejection (dB)	Alternate channel rejection (dB)
0	10	26
1	10	26
2	7	23
3	7	23
4	5	21
5	2	18
6	–2	14

21.5.5 Alternate channel rejection

The adjacent channels are those on either side of the desired channel that is closest in frequency to the desired channel. The alternate channel is more than one removed from the desired channel in the operational frequency band.

The alternate channel rejection shall be measured as follows. The desired signal shall be a compliant SUN OFDM PHY signal of pseudo-random data, and the alternate channel interferer shall be a compliant SUN OFDM PHY signal of pseudo-random data using the same MCS as the desired signal at a power level stronger than the desired signal, as indicated in Table 21-21, for each MCS. The desired signal is input to the receiver at a level 3 dB above the maximum allowed receiver sensitivity given in 21.5.3, and the PER shall be as defined in 10.1.7.

21.5.6 TX-to-RX turnaround time

The SUN OFDM PHY shall meet the requirements for TX-to-RX turnaround time as defined in 10.2.1.

21.5.7 RX-to-TX turnaround time

The SUN OFDM PHY shall meet the requirements for RX-to-TX turnaround time as defined in 10.2.2.

21.5.8 EVM definition

The relative constellation RMS error averaged over subcarriers, symbols, and packets shall not exceed the values shown in Table 21-22.

Table 21-22—EVM requirements for SUN OFDM PHY

MCS	RMS error
MCS0	–10 dB
MCS1	–10 dB
MCS2	–10 dB

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 21-22—EVM requirements for SUN OFDM PHY *(continued)*

MCS	RMS error
MCS3	–10 dB
MCS4	–13 dB
MCS5	–16 dB
MCS6	–19 dB

The transmit modulation accuracy test shall be performed by instrumentation capable of converting the transmitted signal into a stream of complex samples. The sampled signal shall be processed in a manner similar to an actual receiver, according to the following steps, or an equivalent procedure:

a) Detect the start of packet.
b) Detect the transition from STF to LTF, and establish fine timing (with one sample resolution).
c) Estimate the coarse and fine frequency offsets.
d) De-rotate the packet according to estimated frequency offset.
e) Estimate the complex channel response coefficients for each of the subcarriers.
f) For each data OFDM symbol, transform the symbol into subcarrier received values and divide each subcarrier value with the estimated channel response coefficient.
g) For each N_d data-carrying subcarrier, find the closest constellation point and compute the squared Euclidean distance from it.
h) Compute the RMS average of all errors in a packet:

$$\mathrm{RMS}_{error} = 20\log_{10}\left(\frac{1}{N_f}\sum_{i=1}^{N_f}\sqrt{\frac{\sum_{j=1}^{N_{SYM}}\sum_{k\in U_D}\Delta(i,j,k)^2}{N_d \times N_{SYM} \times P_0}}\right)$$

with

$$\Delta(i,j,k)^2 = [I(i,j,k) - I_0(i,j,k)]^2 + [Q(i,j,k) - Q_0(i,j,k)]^2$$

where

N_{SYM}	is the number of OFDM symbols in the packet
N_f	is the number of packets used for the measurement
$U_D = \{-N_d/2, \ldots, -1, 1, \ldots, N_d/2\}$	is the index set of data tones
$[I_0((i,j,k), Q_0(i,j,k))]$	denotes the ideal symbol point of the *i*th packet, *j*th OFDM symbol of the packet, and *k*th subcarrier of the OFDM symbol in the complex plane
$[I((i,j,k), Q(i,j,k))]$	denotes the observed point of the *i*th packet, *j*th OFDM symbol of the packet, and *k*th tone of the OFDM symbol in the complex plane
P_0	is the average power of the constellation

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The test shall be performed over at least N_f = 20 packets. The payload of the packets under test shall contain N_{SYM} = 16 OFDM symbols. Random data shall be used for the payload.

21.5.9 Transmit center frequency and symbol tolerance

The transmit center frequency tolerance shall be $\pm 20 \times 10^{-6}$ maximum. The symbol clock frequency tolerance shall also be $\pm 20 \times 10^{-6}$ maximum. The transmit center frequency and the symbol clock frequency shall be derived from the same reference oscillator.

21.5.10 Transmit power

A transmitter shall be capable of transmitting at least –3 dBm. Devices should transmit lower power when possible in order to reduce interference to other devices and systems.

The maximum transmit power is limited by local regulatory bodies.

21.5.11 Receiver maximum input level of desired signal

The SUN OFDM PHY shall have a receiver maximum input level greater than or equal to –20 dBm using the measurement defined in 10.2.4.

21.5.12 Receiver ED

The SUN OFDM PHY shall provide the receiver ED measurement as described in 10.2.5.

21.5.13 LQI

The SUN OFDM PHY shall provide the LQI measurement as described in 10.2.6.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

22. SUN O-QPSK PHY

22.1 Introduction

The SUN O-QPSK PHY supports multiple PSDU data rates within each supported frequency band, as described in Table 10-1.

For all frequency bands, spreading is obtained by direct sequence spread spectrum (DSSS) applying various spreading factors. For the 780 MHz, 915 MHz, 917 MHz, and 2450 MHz frequency bands, the SUN O-QPSK PHY may support an alternative spreading mode for the PSDU, called multiplexed direct sequence spread spectrum (MDSSS).

For the 780 MHz, 915 MHz, and 2450 MHz frequency bands, the SUN O-QPSK PHY supports communication with legacy devices according to the specifications in Clause 12, as described in 22.4.

An SUN O-QPSK compliant device shall support at least one of the frequency bands designated in Table 10-1.

For the SUN QPSK PHY, the symbol rate is defined as the bit rate of the SHR.

An example of encoding a packet for the SUN O-QPSK PHY is given in “Examples of IEEE Std 802.15.4 PHY encodings” [B6].

22.2 PPDU format for SUN O-QPSK

The SUN O-QPSK PPDU shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 22-1.

SHR	PHR	PHY payload

Figure 22-1—Format of the SUN O-QPSK PHY PPDU

22.2.1 SHR field format

The SHR field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 22-2.

Preamble	SFD

Figure 22-2—Format of the SHR

22.2.1.1 Preamble field format

The Preamble field shall contain a sequence of 56 bits, all zero, for the 780 MHz, 915 MHz, 917 MHz, and 2450 MHz frequency bands. It shall contain a sequence of 32 bits, all zero, for the 470 MHz, 868 MHz, and 920 MHz frequency bands.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

22.2.1.2 SFD field format

The SFD shall be the sequence described in Figure 22-3.

SFD value (bits 0–15)
1 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 0 1 1 0 0 0 1 0

Figure 22-3—Format of the SFD field for the SUN O-QPSK PHY

22.2.2 PHR field format

The format of the PHR is shown in Figure 22-4.

Bits: 0	1–2	3–4	5–15	16–23
Spreading Mode	Rate Mode	Reserved	Frame Length	HCS

Figure 22-4—Format of the PHR for SUN O-QPSK

For the 780 MHz, 915 MHz, 917 MHz, and 2450 MHz frequency bands, the Spreading Mode field shall be set to one if MDSSS is used for PSDU spreading, as described in 22.3.5. Otherwise, the Spreading Mode field shall be set to zero if DSSS is used for PSDU spreading, as described in 22.3.4. For the 470 MHz, 868 MHz, and 920 MHz frequency bands, the Spreading Mode field shall be set to zero, i.e., MDSSS is not supported.

The SUN O-QPSK PHY supports up to four different PSDU rate modes within each frequency band, and the rate mode is given by the Rate Mode field. Table 22-1 shows the mapping of the bit values to the rate mode.

Table 22-1—Rate mode mapping of the SUN O-QPSK PHY

Rate Mode field (b1, b2)	Rate mode
(0, 0)	0
(0, 1)	1
(1, 0)	2
(1, 1)	3

The Frame Length field specifies the total number of octets contained in the PSDU prior to FEC encoding.

The HCS field is calculated over the first 16 PHR bits, (b0, b1, …, b15), where b0 is the PHR bit at bit string index 0 and b15 is the PHR bit at bit string index 15, as described in Figure 22-4. The HCS field is defined as follows:

$$HCS = (r_0, r_1, \ldots, r_6, r_7)$$

for certain coefficients $r_0, r_1, \ldots, r_6, r_7$. The computation of those coefficients is shown by the following algorithm.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The HCS shall be calculated using the following standard generator polynomial of degree 8:

$$G_8(x) = x^8 + x^2 + x + 1$$

The HCS shall be calculated as follows:

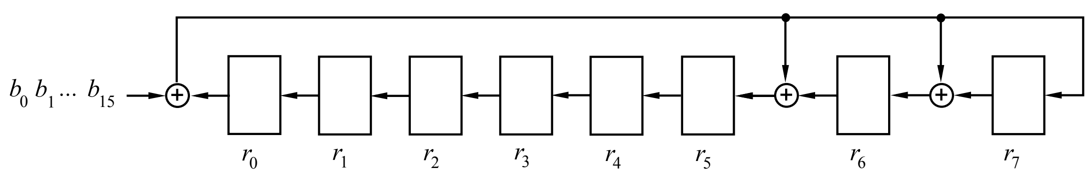
— Let $M(x) = b_0x^{15} + b_1x^{14} + \ldots + b_{14}x + b_{15}$ be the polynomial representing the sequence of bits for which the checksum is to be computed.
— Multiply $M(x)$ by x^8, giving the polynomial $x^8 \times M(x)$.
— Divide modulo 2 by the generator polynomial, $G_8(x)$, to obtain the remainder polynomial, $R(x) = r_0x^7 + r_1x^6 + \ldots + r_6x + r_7$.

The HCS field is given by the coefficients of the remainder polynomial. An example HCS is shown in Figure 22-5.

Bits: 0	1	2	3	4	5–15	16–23
0	0	1	0	0	0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 0 1 0	0 1 1 1 1 0 0 0

Figure 22-5—Example HCS for SUN O-QPSK

A typical implementation is depicted in Figure 22-6.



1) Initialize the remainder register (r_0, r_1, …, r_7) to zero.
2) Shift the sequence b0, b1, …, b15 into the divider beginning with b0.
3) After the last bit, b15, is shifted into the divider, the remainder register contains the HCS: (r_0, r_1, …, r_7) = (b16, b17, …, b23)

Figure 22-6—Typical HCS implementation for SUN O-QPSK

22.2.3 PHY Payload field

The PHY Payload field contains the encoded PSDU.

22.3 Modulation and coding for SUN O-QPSK

22.3.1 Reference modulator

Figure 22-7 shows the reference modulator diagram for the SUN O-QPSK PHY.

The inputs to the reference modulator are the bit sequences of the SHR field, the PHR field, and the PSDU field. Processing of the SHR and PHR gives corresponding chip sequences c_{SHR}, as described in 22.3.2, and c_{PHR}, as described in 22.3.3, respectively. The bits of the PSDU field are processed by a dedicated signal flow depending on spreading mode, as described in 22.3.4 and 22.3.5. In either case, the corresponding chip

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

sequences will be extended by pilots, as described in 22.3.12, resulting in a final PSDU chip sequence c_{PSDU}. The concatenated sequence of chips belonging to the PPDU

$$c_{PPDU} = \{c_{SHR}, c_{PHR}, c_{PSDU}\}$$

shall be O-QPSK modulated, as described in 22.3.13.

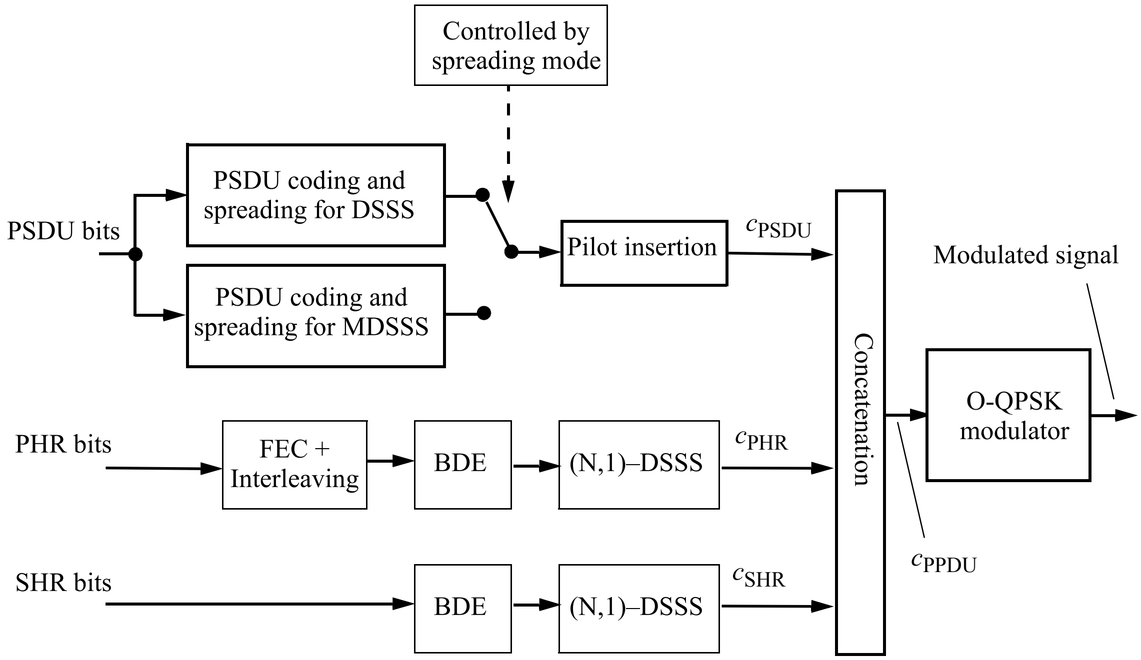


Figure 22-7—Reference modulator diagram

22.3.2 SHR coding and spreading

For the SHR bits, bit differential encoding (BDE), as described in 22.3.8, and subsequently $(N,1)$-DSSS shall be applied, as described in 22.3.9.

Table 22-2 shows the spreading parameters of $(N,1)$-DSSS bit-to-chip mapping.

Table 22-2—SHR coding and spreading parameters

Frequency band (MHz)	Chip rate (kchip/s)	BDE	Spreading mode
470–510	100	yes	$(32,1)_0$-DSSS
779–787	1000	yes	(64,1)-DSSS
868–870	100	yes	$(32,1)_0$-DSSS
902–928	1000	yes	(64,1)-DSSS
917–923.5	1000	yes	(64,1)-DSSS
920–928	100	yes	$(32,1)_0$-DSSS
2400–2483.5	2000	yes	(128,1)-DSSS

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

22.3.3 PHR coding and spreading

The PHR field, as described in Figure 22-4, shall be processed using FEC, as described in 22.3.6, and interleaving, as described in 22.3.7, resulting in 60 interleaved code-bits. For the interleaved PHR code-bits, BDE, as described in 22.3.8, and subsequently (*N*,1)-DSSS shall be applied, as described in 22.3.9.

Table 22-3 shows the spreading parameters of (*N*,1)-DSSS bit-to-chip mapping.

Table 22-3—PHR coding and spreading parameters

Frequency band (MHz)	Chip rate (kchip/s)	BDE	rate ½ FEC + interleaver	Spreading mode
470–510	100	yes	yes	$(8,1)_{0/1}$-DSSS
779–787	1000	yes	yes	$(16,1)_{0/1}$-DSSS
868–870	100	yes	yes	$(8,1)_{0/1}$-DSSS
902–928	1000	yes	yes	$(16,1)_{0/1}$-DSSS
917–923.5	1000	yes	yes	$(16,1)_{0/1}$-DSSS
920–928	100	yes	yes	$(8,1)_{0/1}$-DSSS
2400–2483.5	2000	yes	yes	$(32,1)_{0/1}$-DSSS

22.3.4 PSDU coding and spreading for DSSS

Figure 22-8 shows the signal flow when DSSS is applied to the PSDU (spreading mode set to DSSS).

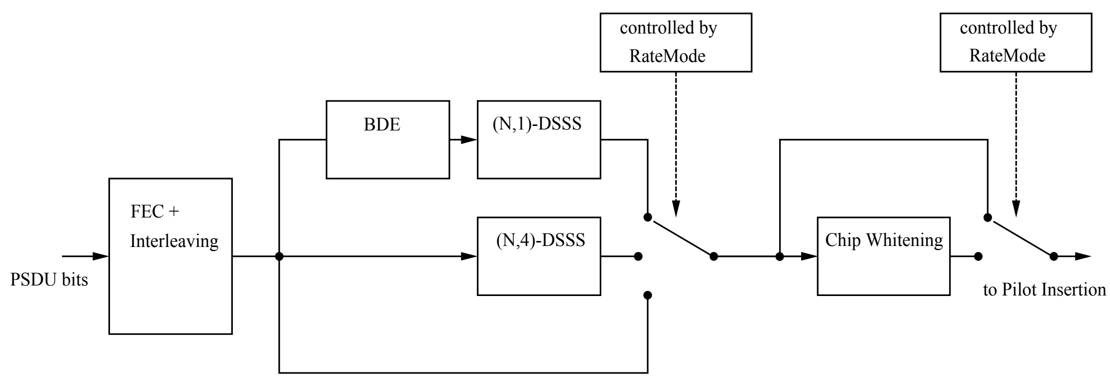


Figure 22-8—PSDU processing for DSSS

The supported PSDU parameters for spreading mode DSSS are shown in Table 22-4. An SUN O-QPSK compliant device shall implement at least rate mode zero with spreading mode set to DSSS, as described in 22.3.4. All other possible combinations of rate mode and spreading mode, as described in 22.3.4 and 22.3.5, are optional.

The PSDU information bit shall be first processed using FEC as described in 22.3.6, delivering a sequence of code-bits. The code-bits shall be interleaved as described in 22.3.7. Depending on the frequency band and rate mode, spreading by DSSS with different spreading factors shall be applied.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 22-4—PSDU parameters for spreading mode DSSS

Frequency band (MHz)	Chip rate (kchip/s)	Rate mode	BDE	Spreading mode	rate ½ FEC + interleaver	Data rate (kb/s)
470–510	100	0	yes	$(8,1)_{0/1}$-DSSS	yes	6.25
		1	yes	(4,1)-DSSS	yes	12.5
		2	yes	(2,1)-DSSS	yes	25
		3	no	none	yes	50
779–787	1000	0	yes	$(16,1)_{0/1}$-DSSS	yes	31.25
		1	no	(16,4)-DSSS	yes	125
		2	no	(8,4)-DSSS	yes	250
		3	no	none	yes	500
868–870	100	0	yes	$(8,1)_{0/1}$-DSSS	yes	6.25
		1	yes	(4,1)-DSSS	yes	12.5
		2	yes	(2,1)-DSSS	yes	25
		3	no	none	yes	50
902–928	1000	0	yes	$(16,1)_{0/1}$-DSSS	yes	31.25
		1	no	(16,4)-DSSS	yes	125
		2	no	(8,4)-DSSS	yes	250
		3	no	none	yes	500
917–923.5	1000	0	yes	$(16,1)_{0/1}$-DSSS	yes	31.25
		1	no	(16,4)-DSSS	yes	125
		2	no	(8,4)-DSSS	yes	250
		3	no	none	yes	500
920–928	100	0	yes	$(8,1)_{0/1}$-DSSS	yes	6.25
		1	yes	(4,1)-DSSS	yes	12.5
		2	yes	(2,1)-DSSS	yes	25
		3	no	none	yes	50
2400–2483.5	2000	0	yes	$(32,1)_{0/1}$-DSSS	yes	31.25
		1	no	(32,4)-DSSS	yes	125
		2	no	(16,4)-DSSS	yes	250
		3	no	(8,4)-DSSS	yes	500

The first DSSS method applies BDE, as described in 22.3.8, to the interleaved code-bits and subsequently the (N,1)-bit-to-chip mapping as described in 22.3.9. The second DSSS method applies (N,4)-bit-to-chip mapping to the interleaved code-bits as described in 22.3.9. In this case, BDE shall not be applied, as described in Table 22-4. The highest PSDU data rate is obtained by bypassing BDE and spreading, as described in Figure 22-8 and Table 22-4.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

When applying (N,4)-DSSS, the sequence of interleaved PSDU code-bits shall be extended by appending a minimum number of pad bits, such that the length of the extended interleaved PSDU code-bit sequence is a multiple of four. The pad bits shall be set to zero.

Depending on the frequency band and rate mode, the output sequence of the bit-to-chip mapper shall be whitened, as described in 22.3.11.

The relationship between the rate mode and the DataRate parameter of the MCPS-DATA.request primitive is described in Table 8-75.

22.3.5 PSDU coding and spreading for MDSSS

Figure 22-9 shows the signal flow when MDSSS is applied to the PSDU (spreading mode set to MDSSS).

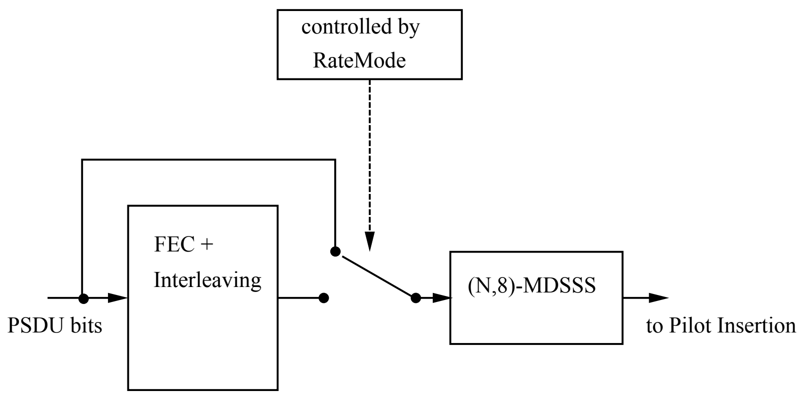


Figure 22-9—PSDU processing for MDSSS

The supported PSDU parameters for spreading mode MDSSS are shown in Table 22-5. The combinations of rate mode and spreading mode described in this subclause are optional.

The use of FEC depends on the rate mode chosen, as described in Table 22-5. When FEC is used, the PSDU information bits shall be first processed using FEC, as described in 22.3.6, delivering a sequence of code-bits. When FEC is enabled, the code-bits shall be interleaved, as described in 22.3.7; otherwise, interleaving is bypassed. The rate mode also determines which (*N*,8)-MDSSS spreading factor shall be used, as described in Table 22-5 and 22.3.10.

Table 22-5—PSDU parameters for spreading mode MDSSS

Frequency band (MHz)	Chip rate (kchip/s)	Rate mode	BDE	Spreading mode	rate ½ FEC + interleaver	Data rate (kb/s)
470–510	not supported					
779–787	1000	0	no	(64,8)-MDSSS	yes	62.5
		1	no	(32,8)-MDSSS	yes	125
		2	no	(32,8)-MDSSS	no	250
		3	no	(16,8)-MDSSS	no	500
868–870	not supported					

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 22-5—PSDU parameters for spreading mode MDSSS *(continued)*

Frequency band (MHz)	Chip rate (kchip/s)	Rate mode	BDE	Spreading mode	rate ½ FEC + interleaver	Data rate (kb/s)
902–928	1000	0	no	(64,8)-MDSSS	yes	62.5
		1	no	(32,8)-MDSSS	yes	125
		2	no	(32,8)-MDSSS	no	250
		3	no	(16,8)-MDSSS	no	500
917–923.5	1000	0	no	(64,8)-MDSSS	yes	62.5
		1	no	(32,8)-MDSSS	yes	125
		2	no	(32,8)-MDSSS	no	250
		3	no	(16,8)-MDSSS	no	500
920–928	not supported					
2400–2483.5	2000	0	no	(128,8)-MDSSS	yes	62.5
		1	no	(64,8)-MDSSS	yes	125
		2	no	(64,8)-MDSSS	no	250
		3	no	(32,8)-MDSSS	no	500

When applying (N,8)-MDSSS, the sequence of interleaved PSDU code-bits shall be extended by appending a minimum number of pad bits, such that the length of the extended interleaved PSDU code-bit sequence is a multiple of 8. The pad bits shall be set to zero.

The relationship between the spreading mode variable and the DataRate parameter of the MCPS-DATA.request primitive is described in Table 8-75.

22.3.6 FEC

FEC shall be applied to the bits of the PHR field.

For spreading mode set to DSSS, FEC shall be applied to the PSDU bits, as described in Table 22-4. For spreading mode set to MDSSS, FEC is enabled depending on rate mode, as described in Table 22-5.

When used, FEC shall employ rate 1/2 convolutional coding with constraint length $K = 7$ using the following generator polynomials:

$$G_0(x) = 1 + x^2 + x^3 + x^5 + x^6$$

$$G_1(x) = 1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^6$$

The encoder is shown in Figure 22-10, where $\oplus$ denotes modulo-2 addition.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

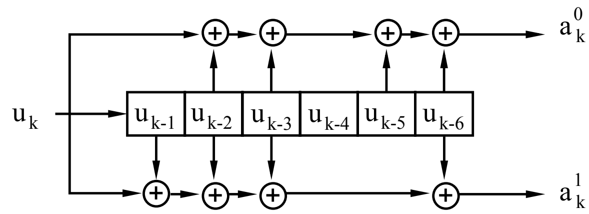


Figure 22-10—Convolutional encoder

Prior to convolutional encoding of the PHR information bits, as described in 22.2.2, the initial encoder state at $k = 0$ shall be set to

$$(u_{-1}, u_{-2}, \dots, u_{-6}) = (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0)$$

and the PHR information bit sequence shall be extended by a termination sequences of 6 zero bits as shown in Figure 22-11.

PHR bits	000000	PSDU bits	000000	pad bits

Figure 22-11—PHR and PSDU extension prior to encoding

Prior to the convolutional encoding of the PSDU, the sequence of PSDU information bits shall be extended by appending a termination sequence of six bits, all zero, and a sequence of additional pad bits as shown in Figure 22-11. The pad bits shall be set to zero and the number of pad bits, N_{PAD}, is computed from the number of blocks, N_B, the total number of uncoded bits, N_D, and the interleaver depth, N_{INTRLV}, as follows:

$$N_B = \text{ceiling}((8 \times \text{LENGTH} + 6)/(N_{\text{INTRLV}}/2))$$

$$N_D = N_B \times (N_{\text{INTRLV}}/2)$$

$$N_{\text{PAD}} = N_D - (8 \times \text{LENGTH} + 6)$$

The function ceiling(.) is a function that returns the smallest integer value greater than or equal to its argument value.

The sequence of extended information bits according to Figure 22-11 shall be passed to the convolutional encoder. The corresponding output sequence of code-bits, z, shall be generated as follows:

$$z = \{\dots\ a_k^0, a_k^1, a_{k+1}^0, a_{k+1}^1, a_{k+2}^0, a_{k+2}^1\ \dots\} = \{z_0, z_1, \dots, z_{2N_D+59}\}$$

i.e., a_k^0 is preceding sample a_k^1. The first sample, z_0, shall be passed to the interleaver first in time, and the last sample, z_{2N_D+59}, shall be passed to the interleaver last in time.

The number of code-bits referring to a single interleaving block, N_{INTRLV}, is defined in 22.3.7.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

22.3.7 Code-bit interleaving

Interleaving of PHR code-bits shall be employed and is separated from the interleaving of the PSDU code-bits. Since the PHR information bits are terminated, PHR code-bits and PSDU code-bits are independent code blocks.

Interleaving of PSDU code-bits shall be employed in conjunction with PSDU FEC, in order to improve robustness against burst errors and to break correlation of consecutive bits when applying (N,4) or (N,8) bit-to-chip mapping. No PSDU code-bit interleaving shall be employed if PSDU FEC is not used, as described in Table 22-5.

The sequence of PHR code-bits consists of a single sequence

$$z^0 = \{z_0^0, \ldots, z_{N_{\mathrm{INTRLV}}-1}^0\}$$

of length $N_{\mathrm{INTRLV}} = 60$.

The sequence of PSDU code-bits consists of N_B subsequences

$$z^j = \{z_0^j, \ldots, z_{N_{\mathrm{INTRLV}}-1}^j\} = \{z_{(j-1)N_{\mathrm{INTRLV}}+60}, \ldots, z_{jN_{\mathrm{INTRLV}}+59}\} \text{ for } j = 1, \ldots, N_B$$

where

N_B is the number of blocks, as defined in 22.3.6
N_{INTRLV} is shown in Table 22-6

In either case, the interleaver is defined by a permutation. The index of the code-bits before the permutation shall be denoted by k, where $k = 0$ refers to the first sample, z_0^j, and $k = N_{\mathrm{INTRLV}} - 1$ refers to the last sample, $z_{N_{\mathrm{INTRLV}}-1}^j$, passed to the interleaver for a given subsequence z^j. The index i shall be the index after the permutation. The permutation is defined by the following rule:

$$i = \frac{N_{\mathrm{INTRLV}}}{\lambda} \times ((N_{\mathrm{INTRLV}} - 1 - k) \bmod \lambda) + \mathrm{floor}\left(\frac{N_{\mathrm{INTRLV}} - 1 - k}{\lambda}\right) \quad k = 0, \ldots, N_{\mathrm{INTRLV}} - 1$$

where the degree λ is given in Table 22-6. The function floor(.) is a function that returns the largest integer value less than or equal to its argument value.

Table 22-6—Parameters of the interleaver

	Degree λ	**Depth** N_{INTRLV}
PHR	6	$10 \times 6 = 60$
PSDU	7	$7 \times 18 = 126$

The process of interleaving a subsequence is shown in Figure 22-12. The first subsequence, z^0, shall be processed first in time and the last subsequence, z^{N_B}, shall be processed last in time.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

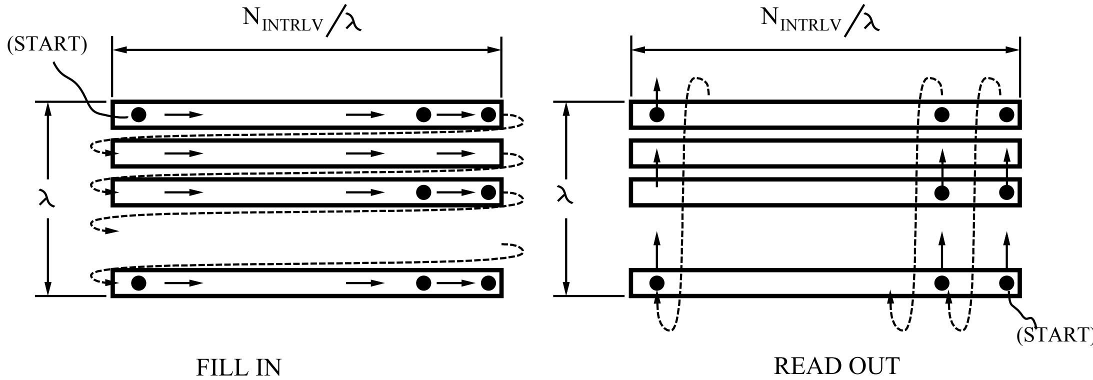


Figure 22-12—Interleaver

The deinterleaver, which performs the inverse relation, is defined by the following rule:

$$k = \lambda \times (N_{\text{INTRLV}} - 1 - i) - (N_{\text{INTRLV}} - 1) \times \text{floor}\left(\frac{\lambda \times (N_{\text{INTRLV}} - 1 - i)}{N_{\text{INTRLV}}}\right) \quad i = 0, \ldots, N_{\text{INTRLV}} - 1$$

22.3.8 Bit differential encoding (BDE)

In conjunction with (N,1)-DSSS, BDE supports noncoherent detection, which is beneficial for robust operation at low-chip SNR.

BDE is the modulo-2 addition of a raw bit with the previous encoded bit. This is performed by the transmitter and can be described as follows:

$$E_n = R_n \oplus E_{n-1}$$

where

- R_n is the raw bit being encoded
- E_n is the corresponding differentially encoded bit
- E_{n-1} is the previous differentially encoded bit

BDE shall be applied to the bits of the SHR field resulting in a sequence $\{E_0^{SHR}, E_1^{SHR}, \ldots, E_{N_{SHR}-1}^{SHR}\}$ of differentially encoded bits, where N_{SHR} is the total number of bits in the SHR, as defined in 22.2.1.1 and 22.2.1.2. The initial state, E_{-1}^{SHR}, shall be zero.

BDE shall be applied to the 60 interleaved PHR code-bits, resulting in a sequence $\{E_0^{PHR}, E_1^{PHR}, \ldots, E_{59}^{PHR}\}$ of differentially encoded bits. The initial state, E_{-1}^{PHR}, is assumed to be $E_{N_{SHR}-1}^{SHR}$, assuring that during noncoherent differential detection, the very first interleaved PHR code-bit can be referenced to the last SHR bit.

If differential encoding is enabled, depending on the frequency band and rate mode, as described in Table 22-4, the sequence of differentially encoded PSDU bits shall be computed as follows. Let $R = \{R_0, R_1, \ldots, R_{2N_D-1}\}$ be the sequence of interleaved PSDU code-bits obtained by FEC and interleaving. The pilot spacing ratio, M, is calculated using the following:

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

$$M = \frac{M_P}{N}$$

where

M_P is the pilot spacing, as described in Table 22-20
N is the parameter of (N, 1)-DSSS, as described in Table 22-4

Note that M is always an integer value. Let E_n be defined as shown:

$$E_n = \begin{cases} R_n \oplus E_{n-1}, & (n \bmod M) \neq 0 \\ R_n \oplus 0, & (n \bmod M) = 0 \end{cases}$$

generating a sequence $\{E_0^{PSDU}, E_1^{PSDU}, \ldots, E_{2N_D-1}^{PSDU}\}$ of differentially encoded PSDU bits.

Referencing to zero for (n mod M) = 0 assures that, during noncoherent differential detection, the very first interleaved PSDU code-bit subsequent to a pilot sequence p, as described in 22.3.13, can be referenced to the pilot sequence.

If BDE is not applied to the PSDU, the frequency band and rate mode, as described in Table 22-4 and Table 22-5, determine whether the sequence of interleaved PSDU code-bits (FEC is enabled) or the raw information PSDU bits (FEC is not enabled) remain unchanged.

22.3.9 DSSS bit-to-chip mapping

For (N,1)-DSSS, a single bit is mapped to a sequences of N binary valued chips. The number of chips, N, depends on the frequency band and rate mode, as described in Table 22-4. This mapping defines a binary (N,x) block code with x = 1.

Table 22-7 through Table 22-13 show (N,1)-DSSS used in the SUN O-QPSK PHY. For N = 1, the chip value is equal to the input bit value (no spreading).

Table 22-7—(2,1)-DSSS bit-to-chip mapping

Input bit	Chip values (c_0 c_1)
0	10
1	01

Table 22-8—(4,1)-DSSS bit-to-chip mapping

Input bit	Chip values (c_0 c_1 … c_3)
0	1010
1	0101

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 22-9—$(8,1)_k$-DSSS bit-to-chip mapping

k	Input bit	Chip values (c_0 c_1 … c_7)
0	0	1011 0001
	1	0100 1110
1	0	0110 0011
	1	1001 1100

Table 22-10—$(16,1)_k$-DSSS bit-to-chip mapping

k	Input bit	Chip values (c_0 c_1 … c_{15})
0	0	0010 0011 1101 0110
	1	1101 1100 0010 1001
1	0	0100 0111 1010 1100
	1	1011 1000 0101 0011

Table 22-11—$(32,1)_k$-DSSS bit-to-chip mapping

k	Input bit	Chip values (c_0 c_1 … c_{31})
0	0	1101 1110 1010 0010 0111 0000 0110 0101
	1	0010 0001 0101 1101 1000 1111 1001 1010
1	0	1110 1111 0101 0001 0011 1000 0011 0010
	1	0001 0000 1010 1110 1100 0111 1100 1101

Table 22-12—(64,1)-DSSS bit-to-chip mapping

Input bit	Chip values (c_0 c_1 … c_{63})
0	1011 0010 0010 0101 1011 0001 1101 0000
	1101 0111 0011 1101 1111 0000 0010 1010
1	0100 1101 1101 1010 0100 1110 0010 1111
	0010 1000 1100 0010 0000 1111 1101 0101

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 22-13—(128,1)-DSSS bit-to-chip mapping

Input bit	Chip values (c_0 c_1 … c_{127})
0	1001 1000 1000 1011 0100 1110 0100 0010 0101 0010 0110 1101 1100 0111 1010 0000 1101 0100 0110 0101 1101 1000 0111 0101 1110 0111 1101 1111 1000 0000 1010 1011
1	0110 0111 0111 0100 1011 0001 1011 1101 1010 1101 1001 0010 0011 1000 0101 1111 0010 1011 1001 1010 0010 0111 1000 1010 0001 1000 0010 0000 0111 1111 0101 0100

Note that for N greater than one, (N,1)-DSSS is always preceded by differential encoding, supporting noncoherent detection of the interleaved code-bits, as described in Table 22-2, Table 22-3, and Table 22-4.

For N equal to 8, 16, and 32, two spreading codes are defined, $(N,1)_0$-DSSS and $(N,1)_1$-DSSS. When applied to either the PHR or the PSDU, the two spreading codes are applied in an alternating manner, denoted as $(N,1)_{0/1}$-DSSS. The even indexed bits of the PHR and PSDU, E_{2k}, for k =0, 1, …, shall be spread with $(N,1)_0$-DSSS and the odd indexed bits, E_{2k+1}, for k =0, 1, …, shall be spread with $(N,1)_1$-DSSS.

When applying (N,4)-DSSS, a 4-tuple of bits is mapped to a sequence of N binary valued chips. This mapping defines a binary (N, x) block code with x = 4.

Table 22-14, Table 22-15, and Table 22-16 show (N,4)-DSSS supported by the SUN O-QPSK PHY.

Table 22-14—(8,4)-DSSS bit-to-chip mapping

Input bits (b0 b1 b2 b3)	Chip values (c_0 c_1 … c_7)
0000	0000 0001
1000	1101 0000
0100	0110 1000
1100	1011 1001
0010	1110 0101
1010	0011 0100
0110	1000 1100
1110	0101 1101
0001	1010 0010
1001	0111 0011
0101	1100 1011
1101	0001 1010

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 22-14—(8,4)-DSSS bit-to-chip mapping *(continued)*

Input bits (b0 b1 b2 b3)	Chip values (c_0 c_1 … c_7)
0011	0100 0110
1011	1001 0111
0111	0010 1111
1111	1111 1110

Table 22-15—(16,4)-DSSS bit-to-chip mapping

Input bits (b0 b1 b2 b3)	Chip values (c_0 c_1 … c_{15})
0000	0011 1110 0010 0101
1000	0100 1111 1000 1001
0100	0101 0011 1110 0010
1100	1001 0100 1111 1000
0010	0010 0101 0011 1110
1010	1000 1001 0100 1111
0110	1110 0010 0101 0011
1110	1111 1000 1001 0100
0001	0110 1011 0111 0000
1001	0001 1010 1101 1100
0101	0000 0110 1011 0111
1101	1100 0001 1010 1101
0011	0111 0000 0110 1011
1011	1101 1100 0001 1010
0111	1011 0111 0000 0110
1111	1010 1101 1100 0001

Table 22-16—(32,4)-DSSS bit-to-chip mapping

Input bits (b0 b1 b2 b3)	Chip values (c_0 c_1 … c_{31})
0000	1101 1001 1100 0011 0101 0010 0010 1110
1000	1110 1101 1001 1100 0011 0101 0010 0010
0100	0010 1110 1101 1001 1100 0011 0101 0010
1100	0010 0010 1110 1101 1001 1100 0011 0101
0010	0101 0010 0010 1110 1101 1001 1100 0011
1010	0011 0101 0010 0010 1110 1101 1001 1100

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 22-16—(32,4)-DSSS bit-to-chip mapping *(continued)*

Input bits (b0 b1 b2 b3)	Chip values (c_0 c_1 … c_{31})
0110	1100 0011 0101 0010 0010 1110 1101 1001
1110	1001 1100 0011 0101 0010 0010 1110 1101
0001	1000 1100 1001 0110 0000 0111 0111 1011
1001	1011 1000 1100 1001 0110 0000 0111 0111
0101	0111 1011 1000 1100 1001 0110 0000 0111
1101	0111 0111 1011 1000 1100 1001 0110 0000
0011	0000 0111 0111 1011 1000 1100 1001 0110
1011	0110 0000 0111 0111 1011 1000 1100 1001
0111	1001 0110 0000 0111 0111 1011 1000 1100
1111	1100 1001 0110 0000 0111 0111 1011 1000

For each codeword, (c_0, …, c_{N-1}), the first component, c_0, shall be transmitted first in time, and the last component, c_{N-1}, shall be transmitted last in time.

22.3.10 MDSSS bit-to-chip mapping

The functional block diagram in Figure 22-13 is provided as a reference for specifying the MDSSS. Each bit in the PSDU shall be processed through the turbo product code (TPC) encoding and multiplexing module. For the horizontal code of the TPC, 3 bits are encoded into n bits with the [n, 3] Hadamard code for n = 4, 8, 16, and 32. The [4, 3] single parity check encoder is employed as the vertical code of the TPC.

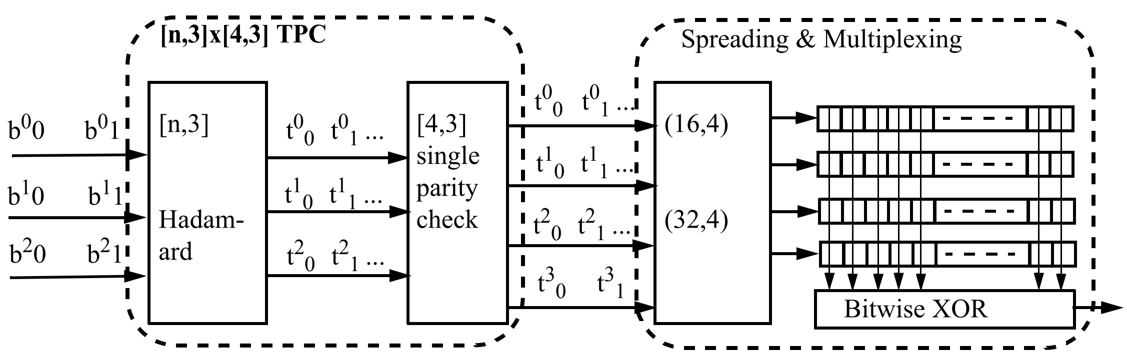


Figure 22-13—MDSSS signal flow

Each octet of the PSDU shall be mapped into three horizontal input rows, as specified in Table 22-17. The three LSBs (b0, b1, b2) of each octet shall be mapped into the first horizontal input row ($b^0 0$, $b^0 1$, $b^0 2$), and the next three bits (b3, b4, b5) of each octet shall be mapped into the second horizontal input row ($b^1 0$, $b^1 1$, $b^1 2$). The last horizontal input row ($b^2 0$, $b^2 1$, $b^2 2$) shall be mapped into the last two bits (b6, b7) of each octet and the reference value of the octet, which is provided by the following equation:

$$p = 0$$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 22-17—PSDU bit stream to horizontal code input mapping

Horizontal code input	$b^0 0$	$b^0 1$	$b^0 2$	$b^1 0$	$b^1 1$	$b^1 2$	$b^2 0$	$b^2 1$	$b^2 2$
PSDU bit stream	Bits:0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	p

For the horizontal coding of the TPC, the three parallel bit streams ($b^x 0$, $b^x 1$, $b^x 2$: $x = 0, 1, 2$) are converted to the three parallel n-bit streams (t^x_0, t^x_1, t^x_2,..., t^x_{n-1}) through the [n, 3] Hadamard encoder. An [n, 3] Hadamard codeword set is given by $[h_0;h_1;h_2;h_3;\overline{h_3};\overline{h_2};\overline{h_1};\overline{h_0}]$, where h_i is the ith row of the $n \times n$ Hadamard matrix and $\overline{h_i}$ is the bitwise inversion of h_i.

For example, if $n = 4$, the [4, 3] Hadamard codeword set is obtained from the (4×4) Hadamard matrix, $\overline{H}(4)$, given in the following equation, and the information bits to codeword mapping table is shown in Table 22-18.

$$\overline{H}(4) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Table 22-18—Information bits to codeword mapping for [4,3] Hadamard encoder

Information bits (b^x_0, b^x_1, b^x_2) **(x = 0,1,2)**	**Codeword** (t^x_0, t^x_1, t^x_2, t^x_3) **(x = 0,1,2)**
0 0 0	0 0 0 0
0 0 1	0 1 0 1
0 1 0	0 0 1 1
0 1 1	0 1 1 0
1 0 0	1 0 0 1
1 0 1	1 1 0 0
1 1 0	1 0 1 0
1 1 1	1 1 1 1

For the vertical coding of the TPC, the single parity check encoder adds one n-bit parity stream (t^3_x, $x = 0,1,...,n - 1$) to the original three parallel n-bit streams (t^0_x, t^1_x, t^2_x). For instance, if n equals four, the single parity check encoder converts the three parallel 4-bit streams to four parallel 4-bit streams as shown:

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

$$T_{unit} = \begin{bmatrix} t^0{}_0 & t^0{}_1 & t^0{}_2 & t^0{}_3 \\ t^1{}_0 & t^1{}_1 & t^1{}_2 & t^1{}_3 \\ t^2{}_0 & t^2{}_1 & t^2{}_2 & t^2{}_3 \\ t^3{}_0 & t^3{}_1 & t^3{}_2 & t^3{}_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

where T_{unit} is the matrix of parallel bit streams and $t^3{}_i$, $i = 0, 1, 2, 3$ are obtained based on the following relationships:

$$\begin{aligned} t^3{}_0 &= \overline{t^0{}_0 \oplus t^1{}_0 \oplus t^2{}_0} \\ t^3{}_1 &= \overline{t^0{}_1 \oplus t^1{}_1 \oplus t^2{}_1} \\ t^3{}_2 &= \overline{t^0{}_2 \oplus t^1{}_2 \oplus t^2{}_2} \\ t^3{}_3 &= \overline{t^0{}_3 \oplus t^1{}_3 \oplus t^2{}_3} \end{aligned}$$

As a result of [4,3] horizontal and [4,3] vertical coding with a parity bit per octet, the PSDU bit stream is transformed into a $[4, 3] \times [4, 3]$ TPC codeword matrix, forming (4×4) 2-dimensional data, as shown in Figure 22-14.

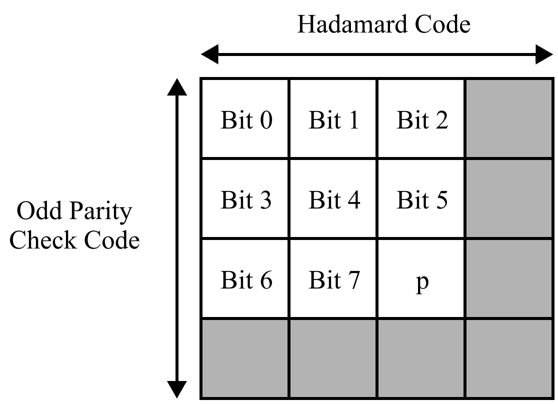


Figure 22-14—Structure of turbo product codeword

For n = 8, 16, and 32, the TPC can be generated by the serial concatenations of T_{unit}.

$$T_{[n \times 4]} = \begin{cases} \begin{bmatrix} T_{unit} \end{bmatrix} &, n = 4 \\ \begin{bmatrix} T_{unit} & T_{unit} \end{bmatrix} &, n = 8 \\ \begin{bmatrix} T_{unit} & T_{unit} & T_{unit} & T_{unit} \end{bmatrix} &, n = 16 \\ \begin{bmatrix} T_{unit} & T_{unit} & T_{unit} & T_{unit} & T_{unit} & T_{unit} & T_{unit} & T_{unit} \end{bmatrix} &, n = 32 \end{cases}$$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Each ith row of T_{unit} is spread with h_i; i.e., the spread ith row of T_{unit} is given as follows:

$$s^i = [t^i{}_0 \oplus h_i \;\; t^i{}_1 \oplus h_i \;\; t^i{}_2 \oplus h_i \;\; t^i{}_3 \oplus h_i] \quad , i = 0, 1, 2, 3$$

Then, the vertically multiplexed bit sequence $\bar{c}_j$ of length 16 can be expressed as follows:

$$\bar{c}_j = ((s^0{}_j \;\&\; s^1{}_j)|(s^2{}_j \;\&\; s^3{}_j)) \;,(0 \le j < 16)$$

$$\bar{c}_0 = ((t^0{}_0 \;\&\; t^1{}_0)|(t^2{}_0 \;\&\; t^3{}_0))$$
$$\bar{c}_1 = ((t^0{}_0 \;\&\; \overline{t^1{}_0})|(t^2{}_0 \;\&\; \overline{t^3{}_0}))$$
$$\bar{c}_2 = ((t^0{}_0 \;\&\; t^1{}_0)|(\overline{t^2{}_0} \;\&\; \overline{t^3{}_0}))$$
$$\bar{c}_3 = ((t^0{}_0 \;\&\; \overline{t^1{}_0})|(\overline{t^2{}_0} \;\&\; t^3{}_0))$$
$$\bar{c}_4 = ((t^0{}_1 \;\&\; t^1{}_1)|(t^2{}_1 \;\&\; t^3{}_1))$$
$$\bar{c}_5 = ((t^0{}_1 \;\&\; \overline{t^1{}_1})|(t^2{}_1 \;\&\; \overline{t^3{}_1}))$$
$$\bar{c}_6 = ((t^0{}_1 \;\&\; t^1{}_1)|(\overline{t^2{}_1} \;\&\; \overline{t^3{}_1}))$$
$$\bar{c}_7 = ((t^0{}_1 \;\&\; \overline{t^1{}_1})|(\overline{t^2{}_1} \;\&\; t^3{}_1))$$
$$\bar{c}_8 = ((t^0{}_2 \;\&\; t^1{}_2)|(t^2{}_2 \;\&\; t^3{}_2))$$
$$\bar{c}_9 = ((t^0{}_2 \;\&\; \overline{t^1{}_2})|(t^2{}_2 \;\&\; \overline{t^3{}_2}))$$
$$\bar{c}_{10} = ((t^0{}_2 \;\&\; t^1{}_2)|(\overline{t^2{}_2} \;\&\; \overline{t^3{}_2}))$$
$$\bar{c}_{11} = ((t^0{}_2 \;\&\; \overline{t^1{}_2})|(\overline{t^2{}_2} \;\&\; t^3{}_2))$$
$$\bar{c}_{12} = ((t^0{}_3 \;\&\; t^1{}_3)|(t^2{}_3 \;\&\; t^3{}_3))$$
$$\bar{c}_{13} = ((t^0{}_3 \;\&\; \overline{t^1{}_3})|(t^2{}_3 \;\&\; \overline{t^3{}_3}))$$
$$\bar{c}_{14} = ((t^0{}_3 \;\&\; t^1{}_3)|(\overline{t^2{}_3} \;\&\; \overline{t^3{}_3}))$$
$$\bar{c}_{15} = ((t^0{}_3 \;\&\; \overline{t^1{}_3})|(\overline{t^2{}_3} \;\&\; t^3{}_3))$$

If n is greater than 4, the spread and multiplexed bit sequence $\bar{c}_j$ of $T_{[n\text{x}4]}$ can also be expressed as the repeated form of the preceding equation.

Then, the final output bit stream shall be bitwise XOR-ed by covering code for the chip and symbol synchronization. For each of (16,8), (32,8), (64,8), (128,8) MDSSS, the covering code shall be bit 0 of $(16,1)_0$-DSSS, $(32,1)_0$-DSSS, (64,1)-DSSS, (128,1)-DSSS code, which are described in Table 22-10, Table 22-11, Table 22-12, and Table 22-13, respectively.

The final output chip sequence, $c_0 \sim c_{4\text{n-1}}$ (n = 4, 8, 16, 32), of (n,8) MDSSS shall be described as follows:

$$c_i = \bar{c}_{\left((i \bmod 4) + floor\left(\frac{i}{n}\right) \times 4\right)} \oplus m_i \;,(0 \le i < 4n)$$

where m_i is the covering code.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

22.3.11 Chip whitening

When spreading mode is set to DSSS, the PSDU chip sequence shall be whitened, depending on the frequency band and rate mode, as shown in Table 22-19. This improves spectral properties of modes with low spreading gain or insufficient spectral properties (i. e., notches) of the spreading codes. For all other modes, no chip whitening shall be applied.

Table 22-19—Chip whitening for DSSS

Frequency band (MHz)	Rate mode
470–510	1 and 2 and 3
779–787	2 and 3
868–870	1 and 2 and 3
902–928	2 and 3
917–923.5	2 and 3
920–928	1 and 2 and 3
2400–2483.5	3

Chip whitening is the modulo-2 addition of a chip of the PSDU at the output of the bit-to-chip mapper with the value of a cyclic *m*-sequence $S_{(k \bmod (2^m - 1))}$ of length $m = 9$. This shall be performed by the transmitter and is described as follows:

$$c'_k = c_k \oplus S_{(k \bmod 511)}$$

where

c_k is the raw PSDU chip being whitened
c'_k is the whitened chip

Index k starts at 0, referring to the first chip of the PSDU at the output of the bit-to-chip mapper and is increased by one at every chip interval. Figure 22-15 shows the whitening process. At $k = 0$, the register shall be initialized as follows:

$$(u_{k-1}, u_{k-2}, \ldots, u_{k-9}) = (1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0)$$

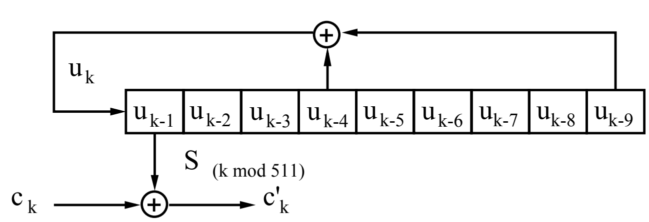


Figure 22-15—Chip whitening

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

22.3.12 Pilot insertion

Periodic insertion of known chip sequences (pilots) into the stream of PSDU chips shall be used to simplify symbol time, channel or phase tracking during receive, taking the finite coherence time of the radio channel into account. The pilot structure of this PHY is shown in Figure 22-16.

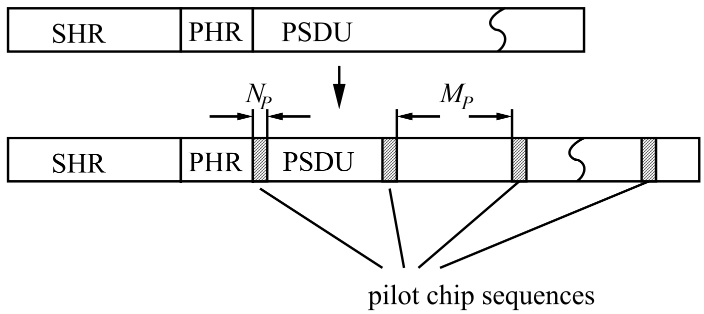


Figure 22-16—PSDU pilot insertion

Since the extended PSDU chip sequence always starts with a first pilot sequence, the complexity of PHR decoding can be also reduced.

The pilot length N_P (in number of chip samples), the pilot spacing M_P (in number of chip samples), and the pilot sequence $p = (p_0, p_1, \ldots, p_{N_P-1})$ depend on the frequency band and are shown in Table 22-20.

Table 22-20—Pilot length, spacing and chip sequences

Frequency band (MHz)	Length N_p (# of chips)	Spacing M_p (# of chips)	Chip sequence $p = (p_0, p_1, \ldots, p_{N_P-1})$
470–510	32	512	1101 1110 1010 0010 0111 0000 0110 0101
779–787	64	1024	1011 0010 0010 0101 1011 0001 1101 0000 1101 0111 0011 1101 1111 0000 0010 1010
868–870	32	512	1101 1110 1010 0010 0111 0000 0110 0101
902–928	64	1024	1011 0010 0010 0101 1011 0001 1101 0000 1101 0111 0011 1101 1111 0000 0010 1010
917–923.5	64	1024	1011 0010 0010 0101 1011 0001 1101 0000 1101 0111 0011 1101 1111 0000 0010 1010
920–928	32	512	1101 1110 1010 0010 0111 0000 0110 0101
2400–2483.5	128	2048	1001 1000 1000 1011 0100 1110 0100 0010 0101 0010 0110 1101 1100 0111 1010 0000 1101 0100 0110 0111 1101 1000 0111 0101 1110 0111 1101 1111 1000 0000 1010 1011

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Let

$$u = \{u_0, u_1, \ldots, u_{N_{PSDU}-1}\}$$

be the sequence of PSDU chips prior to pilot insertion, assuming the first PSDU chip sample, u_0, is transmitted first in time, and the last PSDU chip sample, $u_{N_{PSDU}-1}$, is transmitted last in time. The number N_{PSDU} can be computed as follows:

$$N_{PSDU}(\text{LENGTH}) = \begin{cases} R_{spread} \times 2 \times N_D(\text{LENGTH}), & \text{if FEC is enabled} \\ R_{spread} \times 8 \times \text{LENGTH}, & \text{if FEC is disabled} \end{cases}$$

where

LENGTH is the number of octets in the PSDU
R_{spread} is the spreading rate, i.e., the ratio of number of output chips N to number of input bits x for (N, x) bit-to-chip mapping, as described in Table 22-4 and Table 22-5
N_D is the number of uncoded bits, as defined in 22.3.6

Let L as a function of the variable LENGTH be defined as follows:

$$L(\text{LENGTH}) = \text{ceiling}\left(\frac{N_{PSDU}(\text{LENGTH})}{M_P}\right)$$

Let u^j be the following subsequences:

$$u^j = \begin{cases} \{u_{jM_P}, u_{jM_P+1}, \ldots, u_{(j+1)M_P-1}\} & \text{if } (j+1)M_P \le N_{PSDU} \\ \{u_{jM_P}, u_{jM_P+1}, \ldots, u_{N_{PSDU}-1}\} & \text{if } (j+1)M_P > N_{PSDU} \end{cases} \quad \text{for } j = 0, \ldots, L-1$$

The pilot extended PSDU chip sequence is as follows:

$$c_{PSDU} = \{p, u^0, \ldots, p, u^{L-1}\}$$

22.3.13 Modulation parameters for O-QPSK

A chip value shall be mapped into a binary real-valued symbol out of {–1,1} as follows:

$$\zeta(c) = \begin{cases} -1, & c = 0 \\ 1, & c = 1 \end{cases}$$

In the 915 MHz and 2450 MHz bands, the half-sine pulse shape is used to represent each baseband chip and is as follows:

$$p(t) = \begin{cases} \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{2T_c}\right), & \text{for } 0 \le t \le 2T_c \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

where the chip duration T_c is the inverse of the chip rate, as described in Table 22-4 and Table 22-5.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

In the 470 MHz, 868 MHz, 780 MHz, 917 MHz, and 920 MHz bands, a raised cosine pulse shape with roll-off factor of $r = 0.8$ is used to represent each baseband symbol and is described as follows:

$$p(t) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{\sin(\pi t/T_c)}{\pi t/T_c} \times \dfrac{\cos(r\pi t/T_c)}{1 - 4r^2t^2/T_c^{\,2}}, & t \neq 0 \\ 1, & t = 0 \end{cases}$$

Let $c_{PPDU} = \{c_k\}_0^{N_{PPDU}-1}$ be the discrete-time sequence of consecutive chip samples of the PPDU, where the first sample, c_0, is transmitted first in time and the last sample, $c_{N_{PPDU}-1}$, is transmitted last in time. The continuous-time, pulse-shaped complex baseband signal is as follows:

$$y(t) = \sum_{k=0}^{N_{PPDU}/2-1} \zeta(c_{2k})p(t - 2kT_c) + j\zeta(c_{2k+1})p(t - (2k+1)T_c)$$

with $j = \sqrt{-1}$.

22.4 Support of legacy devices of the 780 MHz, 915 MHz, and 2450 MHz O-QPSK PHYs

When operating in the 779–787 MHz frequency band, a compliant device of the SUN O-QPSK PHY shall be able to communicate with devices of the 780 MHz band O-QPSK PHY within the specifications given in Clause 12.

When operating in the 902–928 MHz frequency band, a compliant device of the SUN O-QPSK PHY shall be able to communicate with devices of the 915 MHz band O-QPSK PHY within the specifications given in Clause 12.

When operating in the 2400–2483.5 MHz frequency band, a compliant device of the SUN O-QPSK PHY shall be able to communicate with devices of the 2450 MHz band O-QPSK PHY within the specifications given in Clause 12.

22.5 SUN O-QPSK PHY RF requirements

22.5.1 Operating frequency range

The SUN O-QPSK PHY operates in the following bands:

— 470–510 MHz
— 779–787 MHz
— 868–870 MHz
— 902–928 MHz
— 917–923.5 MHz
— 920–928 MHz
— 2400–2483.5 MHz

22.5.2 Transmit power spectral density (PSD) mask

The SUN O-QPSK transmit PSD mask shall conform with local regulations.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

22.5.3 Receiver sensitivity

Under the conditions specified in 10.1.7, a compliant device shall be capable of achieving the sensitivity values given in Table 22-21 and Table 22-22 or better.

Table 22-21—Required receiver sensitivity for spreading mode DSSS [dBm]

Frequency band (MHz)	Rate mode			
	0	1	2	3
470–510	–110	–105	–100	–95
779–787	–105	–100	–95	–90
868–870	–110	–105	–100	–95
902–928	–105	–100	–95	–90
917–923.5	–105	–100	–95	–90
920–928	–110	–105	–100	–95
2400–2483.5	–105	–100	–95	–90

Table 22-22—Required receiver sensitivity for spreading mode MDSSS [dBm]

Frequency band (MHz)	Rate mode			
	0	1	2	3
470–510	not supported			
779–787	–105	–100	–95	–90
868–870	not supported			
902–928	–105	–100	–95	–90
917–923.5	–105	–100	–95	–90
920–928	not supported			
2400–2483.5	–105	–100	–95	–90

22.5.4 Adjacent channel rejection

The interference-to-signal ratio (ISR) is the ratio of the signal power of an interferer relative to the signal power of the desired signal. The adjacent channel rejection shall be measured as follows: the desired signal shall be an SUN O-QPSK compliant signal of pseudo-random PSDU data. For a given rate mode, the desired signal is input to the receiver at a level 3 dB above the maximum allowed receiver sensitivity of Table 22-21 and Table 22-22.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The interfering signal shall be an SUN O-QPSK compliant signal with the following characteristics:

- Pseudo-random PSDU
- Spreading mode set to either DSSS or MDSSS
- The same chip rate as the desired signal
- Chip-whitening enabled

The interferer is separated in frequency by $|\Delta f|$ from the carrier frequency of the desired channel with an ISR, as shown in Table 22-23. The test shall be performed for only one interfering signal at a time. The receiver shall meet the error rate criteria defined in 10.1.7 under these conditions.

Table 22-23—Minimum interference-to-signal ratio (ISR) requirements depending on $|\Delta f|$

Frequency band (MHz) 470–510	$|\Delta f|$ (MHz)	0.4	0.8
	ISR (dB)	10	30
Frequency band (MHz) 779–787	$|\Delta f|$ (MHz)	2.0	4.0
	ISR (dB)	10	30
Frequency band (MHz) 868–870	$|\Delta f|$ (MHz)	0.65	1.225
	ISR (dB)	10	30
Frequency band (MHz) 902–928	$|\Delta f|$ (MHz)	2.0	4.0
	ISR (dB)	10	30
Frequency band (MHz) 920–928	$|\Delta f|$ (MHz)	0.2	0.4
	ISR (dB)	10	30
Frequency band (MHz) 2400–2483.5	$|\Delta f|$ (MHz)	5.0	10.0
	ISR (dB)	10	30

22.5.5 TX-to-RX turnaround time

The SUN O-QPSK PHY shall meet the requirements for TX-to-RX turnaround time as defined in 10.2.1.

22.5.6 RX-to-TX turnaround time

The SUN O-QPSK PHY shall meet the requirements for RX-to-TX turnaround time as defined in 10.2.2.

22.5.7 EVM definition

A transmitter shall have EVM values of less than 35% when measured for 1000 chips. The EVM measurement shall conform with 10.2.3.

22.5.8 Transmit center frequency and symbol tolerance

The transmit center frequency tolerance shall be $\pm 20 \times 10^{-6}$ maximum. When communicating with legacy devices, as described in 22.4, the receiver shall be capable of receiving signals with a center frequency offset tolerance of up to $\pm 40 \times 10^{-6}$.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The symbol clock frequency tolerance shall be $\pm 20 \times 10^{-6}$ maximum. When communicating with legacy devices, as described in 22.4, the receiver shall be capable of receiving signals with a symbol clock frequency tolerance of up to $\pm 40 \times 10^{-6}$.

The transmit center frequency and the symbol clock frequency shall be derived from the same reference oscillator.

22.5.9 Transmit power

A transmitter shall be capable of transmitting at least –3 dBm. Devices should transmit lower power when possible in order to reduce interference to other devices and systems.

The maximum transmit power is limited by local regulatory bodies.

22.5.10 Receiver maximum input level of desired signal

The SUN O-QPSK PHY shall have a receiver maximum input level greater than or equal to –20 dBm using the measurement defined in 10.2.4.

22.5.11 Receiver ED

The SUN O-QPSK PHY shall provide the receiver ED measurement as described in 10.2.5.

22.5.12 LQI

The SUN O-QPSK PHY shall provide the LQI measurement as described in 10.2.6.

22.5.13 CCA

The detection time, *aCcaTime* (as defined in 11.2), for CCA is shown in Table 22-24; see 10.2.7 for information on the 920 MHz band. The ED threshold shall correspond to a received signal power of at most –90 dBm, when applying CCA Mode 1 or CCA Mode 3, as defined in 10.2.7.

Table 22-24—CCA duration for SUN O-QPSK PHY

Frequency band (MHz)	*aCcaTime* (# of symbols)
470–510	4
779–787	8
868–870	4
902–928	8
917–923.5	8
2400–2483.5	8

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

23. LECIM DSSS PHYs

23.1 PPDU format for DSSS

The PSDU field carries the data of the PPDU. The size of the field is set by the value of *phyLecimDsssPsduSize*. The composition of the PSDU field is affected by the optional use of tail biting, as described in 23.2.3. The PPDU shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 23-1.

Octets: 0/2/4	**0/1**	**16/24/32**
Preamble	SFD	PSDU
SHR		PHY payload

Figure 23-1—Format of the LECIM DSSS PPDU

The Preamble field length may be selected via *phyLecimDsssPreambleSize*. The SFD values and LECIM DSSS preamble values are given in Table 23-1.

Table 23-1—LECIM DSSS preamble and SFD values

phyLecimDsssPreambleSize	**Preamble field**	**SFD field (if *phyLecimDsssSfdPresent* is TRUE)**
0	Not present	Not present
16	0011 1111 0101 1001	0011 1000
32	0000 1111 1101 1011 0110 0111 0010 1010	1000 0100

The SFD field, if present, indicates the beginning of the frame. One SFD is used when the preamble length is 2 octets, and a second SFD is used when the preamble length is 4 octets. Both SFDs are given in Table 23-1.

For the purposes of calculating the Ack frame timing required in 6.7.5, the default length of the Preamble size shall be 4 octets.

23.2 Modulation and spreading

In this subclause, modulation symbol refers to the output of the BPSK/O-QPSK modulator, as shown in Figure 23-2.

23.2.1 Data rate

The information data rate depends on the band in use, the spreading factor, the modulation rate, and the modulation being used, and it is calculated, in kb/s, as follows:

$$\text{DataRate} = 0.5 \times \frac{(phyLECIMDSSSPPDUModulationRate \times ChipPerSymbol)}{phyLECIMDSSSPSDUSpreadingFactor}$$

where *ChipPerSymbol* = 1 when BPSK modulation is used and *ChipPerSymbol* = 2 when O-QPSK modulation is used. The term 0.5 represents the FEC ½ coding.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

23.2.2 Reference modulator diagram

The functional block diagram in Figure 23-2 is provided as a reference for specifying the LECIM DSSS PHY modulation. All binary data contained in the SHR and PSDU shall be encoded using the modulation shown in Figure 23-2.

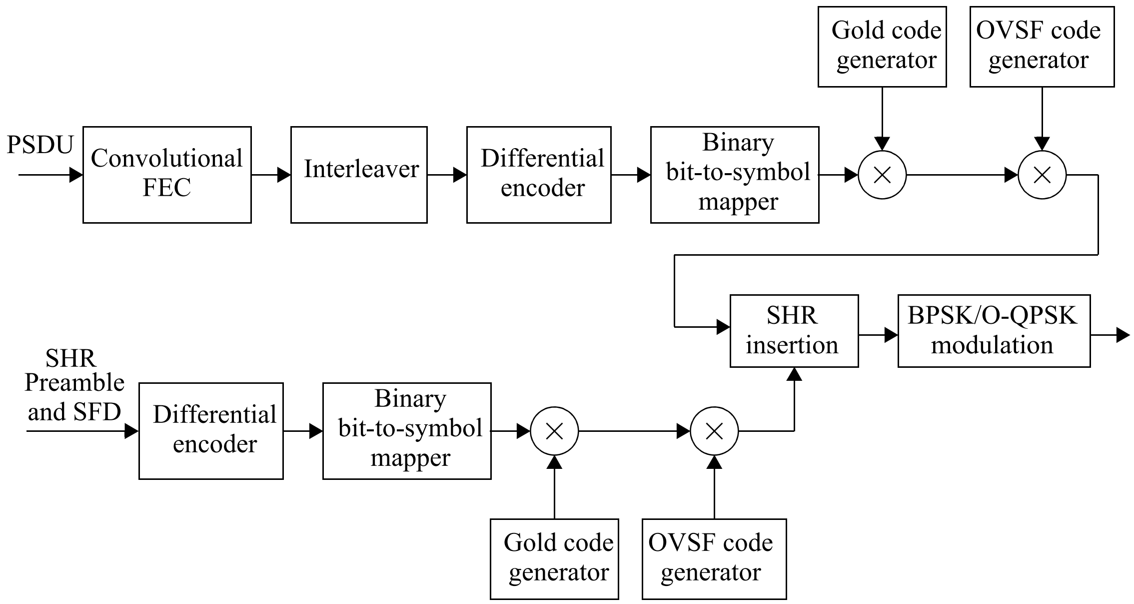


Figure 23-2—LECIM DSSS reference modulator diagram

23.2.3 Convolutional FEC encoding

FEC shall employ rate 1/2 convolutional coding with constraint length $k = 7$ using the following generator polynomials:

$$G_0(x) = 1 + x^2 + x^3 + x^5 + x^6$$

$$G_1(x) = 1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^6$$

The encoder is shown in Figure 23-3, where $\oplus$ denotes modulo-2 addition.

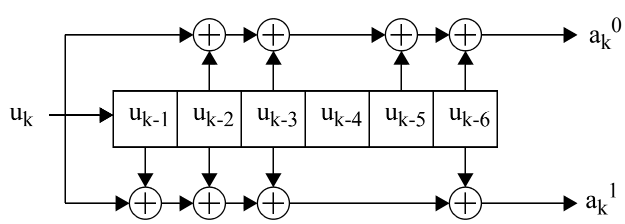


Figure 23-3—LECIM DSSS PHY convolutional encoder

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Tail biting may optionally be employed. When *phyLECIMFECTailBitingEnabled* is set to TRUE, the possible sizes of the PSDU are as defined in Figure 23-1 and the initial encoder state at $k = 0$ shall be set to the last six bits of the PSDU.

When *phyLECIMFECTailBitingEnabled* is set to FALSE, the initial encoder state at $k = 0$ shall be set to $(u_{-1}, u_{-2}, \ldots, u_{-6}) = (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0)$. The size of the PSDU is reduced by one octet, and the PSDU shall be extended to equal one of the possible sizes defined in Figure 23-1 by appending a termination sequence of eight bits, all zero.

23.2.4 Interleaver

The output of the convolutional encoder is interleaved using a pruned bit reversal interleaving algorithm.

The text that follows contains examples of bit reversal interleavers for three PSDU sizes (256, 384, and 512 bits). PSDU sizes that are not powers of two (e.g., 384) employ pruning.

23.2.4.1 256-bit fragment size

If the input sequence into the interleaver is represented by

$$[S_0\ S_1 \ldots S_{255}]$$

then the output sequence of the interleaver can be described as follows:

$$[S_0\ S_N\ \ldots\ S_{255}]$$

The value N for the M^{th} output is determined as the bit-reversal of the value M.

Representing the value M as a binary representation

$$M = [m_7\ m_6 \ldots m_0]$$

where m_i are the binary digits, then

$$N = [m_0\ m_1 \ldots m_7]$$

where M is incremented sequentially from 0 to 255.

For example, if $M = 1 = 0000\ 0001_2$, then $N = 1000\ 0000_2 = 128$

23.2.4.2 384-bit fragment size

If the input sequence into the interleaver is represented by

$$[S_0\ S_{1\ldots}S_{383}]$$

then the output sequence of the interleaver can be described as follows:

$$[S_0\ S_N\ \ldots\ S_{383}]$$

The value N for the M_{th} output is determined as the bit-reversal of the value M.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Representing the value M as a binary representation

$$M = [m_8\ m_7 \ldots m_0]$$

where m_i are the binary digits, then

$$N = [m_0\ m_1 \ldots m_8]$$

where M is incremented sequentially from 0 to 511 and M' are the ordered set of M whose corresponding N is less than 384 (this is the pruning process).

For example:

- If $M = 1 = 00000\ 0001_2$, then $N = 10000\ 0000_2 = 256$.
- If $M = 2 = 00000\ 0010_2$, then $N = 01000\ 0000_2 = 128$.
- If $M = 3 = 00000\ 0011_2$, then $N = 11000\ 0000_2 = 384$, and since it is not less than 384, it would not be included in the ordered set M' (i.e., it is pruned from the result).
- If $M = 4 = 00000\ 0100_2$, then $N = 00100\ 0000_2 = 64$.

An example is given in "Examples of IEEE Std 802.15.4 PHY encodings" [B6].

23.2.4.3 512-bit fragment size

If the input sequence into the interleaver is represented by

$$[S_0\ S_1 \ldots S_{511}]$$

then the output sequence of the interleaver can be described as follows:

$$[S_0\ S_N\ \ldots\ S_{511}]$$

The value N for the M^{th} output is determined as the bit-reversal of the value M.

Representing the value M as a binary representation

$$M = [m_8\ m_7 \ldots m_0]$$

where m_i are the binary digits, then

$$N = [m_0\ m_1 \ldots m_8]$$

where M is incremented sequentially from 0 to 511.

For example, if $M = 1 = 00000\ 0001_2$, then $N = 10000\ 0000_2 = 256$.

23.2.5 Differential encoding

The differential encoding of the DSSS PHY is described in 13.2.3.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

23.2.6 Bit-to-symbol and symbol-to-chip encoding

Each input bit shall be mapped to a binary symbol as follows:

$$x[n] = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } b[n] = 0 \\ -1, & \text{if } b[n] = 1 \end{cases}$$

These binary symbols shall be spread to chip-rate with SF. This process is illustrated in Figure 23-4 for SF = 8. The symbols are first up-sampled SF times and interpolated using a scaled boxcar filter, as shown in Figure 23-5, i.e., the symbol is repeated SF times at chip-rate. Note that this is a mathematical representation of the direct sequence spreading operation. This process can be implemented in an alternative manner that is mathematically equivalent. The up-sampled symbols are multiplied by a specified Gold code to create the spread signal.

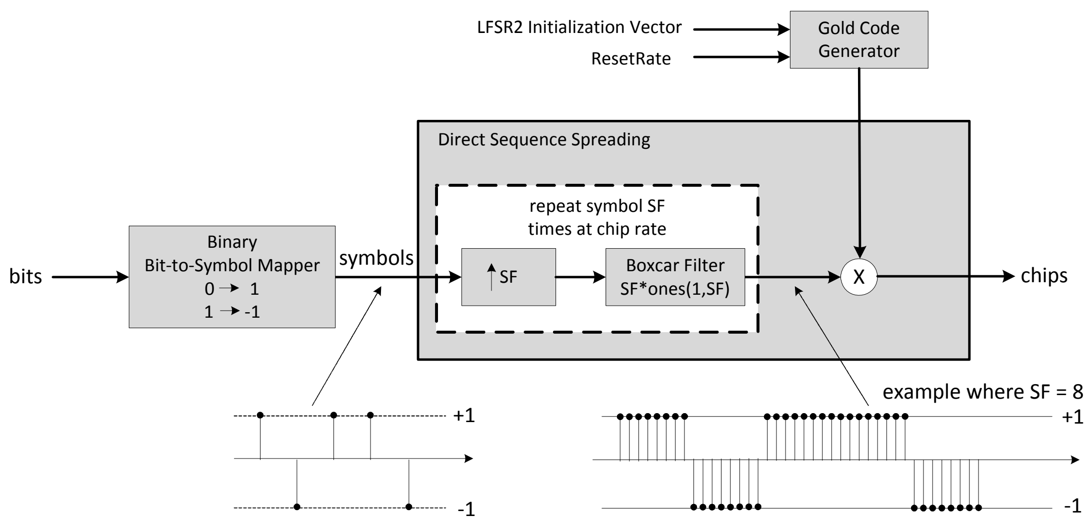


Figure 23-4—Bit-to-chip diagram for LECIM DSSS PHY

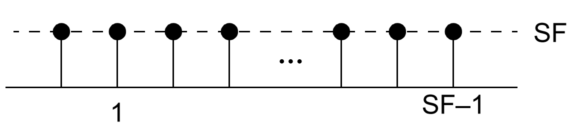


Figure 23-5—Boxcar filter

23.2.6.1 Gold code generator

Gold code sequences are a large family of easily parameterized PN sequences with good periodic cross-correlation and off-peak auto-correlation properties. A Gold code sequence is derived from the binary addition (XOR) of two maximum length sequences (m-sequences, or MLS). The m-sequences are generated using Fibonacci linear feedback shift registers (LFSR). Each LFSR is constructed from primitive (or prime) polynomials over Galois field 2 (GF[2]). The resulting sequences thus constitute segments of a set of Gold sequences. The Gold sequence can be parameterized by setting the initialization vector of LFSR2 to different values (LFSR1 is always initialized to 0x1).

— $m = 25$ (length of LFSR)
— $n = 2^m - 1 = 33{,}554{,}431$ (length of Gold code)
— $n + 2 = 33{,}554{,}433$ (total Gold sequences) $= a, b, a \times b, a \times Tb, a \times T2b, \ldots$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

LFSR (MLS) generator polynomials:

— $p1(x) = x^{25} + x^3 + 1$
— $p2(x) = x^{25} + x^3 + x^2 + x + 1$

23.2.6.2 Orthogonal variable spreading factor (OVSF) code generator

The OVSF code is the same as the Walsh code, except that each sequence has a different index number in the code set, which results from their different generator algorithms.

In a LECIM system, a Gold code shall be used inside a co-located orthogonal network as the primary code. An OVSF code is optionally used to identify the co-located orthogonal networks and clusters in order to provide double protection from outside interference.

The OVSF code is defined recursively by a tree structure, as shown in Figure 23-6.

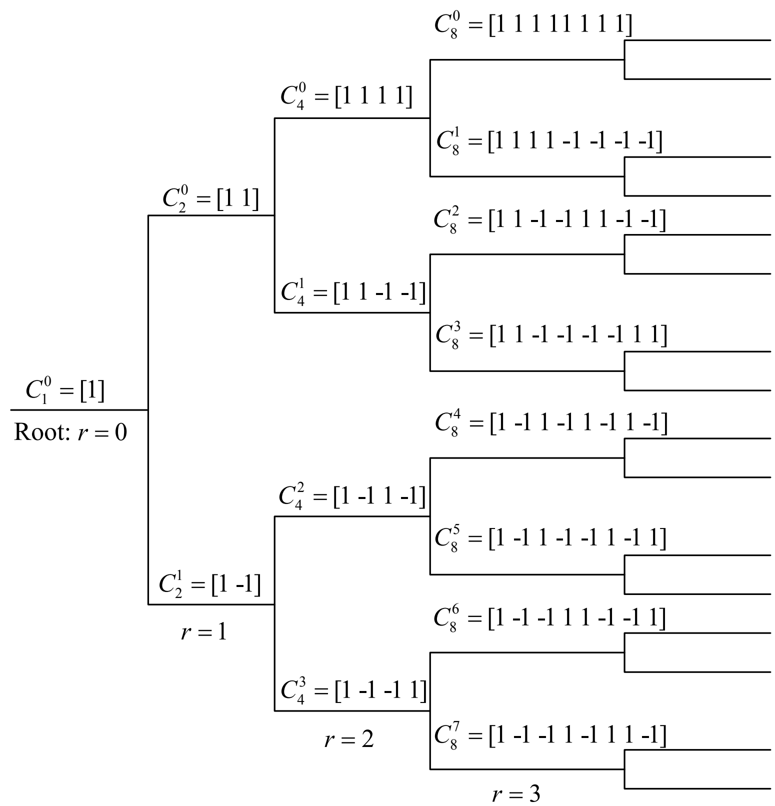


Figure 23-6—OVSF code tree

The OVSF code generator block outputs may be specified by two parameters in the mask of the block: the SF and the code index. In Figure 23-6, $C_N^{\ i}$ is a code of length $N = 2^r$ at depth *r* in the tree. The code index *i* has the range $\{0, 1, \ldots, N-1\}$, which specifies how far down the column of the tree at depth *r* the code appears. The root code $C_1^{\ 0}$ has length $N = 1$, code index $i = 0$, and depth $r = 0$. Two branches of length 2^{r+1} leading out of C^i_N are labeled by the sequences $[C^i_N\ C^i_N]$ and $[C^i_N\ \overline{C}^i_N]$, where $\overline{C}^i_N = -C_N^{\ i}$.

To recover the code from the SF and the code index, the following procedure is applied. Convert the code index *i* into binary form. If $i < N-1$, add zeros to the left side of this binary code index in order to make it have the *N*-bits form. To choose the specific code in the tree, the path is determined using the binary path

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

sequence of the form $x = [x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_r]$. This binary path sequence describes the path from the root to the specific code, according to the following rule: the path takes the upper branch from the code at depth r' if $x_{r'} = 0$, or the lower branch if $x_{r'} = 1$ for $1 \le r' \le r$. For example, with the root $C_i^0 = [1]$ and $r = \log_2 N$ of $C^i{}_N$, then $C_{2N}{}^{2i}$ and $C_{2N}{}^{2i+1}$ are defined as follows:

$$C_{2N}{}^{2i} = [C^i{}_N\ C^i{}_N] \text{ if } x_{r+1} = 0 \text{ and } C_{2N}{}^{2i+1} = [C^i{}_N\ \overline{C}^i{}_N] \text{ if } x_{r+1} = 1.$$

To make the just described procedure more clear, a specific example is given. Assuming the code has SF $N = 16$ and code index $i = 6$, the steps are as follows:

a) Convert $i = 6$ to the binary number 110.
b) Add one 0 to the left to obtain 0110, which has length $r = \log_2 16 = 4$.
c) Construct the sequences $C_N{}^i$ according to Table 23-2.

From Table 23-2, code $C_{16}{}^6$ has SF $N = 16$ and code index $i = 6$.

Table 23-2—Example of OVSF code recovery

Path depth r	**Path sequence x_r**	**Code index i**	**Code $C_N{}^i$**
0		0	$C_1^0 = [1]$
1	0	0	$C_2^0 = [C_1^0\ C_1^0] = [1][1]$
2	1	1	$C_4^1 = [C_2^0\ \overline{C}_2^0] = [1\ 1][-1\ -1]$
3	1	3	$C_8^3 = [C_4^1\ \overline{C}_4^1] = [1\ 1\ -1\ -1][-1\ -1\ 1\ 1]$
4	0	6	$C_{16}^6 = [C_8^3\ C_8^3] = [1\ 1\ -1\ -1\ -1\ -1\ 1\ 1][1\ 1\ -1\ -1\ -1\ -1\ 1\ 1]$

The logical level architecture of the OVSF code generator is shown in Figure 23-7. There are two inputs for the OVSF code generator: an OVSF code index *i* and SF *N*. The code index *i* is stored in the *N*-bit binary representation as $(V_{N-1}V_{N-2}\ldots V_1V_0)$. According to the input SF *N*, the chip rate binary counter counts incrementally from 0 to $N - 1$ in the *N*-bit binary representation as $(b_{N-1}b_{N-2}\ldots b_1b_0)$.

For example, to generate the code $C_8{}^5$ in Figure 23-6, considering the digital CMOS logic operation, the mapping {"+1" $\rightarrow$ "logic 0"} and {"–1" $\rightarrow$ "logic 1"} is specified. The participation of the specific bits in the XOR operation according to the OVSF code index *i* is periodic in time and can be controlled by the chip rate binary counter, as illustrated in Figure 23-8 and Table 23-3.

The OVSF code output is specifed by *phyLecimDsssPsduOvsfSpreadingFactor* and *phyLecimDsssPsduOvsfCodeIndex*. The same values shall be used to recover the OVSF code.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

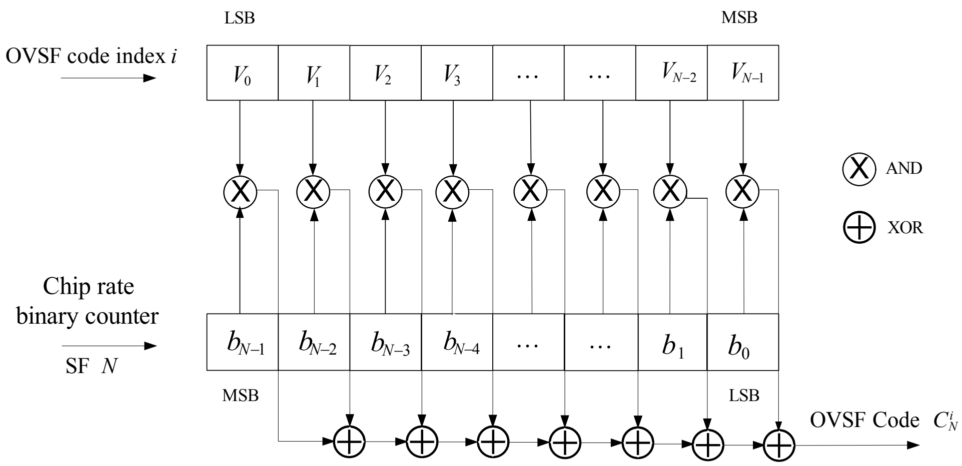


Figure 23-7—Logical level architecture of OVSF code generator for LECIM DSSS PHY

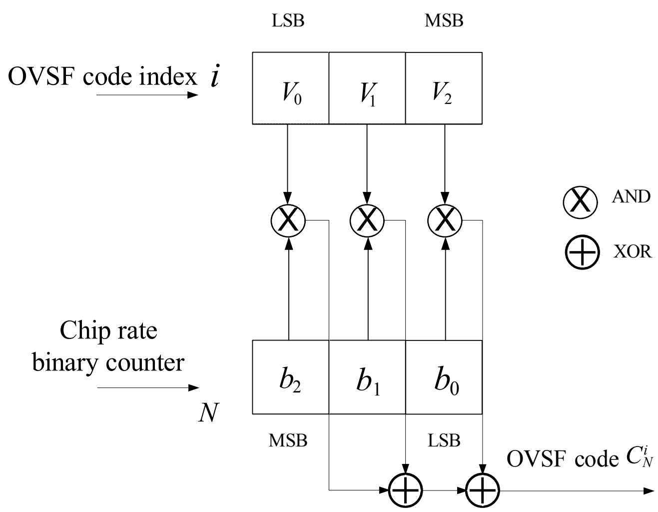


Figure 23-8—An example of OVSF code generator for LECIM DSSS PHY

Table 23-3—Example of OVSF code output

Chip rate counter b2 b1 b0	Operation $V_0\ V_1\ V_2$ with code index $i = 5$	OVSF code output C^5_8	
		CMOS logic mapping form	Form in Figure 23-6
0 0 0	0	0	1
0 0 1	V_2	1	–1
0 1 0	V_1	0	1
0 1 1	$V_1 \oplus V_2$	1	–1
1 0 0	V_0	1	–1

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 23-3—Example of OVSF code output *(continued)*

Chip rate counter b2 b1 b0	Operation V_0 V_1 V_2 with code index $i = 5$	OVSF code output C^5_8	
		CMOS logic mapping form	Form in Figure 23-6
1 0 1	$V_0 \oplus V_2$	0	1
1 1 0	$V_0 \oplus V_1$	1	–1
1 1 1	$V_0 \oplus V_1 \oplus V_2$	0	1

23.2.7 BPSK/O-QPSK modulation

23.2.7.1 BPSK modulation

Binary phase-shift keying (BPSK) modulation for the DSSS PHY is described in 11.2.5.

The chip sequences are modulated onto the carrier using BPSK with pulse shaping. A chip value of one corresponds to a positive pulse and a chip value of zero corresponds to a negative pulse.

Chip rates/bands are shown in Table 10-2.

During each symbol period, chip C_0 is transmitted first and C_{SF-1} is transmitted last.

23.2.7.2 O-QPSK modulation

The chip sequences representing each data symbol are modulated onto the carrier using offset quadrature phase-shift keying (O-QPSK). Even-indexed chips are modulated onto the in-phase (I) carrier, and odd-indexed chips are modulated onto the quadrature-phase (Q) carrier. To form the offset between I-phase and Q-phase chip modulation, the Q-phase chips shall be delayed by T_c with respect to the I-phase chips, as illustrated in Figure 23-9, where T_c is the inverse of the chip rate and SF is *phyLecimDsssPsduSpreadingFactor*.

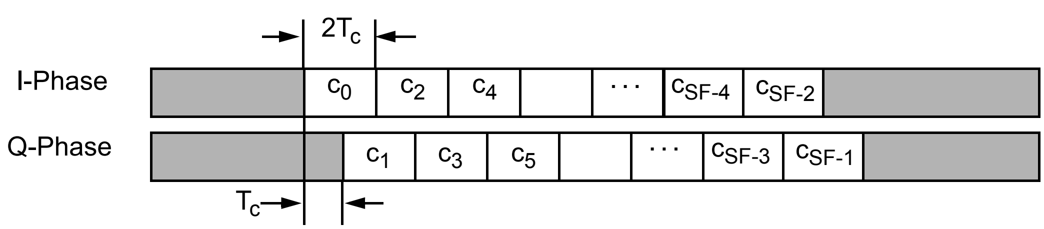


Figure 23-9—O-QPSK chip modulation

23.3 PSDU fragmentation

The LECIM DSSS PHY includes a fragmentation sublayer that divides the PSDU into a sequence of fragments. The synchronization and PHY header are prepended onto each fragment and a FICS is appended resulting in the PPDU. The FICS allows the recipient device to discard invalid PPDUs and the Frak provides for retransmission of only the discarded PPDUs. The recipient device's fragmentation sublayer reassembles the fragments into the original PSDU and passes it to the MAC for its processing.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Devices that support the LECIM DSSS PHY shall support PSDU fragmentation. When *phyPSDUFragmentationEnabled* is TRUE, the MPDU is processed into a sequence of fragments.

23.3.1 Configuration

To reduce the fragment packet overhead, both the initiating device and the recipient device shall be configured prior to the transmission of the fragment sequence. The configuration consists of the initiating device sending a Data frame containing solely one FSCD IE as described in 7.4.2.9, to the recipient. The configuration information, identified by its TID, shall be used by the recipient device to process the received fragments identified with the same TID and reassemble them into the PSDU.

The Data frame containing the FSCD IE shall be transmitted with the AR field set to one. If an acknowledgment is received, the initiating device shall transmit the fragments until either the transaction is complete or the transmission is aborted. A TID field value of zero in the FSCD IE shall be used to indicate that the TID field is not present in the fragments during that transaction. When the FSCD IE is received with the Secure Fragment field set to one, the PSDU Counter field shall be used with the fragment number to form the Frame Counter field used to construct the nonce, as described in 9.3.2.3.

23.3.2 Fragmentation

The MPDU is prepared for fragment transmission according to the following steps:

1) Divide the remaining MPDU into fragments of the size supported by the current PHY configuration. All fragments, with the exception of the final fragment, shall contain the maximum number of data octets. For PHY configurations that use a fixed PPDU size (i.e., no PPDU length field transmitted), the final fragment data shall be padded with *phyPSDUFragPadValue*; the FICS field for the final fragment shall be calculated including the pad octets. When a PHY configuration only supports a fixed size PSDU, the size of each fragment shall be the PSDU size configured for that PHY; for all other PHYs, the fragment size shall be equal to the value of *phyFragmentSize*.
2) Determine the TID.
3) If Secure Fragment is set to one, set the PSDU Counter value to the *phyFragmentFrameCounter*. If the PSDU Counter has value of 0x3ff ffff then return error, otherwise increment the *phyFragmentFrameCounter*.
4) Determine the FSCD IE.
5) Construct the Data frame containing the FSCD IE and then transmit it.
6) Upon acknowledgment of the fragment context frame, transmit the fragments. Wait for the Frak frames according to the Frak policy value, described in 23.3.6.1, which is specified in the FCSD IE. Retransmit the Fragment frame preceding the Frak if the acknowledgment is not received within the Frak timeout period.
7) Upon reception of the final fragment and/or transmission of the final Frak as appropriate, the reassembled PSDU is processed as described in 23.3.7.

Fragments shall be transmitted beginning with fragment 1 and ending with fragment *n*. The Frak is described in 23.3.6.2. The receiving device may terminate a transaction by sending a Frak to the transmitter with the Fragment Number field set to zero and the Frak Content set to zero.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

23.3.3 Fragment packet

The Fragment packet shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 23-10.

Octets: 2	variable	2/4
Fragment Header	Fragment Data	FICS

Figure 23-10—Fragment packet format

The Fragment Header field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 23-11.

Bits: 0–2	3–9	10–15
Frame Type	TID	Fragment Number

Figure 23-11—Fragment Header field format

The Frame Type field shall be set to indicate a Fragment frame, as defined in 7.2.1.1.

The TID field shall contain the value assigned to the transaction context, as indicated in the FSCD IE. Upon reception, if the TID field contains a value other than the TID of a currently active transaction, the Fragment packet is ignored (i.e., not acknowledged and not counted to reset the transaction timeout).

The Fragment Number field identifies the fragment contained in the Fragment Data field. Upon PSDU reassembly, the fragmented data shall be placed in order according to fragment number. A Fragment Number field value of 0x3f is reserved for future use. The first fragment sent shall have the Fragment Number field set to one.

The Fragment Data field contains the part of the fragmented PSDU indicated by the Fragment Number field. The size of the data field depends on the configuration of the PHY in use.

The FICS field is used to validate the received fragment. When *phyPSDUFragSecure* is FALSE, the length of the field shall be that indicated by the FICS Length field in the FSCD IE, and it shall be calculated according to 7.2.10. When *phyPSDUFragSecure* is TRUE, the length of the field shall be 4 octets and shall contain the MIC-32, as described in 23.3.4.

Devices that support fragmentation shall support the reception of either the 2-octet or 4-octet FICS.

23.3.4 Calculating FICS field using MIC

When FSCD IE Secure Fragment field for the transaction is set to one the length of FICS field shall be 4 octets and shall contain the MIC-32 calculated as described in this subclause.

The nonce for the CCM transformation is calculated as specified in the 9.3.2.3. The Private Payload field is set to empty, The Open Payload field is set to contain the Fragment Header and Fragment Data. The SecurityLevel is set to one.

The key is set to be the same key that was used to protect the frame containing the FSCD IE negotiating the exchange, i.e., secure fragments can only be used if security was enabled when setting the transaction up.

The CCM transformation shall then use the Private Payload field, the Open Payload field, the macExtendedAddress, the SecurityLevel, and the key to produce the secured fragment according to the CCM* transformation process defined in 9.3.4.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

23.3.5 Fragment acknowledgment and retransmission

Two levels of acknowledgment are provided: acknowledgment of fragments during the transfer process (i.e., Frak), which provide "progress reports"; and acknowledgment of the reassembled MPDU, as described in 6.7.4.2.

To accommodate individual fragment acknowledgments, a FICS is included with each fragment. The recipient device uses the FICS and fragment number to determine the fragments of the sequence have been received correctly and the ones that are are missing.

The Frak reports the fragments that have been successfully received up to that point. It is generated incrementally during the fragment sequence transfer according to the Frak policy provided in the FSCD IE.

23.3.6 Frak

The Frak frame is used during the fragment sequence transfer to determine which fragments have been received successfully and which fragments need to be retransmitted. A Frak frame includes the status of one or more fragments. The format of the Frak frame is given in 23.3.6.2.

The interval of the Frak frame is determined by the Frak Policy field, defined in 23.3.6.1. Upon completing the transmission of the fragment preceding the expected Frak frame according to the Frak policy selected, the initiating device shall suspend transmission and wait for the expected Frak frame. Upon reception of the Frak, fragments indicated as not received correctly shall be retransmitted. The number of retransmissions shall be limited by *macMaxFrameRetries* per fragment.

Upon reception of a fragment, the FICS is validated. The receiving device shall generate a Frak frame according to the Frak policy in use. The Frak frame shall be transmitted at the next transmit opportunity following the triggering condition.

When Frak policy zero is in use, reception of an out-of-order fragment shall result in termination of the transaction.

Frak frames are not secured.

23.3.6.1 Frak policy

The Frak Policy field shall be set to one of the values given in Table 23-4.

Table 23-4—Frak Policy field values

Field value	Frak policy description
0	A Frak frame shall be sent upon reception of each fragment.
1	Acknowledgment based on time: A Frak frame shall be generated if *macFrakProgressTimeout* has elapsed since the reception of the fragment context frame or the last received fragment, whichever is later. In this mode, the originator will never stop waiting to get a Frak, even if the target does not want to Frak.
2	Acknowledge the last outstanding fragment: A Frak frame shall be generated only when the last expected fragment is received, or if *macFrakProgressTimeout* has elapsed since the last received fragment.
3	Reserved

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

23.3.6.2 Frak format

The Frak shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 23-12.

Octets: 2	variable	2/4
Frak Header	Fragment Status	Frak Validation

Figure 23-12—Frak format

The Frak Header field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 23-13.

Bits: 0–2	3–9	10–15
Frame Type	TID	Fragment Number

Figure 23-13—Frak Header field format

The Frame Type field is defined in 23.3.3

The TID field shall contain the same value as the TID in the received fragments being acknowledged.

The Fragment Number field is set to the value of the last fragment received prior to Frak generation.

The Fragment Status field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 23-14.

Bits: 0–3	4–7	8–23/8–39/8–55/8–71
Frak Content	LQI	Fragments Received (Set 0–Set 3)

Figure 23-14—Fragment Status field format

The Frak Content field shall be set to one of the values shown in Table 23-5 based on the number of Fragment Received bits that are included in the Fragment Status field. Setting all bit positions to zero indicates an aborted transaction.

Table 23-5—Frak Content field

Bit position	Description
b0	Set to 1 if Fragment Received bits 0–15 are present, set to zero otherwise.
b1	Set to 1 if Fragment Received bits 16–31 are present, set to zero otherwise.
b2	Set to 1 if Fragment Received bits 32–47 are present, set to zero otherwise.
b3	Set to 1 if Fragment Received bits 48–63 are present, set to zero otherwise.

The LQI field is an unsigned integer that is an indication of the signal quality of the received fragment(s) being acknowledged. The measurement method is implementation dependent, and at least eight unique values of LQI should be provided. A larger value of the LQI field is used to indicate a higher quality signal.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Fragments Received field indicates the status of received fragments up to the current point in the transaction. The status bits are grouped into 4 bitmaps of 16 bits each. The status for fragment number *n* is contained bit *n* of the Fragments Received field. When more than one set is included in the Frak, the lowest numbered set is transmitted first in time, so that the corresponding fragment numbers go from low to high as transmitted.

Once all fragments from a group have been acknowledged, the corresponding group may be omitted from subsequent Frak frames of the same transaction.

The Frak Validation field is used to validate the received Frak. The length of the field shall be determined by the FICS Length field contained in the FSCD IE, and it shall be calculated according to 7.2.10, except that the initial remainder value used for CRC calculation shall be as described in 7.4.2.9.

23.3.7 Reassembly

Upon reception of the frame containing the FSCD IE, the frame containing the FSCD IE is acknowledged and the transaction state is initialized for a new PSDU fragment sequence transaction. Each received fragment is placed into the reassembled PSDU based on the value of the corresponding Fragment Number field. Fraks are generated according to 23.3.5. When the final fragment is received and validated, the FCS is presumed successful (without requiring an FCS of the frame) and processing proceeds according to 6.7.4.2. The receiving device is not required to validate the FCS of the PSDU nor is it required to send an Imm-Ack frame or Enh-Ack frame

23.4 DSSS PHY RF requirements

23.4.1 Radio frequency tolerance

The DSSS PHY radio frequency tolerance shall be $\pm 2.5 \times 10^{-6}$.

23.4.2 Channel switch time

Channel switch time shall be less than or equal to 500 μs. The channel switch time is defined as the time elapsed at the antenna between the trailing edge of the last symbol of one PPDU to the leading edge of the first symbol of a consecutive PPDU sent on a different channel.

23.4.3 Transmit spectral mask

Implementers are responsible to assure that the transmit spectral content conforms to all local regulations.

23.4.4 Receiver sensitivity

The receiver sensitivity information is given in Table 23-6. The PER is $\leq 1\%$ for the following conditions: BPSK modulation, no tail biting, fragment length of 16 octets, a 2-octet preamble and an 8-bit SFD.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 23-6—Minimum LECIM DSSS PHY receiver sensitivity (dBm)

Spreading factor (chips/bit)	Modulation rate (ksym/s)				
	200	**400**	**600**	**800**	**1000**
16	–115	–112	–110	–109	–108
32	–118	–115	–113	–112	–111
64	–121	–118	–116	–115	–114
128	–124	–121	–119	–118	–117
256	–127	–124	–122	–121	–120
512	–130	–127	–125	–124	–123
1024	–133	–130	–128	–127	–126
2048	–136	–133	–131	–130	–129
4096	–139	–136	–134	–133	–132
8192	–142	–139	–137	–136	–135
16384	–145	–142	–140	–139	–138
32768	–148	–145	–143	–142	–141

23.4.5 Receiver interference rejection

The minimum receiver interference rejection levels are given in Table 23-7. The adjacent channels are those on either side of the desired channel that are closest in frequency to the desired channel. The alternate channel is more than one removed from the desired channel in the operational frequency band.

Table 23-7—LECIM DSSS Minimum receiver interference rejection requirements

Adjacent channel rejection	Alternate channel rejection
10 dB	30 dB

The adjacent channels are as follows:

$$ChanNum \pm (1 \times phyLecimDsssPpduModulationRate / Spacing)$$

The variable *ChanNum* is the channel identifier number of the designated channel, *phyLecimDsssPpduModulationRate* is defined in 11.3, and *Spacing* is *ChanSpacing* × 1000 (*ChanSpacing* is defined in 10.1.2.10.1). The alternate channels are as follows:

$$ChanNum \pm (2 \times phyLecimDsssPpduModulationRate / Spacing)$$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

23.4.6 TX-to-RX turnaround time

The DSSS PHY shall meet the requirements for TX-to-RX turnaround time, as defined in 10.2.1.

23.4.7 RX-to-TX turnaround time

The DSSS PHY shall meet the requirements for RX-to-TX turnaround time, as defined in 10.2.2.

23.4.8 Transmit power

A transmitter shall be capable of transmitting at least –3 dBm. The maximum transmit power is limited by local regulatory bodies.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

24. LECIM FSK PHY specification

24.1 General

For the purposes of calculating the Ack frame timing required in 6.7.5, the default length of the Preamble field shall be 4 octets.

24.2 PPDU format for LECIM FSK PHY

The LECIM FSK PPDU shall support the format shown in Figure 24-1.

SHR	PHR	PHY payload

Figure 24-1—Format of the LECIM FSK PPDU

24.2.1 SHR field format

The SHR field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 24-2.

Preamble	SFD

Figure 24-2—Format of the SHR

24.2.1.1 Preamble field format

The Preamble field shall contain *phyLecimFskPreambleLength*, as defined in 11.3, multiples of the 8-bit sequence "01010101."

24.2.1.2 SFD field format

The SFD shall be a 3-octet sequence, as shown in Figure 24-3.

The SFD is transmitted starting from the leftmost bit.

Octets	1	2	3
Bit map	0111 0000	1110 1110	1101 0010

Figure 24-3—SFD value for LECIM FSK PHY

24.2.2 PHR field format

The format of the PHR is shown in Figure 24-4.

Bits: 0–1	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5–15**
Reserved	Parity	FCS Type	Data Whitening	Frame Length

Figure 24-4—PHR field format

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Parity field is calculated in the following way:

Parity field = b3 ⊕ b4 ⊕ b5 ⊕ b6 ⊕ b7 ⊕ b8 ⊕ b9 ⊕ b10 ⊕ b11 ⊕ b12 ⊕ b13 ⊕ b14 ⊕ b15

The FCS Type field specifies the length of the FCS field, as defined in 7.2.10. A value of zero indicates a 4-octet FCS field, and a value of one indicates a 2-octet FCS field.

The Data Whitening field shall be set to one if data whitening is used in the packet and shall be set to zero otherwise.

The Frame Length field is an unsigned integer that shall be set to the total number of octets contained in the PSDU (prior to FEC encoding, if enabled). The MSB shall be transmitted first.

24.2.3 PHY Payload field

The PHY Payload field carries the encoded PSDU.

24.3 Modulation and coding for LECIM FSK PHY

The modulation for the LECIM FSK PHY shall be FSK or position-based FSK (P-FSK).

In the 169 MHz band, the modulation index shall be as follows:

— 0.5 for 25 kb/s
— 1.0 for 12.5 kb/s

For all other LECIM FSK PHY band identifiers, the modulation index shall be as follows:

— 0.5 for 37.5 kb/s
— 1.0 for 25 kb/s
— 2.0 for 12.5 kb/s

Either 100 kHz or 200 kHz channel spacing may be used as permitted by local regulations.

The symbol timing used for the MAC and PHY timing parameters shall be as follows:

$$\frac{1}{phyLECIMFSKSymbolRate}\ \mathrm{ms}$$

The use of P-FSK modulation for PSDU data is controlled by the PIB attribute *phyLecimFskPsduPositionMod*, as defined in 11.3. The modulation for preamble, SFD, and PHR shall be FSK regardless of the value of *phyLecimFskPsduPositionMod*.

FSK encodes one bit by transmitting a frequency modulated signal $m(t)$ with duration T_S, i.e., $0 \le t < T_S$. P-FSK encodes two bits by transmitting a FSK modulated signal $m(t)$ with T_S duration in one of two possible positions (also known as time deviation), i.e., $0 \le t < T_S$ and $T_S \le t < 2T_S$.

24.3.1 Reference modulator

The functional block diagram of the reference modulator is illustrated in Figure 24-5. Each bit shall be processed using the bit order rules defined in 24.2.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

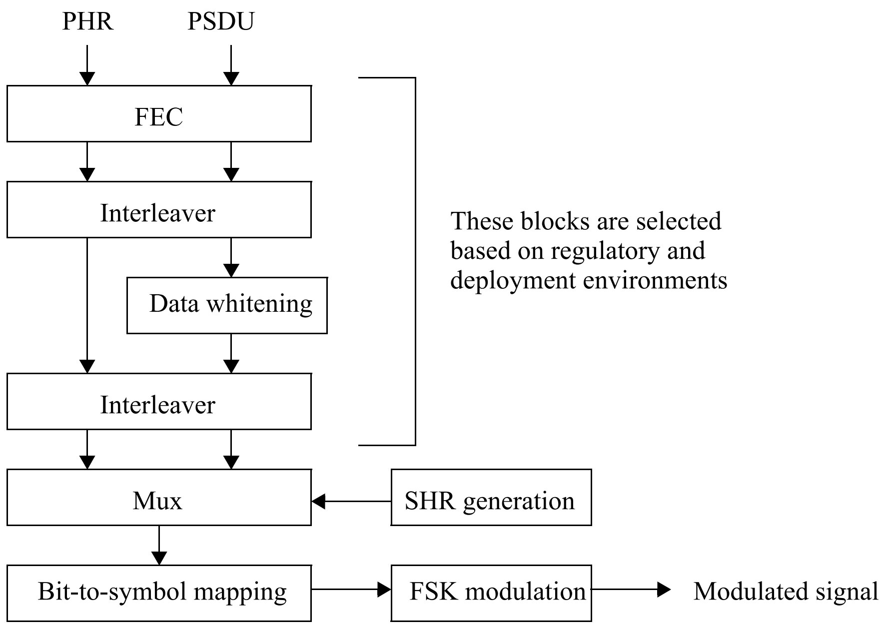


Figure 24-5—LECIM FSK reference modulator diagram

When FEC is enabled, the PHR and PSDU shall be processed for coding, as described in 24.3.4. When data whitening is enabled, the scrambling shall be only applied over the PSDU, as described in 24.4. When spreading is enabled, the spreading shall be applied over the PHR and PSDU, as described in 24.3.6.

All fields in the PPDU shall use the same symbol rate and modulation order, unless otherwise specified elsewhere in this standard.

24.3.2 Bit-to-symbol mapping

The nominal frequency deviation, f_{dev}, shall be (symbol rate × modulation index)/2.

The symbol encoding for FSK and P-FSK modulation is shown in Table 24-1 and Table 24-2, respectively.

Table 24-1—FSK symbol encoding

Symbol (b0)	Frequency deviation	Time deviation
0	$-f_{\mathrm{dev}}$	0
1	$+f_{\mathrm{dev}}$	0

Table 24-2—P-FSK symbol encoding

Symbol (b0, b1)	Frequency deviation	Time deviation
00	$-f_{\mathrm{dev}}$	0
01	$-f_{\mathrm{dev}}$	T_s
10	$+f_{\mathrm{dev}}$	0
11	$+f_{\mathrm{dev}}$	T_s

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

24.3.3 Modulation quality

Modulation quality shall be measured by observing the frequency deviation tolerance and the zero crossing tolerance of the eye diagram caused by a PN9 sequence of length 511 bits.

24.3.3.1 Frequency deviation tolerance

The frequency deviation tolerance shall be as given in 24.3.3.1 for 2-level modulation.

The symbol timing accuracy shall be better than $\pm 20 \times 10^{-6}$.

24.3.3.2 Zero crossing tolerance

The excursions for the zero crossings for all trajectories of the eye diagram shall be constrained as specified in 24.3.3.2.

24.3.4 FEC

The use of FEC is controlled by the PIB attribute *phyLecimFecEnabled*, as defined in 11.3.

When used, FEC shall employ rate 1/2 convolutional coding with constraint length $K = 7$ using the following generator polynomials:

$$G_0(x) = 1 + x^2 + x^3 + x^5 + x^6$$

$$G_1(x) = 1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + x^6$$

The encoder is shown in Figure 24-6, where $\oplus$ denotes modulo-2 addition.

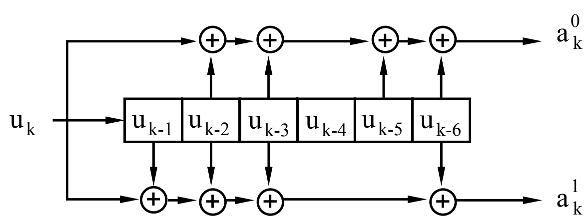


Figure 24-6—LECIM FSK PHY convolutional encoder

Prior to the convolutional encoding of the PHR bits, as described in 24.2.2, the initial encoder state at $k = 0$ shall be set as follows:

$$(u_{-1}, u_{-2}, \ldots, u_{-6}) = (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0)$$

and the sequence of PHR bits shall be extended by a termination sequence of six bits, all zero, as shown in Figure 24-7.

Prior to the convolutional encoding of the PSDU, the sequence of PSDU bits $b = \{b_0, b_1, \ldots, b_{8 \times \mathrm{LENGTH} - 1}\}$, with its length (LENGTH) measured in octets, shall be extended by appending a termination sequence of six bits, all zero, and a sequence of additional bits (pad bits) as shown in Figure 24-7.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

PHR bits	Termination sequence	PSDU bits	Termination sequence	pad bits

Figure 24-7—PHR and PSDU extension prior to encoding

The pad bits shall be set to zero; and the number of pad bits, N_{PAD}, is computed from the number of blocks, N_B, the total number of uncoded bits, N_D, and the interleaver depth, N_{DEPTH}, as follows:

$$N_B = \mathrm{ceiling}((8 \times \mathrm{LENGTH} + 6)/(N_{\mathrm{DEPTH}}/2))$$

$$N_D = N_B \times (N_{\mathrm{DEPTH}}/2)$$

$$N_{\mathrm{PAD}} = N_D - (8 \times \mathrm{LENGTH} + 6)$$

where the value of $N_{\mathrm{DEPTH}} = N_{\mathrm{PSDU}}$ is given in Table 24-3. The function ceiling(.) is a function that returns the smallest integer value greater than or equal to its argument value.

The sequence shown in Figure 24-7 shall be passed to the convolutional encoder. The corresponding output sequence of code-bits, *z,* shall be generated as follows:

$$z = \{\ldots\ a_k^0, a_k^1, a_{k+1}^0, a_{k+1}^1, a_{k+2}^0, a_{k+2}^1\ \ldots\} = \{z_0, z_1, \ldots, z_{[2N_D + (N_{\mathrm{DEPTH}} - 1)]}\}$$

i.e., a_k^0 is preceding sample a_k^1.The first sample, z_0, shall be passed to the interleaver first in time, and the last sample, $z_{[2N_D + (N_{\mathrm{DEPTH}} - 1)]}$, shall be passed to the interleaver last in time. The value of $N_{\mathrm{DEPTH}} = N_{\mathrm{PHR}}$ is defined in Table 24-3.

24.3.5 Code-bit interleaving

The use of interleaving is controlled by the PIB attribute *phyLecimFskInterleavingEnabled*, as defined in 11.3.

Since the PHR bits are terminated, PHR code-bits and PSDU code-bits are independent code blocks. Interleaving of PHR code-bits is separate from the interleaving of the PSDU code-bits.

Interleaving of code-bits shall be employed in conjunction with FEC. No code-bit interleaving shall be employed if FEC is not used.

The sequence of PHR code-bits consists of a single sequence

$$z^0 = \{z_0^0, \ldots, z_{N_{\mathrm{PHR}}-1}^0\}$$

of length N_{PHR}.

The sequence of PSDU code-bits consists of N_B subsequences

$$z^j = \{z_0^j, \ldots, z_{N_{\mathrm{PSDU}}-1}^j\} = \{z_{(j-1)N_{\mathrm{PSDU}} + N_{PHR}}, \ldots, z_{jN_{\mathrm{PSDU}} + N_{PHR} - 1}\} \text{ for } j = 1, \ldots, N_B$$

of length N_{PSDU}.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The interleaver is defined by a permutation. The index of the code-bits before the permutation shall be denoted by k, where $k = 0$ refers to the first sample, z_0^j, and $k = N_{\mathrm{DEPTH}} - 1$ refers to the last sample, $z_{N_{\mathrm{DEPTH}}-1}^j$, passed to the interleaver for a given subsequence z^j. The index i shall be the index after the permutation. The permutation is defined by the following rule:

$$i = \frac{N_{\mathrm{DEPTH}}}{\lambda} \times ((N_{\mathrm{DEPTH}} - 1 - k) \bmod \lambda) + \mathrm{floor}\left(\frac{N_{\mathrm{DEPTH}} - 1 - k}{\lambda}\right) \quad k = 0, \ldots, N_{\mathrm{DEPTH}} - 1$$

where the degree λ is given in Table 24-3. The function floor(.) is a function that returns the largest integer value less than or equal to its argument value.

Table 24-3—Parameters of the interleaver

Field	Degree λ	Depth N_{DEPTH}
PHR	4	$N_{\mathrm{PHR}} = 4 \times 11 = 44$
PSDU	6	$N_{\mathrm{PSDU}} = 6 \times 12 = 72$

The process of interleaving a subsequence is shown in Figure 22-12. The first subsequence, z^0, shall be processed first in time and the last subsequence, z^{N_B}, shall be processed last in time.

The deinterleaver, which performs the inverse relation, is defined by the following rule:

$$k = \lambda \times (N_{\mathrm{DEPTH}} - 1 - i) - (N_{\mathrm{DEPTH}} - 1) \times \mathrm{floor}\left(\frac{\lambda \times (N_{\mathrm{DEPTH}} - 1 - i)}{N_{\mathrm{DEPTH}}}\right) \quad i = 0, \ldots, N_{\mathrm{DEPTH}} - 1$$

24.3.6 Spreading

The use of spreading is controlled by the PIB attribute *phyLecimFskSpreading*, as defined in 11.3. The spreading factor (SF) can be 1, 2, 4, 8, or 16. The variable SF is indicated by the PIB attribute *phyLecimFskSpreadingFactor*, as defined in 11.3.

For spreading, a single input bit (b0) is mapped into the spreading bits $(c_0, c_1, \ldots, c_{SF-1})$, as shown in Figure 24-8, and its mapping is represented in Table 24-4.

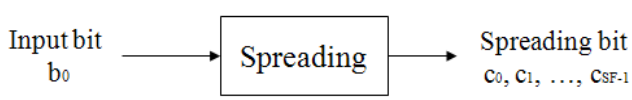


Figure 24-8—Spreading function

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 24-4—Input bit to spreading bits mapping

phyLecimFskSpreading Pattern	**Spreading factor (SF)**	**Input bit** $(b_0) = 0$	**Input bit** $(b_0) = 1$
ALTERNATING_1/0	2	$(c_0, c_1) = 01$	$(c_0, c_1) = 10$
ALTERNATING_1/0	4	$(c_0, \ldots, c_3) = 0101$	$(c_0, \ldots, c_3) = 1010$
ALTERNATING_1/0	8	$(c_0, \ldots, c_7) = 0101\ 0101$	$(c_0, \ldots, c_7) = 1010\ 1010$
ALTERNATING_1/0	16	$(c_0, \ldots, c_{15}) = 0101\ 0101\ 0101\ 0101$	$(c_0, \ldots, c_{15}) = 1010\ 1010\ 1010\ 1010$
NON_ALTERNATING	2	$(c_0, c_1) = 10$	$(c_0, c_1) = 01$
NON_ALTERNATING	4	$(c_0, \ldots, c_3) = 1010$	$(c_0, \ldots, c_3) = 0101$
NON_ALTERNATING	8	$(c_0, \ldots, c_7) = 1011\ 0001$	$(c_0, \ldots, c_7) = 0100\ 1110$
NON_ALTERNATING	16	$(c_0, \ldots, c_{15}) = 0010\ 0011\ 1101\ 0110$	$(c_0, \ldots, c_{15}) = 1101\ 1100\ 0010\ 1001$

24.4 Data whitening for LECIM FSK PHY

Support for data whitening is optional.

The whitened data shall be the exclusive or (XOR) of the PSDU with the PN9 sequence, as described by the following equation:

$$E_{\mathrm{n}} = R_{\mathrm{n}} \oplus \mathrm{PN9}_{\mathrm{n}}$$

where

E_{n} is the whitened bit
R_{n} is the data bit being whitened
$\mathrm{PN9}_{\mathrm{n}}$ is the PN9 sequence bit

For each packet transmitted with data whitening enabled, R_0 is the first bit of the PSDU and the index n increments for subsequent bits of the PSDU.

For packets received with the Data Whitening field of the PHR set to one, the receiver decodes the scrambled data in the following way:

$$R_{\mathrm{n}} = RE_{\mathrm{n}} \oplus \mathrm{PN9}_{\mathrm{n}}$$

where

R_{n} is the PSDU bit after de-whitening
RE_{n} is the PSDU bit at the output of the filtered LECIM FSK demodulator

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The PN generator is defined by the schematic in Figure 24-9.

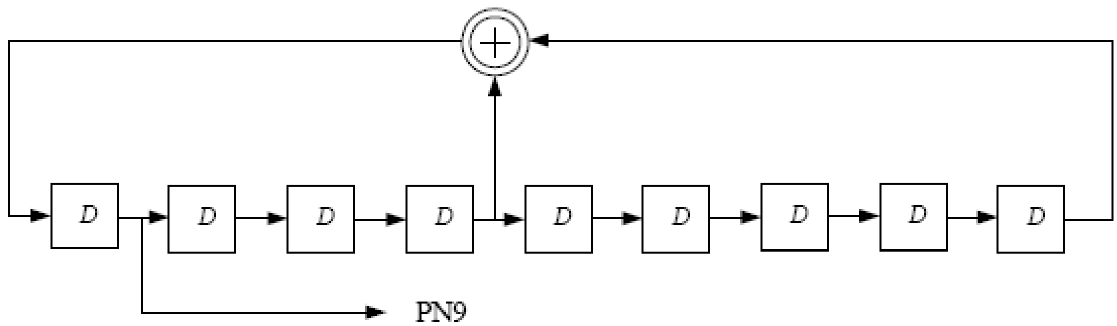


Figure 24-9—Schematic of the PN9 sequence generator

The seed in the PN9 generator shall be all ones: "111111111." The PN9 generator shall be reinitialized to the seed after each packet (either transmit or receive).

The PN9 generator is clocked using the seed as the starting point and enabled after the first clock cycle. For example, the first 30 bits out of the PN9 generator, once it is enabled, would be as follows:

$PN9_n = 0_0, 0_1, 0_2, 0_3, 1_4, 1_5, 1_6, 1_7, 0_8, 1_9, 1_{10}, 1_{11}, 0_{12}, 0_{13}, 0_{14}, 0_{15}, 1_{16}, 0_{17}, 1_{18}, 1_{19}, 0_{20}, 0_{21}, 1_{22}, 1_{23}, 0_{24}, 1_{25}, 1_{26}, 0_{27}, 1_{28}, 1_{29}$.

24.5 LECIM FSK PHY RF requirements

24.5.1 Operating frequency range

The LECIM FSK PHY operates in the bands given in 10.1.1.

24.5.2 Radio frequency tolerance

The clock radio frequency tolerance shall be within $\pm 10 \times 10^{-6}$.

24.5.3 Channel switch time

Channel switch time shall be less than or equal to 500 µs. The channel switch time is defined as the time elapsed at the antenna between the trailing edge of the last symbol of one PPDU to the leading edge of the first symbol of a consecutive PPDU sent on a different channel.

24.5.4 Transmit spectral mask

Implementers are responsible for ensuring that the transmit spectral content conforms to all local regulations.

24.5.5 Receiver sensitivity

Under the conditions specified in 8.1.7, a compliant device shall be capable of achieving a sensitivity of –97 dBm or better.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

24.5.6 TX-to-RX turnaround time

The LECIM FSK PHY shall meet the requirements for TX-to-RX turnaround time as defined in 8.2.1.

24.5.7 RX-to-TX turnaround time

The LECIM FSK PHY shall meet the requirements for RX-to-TX turnaround time as defined in 8.2.2.

24.5.8 Transmit power

A compliant device shall be capable of transmitting with a power greater than or equal to –3 dBm. The maximum transmit power is limited by local regulatory bodies.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

25. TVWS-FSK PHY

25.1 PPDU format for TVWS-FSK

The TVWS-FSK PPDU shall support the format shown in Figure 25-1.

SHR	PHR	PHY payload

Figure 25-1—Format of the TVWS-FSK PPDU

An example of encoding a TVWS-FSK packet can be found in Seibert [B15].

25.1.1 SHR field format

The SHR field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 25-2.

Preamble	SFD

Figure 25-2—Format of the SHR

25.1.1.1 Preamble field format

The Preamble field shall contain *phyFSKPreambleLength*, as defined in 11.3, multiples of the 8-bit sequence “01010101”. For the purposes of calculating the Ack frame timing required in 6.7.5, the default length of the Preamble field shall be 8 octets.

25.1.1.2 SFD field format

The SFD shall be a 16-bit sequence or, optionally, a 24-bit sequence selected from the values shown in Table 25-1. The SFD length is controlled by the PHY PIB attribute *phyTvwsSfdLength,* as defined in 11.3.

Devices that do not support the FEC, as described in 25.3, shall support the SFD associated with uncoded (PHR + PSDU). Devices that support FEC shall support both SFD values shown in Table 25-1.

Table 25-1—TVWS-FSK SFD values

phyTvwsSfdLength	**SFD value for coded (PHR + PSDU)**	**SFD value for uncoded (PHR + PSDU)**
16 bits	0110 1111 0100 1110	1001 0000 0100 1110
24 bits	1100 0001 1000 1000 1101 0110	1000 0101 1111 1100 1011 0011

25.1.2 PHR field format

The format of the PHR is shown in Figure 25-3.

Bits: 0	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5–15**
Reserved	Ranging	Parity Check	FCS Type	Data Whitening	Frame Length

Figure 25-3—Format of the PHR for TVWS-FSK

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Ranging field shall be set to one when ranging is used and zero when it is not.

The Parity Check shall be computed from the modulo-2 addition of all bits in the PHR other than the Parity Check.

The FCS Type field indicates the length of the FCS field described in 7.2.10 that is included in the MPDU. Table 25-2 shows the relationship between the contents of the FCS Type field and the length of the transmitted FCS.

Table 25-2—Relationship between FCS Type field and FCS field length for TVWS-FSK

FCS Type field value	FCS field length
0	4 octets
1	2 octets

The Data Whitening field indicates whether data whitening of the PSDU is used upon transmission. When data whitening is used, the Data Whitening field shall be set to one. It shall be set to zero otherwise. Data whitening shall only be applied to the PSDU.

The Frame Length field is an unsigned integer that shall be set to the total number of octets contained in the PSDU (prior to FEC encoding, if enabled). The Frame Length field shall be transmitted MSB first.

25.1.3 PHY Payload field

The PHY Payload field carries the encoded PSDU.

25.2 Modulation and coding for TVWS-FSK

The modulation for the TVWS-FSK PHY is 2-level FSK or 4-level FSK, depending on the operating mode. Table 25-3 shows the modulation and channel parameters for the operating modes of the TVWS-FSK PHY.

Table 25-3—TVWS-FSK modulation and channel parameters[a]

Parameter	Mode #1		Mode #2		Mode #3		Mode #4	Mode #5
Data rate (kb/s)	50		100		200		300	400
Modulation level	2-level		2-level		2-level		2-level	4-level
Modulation index- h	0.5	1.0	0.5	1.0	0.5	1.0	0.5	0.33
Channel spacing (kHz)	100	200	200	400	400	600	600	600

[a]Data rates shown are over-the-air data rates (the data rates transmitted over the air regardless of whether the FEC is enabled).

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

25.2.1 Reference modulator

The functional block diagram of the reference modulator in Figure 25-4 is provided as a reference for specifying the TVWS-FSK data flow processing functions.

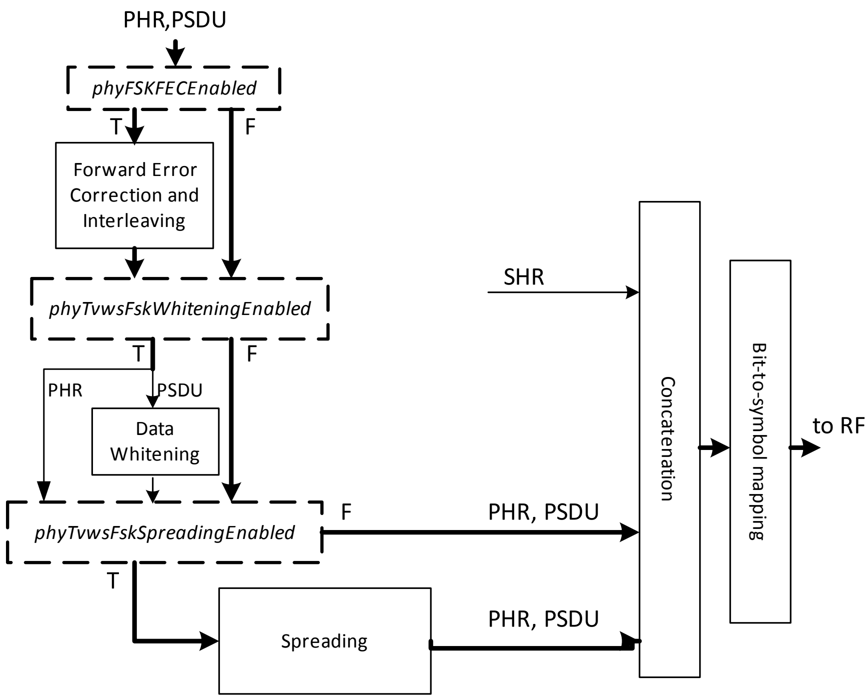


Figure 25-4—Reference modulator diagram for TVWS-FSK

25.2.2 FEC and interleaving

FEC support is optional. The use of FEC is controlled by the PHY PIB attribute *phyFskFecEnabled*, as defined in 11.3. Three FEC schemes are included. The FEC scheme is controlled by the PHY PIB attribute *phyTvwsFskFecScheme* as defined in 11.3. The first FEC scheme shall be according to 24.3.4. For this scheme, interleaving shall always be used when FEC is enabled, and the interleaving scheme shall be as defined in 24.3.5. The second FEC scheme shall be according to the RSC FEC scheme defined in 20.3.4. For this scheme, interleaving shall be controlled by the value of the *phyFSKFECInterleavingRSC* PHY PIB attribute. The third FEC scheme shall be according to the NRNSC FEC scheme defined in 20.3.4. For this scheme, interleaving shall always be used when FEC is enabled, and the interleaving scheme shall be as defined in 20.3.5.

25.2.3 Data whitening

Data whitening is optional. The use of data whitening is controlled by the PIB attribute *phyTvwsFskWhiteningEnabled*, as defined in 11.3. The data whitening algorithm shall be as defined in 24.4.

25.2.4 Spreading

Spreading support is optional. The use of spreading is controlled by the PIB attribute *phyTvwsFskSpreadingEnabled*, as defined in 11.3. The spreading method shall be as defined in 24.3.6.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

25.2.5 Bit-to-symbol mapping

The symbol encoding for 2-level FSK is shown in Table 25-4.

Table 25-4—2-level TVWS-FSK symbol encoding

Symbol (binary)	Frequency deviation
0	$-f_{dev}$
1	$+f_{dev}$

The symbol encoding for 4-level FSK is shown in Table 25-5.

Table 25-5—4-level TVWS-FSK symbol encoding

Symbol (binary)	Frequency deviation
01	$-f_{dev}$
00	$-f_{dev}/3$
10	$+f_{dev}/3$
11	$+f_{dev}$

— For 2-level FSK, the frequency deviation, f_{dev}, is equal to (symbol rate × modulation index)/2.
— For 4-level FSK, the frequency deviation, f_{dev}, is equal to (3 × symbol rate × modulation index)/2. Two bits shall be mapped to four frequency deviation levels for the PHR and PSDU.

The SHR shall always be encoded using 2-level modulation as specified in Table 25-4.

25.2.6 Modulation quality

The modulation quality shall be as given in 20.3.3.

25.2.7 Values for *phySymbolsPerOctet*

The values for *phySymbolsPerOctet* are as follows:

— For 2-level modulation and *phyFSKFECEnabled* = FALSE, *phySymbolsPerOctet* = 8.
— For 4-level modulation and *phyFSKFECEnabled* = FALSE, *phySymbolsPerOctet* = 4.
— For 2-level modulation and *phyFSKFECEnabled* = TRUE, *phySymbolsPerOctet* = 16.
— For 4-level modulation and *phyFSKFECEnabled* = TRUE, *phySymbolsPerOctet* = 8.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

25.3 TVWS-FSK RF requirements

25.3.1 Operating frequency range

The TVWS-FSK PHY operates in the bands indicated in Table 7-39.

25.3.2 Clock frequency and timing accuracy

The clock frequency and time accuracy shall be within $\pm 20 \times 10^{-6}$.

25.3.3 Channel switch time

The channel switch time shall be as given in 24.5.3.

25.3.4 Receiver sensitivity

The receiver sensitivity shall be as given in 20.6.7.

25.3.5 TX-to-RX turnaround time

The TX-to-RX turnaround time shall be as given in 20.6.9.

25.3.6 RX-to-TX turnaround time

The RX-to-TX turnaround time shall be as given in 20.6.10.

25.3.7 Receiver maximum input level of desired signal

The TVWS-FSK PHY shall have a receiver maximum input level greater than or equal to –20 dBm using the measurement defined in 10.2.4.

25.3.8 Receiver ED

The TVWS-FSK PHY shall provide the receiver ED measurement as described in 10.2.5.

25.3.9 LQI

The TVWS-FSK PHY shall provide the LQI measurement as described in 10.2.6.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

26. TVWS-OFDM PHY

26.1 General

For the purposes of calculating the Ack frame timing required in 6.7.5, the default STF shall have 2 repetitions.

26.2 PPDU format for TVWS-OFDM

The TVWS-OFDM PPDU shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 26-1.

STF	LTF	PHR	PHY Payload

Figure 26-1—Format of the TVWS-OFDM PPDU

The PHY Payload field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 26-2.

PSDU	PPDU Tail	Pad

Figure 26-2—Format of the PHY Payload field

An example of encoding a TVWS-OFDM packet can be found in Shin et al. [B16].

26.2.1 STF

26.2.1.1 Frequency domain STF

Table 26-1 shows the frequency domain representation of the STF.

Table 26-1—Frequency domain representation of STF for TVWS-OFDM

Tone #	Value	Tone #	Value	Tone #	Value	Tone #	Value
–64	0	–32	$\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{2}j$	0	0	32	$\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{2}j$
–63	0	–31	0	1	0	33	0
–62	0	–30	0	2	0	34	0
–61	0	–29	0	3	0	35	0
–60	0	–28	0	4	0	36	0
–59	0	–27	0	5	0	37	0
–58	0	–26	0	6	0	38	0
–57	0	–25	0	7	0	39	0
–56	0	–24	$-\sqrt{2} - \sqrt{2}j$	8	$-\sqrt{2} - \sqrt{2}j$	40	$\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{2}j$
–55	0	–23	0	9	0	41	0
–54	0	–22	0	10	0	42	0
–53	0	–21	0	11	0	43	0

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 26-1—Frequency domain representation of STF for TVWS-OFDM *(continued)*

Tone #	Value	Tone #	Value	Tone #	Value	Tone #	Value
–52	0	–20	0	12	0	44	0
–51	0	–19	0	13	0	45	0
–50	0	–18	0	14	0	46	0
–49	0	–17	0	15	0	47	0
–48	$\sqrt{2}+\sqrt{2}j$	–16	$-\sqrt{2}-\sqrt{2}j$	16	$-\sqrt{2}-\sqrt{2}j$	48	$\sqrt{2}+\sqrt{2}j$
–47	0	–15	0	17	0	49	0
–46	0	–14	0	18	0	50	0
–45	0	–13	0	19	0	51	0
–44	0	–12	0	20	0	52	0
–43	0	–11	0	21	0	53	0
–42	0	–10	0	22	0	54	0
–41	0	–9	0	23	0	55	0
–40	$-\sqrt{2}-\sqrt{2}j$	–8	$\sqrt{2}+\sqrt{2}j$	24	$\sqrt{2}+\sqrt{2}j$	56	0
–39	0	–7	0	25	0	57	0
–38	0	–6	0	26	0	58	0
–37	0	–5	0	27	0	59	0
–36	0	–4	0	28	0	60	0
–35	0	–3	0	29	0	61	0
–34	0	–2	0	30	0	62	0
–33	0	–1	0	31	0	63	0

26.2.1.2 Time domain STF generation

Given a sequence of 128 samples $f(n)$, indexed by $n = 0, ..., 127$, the discrete Fourier transform (DFT) is defined as $F(k)$, where $k = 0, ..., 127$:

$$F(k) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{128}} \sum_{n=0}^{127} f(n) e^{-j2\pi kn/128}$$

The sequence $f(n)$ can be calculated from $F(k)$ using the inverse discrete Fourier transform (IDFT), where the k values numbered from 0 to 63 correspond to tones numbered from 0 to 63 and the k values numbered from 64 to 127 correspond to tones numbered from –64 to –1, respectively:

$$f(n) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{128}} \sum_{k=0}^{127} F(k) e^{j2\pi nk/128}$$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The time domain STF is obtained as follows:

STF_time = IDFT(STF_freq)

where STF_freq is given in Table 26-1.

The CP is then prepended to the TVWS-OFDM symbol.

26.2.1.3 Time domain STF repetition

There are 10 repetitions of sync sequence in each STF TVWS-OFDM symbol. The number of STF TVWS-OFDM symbols varies from 1 to 4.

26.2.1.4 STF power boosting

Power boosting shall be applied to the STF TVWS-OFDM symbols in order to aid preamble detection. The boost shall be a multiplication by 2.

26.2.2 LTF

26.2.2.1 Frequency domain LTF

Table 26-2 shows the frequency domain representation of the LTF.

Table 26-2—Frequency domain representation of LTF for TVWS-OFDM

Tone #	Value	Tone #	Value	Tone #	Value	Tone #	Value
–64	0	–32	–1	0	0	32	–1
–63	0	–31	1	1	–1	33	1
–62	0	–30	–1	2	1	34	–1
–61	0	–29	–1	3	–1	35	–1
–60	0	–28	1	4	1	36	1
–59	0	–27	1	5	–1	37	–1
–58	0	–26	–1	6	–1	38	1
–57	0	–25	1	7	–1	39	–1
–56	0	–24	1	8	1	40	–1
–55	0	–23	1	9	–1	41	1
–54	1	–22	1	10	1	42	–1
–53	–1	–21	1	11	–1	43	1
–52	–1	–20	–1	12	–1	44	–1
–51	–1	–19	1	13	–1	45	1
–50	1	–18	1	14	–1	46	1
–49	–1	–17	1	15	–1	47	–1

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 26-2—Frequency domain representation of LTF for TVWS-OFDM *(continued)*

Tone #	Value	Tone #	Value	Tone #	Value	Tone #	Value
–48	–1	–16	1	16	1	48	–1
–47	1	–15	–1	17	–1	49	1
–46	–1	–14	1	18	1	50	1
–45	–1	–13	–1	19	–1	51	1
–44	1	–12	1	20	1	52	1
–43	1	–11	–1	21	1	53	–1
–42	–1	–10	1	22	1	54	1
–41	1	–9	–1	23	–1	55	0
–40	1	–8	–1	24	–1	56	0
–39	1	–7	1	25	1	57	0
–38	1	–6	–1	26	–1	58	0
–37	–1	–5	1	27	–1	59	0
–36	–1	–4	–1	28	1	60	0
–35	–1	–3	1	29	–1	61	0
–34	1	–2	–1	30	1	62	0
–33	–1	–1	–1	31	1	63	0

26.2.2.2 Time domain LTF generation

The time domain LTF is obtained as follows:

$$LTF\_time = \mathrm{IDFT}(LTF\_freq)$$

where *LTF_freq* is given in Table 26-2.

The time-domain LTF structure shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 26-3, where T_{LTF} is the duration of the base symbol.

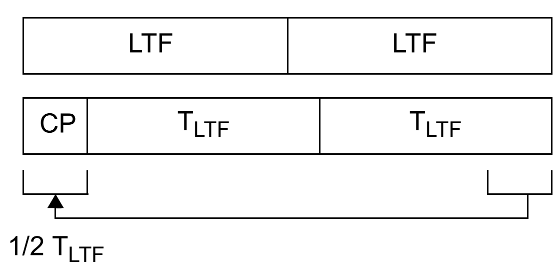


Figure 26-3—Structure of LTF for TVWS-OFDM and TVWS-NB-OFDM

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

26.2.3 PHR field format

The PHR field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 26-4.

Bits: 0–4	5	6–7	8–18	19–27	28–43	44–49
Reserved	Ranging	Rate	Frame Length	Scrambling Seed	HCS	PHR Tail

Figure 26-4—PHY field format for TVWS-OFDM

The PHR field occupies one TVWS-OFDM symbol. The PHR shall be transmitted using the lowest supported modulation and coding scheme (MCS) level, as described in Table 26-3.

The Ranging field shall be set to one to indicate that this particular frame is intended for ranging. If the frame is not intended for ranging the Ranging field shall be set to zero.

The Rate field specifies the data rate of the payload and is equal to the numerical value of the MCS for the mandatory mode and the numerical value of the MCS minus three for the optional 4 times overclock modes, as described in 26.3, transmitted MSB first. The data rates for TVWS-OFDM can be found in 26.3.

The Frame Length field is an unsigned integer that shall be set to the total number of octets contained in the PSDU (prior to FEC encoding). The Frame Length field shall be transmitted MSB first.

The Scrambler field specifies the scrambling seed defined by the manufacturer.

The HCS field is a 16-bit CRC taken over the PHR fields. The HCS shall be computed using the first 28 bits of the PHR. The HCS shall be calculated using the polynomial $G_{16}(x) = x^{16} + x^{12} + x^5 + 1$.

The HCS is the one's complement of the modulo 2 sum of the two remainders in a) and b):

a) The remainder resulting from $[x^k(x^{15}+ x^{14}+ \ldots +1)]$ divided (modulo 2) by $G_{16}(x)$, where the value k is the number of bits in the calculation field.
b) The remainder resulting from the calculation field contents, treated as a polynomial, multiplied by x^{16} and then divided (modulo 2) by $G_{16}(x)$.

At the transmitter, the initial remainder of the division shall be preset to all ones and then be modified via division of the calculation field by the generator polynomial, $G_{16}(x)$. The one's complement of this remainder is the HCS field. The coefficient of the highest order term shall be transmitted first.

The PHR Tail field, which consists of all zeros, is for Viterbi decoder flushing, as described in 26.4.7.

26.2.4 PSDU field

The PSDU field carries the encoded PSDU.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

26.3 System parameters for TVWS-OFDM

For devices that support the TVWS-OFDM PHY, modes MCS0, MCS1, and MCS2 shall be supported, and modes MCS3, MCS4, and MCS5 are optional, as shown in Table 26-3.

The system parameters for the TVWS-OFDM PHY are shown in Table 26-3. Included in Table 26-3 are the data rates and the number of symbols per octet, which depend on both the MCS level and the TVWS-OFDM Mode. The nominal bandwidth is calculated by multiplying {the number of active tones + 1 for the DC tone} by {the subcarrier spacing}.

Table 26-3—System parameters for TVWS-OFDM

Parameter		Mandatory modes[a]	Optional modes
Nominal bandwidth (kHz)		1064.5	4258
Subcarrier spacing (kHz)		1250/128	4×1250/128
DFT size		128	128
Active tones		108	108
# Pilot tones		8	8
# Data tones		100	100
MCS0 (BPSK)	Data Rate (kb/s)	390.625	—
	phySymbolsPerOctet	8 bits/octet × 1/50 symbol/bits	—
MCS1 (QPSK)	Data Rate (kb/s)	781.250	—
	phySymbolsPerOctet	8 bits/octet × 1/100 symbol/bits	—
MCS2 (16-QAM)	Data Rate (kb/s)	1562.5	—
	phySymbolsPerOctet	8 bits/octet × 1/200 symbol/bits	—
MCS3 (BPSK)	Data Rate (kb/s)	—	1562.5
	phySymbolsPerOctet	—	8 bits/octet × 1/50 symbol/bits
MCS4 (QPSK)	Data Rate (kb/s)	—	3125
	phySymbolsPerOctet	—	8 bits/octet × 1/100 symbol/bits
MCS5 (16-QAM)	Data Rate (kb/s)	—	6250
	phySymbolsPerOctet	—	8 bits/octet × 1/200 symbol/bits

[a]For devices that support the TVWS-OFDM PHY

26.4 Modulation and coding for TVWS-OFDM

26.4.1 Reference modulator

The reference modulator is illustrated in Figure 26-5.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

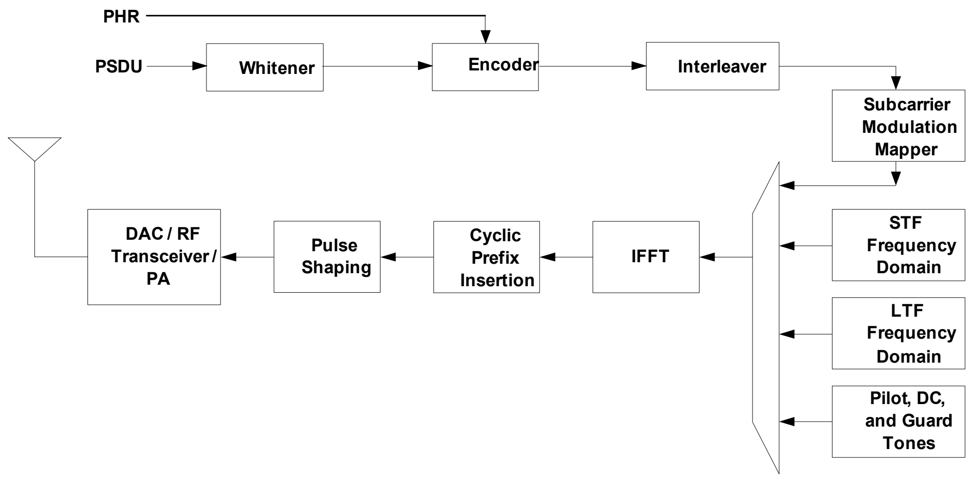


Figure 26-5—Reference modulator diagram for TVWS-OFDM

26.4.2 Bit-to-symbol mapping

Figure 26-6 shows the bit-to-symbol mapping for BPSK, QPSK, and 16-QAM.

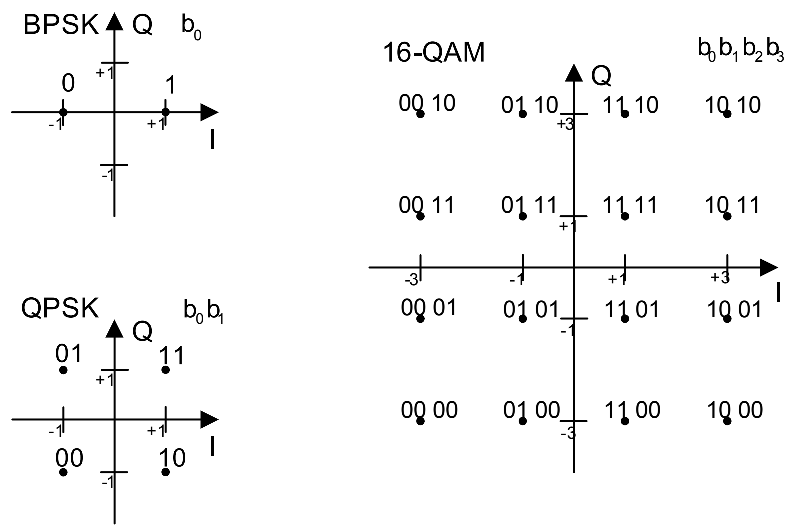


Figure 26-6—Bit-to-symbol mapping for TVWS-OFDM

The output values, d, are formed by multiplying the resulting $(I+jQ)$ value by a normalization factor K_{MOD}:

$$d = (I + jQ) \times K_{MOD}$$

The normalization factor, K_{MOD}, depends on the base modulation mode, as described in Table 26-4. The purpose of the normalization factor is to achieve the same average power for all mappings.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

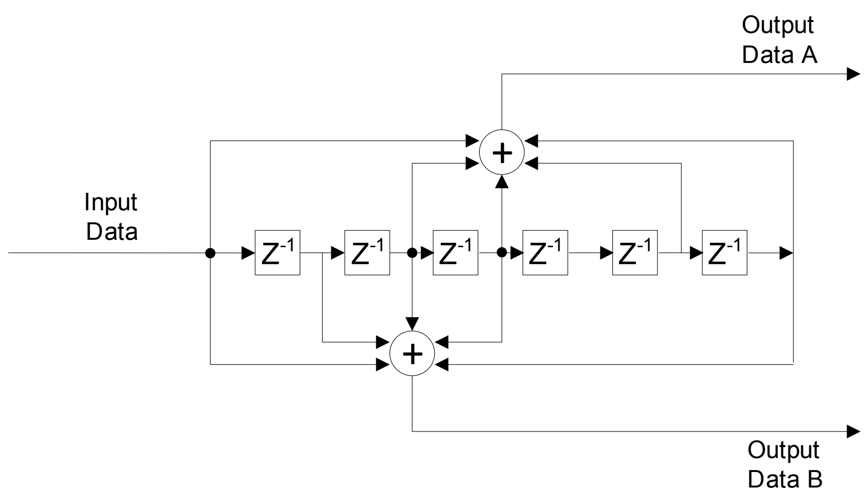
Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 26-4—Modulation-dependent normalization factor K_{MOD} for TVWS-OFDM

Modulation	K_{MOD}
BPSK	1
QPSK	$1/\sqrt{2}$
16-QAM	$1/\sqrt{10}$

26.4.3 FEC

The DATA field shall be coded with a convolutional encoder of coding rate R = 1/2. The DATA field consists of the PHR field when encoding the PHY header as shown in Figure 26-4. The DATA field consists of the PSDU field, PPDU Tail field, and Pad field as shown in Figure 26-1 when encoding the remainder of the PPDU. The convolutional encoder shall use the generator polynomials expressed in octal representation, $g_0 = 133_8$ and $g_1 = 171_8$, of rate R = 1/2, as shown in Figure 26-7. The convolutional encoder shall be initialized to the all zeros state before encoding the PHR and then reset to the all zeros state before encoding the PSDU.



Convolutional Encoder : Rate ½, constraint length K=7
Octal generator polynomials [133, 171]

Figure 26-7—Rate 1/2 convolutional encoder for TVWS-OFDM

The first coded bit is from Output Data A, and the second coded bit is from Output Data B.

26.4.4 Interleaver

The interleaving process consists of two permutations. The index of the coded bit before the first permutation shall be denoted as *k*; *i* shall be the index after the first and before the second permutation; and *j* shall be the index after the second permutation, just prior to modulation mapping. The coded bits are written at the index given by *j* and read out sequentially. The index *i* is defined as follows:

$$i = \left(\frac{N_{cbps}}{N_{row}}\right) \times [k \bmod(N_{row})] + \mathrm{floor}\left(\frac{k}{N_{row}}\right)$$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

where

N_{cbps} is the number of coded bits per symbol
k is 0, 1, 2,..., $(N_{cbps} - 1)$
N_{row} is 20

The process of interleaving for the first permutation is illustrated in Figure 26-8.

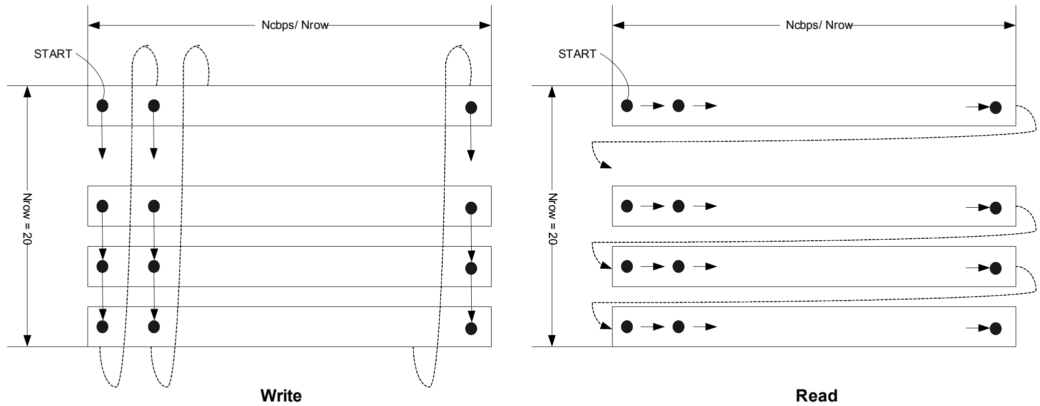


Figure 26-8—The process of interleaving for the first permutation

The index j is defined as follows:

$$j = s \times \text{floor}\left(\frac{i}{s}\right) + \left[i + N_{cbps} - \text{floor}\left(\frac{N_{row} \times i}{N_{cbps}}\right)\right] \text{mod}(s)$$

where

N_{cbps} is the number of coded bits per symbol
i is 0, 1, 2, …, $(N_{cbps}-1)$
N_{row} is 20

and

$$s = \max\left(\frac{N_{bpsc}}{2}, 1\right)$$

where N_{bpsc} is the number of bits per subcarrier and has the values 1, 2, and 4 for BPSK, QPSK, and 16-QAM, respectively. N_{cbps} is defined as follows: 100 bits for BPSK, 200 bits for QPSK, and 400 bits for 16-QAM.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

26.4.5 Pilot tones/null tones

The numbers of pilot and null tones for TVWS-OFDM are defined as shown in Table 26-5.

Table 26-5—Number of pilot and null tones for TVWS-OFDM

Tone	Mandatory modes	Optional modes
Active tones	108	108
# Pilot tones	8	8
# Data tones	100	100
# DC null tones	1	1

The DC tone is numbered as 0, and the subcarriers for pilot and data tones are numbered as –54 to 54 with the DC tone unused as depicted in Figure 26-9.

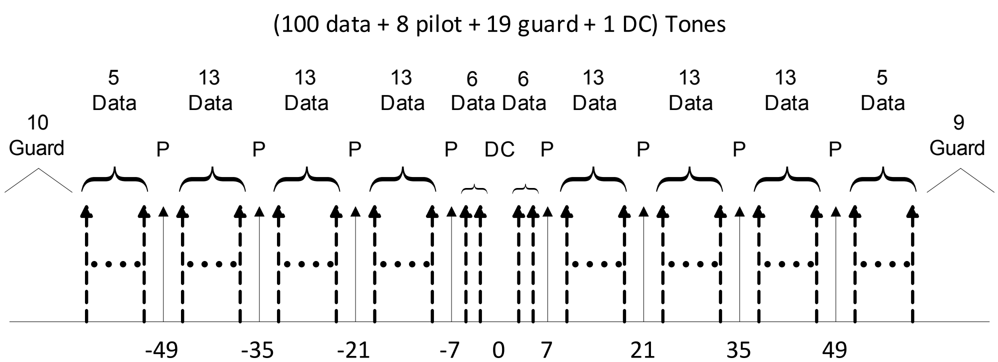


Figure 26-9—Pilot tones for TVWS-OFDM

The first output symbol is mapped to the most negative data carrier index in data tones, and the second output symbol is mapped to the second most negative data carrier index in data tones, and so on.The data carried on the pilot tones shall be determined by a PN9 pseudo-noise sequence, generated by the PN9 sequence generator shown in Figure 17-2, with the seed "111111111". The first output bit is assigned to the most negative index in pilot tones. For example, the first output bit from the PN9 sequence is assigned to the pilot symbol with index –49, and the second output bit is assigned to the pilot symbol with index –35, and so on. Table 26-6 shows the mapping from PN9 bits to the pilot BPSK symbols for all MCS levels. Index *n* starts after the LTF from zero and is increased by one for every pilot subcarrier.

Table 26-6—Mapping from PN9 sequence to pilot BPSK symbols for TVWS-OFDM

Input bit ($PN9_n$)	BPSK symbol
0	$-1 + (0 \times j)$
1	$1 + (0 \times j)$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

26.4.6 CP

For the STF, the CP is defined in 26.2.1.3. For the LTF, the CP is defined in 26.2.2.2. For the remaining TVWS-OFDM symbols, a CP shall be prepended to each base symbol. The duration of the CP (25.6 μs) shall be 1/4 of the base symbol (102.4 μs).

26.4.7 PPDU Tail field

The PPDU Tail field shall be six bits of 0, which are required to return the convolutional encoder to the “zero state.” This procedure reduces the error probability of the convolutional decoder, which relies on future bits when decoding and which may not be available past the end of the message. The PPDU Tail field shall be produced by replacing six scrambled “zero” bits following the message end with six nonscrambled “zero” bits.

26.4.8 Pad field

The number of bits in the DATA field shall be a multiple of N_{cbps}. To achieve that, the length of the message is extended so that it becomes a multiple of N_{dbps}, the number of data bits per TVWS-OFDM symbol. At least six bits are appended to the message, in order to accommodate the PPDU Tail field, as described in 26.4.7. The number of TVWS-OFDM symbols, N_{SYM}, the number of bits in the DATA field, N_{DATA}, and the number of pad bits, N_{PAD}, are computed using the length, in octets, of the PSDU (the LENGTH is equal to the content of the Frame Length field in Figure 26-4) as follows:

$$N_{dbps} = N_{cbps} \times R$$

$$N_{SYM} = \text{ceiling}[(8 \times \text{LENGTH} + 6) / N_{dbps}]$$

$$N_{DATA} = N_{SYM} \times N_{dbps}$$

$$N_{PAD} = N_{DATA} - (8 \times \text{LENGTH} + 6)$$

The function ceiling (.) returns the smallest integer value greater than or equal to its argument value. The appended bits (i.e., pad bits) are set to zeros and are subsequently scrambled with the rest of the bits in the DATA field.

In the case where the DATA field consists of the PHR, the number of bits in the DATA field (PHR as shown in 26.2.3) shall be set to 50.

26.4.9 Scrambler and scrambler seeds

The input to the scrambler is the data bits followed by PPDU Tail field and then the Pad field. The scrambler uses a PN9 sequence that is generated by the generator shown in Figure 17-2. The PN9 scrambler is initialized by the scrambling seed specified by 9 bits in the PHR, as shown in Figure 26-4. The leftmost value of the scrambling seed is placed into the leftmost delay element in Figure 17-2. The PN9 generator is clocked using the seed as the starting point and enabled after the first clock cycle. The PN9 generator shall be reinitialized to the seed after each packet (either transmit or receive).

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

26.5 TVWS-OFDM RF requirements

26.5.1 Operating frequency range

The TVWS-OFDM PHY operates in the bands indicated in Table 7-39.

26.5.2 Pulse shaping

Pulse shaping shall be applied at the transmitter using a filter equivalent to the Root Raised Cosine filter with a roll-off factor of 0.5. The parameters of the filter shall be as needed to meet regulatory requirements in the band of operation. It is recommended that the receiver also use a filter equivalent to the Root Raise Cosine filter with a roll-off factor of 0.5.

26.5.3 Transmit power spectral density (PSD) mask

The TVWS-OFDM PHY transmit PSD mask shall conform with local regulations.

26.5.4 Receiver sensitivity

The sensitivity requirements, as described in 10.1.7, for every option and MCS mode are shown below in Table 26-7.

Table 26-7—TVWS-OFDM PHY sensitivity requirements

MCS mode	Sensitivity
0	–97 dBm
1	–94 dBm
2	–88 dBm
3	–91 dBm
4	–88 dBm
5	–82 dBm

26.5.5 TX-to-RX turnaround time

The TX-to-RX turnaround time shall be as given in 10.2.1.

26.5.6 RX-to-TX turnaround time

The RX-to-TX turnaround time shall be as given in 10.2.2.

26.5.7 EVM definition

The relative constellation RMS error averaged over subcarriers, symbols, and packets shall not exceed the values shown in Table 26-8.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 26-8—TVWS-OFDM PHY EVM requirements

MCS mode	RMS error	
	Mandatory modes	**Optional modes**
0	–10 dB	—
1	–10 dB	—
2	–16 dB	—
3	—	–10 dB
4	—	–10 dB
5	—	–16 dB

The transmit modulation accuracy test shall be performed by instrumentation capable of converting the transmitted signal into a stream of complex samples. The sampled signal shall be processed in a manner similar to an actual receiver, according to the following steps, or an equivalent procedure:

a) Detect the start of packet.
b) Detect the transition from STF to LTF, and establish fine timing (with one sample resolution).
c) Estimate the coarse and fine frequency offsets.
d) De-rotate the packet according to estimated frequency offset.
e) Estimate the complex channel response coefficients for each of the subcarriers.
f) For each data TVWS-OFDM symbol, transform the symbol into subcarrier received values, and divide each subcarrier value with the estimated channel response coefficient.
g) For each data-carrying subcarrier, find the closest constellation point, and compute the squared Euclidean distance from it.
h) Compute the RMS average of all errors in a packet:

$$RMS_{error} = 20\log_{10}\left(\frac{1}{N_F}\sum_{i=1}^{N_F}\sqrt{\frac{\sum_{j=1}^{N_{SYM}}\sum_{k \in U_D}\Delta i, j, k^2}{100 \times N_{SYM} \times P_0}}\right)$$

with

$$\Delta(i, j, k)^2 = [I(i, j, k) - I_0(i, j, k)]^2 + [Q(i, j, k) - Q_0(i, j, k)]^2$$

where

N_{SYM}	is the number of TVWS-OFDM symbols in the packet
N_F	is the number of packets used for the measurement
U_D	is the index set of data tones
$[I_0((i,j,k),Q_0(i,j,k))]$	denotes the ideal symbol point of the *i*th packet, *j*th TVWS-OFDM symbol of the packet, and *k*th subcarrier of the TVWS-OFDM symbol in the complex plane

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

$[I((i,j,k),Q(i,j,k))]$ denotes the observed point of the ith packet, jth TVWS-OFDM symbol of the packet, and kth tone of the TVWS-OFDM symbol in the complex plane

P_0 is the average power of the constellation

The test shall be performed over at least $N_F = 20$ packets. The payload of the packets under test shall contain $N_{SYM} = 16$ TVWS-OFDM symbols. Random data shall be used for the payload.

26.5.8 Transmit center frequency and symbol tolerance

The transmit center frequency tolerance shall be $\pm 20 \times 10^{-6}$ maximum. The symbol clock frequency tolerance shall also be $\pm 20 \times 10^{-6}$ maximum. The transmit center frequency and the symbol clock frequency shall be derived from the same reference oscillator.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

27. TVWS-NB-OFDM PHY

27.1 PPDU format for TVWS-NB-OFDM

The TVWS-NB-OFDM PPDU shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 27-1.

STF	LTF	PHR	PHY Payload

Figure 27-1—Format of the TVWS-NB-OFDM PPDU

An example of encoding a TVWS-NB-OFDM packet can be found in Lu et al. [B9].

27.1.1 Short Training field (STF)

27.1.1.1 Frequency domain STF

Table 27-1 shows the frequency domain representation of the STF.

Table 27-1—Frequency domain representation of STF for TVWS-NB-OFDM

Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im
–192	–1.4142	–1.4142	–96	–1.4142	–1.4142	0	–1.4142	–1.4142	96	–1.4142	–1.4142
–191	0	0	–95	0	0	1	0	0	97	0	0
–190	0	0	–94	0	0	2	0	0	98	0	0
–189	0	0	–93	0	0	3	0	0	99	0	0
–188	1.6257	1.165	–82	1.165	–1.6257	4	–1.6257	–1.165	100	–1.165	1.6257
–187	0	0	–91	0	0	5	0	0	101	0	0
–186	0	0	–90	0	0	6	0	0	102	0	0
–185	0	0	–89	0	0	7	0	0	103	0	0
–184	–1.9829	–0.2611	–88	1.9829	0.2611	8	–1.9829	–0.2611	104	1.9829	0.2611
–183	0	0	–87	0	0	9	0	0	105	0	0
–182	0	0	–86	0	0	10	0	0	106	0	0
–181	0	0	–85	0	0	11	0	0	107	0	0
–180	1.546	–1.2688	–84	1.2688	1.546	12	–1.546	1.2688	108	–1.2688	–1.546
–179	0	0	–83	0	0	13	0	0	109	0	0
–178	0	0	–82	0	0	14	0	0	110	0	0
–177	0	0	–81	0	0	15	0	0	111	0	0
–176	0.5176	1.9319	–80	0.5176	1.9319	16	0.5176	1.9319	112	0.5176	1.9319
–175	0	0	–79	0	0	17	0	0	113	0	0
–174	0	0	–78	0	0	18	0	0	114	0	0
–173	0	0	–77	0	0	19	0	0	115	0	0

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 27-1—Frequency domain representation of STF for TVWS-NB-OFDM *(continued)*

Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im
–172	–1.9733	0.3258	–76	0.3258	1.9733	20	1.9733	–0.3258	116	–0.3258	–1.9733
–171	0	0	–75	0	0	21	0	0	117	0	0
–170	0	0	–74	0	0	22	0	0	118	0	0
–169	0	0	–73	0	0	23	0	0	119	0	0
–168	–0.7654	–1.8478	–72	0.7654	1.8478	24	–0.7654	–1.8478	120	0.7654	1.8478
–167	0	0	–71	0	0	25	0	0	121	0	0
–166	0	0	–70	0	0	26	0	0	122	0	0
–165	0	0	–69	0	0	27	0	0	123	0	0
–164	1.165	–1.6257	–68	1.6257	1.165	28	–1.165	1.6257	124	–1.6257	–1.165
–163	0	0	–67	0	0	29	0	0	125	0	0
–162	0	0	–66	0	0	30	0	0	126	0	0
–161	0	0	–65	0	0	31	0	0	127	0	0
–160	1.9319	–0.5176	–64	1.9319	–0.5176	32	1.9319	–0.5176	128	1.9319	–0.5176
–159	0	0	–63	0	0	33	0	0	129	0	0
–158	0	0	–62	0	0	34	0	0	130	0	0
–157	0	0	–61	0	0	35	0	0	131	0	0
–156	1.9904	0.196	–60	0.196	–1.9904	36	–1.9904	–0.196	132	–0.196	1.9904
–155	0	0	–59	0	0	37	0	0	133	0	0
–154	0	0	–58	0	0	38	0	0	134	0	0
–153	0	0	–57	0	0	39	0	0	135	0	0
–152	1.9829	0.2611	–56	–1.9829	–0.2611	40	1.9829	0.2611	136	–1.9829	–0.2611
–151	0	0	–55	0	0	41	0	0	137	0	0
–150	0	0	–54	0	0	42	0	0	138	0	0
–149	0	0	–53	0	0	43	0	0	139	0	0
–148	1.9733	–0.3258	–52	0.3258	1.9733	44	–1.9733	0.3258	140	–0.3258	–1.9733
–147	0	0	–51	0	0	45	0	0	141	0	0
–146	0	0	–50	0	0	46	0	0	142	0	0
–145	0	0	–49	0	0	47	0	0	143	0	0
–144	1.4142	–1.4142	–48	1.4142	–1.4142	48	1.4142	–1.4142	144	1.4142	–1.4142
–143	0	0	–47	0	0	49	0	0	145	0	0
–142	0	0	–46	0	0	50	0	0	146	0	0
–141	0	0	–45	0	0	51	0	0	147	0	0
–140	–0.3258	–1.9733	–44	–1.9733	0.3258	52	0.3258	1.9733	148	1.9733	–0.3258
–139	0	0	–43	0	0	53	0	0	149	0	0

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 27-1—Frequency domain representation of STF for TVWS-NB-OFDM *(continued)*

Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im
–138	0	0	–42	0	0	54	0	0	150	0	0
–137	0	0	–41	0	0	55	0	0	151	0	0
–136	–1.9829	–0.2611	–40	1.9829	0.2611	56	–1.9829	–0.2611	152	1.9829	0.2611
–135	0	0	–39	0	0	57	0	0	153	0	0
–134	0	0	–38	0	0	58	0	0	154	0	0
–133	0	0	–37	0	0	59	0	0	155	0	0
–132	–0.196	1.9904	–36	–1.9904	–0.196	60	0.196	–1.9904	156	1.9904	0.196
–131	0	0	–35	0	0	61	0	0	157	0	0
–130	0	0	–34	0	0	62	0	0	158	0	0
–129	0	0	–33	0	0	63	0	0	159	0	0
–128	1.9319	–0.5176	–32	1.9319	–0.5176	64	1.9319	–0.5176	160	1.9319	–0.5176
–127	0	0	–31	0	0	65	0	0	161	0	0
–126	0	0	–30	0	0	66	0	0	162	0	0
–125	0	0	–29	0	0	67	0	0	163	0	0
–124	–1.6257	–1.165	–28	–1.165	1.6257	68	1.6257	1.165	164	1.165	–1.6257
–123	0	0	–27	0	0	69	0	0	165	0	0
–122	0	0	–26	0	0	70	0	0	166	0	0
–121	0	0	–25	0	0	71	0	0	167	0	0
–120	0.7654	1.8478	–24	–0.7654	–1.8478	72	–0.7654	1.8478	168	–0.7654	–1.8478
–119	0	0	–23	0	0	73	0	0	169	0	0
–118	0	0	–22	0	0	74	0	0	170	0	0
–117	0	0	–21	0	0	75	0	0	171	0	0
–116	–0.3258	–1.9733	–20	1.9733	–0.3258	76	0.3258	1.9733	172	–1.9733	0.3258
–115	0	0	–19	0	0	77	0	0	173	0	0
–114	0	0	–18	0	0	78	0	0	174	0	0
–113	0	0	–17	0	0	79	0	0	175	0	0
–112	0.5176	1.9319	–16	0.5176	1.9319	80	0.5176	1.9319	176	0.5176	1.9319
–111	0	0	–15	0	0	81	0	0	177	0	0
–110	0	0	–14	0	0	82	0	0	178	0	0
–109	0	0	–13	0	0	83	0	0	179	0	0
–108	–1.2688	–1.546	–12	–1.546	1.2688	84	1.2688	1.546	180	1.546	–1.2688
–107	0	0	–11	0	0	85	0	0	181	0	0
–106	0	0	–10	0	0	86	0	0	182	0	0
–105	0	0	–9	0	0	87	0	0	183	0	0

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 27-1—Frequency domain representation of STF for TVWS-NB-OFDM *(continued)*

Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im
–104	1.9829	0.2611	–8	–1.9829	–0.2611	88	1.9829	0.2611	184	–1.9829	–0.2611
–103	0	0	–7	0	0	89	0	0	185	0	0
–102	0	0	–6	0	0	90	0	0	186	0	0
–101	0	0	–5	0	0	91	0	0	187	0	0
–100	–1.165	1.6257	–4	–1.6257	–1.165	92	1.165	–1.6257	188	1.6257	1.165
–99	0	0	–3	0	0	93	0	0	189	0	0
–98	0	0	–2	0	0	94	0	0	190	0	0
–97	0	0	–1	0	0	95	0	0	191	0	0

27.1.1.2 Time domain STF generation

The short training field sequence is defined based on Zadoff Chu Sequence with length N=96, a prime number H=19, and n=0, 1, …, N–1. The short training field sequence $s(n)$ in the time domain is expressed as below:

$$s(n) = e^{jH\pi n^2/N}, n = 0, 1, 2\ldots N-1$$

The DFT of $s(n)$ is defined as $S(k)$, where k = 0, ..., N–1:

$$S(k) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} s(n)e^{-j2\pi kn/N}$$

The sequence $s(n)$ can be calculated from $S(k)$ using the IDFT:

$$s(n) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}\sum_{n=0}^{N-1} S(k)e^{j2\pi nk/N}$$

Given the frequency domain sequence *STF_freq* as specified in 27.1.1.1, the time domain STF can be generated as follows:

STF_time = IDFT(*STF_freq*)

The CP with 1/2 T_{STF} duration is then prepended to the STF TVWS-NB-OFDM symbol.

27.1.1.3 Time domain STF repetition

There are four repetitions of the STF in the time domain, and the CP with a duration of 1/2 T_{STF}, as shown in Figure 27-2.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

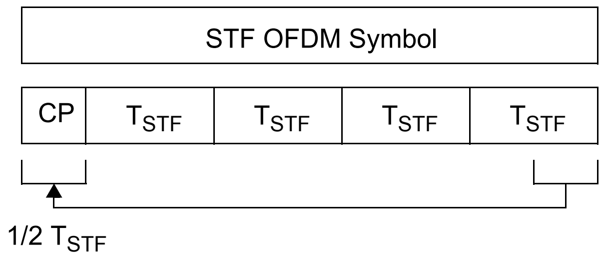


Figure 27-2—STF format for TVWS-NB-OFDM

The STF sequence, $STF\_time(n)$, is indexed by n=0, 1, 2, …, N_{ST}–1, where N_{ST} is the number of effective subcarriers. $STF\_time(n)$ consists of four repetitions of $S(k)$ and can be represented as follows:

$$STF\_time(n)=S(MOD(n, N)) \text{ for } n=0, 1, \ldots, 4\times N-1$$

where

N is 9
$MOD(n, N)$ is the modulo-N operation for any input n

27.1.1.4 STF normalization

The STF uses a fewer number of tones than the PHR field and PHY Payload field, as shown in Figure 27-1. Hence, normalization of the frequency domain STF is required to ensure that the STF power is the same as the rest of the packet. In order to have the same power as the PHR field and PHY Payload field, the normalization value is as follows:

$$\mathrm{sqrt}(N_{active}/N_{STF})$$

where

N_{active} is the number of subcarriers used in the rest of the TVWS-NB-OFDM packet
N_{STF} is the number of subcarriers used in the STF

27.1.2 Long training field (LTF)

27.1.2.1 Frequency domain LTF generation

Table 27-2 shows the frequency domain representation of the LTF.

Table 27-2—Frequency domain representation of LTF for TVWS-NB-OFDM

Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im
–192	0.051	–0.051	–96	0.051	–0.051	0	0.051	–0.051	96	0.051	–0.051
–191	0	0	–95	0	0	1	0	0	97	0	0
–190	0.0687	–0.0221	–94	0.0221	0.0687	2	–0.0687	0.0221	98	–0.0221	–0.0687
–189	0	0	–93	0	0	3	0	0	99	0	0

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 27-2—Frequency domain representation of LTF for TVWS-NB-OFDM *(continued)*

Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im
–188	0.0319	0.0647	–82	–0.0319	–0.0647	4	0.0319	0.0647	100	–0.0319	–0.0647
–187	0	0	–91	0	0	5	0	0	101	0	0
–186	–0.068	–0.0243	–90	–0.0243	0.068	6	0.068	0.0243	102	0.0243	–0.068
–185	0	0	–89	0	0	7	0	0	103	0	0
–184	0.0625	0.0361	–88	0.0625	0.0361	8	0.0625	0.0361	104	0.0625	0.0361
–183	0	0	–87	0	0	9	0	0	105	0	0
–182	0.0059	–0.0719	–86	0.0719	0.0059	10	–0.0059	0.0719	106	–0.0719	–0.0059
–181	0	0	–85	0	0	11	0	0	107	0	0
–180	–0.06	–0.0401	–84	0.06	0.0401	12	–0.06	–0.0401	108	0.06	0.0401
–179	0	0	–83	0	0	13	0	0	109	0	0
–178	–0.0642	–0.033	–82	–0.033	0.0642	14	0.0642	0.033	110	0.033	–0.0642
–177	0	0	–81	0	0	15	0	0	111	0	0
–176	–0.0187	–0.0697	–80	–0.0187	–0.0697	16	–0.0187	–0.0697	112	–0.0187	–0.0697
–175	0	0	–79	0	0	17	0	0	113	0	0
–174	0.0721	–0.0035	–78	0.0035	0.0721	18	–0.0721	0.0035	114	–0.0035	–0.0721
–173	0	0	–77	0	0	19	0	0	115	0	0
–172	–0.0647	0.0319	–76	0.0647	–0.0319	20	–0.0647	0.0319	116	0.0647	–0.0319
–171	0	0	–75	0	0	21	0	0	117	0	0
–170	0.0719	0.0059	–74	0.0059	–0.0719	22	–0.0719	–0.0059	118	–0.0059	0.0719
–169	0	0	–73	0	0	23	0	0	119	0	0
–168	0	–0.0722	–72	0	–0.0722	24	0	–0.0722	120	0	–0.0722
–167	0	0	–71	0	0	25	0	0	121	0	0
–166	–0.0467	–0.055	–70	0.055	–0.0467	26	0.0467	0.055	122	–0.055	0.0467
–165	0	0	–69	0	0	27	0	0	123	0	0
–164	–0.0319	–0.0647	–68	0.0319	0.0647	28	–0.0319	–0.0647	124	0.0319	0.0647
–163	0	0	–67	0	0	29	0	0	125	0	0
–162	0.0485	–0.0535	–66	–0.0535	–0.0485	30	–0.0485	0.0535	126	0.0535	0.0485
–161	0	0	–65	0	0	31	0	0	127	0	0
–160	0.0187	0.0697	–64	0.0187	0.0697	32	0.0187	0.0697	128	0.0187	0.0697
–159	0	0	–63	0	0	33	0	0	129	0	0
–158	–0.0221	–0.0687	–62	0.0687	–0.0221	34	0.0221	0.0687	130	–0.0687	0.0221
–157	0	0	–61	0	0	35	0	0	131	0	0
–156	–0.0401	0.06	–60	0.0401	–0.06	36	–0.0401	0.06	132	0.0401	–0.06
–155	0	0	–59	0	0	37	0	0	133	0	0

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 27-2—Frequency domain representation of LTF for TVWS-NB-OFDM *(continued)*

Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im
–154	0.0467	0.055	–58	0.055	–0.0467	38	–0.0467	–0.055	134	–0.055	0.0467
–153	0	0	–57	0	0	39	0	0	135	0	0
–152	0.0625	0.0361	–56	0.0625	0.0361	40	0.0625	0.0361	136	0.0625	0.0361
–151	0	0	–55	0	0	41	0	0	137	0	0
–150	0.0309	0.0652	–54	–0.0652	0.0309	42	–0.0309	–0.0652	138	–0.0652	0.0309
–149	0	0	–53	0	0	43	0	0	139	0	0
–148	–0.0647	0.0319	–52	0.0647	–0.0319	44	–0.0647	0.0319	140	0.0647	–0.0319
–147	0	0	–51	0	0	45	0	0	141	0	0
–146	0.033	–0.0642	–50	–0.0642	–0.033	46	–0.033	0.0642	142	0.0642	0.033
–145	0	0	–49	0	0	47	0	0	143	0	0
–144	–0.051	0.051	–48	–0.051	0.051	48	–0.051	0.051	144	–0.051	0.051
–143	0	0	–47	0	0	49	0	0	145	0	0
–142	0.0642	0.033	–46	–0.033	0.0642	50	–0.0642	–0.033	146	0.033	–0.0642
–141	0	0	–45	0	0	51	0	0	147	0	0
–140	0.0647	–0.0319	–44	–0.0647	0.0319	52	0.0647	–0.0319	148	–0.0647	0.0319
–139	0	0	–43	0	0	53	0	0	149	0	0
–138	0.0652	–0.0309	–42	–0.0309	–0.0652	54	–0.0652	0.0309	150	0.0309	0.0652
–137	0	0	–41	0	0	55	0	0	151	0	0
–136	0.0625	0.0361	–40	0.0625	0.0361	56	0.0625	0.0361	152	0.0625	0.0361
–135	0	0	–39	0	0	57	0	0	153	0	0
–134	–0.055	0.0467	–38	–0.0467	–0.055	58	0.055	–0.0467	154	0.0467	0.055
–133	0	0	–37	0	0	59	0	0	155	0	0
–132	0.0401	–0.06	–36	–0.0401	0.06	60	0.0401	–0.06	156	–0.0401	0.06
–131	0	0	–35	0	0	61	0	0	157	0	0
–130	–0.0687	0.0221	–34	0.0221	0.0687	62	0.0687	–0.0221	158	–0.0221	–0.0687
–129	0	0	–33	0	0	63	0	0	159	0	0
–128	0.0187	0.0697	–32	0.0187	0.0697	64	0.0187	0.0697	160	0.0187	0.0697
–127	0	0	–31	0	0	65	0	0	161	0	0
–126	0.0535	0.0485	–30	–0.0535	0.0485	66	–0.0535	–0.0485	162	0.0535	–0.0485
–125	0	0	–29	0	0	67	0	0	163	0	0
–124	0.0319	0.0647	–28	–0.0319	–0.0647	68	0.0319	0.0647	164	–0.0319	–0.0647
–123	0	0	–27	0	0	69	0	0	165	0	0
–122	–0.055	0.0467	–26	0.0467	0.055	70	0.055	–0.0467	166	–0.0467	–0.055
–121	0	0	–25	0	0	71	0	0	167	0	0

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 27-2—Frequency domain representation of LTF for TVWS-NB-OFDM *(continued)*

Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im	Tone #	Re	Im
–120	0	–0.0722	–24	0	–0.0722	72	0	–0.0722	168	0	–0.0722
–119	0	0	–23	0	0	73	0	0	169	0	0
–118	–0.0059	0.0719	–22	–0.0719	–0.0059	74	0.0059	–0.0719	170	0.0719	0.0059
–117	0	0	–21	0	0	75	0	0	171	0	0
–116	0.0647	–0.0319	–20	–0.0647	0.0319	76	0.0647	–0.0319	172	–0.0647	0.0319
–115	0	0	–19	0	0	77	0	0	173	0	0
–114	–0.0035	–0.0721	–18	–0.0721	0.0035	78	0.0035	0.0721	174	0.0721	–0.0035
–113	0	0	–17	0	0	79	0	0	175	0	0
–112	–0.0187	–0.0697	–16	–0.0187	–0.0697	80	–0.0187	–0.0697	176	–0.0187	–0.0697
–111	0	0	–15	0	0	81	0	0	177	0	0
–110	0.033	–0.0642	–14	0.0642	0.033	82	–0.033	0.0642	178	–0.0642	–0.033
–109	0	0	–13	0	0	83	0	0	179	0	0
–108	0.06	0.0401	–12	–0.06	–0.0401	84	0.06	0.0401	180	–0.06	–0.0401
–107	0	0	–11	0	0	85	0	0	181	0	0
–106	–0.0719	–0.0059	–10	–0.0059	0.0719	86	0.0719	0.0059	182	0.0059	–0.0719
–105	0	0	–9	0	0	87	0	0	183	0	0
–104	0.0625	0.0361	–8	0.0625	0.0361	88	0.0625	0.0361	184	0.0625	0.0361
–103	0	0	–7	0	0	89	0	0	185	0	0
–102	0.0243	–0.068	–6	0.068	0.0243	90	–0.0243	0.068	186	–0.068	–0.0243
–101	0	0	–5	0	0	91	0	0	187	0	0
–100	–0.0319	–0.0647	–4	0.0319	0.0647	92	–0.0319	–0.0647	188	0.0319	0.0647
–99	0	0	–3	0	0	93	0	0	189	0	0
–98	–0.0221	–0.0687	–2	–0.0687	0.0221	94	0.0221	0.0687	190	0.0687	–0.0221
–97	0	0	–1	0	0	95	0	0	191	0	0

27.1.2.2 Time domain LTF generation

The long training field sequence is defined based on Zadoff Chu Sequence with length N=192, a prime number H=53, and n=0, 1, …, N–1. The long training field sequence $l(n)$ in the time domain is expressed as below:

$$l(n) = e^{jH\pi n^2/N}, n = 0, 1, 2 \ldots N-1$$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The DFT of $l(n)$ is defined as $L(k)$, where $k = 0, ..., N–1$:

$$L(k) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} l(n) e^{-j2\pi kn/N}$$

The sequence $l(n)$ can be calculated from $L(k)$ using the IDFT:

$$l(n) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} L(k) e^{j2\pi nk/N}$$

Given the frequency domain sequence *LTF_freq* as specified in 27.1.2.1, the time domain LTF is obtained as follows:

LTF_time = IDFT(*LTF_freq*)

The CP with 1/2 LTF duration is then prepended to the LTF TVWS-NB-OFDM symbol.

27.1.2.3 Time domain LTF repetition

The LTF in the time domain shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 26-3.

The LTF sequence, *LTF_time*(n), is indexed by n=0, 1, 2, …, N_{ST}–1, where N_{ST} is the number of effective subcarriers. *LTF_time*(n) is the two repetitions of $L(k)$ and can be represented as follows:

$LTF\_time(n)=L(MOD(n, N))$ for n=0, 1, …, $2\times N–1$

where

N	is 192
$MOD(n, N)$	is the modulo-N operation for any input n

27.1.2.4 LTF normalization

The LTF uses a fewer number of tones than the PHR and PHY payload as shown in Figure 27-1. Hence, normalization of the frequency domain LTF is required to ensure that the LTF power is the same as the rest of the packet. In order to have the same power as the PHR and PHY payload, the normalization value is as follows:

sqrt(N_{active}/N_{LTF})

where

N_{active}	is 384, the number of subcarriers used in the rest of the TVWS-NB-OFDM packet
N_{LTF}	is the number of subcarriers used in the LTF

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

27.1.3 PHR

Figure 27-3 shows the PHR format for the TVWS-NB-OFDM PHY.

Bits: 0	1	2–5	6–16	17–20	21–29	30–37	38–43
Reserved	Ranging	Rate	Frame Length	Channel Aggregation	Scrambler Seed	HCS	Tail

Figure 27-3—PHY header fields for TVWS-NB-OFDM

The Ranging field is set to one to indicate that this particular frame is intended for ranging. If the frame is not intended for ranging, the Ranging field is set to zero.

The Rate field specifies the data rate of the payload and is equal to the numerical value of the MCS index as described in 27.3, transmitted MSB first. The data rates for the TVWS-NB-OFDM PHY can be found in 27.3.

The Frame Length field is an unsigned integer that shall be set to the total number of octets in the PSDU (prior to FEC encoding). The Frame Length field shall be transmitted MSB first.

The Channel Aggregation field is used for channel aggregation as described in 27.4. The total number of subchannels used for channel aggregation equals to the value of the Channel Aggregation field plus one. If channel aggregation is not used, the Channel Aggregation field is set to zero. The Channel Aggregation field shall be transmitted MSB first.

The Scrambler Seed field specifies the scrambling seed.

The HCS field is an 8-bit CRC taken over the PHR field. The HCS shall be computed using the first 30 bits of the PHR field using the polynomial $G_8(x) = x^8 + x^2 + x + 1$.The HCS is the remainder resulting from $[x^8(\mathrm{b}0x^{29} + \mathrm{b}1x^{28} + \ldots + \mathrm{b}28x + \mathrm{b}29)]$ divided (modulo 2) by $G_8(x)$, where $\mathrm{b}0x^{29} + \mathrm{b}1x^{28} + \ldots + \mathrm{b}28x + \mathrm{b}29$ is the polynomial representing the first 30 bits of the PHR for which the checksum is to be computed. At the transmitter, the initial remainder shall be preset to all zeros. The coefficient of the highest order term shall be transmitted first.

The Tail bit field is set to six continuous zeros for Viterbi decoder flushing.

27.1.4 PHY Payload field

The PHY Payload field carries the data of the encoded PSDU.

27.2 System parameters for TVWS-NB-OFDM

Table 27-3 shows system parameters for TVWS-NB-OFDM.

Table 27-3—System parameters for TVWS-NB-OFDM

Parameter	Value
Nominal bandwidth (kHz)	380.95
Subcarrier spacing (kHz)	0.99206 (=125/126)
Total Number of subcarriers – N_{ST}	384

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 27-3—System parameters for TVWS-NB-OFDM ***(continued)***

Parameter	Value
Number of pilot subcarriers per TVWS-NB-OFDM symbol – N_{SP}	32
Number of data subcarriers per TVWS-NB-OFDM symbol – N_{SD}	352
Effective symbol period – T_{FFT} (µs)	1008
Cyclic prefix interval duration – T_{CP} (µs)	Mandatory 1/32 (31.5 µs) Optional: 1/16 (63.0 µs), 1/8 (126.0 µs)
T_{SYM} (µs)	Mandatory 1039.5 Optional 1071.0, 1134.0 (T_{FFT}+T_{CP})
STF duration	1 symbol
LTF duration	1 symbol

27.3 Modulation and coding parameters for TVWS-NB-OFDM

The modulation and coding schemes with supported data rates for TVWS-NB-OFDM and corresponding MCS-related parameters are shown in the Table 27-4, where CC above stands for inner convolutional coding.

Table 27-4—Data rates for TVWS-NB-OFDM

MCS index	Modulation	CC coding rate	Data rate (kb/s)	CC coded bits per subcarrier (N_{BPSC})	CC coded bits per OFDM symbol (N_{CPBS})	RS encoded data bits per OFDM symbol (N_{DBPS})
MCS0	BPSK	1/2	156	1	352	176
MCS1	BPSK	3/4	234	1	352	264
MCS2	QPSK	1/2	312	2	704	352
MCS3	QPSK	3/4	468	2	704	528
MCS4	16-QAM	1/2	624	4	1408	704
MCS5	16-QAM	3/4	936	4	1408	1056
MCS6	64-QAM	1/2	936	6	2112	1056
MCS7	64-QAM	3/4	1404	6	2112	1584
MCS8	64-QAM	7/8	1638	6	2112	1848

27.3.1 Reference modulator

The reference modulator is illustrated in Figure 27-4.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

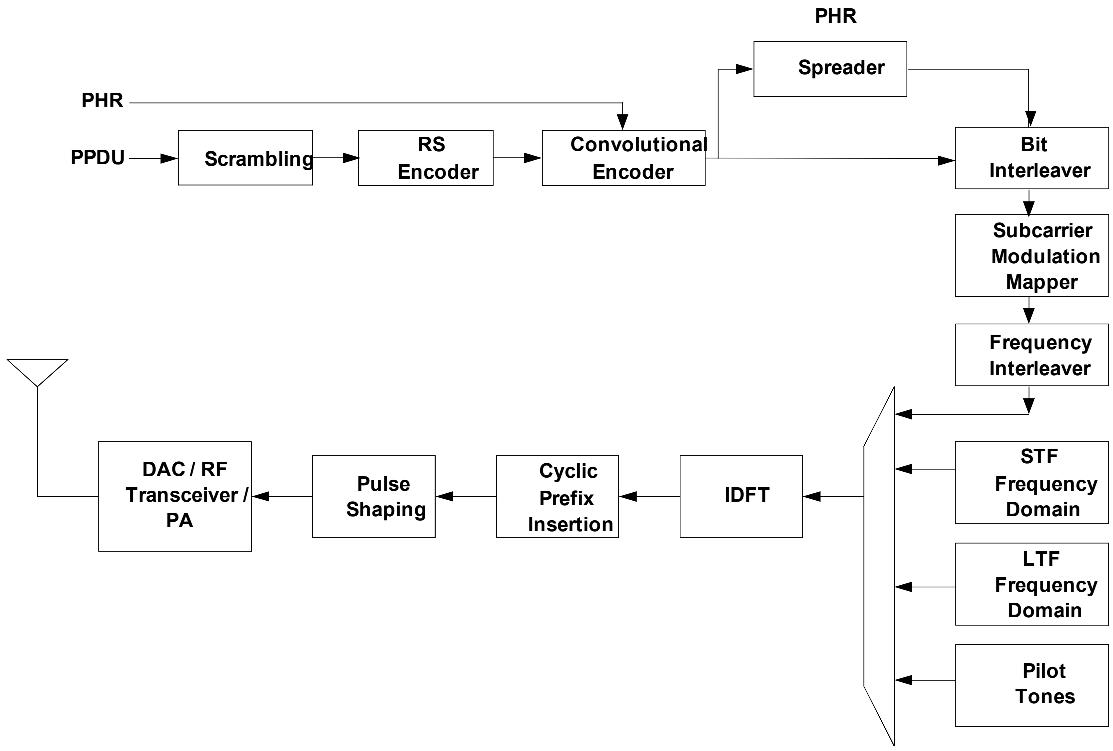


Figure 27-4—Reference modulator diagram for TVWS-NB-OFDM

27.3.2 Scrambler and scrambler seed

The input to the scrambler is the data bits followed by tail bits and then pad bits. The scrambler uses a PN9 sequence that is generated by the generator shown in Figure 17-2. The PN9 scrambler is initialized by the scrambling seed specified by 9 bits in the PHR. The leftmost value of the scrambling seed is placed into the leftmost delay element in Figure 17-2. The PN9 generator is clocked using the seed as the starting point and enabled after the first clock cycle.

27.3.3 Outer encoding

Reed Solomon (RS) encoding (204, 188) shall be used for the outer encoder. The RS encoding is applied with an RS (255, 239) coder as a shortened code. To generate the shortened code, 51 bytes of zeros shall be prepended to each 188-byte input data before RS (255,239) encoding, and the first 51 bytes of zeros shall be removed after the encoding. A root of the primitive polynomial for the RS encoder is as follows:

$$p(x) = 1 + x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + x^8$$

The polynomial generator $g(x)$ shall be the following equation:

$$G(x) = (x - \lambda^0)(x - \lambda^1)(x - \lambda^2)(x - \lambda^3)\ldots(x - \lambda^{15})$$

where λ is 0x02.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

27.3.4 Inner encoding

A recursive and systematic convolutional encoder of coding rate R = 1/2, 3/4, or 7/8 encodes the RS encoded data bits, 6 tail bits, and pad bits. The convolutional encoder shall use the generator polynomials g_0 = 171 and g_1 = 133, of rate R = 1/2, with feedback connection of g_0 as shown in Figure 27-5.

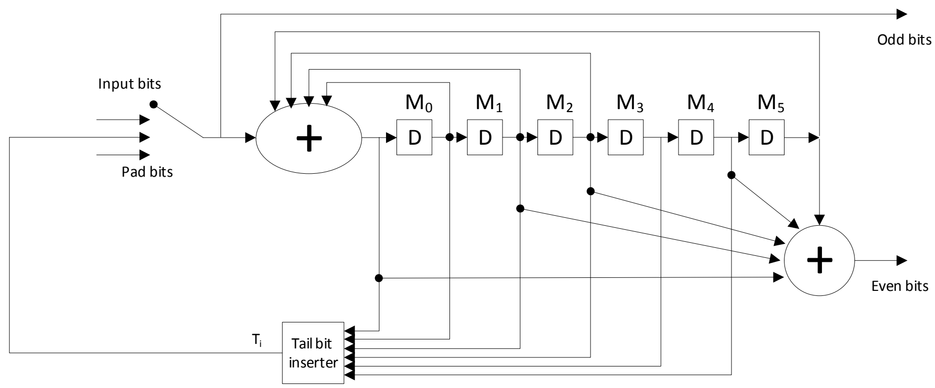


Figure 27-5—Recursive and systematic convolution encoder for TVWS-NB-OFDM

The value of the tail bits are dependent on the memory state shown in Figure 27-5 and shall be set as shown in Table 27-5.

Table 27-5—Tail bit pattern for the recursive and systematic encoder for TVWS-NB-OFDM

Memory state (M0–M5)	Tail bits (T0–T5)	Memory state (M0–M5)	Tail bits (T0–T5)	Memory state (M0–M5)	Tail bits (T0–T5)	Memory state (M0–M5)	Tail bits (T0–T5)
000000	000000	010000	110010	100000	111001	110000	001011
000001	100001	010001	010010	100001	011001	110001	101011
000010	010000	010010	100010	100010	101001	110010	011011
000011	110000	010011	000010	100011	001001	110011	111011
000100	001000	010100	111010	100100	110001	110100	000011
000101	101000	010101	011010	100101	010001	110101	100011
000110	011000	010110	101010	100110	100001	110110	010011
000111	111000	010111	001010	100111	000001	110111	110011
001000	100100	011000	010110	101000	011101	111000	101111
001001	000100	011001	110110	101001	111101	111001	001111
001010	110100	011010	000110	101010	001101	111010	111111
001011	010100	011011	100110	101011	101101	111011	011111
001100	101100	011100	01111=	101100	010101	111100	100111
001101	001100	011101	111110	101101	110101	111101	000111
001110	111100	011110	001110	101110	000101	111110	110111
001111	011100	011111	101110	101111	100101	111111	010111

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Puncturing enables a higher data rate by omitting some of the encoded bits in the transmitter (thus reducing the number of transmitted bits and increasing the coding rate) and inserting a dummy "zero" metric into the convolutional decoder at the receive side in place of the omitted bits. The puncturing patterns are illustrated in Figure 27-6, Figure 27-7, and Figure 27-8 for the rates 2/3, 3/4, and 7/8, respectively.

Figure 27-6—R=2/3 puncturing pattern for TVWS-NB-OFDM

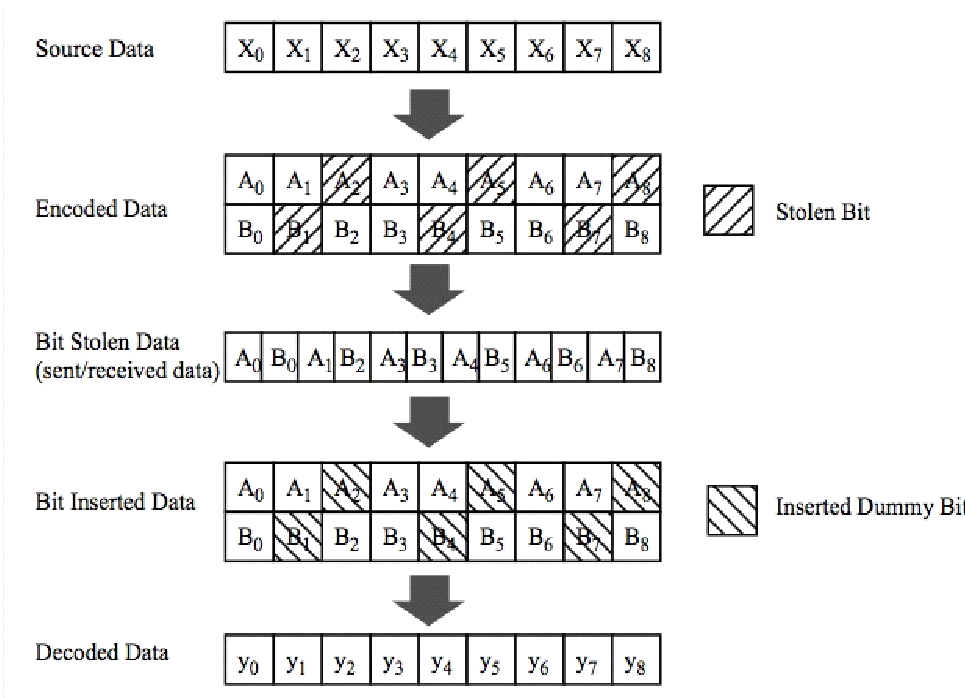


Figure 27-7—R=3/4 puncturing pattern for TVWS-NB-OFDM

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

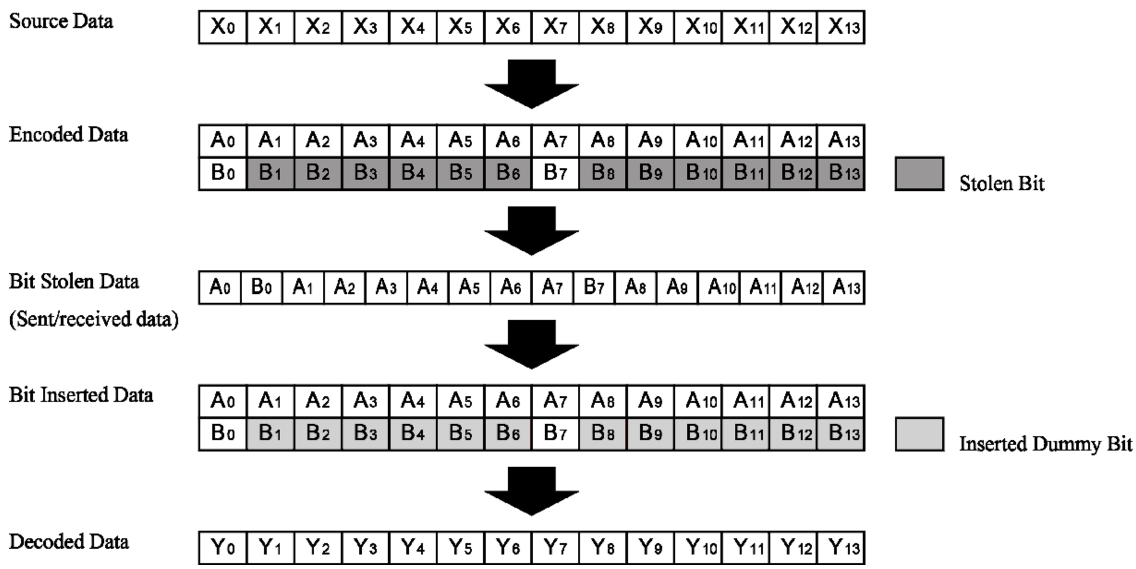


Figure 27-8—R=7/8 puncturing pattern for TVWS-NB-OFDM

27.3.5 Pad bit insertion

The number of pad bits input to the convolutional encoder, N_{PAD}, shall be computed with the following equations:

$$N_{RS} = \text{ceiling}\,(L_{PSDU} / (188 \times 8))$$

$$L_{RS} = L_{PSDU} + N_{RS} \times 16 \times 8$$

$$N_{SYS} = \text{ceiling}\,((L_{RS} + 6) / N_{DBPS})$$

$$N_{DATA} = N_{SYS} \times N_{DBPS}$$

$$N_{PAD} = N_{DATA} - (\times L_{RS} + 6)$$

L_{PSDU} is the number of PSDU bits, which is equal to the content of the Frame Length field in Figure 27-3, and N_{DBPS} is shown in Table 27-4.

The function ceiling (.) returns the smallest integer value greater than or equal to its argument value. The pad bits are set to zeros.

27.3.6 Spreader

The spreader only applies to the PHR field. The PHR field is encoded using the rate–1/2 recursive convolutional code as described in 27.3.4 to create an 88-bit sequence (d_0, d_1, d_2, ... d_{87}). The 88-bit sequence is spread by using a spreading sequence [1111] to generate the 352-bit sequence (d_0, d_0, d_0, d_0, d_1, d_1, d_1, d_1, d_2, d_2, d_2, d_2, …, d_{87}, d_{87}, d_{87}, d_{87}). The 352-bit sequence is then interleaved as described in 27.3.7 and mapped using BPSK as described in 27.3.8. The resulting values are interleaved in the frequency domain as described in 27.3.9; pilots are inserted as described in 27.3.10 and then modulated as an TVWS-NB-OFDM symbol.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

27.3.7 Bit interleaving

All encoded data bits shall be interleaved by a block interleaver with a block size corresponding to the number of encoded bits in a single TVWS-NB-OFDM symbol, N_{CBPS}. The interleaver is defined by a two-step permutation.

The first permutation is defined by the following rule:

$$i = (N_{CBPS} / 44)\ (k \bmod 44) + \mathrm{floor}(k / 44),\ k = 0,1,\ldots, N_{CBPS} - 1$$

Here, k shall be the index of the coded bit before the first permutation; and i shall be the index after the first and before the second permutation. The function floor (.) denotes the largest integer not exceeding the parameter. The second permutation is defined by the following rule:

$$j = s \cdot \mathrm{floor}(i / s) + (i + N_{CBPS} - \mathrm{floor}(44 \cdot i / N_{CBPS})) \bmod s,\ i = 0,1,\ldots N_{CBPS} - 1$$

where j is the index after the second permutation, just prior to mapping. The value of s is determined by the number of coded bits per subcarrier, N_{BPSC}, as follows:

$$s = \max(N_{BPSC} / 2,1)$$

where N_{BPSC} is shown in Table 27-4. The deinterleaver, which performs the inverse relation, is also defined by these two corresponding permutations.

27.3.8 Subcarrier mapping

The TVWS-NB-OFDM subcarriers shall be modulated by using BPSK, QPSK, 16-QAM, or 64-QAM modulation. The encoded and interleaved binary serial input data shall be parsed into N_{BPSC} bits per symbol and mapped onto I- and Q-channel data. The conversion shall be performed according to Gray-coded constellation mapping, illustrated in Figure 27-9, with the input bit, b0, being the earliest in the stream.

The output values, d, are formed by multiplying the resulting (I+jQ) values by a normalization factor K_{MOD}, as described in the following equation:

$$d = (\mathrm{I} + \mathrm{jQ}) \times K_{MOD}$$

The normalization factor, K_{MOD}, depends on the base modulation mode, as prescribed in Table 27-6.

Table 27-6—Modulation-dependent normalization factor K_{MOD} for TVWS-NB-OFDM

Modulation	K_{MOD}
BPSK	1
QPSK	$1/\sqrt{2}$
16-QAM	$1/\sqrt{10}$
64-QAM	$1/\sqrt{42}$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

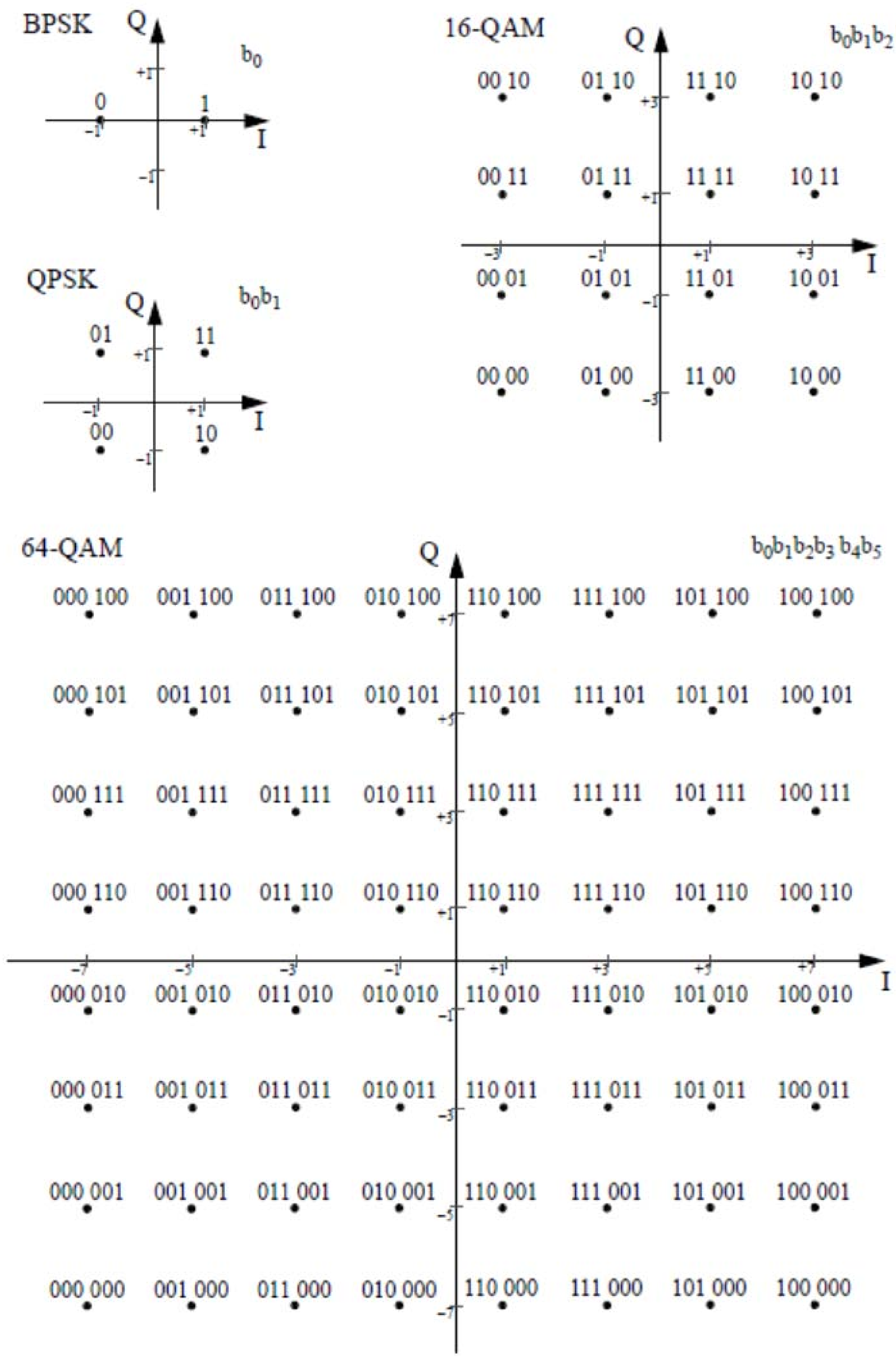


Figure 27-9—Constellation mapping for TVWS-NB-OFDM

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

27.3.9 Frequency interleaving

Random interleaver is used for frequency interleaving. The permutation rule for the frequency interleaving is specified as follows.

The index of an input bit before interleaving is represented by i; J, the index of an output bit after interleaving shall be represented as follows:

$J=Z(i)$ for $i = 0,1,..., 352-1$

where Z=[63 14 12 286 337 221 227 93 57 47 121 176 299 173 236 54 165 188 126 83 6 46 174 259 136 183 142 274 127 265 287 89 234 62 250 311 180 156 58 124 209 15 228 101 312 206 80 185 186 329 78 116 278 113 21 200 179 144 153 216 205 140 235 193 310 184 82 130 257 315 102 44 98 325 143 158 91 215 103 30 304 262 32 23 53 306 302 294 178 117 297 86 197 192 115 59 199 17 168 146 120 246 114 296 194 233 18 109 284 247 65 238 190 129 303 321 240 336 40 348 352 74 159 277 244 100 39 288 4 331 154 316 118 290 214 211 150 338 340 152 242 322 218 31 335 162 323 50 177 13 347 61 29 230 266 289 226 60 182 171 320 342 87 252 134 345 110 45 269 258 324 56 318 122 261 276 191 20 64 19 249 10 241 212 151 231 333 232 72 256 351 84 88 155 219 139 270 349 131 161 279 217 237 309 224 255 26 99 301 202 138 220 37 326 125 67 170 22 36 108 51 107 334 327 263 253 272 264 137 1 207 160 123 189 7 285 97 27 201 198 187 346 341 350 104 85 229 213 3 68 319 2 75 343 167 195 34 69 268 112 119 141 196 106 203 292 260 24 172 66 282 25 166 9 95 223 332 35 239 267 90 81 254 164 281 248 5 291 280 55 79 181 73 317 283 132 208 344 307 222 133 8 149 300 169 225 49 48 314 76 105 71 148 41 111 70 147 38 175 42 33 305 308 313 16 273 135 243 204 210 163 298 328 11 94 43 251 157 339 293 145 295 330 128 271 77 96 92 245 275 28 52].

Figure 27-10 shows the distribution of interleaving for input bits before interleaving versus output bits after interleaving.

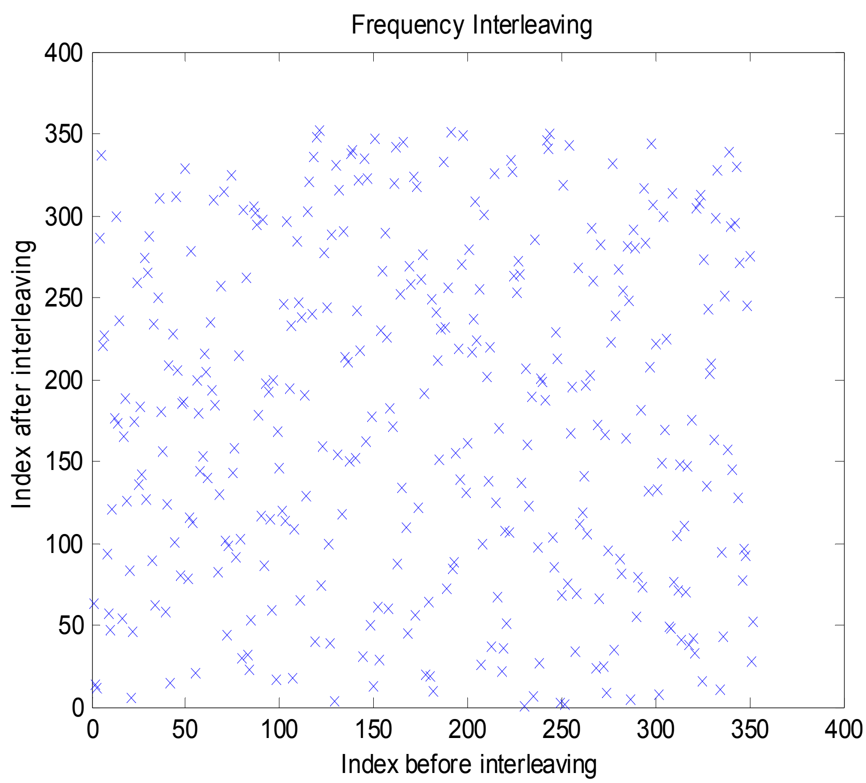


Figure 27-10—Illustration of frequency interleaving mapping for TVWS-NB-OFDM

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

27.3.10 Pilot tones

Figure 27-11 shows the pilot symbol pattern of TVWS-NB-OFDM. As shown in the figure, the pilot symbol is inserted into a frame once every 12 subcarriers in the frequency direction and once every 4 symbols in the symbol or time direction.

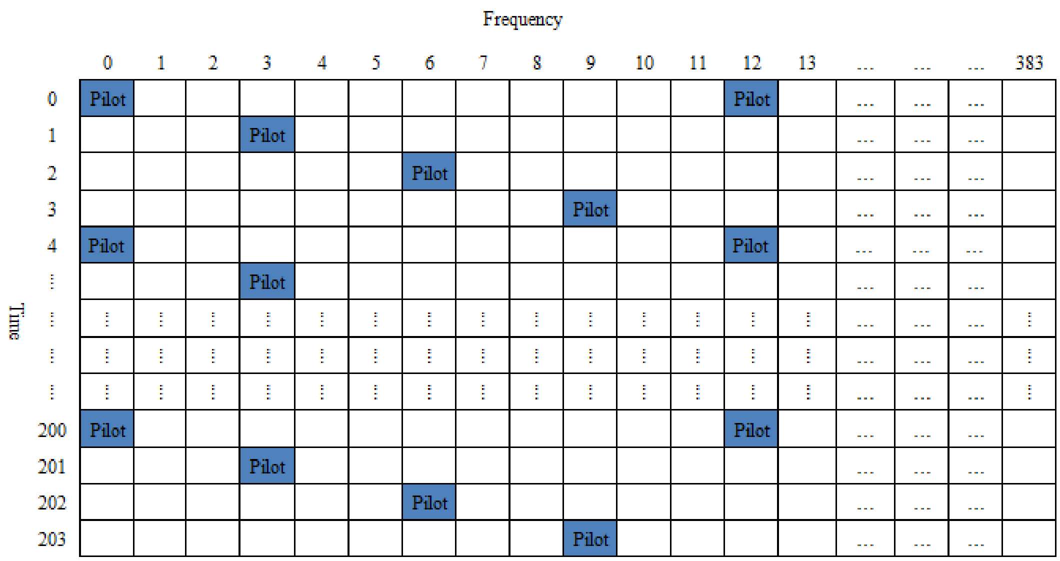


Figure 27-11—Pattern of pilot subcarriers allocated in TVWS-NB-OFDM symbol

27.3.11 Cyclic prefix

A cyclic prefix shall be prepended to each TVWS-NB-OFDM symbol. For the STF, the CP is defined in 27.1.1.3. For the LTF, the CP is defined in 27.1.2.3. For the rest of the TVWS-NB-OFDM symbols the duration of the cyclic prefix (31.5 µs) shall be 1/32 of the base TVWS-NB-OFDM symbol (1008 µs). Optionally, the cyclic prefix of duration 63 µs which is 1/16 of the base TVWS-NB-OFDM symbol, or the cyclic prefix of duration 126 µs which is 1/8 of the base TVWS-NB-OFDM symbol can be selected.

27.3.12 Pulse shaping

Time domain windowing shall be applied during TVWS-NB-OFDM signal generation in order to smooth the transition between two consecutive TVWS-NB-OFDM symbols. This can reduce spectral leakage for both cases when combined with and without implementing any digital pulse shaping filter in TVWS-NB-OFDM. When time domain windowing is applied for pulse shaping, a windowing function *w(t)*, as exemplified in the following equation, shall be utilized after insertion of cyclic prefix.

$$w(t) = \begin{cases} \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(0.5 + t/T_{TR})\right) & -T_{TR}/2 < t < T_{TR}/2 \\ 1 & T_{TR}/2 \le t < T - T_{TR}/2 \\ \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}(0.5 - (t-T)/T_{TR})\right) & (T - T_{TR})/2 \le t < T + T_{TR}/2 \end{cases}$$

where T_{TR}, the windowing duration, is the duration of the transition from the minimum to maximum value of the windowing function and vice versa.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The continuous pulse shaped waveform is expressed as follows:

$$s(t) = w(t)\frac{1}{\sqrt{N_{ST}}}\sum_{n=0}^{N_{ST}-1} S_n e^{j2\pi n\Delta f(t - T_{CP})}$$

The parameter Δf, which denotes sub-carrier spacing, and N_{ST} are described in Table 27-3. S_n is defined as data, pilot, or training symbols. The binding requirements are the spectral mask and modulation accuracy requirements. Note that, in the receiver, shifting the time by more than T_{CP} for application of DFT helps to avoid inter-symbol interference caused by the superposition of the extended TVWS-NB-OFDM symbols and inter-carrier interference caused by the windowing.

27.3.13 PIB attribute values for *phySymbolsPerOctet*

The number of symbols per octet depends on the MCS mode applied and is computed as follows:

$$phySymbolsPerOctet = 8 \times n/k \times 1/N_{dbps}$$

where

n is 204
k is 188

27.4 Channel aggregation for TVWS-NB-OFDM

The use of channel aggregation is controlled by the *phyTvwsChannelAggregation* as described in Table 11-2. When channel aggregation is enabled at least one of the bandwidths, 6 MHz or 8 MHz, shall be supported. The maximum number of aggregated channels depends on the availability of channel bandwidth. Table 27-7 shows the channel aggregation parameters.

Table 27-7—Channel aggregation parameters for TVWS-NB-OFDM

Maximal bandwidth on channel aggregation use	6 MHz	8 MHz
Maximal number of subchannels available for aggregation	11	16
Channel spacing	400.79365 kHz (= 125/126 kHz × 404)	
Guard band for each side of channel	795.63495 kHz	793.6508 kHz

27.5 TVWS-NB-OFDM RF requirements

27.5.1 Operating frequency range

The TVWS-NB-OFDM PHY operates in the bands indicated in Table 7-39.

27.5.2 Receiver sensitivity

The sensitivity requirements, as described in 10.1.7, for each MCS mode are shown in Table 27-8.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table 27-8—TVWS-NB-OFDM PHY sensitivity requirements

MCS mode	Sensitivity
0	–97 dBm
1	–96 dBm
2	–94 dBm
3	–92 dBm
4	–89 dBm
5	–85 dBm
6	–81 dBm
7	–80 dBm
8	–78 dBm

27.5.3 TX-to-RX turnaround time

The TX-to-RX turnaround time shall be as given in 10.2.1.

27.5.4 RX-to-TX turnaround time

The RX-to-TX turnaround time shall be as given in 10.2.2.

27.5.5 EVM definition

The relative constellation RMS error averaged over subcarriers, symbols, and packets shall not exceed the values shown in Table 27-9.

Table 27-9—TVWS-NB-OFDM PHY EVM requirements

MCS mode	RMS error
0	–3 dB
1	–5 dB
2	–8 dB
3	–11 dB
4	–14 dB
5	–17 dB
6	–20 dB
7	–23 dB
8	–26 dB

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The transmit modulation accuracy test shall be performed by instrumentation capable of converting the transmitted signal into a stream of complex samples. The sampled signal shall be processed in a manner similar to an actual receiver, according to the following steps, or an equivalent procedure:

a) Detect the start of packet.
b) Detect the transition from STF to LTF, and establish fine timing (with one sample resolution).
c) Estimate the coarse and fine frequency offsets.
d) De-rotate the packet according to estimated frequency offset.
e) Estimate the complex channel response coefficients for each of the subcarriers.
f) For each data TVWS-NB-OFDM symbol, transform the symbol into subcarrier received values, and divide each subcarrier value with the estimated channel response coefficient.
g) For each data-carrying subcarrier, find the closest constellation point, and compute the squared Euclidean distance from it.
h) Compute the RMS average of all errors in a packet:

$$RMS_{error} = 20\log_{10}\left(\frac{1}{N_F}\sum_{i=1}^{N_F}\sqrt{\frac{\sum_{j=1}^{N_{SYM}}\sum_{k\in U_D}\Delta(i,j,k)^2}{352\times N_{SYM}\times P_0}}\right)$$

with

$$\Delta(i,j,k)^2 = [I(i,j,k)-I_0(i,j,k)]^2+[Q(i,j,k)-Q_0(i,j,k)]^2$$

where

N_{SYM}	is the number of TVWS-NB-OFDM symbols in the packet
N_F	is the number of packets used for the measurement
U_D	is the index set of data tones
$[I_0((i,j,k),Q_0(i,j,k))]$	denotes the ideal symbol point of the *i*th packet, *j*th TVWS-NB-OFDM symbol of the packet, and *k*th subcarrier of the TVWS-NB-OFDM symbol in the complex plane
$[I((i,j,k),Q(i,j,k))]$	denotes the observed point of the *i*th packet, *j*th TVWS-NB-OFDM symbol of the packet, and *k*th tone of the TVWS-NB-OFDM symbol in the complex plane
P_0	is the average power of the constellation

The test shall be performed over at least $N_F = 20$ packets. The payload of the packets under test shall contain $N_{SYM} = 16$ TVWS-NB-OFDM symbols. Random data shall be used for the payload.

27.5.6 Transmit center frequency and symbol tolerance

The transmit center frequency tolerance shall be $\pm 20 \times 10^{-6}$ maximum. The symbol clock frequency tolerance shall also be $\pm 20 \times 10^{-6}$ maximum. The transmit center frequency and the symbol clock frequency shall be derived from the same reference oscillator.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

28. RCC LMR PHY

28.1 RCC PHY overview

The RCC LMR PHY is specified for use in RCC applications. An RCC device shall support the LMR PHY with GMSK modulation and a data rate of 9.6 kb/s. For the purposes of calculating the Ack frame timing required in 6.7.5, the parameters for an RCC LMR PHY with GMSK modulation and a data rate of 9.6 kb/s shall be used.

28.2 PPDU format

The LMR PHY PPDU shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure 28-1.

Bits: 32/64	4	11	8	0/6	variable	0/6	variable	0/3
	Data FEC Type	Data Length	CRC	PHR FEC Tail	PSDU	Payload FEC Tail	Pad	
SHR	PHR				PHY payload			Tail

Figure 28-1—Format of the RCC PPDU

28.2.1 SHR

The SHR shall be selected from the values shown in Table 28-1.

Table 28-1—SHR values for RCC LMR PHY

Modulation	SHR value for FEC coded PHR	SHR value for FEC uncoded PHR
GMSK 9.6/19.2 kb/s	1111 1000 0011 1000 1001 0000 1110 1101	0000 0111 1100 0111 0110 1111 0001 0010
4-FSK 9.6/19.2/38.4 kb/s	0101 0101 0111 1111 1111 01 0101 1111 1101 1111 0111 11 1111 0101 0111 0101 1101	1111 1111 1101 0101 0101 11 1111 0101 0111 0101 1101 01 0101 1111 1101 1111 0111
QPSK 16/32 kb/s	1100 1100 1100 1100 1100 11 1111 0000 0011 0000 1100 00 0000 1111 1100 1111 0011	1100 1100 1100 1100 1100 11 1111 0000 0011 0000 1100 11 1111 0000 0011 0000 1100
π/4 DQPSK 16/32/36 kb/s	0101 0101 0111 1111 1111 01 0101 1111 1101 1111 0111 11 1111 0101 0111 0101 1101	1111 1111 1101 0101 0101 11 1111 0101 0111 0101 1101 01 0101 1111 1101 1111 0111
DSSS DBPSK	1010 1010 1011 1000 1001 0000 1110 1101	10 1010 1011 1000 1001 0111 0001 0010
DSSS DQPSK	1100 1100 1100 1100 1100 11 1111 0000 0011 0000 1100 00 0000 1111 1100 1111 0011	1100 1100 1100 1100 1100 11 1111 0000 0011 0000 1100 11 1111 0000 0011 0000 1100

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

28.2.2 PHR

The Data FEC Type field indicates the encoding of the PSDU. The field shall have one of the values given in Table 28-2, and shall be set according to the value of *phyLmrCodingRate*. See 28.3 for more information on coding.

Table 28-2—Data FEC Type field for RCC LMR PHY

Data FEC Type field value	Coding rate
0000	1 (no FEC)
0001	7/8
0010	3/4
0011	2/3
0100	1/2
0101–1111	Reserved

The Data Length field is an unsigned integer and shall be set to the total number of octets contained in the PSDU. The Data Length field shall be transmitted MSB first.

The Data FEC Type and Data Length fields shall be protected with an 8-bit CRC. The polynomial and the details of its calculation are given in 20.2.2. The protected bits shall be processed in transmit order, and the CRC field shall be transmitted with the highest term first. All CRC calculations shall be made prior to data whitening.

When FEC is applied to the PHR, the PHR FEC Tail field shall have a length of 6 bits (i.e., six FEC tail bits are appended after the CRC field to aid in FEC decoding). When the PHY header is not FEC protected, the PHR FEC Tail field shall have length zero (i.e., no tail bits are appended).

28.2.3 PHY payload

The Payload FEC Tail field shall be present only if the PSDU is FEC protected, as indicated by the Data FEC Type field.

The length of the Pad field depends on the selected coding rate. The total number of bits contained in the PSDU, Payload FEC Tail, and Pad fields shall be an integer multiple of the interleaver block size.

28.2.4 Tail bits

Three extra zero bits shall be appended at the end of the packet if GMSK modulation is used.

28.3 FEC

FEC protection of the PHR shall be supported. When FEC is enabled, the rate ½ code shall be used.

FEC protection of the PHY payload shall be supported. The PSDU shall be coded using one of the values contained in Table 28-2, corresponding to the desired data rate. The convolutional encoder shall use generator polynomials $g_0 = 133_8$ and $g_1 = 171_8$ for rate ½, as shown in Figure 28-2. Higher rates are achieved by puncturing, according to Figure 28-3.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

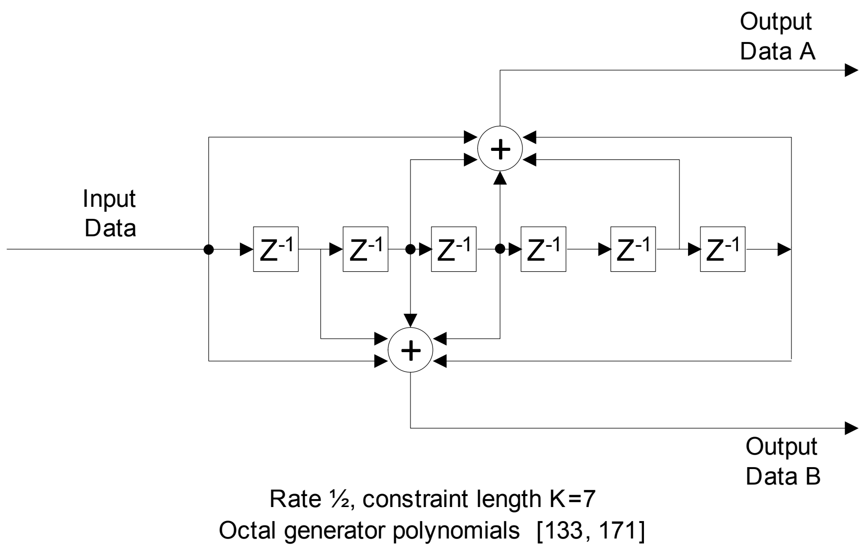


Figure 28-2—Convolutional encoder for RCC LMR PHY

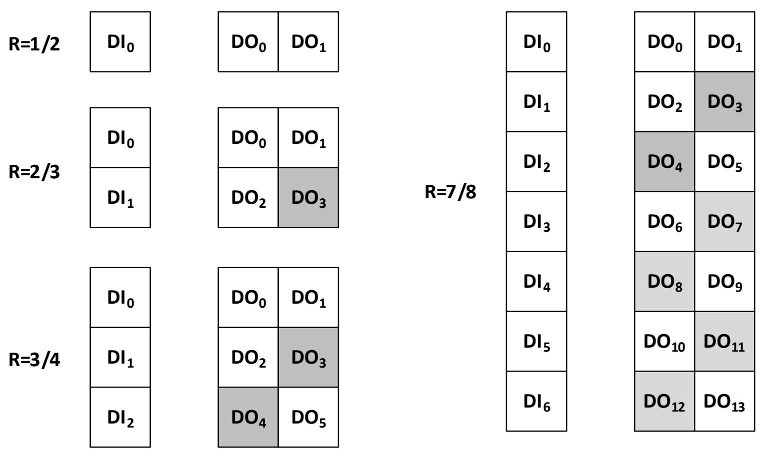


Figure 28-3—FEC puncturing pattern for RCC LMR PHY

28.4 Interleaver

Interleaving of the PHY payload shall be supported. Interleaving shall be enabled when FEC is enabled. Interleaving shall be disabled when FEC is disabled.

The process of interleaving is illustrated in Figure 28-4.

28.5 Data whitening

Support for data whitening is optional. Data whitening shall be applied to the PHR and PHY payload, as described in 17.2.3. The PN9 sequence generator shall not be reset between the PHR and the PSDU.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

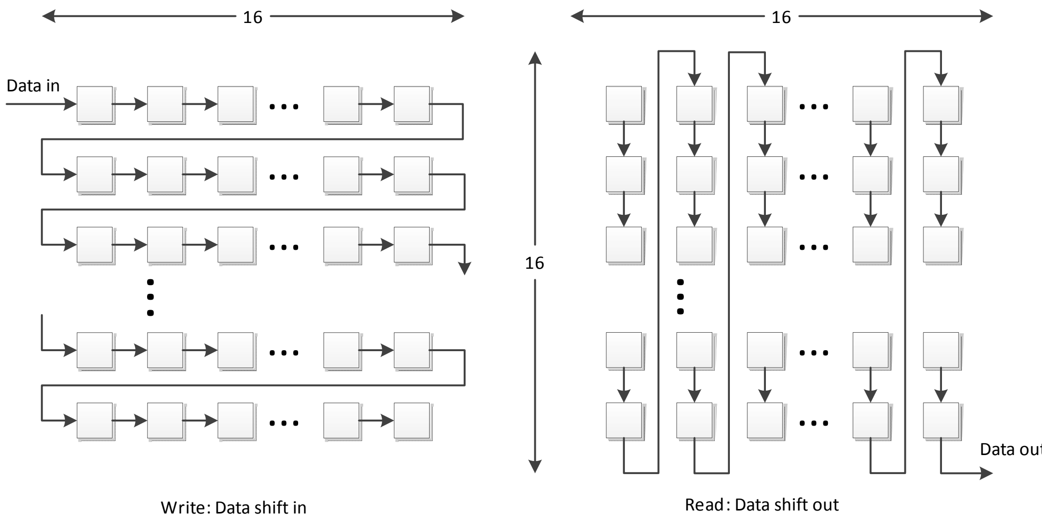


Figure 28-4—Interleaver for RCC LMR PHY

28.6 Modulation

28.6.1 GMSK

The bit sequences are modulated onto the carrier using GMSK, where the Gaussian filter BT is nominally 0.3. A bit value of one is transmitted by shifting the frequency higher than the channel center frequency, and a bit value of zero is transmitted by shifting the frequency lower than the channel center frequency.

The nominal frequency deviation shall be 1/4 of the symbol rate. The deviation shall be between 25% and 130% of the nominal deviation. For the sequence 0101, the deviation shall be between 25% and 110% of the nominal deviation. For the sequence 00001111, the deviation shall be between 80% and 130% of the nominal deviation. The excursions for the zero crossings for all trajectories of the eye diagram shall be constrained to within ± 12.5% of the symbol time.

28.6.2 4-FSK

Figure 28-5 shows a typical 4-FSK modulator in a digital implementation.

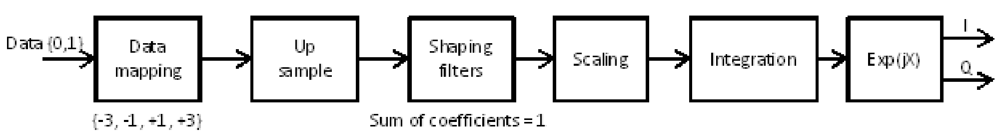


Figure 28-5—Typical 4-FSK modulator for RCC LMR PHY

The shaping filters consists of a Nyquist raised cosine filter cascaded with an inverse-sinc filter. The frequency response of the Nyquist raised cosine filter *H(f)* is as follows:

$$|H(f)| = 1, \qquad \text{for } |f| < \text{symbol rate} \times 0.4$$

$$|H(f)| = 0.5 + 0.5\cos\left[\frac{2 \times \pi \times f}{\text{symbol rate} \times 0.4}\right], \qquad \text{for } (\text{symbol rate} \times 0.4) < |f| < (\text{symbol rate} \times 0.6)$$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

$$|H(f)| = 0, \qquad \text{for } (|f| > \text{symbol rate} \times 0.6)$$

The amplitude response of the inverse-sinc filter *P(f)* is as follows:

$$|P(f)| = \left[\frac{\left(\dfrac{\pi \times f}{\text{symbol rate}}\right)}{\left(\dfrac{\sin(\pi \times f)}{\text{symbol rate}}\right)}\right], \qquad \text{for } |f| < (\text{symbol rate} \times 0.6)$$

The response of *P(f)* for $|f| > \text{symbol rate} \times 0.6$ is not specified for frequencies above symbol rate $\times 0.6$, because these frequencies are cut off by *H(f)*.

The data mapping and frequency deviation, f_{dev}, are indicated in Table 20-8. The value of f_{dev} is as follows:

$f_{dev} = 3/8 \times$ symbol rate

The modulation quality is as specified in 20.3.3, with the exception that it is measured after the square root raised cosine filter in the receiver.

28.6.3 QPSK

Figure 28-6 shows a typical QPSK modulator in a digital implementation. This functional block diagram serves as a reference for specifying the LMR PHY with QPSK modulation.

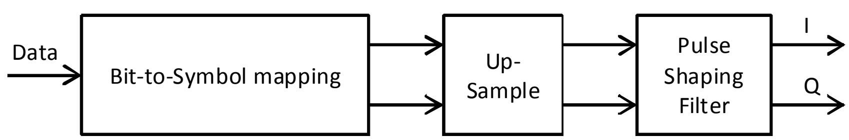


Figure 28-6—Typical QPSK modulator for RCC LMR PHY

The bit-to-symbol mapping shall be encoded according to Table 28-3. The pulse shaping filter shall be equivalent to a root cosine filter with a roll-off factor of 0.25.

Table 28-3—QPSK encoding values for RCC LMR PHY

Data {b1, b0}	Phase
01	$+3/4 \times \pi$
00	$+1/4 \times \pi$
10	$–1/4 \times \pi$
11	$–3/4 \times \pi$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

28.6.4 π/4 DQPSK

Figure 28-7 shows a typical π/4 DQPSK modulator in a digital implementation. This functional block diagram is provided as a reference for specifying the LMR PHY using π/4 DQPSK modulation.

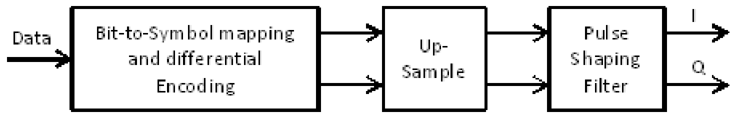


Figure 28-7—Typical π/4 DQPSK modulator for RCC LMR PHY

The bit-to-symbol mapping and differential encoding shall be encoded according to Figure 28-4. The pulse shaping filter shall be a root raised cosine filter with a roll-off factor of 0.25.

Table 28-4—π/4 DQPSK encoding values for RCC LMR PHY

Data (b1 b0)	Phase change
01	$+3/4 \times \pi$
00	$+1/4 \times \pi$
10	$-1/4 \times \pi$
11	$-3/4 \times \pi$

28.6.5 DSSS DPSK

The modulation for DSSS DPSK is either DSSS DBPSK or DSSS DQPSK.

The functional block diagram shown in Figure 28-8 is provided as a reference for specifying the DSSS DPSK modulation and spreading functions.

Figure 28-8—DSSS DPSK modulation and spreading

The bit-to-symbol mapping and differential encoding for DSSS DBPSK shall be encoded according to Table 28-5.

Table 28-5—DSSS DBPSK encoding

Data	Phase change
0	0
1	π

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The bit-to-symbol mapping and differential encoding for DSSS DQPSK shall be encoded according to Table 28-6.

Table 28-6—DSSS DQPSK encoding

Bits (d_0,d_1)[a]	Phase change
00	0
01	$\pi/2$
11	π
10	$-\pi/2$

[a]Bit d_0 is transmitted first in time.

The spreading sequences are specified in Table 28-7. The leftmost chip shall be transmitted first in time.

Table 28-7—DSSS DPSK spreading sequences

Spreading sequence length	Spreading sequence
11	111 0001 0010
15	101 1111 0100 0110
20	1010 1000 0011 0110 0111
40	1010 0011 1001 0010 1101 1101 1001 1010 1011 1111

The chip rates are specified in Table 28-8.

Table 28-8—DSSS DPSK chip rates

DSSS DPSK chip rates
300 kcps
600 kcps
800 kcps
1 Mcps
1.6 Mcps
2 Mcps
3 Mcps
4 Mcps

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

28.7 Reference modulator

The functional block diagram in Figure 28-9 serves as a reference for specifying the LMR PHY data flow processing functions. Data whitening shall be applied over the PHR and PHY payload continuously. The six FEC tail bits shall be replaced by six non-scrambled zeros prior to FEC encoding. When FEC is enabled, FEC processing for the PHR and PHY payload shall be performed separately.

All fields in the PPDU shall use the same symbol rate and modulation.

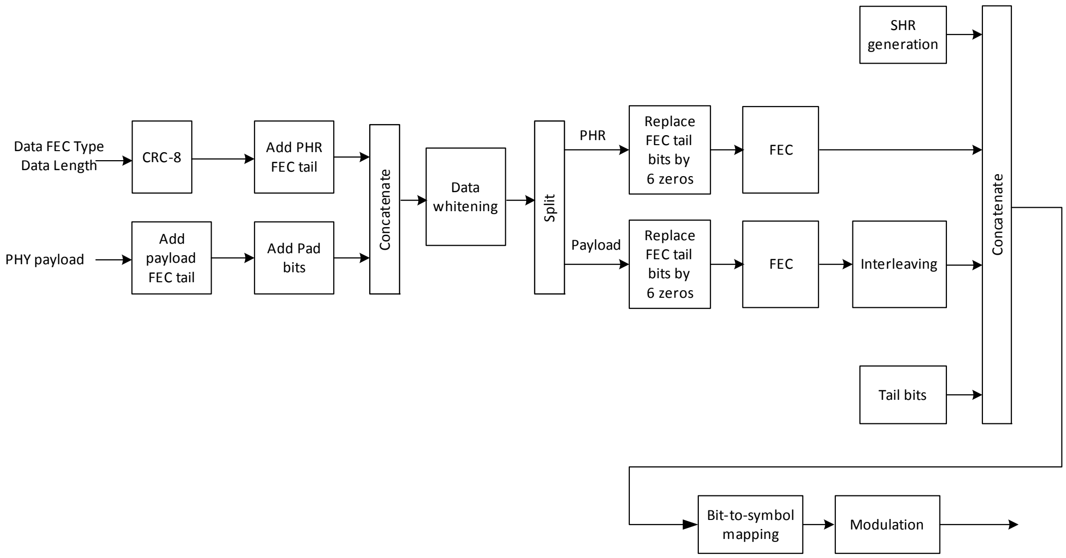


Figure 28-9—RCC LMR PHY reference modulator diagram

28.8 LMR PHY RF requirements

28.8.1 Transmitter symbol rate tolerance

The transmitter symbol rate error shall be less than or equal to $\pm 5 \times 10^{-6}$.

28.8.2 Channel switching time

The channel switching time shall be less than or equal to 500 μs.

28.8.3 Error vector magnitude

When the LMR PHY is using either QPSK or πi/4 DQPSK modulation, it shall have EVM values of less than 35% when measured for 1000 symbols using the measurement process defined in 10.2.3.

28.8.4 Receiver sensitivity

Receiver sensitivity is implementation specific; however, the method for measuring receiver sensitivity is described in 10.1.7.

28.8.5 Receiver interference rejection

The minimum receiver interference rejection is implementation specific.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

28.8.6 Receiver maximum input level of desired signal

The receiver maximum input level is implementation specific.

28.8.7 TX-to-RX turnaround time

The TX-to-RX turnaround time shall be less than or equal to 5 symbols.

28.8.8 RX-to-TX turnaround time

The RX-to-TX turnaround time shall be less than or equal to 5 symbols.

28.8.9 Receiver ED

The LMR PHY shall provide the receiver ED measurement, as described in 10.2.5.

28.8.10 LQI

The LMR PHY shall provide the LQI measurement, as described in 10.2.6.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

29. RCC DSSS BPSK PHY

29.1 Overview

The RCC DSSS BPSK PHY is specified for use in RCC applications.

29.2 RCC DSSS BPSK PHY specification

The RCC DSSS BPSK PHY shall employ the BPSK PHY specified in Clause 13, with the exception that the bit-to-chip mapping is changed as shown in Table 29-1.

Table 29-1—RCC DSSS BPSK PHY bit-to-chip mapping

Input bit	Chip values (c_0, c_1,..., c_{14})
0	1 1 0 1 0 1 0 1 1 0 0 1 0 0 0
1	0 0 1 0 1 0 1 0 0 1 1 0 1 1 1

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Annex A

(informative)

Bibliography

Bibliographical references are resources that provide additional or helpful material but do not need to be understood or used to implement this standard. Reference to these resources is made for informational use only.

[B1] "802.15.4 ANA database," IEEE 802.15 document 15-13-0257-06-0000, 2015.[16]

[B2] ANSI X9.63-2001, Public Key Cryptography for the Financial Services Industry—Key Agreement and Key Transport Using Elliptic Curve Cryptography.[17]

[B3] "Applications of IEEE Std 802.15.4," IEEE 802.15 document 15-14-0226-00-0000, 2014.

[B4] Chang, S.-Y., and C. Seibert, IEEE 802.15 document 15-13-0166-03-004m, 2013.

[B5] "Coexistence analysis of IEEE Std 802.15.4 with other IEEE standards and proposed standards," IEEE 802.15 document 15-10-0808-00-0000, 2010.

[B6] "Examples of IEEE Std 802.15.4 PHY encodings," IEEE 802.15 document 15-14-0225-00-0000, 2014.

[B7] Jonsson, J., "On the security of CTR + CBC-MAC, in Proceedings of Selected Areas in Cryptography—SAC 2002," Nyberg, K., Heys, H., eds., lecture notes in *Computer Science*, vol. 2595, pp. 76–93, Berlin: Springer, 2002.

[B8] Jonsson, J., "On the security of CTR + CBC-MAC, NIST mode of operation," additional CCM documentation.[18]

[B9] Lu, L., K. Mizutani, C.-S. Sum, F. Kojima, and H. Harada, IEEE 802.15 document 15-13-0565-02-004m, 2013.

[B10] NIST Pub 800-38C, Recommendation for Block Cipher Modes of Operation—The CCM Mode for Authentication and Confidentiality, U.S. Department of Commerce/NIST, 12 May 2004.

[B11] NITS/CWPAN Part 15.4, Chinese standard for the Wireless Medium Access Control (MAC) and the Physical Layer (PHY) Specifications for Low-Rate Wireless Personal Area Networks, GB/T 15629.15-2010.

[B12] Public Law 107–56 (42 U.S.C. 5195c(e)), Section 1016(e), Critical Infrastructure Protection Act of 2001, Oct. 2001.

[B13] Rogaway, P., and Wagner, D., "A critique of CCM," IACR ePrint Archive 2003-070, 13 Apr. 2003.[19]

[B14] Kivinen, T., "Security Section Pictures," IEEE 802.15 document 15-15-0106-07-0mag, 2015.

[16]IEEE 802.15 documents are available at https://mentor.ieee.org/802.15/documents.
[17]ANSI publications are available from the American National Standards Institute (http://www.ansi.org/).
[18]Publication is available at http://csrc.nist.gov/encryption/modes/proposedmodes/.
[19]Publication is available from http://www.iacr.org/.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

[B15] Seibert, C., IEEE 802.15 document 15-13-0131-01-004m, 2013.

[B16] Shin, C., B.H. Kim, S. Choi, and S.-Y. Chang, IEEE 802.15 document 15-13-0287-01-004m, 2013.

[B17] "TG4f Coexistence Assurance Document," IEEE 802.15 document 15-10-0918-01-004f, 2010.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Annex B

(normative)

CCM* mode of operation

B.1 Introduction

CCM* is a generic combined encryption, counter mode, and authentication block cipher mode, cipher block chaining message authentication code (CBC-MAC). The CCM* mode coincides with the original specification for the combined counter with CBC-MAC (CCM) mode of operation (ANSI X9.63-2001 [B2], Appendix A of NIST Pub 800-38C [B10]) for messages that require authentication and, possibly, encryption, but also offers support for messages that require only encryption. Moreover, it can be used in implementation environments for which the use of variable-length authentication tags, rather than fixed-length authentication tags only, is beneficial.

B.2 Notation and representation

B.2.1 Strings and string operations

A string is a sequence of symbols over a specific set (e.g., the binary alphabet {0,1} or the set of all octets). The length of a string is the number of symbols it contains (over the same alphabet). The empty string is the string of length 0. The right-concatenation of two strings x and y (over the same alphabet) of length m and n, respectively (notation: $x \parallel y$), is the string z of length $m + n$ that coincides with x on its leftmost (most significant) m symbols and with y on its rightmost (least significant) n symbols. An octet is a symbol string of length 8. In the context of this annex, all octets are strings over the binary alphabet.

B.2.2 Integers, octets, and their representation

Throughout this annex, the representation of integers as octet strings and of octet strings as binary strings shall be fixed. All integers shall be represented as octet strings in most-significant-octet-first order. All octets shall be represented as bit strings of length eight in most-significant-bit-first order.

For example, the 32-bit integer 0x12345678 is represented as an octet string of {0x12, 0x34, 0x56, 0x78}, and the first octet of that octet string is represented as a bit string of {0,0,0,1,0,0,1,0}.

B.3 Symmetric-key cryptographic building blocks

The symmetric-key cryptographic primitives and mechanisms are defined for use with all security processing operations specified in this standard.

B.3.1 Block cipher

The block cipher used in this standard shall be the advanced encryption standard (AES)-128, as specified in FIPS Pub 197. This block cipher shall be used with symmetric keys with the same size as that of the block cipher: 128 bits. The generation of these keys is outside the scope of this standard.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

B.3.2 Mode of operation

The block cipher mode of operation used in this standard shall be the generic CCM* mode of operation, as specified in B.4, with the following instantiations:

a) Each entity shall use the block cipher E as specified in B.3.1.
b) All integers shall be represented as octet strings as specified in B.2.2.
c) All octets shall be represented as binary strings as specified in B.2.2.
d) The parameter L shall have the integer value 2.
e) The parameter M shall have one of the following integer values: 0, 4, 8, or 16.

B.4 Specification of generic CCM* mode of operation

Prerequisites:

The following are the prerequisites for the operation of the generic CCM* mode:

a) A block cipher encryption function E shall have been chosen, with a 128-bit block size. The length in bits of the keys used by the chosen encryption function is denoted by keylen.
b) A fixed representation of integers as octet strings shall have been chosen (e.g., most-significant-octet-first order or least-significant-octet-first order).
c) A fixed representation of octets as binary strings shall have been chosen (e.g., most-significant-bit-first order or least-significant-bit-first order).
d) The length L of the message Length field, in octets, shall have been chosen. Valid values for L are the integers 2, 3, …, 8 (the value $L = 1$ is reserved).
e) The length M of the Authentication field, in octets, shall have been chosen. Valid values for M are the integers 0, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, and 16 (the value $M = 0$ corresponds to disabling authenticity because then the Authentication field is the empty string).

B.4.1 CCM* mode encryption and authentication transformation

Inputs:

The CCM* mode forward transformation takes the following as inputs:

a) A bit string Key of length keylen bits to be used as the key. Each entity shall have evidence that access to this key is restricted to the entity itself and its intended key sharing group member(s).
b) A nonce N of $15 - L$ octets. Within the scope of any encryption key Key, the nonce value shall be unique.
c) An octet string m of length $l(m)$ octets, where $0 \le l(m) < 2^{8L}$.
d) An octet string a of length $l(a)$ octets, where $0 \le l(a) < 2^{64}$.

The nonce N shall encode the potential values for M so that the actual value of M can be uniquely determined from N.

Actions:

The CCM* mode forward transformation involves the execution, in order, of an input transformation, as defined in B.4.1.1, an authentication transformation, as defined in B.4.1.2, and an encryption transformation, as defined in B.4.1.3.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

B.4.1.1 Input transformation

This step involves the transformation of the input strings *a* and *m* to the strings AuthData and PlainTextData, to be used by the authentication transformation and the encryption transformation, respectively.

This step involves the following steps, in order:

a) Form the octet string representation $L(a)$ of the length $l(a)$ of the octet string *a*, as follows:
   1) If $l(a) = 0$, then $L(a)$ is the empty string.
   2) If $0 < l(a) < 2^{16} – 2^8$, then $L(a)$ is the 2-octet encoding of $l(a)$.
   3) If $2^{16} – 2^8 \leq l(a) < 2^{32}$, then $L(a)$ is the right-concatenation of the octet 0xff, the octet 0xfe, and the 4-octet encoding of $l(a)$.
   4) If $2^{32} \leq l(a) < 2^{64}$, then $L(a)$ is the right-concatenation of the octet 0xff, the octet 0xff, and the 8-octet encoding of $l(a)$.

b) Right-concatenate the octet string $L(a)$ with the octet string *a* itself. Note that the resulting string contains $l(a)$ and *a* encoded in a reversible manner.

c) Form the padded message AddAuthData by right-concatenating the resulting string with the smallest non-negative number of all-zero octets so that the octet string AddAuthData has length divisible by 16.

d) Form the padded message PlaintextData by right-concatenating the octet string *m* with the smallest non-negative number of all-zero octets so that the octet string PlaintextData has length divisible by 16.

e) Form the message AuthData consisting of the octet strings AddAuthData and PlaintextData: AuthData = AddAuthData || PlaintextData.

B.4.1.2 Authentication transformation

The data AuthData that was established in B.4.1.1 shall be tagged using the tagging transformation as follows:

a) Form the 1-octet Flags field consisting of the 1-bit Reserved field, the 1-bit Adata field, and particular 3-bit representations of the integers *M* and *L*, as follows:

   Flags = Reserved || Adata || *M* || *L*

   Here, the 1-bit Reserved field is reserved for future expansions and shall be set to '0'. The 1-bit Adata field is set to '0' if $l(a) = 0$ and set to '1' if $l(a) > 0$. The M field is the 3-bit representation of the integer $(M – 2)/2$ if $M > 0$ and of the integer 0 if $M = 0$, in most-significant-bit-first order. The L field is the 3-bit representation of the integer $L – 1$, in most-significant-bit-first order.

b) Form the 16-octet B_0 field consisting of the 1-octet Flags field defined in step a) in this subclause, the $(15 – L)$-octet Nonce field *N*, and the *L*-octet representation of the Length field $l(m)$, as follows:

   B_0 = Flags || Nonce N || $l(m)$

c) Parse the message AuthData as $B_1 \| B_2 \| \ldots \|B_t$, where each message block B_i is a 16-octet string.

d) The CBC-MAC value X_{t+1} is defined as follows:

   $X_0 := 0^{128}$; $X_{i+1} := E(\text{Key}, X_i \oplus B_i)$ for i = 0, …, t.

   Here, $E(K, x)$ is the cipher text that results from encryption of the plaintext x, using the established block cipher encryption function *E* with key K; the string 0^{128} is the 16-octet all-zero bit string.

e) The authentication tag *T* is the result of omitting all but the leftmost *M* octets of the CBC-MAC value X_{t+1} thus computed.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

B.4.1.3 Encryption transformation

The data PlaintextData that was established in B.4.1.1 (step d) and the authentication tag T that was established in B.4.1.2 (step e) shall be encrypted using the encryption transformation as follows:

a) Form the 1-octet Flags field consisting of two 1-bit Reserved fields, and particular 3-bit representations of the integers 0 and L, as follows:

   Flags = Reserved || Reserved || 0 || L

   Here, the two 1-bit Reserved fields are reserved for future expansions and shall be set to '0'. The '0' field is the 3-bit representation of the integer 0, in most-significant-bit-first order. The L field is the 3-bit representation of the integer $L - 1$, in most-significant-bit-first order.

b) Define the 16-octet A_i field consisting of the 1-octet Flags field defined in step a) in this subclause, the ($15 - L$)-octet Nonce field N, and the L-octet representation of the integer i, as follows:

   A_i = Flags || Nonce N || Counter i, for i = 0, 1, 2, …

   Note that this definition ensures that all the A_i fields are distinct from the B_0 fields that are actually used, as those have a Flags field with a nonzero encoding of M in the positions where all A_i fields have an all-zero encoding of the integer 0, as described in B.4.1.2, step b).

c) Parse the message PlaintextData as M1 || … ||M_t, where each message block M_i is a 16-octet string.

d) The cipher text blocks $C_1, \ldots, C_t$ are defined as follows:

   $C_i := E(\text{Key}, A_i) \oplus M_i$ for i = 1, 2, …, t

e) The string Ciphertext is the result of omitting all but the leftmost $l(m)$ octets of the string $C_1 \parallel \ldots \parallel C_t$.

f) Define the 16-octet encryption block S_0 as follows:

   $S_0 := E(\text{Key}, A_0)$

g) The encrypted authentication tag U is the result of XOR-ing the string consisting of the leftmost M octets of S_0 and the authentication tag T.

Output:

If any of the preceding operations has failed, then output "invalid." Otherwise, output the right-concatenation c of the encrypted message Ciphertext and the encrypted authentication tag U.

B.4.2 CCM* mode decryption and authentication checking transformation

Inputs:

The CCM* mode inverse transformation takes the following as inputs:

a) A bit string Key of length keylen bits to be used as the key. Each entity shall have evidence that access to this key is restricted to the entity itself and its intended key-sharing group member(s).

b) A nonce N of $15 - L$ octets. Within the scope of any encryption key Key, the nonce value shall be unique.

c) An octet string c of length $l(c)$ octets, where $0 \le l(c) - M < 2^{8L}$.

d) An octet string a of length $l(a)$ octets, where $0 \le l(a) < 2^{64}$.

Actions:

The CCM* mode inverse transformation involves the execution, in order, of a decryption transformation, as defined in B.4.2.1, and an authentication checking transformation, as defined in B.4.2.2.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

B.4.2.1 Decryption transformation

The decryption transformation involves the following steps, in order:

a) Parse the message *c* as $C \| U$, where the rightmost string *U* is an *M*-octet string. If this operation fails, output "invalid" and stop. *U* is the purported encrypted authentication tag. Note that the leftmost string *C* has length $l(c) - M$ octets.
b) Form the padded message CiphertextData by right-concatenating the string *C* with the smallest non-negative number of all-zero octets so that the octet string CiphertextData has length divisible by 16.
c) Use the encryption transformation in B.4.1.3, with as inputs the data CipherTextData and the tag *U*.
d) Parse the output string resulting from applying this transformation as $m \| T$, where the rightmost string *T* is an *M*-octet string. *T* is the purported authentication tag. Note that the leftmost string *m* has length $l(c) - M$ octets.

B.4.2.2 Authentication checking transformation

The authentication checking transformation involves the following steps, in order:

a) Form the message AuthData using the input transformation in B.4.1.1, with as inputs the string *a* and the octet string *m* that was established in B.4.2.1 (step d).
b) Use the authentication transformation in B.4.1.2, with as input the message AuthData.
c) Compare the output tag MACTag resulting from this transformation with the tag *T* that was established in B.4.2.1 (step d). If MACTag = *T*, output "valid"; otherwise, output "invalid" and stop.

Output:

If any of the preceding verifications has failed, then output "invalid," and reject the octet strings *a* and *m*. Otherwise, accept the octet strings *a* and *m*, and accept one of the key sharing group member(s) as the source of *a* and *m*.

B.4.3 Restrictions

All implementations shall limit the total amount of data that is encrypted with a single key. The CCM* encryption and authentication transformation shall invoke not more than 2^{61} block cipher encryption function invocations with the same key in total.

The CCM* decryption and authentication checking transformation shall not expose any information if any verification check fails. The only information that may be exposed in this case is that the authenticity verification transformation failed; all other information, such as the purported plaintext, shall be destroyed.

NOTE 1—With regard to security of the CCM* mode of operation, the CCM* mode coincides with the original CCM mode specification (ANSI X9.63-2001 [B2]) for messages that require authentication and, possibly, encryption, but also offers support for messages that require only encryption. Moreover, it can be used in implementation environments for which the use of variable-length authentication tags, rather than fixed-length authentication tags only, is beneficial. As with the CCM mode, the CCM* mode requires only one key. The CCM* specification differs from the CCM specification, as follows:

— The CCM* mode allows the length of the Authentication field *M* to be zero as well (the value $M = 0$ corresponding to disabling authenticity because then the Authentication field is the empty string).
— The CCM* mode imposes a further restriction on the nonce *N*: it shall encode the potential values for *M* so that one can uniquely determine from *N* the actually used value of *M*.

As a result, if *M* is fixed and the value $M = 0$ is not allowed, then there are no additional restrictions on *N*, in which case the CCM* mode reduces to the CCM mode. In particular, the proof of the CCM mode applies (Jonsson [B7] and [B8]).

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

For fixed-length authentication tags, the CCM* mode is equally secure as the original CCM mode. For variable-length authentication tags, the CCM* mode completely avoids, by design, the vulnerabilities that do apply to the original CCM mode.

For fixed-length authentication tags, the security proof of the original CCM mode carries over to that of the CCM* mode (also for $M = 0$), by observing that the proof of the original CCM mode relies on the following properties, which slightly relax those stated in Jonsson [B7] and [B8] (relaxed property indicated in italics):

— The B_0 field uniquely determines the value of the nonce N.
— The authentication transformation operates on input strings $B_0 \| B_1 \| B_2 \| \ldots \| B_t$ from which one can uniquely determine the input strings a and m (as well as the nonce N). In fact, for any two input strings corresponding to distinct triples (N, m, a), neither one is a prefix string of the other.
— All the A_i fields are distinct from the B_0 fields *that are actually used* (over the lifetime of the key), as those have a Flags field with a nonzero encoding of M in the positions where all A_i fields have an all-zero encoding of the integer 0.

Hence, if M is fixed, then the CCM* mode offers the same security properties as the original CCM mode: confidentiality over the input string m and data authenticity over the input strings a and m, relative to the length of the authentication tag. Obviously, if $M = 0$, then no data authenticity is provided by the CCM* mode itself (but may be provided by an external mechanism).

For variable-length authentication tags, the original CCM mode is known to be vulnerable to specific attacks (e.g., Section 3.4 of Rogaway and Wagner [B13]). These attacks may arise with the original CCM mode because the decryption transformation does not depend on the length of the authentication tag itself. The CCM* mode avoids these attacks altogether by requiring that one shall be able to uniquely determine the length of the applicable authentication tag from the A_i fields (i.e., from the counters blocks).

NOTE 2—With regard to the interoperability between CCM mode and CCM* mode of operation, the CCM* mode reduces to the CCM mode in all implementation environments where the length of the authentication tag is fixed and where the value $M = 0$ (encryption-only) is not allowed. In particular, the CCM* mode is compatible with the CCM mode, as specified in IEEE Std 802.11™-2007 (for WLANs), IEEE Std 802.15.3™-2003 (for WPANs), and IEEE Std 802.15.4-2003 (for older WPANs).

NOTE 3—Test vectors for cryptographic building blocks are given in Annex C.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Annex C

(informative)

Test vectors for cryptographic building blocks

With regard to the CCM* mode of operation, as described in Annex B, this annex provides sample test vectors for the IEEE 802.15.4 community, aimed at assisting in building interoperable security implementations.

C.1 AES block cipher

FIPS Pub 197 provides sample test vectors for the block cipher specified in B.3.1.

C.2 Mode of operation

This subclause provides sample test vectors for the mode of operation as specified in B.3.2, illustrated in the context of different MAC frame types.

C.2.1 MAC beacon frame

C.2.1.1 Description

The example below illustrates security processing of a beacon frame that is transmitted by the coordinator using its extended source address. In this example, the Superframe Specification field is set to 0xCF55 (e.g., the beacon order and superframe order have integer value 5, while the final CAP slot has integer value 15), and there are no pending addresses. This example uses source address 0xacde480000000001, PAN ID 0x4321, and beacon payload 0x51 0x52 0x53 0x54; the frame counter has integer value 5. The security level is set to 0x02 (MIC-64, or 64-bit data authenticity).

For simplicity, all frames in this example are shown without the FCS field (because security processing is independent of it).

Secured beacon frame:

08 D0 84 21 43 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 02 05 00 00 00 || 55 CF 00 00 51 52 53 54 22 3B C1 EC 84 1A B5 53.

Corresponding unsecured beacon frame:

00 C0 84 21 43 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 55 CF 00 00 51 52 53 54.

Prerequisite:

For this mode of operation, the parameter *M* has the integer value eight.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

C.2.1.2 CCM* mode encryption and authentication transformation

Inputs:

The inputs to the CCM* mode forward transformation are as follows:

a) The key Key of size keylen = 128 bits to be used:
   Key = C0 C1 C2 C3 C4 C5 C6 C7 C8 C9 CA CB CC CD CE CF
b) The nonce N of $15 - L = 13$ octets to be used:
   Nonce = AC DE 48 00 00 00 00 01 || 00 00 00 05 || 02
c) The octet string m of length $l(m) = 0$ octets to be used:
   m = (empty string)
d) The octet string a of length $l(a) = 26$ octets to be used:
   a = 08 D0 84 21 43 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 02 || 05 00 00 00 || 55 CF 00 00 51 52 53 54

Actions:

The CCM* mode forward transformation involves the execution, in order, of an input transformation, as defined in C.2.1.2.1, an authentication transformation, as defined in C.2.1.2.2, and an encryption transformation, as defined in C.2.1.2.3.

C.2.1.2.1 Input transformation

This step involves the transformation of the input strings a and m to the strings AuthData and PlainTextData, to be used by the authentication transformation and the encryption transformation, respectively.

a) Form the octet string representation $L(a)$ of the length $l(a)$ of the octet string a:
   $L(a)$ = 00 1A
b) Right-concatenate the octet string $L(a)$ with the octet string a itself:
   $L(a)$ || a = 00 1A || 08 D0 84 21 43 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 02 05 00 00 00 55 CF 00 00 51 52 53 54
c) Form the padded message AddAuthData by right-concatenating the resulting string with the smallest non-negative number of all-zero octets so that the octet string AddAuthData has length divisible by 16:
   AddAuthData = 00 1A 08 D0 84 21 43 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 02 05 00 00 00 55 CF 00 00 51 52 53 54 00 00 00 00
d) Form the padded message PlaintextData by right-concatenating the octet string m with the smallest non-negative number of all-zero octets so that the octet string PlaintextData has length divisible by 16:
   PlaintextData = (empty string)
e) Form the message AuthData consisting of the octet strings AddAuthData and PlaintextData:
   AuthData = 00 1A 08 D0 84 21 43 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 02 05 00 00 00 55 CF 00 00 51 52 53 54 00 00 00 00

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

C.2.1.2.2 Authentication transformation

The data AuthData that was established in C.2.1.2.1 is tagged using the tagging transformation as follows:

a) Form the 1-octet Flags field:

   Flags = 59

b) Form the 16-octet B_0 field:

   B_0 = 59 || AC DE 48 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 05 02 || 00 00

c) Parse the message AuthData as B_1 || B_2, where each message block B_i is a 16-octet string.

d) The CBC-MAC value X_3 is computed as shown in Table C.1.

Table C.1—Computation of CBC-MAC value

i	B_i	X_i
0	59 AC DE 48 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 05 02 00 00	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
1	00 1A 08 D0 84 21 43 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 02	C4 A4 D0 BD 70 73 7E 32 11 2E 51 9A CA A2 01 F1
2	05 00 00 00 55 CF 00 00 51 52 53 54 00 00 00 00	A9 70 2C 6E E1 7E DE E0 C7 32 88 0A 40 41 7F 9C
3	—	AB 6B 19 E7 5B 75 2D 9A 6E F0 CC 13 09 98 EB D0

e) The authentication tag T is the result of omitting all but the leftmost M = 8 octets of the CBC-MAC value X_3:

   T = AB 6B 19 E7 5B 75 2D 9A

C.2.1.2.3 Encryption transformation

The data PlaintextData that was established in C.2.1.2.1 (step d) and the authentication tag T that was established in C.2.1.2.2 (step e) are encrypted using the encryption transformation as follows:

a) Form the 1-octet Flags field:

   Flags = 01

b) Define the 16-octet A_i field as shown in Table C.2.

Table C.2—A_i fields

i	A_i
0	01 AC DE 48 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 05 02 00 00

c) Define the 16-octet encryption block S_0:

   S_0:= E(Key, A_0) = 89 50 D8 0B DF 6F 98 C9 63 F2 D5 A1 08 A1 55 C7

d) The encrypted authentication tag U is the result of XOR-ing the string consisting of the leftmost M = 8 octets of S_0 and the authentication tag T:

   U = 22 3B C1 EC 84 1A B5 53

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Output:

The octet string c = 22 3B C1 EC 84 1A B5 53.

C.2.1.3 CCM* mode decryption and authentication checking transformation

Inputs:

The inputs to the CCM* mode inverse transformation are as follows:

a) The key Key of size keylen = 128 bits to be used:
   Key = C0 C1 C2 C3 C4 C5 C6 C7 C8 C9 CA CB CC CD CE CF
b) The nonce N of $15 - L = 13$ octets to be used:
   Nonce = AC DE 48 00 00 00 00 01 || 00 00 00 05 || 02
c) The octet string c of length $l(c) = 8$ octets to be used:
   c = 22 3B C1 EC 84 1A B5 53
d) The octet string a of length $l(a) = 26$ octets to be used:
   a = 08 D0 84 21 43 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 02 || 05 00 00 00 || 55 CF 00 00 51 52 53 54

Actions:

The CCM* mode inverse transformation involves the execution, in order, of a decryption transformation, as defined in C.2.1.3.1, and an authentication checking transformation, as defined in C.2.1.3.2.

C.2.1.3.1 Decryption transformation

The decryption transformation involves the following steps, in order:

a) Parse the message c as $C \| U$, where the rightmost string U is an 8-octet string:
   C = (empty string)
   U = 22 3B C1 EC 84 1A B5 53
b) Form the 1-octet Flags field:
   Flags = 01
c) Define the 16-octet A_i field as shown in Table C.3.

Table C.3—A_i fields

i	A_i
0	01 AC DE 48 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 05 02 00 00

d) Define the 16-octet encryption block S_0:
   $S_0 = E(\text{Key}, A_0)$ = 89 50 D8 0B DF 6F 98 C9 63 F2 D5 A1 08 A1 55 C7
e) The purported authentication tag T is the result of XOR-ing the string consisting of the leftmost $M = 8$ octets of S_0 and the octet string U:
   T = AB 6B 19 E7 5B 75 2D 9A

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

C.2.1.3.2 Authentication checking transformation

The authentication checking transformation involves the following steps, in order:

a) Form the message AuthData using the input transformation in C.2.1.2.1, with as inputs the string *a* and the octet string *m* = (empty string):

   AuthData = 00 1A 08 D0 84 21 43 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 02 05 00 00 00 55 CF 00 00 51 52 53 54 00 00 00 00

b) Use the authentication transformation in C.2.1.2.2, with as input the message AuthData to compute the authentication tag MACTag:

   MACTag = AB 6B 19 E7 5B 75 2D 9A

c) Compare the output tag MACTag resulting from this transformation with the tag *T* that was established in C.2.1.3.1 (step e):

   T = AB 6B 19 E7 5B 75 2D 9A = MACTag

Output:

Because MACTag = *T*, output "valid," accept the octet strings *a* and *m*, and accept one of the key sharing group member(s) as the source of *a* and *m*.

C.2.2 Data frame

C.2.2.1 Description

The example below illustrates security processing of a Data frame that is transmitted using extended addresses, with PAN ID compression and acknowledgment enabled. This example uses source address 0xacde480000000001, destination address 0xacde480000000002, PAN ID 0x4321, and data payload 0x61 0x62 0x63 0x64; the frame counter has integer value five. The security level is set to 0x04 (ENC, or data confidentiality without data authenticity).

For simplicity, all frames in this example are shown without the FCS field (because security processing is independent of it).

Secured Data frame:

69 DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 04 05 00 00 00 || D4 3E 02 2B.

Corresponding unsecured Data frame:

61 CC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 61 62 63 64.

Prerequisite:

For this mode of operation the parameter *M* has the integer value zero.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

C.2.2.2 CCM* mode encryption and authentication transformation

Inputs:

The inputs to the CCM* mode forward transformation are as follows:

a) The key Key of size keylen = 128 bits to be used:

   Key = C0 C1 C2 C3 C4 C5 C6 C7 C8 C9 CA CB CC CD CE CF

b) The nonce N of 15 – L = 13 octets to be used:

   Nonce = AC DE 48 00 00 00 00 01 || 00 00 00 05 || 04

c) The octet string m of length $l(m)$ = 4 octets to be used:

   m = 61 62 63 64

d) The octet string a of length $l(a)$ = 26 octets to be used:

   a = 69 DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 04 || 05 00 00 00

Actions:

The CCM* mode forward transformation involves the execution, in order, of an input transformation, as defined in C.2.2.2.1, an authentication transformation, as defined in C.2.2.2.2, and an encryption transformation, as defined in C.2.2.2.3.

C.2.2.2.1 Input transformation

This step involves the transformation of the input strings a and m to the strings AuthData and PlainTextData, to be used by the authentication transformation and the encryption transformation, respectively.

a) Form the octet string representation $L(a)$ of the length $l(a)$ of the octet string a:

   $L(a)$ = 00 1A

b) Right-concatenate the octet string $L(a)$ and the octet string a itself:

   $L(a)$ || a = 00 1A || 69 DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 04 05 00 00 00

c) Form the padded message AddAuthData by right-concatenating the resulting string with the smallest non-negative number of all-zero octets so that the octet string AddAuthData has length divisible by 16:

   AddAuthData = 00 1A 69 DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 04 05 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

d) Form the padded message PlaintextData by right-concatenating the octet string m with the smallest non-negative number of all-zero octets so that the octet string PlaintextData has length divisible by 16:

   PlaintextData = 61 62 63 64 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

e) Form the message AuthData consisting of the octet strings AddAuthData and PlaintextData:

   AuthData = 00 1A 69 DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 04 05 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 61 62 63 64 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

C.2.2.2.2 Authentication transformation

T = (empty string)

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

C.2.2.2.3 Encryption transformation

The data PlaintextData is encrypted using the encryption transformation as follows:

a) Form the 1-octet Flags field:
Flags = 01
b) Define the 16-octet A_i field as shown in Table C.4.

Table C.4—A_i fields

i	A_i
1	01 AC DE 48 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 05 04 00 01

c) Parse the message PlaintextData as M_1, where each message block M_i is a 16-octet string.
d) The ciphertext block C_1 is computed as shown in Table C.5.

Table C.5—Computation of ciphertext

i	AES(Key, A_i)	C_i = AES(Key, A_i) ⊕ M_i
1	B5 5C 61 4F A6 8B 7E E0 CB 77 37 EB A8 1D 33 41	D4 3E 02 2B A6 8B 7E E0 CB 77 37 EB A8 1D 33 41

e) The string Ciphertext is the result of omitting all but the leftmost $l(m)$ = 4 octets of the string C_1:
CipherText = D4 3E 02 2B

Output:

c = D4 3E 02 2B.

C.2.2.3 CCM* mode decryption and authentication checking transformation

Inputs:

The inputs to the CCM* mode inverse transformation are as follows:

a) The key Key of size keylen = 128 bits to be used:
Key = C0 C1 C2 C3 C4 C5 C6 C7 C8 C9 CA CB CC CD CE CF
b) The nonce N of 15 – L = 13 octets to be used:
Nonce = AC DE 48 00 00 00 00 01 || 00 00 00 05 || 04
c) The octet string c of length $l(c)$ = 4 octets to be used:
c = D4 3E 02 2B
d) The octet string a of length $l(a)$ = 26 octets to be used:
a = 69 DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 04 || 05 00 00 00

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Actions:

The CCM* mode inverse transformation involves the execution, in order, of a decryption transformation, as defined in C.2.2.3.1, and an authentication checking transformation, as defined in C.2.2.3.2.

C.2.2.3.1 Decryption transformation

The decryption transformation involves the following steps, in order:

a) Parse the message *c* as $C \| U$, where the rightmost string U is a 0-octet string:

   C = D4 3E 02 2B
   U = (empty string)

b) Form the padded message CiphertextData by right-concatenating the string C with the smallest nonnegative number of all-zero octets so that the octet string CiphertextData has length divisible by 16:

   CipherTextData = D4 3E 02 2B 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

c) Form the 1-octet Flags field:

   Flags = 01

d) Define the 16-octet A_i field as shown in Table C.6.

Table C.6—A_i fields

i	A_i
1	01 AC DE 48 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 05 04 00 01

e) Parse the message CiphertextData as C_1, where each message block C_i is a 16-octet string.

f) The plaintext block P_1 is computed as shown in Table C.7.

Table C.7—Computation of plaintext

i	AES(Key, A_i)	P_i = AES(Key, A_i) $\oplus$ C_i
1	B5 5C 61 4F A6 8B 7E E0 CB 77 37 EB A8 1D 33 41	61 62 63 64 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

g) The octet string *m* is the result of omitting all but the leftmost $l(m) = 4$ octets of the string P_1:

   m = 61 62 63 64

h) The purported authentication tag T is the empty string:

   T = (empty string)

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

C.2.2.3.2 Authentication checking transformation

The authentication checking transformation involves the following steps, in order:

a) Form the message AuthData using the input transformation in C.2.2.2.1, with as inputs the string *a* and the octet string *m* that was established in C.2.2.3.1 (step g):

   AuthData = 00 1A 69 DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 04 05 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 61 62 63 64 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

b) Use the authentication transformation in C.2.2.2.2, with as input the message AuthData to compute the authentication tag MACTag:

   MACTag = (empty string)

c) Compare the output tag MACTag resulting from this transformation with the tag *T* that was established in C.2.2.3.1 (step h):

   T = (empty string) = MACTag

Output:

Because MACTag = *T*, output "valid," accept the octet strings *a* and *m*, and accept one of the key sharing group member(s) as the source of *a* and *m*.

C.2.3 MAC command

C.2.3.1 Description

The example below illustrates security processing of an Association Request command that is transmitted by a FFD using extended addresses, with acknowledgment enabled. In this example, the Capability field is set to 0xCE. This example uses source address 0xacde480000000001, destination address 0xacde480000000002, PAN ID 0x4321, and command payload 0xCE; the frame counter has integer value five. The security level is set to 0x06 (ENC-MIC-64, or data confidentiality with 64-bit data authenticity).

For simplicity, all frames in this example are shown without the FCS field (because security processing is independent of it).

Secured MAC command:

2B DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC FF FF 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 06 05 00 00 00 || 01 D8 4F DE 52 90 61 F9 C6 F1.

Corresponding unsecured MAC command:

23 CC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC FF FF 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 01 CE.

Prerequisite:

For this mode of operation the parameter *M* has the integer value eight.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

C.2.3.2 CCM* mode encryption and authentication transformation

Inputs:

The inputs to the CCM* mode forward transformation are as follows:

a) The key Key of size keylen = 128 bits to be used:

   Key = C0 C1 C2 C3 C4 C5 C6 C7 C8 C9 CA CB CC CD CE CF

b) The nonce N of 15 – L = 13 octets to be used:

   Nonce = AC DE 48 00 00 00 00 01 || 00 00 00 05 || 06

c) The octet string m of length $l(m)$ = 1 octets to be used:

   m = CE

d) The octet string a of length $l(a)$ = 29 octets to be used:

   a = 2B DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC FF FF 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 06 || 05 00 00 00 || 01

Actions:

The CCM* mode forward transformation involves the execution, in order, of an input transformation, as defined in C.2.3.2.1, an authentication transformation, as defined in C.2.3.2.2, and an encryption transformation, as defined in C.2.3.2.3.

C.2.3.2.1 Input transformation

This step involves the transformation of the input strings a and m to the strings AuthData and PlainTextData, to be used by the authentication transformation and the encryption transformation, respectively.

a) Form the octet string representation $L(a)$ of the length $l(a)$ of the octet string a:

   $L(a)$ = 00 1D

b) Right-concatenate the octet string $L(a)$ and the octet string a itself:

   $L(a)$ || a = 00 1D || 2B DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC FF FF
   01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 06 05 00 00 00 01

c) Form the padded message AddAuthData by right-concatenating the resulting string with the smallest non-negative number of all-zero octets so that the octet string AddAuthData has length divisible by 16.

   AddAuthData = 00 1D 2B DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC FF FF
   01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 06 05 00 00 00 01 00

d) Form the padded message PlaintextData by right-concatenating the octet string m with the smallest non-negative number of all-zero octets so that the octet string PlaintextData has length divisible by 16:

   PlaintextData = CE 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

e) Form the message AuthData consisting of the octet strings AddAuthData and PlaintextData:

   AuthData = 00 1D 2B DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC FF FF 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE
   AC 06 05 00 00 00 01 00 CE 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

C.2.3.2.2 Authentication transformation

The data AuthData that was established in C.2.3.2.1 is tagged using the tagging transformation as follows:

a) Form the 1-octet Flags field:
   Flags = 59
b) Form the 16-octet B_0 field:
   B_0 = 59 || AC DE 48 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 05 06 || 00 01
c) Parse the message AuthData as B_1 || B_2 ||B_3, where each message block B_i is a 16-octet string.
d) The CBC-MAC value X_4 is computed as shown in Table C.8.

Table C.8—Computation of CBC-MAC value

i	B_i	X_i
0	59 AC DE 48 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 05 06 00 01	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
1	00 1D 2B DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC FF	1C E4 F7 E4 FC 48 74 6D 0C 22 20 5D E8 DB B9 B0
2	FF 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 06 05 00 00 00 01 00	16 EC 61 6D 5A C1 1A A0 4B 30 89 09 5D D5 7F 89
3	CE 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	49 C3 1D 64 A5 A0 12 58 5B 07 78 B8 CD FE CE A8
4	—	D6 06 7B B5 9B 57 03 9C 00 98 0A 5D B3 63 BB 80

e) The authentication tag *T* is the result of omitting all but the leftmost *M* = 8 octets of the CBC-MAC value X_4:
   T = D6 06 7B B5 9B 57 03 9C

C.2.3.2.3 Encryption transformation

The data PlaintextData is encrypted using the encryption transformation as follows:

a) Form the 1-octet Flags field:
   Flags = 01
b) Define the 16-octet A_i fields as shown in Table C.9.

Table C.9—A_i fields

i	A_i
0	01 || AC DE 48 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 05 06 || 00 00
1	01 || AC DE 48 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 05 06 || 00 01

c) Parse the message PlaintextData as M_1, where each message block M_i is a 16-octet string.
d) The cipher text block C_1 is computed as shown in Table C.10.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table C.10—Computation of cipher text

i	AES(Key, A_i)	C_i = AES(Key, A_i) ⊕ M_i
1	16 A9 67 B4 0F F9 72 DE B1 CB 46 E7 09 FD EB FF	D8 A9 67 B4 0F F9 72 DE B1 CB 46 E7 09 FD EB FF

e) The string Ciphertext is the result of omitting all but the leftmost $l(m)$ = 1 octet of the string C_1:

CipherText = D8

f) Define the 16-octet encryption block S_0:

S_0 = E(Key, A_0) = 99 D8 29 25 FA AE C5 6D 17 93 04 21 3B 88 69 35

g) The encrypted authentication tag U is the result of XOR-ing the string consisting of the leftmost M = 8 octets of S_0 and the authentication tag T:

U = 4F DE 52 90 61 F9 C6 F1

Output:

c = D8 || 4F DE 52 90 61 F9 C6 F1.

C.2.3.3 CCM* mode decryption and authentication checking transformation

Inputs:

The inputs to the CCM* mode inverse transformation are as follows:

a) The key Key of size keylen = 128 bits to be used:

Key = C0 C1 C2 C3 C4 C5 C6 C7 C8 C9 CA CB CC CD CE CF

b) The nonce N of 15 – L = 13 octets to be used:

Nonce = AC DE 48 00 00 00 00 01 || 00 00 00 05 || 06

c) The octet string c of length $l(c)$ = 9 octets to be used:

c = D8 4F DE 52 90 61 F9 C6 F1

d) The octet string a of length $l(a)$ = 29 octets to be used:

a = 2B DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC FF FF || 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC || 06 || 05 00 00 00 || 01

Actions:

The CCM* mode inverse transformation involves the execution, in order, of a decryption transformation, as defined in C.2.3.3.1 and an authentication checking transformation as defined in C.2.3.3.2.

C.2.3.3.1 Decryption transformation

The decryption transformation involves the following steps, in order:

a) Parse the message c as C ||U, where the rightmost string U is an 8-octet string:

C = D8
U = 4F DE 52 90 61 F9 C6 F1

b) Form the padded message CiphertextData by right-concatenating the string C with the smallest non-negative number of all-zero octets so that the octet string CiphertextData has length divisible by 16:

CipherTextData = D8 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

c) Form the 1-octet Flags field:

Flags = 01

d) Define the 16-octet A_i fields as shown in Table C.11.

Table C.11—A_i fields

i	A_i
0	01 || AC DE 48 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 05 06 || 00 00
1	01 || AC DE 48 00 00 00 00 01 00 00 00 05 06 || 00 01

e) Parse the message CiphertextData as C_1, where each message block C_i is a 16-octet string.

f) The plaintext block P_1 is computed as shown in Table C.12.

Table C.12—Computation of plaintext

i	AES(Key, A_i)	P_i = AES(Key, A_i) $\oplus$ C_i
1	16 A9 67 B4 0F F9 72 DE B1 CB 46 E7 09 FD EB FF	CE 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

g) The octet string *m* is the result of omitting all but the leftmost $l(m) = 1$ octet of the string P_1:

m = CE

h) Define the 16-octet encryption block S_0:

$S_0 = E(\text{Key}, A_0)$ = 99 D8 29 25 FA AE C5 6D 17 93 04 21 3B 88 69 35

i) The purported authentication tag T is the result of XOR-ing the string consisting of the leftmost $M = 8$ octets of S_0 and the octet string U:

T = D6 06 7B B5 9B 57 03 9C

C.2.3.3.2 Authentication checking transformation

The authentication checking transformation involves the following steps, in order:

a) Form the message AuthData using the input transformation in C.2.3.2.1, with as inputs the string *a* and the octet string *m* that was established in C.2.3.3.1 (step g):

AuthData = 00 1D DC 84 21 43 02 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC FF FF 01 00 00 00 00 48 DE AC 06 05 00 00 00 01 00 CE 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00

b) Use the authentication transformation in C.2.3.2.2 with as input the message AuthData to compute the authentication tag MACTag:

MACTag = D6 06 7B B5 9B 57 03 9C

c) Compare the output tag MACTag resulting from this transformation with the tag T that was established in C.2.3.3.1 (step i):

T = D6 06 7B B5 9B 57 03 9C = MACTag

Output:

Because MACTag = T, output valid," accept the octet strings *a* and *m*, and accept one of the key sharing group member(s) as the source of *a* and *m*.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Annex D

(informative)

Protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS) proforma[20]

D.1 Introduction

To evaluate the conformance of a particular implementation, it is necessary to have a statement of which capabilities and options have been implemented for a given standard. Such a statement is called a protocol implementation conformance statement (PICS).

D.1.1 Scope

This annex provides the PICS proforma for this standard in compliance with the relevant requirements.

D.1.2 Purpose

The supplier of a protocol implementation claiming to conform to this standard shall complete the following PICS proforma and accompany it with the information necessary to identify fully both the supplier and the implementation.

The PICS of a protocol implementation is a statement of which capabilities and options of the protocol have been implemented. The statement is in the form of answers to a set of questions in the PICS proforma. The questions in a proforma consist of a systematic list of protocol capabilities and options as well as their implementation requirements. The implementation requirement indicates whether implementation of a capability is mandatory, optional, or conditional depending on options selected. When a protocol implementor answers questions in a PICS proforma, the implementor indicates whether an item is implemented and provides explanations if an item is not implemented.

D.2 Abbreviations and special symbols

Notations for requirement status:

M	Mandatory
O	Optional
O.n	Optional, but support of at least one of the group of options labeled by the same numeral <n> is required
N/A	Not applicable
X	Prohibited
“item”:	Conditional, status dependent upon the support marked for the “item”
(item number || item number)	Applies to all item numbers listed

For example, FD1: O.1 indicates that if FD1 is implemented, then least one of the features labeled with O.1 is required to be implemented.

[20]Copyright release for PICS proformas: Users of this standard may freely reproduce the PICS proforma in this annex so that it can be used for its intended purpose and may further publish the completed PICS.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

An example of a conditional status applying to all the items is as follows:

(FD1 || FD2 || FD6): M

This is equivalent to the following conditions:

FD1: M
FD2: M
FD6: M

D.3 Instructions for completing the PICS proforma

If it is claimed to conform to this standard, the actual PICS proforma to be filled in by a supplier shall be technically equivalent to the text of the PICS proforma in this annex and shall preserve the numbering, naming, and ordering of the PICS proforma.

A PICS that conforms to this annex shall be a conforming PICS proforma completed in accordance with the instructions for completion given in this annex.

The main part of the PICS is a fixed-format questionnaire, divided into tables. Answers to the questionnaire are to be provided in the rightmost column, either by simply marking an answer to indicate a restricted choice (such as Yes or No) or by entering a value or a set or range of values.

D.4 Identification of the implementation

Implementation under test identification

Implementation under test name: ____________________

Implementation under test version: ____________________

____

System under test identification

System under test name ____________________

Hardware configuration: ____________________

____

____

Operating system: ____________________

Product supplier

Name: ____________________

Address: ____________________

____

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Telephone number: ______________________________

Facsimile number: ______________________________

Email address: ______________________________

Additional information: ______________________________

Client

Name: ______________________________

Address: ______________________________

____

Telephone number: ______________________________

Facsimile number: ______________________________

Email address: ______________________________

Additional information: ______________________________

PICS contact person

Name: ______________________________

Address: ______________________________

____

Telephone number: ______________________________

Facsimile number: ______________________________

Email address: ______________________________

Additional information: ______________________________

PICS/System conformance statement

Provide the relationship of the PICS with the system conformance statement for the system: ____________

____

____

____

____

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

D.5 Identification of the protocol

This PICS proforma applies to IEEE Std 802.15.4-2006.

D.6 Global statement of conformance

The implementation described in this PICS proforma meets all of the mandatory requirements of the referenced standard.

[ ] Yes

[ ] No

NOTE—Answering "No" indicates nonconformance to the specified protocol standard. Nonsupported mandatory capabilities are to be identified in the following tables, with an explanation by the implementor explaining why the implementation is nonconforming.

The supplier will have fully complied with the requirements for a statement of conformance by completing the statement contained in this subclause. However, the supplier may find it helpful to continue to complete the detailed tabulations in the subclauses that follow.

D.7 PICS proforma tables

The following tables are composed of the detailed questions to be answered, which make up the PICS proforma.

D.7.1 Functional device types

The requirements for the functional device types are described in Table D.1.

Table D.1—Functional device types

Item number	Item description	Reference	Status	Support		
				N/A	Yes	No
FD1	Is this a full-function device (FFD)	6.1	O.1			
FD2	Is this a reduced-function device (RFD)	6.1	O.1			
FD3	Support of extended address	7.1	M			
FD4	Assignment of short network address	6.4.1	FD1: M			

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table D.1—Functional device types *(continued)*

Item number	Item description	Reference	Status	Support		
				N/A	Yes	No
FD5	Support of short network address	7.2.1.8	(FD1 || FD2): M (FD6 || FD7): O			
FD6	Reduced function-transmit device (RFD-TX)	6.1	O.1			
FD7	Reduced function-receive device (RFD-RX)	6.1	O.1			
FD8	Enhanced frame support	7.2.1.9	O			

D.7.2 Major capabilities for the PHY

The requirements for the major PHY capabilities are given in this subclause.

D.7.2.1 PHY functions

The requirements for the PHY functions are described in Table D.2.

Table D.2—PHY functions

Item number	Item description	Reference	Status	Support		
				N/A	Yes	No
PLF1	Energy detection (ED)	10.2.5	FD1: M O			
PLF2	Link quality indication (LQI)	10.2.6	(FD1 || FD2): M (FD6 || FD7): O			
PLF3	Clear channel assessment (CCA)	10.2.7	M			
PLF4	Ranging	16.7	O			
PLF4.1	Crystal characterization	16.7.2	PLF4: O			
PLF4.2	Dynamic preamble selection (DPS)	6.9.4	RF4: O			
PLF5	Default HRP UWB pulse shape	16.3	RF4: M			

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table D.2—PHY functions *(continued)*

Item number	Item description	Reference	Status	Support		
				N/A	Yes	No
PLF5.1	Chirp on UWB (CoU)	16.5.1	RF4: O			
PLF5.2	Continuous spectrum (CS)	16.5.2	RF4: O			
PLF5.3	Linear combination of pulses (LCP)	16.5.3	RF4: O			
PLF6	LRP UWB base mode	19.2.1	RF9.1: M RF9.2: O.9			
PLF7	LRP UWB extended mode	19.2.2	RF9.1: M RF9.2: O.9			
PLF8	LRP UWB long-range mode	19.2.3	RF9.1: M RF9.2: O.9			

D.7.2.2 Radio frequency (RF)

The requirements for the PHY RF capabilities are described in Table D.3.

Table D.3—Radio frequency (RF)

Item number	Item description	Reference	Status	Support		
				N/A	Yes	No
RF1	BPSK PHY	Clause 13	O.3, RF1.3: M RF1.4: M			
RF1.1	868 MHz band	Table 10-1	RF1: M			
RF1.2	915 MHz band	Table 10-1	RF1: M			
RF1.3	ASK PHY	Table 10-1, Clause 14	O			
RF1.4	O-QPSK PHY in 868 MHz or 915 MHz bands	Table 10-1, Clause 12	O			
RF2	2450 MHz O-QPSK PHY	Table 10-1, Clause 12	O.3			
RF3	CSS PHY	Clause 15, Table 10-1, Table 10-5	O.3			
RF3.1	Supports CSS PHY 1 Mb/s	Clause 15	RF3: M			

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table D.3—Radio frequency (RF) *(continued)*

Item number	Item description	Reference	Status	Support		
				N/A	Yes	No
RF3.2	Supports CSS PHY 250 kb/s	Clause 15	RF3: O			
RF4	HRP UWB PHY	Clause 16, Table 10-1, Table 10-6	O.3			
RF4.1	250–750 MHz HRP UWB PHY	Table 10-1, 16.4	RF4: O.5			
RF4.2	3244–4742 MHz HRP UWB PHY	Table 10-1, 16.4	RF4: O.5			
RF4.3	5944–10 234 MHz HRP UWB PHY	Table 10-1, 16.4	RF4: O.5			
RF4.4	Supports HRP UWB PHY 850 kb/s	16.2.3, 16.2.6	RF4: M			
RF4.5	Supports 110 kb/s rate	16.2.3, 16.2.6	O			
RF4.6	Supports 6.8 Mb/s rate	16.2.3, 16.2.6	O			
RF4.7	Supports 27 Mb/s rate	16.2.3, 16.2.6	O			
RF5	PHYs in the 780 MHz band					
RF5.1	O-QPSK PHY in 780 MHz band	Clause 12	O.3			
RF5.2	MPSK PHY in 780 MHz band	Annex E	O.3			
RF6	GFSK PHY in 920 MHz band	Clause 17	O.3			
RF7	2380 MHz O-QPSK PHY	Clause 12	O.3			
RF8	MSK PHY	Clause 18	O.3			
RF9	6289.6–9185.6 LRP UWB PHY	Clause 19	O.3			
RF9.1	LRP UWB RFD-RX	Clause 19	RF9: O.3			
RF9.2	LRP UWB RFD-TX	Clause 19	RF9: O.3			
RF10	SUN PHY device	10.1	O.3			
RF10.1	SUN FSK	Clause 20	RF10: M			
RF10.2	SUN OFDM	Clause 21	RF10: O			
RF10.3	SUN O-QPSK	Clause 22	RF10: O			
RF10.4	SUN FSK Generic PHY	20.3	RF10.1: O			
RF10.5	Transmit and receive enhanced beacons using CSM	10.1.8	(FD8 AND RF10 AND MLF26): M			

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table D.3—Radio frequency (RF) ***(continued)***

Item number	Item description	Reference	Status	Support		
				N/A	Yes	No
RF10.6	At least one of the bands given in Table 10-1	10.1	RF10: M			
RF11	SUN PHY operating modes					
RF11.1	Operating mode #1 in one of the bands defined in Table 20-6	20.3	RF10: M			
RF11.2	Operating mode #2 in bands defined in Table 20-6	20.3	RF10: O			
RF11.3	Operating mode #3 in bands defined in Table 20-6	20.3	RF10: O			
RF11.4	Operating mode #1 and #2 when operated in 920 MHz band	20.3	RF10: M			
RF11.5	Operating mode #3 and #4 in 920 MHz band	20.3	RF10: O			
RF12	SUN FSK options					
RF12.1	SUN FSK FEC	20.3.4	RF10.1: O RF10.4: O			
RF12.2	SUN FSK interleaving	20.3.5	RF10.1: O RF10.4: O			
RF12.3	SUN FSK data whitening	20.4	RF10.1: O RF10.4: O			
RF12.4	SUN FSK mode switching	20.5	RF10.1: O RF10.4: O			
RF13	SUN OFDM operating modes					
RF13.1	Support for all BPSK and QPSK modes	21.3	RF10.2: M			
RF13.2	SUN OFDM frequency spreading	21.4.6	RF10.2: M			
RF14	SUN O-QPSK operating modes					
RF14.1	SpreadingMode DSSS	22.3.4	RF10.3: M			
RF14.2	RateMode zero	22.3.5	RF10.3: M			
RF15	LECIM PHY device	10.1	O.3			
RF15.1	LECIM DSSS	Clause 23	RF15: O.11			
RF15.2	LECIM FSK	Clause 24	RF15: O.11			
RF15.3	At least one of the bands given in Table 10-2 or Table 10-3	10.1	RF15: M			

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table D.3—Radio frequency (RF) *(continued)*

Item number	Item description	Reference	Status	Support		
				N/A	Yes	No
RF16	LECIM DSSS options					
RF16.1	LECIM DSSS convolutional FEC	23.2.3	RF15.1: M			
RF16.2	LECIM DSSS interleaver	23.2.4	RF15.1: M			
RF16.3	LECIM DSSS differential encoding	23.2.5	RF15.1: M			
RF16.4	LECIM DSSS bit-to-symbol and symbol-to-chip encoding	23.2.6	RF15.1: M			
RF16.5	LECIM DSSS BPSK modulation	23.2.7.1	RF15.1: O.12			
RF16.6	LECIM DSSS O-QPSK modulation	23.2.7.2	RF15.1: O.12			
RF17	LECIM FSK options					
RF17.1	LECIM FSK FEC	24.3.4	RF15.2: O			
RF17.2	LECIM FSK interleaving	24.3.5	RF15.2: O			
RF17.3	LECIM FSK spreading	24.3.6	RF15.2: O			
RF17.4	LECIM FSK data whitening	24.4	RF15.2: O			
RF17.5	LECIM FSK One of the valid operating modes	24.3	RF15.2: M			
RF18	TVWS PHY device	10.1	O.3			
RF18.1	TVWS-FSK	Clause 25	RF18: O.12			
RF18.2	TVWS-OFDM	Clause 26	RF18: O.12			
RF18.3	TVWS-NB-OFDM	Clause 27	RF18: O.12			
RF18.4	Support at least one of the given bands	Table 7-39	RF18: M			
RF18.5	TVWS Ranging	6.9	RF18: O			
RF19	TVWS-FSK options					
RF19.1	Support for at least one of the modes	25.2 Table 25-3	RF18.1: M			
RF19.2	TVWS-FSK FEC and Interleaving	25.2.2	RF18.1: O			

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table D.3—Radio frequency (RF) *(continued)*

Item number	Item description	Reference	Status	Support		
				N/A	Yes	No
RF19.3	TVWS-FSK data whitening	25.2.3	RF18.1: O			
RF19.4	TVWS-FSK spreading	25.2.4	RF18.1: O			
RF20	TVWS-OFDM operating modes					
RF20.1	Support for MCS0, MCS1, and MCS2 modes	26.3 Table 26-3	RF18.2: M			
RF20.2	Support for MCS3, MCS4, and MCS5 modes	26.3 Table 26-3	RF18.2: O			
RF21	TVWS-NB-OFDM operating modes					
RF21.1	Support for at least one of the modes	27.3 Table 27-4	RF18.3: M			
RF22	RCC PHYs	Table 10-4	O.3			
RF22.1	RCC LMR GMSK	28.6.1	RF22: M			
RF22.2	RCC LMR 4-FSK	28.6.2	RF22: O			
RF22.3	RCC LMR QPSK	28.6.3	RF22: O			
RF22.4	RCC LMR π/4 DQPSK	28.6.4	RF22: O			
RF22.5	RCC LMR DSSS DQPSK	28.6.5	RF22: O			
RF22.6	RCC LMR DSSS BPSK	Clause 29	RF22: O			
RF22.7	9.6 kb/s	Table 10-4	RF22.1: M			
RF22.8	19.2 kb/s	Table 10-4	RF22.1: O			

D.7.2.3 Channel capabilities for HRP UWB PHY

The HRP UWB channel requirements are described in Table D.4.

Table D.4—HRP UWB channels

Item number	Item description	Reference	Status	Support		
				N/A	Yes	No
PCH1	Channel number 0	Table 10-6	RF4.1: M			
PCH2	Channel number 1	Table 10-6	RF4.2: O			
PCH3	Channel number 2	Table 10-6	RF4.2: O			
PCH4	Channel number 3	Table 10-6	RF4.2: M			

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table D.4—HRP UWB channels *(continued)*

Item number	Item description	Reference	Status	Support		
				N/A	Yes	No
PCH5	Channel number 4	Table 10-6	RF4.2: O			
PCH6	Channel number 5	Table 10-6	RF4.3: O			
PCH7	Channel number 6	Table 10-6	RF4.3: O			
PCH8	Channel number 7	Table 10-6	RF4.3: O			
PCH9	Channel number 8	Table 10-6	RF4.3: O			
PCH10	Channel number 9	Table 10-6	RF4.3: M			
PCH11	Channel number 10	Table 10-6	RF4.3: O			
PCH12	Channel number 11	Table 10-6	RF4.3: O			
PCH13	Channel number 12	Table 10-6	RF4.3: O			
PCH14	Channel number 13	Table 10-6	RF4.3: O			
PCH15	Channel number 14	Table 10-6	RF4.3: O			
PCH16	Channel number 15	Table 10-6	RF4.3: O			

D.7.2.4 Channel capabilities for LRP UWB PHY

The LRP UWB channel requirements are described in Table D.5.

Table D.5—LRP UWB channels

Item number	Item description	Reference	Status	Support		
				N/A	Yes	No
PCH17	Channel Number 0	Table 10-9	RF9: O.10			
PCH18	Channel Number 1	Table 10-9	RF9: O.10			
PCH19	Channel Number 2	Table 10-9	RF9: O.10			

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

D.7.3 Major capabilities for the MAC sublayer

D.7.3.1 MAC sublayer functions

The MAC sublayer function requirements are described in Table D.6.

Table D.6—MAC sublayer functions

Item number	Item description	Reference	Status	Support		
				N/A	Yes	No
MLF1	Transmission of data	8.3.1, 8.3.2	(FD1 || FD2 || FD6): M			
MLF1.1	Purge data	8.3.4, 8.3.5	(FD1 || FD2 || FD6): M			
MLF2	Reception of data	8.3.3	(FD1 || FD2 || FD7): M			
MLF2.1	Promiscuous mode	6.7.7	O			
MLF2.2	Control of PHY receiver	8.2.10	O			
MLF2.3	Timestamp of incoming data	8.3.3	O			
MLF3	Beacon management					
MLF3.1	Transmit beacons	6.3.4, 8.2.18	FD1: M (FD2 || FD6): O			
MLF3.2	Receive beacons	Clause 6, 8.2.18	(FD1 || FD2): M FD7: O			
MLF4	Channel access mechanism	Clause 6, 6.2	M			
MLF5	Guaranteed time slot (GTS) management	Clause 6, 8.2.7, 7.5.11, 6.8	O			
MLF6	Frame validation	8.3.3, 7.2.10, 6.7.2	(FD1 || FD2 || FD7): M			
MLF7	Acknowledged frame delivery	Clause 6, 8.3.3, 6.7.4, 7.2.1.4,	(FD1 || FD2): M			
MLF8	Association and disassociation	Clause 6, 8.2.3, 8.2.4, 6.4	(FD1 || FD2): M			
MLF9	Security					
MLF9.1	Unsecured mode	Clause 9	M			
MLF9.2	Secured mode	Clause 9	O			
MLF9.2.1	Data encryption	Clause 9	MLF9.2: O			
MLF9.2.2	Frame integrity	Clause 9	MLF9.2: M			
MLF10.1	ED scanning	6.3.1.1	(FD1 || FD2 || FD7): M			

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table D.6—MAC sublayer functions *(continued)*

Item number	Item description	Reference	Status	Support		
				N/A	Yes	No
MLF10.2	Active scanning	6.3.1.2	FD1: M FD2: O			
MLF10.3	Passive scanning	6.3.1.2	(FD1 || FD2): M FD7: O			
MLF10.4	Orphan scanning	6.3.1.3	(FD1 || FD2): M			
MLF11	Control, define, determine, and declare superframe structure	6.2.1	FD1: O			
MLF12	Follow and use superframe structure	6.2.1	O			
MLF13	Store one transaction	6.6	FD1: M			
MLF14	Ranging	6.9	O			
MLF14.1	DPS	6.9.4, 8.2.15	RF4: O			
MLF15	TSCH capable	Table 8-2	FD8: O			
MLF15.1	TSCH MAC Management Services	8.2.19	MLF15: M			
MLF15.2	TSCH Channel Access	6.2.5.2, 6.2.5.3, 6.2.6	MLF15: M			
MLF15.3	TSCH PAN formation	6.3.6	MLF15: M			
MLF15.4	Synchronization in TSCH PAN	6.5.4	MLF15: M			
MLF15.5	TSCH Frame counter	9.4.2	MLF15: M			
MLF16	DSME capable	6.11	O			
MLF16.1	DSME MAC management service	8.2.20	MLF16: M			
MLF16.2	DSME multi-superframe structure	6.11.2	MLF16: M			
MLF17	LE capable	6.2.7, 6.12	O			
MLF17.1	LE specific MAC sublayer service specification	8.4.2.5	MLF17:M			
MLF17.2	CSL capable	6.12.2	MLF17: O.8			
MLF17.3	RIT capable	6.12.3	MLF17: O.8			
MLF17.4	LE superframe	6.2.7.1, 6.2.7.2, 6.2.7.3	MLF17: O.8			
MLF18	MAC performance metrics PIB attributes	8.4.2.6	O			
MLF19	Fast association	6.4.3	O			

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table D.6—MAC sublayer functions *(continued)*

Item number	Item description	Reference	Status	Support		
				N/A	Yes	No
MLF20	Channel Hopping	Table 8-87	O			
MLF21	PSDU Fragmentation	23.3	RF15.1: M			
MLF22	PCA	6.2.5.4, 6.2.5.5	O			
MLF23	Implicit RIT (I-RIT)	6.12.4	MLF17.3: O			
MLF24	Extended DSME	6.11.2	MLF16: O			
MLF25	TMCTP	6.13	O			
MLF26	Multi-PHY management (MPM) for all coordinators when operating at more than 1% duty cycle	6.14	RF10: M			
MLF27	TRLE capability	F.2	O			
MLF27.1	Link extension for non-TRLE PAN	F.3	MLF27: O.13			
MLF2672	Link extension for TRLE-enabled PAN	F.4	MLF27:O.13			
MLF27.3	TRLE MAC management service	F.5.3	MLF27: M			
MLF28	Beacon only period	6.2.1.3	RF18: O			
MLF29	Ranging	6.9	O			
MLF30	RCCN superframe structure	6.2.9	RF22: O			

D.7.3.2 MAC frames

The MAC frame requirements are described in Table D.7.

Table D.7—MAC frames

Item number	Item description	Reference	Transmitter		Receiver	
			Status	Support N/A Yes No	Status	Support N/A Yes No
MF1	Beacon	7.3.1	FD1: M		M	
MF1.1	Enhanced Beacon	7.3.1	FD8: M		FD8: M	
MF2	Data	7.3.2	M		M	
MF3	Acknowledgment	7.3.3	M		M	

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table D.7—MAC frames *(continued)*

Item number	Item description	Reference	Transmitter		Receiver	
			Status	Support N/A Yes No	Status	Support N/A Yes No
MF3.1	Enhanced Acknowledgment	7.3.3	FD8: M		FD8: M	
MF3.2	Mulitpurpose	7.3.5	FD8: O MLF17.2: M FD6: M		FD8: O MLF17.2: M FD7: M	
MF3.3	Extended	7.3.6	O		O	
MF4	MAC Commands					
MF4.1	Command format	7.3.4	M		M	
MF4.2	Association request	7.3.4, 7.5.2	(FD1 || FD2): M		FD1: M	
MF4.3	Association response	7.3.4, 7.5.3	FD1: M		(FD1 || FD2): M	
MF4.4	Disassociation notification	7.3.4, 7.5.4	(FD1 || FD2): M		FD1: M	
MF4.5	Data request	7.3.4, 7.5.5	(FD1 || FD2): M		FD1: M	
MF4.6	PAN ID conflict notification	7.3.4, 7.5.6	(FD1 || FD2): M		FD1: M	
MF4.7	Orphaned device notification	7.3.4, 7.5.7	(FD1 || FD2): M		FD1: M	
MF4.8	Beacon request	7.3.4, 7.5.8	(FD1 || FD2): M		FD1: M	
MF4.9	Enhanced Beacon Request	7.5.9	FD8: M		FD8: M	
MF4.10	Coordinator realignment	7.3.4, 7.5.10	FD1: M		M	
MF4.11	GTS request	7.3.4, 7.5.11	MLF5: O		MLF5: O	
MF4.12	DSME Association Request command	7.5.12	MLF16: M		MLF16: M	
MF4.13	DSME Association Response command	7.5.13	MLF16: M		MLF16: M	
MF4.14	DSME GTS Request command	7.5.14	MLF16: M		MLF16: M	

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table D.7—MAC frames *(continued)*

Item number	Item description	Reference	Transmitter		Receiver	
			Status	Support N/A Yes No	Status	Support N/A Yes No
MF4.15	DSME GTS Response command	7.5.15	MLF16: M		MLF16: M	
MF4.16	DSME GTS Notify command	7.5.16	MLF16: M		MLF16: M	
MF4.17	DSME Information Request command	7.5.17	MLF16: M		MLF16: M	
MF4.18	DSME Information Response command	7.5.18	MLF16: M		MLF16: M	
MF4.19	DSME Beacon Allocation Notification command	7.5.19	MLF16: M		MLF16: M	
MF4.20	DSME Beacon Collision Notification command	7.5.20	MLF16: M		MLF16: M	
MF4.21	DSME Link Report command	7.5.21	MLF16: M		MLF16: M	
MF4.22	RIT Data Request command	7.5.22	MLF17.3: M		MLF17.3: M	
MF4.23	TRLE command	F.5.2	MLF2672: M		MLF2672: M	
MF4.24	DBS Request command	7.5.23	RF18: M		RF18: M	
MF4.25	DBS Response command	7.5.24	RF18: M		RF18: M	
MF5	FCS					
MF5.1	2 octet FCS	7.2.10	NOT (RF10 || RF18): M		NOT (RF10 || RF18): M	
MF5.2	4 octet FCS	7.2.10	(RF10 || RF15.2 || RF18): M		(RF10 || RF15.2 || RF18): M	

D.7.3.3 MAC IEs

The MAC IE requirements are described in Table D.8.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table D.8—MAC IEs

Item number	Item description	Reference	Transmitter		Receiver	
			Status	Support N/A Yes No	Status	Support N/A Yes No
MIE1	IEs	7.4	O, (MLF15 || MLF16 || MLF17.2 || MLF17.3 || MLF24 || MLF26 || MLF28 || RF10 || RF18 || RF22): M		O, (MLF15 || MLF16 || MLF17.2 || MLF17.3 || MLF24 || MLF26 || MLF28 || RF10 || RF18 || RF22): M	
MIE2	Header IEs					
MIE2.1	Header IE format	7.4.2.1	MIE1: M		MIE1: M	
MIE2.2	DA IE	7.4.2.16	FD1: O		FD1: O	
MIE2.3	CSL IE	7.4.2.3	MLF17.2: M		MLF17.2: M	
MIE2.4	RIT IE	7.4.2.4	MLF17.3:O		MLF17.3:O	
MIE2.5	DSME PAN descriptor IE	7.4.2.5	MLF16: M		MLF16: M	
MIE2.5	Rendezvous Time IE	7.4.2.6	MLF17.2: M		MLF17.2: M	
MIE2.6	Time Correction IE	7.4.2.7	MLF16: M		MLF16: M	
MIE2.7	Extended DSME PAN descriptor IE	7.4.2.8	MLF16: M		MLF16: M	
MIE2.8	Fragment Sequence Context Description (FSCD) IE	7.4.2.9	MLF21: M		MLF21: M	
MIE2.9	Simplified Superframe Specification IE	7.4.2.10	MLF16: M		MLF16: M	
MIE2.10	Simplified GTS Specification IE	7.4.2.11	MLF16: M		MLF16: M	
MIE2.11	LECIM Capabilities IE	7.4.2.12	RF15: M		RF15: M	
MIE2.12	RCC Capabilities IE	7.4.2.13	RF22: M		RF22: M	
MIE2.13	RCCN Descriptor IE	7.4.2.14	RF22: M		RF22: M	
MIE2.14	Global Time IE	7.4.2.15	MLF16: M		MLF16: M	
MIE2.15	Header Termination 1 IE	7.4.2.17	MIE1: M		MIE1: M	

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table D.8—MAC IEs *(continued)*

Item number	Item description	Reference	Transmitter		Receiver	
			Status	Support N/A Yes No	Status	Support N/A Yes No
MIE2.16	Header Termination 2 IE	7.4.2.18	MIE1: M		MIE1: M	
MIE3	Payload IEs					
MIE3.1	Encapsulated Service Data Unit (ESDU) IE	7.4.3.1	MIE1: O		MIE1: O	
MIE3.2	MLME IE	7.4.3.2	MIE1: M		MIE1: M	
MIE4	Nested IEs					
MIE4.1	Format of Nested IE	7.4.4.1	MIE1: M		MIE1: M	
MIE4.2	TSCH Synchronization IE	7.4.4.2	MLF15: M		MLF15: M	
MIE4.3	TSCH Slotframe and Link IE	7.4.4.3	MLF15: M		MLF15: M	
MIE4.4	TSCH Timeslot IE	7.4.4.4	MLF15: M		MLF15: M	
MIE4.5	Hopping timing IE	7.4.4.5	MLF20: M		MLF20: M	
MIE4.6	Enhanced Beacon Filter IE	7.4.4.6	FD8: O		FD8: M	
MIE4.7	MAC Metrics IE	7.4.4.7	O		O	
MIE4.8	All MAC Metrics IE	7.4.4.8	O		O	
MIE4.9	Coexistence Specification IE	7.4.4.9	MLF26: M		MLF26: M	
MIE4.10	SUN Device Capabilities IE	7.4.4.10	RF10: M		RF10: M	
MIE4.11	SUN FSK Generic PHY IE	7.4.4.11	RF10: O		RF10: O	
MIE4.12	Mode Switch Parameter IE	7.4.4.12	RF10: O		RF10: O	
MIE4.13	PHY Parameter Change IE	7.4.4.13	RF7: M		RF7: M	
MIE4.14	O-QPSK PHY Mode IE	7.4.4.14	RF7: M		RF7: M	
MIE4.15	PCA Allocation IE	7.4.4.15	MLF22: M		MLF22: M	

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table D.8—MAC IEs *(continued)*

Item number	Item description	Reference	Transmitter		Receiver	
			Status	Support N/A Yes No	Status	Support N/A Yes No
MIE4.16	LECIM DSSS Operating Mode IE	7.4.4.16	RF15.1: M		RF15.1: M	
MIE4.17	LECIM FSK Operating Mode IE	7.4.4.17	RF15.2: M		RF15.1: M	
MIE4.18	TVWS PHY Operating Mode Description IE	7.4.4.18	RF18: M		RF18: M	
MIE4.19	TVWS Device Capabilities IE	7.4.4.19	RF18: M		RF18: M	
MIE4.20	TVWS Device Category IE	7.4.4.20	RF18: M		RF18: M	
MIE4.21	TVWS Device Identification IE	7.4.4.21	RF18: M		RF18: M	
MIE4.22	TVWS Device Location IE	7.4.4.22	RF18: M		RF18: M	
MIE4.23	TVWS Channel Information Query IE	7.4.4.23	RF18: M		RF18: M	
MIE4.24	TVWS Channel Information Source IE	7.4.4.24	RF18: M		RF18: M	
MIE4.25	CTM IE	7.4.4.25	RF18: M		RF18: M	
MIE4.26	Timestamp IE	7.4.4.26	RF18: M		RF18: M	
MIE4.27	Timestamp Difference IE	7.4.4.27	RF18: M		RF18: M	
MIE4.28	TMCTP Specification IE	7.4.4.28	RF18: M		RF18: M	
MIE4.29	RCC PHY Operating Mode IE	7.4.4.29	RF22: M		RF22: M	
MIE4.30	Vendor Specific Nested IE	7.4.4.30	O		O	
MIE4.31	Channel hopping IE	7.4.4.31	MLF20: M		MLF20: M	

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Annex E

(informative)

MPSK PHY

E.1 Status of MPSK PHY

The mechanisms described in this annex are obsolete. Consequently, this clause may be removed in a later revision of the standard.

E.2 General

The following is an informative translation of the MPSK PHY, which is one of the co-alternative PHYs in the NITS/CWPAN Part 15.4 [B11] specification. Another co-alternative PHY in the NITS/CWPAN Part 15.4 specification is the O-QPSK PHY specified in Clause 12. The NITS/CWPAN Part 15.4 specification also defines operation in the 314–316 MHz and the 430–434 MHz bands, but operation in those bands is not described in this Annex.

E.3 780 MHz band data rates

The data rate of the MPSK PHY is 250 kb/s when operating in the 780 MHz band.

E.4 Modulation and spreading

The MPSK PHY employs a 16-ary orthogonal modulation technique. During each data symbol period, four information bits are used to select 1 of 16 orthogonal PN sequences to be transmitted. The PN sequences for successive data symbols are concatenated, and the aggregate chip phase is modulated onto the carrier using PSK.

E.4.1 Reference modulator diagram

The functional block diagram in Figure E.1 is provided as a reference for specifying the 780 MHz band MPSK PHY modulation and spreading functions. The number in each block refers to the subclause that describes that function. Each bit in the PPDU is processed through the bit-to-symbol mapping, symbol-to-chip mapping, pre-processing, and modulation functions in octet-wise order, beginning with the Preamble field and ending with the last octet of the PSDU. Within each octet, the LSB, b0, is processed first and the MSB, b7, is processed last.

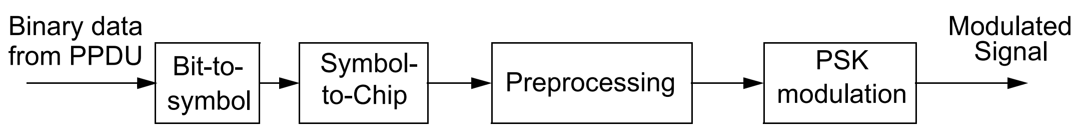


Figure E.1—Modulation and spreading functions

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

E.4.2 Bit-to-symbol mapping

All binary data contained in the PPDU is encoded using the modulation and spreading functions shown in Figure E.1. This subclause describes how binary information is mapped into data symbols.

The 4 LSBs (b0, b1, b2, b3) of each octet is mapped into one data symbol, and the 4 MSBs (b4, b5, b6, b7) of each octet is mapped into the next data symbol. Each octet of the PPDU is processed through the modulation and spreading functions, as illustrated in Figure E.1, sequentially, beginning with the Preamble field and ending with the last octet of the PSDU. Within each octet, the least significant symbol (b0, b1, b2, b3) is processed first, and the most significant symbol (b4, b5, b6, b7) is processed second.

E.4.3 Symbol-to-chip mapping

Each data symbol is mapped into a 16-chip PN sequence as specified in Table E.1.

Table E.1—Symbol-to-chip mapping for MPSK

Data symbol	Chip phases (c0 c1 … c14 c15)
0	$0\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \pi\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ 0\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \pi\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}$
1	$\frac{\pi}{16}\ 0\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \pi\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ 0\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \pi\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}$
2	$\frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ 0\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \pi\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ 0\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \pi\ \frac{9\pi}{16}$
3	$\frac{9\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ 0\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \pi\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ 0\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \pi$
4	$\pi\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ 0\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \pi\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ 0\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}$
5	$-\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \pi\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ 0\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \pi\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ 0\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}$
6	$\frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \pi\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ 0\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \pi\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ 0\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}$
7	$-\frac{15\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \pi\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ 0\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \pi\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ 0$
8	$0\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \pi\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ 0\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \pi\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}$
9	$-\frac{15\pi}{16}\ 0\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \pi\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ 0\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \pi\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table E.1—Symbol-to-chip mapping for MPSK *(continued)*

Data symbol	Chip phases (c0 c1 … c14 c15)
10	$\frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ 0\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \pi\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ 0\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \pi\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}$
11	$-\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ 0\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \pi\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ 0\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \pi$
12	$\pi\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ 0\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \pi\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ 0\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ \frac{9\pi}{16}$
13	$\frac{9\pi}{16}\ \pi\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ 0\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \pi\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ 0\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}$
14	$\frac{\pi}{16}\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \pi\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ 0\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \pi\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ 0\ \frac{\pi}{4}$
15	$\frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \pi\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ 0\ -\frac{15\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ -\frac{7\pi}{16}\ \pi\ \frac{9\pi}{16}\ \frac{\pi}{4}\ \frac{\pi}{16}\ 0$

E.4.4 Pre-processing

The chip sequence that the chip phase is mapped to consists of some DC value. To mitigate the DC effect, this pre-processing block subtracts each chip by the following value:

$$A_{\mathrm{DC}} = \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)\exp\left(j\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$$

E.4.5 PSK modulation

The chip phases representing each data symbol are modulated onto the carrier using PSK with raised cosine pulse shaping. Because each data symbol is represented by a 16-chip sequence, the chip rate is 16 times the symbol rate.

E.4.6 Pulse shape

The raised cosine pulse shape with roll-off factor of $r = 0.5$ is used to represent each baseband chip and is as follows:

$$p(t) = \begin{cases} \dfrac{\sin(\pi t/T_c)}{\pi t/T_c} \times \dfrac{\cos(r\pi t/T_c)}{1 - 4r^2 t^2/T_c^2}, & t \neq 0 \\ 1, & t = 0 \end{cases}$$

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Given the discrete-time sequence of consecutive complex-valued chip samples,

$$\{\exp(jc_k)\}_{k=-\infty}^{\infty}$$

the continuous-time pulse shaped complex baseband signal is as follows:

$$y(t) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \exp(jc_k)p(t-kT_c)$$

where T_c is the inverse of the chip rate.

E.4.7 Chip transmission order

During each symbol period, the least significant chip phase, c_0, is transmitted first, and the most significant chip phase, c_{15}, is transmitted last.

E.5 MPSK PHY RF requirements

This subclause describes the MPSK PHY radio performance requirements.

E.5.1 Transmit power

The transmit power (EIRP) is limited to 10 mW.

E.5.2 Operating frequency range

The 780 MHz MPSK PHY operates in the 779–787 MHz frequency band.

E.5.3 Transmit PSD mask

When operating in the 780 MHz band, the transmitted spectral products are less than the limits specified in Table E.2. For both relative and absolute limits, average spectral power is measured using a 100 kHz resolution bandwidth. For the relative limit, the reference level is the highest average spectral power measured within ± 600 kHz of the carrier frequency f_c.

Table E.2—780 MHz band MPSK PHY transmit PSD limits

Frequency	Relative limit	Absolute limit
$\lvert f-f_c \rvert > 1.2$ MHz	–20 dB	–20 dBm

E.5.4 Symbol rate

The MPSK PHY symbol rate is 62.5 ksymbol/s when operating in the 780 MHz band with an accuracy of $\pm 40 \times 10^{-6}$.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

E.5.5 Receiver sensitivity

A compliant device is capable of achieving a sensitivity of –85 dBm or better under the conditions defined in 10.1.7.

E.5.6 Receiver interference rejection

The minimum receiver interference rejection levels are given in Table E.3. The adjacent channel is one on either side of the desired channel that is closest in frequency to the desired channel, and the alternate channel is one more removed from the adjacent channel. For example, when channel 2 is the desired channel, channel 1 and channel 3 are the adjacent channels, and channel 0 is an alternate channel.

Table E.3—Minimum receiver interference rejection requirements for 780 MHz MPSK PHY

Adjacent channel rejection	Alternate channel rejection
0 dB	30 dB

The adjacent channel rejection is measured as follows: the desired signal is a compliant MPSK PHY signal, as defined by E.4, of pseudo-random data. The desired signal is input to the receiver at a level 3 dB greater than the maximum allowed receiver sensitivity given in E.5.5.

In either the adjacent or the alternate channel, a compliant signal, as defined by E.4, is input at the relative level specified in Table E.3. The test is performed for only one interfering signal at a time. The receiver will meet the error rate criteria defined in E.5.5 under these conditions.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Annex F

(normative)

Time-slot relaying based link extension (TRLE)

F.1 General

In a star topology, the range of the network is limited by the transmission and reception range of the devices forming a link. There are occasions when a further range extension of the network may be required. An example would be when supporting a very sparse dispersion of devices beyond the radio range of a PAN coordinator to an end device. Another example may arise when maintaining connection with an end device where the RF environment degrades as a result of geographic change after the initial deployment.

A PAN relay is a coordinator that relays MAC frames either in the direction of the PAN coordinator or in the direction of a device. This annex provides specific MAC capabilities for extending the range of a link in a star network composed of the beacon-enabled devices or the DSME-enabled devices. The TRLE PAN relays residing between the PAN coordinator and devices support transparent link connectivity without additional networking overheads to an end device.

Some of the capabilities provided by this annex are as follows:

— Frame filtering in relaying mode
— Frame relaying on a link between the beacon-enabled PAN coordinator and devices
— Management of multi-hop relaying path between the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator and devices
— Frame relaying on a TRLE multi-hop path

F.2 Link extension for a beacon-enabled PAN

The TRLE PAN relay extends the link of a beacon-enabled PAN by relaying frames at the MAC sublayer in direction to a device (i.e., outward relaying) or in direction to the PAN coordinator (i.e., inward relaying).

The TRLE PAN relay provides a one-hop relaying link extension for beacon-enabled PANs. The TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator and the TRLE PAN relays provide multi-hop relaying link extension for the DSME-enabled PAN.

The TRLE PAN relay may be used in several beacon-enabled PAN configurations, as shown in Figure F.1: (a) beacon-enabled PAN coordinator - TRLE PAN relay - non-TRLE device, (b) TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator - multiple TRLE PAN relays - DSME-enabled device or TRLE-enabled device.

F.3 Link extension for the non-TRLE PAN

F.3.1 TRLE PAN relay association and disassociation

An FFD shall perform as a TRLE PAN relay if the PIB attributes *macTrleEnabled* and *macRelayingMode* are set to TRUE. A TRLE PAN relay shall associate as a coordinator with the beacon-enabled PAN, as described in 6.4.1.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

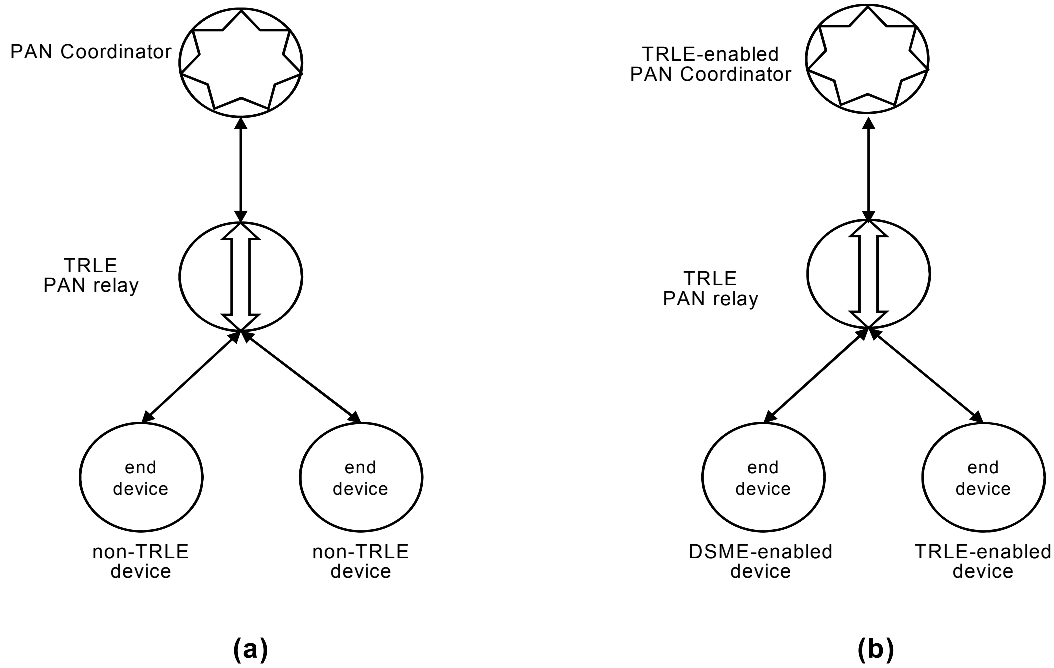


Figure F.1—Usage of the TRLE PAN relay

After completing association, the next higher layer may initiate relaying frames at the MAC sublayer by issuing the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to RELAY_ON, as described in F.5.3.1, that the MLME shall configure *macSyncRelayingOffset* to be set equal to the SyncRelayingOffset parameter of the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive.

The MAC sublayer of the TRLE PAN relay shall begin relaying frames, as described in F.3.3. The next higher layer shall be notified of the result of initiating the TRLE PAN relay through the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm primitive with ManagementType parameter set to RELAY_ON and status parameter, as described in F.5.3.4.

If the TRLE PAN relay wants to leave the PAN, the next higher layer may halt the relaying by issuing the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to RELAY_OFF, as described in F.5.3.1. The next higher layer shall be notified of the result of halting the TRLE PAN relay through the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm primitive with ManagementType parameter set to RELAY_OFF and status parameter, as described in F.5.3.4.

After halting the relaying, the TRLE PAN relay shall disassociate with the beacon-enabled PAN, as described in 6.4.2.

F.3.2 Frame filtering in relaying mode

In relaying mode (i.e., *macRelayingMode* set to TRUE), the MAC sublayer shall maintain the first level of filtering and the second level of filtering described in 6.7.2 and accept only frames that satisfy all of the third level filtering requirements except matching of a destination address.

If the frame is valid, the MAC sublayer either passes the frame to the next higher layer or relays the frame onward according to the destination address. The frame having its destination addresses as the broadcast address shall be passed to the next higher layer and be also relayed onward.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

F.3.3 One-hop relaying

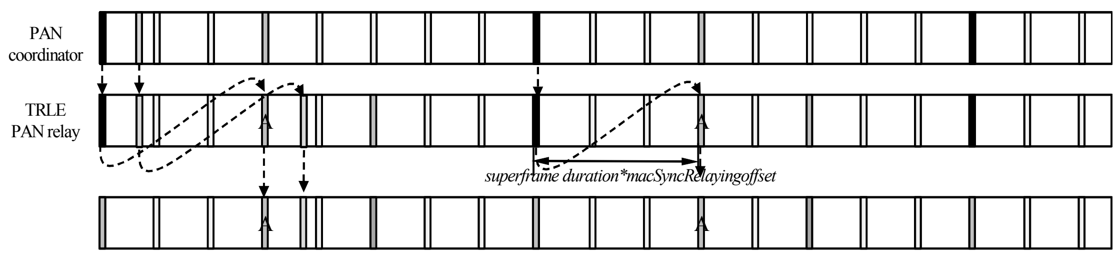
The TRLE PAN relay for a beacon-enabled PAN or the DSME-enabled PAN provides one-hop relaying to extend the range of the link.

If a short destination address included in the frame matches *macShortAddress*, or if an extended destination address included in the frame matches *macExtendedAddress*, the frame shall be handled as described in 6.7.2.

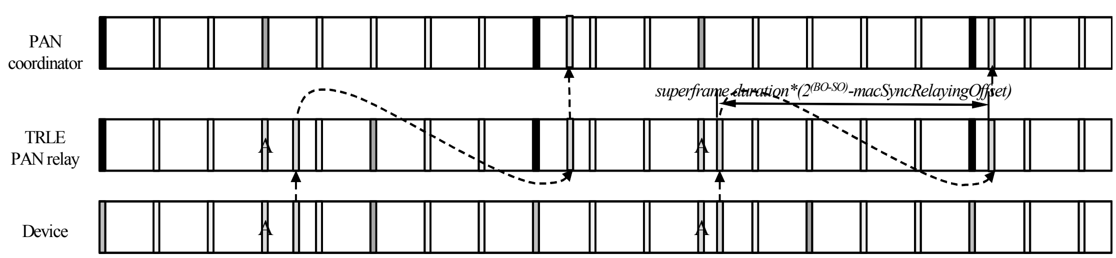
A frame with a destination address equal to the broadcast address shall be handled as described in 6.7.2 and shall also be relayed by the MAC sublayer.

If a short destination address included in the frame does not match *macShortAddress*, or if an extended destination address included in the frame does not match *macExtendedAddress*, the frame shall be relayed by the MAC sublayer.

Frames received from the PAN coordinator shall be relayed after delaying $superframe\ duration \times macSynchRelayingOffset$, and frames received from the device shall be relayed after delaying $superframe\ duration \times [2^{(BO - SO)} - macSynchRelayingOffset]$, as shown in Figure F.2. The delay for relaying is determined by the TRLE PAN relay, when associating with the beacon-enabled PAN. The algorithm for choosing *macSynchRelayingOffset* is outside the scope of this standard.



(a) outward one-hop relaying



(b) inward one-hop relaying

Figure F.2—Relaying frames for the beacon-enabled PAN coordinator and a device

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

F.4 Link extension for the TRLE-enabled PAN

F.4.1 TRLE-enabled PAN

The PAN coordinator of a DSME-enabled PAN shall perform as a TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator, if the PIB attribute *macTrleEnabled* is set to TRUE. The TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator may provide a multi-hop relaying path with the TRLE PAN relays.

Beacon frames from the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator received by the PAN relays within the transmission range of the PAN coordinator from tier 1 of the TRLE-enabled PAN. The PAN relays that are within a transmission range of the tier 1 PAN relays, but not within PAN coordinator range, form tier 2 of the TRLE-enabled PAN, and so on, as illustrated in Figure F.3. For any given PAN relay, a neighboring PAN relay closer to the PAN coordinator is called an inner PAN relay and a PAN relay closer to the end device is called an outer PAN relay. The relaying of a TRLE-enabled PAN is limited to seven tiers.

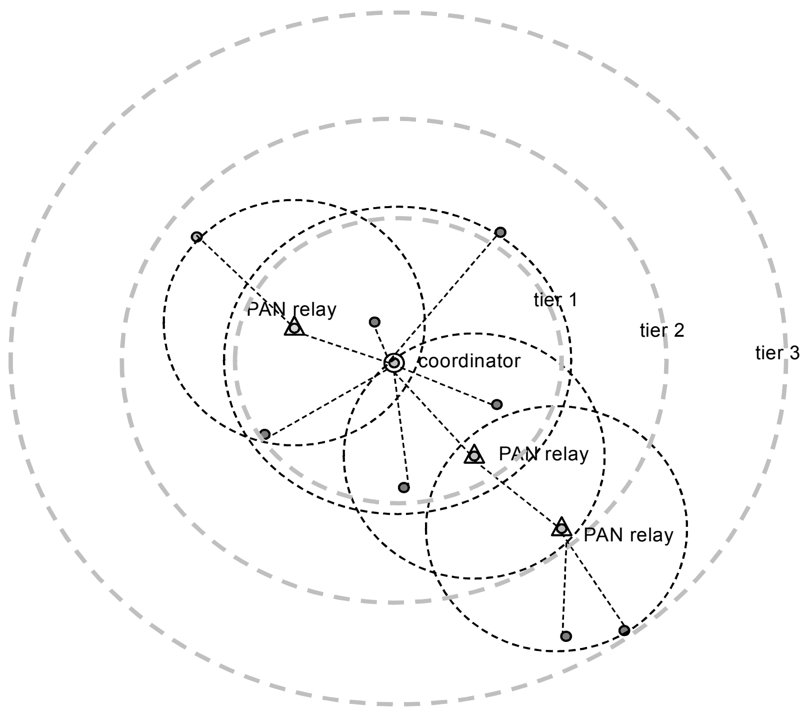


Figure F.3—Hierarchy of relaying in the TRLE-enabled PAN

The TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator and the PAN relay use a cyclic-superframe structure. The cyclic-superframe structure is based on the DSME multi-superframe structure, as illustrated in Figure F.4.

The CAP is divided into time slots for transmitting a frame to the PAN coordinator (i.e., the prioritized device time slot) and time slots for transmitting a frame to end devices (i.e., the coordinator time slot). The prioritized device time slot starts after the beacon and continues for a preset number of time slots, *macNumPrioritizedDeviceSlot*. The coordinator time slot starts after the prioritized device time slot and continues for a preset number of time slots, *macNumCoordSlot*.

The time slot in CFP is bidirectional (i.e., the bidirectional device time slot). The bidirectional device time slots for a TRLE PAN relay or TRLE-enabled device may be pre-assigned or allocated before use.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

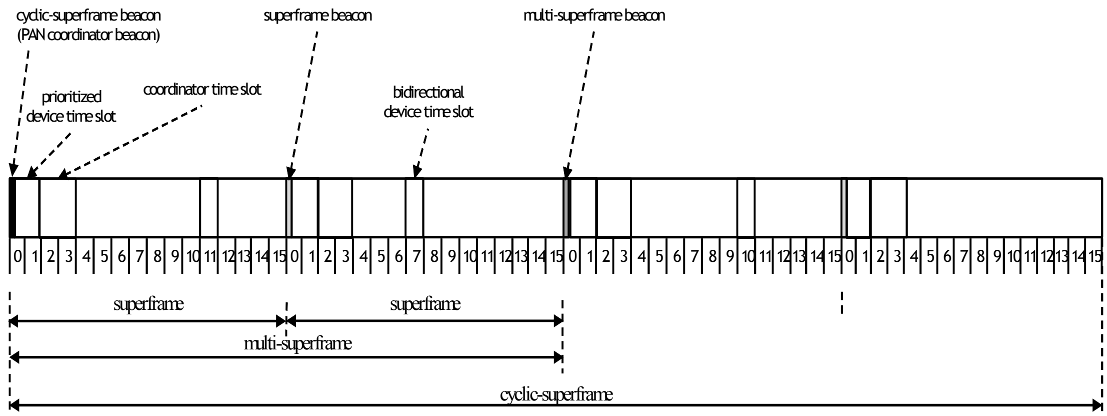


Figure F.4—Time slots in a TRLE cyclic-superframe

F.4.2 Starting a TRLE-enabled PAN

A PAN coordinator with PIB attributes *macDsmeEnabled* and *macTrleEnabled* set to TRUE shall start a DSME-enabled PAN by following the procedure described in 6.3.3.1.

The PAN coordinator shall be instructed to begin operating as the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator through the use of the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive, as described in F.5.3.1, with the ManagementType parameter set to START.

On receipt of this primitive, the MLME configures the following MAC PIB attributes:

- *macNumPrioritizedDevice* shall be set equal to the NumPrioritizedDevice parameter of the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive.
- *macNumCoordSlot* shall be set equal to the NumCoordSlot parameter of the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive.

After completing this, the MAC sublayer shall issue the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to START and a status of SUCCESS, as described in F.5.3.4, and begin operating as the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator.

The TRLE-enabled PAN is formed when the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator advertises the presence of the TRLE-enabled PAN by sending an enhanced beacon, which contains the DSME PAN descriptor IE and the TRLE Descriptor IE, as defined in F.5.1.1.

F.4.3 TRLE relaying path formation

An FFD having PIB attributes *macDsmeEnabled*, *macTrleEnabled*, and *macRelayingMode* set to TRUE shall perform as a TRLE PAN relay. An RFD having PIB attributes *macDsmeEnabled* and *macTrleEnabled* set to TRUE shall perform as a TRLE-enabled device.

The next higher layer of a TRLE PAN relay or TRLE-enabled device shall perform a MAC sublayer reset, by issuing the MLME-RESET.request primitive with the SetDefaultPIB parameter set to TRUE, and then complete either an active or a passive channel scan, as defined in 6.3.1.2. The results of the channel scan should be used to choose a suitable PAN and to select an inner coordinator, either the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator or an inner TRLE PAN relay, through which it will attempt to associate.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Following the selection of a TRLE-enabled PAN, a TRLE PAN relay or a TRLE-enabled device shall be instructed to associate with a DSME-enabled PAN, as described in 6.4.1.

After completing association, the next higher layer may instruct through the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to JOIN and the TxGrade parameter set to GRADE_0 for the TRLE PAN relay or set to GRADE_2 for the TRLE-enabled device, as described in F.5.3.1, that the MLME configures the following MAC PIB attributes:

— *macRelayingTier* shall be set equal to the SrcRelayingTier parameter of the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive.
— *macInnerRelayingOffset* shall be set equal to the InnerRelayingOffset parameter of the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive.
— *macNumBidirectionalDeviceSlot* shall be set equal to the NumBidirectionalDeviceSlot parameter of the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive.

The MAC sublayer shall initiate the joining procedure by sending a TRLE Management Request command with the Management Type field set to Join, as described in F.5.2.1. The TRLE Descriptor IE shall be included in the Header IE field of the TRLE Management Request command. The TxGrade parameter of the request primitive is set to the Grade of Link Access field of the TRLE Descriptor IE. The time slot in which the TRLE Management Request command will be transmitted shall be selected by the InnerRelayingOffset parameter.

When relaying a TRLE Management Request command with the Management Type field set to Join, the PAN relay collects a source address of the MHR field and the PAN Relay Address field of the TRLE Descriptor IE of the frame relayed, and updates the *macPanRelayList*.

The TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator indicates the reception of a TRLE Management Request command through the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.indication primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to JOIN, as described in F.5.3.2. The Grade of Link Access field of the TRLE Descriptor IE is set to the TxGrade parameter of the indication primitive.

The next higher layer of the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator shall assign time slots in a cyclic-superframe for the bidirectional device slot and determine the relaying delay at the TRLE PAN relay requesting the TRLE path formation with information provided by the BeaconBitmap parameter and RelayingPathList parameter of indication primitive. The algorithm for choosing the relaying delay is outside the scope of this standard. If a time slot is not available, the next higher layer may issue the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response primitive with ManagementType parameter set to JOIN and a status of SLOT_FULL. If it fails to determine the relaying delay, the next higher layer may issue the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response primitive with ManagementType parameter set to JOIN and a status of RELAY_FULL. Otherwise, the next higher layer of the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator may initiate a response using an MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to JOIN and a status of SUCCESS, as described in F.5.3.3.

When the MLME of the TRLE PAN coordinator receives the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response primitive, it generates a TRLE Management Response command with the Management Type field set to Join, as described in F.5.2.2, and attempts to send a command to the device requesting TRLE path formation. The time slot in which the TRLE Management Response command will be transmitted shall be selected according the TxGrade parameter of the response primitive, as described in F.4.6. The identifier of the time slot is set to the Slot ID field and the Superframe ID field of the TRLE Descriptor IE. The TxGrade parameter of the response primitive is set to the Grade of Link Access field of the TRLE Descriptor IE. The Timestamp field of the TRLE Management Response command is set to the time of the time slot specified by the Slot ID field and the Superframe ID field of the TRLE Descriptor IE. The TRLE Descriptor IE shall be included in the Header IE field of the TRLE Management Response command.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

On reception of the TRLE Management Response command, the TRLE PAN relay or TRLE-enabled device informs the next higher layer of the association response by using an MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to JOIN, as described in F.5.3.4.

After joining a TRLE path, the next higher layer of the TRLE PAN relay may instruct through the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to RELAY_ON, as described in F.5.3.1, that the MLME configures the following MAC PIB attributes:

— *macNumPrioritizedDevice* shall be set equal to the NumPrioritizedDevice parameter of the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive.
— *macNumCoordSlot* shall be set equal to the NumCoordSlot parameter of the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive.
— *macSyncRelayingOffset* shall be set equal to the SyncRelayingOffset parameter of the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive.

The MAC sublayer of the TRLE PAN relay shall begin relaying frames, as described in F.4.4. The next higher layer shall be notified of the result of initiating the PAN relay through the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to RELAY_ON, as described in F.5.3.4.

In order for the TRLE PAN relay or TRLE-enabled device to leave the TRLE-enabled PAN, the next higher layer should halt the relaying by issuing the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to RELAY_OFF. The next higher layer shall be notified of the result of halting the relaying through the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to RELAY_OFF, as described in F.5.3.4.

After halting the relaying, the next higher layer may request through the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to LEAVE and TxGrade parameter set to GRADE_0 for the TRLE PAN relay or set to GRADE_2 for the TRLE-enabled device, as described in F.5.3.1.

The MAC sublayer of the TRLE PAN relay shall initiate the leaving procedure by sending a TRLE Management Request command with the Management Type field set to Leave, as described in F.5.2.1, through the inner coordinator to the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator.

The TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator indicates the reception of a TRLE Management Request command through the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.indication primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to LEAVE, as described in F.5.3.2. The next higher layer of the TRLE PAN coordinator may confirm that the device requesting disassociation is on a relaying path and determine whether it is possible to leave the relaying path.

If it is admitted, the next higher layer of the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator may initiate a response using an MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to LEAVE and a status of SUCCESS, as described in F.5.3.3. Otherwise, the status parameter of the response primitive is set to NOT_FOUND or NOT_CONFIRMED.

When the MLME of the TRLE PAN coordinator receives the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response primitive, it generates a TRLE Management Response command with the Management Type field set to Leave, as described in F.5.2.2, and attempts to send the command to the requesting device.

On the reception of the TRLE Management Response command, the TRLE PAN relay or TRLE-enabled device informs the next higher layer using an MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm primitive with

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

ManagementType parameter set to LEAVE, as described in F.5.3.4. The status parameter in the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm primitive is set to the Management Status field of the Management Response command.

After leaving a TRLE path, the next higher layer may disassociate from the DSME-enabled PAN, as described in 6.4.2.

F.4.4 Multi-hop relaying

The TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator and TRLE PAN relays may provide multi-hop relaying to extend the range of the link.

On receipt of a frame, the MAC sublayer of a TRLE PAN relay shall perform frame filtering, as described in F.3.2.

If a short destination address included in the filtered frame matches *macShortAddress*, or if an extended destination address included in the filtered frame matches *macExtendedAddress*, the frame shall be handled as described in 6.7.2.

A frame having a destination address as the broadcast address shall be handled as described in 6.7.2 and shall also be relayed by the MAC sublayer.

If a short destination address included in the filtered frame does not match *macShortAddress*, or if an extended destination address included in the filtered frame does not match *macExtendedAddress*, the frame shall be relayed at the MAC sublayer.

If the Relaying Direction field of the TRLE Descriptor IE is set to one and the Relaying Tier Identifier field is equal to $macRelayingTier - 1$, the frame shall be relayed outward. If the Relaying Direction field of the TRLE Descriptor IE is set to zero and the Relaying Tier Identifier field is equal to $macRelayingTier + 1$, the frame shall be relayed inward. Otherwise, the TRLE PAN relay shall discard the frame.

If the PAN Relay Address field of the TRLE Descriptor IE included in the relayed outward frame, with the exception of a beacon frame, does not match *macShortAddress*, the TRLE PAN relay shall discard the frame. If the PAN Relay Address field of the TRLE Descriptor IE included in the relayed inward frame, with the exception of a TRLE Management Request command with the Management Type field set to Join, does not match one of the outer adjacent PAN relays in the *macPanRelayList*, the TRLE PAN relay shall discard the frame.

If the frame is the TRLE Management Request command with the Management Type field set to Join or the TRLE Management Response command with the Management Type field set to Path, the PAN relay List Count field of the Relaying Path List field is increased by one and the TRLE Descriptor IE is copied to the end of the PAN relay List field of the Relaying Path List field of the command.

Before relaying the frame, the TRLE Descriptor IE shall be updated. The Relaying Tier Identifier field is changed to the PIB attribute *macRelayingTier*. The TRLE PAN Relay Address field of a beacon frame or the frame relayed inward is changed to the PIB attribute *macShortAddress*. The TRLE PAN Relay Address field of the relayed outward frame, with the exception of a beacon, is changed to one of the outer adjacent PAN relays in the *macPanRelayList*, indexed by the destination address of the MHR field. The Slot ID field and Superframe ID field are set to the time slot assigned for relaying the frame, as described in F.4.6.

If the Grade of Link Access field of the TRLE Descriptor IE is set to 0b00 or 0b01, the Frame Type field indicates a Data frame or MAC command relayed inward and the AR field is set to request an acknowledgment, the MAC sublayer shall send an Enh-Ack frame having a destination address set to the

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

TRLE PAN Relay Address field of the TRLE Descriptor IE. Prior to the transmission of the Enh-Ack frame, the sequence number included in the received Data frame or MAC command shall be copied into the Sequence Number field of the Enh-Ack frame, and the TRLE Descriptor IE shall be included in the Header IE of the Enh-Ack frame.

The frame is relayed either outward or inward, as shown in Figure F.5. The beacon generated by the TRLE PAN coordinator shall be relayed outward after delaying $superframe\ duration \times \text{RelayingDelay}$. The RelayingDelay is calculated as $macSyncRelayingOffset - macInnerRelayingOffset$, if *macSyncRelayingOffset* is larger than *macInnerRelayingOffset*. Otherwise, the RelayingDelay is calculated as $2^{(BO-SO)} - (macInnerRelayingOffset - macSyncRelayingOffset)$.

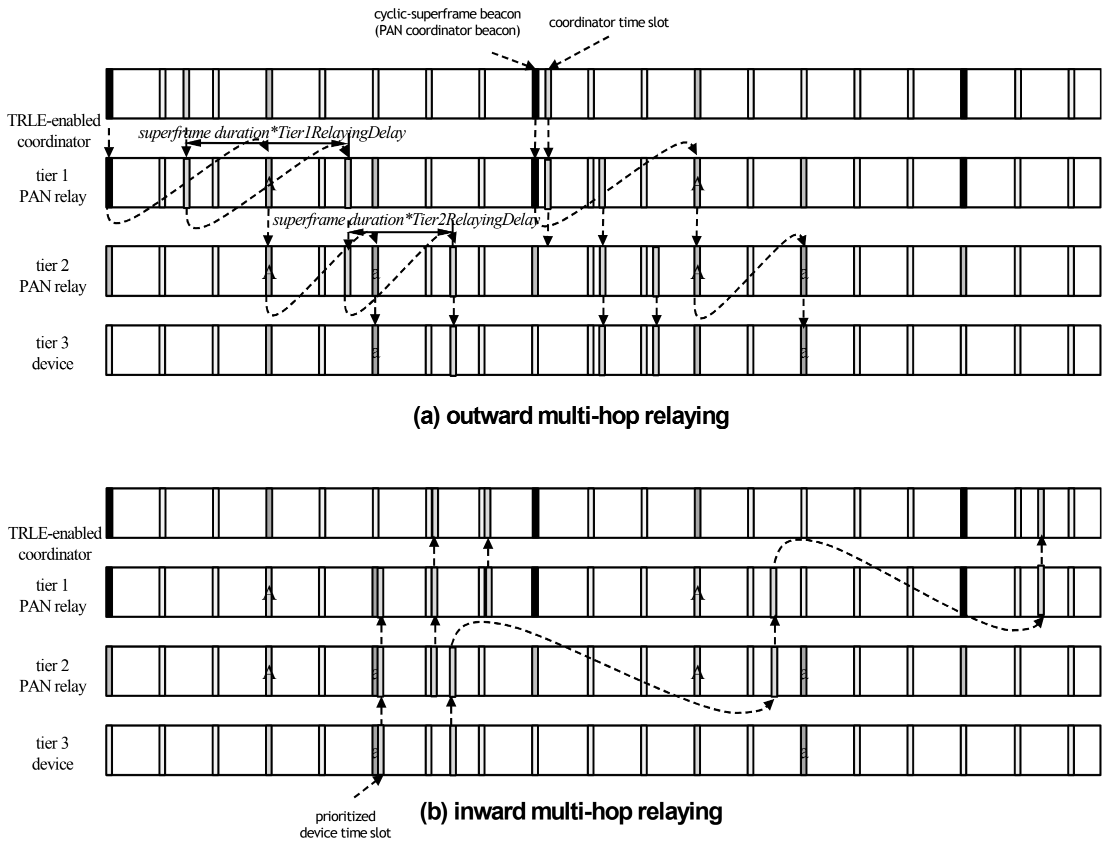


Figure F.5—Synchronous multi-hop frame relaying

The frame received in a prioritized device time slot shall be relayed inward within the prioritized device time slot. If transmission cannot be completed by the end of the prioritized device time slot, the frame shall be relayed in the prioritized device time slot of the next superframe.

The frame received in a coordinator time slot shall be relayed outward within the coordinator time slot. If transmission cannot be completed by the end of the coordinator time slot, the frame shall be relayed in the coordinator time slot of the next superframe.

The frame received in a bidirectional device time slot from the inner PAN relay shall be relayed outward after delaying $superframe\ duration \times \text{RelayingDelay}$. The frame received from the outer PAN relay shall be relayed after delaying $superframe\ duration \times [2^{(BO-SO)} - \text{RelayingDelay}]$.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

F.4.5 TRLE path maintenance

After starting a TRLE-enabled PAN, the PAN coordinator may need to check the status of a device, collect information on the configuration of PAN relays on the TRLE relaying paths, and maintain time-synchronization.

To search for activated devices in a TRLE-enabled PAN, the next higher layer may issue the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to HELLO and the DstAddr parameter, as described in F.5.3.1. The TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator only shall be allowed to set the DstAddr parameter of the request primitive to the broadcast address.

The MAC sublayer shall send the TRLE Management Request command with the Management Type field set to Hello.

The MLME shall notify the reception of a TRLE Management Request command through the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.indication primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to HELLO. If the destination address of the TRLE Management Request command is set to the broadcast address, the MAC sublayer shall relay the TRLE Management Request command to the outer PAN relays in the *macPanRelayList*.

The next higher layer may set the device configuration, as defined in F.5.2.2, through the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response primitive, defined in F.5.3.3, with the ManagementType parameter set to HELLO.

When the MLME receives the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to HELLO, it generates a TRLE Management Response command with the Management Type field set to Hello, as described in F.5.2.2, and attempts to send the response command to the requesting device.

The next higher layer shall be notified of a reception of a TRLE Management Response command with the Management Type field set to Hello, through the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm primitive with ManagementType parameter set to HELLO.

To get information on the relaying path configuration to a device, the next higher layer may issue the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to PATH.

The MAC sublayer shall send the TRLE Management Request command with the Management Type field set to Path, as described in F.5.2.1. The request command shall be relayed to the destination device.

The MLME shall notify the next higher layer of the reception of a TRLE Management Request command with the Management Type field set to Path by issuing the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.indication primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to PATH.

The next higher layer may report the device configuration, as defined in F.5.2.2, through the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to PATH.

When the MLME receives the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to PATH, it generates a TRLE Management Response command with the Management Type field set to Path, as described in F.5.2.2, and attempts to send command to the device requesting the path configuration. The relaying path configuration is added to the Relay Path List field of the TRLE Management Response command at the MAC sublayer of the PAN relays on the relaying path to the requesting device, as described in F.4.4.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The next higher layer shall be notified a reception of a TRLE Management Response command with the Management Type field set to Path, through the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to PATH, as described in F.5.3.4.

The PAN relays and end devices in a TRLE-enabled PAN shall be synchronized with the time of the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator after joining the TRLE-enabled PAN.

The TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator shall advertise the time, obtained from the local clock of the TRLE-enabled PAN, outward to the PAN relays and end devices via the Beacon Timestamp field of the DSME PAN descriptor IE in a beacon frame. The time, obtained from the local clock of a TRLE PAN relay, may be distributed via the Timestamp field in the TRLE Management Request command and the TRLE Management Response command. The Timestamp field shall specify the start time of a time slot where the frame is to be transmitted.

The PAN relays and end devices compensate for the clock drift based on the statistical variance of the difference in the real start time of a given slot and the expected start time.

The PAN relay maintains the status of the neighbored PAN relays by watching the beacon frame of the inner PAN relay and of the outer PAN relay.

If the PAN relay misses the beacon frame of the inner PAN relay for $macBeaconMis\sin gLimit \times BI$, the PAN relay selects one of the adjacent inner PAN relays in the *macPanRelayList*, starts to join to the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator, and replicates the beacon frame of the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator until finishing the joining process. If the PAN relay fails to find the adjacent inner PAN relay, the PAN relay starts to search any neighbored inner PAN relay, as described in F.4.3.

If the PAN relay misses the beacon frame of the adjacent outer PAN relay for $macBeaconMis\sin gLimit \times BI$, the PAN relay checks the status of the adjacent outer PAN relay by sending the TRLE Management Request command with the Management Type field set to Hello. If there is no response, the PAN relay makes the adjacent outer PAN relay leave the TRLE-enabled PAN by sending the TRLE Management Request command with the Management Type field set to Leave and the source address set to address of the adjacent outer PAN relay.

F.4.6 Multiple grades of link access

In a TRLE-enabled PAN, in order to accommodate various qualities of service requirements for relaying frames between the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator and a TRLE PAN relay, three grades of link access are provided: grade 0 for delay sensitive data transmission, grade 1 for reliable data transmission, and grade 2 for best effort data transmission.

For grade 0 link access, to send a frame inward, a device shall wait until the earliest prioritized device time slot. If the device fails to transmit the data in the prioritized device time slot, the device will continue trying to transmit the data in the next prioritized device time slot. To send a frame outward, a device shall use the earliest coordinator time slot.

For grade 1 link access, a device shall wait until the earliest bidirectional time slot assigned to the device and transmit the data. If the device fails to transmit the data, the device will keep searching for the next available bidirectional time slot for the duration of the cyclic-superframe or will search the next cyclic-superframe for an opportunity to transmit the data.

For grade 2 link access, a device shall wait until the earliest bidirectional time slot assigned to the device and transmit the data without requiring an acknowledgment.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

A frame with grade 0 or grade 1 link access shall be acknowledged hop-by-hop and end-to-end. At a TRLE PAN relay, if the Grade of Link Access field of the TRLE Descriptor IE is set to 0b00 or 0b01, the Frame Type field indicates a Data frame or MAC command relayed inward, and the AR field is set to request an acknowledgment, the MAC sublayer shall send an Enh-Ack frame within the same time slot in which the frame is received. If it fails to complete transmission of the Enh-Ack frame before the end of the time slot, the Enh-Ack frame shall be sent in the coordinator time slot of the following superframe.

F.5 MAC services for the TRLE-enabled PAN

F.5.1 TRLE IEs

F.5.1.1 TRLE Descriptor IE

The TRLE Descriptor IE shall be included in Enhanced Beacon frame, Data frame, Enh-Ack frame, and MAC commands that are sent in a TRLE-enabled PAN.

The TRLE Descriptor IE Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure F.6.

Bits: 3	1	2	4	14	16
Relaying Tier Identifier	Relaying Direction	Grade of Link Access	Slot ID	Superframe ID	PAN Relay Address

Figure F.6—TRLE Descriptor IE Content field format

The Relaying Tier Identifier field shall be set to the identifier of the relaying tier of the TRLE PAN relay by which this frame will be transmitted. A value of zero shall indicate tier 0 where the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator is located.

The Relaying Direction field shall be set to one if the frame is relayed outward. Otherwise it is set to zero.

The Grade of Link access field shall be set to the TxGrade parameter stated in the primitive, as defined in F.5.3.

The Slot ID field contains the ID of the time slot in which this frame will be transmitted.

The Superframe ID field contains the ID of the superframe in which this frame will be transmitted.

The PAN Relay Address field of an inward frame or a beacon frame shall be set to the PIB attribute *macShortAddress* of the TRLE PAN relay by which this frame will be transmitted. The PAN Relay Address field of an outward frame, with the exception of a beacon frame, shall be set to one of the neighboring PAN relays in the *macPanRelayList*, indexed by the destination address of the MHR field.

F.5.2 TRLE commands

F.5.2.1 TRLE Management Request command

The TRLE Management Request command allows a device with its PIB attribute *macTrleEnabled* set to TRUE to request to join a TRLE relaying path, leave the TRLE relaying path, report relaying path information, or assign a device slot.

Only devices that have been assigned a short address shall send this command.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Destination Addressing Mode and the Source Addressing Mode fields of the Frame Control field shall both be set to two (i.e., 16-bit short addressing).

The Frame Pending field of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception.

The Source PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, and the Source Address field shall contain the value of *macShortAddress*.

The Destination PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, and the Destination Address field shall be set to the short address of the destination device.

The TRLE Management Request command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure F.7.

Octets: 1	0/6	0/variable	0/1	0/variable
Management Type	Timestamp	Beacon Bitmap	Number of Slots	Relaying Path List

Figure F.7—TRLE Management Request command Content field format

The Management Type field shall be set as one of the values listed in Table F.1.

Table F.1—Values of the Management Type field

Management Type value	Description
0x00	Join
0x01	Leave
0x02	Hello
0x03	Path
0x04–0xff	Reserved

The Timestamp field shall contain the time, in microseconds, of the time slot in which the TRLE Management Request command will be transmitted. This field is valid only if the value of the Management Type field is 0x02 or 0x03.

The Beacon Bitmap field is described in 7.4.2.5. The Beacon Bitmap field shall be set to the BeaconBitmap parameter of the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive. This field is valid only if the value of the Management Type field is 0x00.

The Number of Slots field shall contain the number of bidirectional device time slots that this command is requesting. The Number of Slots field shall be set to the NumBidirectionalDeviceSlot parameter of the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive. This field is valid only if the value of the Management Type field is set to 0x00.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Relaying Path List field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure F.8.

Octets: 1	variable
PAN Relay List Count	PAN Relay List

Figure F.8—TRLE Relaying Path Descriptor field format

The PAN Relay List Count field shall contain the number of the PAN relays in the PAN Relay List field.

The PAN Relay List field shall contain the TRLE descriptors on a TRLE path, as defined in F.5.1.1.

F.5.2.2 TRLE Management Response command

The TRLE Management Response command allows the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator or the TRLE PAN relay to communicate the results of a request to join a TRLE relaying path, leave the TRLE relaying path, report relaying path information, or assign a device slot.

Only devices that have been assigned a short address shall send this command.

The Destination Addressing Mode and the Source Addressing Mode fields of the Frame Control field shall both be set to two (i.e., 16-bit short addressing).

The Frame Pending field of the Frame Control field shall be set to zero and ignored upon reception.

The Source PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, and the Source Address field shall contain the value of *macShortAddress*.

The Destination PAN ID field shall contain the value of *macPanId*, and the Destination Address field shall be set to the short address of the destination device.

The TRLE Management Response command Content field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure F.9.

Octets: 1	1	0/variable
Management Type	Management Status	TRLE Management Information

Figure F.9—TRLE Management Response command Content field format

The Management Type field is described in F.5.2.1.

The Management Status field shall be set to the status parameter of the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response primitive. This field is valid only if the Management Type field is set to 0x00.

The TRLE Management Information field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure F.10.

0/6	0/2	0/variable	0/variable	0/variable
Timestamp	Sync Relaying Offset	Bidirectional Device Slot List	Relay Descriptor	Relaying Path List

Figure F.10—TRLE Management Information field format

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Timestamp field shall contain the time, in microseconds, of the time slot in which the TRLE Management Response command will be transmitted. This field is valid only if the Management Type field is set to 0x00.

The Sync Relaying Offset field shall contain the relaying delay of the cyclic-superframe of a PAN relay compared to the cyclic-superframe of the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator, which is specified in the number of superframe duration. The Sync Relaying Offset field shall be set to the SyncRelayingOffset parameter of the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response primitive. This field is valid only if the ManagementType field is set to 0x00.

The Bidirectional Device Slot List field shall be set to the BidirectionalDeviceSlotList parameter of the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response primitive, as defined in F.5.3.3.

The Bidirectional Device Slot List field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure F.11.

Octets: 1	variable
Bidirectional Device Slot List Count	Bidirectional Device Slot

Figure F.11—Bidirectional Device Slot List field format

The Bidirectional Device Slot List Count field shall contain the number of the Bidirectional Device Slot Descriptor in the Bidirectional Device Slot List field.

The Bidirectional Device Slot field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure F.12.

Octets: 1	2
Slot ID	Superframe ID

Figure F.12—Bidirectional Device Slot Descriptor format

The Slot ID field contains the ID of the time slot of the superframe in which a bidirectional device time slot is assigned. The slot ID is the sequence number of the time slot in a superframe beginning from zero.

The Superframe ID field contains the ID of the superframe in which a bidirectional device time slot is assigned. The superframe ID is the sequence number of the superframe in a cyclic-superframe beginning from zero. This field is valid only if the Management Type field is set to 0x02 or 0x03.

The Relay Descriptor field shall be set to the RelayDescriptor parameter of the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response primitive, as described in F.5.3.3.

The Relay Descriptor field shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure F.13.

Octets: 2	1	2	2	2	3	variable
DeviceA ddress	Relaying Tier Identifier	Sync Relaying Offset	Inner PAN Relay Address	Inner Relaying Offset	Primary Device Slot Descriptor	Beacon Bitmap

Figure F.13—TRLE Relay Descriptor format

The Device Address field shall be set to the short address of the TRLE device that this command is requesting.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

The Relaying Tier Identifier field shall contain the identifier of relaying tier of the TRLE device that this command is requesting.

The Sync Relaying Offset field shall contain the relaying delay of the TRLE device that this command is requesting.

The Inner PAN Relay Address field shall be set to the short address of the inner PAN relay of the TRLE device that this command is requesting.

The Inner Relaying Offset field shall contain the relaying delay of the inner PAN relay of the TRLE device that this command is requesting.

The Primary Device Slot Descriptor field shall contain the primary bidirectional device slot of the TRLE device that this command is requesting and shall be formatted as illustrated in Figure F.11.

The Beacon Bitmap field is described in 5.2.4.9.3.

The Relaying Path List field is described in F.5.2.1. This field is valid only if the Management Type field is set to 0x03.

F.5.3 Primitives for managing the TRLE-enabled PAN

F.5.3.1 MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request

The MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive requests to either start a TRLE-enabled PAN, join a TRLE relaying path, leave the TRLE relaying path, or report relaying path information.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request (
                              ManagementType,
                              DstAddrMode,
                              DstAddr,
                              TxGrade,
                              NumPrioritizedDeviceSlot,
                              NumCoordSlot,
                              NumBidirectionalDeviceSlot,
                              SrcRelayingTier,
                              BeaconBitmap,
                              InnerRelayingOffset,
                              SyncRelayingOffset,
                              SecurityLevel,
                              KeyIdMode,
                              KeySource,
                              KeyIndex
                              )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table F.2.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table F.2—MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
ManagementType	Enumeration	START, JOIN, LEAVE, RELAY_ON, RELAY_OFF, HELLO, PATH	The type of TRLE-enabled PAN management to be performed: START = 0, JOIN = 1, LEAVE = 2, RELAY_ON = 3, RELAY_OFF = 4, HELLO = 5, PATH = 6.
DstAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, EXTENDED	The destination addressing mode for this primitive.
DstAddr	—	As specified by DstAddrMode parameter	The address of the device for which the frame was intended.
TxGrade	Enumeration	GRADE_0, GRADE_1, GRADE_2	The grade of link access to be used: GRADE_0 = 0, GRADE_1 = 1, GRADE_2 = 2.
NumPrioritizedDevice	Integer	1–6	The number of time slots in a superframe assigned as the prioritized device slots.
NumCoordSlot	Integer	1–6	The number of time slots in a superframe assigned as the coordinator slots.
NumBidirectionalDeviceSlot	Integer	0–5	The number of time slots in a cyclic-superframe assigned as the bidirectional device slot.
SrcRelayingTier	Integer	0–7	The identifier of the relaying tier in which a device is placed. The relaying tier of the PAN coordinator is zero.
BeaconBitmap	Bitmap	As defined in 5.2.4.9.3	The beacon bitmap as specified in the received enhanced beacon frame.
InnerRelayingOffset	Integer	0x0000–0x7fff	The index of the superframe at which the inner PAN relay starts a cyclic-superframe. If the inner PAN relay of a device is the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator, the InnerRelayingOffset of the device is zero.
SyncRelayingOffset	Integer	0x0000–0x7fff	The index of the superframe at which a device starts a cyclic-superframe. The SyncRelayingOffset of the PAN coordinator is zero.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75

The MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive may be used by the TRLE-enabled PAN management layer to establish, operate, or maintain a TRLE relaying path.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to START, all parameters except NumPrioritizedDevice and NumCoordSlot shall be ignored, and the MAC sublayer shall attempt to update the cyclic-superframe specification and begin the transmission of the TRLE Relaying IE in an enhanced beacon.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to JOIN, all parameters except DstAddrMode, DstAddr, TxGrade, SrcRelayingTier, InnerRelayingOffset, BeaconBitmap, and NumBidirectionalDeviceSlot shall be ignored. The MAC sublayer shall attempt to update the appropriate MAC PIB attributes, as described in F.4.3, and generate a TRLE Management Request command with the Management Type field set to Join, as defined in F.5.2.1.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to LEAVE, all parameters except DstAddrMode, DstAddr, and TxGrade shall be ignored, and the MAC sublayer shall attempt to generate a TRLE Management Request command with the Management Type field set to Leave.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to RELAYING_ON, all parameters except NumPrioritizedDevice, NumCoordSlot, and SyncRelayingOffset shall be ignored, and the MAC sublayer shall begin relaying frames, as described in F.4.4.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to RELAYING_OFF, all parameters shall be ignored, and the MAC sublayer shall stop relaying frames.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to HELLO, all parameters except DstAddrMode and DstAddr shall be ignored, and the MAC sublayer shall attempt to generate a TRLE Management Request command with the Management Type field set to Hello.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to PATH, all parameters except DstAddrMode and DstAddr shall be ignored, and the MAC sublayer shall attempt to generate a TRLE Management Request command with the Management Type field set to Path.

The TRLE Management Request command is relayed to the DstAddr with the grade of link access specified in TxGrade.

Typically, the TRLE Management Request command should not be implemented using security. However, if the device shares a key with the coordinator, then security may be specified.

F.5.3.2 MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.indication

The MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.indication is used to indicate the reception of a TRLE-Management Request command.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.indication (
                                  ManagementType,
                                  SrcAddrMode,
                                  SrcAddr,
                                  TxGrade,
                                  Timestamp
                                  BeaconBitmap,
                                  NumBidirectionalDeviceSlot,
                                  RelayingPathList,
                                  SecurityLevel,
                                  KeyIdMode,
                                  KeySource,
                                  KeyIndex
                                  )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table F.3.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table F.3—MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.indication parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
ManagementType	Enumeration	START, JOIN, LEAVE, RELAY_ON, RELAY_OFF, HELLO, PATH	The type of TRLE-enabled PAN management to be performed: START = 0, JOIN = 1, LEAVE = 2, RELAY_ON = 3, RELAY_OFF = 4, HELLO = 5, PATH = 6.
SrcAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, EXTENDED	The source addressing mode for this primitive.
SrcAddr	—	As specified by SrcAddrMode parameter	The address of the device for which the frame was generated.
TxGrade	Enumeration	GRADE_0, GRADE_1, GRADE_2	The grade of link access to be used: GRADE_0 = 0, GRADE_1 = 1, GRADE_2 = 2.
Timestamp	Integer	0x00 0000–0xff ffff	The time, in symbols, at which the TRLE Management Request command was transmitted. The symbol boundary is described by *macSyncSymbolOffset*, as defined in Table 8-81. This is a 24-bit value, and the precision of this value shall be a minimum of 20 bits, with the lowest 4 bits being the least significant.
BeaconBitmap	Bitmap	As defined in 5.2.4.9.3	The beacon bitmap as specified in the received enhanced beacon frame.
NumBidirectionalDeviceSlot	Integer	0–5	The number of time slots in a cyclic-superframe assigned as the bidirectional device slot.
RelayingPathList	List of octets	As defined in F.5.2.1	The relaying information on a TRLE relaying path
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-77	As defined in Table 8-77

This primitive is generated by the MLME of a device and issued to its next higher layer upon the reception of a TRLE Management Request command.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to JOIN, all parameters except SrcAddrMode, SrcAddr, TxGrade, BeaconBitmap, NumBidirectionalDeviceSlot, and RelayingPathList shall be ignored.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to LEAVE, all parameters except SrcAddrMode, SrcAddr, and TxGrade shall be ignored.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to HELLO, all parameters except SrcAddrMode, SrcAddr, TxGrade, and Timestamp shall be ignored.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to PATH, all parameters except SrcAddrMode, SrcAddr, TxGrade, and Timestamp shall be ignored.

F.5.3.3 MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response

This primitive allows the next higher layer of a device to respond to the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.indication primitive.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response (
                                ManagementType,
                                DstAddrMode,
                                DstAddr,
                                TxGrade,
                                status,
                                NumPrioritizedDeviceSlot,
                                NumCoordSlot,
                                NumBidirectionalDeviceSlot,
                                SyncRelayingOffset,
                                BidirectionalDeviceSlotList,
                                RelayDescriptor,
                                RelayingPathList,
                                SecurityLevel,
                                KeyIdMode,
                                KeySource,
                                KeyIndex
                                )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table F.4.

Table F.4—MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
ManagementType	Enumeration	START, JOIN, LEAVE, RELAY_ON, RELAY_OFF, HELLO, PATH	The type of TRLE-enabled PAN management to be performed: START = 0, JOIN = 1, LEAVE = 2, RELAY_ON = 3, RELAY_OFF = 4, HELLO = 5, PATH = 6.
DstAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT EXTENDED	The destination addressing mode for this primitive.
DstAddr	—	As specified by DstAddrMode parameter	The address of the device for which the frame was intended.
TxGrade	Enumeration	GRADE_0, GRADE_1, GRADE_2	The grade of link access to be used: GRADE_0 = 0, GRADE_1 = 1, GRADE_2 = 2.
status	Enumeration	As defined in F.5.3.4	The status of the management attempt.
NumPrioritizedDevice	Integer	1–6	The number of time slots in a superframe assigned as the prioritized device slots.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table F.4—MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
NumCoordSlot	Integer	1–6	The number of time slots in a superframe assigned as the coordinator slots.
NumBidirectionalDeviceSlot	Integer	0–5	The number of time slots in a cyclic-superframe assigned as the bidirectional device slot.
SyncRelayingOffset	Integer	0x0000–0x7fff	The index of the superframe at which a device starts a cyclic-superframe. The SyncRelayingOffset of the PAN coordinator is zero.
BidirectionalDeviceSlotList	Set of octets	As described in F.5.2.2	The set of bidirectional device time slots to be allocated for the device.
RelayDescriptor	Set of octets	As defined in F.5.2.2	The relaying specification of a device.
RelayingPathList	Set of octets	As defined in F.5.2.1	The relaying information on a TRLE relaying path.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75	As defined in Table 8-75

On receipt of the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.response primitive, the MLME of the device shall generate a TRLE Management Response command.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to JOIN, all parameters except DstAddrMode, DstAddr, TxGrade, status, NumPrioritizedDeviceSlot, NumCoordSlot, SyncRelayingOffset, NumBidirectionalDeviceSlot, and BidirectionalDeviceSlotList shall be ignored. The MAC sublayer shall generate a TRLE Management Response command with the Management Type field set to Join, as defined in F.5.2.2.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to LEAVE, all parameters except DstAddrMode, DstAddr, TxGrade, and status shall be ignored, and the MAC sublayer shall generate a TRLE Management Response command with the Management Type field set to Leave.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to HELLO, all parameters except DstAddrMode, DstAddr, TxGrade, status, and RelayDescriptor shall be ignored. The MAC sublayer shall generate a TRLE Management Response command with Management Type field set to Hello.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to PATH, all parameters except DstAddrMode, DstAddr, TxGrade, status, and RelayDescriptor shall be ignored. The MAC sublayer shall generate a TRLE Management Response command with the Management Type field set to Path.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

F.5.3.4 MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm

The MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm primitive reports the result of the TRLE management request.

The semantics of this primitive are as follows:

```
MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm (
                              ManagementType,
                              SrcAddrMode,
                              SrcAddr,
                              status,
                              Timestamp,
                              NumPrioritizedDeviceSlot,
                              NumCoordSlot,
                              SyncRelayingOffset,
                              NumBidirectionalDeviceSlot,
                              BidirectionalDeviceSlotList,
                              RelayDescriptor,
                              RelayingPathList,
                              SecurityLevel,
                              KeyIdMode,
                              KeySource,
                              KeyIndex
                              )
```

The primitive parameters are defined in Table F.5.

Table F.5—MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm parameters

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
ManagementType	Enumeration	START, JOIN, LEAVE, RELAY_ON, RELAY_OFF, HELLO, PATH	The type of TRLE-enabled PAN management to be performed: START = 0, JOIN = 1, LEAVE = 2, RELAY_ON = 3, RELAY_OFF = 4, HELLO = 5, PATH = 6.
SrcAddrMode	Enumeration	NONE, SHORT, EXTENDED	The source addressing mode for this primitive.
SrcAddr	—	As specified by SrcAddrMode parameter	The address of the device for which the frame was generated.
status	Enumeration	SUCCESS, INVALID_PARAMETER, CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE, FRAME_TOO_LONG, SLOT_FULL, RELAY_FULL, NOT_FOUND, NOT_CONFIRMED, UNAVAILABLE_KEY, UNSUPPORTED_SECURITY	The result of the management request attempt.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table F.5—MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
Timestamp	Integer	0x00 0000–0xff ffff	The time, in symbols, at which the TRLE Management Request command was transmitted. The symbol boundary is described by *macSyncSymbolOffset*, as defined in Table 8-81. This is a 24-bit value, and the precision of this value shall be a minimum of 20 bits, with the lowest 4 bits being the least significant.
NumPrioritizedDevice	Integer	1–6	The number of time slots in a superframe assigned as the prioritized device slots.
NumCoordSlot	Integer	1–6	The number of time slots in a superframe assigned as the coordinator slots.
NumBidirectionalDeviceSlot	Integer	0–5	The number of time slots in a cyclic-superframe assigned as the bidirectional device slot.
SyncRelayingOffset	Integer	0x0000–0x7fff	The index of the superframe at which a device starts a cyclic-superframe. The SyncRelayingOffset of the PAN coordinator is zero.
BidirectionalDeviceSlotList	Set of octets	As defined in F.5.2.2	The set of bidirectional device time slots to be allocated for the device.
RelayDescriptor	Set of octets	As defined in F.5.2.2	The relaying specification of a device.
RelayingPathList	Set of octets	As defined in F.5.2.1	The relaying information on a TRLE relaying path.
SecurityLevel	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75 or Table 8-77	If the primitive was generated following the failed outgoing processing of a TRLE Management Request command, then it is as defined in Table 8-75. If the primitive was generated following the receipt of a TRLE Management Response command, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIdMode	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75 or Table 8-77	If the primitive was generated following the failed outgoing processing of a TRLE Management Request command, then it is as defined in Table 8-75. If the primitive was generated following the receipt of a TRLE Management Response command, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

Table F.5—MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm parameters *(continued)*

Name	Type	Valid range	Description
KeySource	Set of octets	As defined in Table 8-75 or Table 8-77	If the primitive was generated following the failed outgoing processing of a TRLE Management Request command, then it is as defined in Table 8-75. If the primitive was generated following the receipt of a TRLE Management Response command, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.
KeyIndex	Integer	As defined in Table 8-75 or Table 8-77	If the primitive was generated following the failed outgoing processing of a TRLE Management Request command, then it is as defined in Table 8-75. If the primitive was generated following the receipt of a TRLE Management Response command, then it is as defined in Table 8-77.

The MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to START, RELAY_ON, or RELAY_OFF is generated by the MAC sublayer entity in response to an MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.request primitive.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to START, RELAY_ON, or RELAY_OFF, all parameters except the status parameter shall be ignored.

On receipt of the MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm primitive with the ManagementType parameter set to JOIN, LEAVE, HELLO, or PATH, the next higher layer is notified of the reception of a TRLE Management Response command.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to JOIN, all parameters except SrcAddrMode, SrcAddr, status, NumPrioritizedDeviceSlot, NumCoordSlot, SyncRelayingOffset, NumBidirectionalDeviceSlot, and BidirectionalDeviceSlotList shall be ignored.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to LEAVE, all parameters except SrcAddrMode, SrcAddr, and status shall be ignored.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to HELLO, all parameters except SrcAddrMode, SrcAddr, status, and RelayDescriptor shall be ignored.

When the ManagementType parameter is set to PATH, all parameters except SrcAddrMode, SrcAddr, status, RelayDescriptor, and RelayingPathList shall be ignored.

The MLME-TRLE-MANAGEMENT.confirm primitive returns a status of either SUCCESS or the appropriate error code:

— CHANNEL_ACCESS_FAILURE indicates that the transmission of the coordinator realignment frame failed.
— FRAME_TOO_LONG indicates that the length of the beacon frame exceeds *aMaxPhyPacketSize*.
— SLOT_FULL indicates that the allocation of the bidirectional device time slot failed.

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.

— RELAY_FULL indicates that the allocation of the superframe for relaying a beacon failed.
— NOT_FOUND indicates that the requesting device cannot be found.
— NOT_CONFIRMED indicates that the request to leave a relaying path is not permitted.
— A security error code, as defined in 7.2.

F.5.4 TRLE specific MAC PIB attributes

The attributes contained in the MAC PIB for TRLE are presented in Table F.6.

Table F.6—TRLE specific MAC PIB attributes

Attribute	Type	Range	Description	Default
macNumPrioritizedDeviceSlot	Integer	1–6	The number of time slots in a superframe assigned as the prioritized device slots.	3
macNumCoordSlot	Integer	1–6	The number of time slots in a superframe assigned as the coordinator slots.	3
macNumBidirectionalDeviceSlot	Integer	0–5	The number of time slots in a cyclic-superframe assigned as the bidirectional device slots.	1
macRelayingTier	Integer	0–7	The identifier of the relaying tier in which a device is placed. The relaying tier of the PAN coordinator is zero.	Implementation specific
macInnerRelayingOffset	Integer	0x0000–0x7fff	The relaying delay of the cyclic-superframe of an inner PAN relay compared with the cyclic-superframe of a TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator, which is specified in the number of superframe duration. If the inner PAN relay of a device is the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator, the value of *macInnerRelayingOffset* of the device is zero.	Implementation specific
macSyncRelayingOffset	Integer	0x0000–0x7fff	The relaying delay of the cyclic-superframe of a PAN relay compared with the cyclic-superframe of the TRLE-enabled PAN coordinator, which is specified in the number of superframe duration. The value of *macSyncRelayingOffset* of the PAN coordinator is zero.	Implementation specific
macPanRelayList	PAN relay list	PAN relay list	The list of the neighboring PAN relays, which inform the end devices reached by the PAN relay.	Implementation specific
macBeaconMissingLimit	Integer	0–7	The number of beacons that are missed before starting link recovery processing.	Implementation specific

Copyright © 2016 IEEE. All rights reserved.

Authorized licensed use limited to: shouqiang hu. Downloaded on February 09,2020 at 10:10:37 UTC from IEEE Xplore. Restrictions apply.